Andrew Keller · Stephanie Russell

LEARN TO READ LATIN

SECOND EDITION

LEARN TO READ LATIN

LEARN TO READ LATIN

SECOND EDITION

Andrew Keller
Collegiate School

Stephanie Russell
Collegiate School

Yale UNIVERSITY PRESS New Haven & London

The authors thank Dr. Hans-Friedrich Mueller of the University of Florida and Dr. John Miller of the University of Virginia for reviewing their manuscript.

First edition published as one volume in 2004 and as two volumes in 2006. Second edition published in 2015.

Copyright © 2004, 2006, 2015 by Yale University.
All rights reserved.
This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, including illustrations, in any form (beyond that copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publishers.

Yale University Press books may be purchased in quantity for educational, business, or promotional use.
For information, please e-mail sales.press@yale.edu (U.S. office) or sales@yaleup.co.uk (U.K. office).

Editor: Tim Shea
Publishing Assistant: Ashley E. Lago
Production Editor: Ann-Marie Imbornoni
Production Controller: Aldo Cupo
Designed by James J. Johnson
Set in E & F Scala type by Integrated Publishing Solutions.
Printed in the United States of America.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2014946106
ISBN: 978-0-300-19494-4 (hardcover)
ISBN: 978-0-300-19495-1 (paperback)

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

This paper meets the requirements of ANSI/NISO Z39.48-1992 (Permanence of Paper).

10 9 8 7 6 5

CONTENTS

Preface xvii
Preface to the Second Edition xix
Acknowledgments xxi
How to Use *Learn to Read Latin* xxiii
List of Abbreviations xxix

Introduction 1
The Latin Language 1
Pronunciation of Classical Latin 3
Alphabet 4
Consonants 4
Vowels 5
Diphthongs 6
Stress 7
The Law of the Penult 8

Language Study: Vocabulary, Morphology, and Syntax 9

CHAPTER I

Vocabulary 11
Vocabulary Notes 12
Prepositions 12
Derivatives and Cognates 14

§1. The Latin Noun and Its Properties: Gender, Number, Case 15
Nominative Case 15
Nominative, Subject 15
Predicate Nominative 16

Genitive Case 16
Genitive of Possession 16
Dative Case 16
Dative of Reference 16
Dative of Indirect Object 16
Accusative Case 17
Accusative, Direct Object 17
Ablative Case 17
Ablative of Accompaniment 17
Ablative of Means 17
Vocative Case 18

§2. The Five Declensions 18
Finding the Stem 19

§3. Noun Morphology: First Declension 19

§4. Noun Morphology: Second Declension 21

CHAPTER II

Vocabulary 25
Vocabulary Notes 26
Principal Parts 26

§5. The Finite Latin Verb and Its Properties: Person, Number, Tense, Voice, Mood 29

§6. The Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood: Overview 30

§7. The Vocabulary Entry for a Verb: Principal Parts 31

§8. The Four Conjugations 32
Finding the Present Stem 32

§9. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 33
Present Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 33
Imperfect Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 34
Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 35

§10. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of the Irregular Verbs *sum* and *possum* 35
Present Active Indicative of *sum* and *possum* 36
Imperfect Active Indicative of *sum* and *possum* 36
Future Active Indicative of *sum* and *possum* 37
The Two Meanings of the Verb *sum* 37

§11. Distinguishing Transitive and Intransitive Verbs 38

§12. Complementary Infinitive 38

§13. Object Infinitive 39

§14. Dative of the Possessor 39
Expressions of Possession Compared 40

§15. Introduction to the Latin Sentence and Prose Word Order 40
Guidelines for Reading and Translating Latin Sentences 43

Short Readings 44

§16. Names in Latin I 45

CHAPTER III

Vocabulary 47
Vocabulary Notes 48
Adjectives 48

§17. First-Second-Declension Adjectives 50

§18. Noun-Adjective Agreement 51

§19. Substantive Use of the Adjective 51

§20. Predicate Adjective 52

§21. The Irregular Verb *eō* 53

§22. Introduction to the Passive Voice 53

§23. Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 54
Passive Personal Endings 54
Present Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 55
Imperfect Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 56
Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations 56

§24. Synopsis I: Present Active and Passive Indicative 57

§25. Ablative of Personal Agent 58

§26. The Uses of *habeō* and *videō* in the Passive Voice 58

§27. Ablative of Manner 59

§28. Subject Infinitive 60

§29. Apposition 60

Short Readings 61

CHAPTER IV

Vocabulary 63
Vocabulary Notes 64

§30. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations 67
Present Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations 67
Imperfect Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations 69
Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations 70

§31. Present Passive Infinitive of All Verbs 71

§32. Present Active and Passive Imperative of All Verbs 71

§33. Synopsis II: Present Active and Passive Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative 73

§34. Partitive Genitive 74

§35. Subjective Genitive 74

§36. Objective Genitive 74

§37. Ablative of Respect 75

§38. Personal Pronouns 76

§39. Possessive Adjectives 77

Short Readings 79

CHAPTER V

Vocabulary 83
Vocabulary Notes 84
Compound Verbs, Prefixes, Assimilation, and Vowel Weakening 84

§40. The Perfect Active System 87
Finding the Perfect Active Stem 87

§41. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 87
Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 87
Pluperfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 88
Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs 89

§42. Synopsis III: Present Indicative System, Perfect Active Indicative System, Infinitive, and Imperative 90

§43. The Irregular Third-Conjugation Verb *ferō* 91

§44. Reflexive Pronouns 91

§45. Reflexive-Possessive Adjectives 93

§46. The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum* 93

§47. Adverbs I 94

§48. Subordinate Clauses I 95

§49. Conditional Sentences I 97
Simple Conditional Sentences 97
Future More Vivid Conditional Sentences 98

Short Readings 100

CHAPTER VI

Vocabulary 105
Vocabulary Notes 106

§50. The Perfect Passive System 108

§51. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs 108
Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs 108
Pluperfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs 109
Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs 109

§52. Synopsis IV: Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative 110

§53. The Omission of *sum* in Compound Verb Forms; A Note on the Perfect Passive Participle 111

§54. Impersonal Passive 112

§55. Noun Morphology: Third Declension 112
Case Endings of the Third Declension 112
Case Endings of the Third-Declension i-Stem 114
The Irregular Third-Declension Noun *vīs* 115

§56. Third-Declension Adjectives 116

§57. Adverbs II 117

§58. Ablative of Separation 118

§59. Ablative of Cause 118

§60. Ablative of Place From Which 119

§61. Ablative of Place Where and the Locative Case 119
Ablative of Place Where 119
Locative Case 119

§62. Accusative of Place To Which 120
Short Readings 121
Longer Readings 127

§63. Names in Latin II 132

CHAPTER VII

Vocabulary 135
Vocabulary Notes 136

§64. Introduction to the Subjunctive 140

§65. Present Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs 141

§66. Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs 142

§67. Perfect and Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs 143
Perfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs 143
Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs 143

§68. Perfect and Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs 144
Perfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs 144
Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs 144

§69. Synopsis V: Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Imperative 145

§70. Three Independent Subjunctives 146
Hortatory/Jussive Subjunctive 146
Negative Commands 146
Potential Subjunctive 147
Optative Subjunctive 147

§71. Conditional Sentences II 148
Future Less Vivid Conditional Sentences 149
Contrary-to-Fact Conditional Sentences 149
Mixed Conditional Sentences 149

§72. Dative of Purpose and the Double Dative Construction 151

§73. Dative of Advantage, Dative of Disadvantage 151
Short Readings 152
Longer Readings 158

§74. Greetings and Interjections in Latin 160

CHAPTER VIII

Vocabulary 163
Vocabulary Notes 164

§75. Deponent Verbs 167

§76. Semideponent Verbs 169

§77. Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns: *hic, iste,* and *ille* 170
Special Uses of the Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns 171

§78. The Relative Pronoun *quī, quae, quod* and the Relative Clause 172
A Note on Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses 174

§79. Special Features of the Relative Pronoun 175
The Indefinite or Generic Antecedent 175
The Connective Relative 175
Placement of the Antecedent in and after the Relative Clause 176

§80. The Interrogative Pronoun *quis, quid* 176

§81. The Interrogative Adjective *quī, quae, quod* 177

§82. Dative with an Intransitive Verb 178

Short Readings 179

Longer Readings 187

§83. About Meter I 194
Introduction to Quantitative Meter 194
Dactylic Hexameter and Elegiac Couplet 194
Elision, Caesura, Diaeresis, and Hiatus 196
Guidelines for Reading Latin Poetry 197

CHAPTER IX

Vocabulary 199
Vocabulary Notes 200

§84. Noun Morphology: Fourth Declension 203

§85. Noun Morphology: Fifth Declension 204

§86. Nine Irregular Adjectives 205

§87. Purpose Clauses and the Sequence of Tenses 206
Summary of the Rules of Sequence of Tenses 209

§88. Indirect Commands 209
§89. Relative Clauses of Purpose 211
§90. Accusative of Duration of Time 212
§91. Ablative of Time When 213
§92. Ablative of Time Within Which 213
Short Readings 214
Longer Readings 222
§93. Numbers in Latin 235

CHAPTER X

Vocabulary 239
Vocabulary Notes 240
§94. Relative Clauses of Characteristic 244
§95. Introduction to Participles 246
Participles of Irregular Verbs 247
Participles of Deponent and Semideponent Verbs 247
§96. Synopsis VI: Indicative, Subjunctive, Participle, Infinitive, and Imperative 248
§97. Notes on the Participle: Relative Time; Attributive and Circumstantial Uses 249
§98. Ablative Absolute 251
§99. Active and Passive Periphrastics 252
§100. Dative of Agent with a Passive Periphrastic 253
§101. Genitive of Description 254
§102. Ablative of Description 254
§103. Ablative of Origin 254
Short Readings 255
Longer Readings 265
Continuous Readings 286
§104. Rhetorical Terms 288

CHAPTER XI

Vocabulary 291
Vocabulary Notes 292

§105. Infinitives 295
Periphrastic Infinitives 296

§106. Synopsis VII: Complete 297

§107. Indirect Statement and the Subject Accusative 298

§108. A Note on the Subject Accusative 300

§109. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement 301

§110. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs 302
Comparative Degree of Adjectives 302
Comparative Degree of Adverbs 303
Superlative Degree of Adjectives 303
Superlative Degree of Adverbs 304

§111. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs 305

§112. Constructions with the Comparative and Superlative Degrees 306

Short Readings 308

Longer Readings 319

Continuous Readings 342

§113. About Meter II 347
Common Terms and Metrical Units of Latin Lyric Poetry 347
Hendecasyllable 348
Choliambic (Limping Iambic) 348
Sapphic Strophe 349
Asclepiadean Meters 349
Archilochian Meter 350
Alcaic Strophe 351

CHAPTER XII

Vocabulary 353
Vocabulary Notes 354

§114. Direct Questions 357

§115. Deliberative Subjunctive 358

§116. Indirect Questions 359

§117. Doubting Clauses 361

§118. Subordinate Clauses II: The Conjunction *cum* 361
§119. The Irregular Verbs *volō, nōlō,* and *mālō* 363
§120. Negative Commands with *nōlī* or *nōlīte* and an Infinitive 364
§121. Dative with a Compound Verb 364
Short Readings 366
Longer Readings 375
Continuous Readings 397
§122. Unassimilated Forms, Archaic Forms, and Syncopation 402
Unassimilated Forms and Archaic Spellings 402
Syncopation of Forms in the Perfect Active System 402
Common Archaic Verb Forms 403

CHAPTER XIII

Vocabulary 405
Vocabulary Notes 406
§123. Gerunds and Gerundives 408
§124. Subordinate Clauses III 410
Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Indicative Mood 410
Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Subjunctive Mood 411
Proviso Clauses 412
§125. Correlatives 412
§126. The Irregular Verb *fīō* 414
§127. Adverbial Accusative 415
§128. Accusative of Exclamation 415
§129. Genitive of Indefinite Value 416
§130. Ablative of Price 416
Short Readings 418
Longer Readings 432
Continuous Readings 456
§131. Adverbs of Place 460
Short Readings 461

CHAPTER XIV

Vocabulary 463
Vocabulary Notes 464
§132. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives 466
§133. Result Clauses 467
§134. Relative Clauses of Result 468
§135. Substantive *Ut* Clauses 469
§136. *Fore ut* Construction 470
§137. Impersonal Constructions I: *licet, necesse est,* and *oportet* 471
§138. Genitive of Characteristic 472
Short Readings 474
Longer Readings 490
Continuous Readings 514

CHAPTER XV

Vocabulary 521
Vocabulary Notes 522
§139. Fear Clauses 524
§140. Prevention Clauses 525
§141. Impersonal Constructions II: *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet, rēfert, interest* 526
Verbs Expressing Emotion 526
Verbs Expressing Concern or Interest 527
§142. Direct and Indirect Reflexives 528
§143. Subjunctive by Attraction 529
§144. Supine 529
§145. Accusative of Respect 530
§146. Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb 530

§147. Historical Infinitive 531

Short Readings 532

Longer Readings 549

Continuous Readings 578

List of Authors and Passages A1
Morphology Appendix A13
Latin to English Vocabulary A39
English to Latin Vocabulary A49
General Index A63

PREFACE

Learn to Read Latin is an introductory grammar and reader in one. The aim of this book is to help students acquire as quickly as possible an ability to read and appreciate the great works of Latin literature. Respectful of both teachers and students, the book assumes a serious interest in learning Latin well and thoroughly.

LTRL grew out of an earnest wish to make available to others the immense pleasure we have both experienced in reading Latin literature in Latin. For many years it has seemed to us that too much emphasis has been placed on teaching students to translate Latin and that even the most diligent Latin students have attained too little intimacy with the Latin language and the styles of great Latin writers. Many beginning Latin books expect students to translate several volumes of stories in Latin written not by ancient authors but by the authors of the books themselves. This seems to us an inefficient use of student energy and a pedagogical method of limited value if one's goal is to prepare students to read and appreciate Caesar, Cicero, Livy, Vergil, Horace, and so many others.

In addition, we have noted how often introductory books present tidbits of information about Roman domestic life and culture, while failing to provide students with information about the many authors and literary works that will become available to them as their proficiency increases. In our experience this has meant that many students choose not to continue their studies beyond the introductory level in part because they are unaware of what they might read at the intermediate and advanced levels. We have tried to create a beginning Latin book that relies primarily on the ancient authors themselves as the means by which students may learn about Latin syntax and style. We have sought to introduce students to the Latin literature that for many will be the focus of their later studies, and we firmly believe that the best introduction to Roman culture is through the reading of as much Roman literature drawn from as wide a variety of authors as possible.

LTRL owes much to the two texts written for use at the Brooklyn College of

CUNY Latin/Greek Institute, *Latin: An Intensive Course* by Floyd L. Moreland and Rita M. Fleischer, and *Greek: An Intensive Course* by Hardy Hansen and Gerald M. Quinn. Both books were designed for rapid-paced summer courses in which a new unit is covered each day. Both are models of clarity, efficiency, and completeness. From Floyd Moreland, who was our teacher and colleague, we learned the importance of the order of presentation of points of grammar and morphology and the value of brief, clear explanations. He imparted to both of us his own deep interest in Latin syntax and style. He taught us to go in order when reading and translating, to care about the smallest details, and to love Latin literature. His powerful presence informs much that is good in our book. From Hardy Hansen and Gerry Quinn we borrowed the idea of placing numbered observations below presentations of morphology and syntax, and we modeled our vocabulary notes on theirs, including a considerable amount of linguistic information, as they did in their Greek book.

Since *LTRL* was not written to meet the special requirements of an intensive summer course, our book departs from its forebears in several important ways. The chapters are longer and present whole systems or closely related elements of vocabulary, morphology, and syntax. Many drills and drill sentences are provided in the workbook for use in class, for homework, and for extra and remedial work with individual students. Certain points of English grammar and usage are explained at some length, and drills are provided for these as well. Two aims determined the order of presentation of grammatical points in *LTRL*. We wished to give the student a sense of the logical development of Latin syntax and a steadily deepening understanding. We also wished to provide the earliest possible access to unabridged Latin passages.

LTRL is perhaps the first book of its kind to make extensive use of the Packard Humanities Institute CD-ROM containing much of the corpus of Latin literature up to Justinian. With the aid of this powerful tool we have often been able to establish correct Latin usage for drills and drill sentences, and we have tried to exclude any phrase or piece of syntax not occurring in extant classical Latin. Although there may still be some errors of usage, we believe that the Latin in our book that has been written by us resembles what students will read in the ancient authors. We have also used the CD-ROM to locate many passages that well illustrate the vocabulary, morphology, and syntax presented in each chapter of the book. The wide range of authors and texts represented in *LTRL*—including choice passages from authors not commonly read—was made possible in part by this CD-ROM. Several Latin grammars and dictionaries were regularly consulted during the writing of this book, and we relied in particular on *A Latin Grammar* by George M. Lane and *A New Latin Syntax* by E. C. Woodcock. For vowel quantities in Latin words we have consulted *Lateinisches Etymologisches Wörterbuch* by Walde and Hofmann.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION OF THE TEXTBOOK

Learn To Read Latin was first published in 2003. We now welcome the opportunity to present a revised edition based on the observations and suggestions of adopters and users of the first edition. We are grateful for their aid. Corrections have been made throughout. Editing and rewriting in the vocabulary notes and the syntax and morphology sections are intended to streamline and clarify presentations. A new section on indefinite pronouns and adjectives (previously presented only in the vocabulary notes) has been added to chapter XIV. Three chapters (VIII, IX, and X) have been substantially changed and their contents rearranged to create greater balance of presentation. Some vocabulary words have been moved to different chapters, and some new words have been added. Additions, deletions, and corrections have been made in the short and longer readings of each chapter. Chapters II to VI in particular now have more samples of actual Latin to challenge and inspire beginning students. The vocabulary provided for all readings is now presented in the order in which the words appear in readings and not in alphabetical order.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Andrew Keller wishes to thank past and present colleagues at Colgate University, in particular Eric Casey, Leah Himmelhoch, and Naomi Rood, who used early versions of the book in both first- and second-year classes, made many helpful suggestions for improvements, caught many errors, and remained even-keeled throughout the experience. Fred Jones, Colgate class of 2003, enthusiastically proofread early versions of the book and found countless small and large typographical errors. Thanks are due as well to departmental colleagues Rebecca Ammerman and Robert Garland for their support of this project over the past several years.

Stephanie Russell gratefully acknowledges support for the writing of this book provided by Collegiate School, including two generous summer awards: a Wilson Parkhill Fellowship and a grant from the Van Horne Foundation. Special thanks are also owed to colleagues William Abernathy, Phyllis Brugnolotti, Jose Corredor, Lynn Hansell, Paul Ness, and Kathy Sullivan. Phuc Tran was willing to use early versions of the book in his Latin classes, and his many wise and helpful suggestions have significantly improved the book. Barbara Juhel, head of Collegiate's Foreign Language Department, gave kind encouragement over many years and provided an introduction to Yale University Press.

The authors extend their warmest thanks to the Latin students at Colgate University and at Collegiate School (especially to those in the class of 2004) who used our book, spotted many errors, and offered many good ideas. They have played an important part in bringing the book to its present form.

Mary Jane Peluso acquired our book for Yale University Press and handled two anxious authors with patience and professionalism. Her assistant, Gretchen Rings, was helpful and attentive to many important details. Our skilled manuscript editor, Dan Heaton, made intelligent and inspired improvements throughout the manuscript. To these three we are sincerely grateful.

Ann-Marie Imbornoni served as the senior production editor for the second edition of *LTRL,* and Joyce Ippolito was the manuscript editor. The authors are most grateful for their devoted attention to all the details of the manuscript. Juliana Froggatt was a scrupulous and intelligent proofreader with an eagle eye and a refined sense of style. Thanks to the thorough and careful work of these three professionals, we have been able to avoid many errors and infelicities. Their suggestions and tactful queries have greatly improved our book.

HOW TO USE *LEARN TO READ LATIN*

The following is a detailed description of all the components of *Learn to Read Latin*, accompanied by suggestions for their most effective use by students and teachers. Only if the textbook is used in partnership with the workbook can the best results be achieved.

Overview: Components and Organization

The main text of *LTRL* comprises fifteen chapters that present all the basic morphology and syntax for an elementary course in classical Latin. Depending on the amount of time available for one's course (meetings per week, minutes per meeting), these fifteen chapters can be studied in two or three college semesters or in two or three years in middle and high school.

The actual teaching and learning units of this book are the sections, and there are approximately ten sections in each chapter. Two or three weeks in college, more in high school, should be devoted to the study of each chapter. Substantial vocabulary lists and complex Latin sentences (both synthetic and authentic) allow students to significantly advance their knowledge of syntax and to practice and refine their reading skills. The book as a whole, as well as each of the chapters taken individually, aims not at hasty coverage of material but at thorough understanding and engagement as soon as possible with Latin literary texts.

Vocabulary Lists

Each chapter begins with a list of new words to be memorized, placed first for ready reference. The **vocabulary** has been chosen to provide students with words that appear commonly in a wide variety of Latin authors. In many chapters certain pieces of morphology and syntax must be presented before new vocabulary is learned, but

the vocabulary list is given prominence to emphasize its importance and to encourage its acquisition by students as early as possible in the study of each chapter. As the book progresses and chapters are devoted to more advanced syntax, words that are commonly found with the constructions to be learned in those chapters are included in the vocabulary.

At the back of both the textbook and the workbook are complete Latin-English and English-Latin vocabulary lists containing all the words that appear in the chapter vocabularies. Some additional meanings and idioms that appear only in the vocabulary notes or elsewhere in the textbook are included. These lists also include the names of the gods and cardinal and ordinal numbers.

Vocabulary Notes

Vocabulary Notes follow the word list in each chapter. Since essential information about the forms, meanings, and usage of new vocabulary words is contained in these notes, students should always read them, and the teacher should emphasize the most important points. Particularly in the early chapters, important information about the forms of vocabulary entries (adjectives, principal parts of verbs, etc.) and new morphology is included in the vocabulary notes. This material should be presented in conjunction with the new material in the chapters. It is included in the vocabulary notes for ease of reference, and students should consult these notes frequently while mastering the material in the chapter. (For those who would like to learn more about the development of the Latin language, information has also been included about word formation and Indo-European linguistic features.) Immediately following the vocabulary notes in each chapter are lists of English derivatives and cognates for many of the new words in the chapter. Although by no means exhaustive, the lists allow students to see how Latin words are related to English words.

Summaries and Synopsis Blanks

When beginning each new chapter, students should tear out from the back of the workbook all the **summaries** for that chapter. These summaries include a copy of the vocabulary list and one or two pages of compact summaries of the new morphology and syntax introduced in the chapter. These summaries should be consulted when drills on new material are being done in class, and they can serve as valuable learning aids as students work toward mastery of the material presented in each chapter. Included after the summaries for all the chapters are verb **synopsis blanks** that can be torn out and used to make multiple copies for drills.

Sections and Drills

The **sections** that present new morphology and syntax are numbered consecutively, as in a reference grammar. Frequently throughout these sections (as well as in the

vocabulary notes), brief instructions appear in capital letters (for example, "MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM"). These instructions are addressed directly to students and are intended to ensure that no essential point is overlooked.

Following many of the morphology and syntax sections are sentences pointing to appropriate **drills** in the workbook for individual sections or groups of sections. The drills are designed to reinforce new material as it is presented. The sentences pointing to appropriate drills indicate the natural breaks within chapters, and they can be used by teachers to determine how much material to introduce in a class period.

Drills on new forms and syntax include only vocabulary from earlier chapters, unless new morphology or syntax requires the use of new vocabulary. For example, when third-declension noun morphology is introduced, it is necessary to include new nouns in the corresponding drills to reinforce the new morphology.

Drills are provided in such sufficiently large numbers that some can be done at sight in class, others assigned for homework, and still others used for individual work or quizzes.

Exercises

Following the drills in each chapter in the workbook, **exercises** are provided that allow comprehensive practice of all new vocabulary, morphology, and syntax introduced in a chapter, while reinforcing material presented in earlier chapters. The exercises, consisting of synthetic sentences, are divided into two sections. The first contains Latin sentences to be translated into English, and the second section provides sentences in English to be translated into Latin. This section gives students practice in writing clear, correct Latin in good Latin word order. The exercises should not be assigned until all new material in a chapter has been introduced, unless a teacher selects only those exercise sentences that contain material already presented.

In the synthetic Latin sentences (drills, exercises, and examples used in the textbook), we have tried to include only usages found in extant Latin; often exact phrases drawn from classical Latin authors have been included in the sentences. However, we have allowed certain extrapolations from extant Latin usage. For example, since *homō pius* appears in Cicero, we have allowed *hominēs piī*.

In our experience, *LTRL* works best when translations of some exercise sentences are assigned as written homework, while class time is devoted to the reading of other exercise sentences at sight. As many as eighty such sentences are provided in the early chapters, but this number is gradually reduced as it becomes possible to reinforce new material through unabridged Latin passages.

Readings

Beginning in Chapter II, the introduction of new material in the textbook is followed by a section of **short readings**, unabridged Latin passages drawn from a wide range

of ancient authors. Each short reading is preceded by a brief introduction to establish context. Beneath each reading are vocabulary glosses for words that do not appear in the chapter vocabulary lists.[1] The inclusion of these short readings, which steadily increase in number and length, reflects our belief that the best way to learn Latin is to study specimens of authentic Latin as soon as possible. The short readings have been chosen to reinforce the vocabulary, morphology, and syntax of the chapters in which they appear and to provide examples of various word orders from Latin prose and poetry. Many of these short readings can be read at sight in class, and some may be read before all the new material of a chapter has been introduced, provided that they not contain material that has not yet been presented.

Beginning in Chapter VI, each section of short readings is followed by a section of **longer readings**, also unabridged Latin passages.[2] In addition to introductions and vocabulary glosses, at the first appearance of an author or a work in the longer readings, we have included brief biographies of the authors and descriptions of the works from which the readings are taken. A list of authors and passages in the back of the textbook allows students and teachers to refer to this material when authors or works appear again in subsequent longer readings or to investigate further when short readings feature these authors or works.

Beginning in Chapter X, each section of longer readings is followed by a section of **continuous readings**. Two poetry passages (from Vergil's *Aeneid* and Ovid's *Metamorphoses*) are presented with brief introductions and appropriate vocabulary glosses. Beginning in Chapter XI, two extended prose passages (from Cicero's *Oratio Prima in Catilinam* and Sallust's *Bellum Catilinae*) are added. These continuous readings are intended to give the student practice in reading in context and in developing a sense of the basic stylistic features of a given author and text. They also offer a preliminary experience in what lies ahead for the student when he or she finishes with the basic grammar book and moves on to upper-level reading courses. Students and teachers may choose to read any or all of the continuous readings, favoring prose or poetry as they prefer. If all four are read, students will complete the book with a significant first experience in reading four major Latin authors.

To help give students a basic knowledge of the history and development of Latin literature and to foster their interest in further study, we have organized all readings from ancient authors in each chapter in chronological order by author. Since the texts of Latin literature that survive contain examples of the language as each writer in each period chose to style it, this chronological arrangement may help students observe the evolution of various styles of both prose and poetry. Through the short and longer readings, *LTRL* is meant to become in part a literary venture, and there are many opportunities for consideration of rhetoric and style as well as of forms and syntax.

1. For ease of use by students vocabulary glosses for each reading are listed in the order in which the words appear in the passage. A dagger (†) indicates a word receiving a special note.

2. As a general rule, longer readings are those that have ten or more vocabulary glosses.

Additional Material

Interspersed between many chapters in *LTRL* are brief sections devoted to **additional material** related to the study of the Latin language. Sections on Roman names and numbers, on meter, and on rhetorical terms, for example, should be studied as seriously as each chapter. Some of these sections even contain a few vocabulary words that the student is expected to learn. Knowledge of the information presented in all these additional sections is assumed in subsequent readings in the textbook and will enhance students' reading and appreciation of the authentic Latin passages in the readings. Students may either learn the material in these sections or look back at them when necessary.

ABBREVIATIONS

¨	diaeresis
*	indicates that a form is hypothetical
< >	enclose an element added by editors
[ ]	used to indicate that, contrary to the tradition, an author is *not* the writer of a work
<	(derived) from
>	becomes
§	section
1-intr.	first conjugation intransitive verb
1-tr.	first conjugation transitive verb
abl.	ablative
acc.	accusative
act.	active
adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
cf.	*cōnfer,* compare
conj.	conjunction
d.a.	direct address
dat.	dative
demonstr.	demonstrative
d.o.	direct object
etc.	*et cētera,* and the remaining things
f.	feminine
fem.	feminine
frag.	fragment
fut.	future
gen.	genitive
IE	Indo-European
imper.	imperative
imperf.	imperfect
indef.	indefinite
indic.	indicative
infin.	infinitive
interj.	interjection
interrog.	interrogative
intr.	intransitive
i.o.	indirect object
loc.	locative
m.	masculine
masc.	masculine
n.	neuter
neut.	neuter
nom.	nominative
pass.	passive
perf.	perfect
PIE	Proto-Indo-European
pl.	plural
pluperf.	pluperfect
prep.	preposition
pres.	present
pron.	pronoun
rel.	relative
sēd inc.	*sēdēs incerta,* uncertain location
sing.	singular
subj.	subject
subjunc.	subjunctive
subst.	substantive
tr.	transitive
voc.	vocative

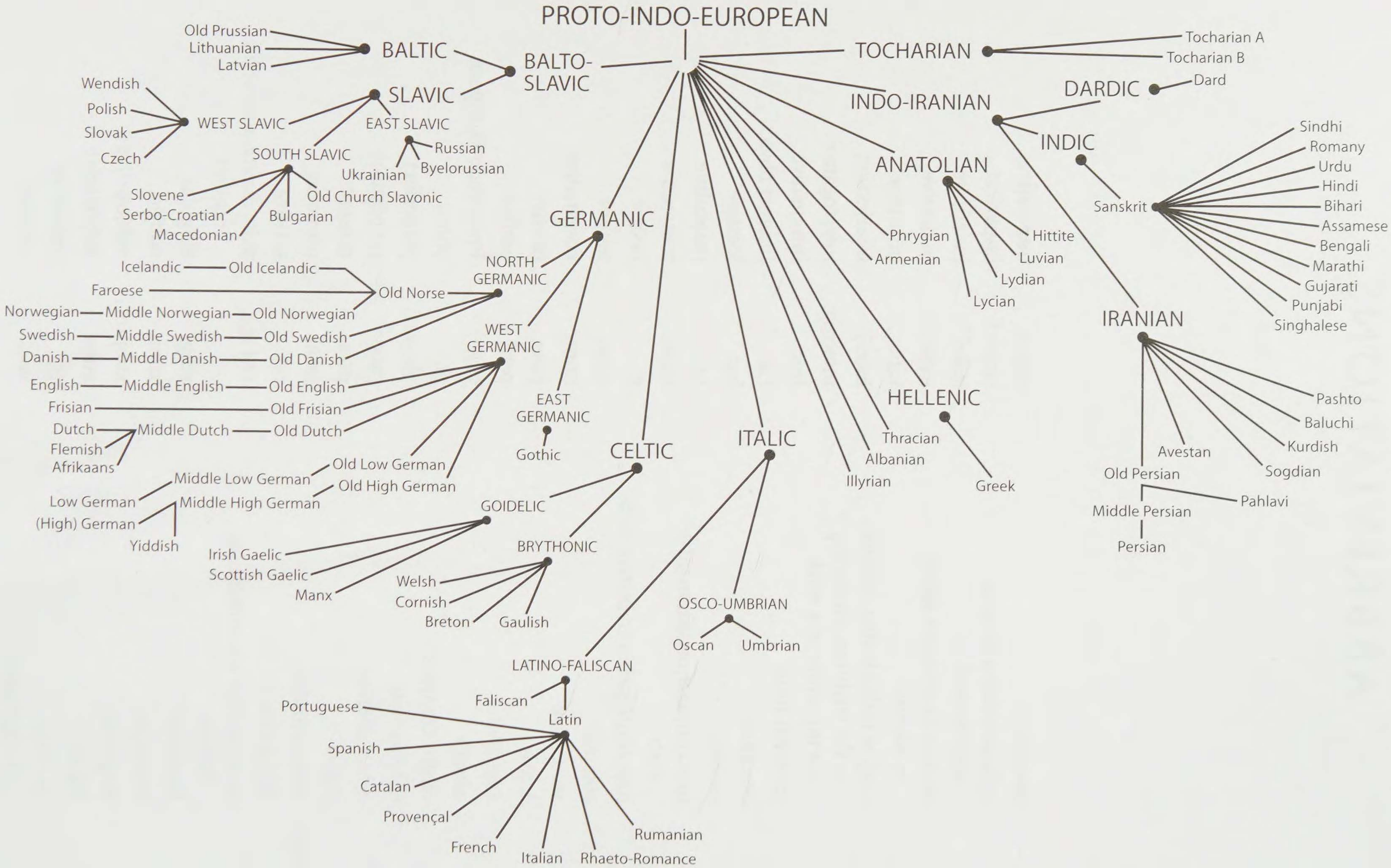


Figure 1. This chart shows the principal languages of the Indo-European family, arranged in a diagrammatic form that displays their genetic relations and loosely suggests their geographic distribution. Copyright © 1981 by Houghton Mifflin Company. Adapted and reproduced by permission from *The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*.

INTRODUCTION

The Latin Language

The Latin language belongs to the Indo-European family of languages. The name "Indo-European" indicates the geographic area where these languages were originally spoken. The family includes most of the languages spoken in Europe, as well as those spoken as far east as ancient Persia, Afghanistan, and India. By the careful comparison of vocabulary, morphology, and syntax, scholars have shown that all these languages have descended from a common ancestor that is called either **Indo-European** (**IE**) or **Proto-Indo-European** (**PIE**), which was probably spoken some time in the fifth millennium B.C.E. (see figure 1). Over time, it is supposed, the people who spoke this original language gradually dispersed throughout Europe, Asia, and India, and the language changed differently in different places until the variety of languages belonging to this family gradually appeared.

No direct evidence—that is, written or archaeological evidence—survives either for PIE or for the people who spoke it. What is known of the language comes from the comparative study of the languages that survive. The study of these languages began at the end of the eighteenth century when Sir William Jones, a lawyer and student of eastern languages, first asserted publicly that Greek, Latin, and the language of ancient India, Sanskrit, were descended from a common source. The scientific study of the Indo-European languages commenced with the work of Franz Bopp in the early part of the nineteenth century. He compared the forms of the verb in Latin, Greek, Sanskrit, ancient Persian, and the Germanic languages, of which English is one.

The Indo-European languages have been analyzed and divided into various subgroups, or dialects, and Latin belongs to one called **Italic** because the languages of this subgroup were all spoken on the Italian peninsula. Italic, like PIE, left behind no direct evidence, but the four languages that belong to this group—**Latin**, **Faliscan**,

Oscan, and **Umbrian**[1]—are more closely related to each other than to the other Indo-European languages and thus are thought to derive from a single source.

The early speakers of the Latin language are known as *Latīnī*. By the early part of the first millennium B.C.E. they were living in many settlements in central Italy. Rome was only one of these settlements. While little is certain about Rome's early history, the traditional date for its founding is 753 B.C.E., and recent excavation gives some corroboration to this early date. Tradition also records that for the first 250 years of its existence, Rome was ruled by kings of Etruscan descent. Etruscan civilization dominated the central Italian peninsula until Rome's rise to power in the third century B.C.E. Latin borrowed many words from the Etruscan language, which is *not* related to PIE.

The first written evidence of the Latin language that has survived to our time appears in the form of inscriptions dated to the late seventh and early sixth centuries B.C.E. The language of these inscriptions is recognizably Latin, although very different from the Latin spoken and written several hundred years later at the height of Rome's power. These inscriptions come from many towns in central Italy and not only from Rome. Other evidence for the Latin of this period comes from citations of the language of an earlier time in later Latin authors.

According to Roman tradition, the Etruscans ruled as monarchs in Rome until 509 B.C.E., when the Romans overthrew their foreign rulers and established the Republic. Power passed into the hands of two annually elected magistrates called consuls, who, along with the senate, held political power in Rome. Over the next few centuries, Rome was engaged in two conflicts, one external and one internal. The Romans were almost continually at war against the other peoples of the Italian peninsula, as well as the other powers in the Mediterranean, most notably the Carthaginians, a people based in northern Africa. At the same time, the Romans struggled with their own internal conflict between the lower-class plebs and the aristocratic families who ruled them. Despite setbacks both external and internal, Rome gradually expanded its influence, through treaty and conquest, until by the end of the third century B.C.E. it controlled most of modern-day Italy and had made inroads into the eastern Mediterranean as well.

Latin literature first appears in the later part of this period of political expansion. The most prominent authors of this period whose works survive are the comic poets **Plautus** (254–184 B.C.E.) and **Terence** (185?–159), the epic poet **Ennius** (239–169), and the orator, historian, and essayist **Cato** (234–149). The language of the comedians is often thought to contain evidence of the way Latin was actually spoken at this time because the characters of the comic plays are drawn from all walks of life. Ennius, who spoke both Greek and Oscan in addition to Latin, borrowed and adapted many features of the Greek language and was one of the first writers of epic poetry in Latin. His style greatly influenced later poets, and he may be said to be the

1. Faliscan was spoken in the area of Italy called Etruria (central Italy), Oscan in Campania (southern Italy), and Umbrian in Umbria (north-central Italy). The Samnites, an ancient Italian people with whom Rome came into conflict early, spoke Oscan.

first to have established a *literary language*—a written language with increasingly strict rules of vocabulary and syntax. Together, these authors represent what may be called **early Latin**.

Over the next two centuries to the end of the first century B.C.E., Roman authors, much influenced by the Greek literature with which they had come into contact after the conquest of Greece, continued to develop a literary language in Latin. They established rules of spelling, morphology, syntax, and vocabulary, and also distinguished between correct usages for poetry and for prose. The result is usually called **classical Latin**, the language that was written and spoken[2] by the educated Roman populace during the period of the late Republic and early Empire (roughly 100 B.C.E.–100 C.E.).[3] Among the authors who wrote classical Latin are, in prose: **Caesar** (100–44 B.C.E.), **Cicero** (106–43 B.C.E.), and **Livy** (59 B.C.E.–17 C.E.); and in poetry: **Catullus** (84?–54? B.C.E.), **Vergil** (70–19 B.C.E.), and **Horace** (65–8 B.C.E.).

This book introduces the student to the language written by these authors and others of the same period. Distinctions of usage between prose and poetry will be pointed out, but for the most part, the rules of classical Latin presented here may be presumed to hold true for the literature of this period as a whole.

Pronunciation of Classical Latin

Although there must have been variations in the pronunciation of classical Latin such as are evident in any modern language, there is considerable ancient evidence for a standard in pronunciation, and rules approximating that standard are presented here.[4]

The rules for pronouncing classical Latin have been reconstructed from several types of evidence:

1. the statements of Latin grammarians and Latin authors on specific points of Latin pronunciation. The Latin grammarians were active much later than the period assigned to classical Latin, but they cite the work of earlier Latin authors and confirm features of pronunciation known from other sources.
2. the orthography, or spelling, of Latin words in inscriptions. Ancient spelling, both in Latin and in other ancient languages, was considerably less standardized than modern spelling. Variations in spelling usually indicate differences in pronunciation.
3. the representation or transliteration of Latin words in other languages and the representation or transliteration of foreign words in Latin. The transliteration of names, in particular, provides valuable information about how names were pronounced at different periods of Roman history.

2. Some surviving texts, such as the orations of Cicero, suggest that classical Latin was both written *and* spoken.

3. There are, of course, variations in usage and style from author to author and from the beginning of this period to the end. It remains common to speak of Golden Age Latin (the Latin of first-century B.C.E. writers such as Caesar, Cicero, Vergil, and Horace) and Silver Age Latin (the Latin of first-century C.E. writers such as Seneca and Quintilian).

4. For this presentation of pronunciation the authors are indebted to W. S. Allen's *Vox Latina* (Cambridge, 1965).

4. the internal grammatical and poetic structure of Latin. This includes the evidence available from the metrical structure of Latin poetry.
5. the etymology of Latin words and the development of Latin words in the Romance languages descended from Latin.

Alphabet

The Latin alphabet is almost the same as the English alphabet. It lacks a **j** and a **w**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. **k** is used in only a few words, mostly of foreign origin. **y** and **z** occur in transcriptions of names and other words borrowed from Greek.
2. **i** can be either a consonant or a vowel. In some Latin texts, **j** is used as the sign of consonantal **i**, but in this book **i** is used for both the consonant and the vowel.
3. **u** also can be either a consonant or a vowel. In the classical period (and for several centuries afterward), Romans used the letter **v** to represent both the consonant and the vowel, and **u** was simply a rounded version of this letter. Some modern editors use **u** for both consonant and vowel, while others maintain the convention of using **v** for the consonant and **u** for the vowel. This latter convention is the one followed in this book.
4. The capital letter **C**, in origin a form of the Greek letter *gamma* (Γ), originally was used by the Etruscans, who did not distinguish between the sounds of English hard **g** and hard **c**. Even after Latin developed a separate new letter to represent hard **g**, capital **C** continued to represent hard **g** in abbreviations for certain first names (e.g., **C.** = Gaius).

Consonants

The Latin consonants are generally identical in pronunciation with their English equivalents. Exceptions are:

b as **b**, but **bs** as the **ps** of ta**ps**; **bt** as the **pt** of a**pt**
c as the **c** of **c**art (hard **c**)
g as the **g** of **g**et (hard **g**)
h as the **h** of **h**at

OBSERVATION

h represents the expelling of air (aspiration).

i, as consonant, as the **y** of **y**awn

OBSERVATIONS

1. **i** is consonantal at the beginning of a word when followed by a vowel (**Iūnō**, pronounced "*Yūnō*") and in the middle of a word when it falls between vowels (**biiugis**, pronounced "*bi-yugis*"). **i** may also be consonantal in the middle of a compound (that is, a word made with a root word and a prefix (**iniustus** [< **in-** + **iustus**], pronounced "*in-yustus*").
2. An exception to this rule occurs in certain words borrowed from Greek, in which an initial **i** is pronounced as a vowel (**iambus**, pronounced "*i-ambus*").

n as **n**, but **nc** as the **nk** of ba**nk**; **ng** as the **ng** of ha**ng**
qu as the **qu** of **qu**it

OBSERVATION

Although **qu** is written with a **-u**, this **u** is the consonantal **u** (**v**). This spelling convention is also used in the combinations **su** and **gu**, which in some Latin words are pronounced as the **su** of per**su**ade and the **gu** of an**gu**ish.

r as a rolled **r**

s as the **s** of **s**erpent

v (consonantal **u**) as the **w** of **w**et

x as the **x** of a**x**e

z as the **dz** of ga**dz**ooks

OBSERVATION

z is a consonant representing the Greek *zeta* (Z), which represented the sound of two consonants in Greek (**zd** or **dz**).

ch as the **ch** of **ch**aracter

ph as the **p** of **p**eople

th as the **t** of **t**ea

OBSERVATION

ch, **ph**, and **th** represent sounds introduced into Latin from Greek. Greek distinguished between the *unaspirated* and *aspirated* consonants **c** and **ch**, **p** and **ph**, and **t** and **th**. The **-h** represents the puff of air (aspiration) that is emitted after the consonant sound is made. This distinction between unaspirated and aspirated consonants is also made in modern French and in other Romance languages, *although not in English*: the English pronunciation of **c**, **p**, and **t** always includes aspiration. In order to distinguish in Latin words **ph** and **th** from **p** and **t**, it has become conventional to pronounce **ph** as the **ph** of philo**ph**y and **th** as the **th** of **th**eater. The pronunciations given above (**p**eople, **t**ea) are to be preferred.

Vowels

Latin has two sets of five vowels:

Short	*Long*
a	**ā**
e	**ē**
i	**ī**
o	**ō**
u	**ū**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Vowels have both *quantity* and *quality*. *Quantity* refers to the *length* of a vowel. A Latin vowel marked with a **macron** or **long mark** (¯) is *long* and takes approximately twice as long to pronounce as a short vowel. Vowels not so marked are *short*. *Quality* refers to the way a vowel is pronounced. For example, **ā** and **ō** are the same in *quantity* but different in *quality*.

2. A vowel in a Latin word is either long or short *by nature*. It is important to realize that, for example, **a** and long **ā** are two different vowels, even if they are closely related.

3. Differences in vowel length often convey significant differences in meaning. For example, the word **alium** (with a short **a-**) means "another man"; the word **ālium** (with a long **ā-**) means "garlic."

A macron on a long vowel should be considered part of the spelling of a Latin word. When learning new vocabulary, memorize all macrons and always write them on long vowels.[5]

The vowels are pronounced as follows:

a as the **a** of **a**lert or the **u** of c**u**p
ā as the **a** of f**a**ther
e as the **e** of p**e**t
ē as the **a** of f**a**te
i as the **i** of f**i**t
ī as the **ee** of f**ee**t
o as the **o** of s**o**ft or the **au** of c**au**ght
ō as the **o** of h**o**pe
u as the **u** of p**u**t
ū as the **oo** of f**oo**l

OBSERVATIONS

1. **a** and **ā** are very similar in quality and differ only in quantity. Care must be taken in the pronunciation of these two vowels. All other pairs of vowels (**e** and **ē**, etc.) differ *both* in quality *and* in quantity and are easier for the English speaker to differentiate.

2. **y** is a vowel representing the Greek *upsilon* (Y). This vowel is pronounced as a French **u** (a sound in between the English **i** and **u**). It may be long or short; the long vowel is pronounced twice as long as the short.

Diphthongs

A diphthong is a *single* vocalic sound made from pronouncing *two vowels as one*. (The word *diphthong* in Greek means "double sound.") There are six diphthongs in Latin, and they are pronounced as follows:

ae as the **i** of h**i**gh
oe as the **oy** of b**oy**
ei as the **ay** of d**ay**
ui as the **wi** of t**wi**n
au as the **ow** of h**ow**
eu as a combination of **e** + **u**

OBSERVATION

There is no English sound corresponding to the Latin diphthong **eu**. As its spelling indicates, it is a combination of the short vowels **e** and **u** pronounced as one sound. If Elmer Fudd pronounced "very" (v**ew**y), the **ew** would closely resemble the Latin sound of **eu**.

5. All long vowels in this book are marked by macrons. Vowels not so marked are short.

Stress

Latin has a stress accent. This means that one syllable in a word is slightly *stressed* or emphasized when the word is pronounced. To determine which syllable is to be stressed, one must first divide a Latin word into syllables.

Syllabification

A syllable is a sound or succession of sounds uttered with a single breath-impulse. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs. There are *no* silent vowels or consonants in Latin.

When a word is divided into syllables,

1. a single consonant goes with the *following* vowel:

anima	**a/ni/ma**
aurum	**au/rum**
gladius	**gla/di/us**
vītaque	**vī/ta/que**

OBSERVATION

qu always counts as a *single* consonant. **su** and **gu** sometimes count as single consonants.

2. if there are two or more consonants in a row, the *last* consonant goes with the following syllable:

imperium	**im/pe/ri/um**
sānctus	**sānc/tus**
virumque	**vi/rum/que**
puella	**pu/el/la**

3. if, however, the combination of two consonants is a **mute** (**c**, **k**, **t**, **p**, **ch**, **th**, **ph**, **g**, **d**, **b**) or the **fricative f** followed by a **liquid** (**l**, **r**), the two consonants are kept together:[6]

patria	**pa/tri/a**
agricola	**a/gri/co/la**
ablātus	**a/blā/tus**

Accentuation

The *last* syllable in a Latin word is called the **ultima** (< **syllaba ultima**, "last syllable"). The *second* syllable from the end is called the **penult** (< **syllaba paenultima**, "almost-last syllable"). The *third* syllable from the end is called the **antepenult** (< **syllaba antepaenultima**, "before-the-almost-last syllable").

6. A consonant that requires a stoppage of breath when pronounced is called a **mute**. When a **g** is pronounced, for example, the throat is contracted and breath is stopped. Similarly, when a **p** is pronounced, the lips are closed and breath is again stopped. A **fricative** is a consonant produced by forcing breath through a constricted passage. **l** and **r** are called **liquids** because their sounds are capable of being prolonged as vowels.

ONLY THE *PENULT* OR THE *ANTEPENULT* OF A LATIN WORD MAY BE STRESSED. *If a word has only two syllables, the penult is stressed.* The following words are stressed on the penult because they have two syllables *only*. Practice pronouncing them out loud, stressing the penult.

tamen	**cōn**sul
mūtat	**o**pus

If a word has more than two syllables, its stress is determined according to a rule called the **law of the penult**:

IF THE *PENULT* IS *LONG*, IT IS *STRESSED*. IF THE *PENULT* IS *SHORT*, THE *ANTEPENULT* IS *STRESSED*.

A syllable is long if it contains:

1. a long vowel or diphthong (**long by nature**)
2. a short vowel *followed by* two or more consonants *not necessarily in the same syllable* (**long by position**)

The following words are stressed on the penult because their penults are *long by nature*. Practice pronouncing them out loud, stressing the penult.

ini**mī**cus	fi**gū**ra
mag**nā**rum	la**bō**rēs
pati**ē**mur	per**sae**pe
po**ē**ta	per**pau**ca

The following words are stressed on the penult because their penults are *long by position*. Practice pronouncing them out loud, stressing the penult.

o**cel**līs	con**tac**tum
ma**gis**ter	ex**pres**sit
intelle**gen**da	ad**ver**sōs
cōn**fer**rī	dē**por**tant

OBSERVATIONS

1. In words of more than two syllables, the number of syllables is not important for determining the syllable to be stressed. *Only* the length of the penult determines stress.
2. The lengths of the syllables *other* than the penult are not important for determining stress.

The following words are stressed on the antepenult because their penults are *short*. Practice pronouncing them out loud, stressing the antepenult.

sci**en**tia	**tem**pora
aequora	medi**o**criter
au**dā**cia	**po**pulus
omnium	**cē**peris

☛DRILLS A–C, PAGE 1, MAY NOW BE DONE.

LANGUAGE STUDY: VOCABULARY, MORPHOLOGY, AND SYNTAX

Elementary language study may be divided into three parts: vocabulary, morphology, and syntax.

Vocabulary

Vocabulary refers first to the acquisition of the English meanings of words in another language. Thus, the Latin word **puella** means "girl"; the word **superō** means "overcome, conquer." In addition to English meanings, vocabulary also includes certain other important elements that give crucial information about gender (for nouns), stems, and parts of speech. A *full vocabulary entry* (the way the word appears in the dictionary) includes all these pieces of information. ALWAYS MEMORIZE THE FULL VOCABULARY ENTRY FOR EACH NEW WORD TO BE LEARNED; THE ENGLISH MEANING ALONE WILL NEVER BE ENOUGH.

Morphology

Morphology refers to the study of the different *forms* words take in a given language. In English, for example, various forms of a verb must be learned:

1. the third-person singular present tense form of most English verbs is formed by the addition of **-s** or **-es**:

walk > walk**s** go > go**es**

2. the past tense of many English verbs is formed by the addition of **-ed**:

walk > walk**ed**

Morphology extends as well to nouns, adjectives, and certain other parts of speech that have multiple forms. *The changing of form to convey changed meaning* is called **inflection**.

Some languages are more inflected than others. Thus the English noun regularly appears in only four forms:

boy (singular)	boys (plural)
boy's (singular possessive)	boys' (plural possessive)

The Latin noun, by contrast, regularly appears in ten or more forms. Since Latin is a more highly inflected language than English, Latin morphology is more extensive than English morphology and requires complete mastery.

Syntax

The *grammatical function of a word in a sentence* is the **syntax** of that word. In the English sentence "The woman gives the cat a toy," "woman," "cat," and "toy" all have different grammatical functions that help convey the complete meaning of the sentence:

woman: subject
cat: indirect object
toy: direct object

The terms **subject**, **indirect object**, and **direct object** are examples of English syntax, and these and many other terms of English syntax are also used in Latin syntax. Accurate translation of a Latin sentence requires knowledge of the syntax of the words in that sentence. Throughout this book, new Latin syntactical terms are introduced and defined. These terms are always boldfaced at their first appearance. LEARN ALL BOLDFACED SYNTACTICAL TERMS.

CHAPTER I

Vocabulary

agricola, **agricolae** *m.* farmer
➤ **anima**, **animae** *f.* life force; soul[1]
dea, **deae** *f.* goddess
➤ **fāma**, **fāmae** *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame
fēmina, **fēminae** *f.* woman; wife
fīlia, **fīliae** *f.* daughter
īnsula, **īnsulae** *f.* island
Italia, **Italiae** *f.* Italy
nauta, **nautae** *m.* sailor
patria, **patriae** *f.* country, homeland
pecūnia, **pecūniae** *f.* money
poēta, **poētae** *m.* poet
puella, **puellae** *f.* girl
rēgīna, **rēgīnae** *f.* queen
via, **viae** *f.* way, road, street, path

ager, **agrī** *m.* field
➤ **deus**, **deī** *m.* god
➤ **dominus**, **dominī** *m.* master, lord
fīlius, **fīliī** *m.* son
gladius, **gladiī** *m.* sword
liber, **librī** *m.* book
puer, **puerī** *m.* boy
servus, **servī** *m.* slave
vir, **virī** *m.* man; husband

aurum, **aurī** *n.* gold
bellum, **bellī** *n.* war
➤ **cōnsilium**, **cōnsiliī** *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment
dōnum, **dōnī** *n.* gift
factum, **factī** *n.* deed
➤ **ferrum**, **ferrī** *n.* iron; sword
oppidum, **oppidī** *n.* town
perīculum, **perīculī** *n.* danger
verbum, **verbī** *n.* word

➤ **ā**, **ab** (prep. + abl.) (away) from
➤ **ad** (prep. + acc.) toward, to
cum (prep. + abl.) with
➤ **dē** (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning
➤ **ē**, **ex** (prep. + abl.) (out) from
➤ **et** (conj.) and;
et . . . et . . . both . . . and . . .
(adv.) even, also
➤ **in** (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against
(prep. + abl.) in, on
ō (interj.) O
➤ **-que** (enclitic conj.) and

1. An arrow next to a vocabulary entry indicates that there is additional important information about this entry in the **vocabulary notes** that follow.

Vocabulary Notes

➤ **anima**, **animae** *f.* has a physical meaning, the "breath" of the wind or of a human being. By extension, it may mean the breath of life, the force that gives an animate being life (life force). **anima** is used of the part of a human being that departs from the dead body and journeys to another life in the underworld.

➤ **fāma**, **fāmae** *f.* derives from an Indo-European root that means "speak" (cf. Gk. *phēmí;* Skt. *bhāsh,* speak). The word **fāma** indicates primarily what is spoken publicly or by the people, and its basic meaning is "talk" or "rumor." A **fāma** often told becomes a "story," and when it is passed down from generation to generation, it becomes a "tradition." A person's **fāma** is his or her "reputation" or "fame." This may be positive or negative. Finally, if the word is capitalized, **Fāma** is the goddess Rumor.

➤ **deus**, **deī** *m.* has certain common irregular forms in the plural. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING DECLENSION:

Nom./Voc.	**deus**	**dī**
Gen.	**deī**	**deōrum** or **deum**
Dat.	**deō**	**dīs**
Acc.	**deum**	**deōs**
Abl.	**deō**	**dīs**

There is no vocative singular of **deus**. Other, less common forms of the nominative/vocative plural are **deī** and **diī**. A less common form of the dative/ablative plural is **deīs**.

➤ The noun **dominus**, **dominī** *m.* is **cognate** with the Latin word for house (**domus**); that is, the two words **dominus** and **domus** are descended from the same linguistic root. The original meaning of **dominus** was "master of the house."

➤ **cōnsilium**, **cōnsiliī** *n.* may mean the act of deliberating about something (deliberation), or it may mean the "plan" or "intention" that results from deliberating. It may also mean the capacity to deliberate (judgment). Finally, it may refer to a group of people who deliberate, a "council."

➤ **ferrum**, **ferrī** *n.* means "iron." By the rhetorical device **metonymy** (change of name) it also means "sword"—that is, something made of iron.

Prepositions

A preposition (< **praepōnō**, place before) is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to another word in the sentence. The preposition and the noun or pronoun together are called a "prepositional phrase." In Latin, prepositions are most often followed by one of two cases, the accusative or the ablative. Prepositions that require a noun in the accusative case are said to "take the accusative" and are marked in the vocabulary entry by the notation *(prep. + acc.)*. Prepositions that require a noun in the ablative case are similarly said to "take the ablative" and are marked by the notation *(prep. + abl.)*.

Prepositions that take the accusative emphasize the idea of motion toward, into, around, and through. Prepositions that take the ablative indicate one of the three functions of the ablative (separation, association/instrument, location). A few prepositions can take either case, and *their meanings differ according to which case they take.*

➤ The prepositions **ā/ab**, **ē/ex**, and **dē** all require a noun in the ablative case and express separation (from). However, they have distinct differences in meaning. **ā/ab** expresses motion *away* from a place; **ē/ex** expresses motion *out* from a place; **dē** expresses motion *down* from a place. These differences in meaning are illustrated in the diagram that follows.

➤ **ab** is used before words beginning with vowels or **h-**. Both **ā** and **ab** are used before words beginning with consonants, but **ā** is more frequent.

➤ **ex** is used before words beginning with vowels or **h-**. Both **ē** and **ex** are used before words beginning with consonants, but **ex** is more frequent.

➤ **ad** takes the accusative and expresses motion to or toward a place. Compare the meaning of **ad** with that of **in** (+ acc.) in the diagram that follows.

➤ **in** may take either the accusative or the ablative case. When it takes the accusative, it means "into" or "onto." By extension of this meaning it may also mean "against," especially when the noun in the accusative case refers to a person or people. When it takes the ablative case, it expresses location and means either "in" or "on." These differences in meaning are illustrated in the diagram that follows.

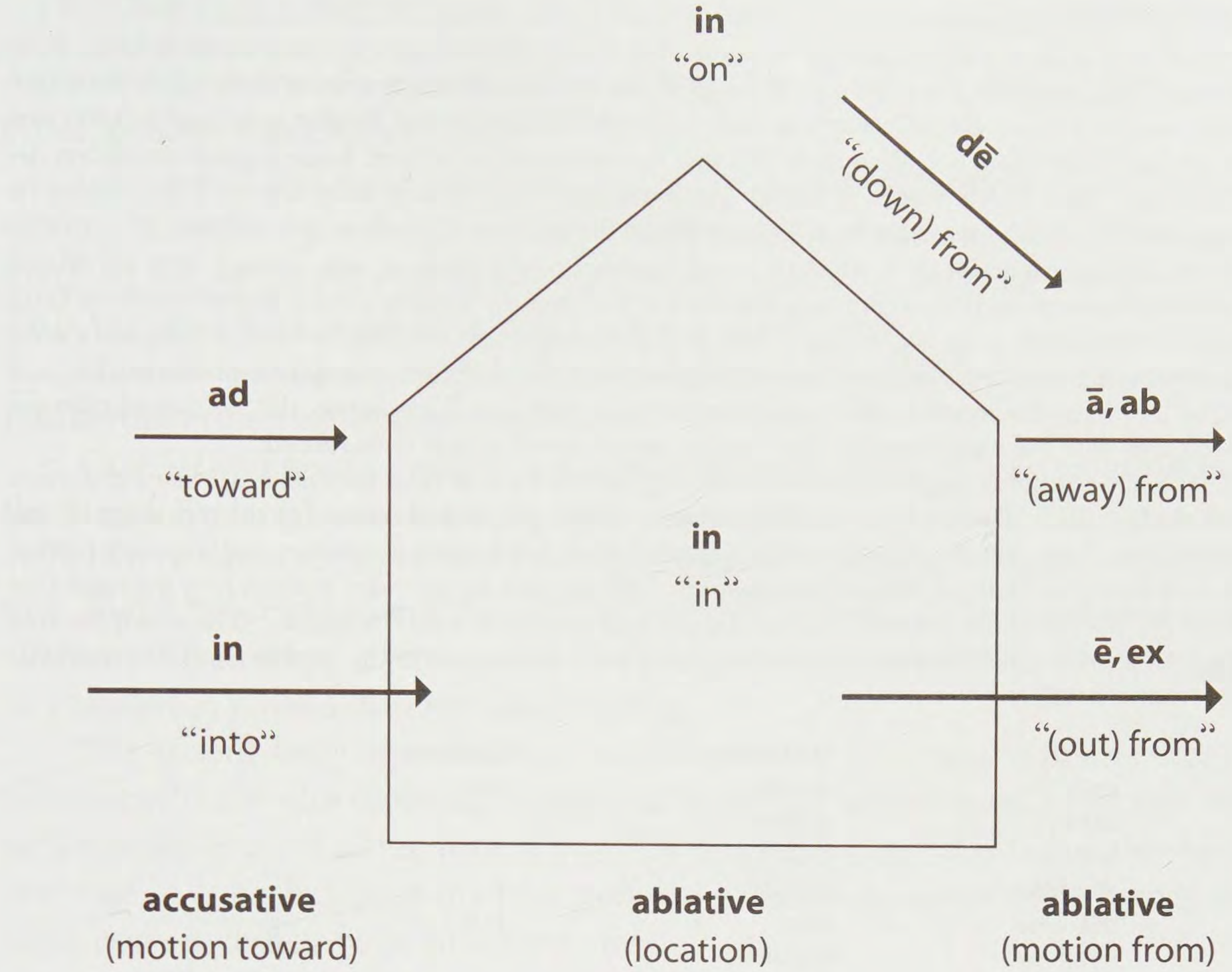


Figure 2. Prepositions

➤ **et** is a **coordinating conjunction**. This means that it connects only parallel or grammatically balanced words, phrases, or clauses. When two nouns are connected, they must be in the same case: for example, **nautārum et agricolārum** (of the sailors and of the farmers [genitive]). Parts of speech other than nouns may also be connected by **et**. For example, in the phrases "tall and snow-covered," "he sings and he dances," "in Italy and in Gaul," **et** could again be used to connect two adjectives, two verb phrases, or two prepositional phrases.

To emphasize the strict balance of elements that are to be joined in Latin, **et** is often used to mark *each element*: **et nautārum et agricolārum**, "both of the sailors and of the farmers." It is convenient to translate the first **et** with the English word "both." When such a parallel series is longer than two (**et nautārum et agricolārum et poētārum**), the first **et** is not translated (of the sailors and of the farmers and of the poets).

et may also be used as an *adverb* that usually qualifies a single word (noun, verb, adjective): **et vir**, "even the man," "the man also."

➤ **-que** is an enclitic conjunction. The word **enclitic** is derived from the Greek verb *enklīnō* (lean on), and an enclitic *leans on* or is directly attached to the word preceding it. The hyphen before **que** indicates that *it cannot stand alone as a separate word*. **-que** is attached to the second element of a closely related pair, whose elements are often opposite *or* complementary. **-que** should be translated "and" before the word to which it is attached: for example, **vir fēmina*que*** (husband *and* wife [subjects]). Like **et**, **-que** may connect grammatical elements other than nouns.

-que is used in place of the first **et** in the phrase **et . . . et . . .** by certain prose stylists (the historians Livy, Sallust, and Tacitus) and by many poets. Caesar and Cicero never use **-que . . . et . . .** The use of **-que . . . -que . . .** is found only in poetry and occasionally in the historians.

Derivatives and Cognates

Many words in English are *derived from* Latin words; that is, they descend directly from words in Latin. Such words are called **derivatives**. For example, the English word "counsel" is a derivative of the Latin word **cōnsilium**. In many instances, the differences in sound and spelling between an English word and its Latin parent are not significant enough to obscure the fact that the two words are related. Some English derivatives descend from the roots of Latin words. A **root** is the basic element or ultimate stem of a word that carries its meaning and from which many other words are made by the addition of prefixes and suffixes.

When an English and a Latin word are called **cognates** (< **cognātus, -a, -um**, related), they are related because they both descend from a common PIE word or root, but the English word is derived not from Latin but from another ancient language such as Greek. It is often impossible to tell that a word in Latin and a word in English are cognates because they have undergone radically different changes in pronunciation and spelling as they have developed in their respective language families. For example, the Latin word **quīnque** (five) is cognate with the English word "five," but the words do not appear to be related.

In each chapter some English derivatives and cognates of the new Latin vocabulary are listed at the end of the vocabulary notes. These lists are intended in part to help the student remember the meanings of new vocabulary items. They will also help the student expand his or her English vocabulary and stimulate further interest in learning about the relations among words. The cognates are provided to show how the same root or word in PIE has given rise to a wide variety of seemingly unrelated words in English. Where only the root of an English word is related to the corresponding Latin word, the portion of the English word that descends from that root is boldfaced.[2]

	Derivatives	Cognates
ager	**agr**arian	acre
anima	**anim**ate	
bellum	**belli**cose	
cōnsilium	counsel	
dea, deus	**dei**ty	**Ju**ly
dominus	**domin**ate	
factum	fact	**the**sis
fāma	**fam**ous	pro**phet**; **ban**al
fīlia, fīlius	af**fili**ate	
īnsula	**insul**ate; **isol**ate	
liber	**libr**ary	
nauta	**naut**ical	astro**naut**; **naus**ea
pecūnia	**pecuni**ary	fee
perīculum	peril	fear; **pir**ate
puella, puer	**puer**ile	**fo**al; encyclo**ped**ia
rēgīna	cor**rect**, **reg**ent	maha**raj**ah; **righ**t; rich
verbum	verb	word; **ir**ony
via	triv**ial**, de**vi**ate	way; weigh
vir	**vir**ile, **vir**tue	**were**wolf; **wor**ld

2. For further information on these and other derivatives and cognates, consult the Indo-European Roots Appendix of the *American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language*, 4th ed. (Houghton-Mifflin, 2006).

§1. The Latin Noun and Its Properties: Gender, Number, Case

A noun is the name of a person, place, or thing.[3] Every noun in Latin has three properties: **gender**, **number**, and **case**.

GENDER—Latin nouns have the genders **masculine** or **feminine**. Nouns that are neither masculine nor feminine are called **neuter** (< **neuter, neutra, neutrum**, neither). In the vocabulary entry for each noun, gender is indicated by *m.*, *f.*, or *n.* THIS INFORMATION MUST BE MEMORIZED FOR EACH NOUN.

NUMBER—Latin nouns appear in the **singular** when referring to one and in the **plural** when referring to more than one.

CASE—Latin nouns occur in a variety of different forms in both the singular and the plural. Each different form or **case** is indicated by a special ending attached to a stem that remains constant. Each ending indicates the syntax, the grammatical function, that a noun has in a sentence. For example, when a Latin noun serves as the subject of a sentence, it has one case ending, but when it serves as the direct object in a sentence, it has a different case ending.

The parent language of Latin, Indo-European, had eight different cases for nouns, each case with its own grammatical functions. Latin has only six cases, which nevertheless express all the functions of the original eight.[4] This is possible because one case in Latin has been made to perform multiple functions. The names of the Latin cases and their basic functions are:

Nominative Case

—used for the *subject* of a sentence
—used for the *predicate nominative*

The two essential elements of every sentence are the *subject* and the *predicate*. The **subject** is *that which is spoken about*, and the **predicate** is *all that is said about the subject*. For example:

John sneezed.
The waiter cleared the dishes from the table.

In these sentences, "John" and "the waiter" are subjects; "sneezed" and "cleared the dishes from the table" are predicates. Both "John" and "the waiter" would be in the nominative case in Latin, and the syntax of each would be **Nominative, Subject**.

3. There are, in fact, several kinds of nouns:
common nouns: man, book, city, dumpling
proper nouns: Mary, Italy, New York
collective nouns: crowd, tribe, senate, army
abstract nouns: love, beauty, slavery, citizenship
verbal nouns: running (gerund), to run (infinitive)

4. A few Latin nouns have a seventh case, the locative, used to express location in a place.

Certain verbs such as "be," "become," and "seem" are called **copulative** or **linking** verbs. A linking verb is *never* followed by a direct object but rather by *an element that is equivalent to the subject,* and the syntax of this element is **Predicate Nominative**. For example:

John is a waiter.
The frog became a prince.

In these sentences, "John" and "the frog" are subjects, while "a waiter" and "a prince" are Predicate Nominatives. Both the subjects and the Predicate Nominatives would be in the nominative case in Latin.

Genitive Case

—used to *qualify* or *limit* another noun in a variety of ways
—usually corresponds to a translation using the English preposition "of"

In the phrases "the house of friends," "a fear of snakes," and "a jar of pennies," the words "of friends," "of snakes," and "of pennies" *qualify* or *limit* in a variety of ways the nouns on which they depend. "Of friends," "of snakes," and "of pennies" would be expressed in Latin by "friends," "snakes," and "pennies" in the genitive case *with no preposition;* that is, the genitive case ending *contains the idea of* "of" *within it.*

One idea commonly expressed by the genitive case is that of ownership or possession: "the book of the girl" (= the book belonging to the girl). The phrase "of the girl" would be expressed in Latin by the word "girl" in the genitive case, and the syntax of that word would be **Genitive of Possession.**

Dative Case

—used to express *the person or thing interested in* or *affected by* the action of a verb
—usually corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions "(with reference) to" or "for"

In the sentence "To the sailor the danger of the sea is real," "to the sailor" expresses the person *with reference to whom* "the danger of the sea is real." The phrase "to the sailor" would be expressed in Latin by the word "sailor" in the dative case *with no preposition;* that is, the dative case ending *contains the notion of* "(with reference) to" *within it.* The syntax of the word "sailor" in Latin in the dative case would be **Dative of Reference**.

In the sentence "The girl gives a toy to the cat" or "The girl gives the cat a toy," "a toy" expresses the *direct* object of the verb, while "to the cat" or "cat" expresses the *indirect* object, the person or thing *indirectly* interested in or affected by the action of the verb. Again, "to the cat" or "cat" would be expressed in Latin in the dative case *with no preposition,* and the syntax of that word would be **Dative of Indirect Object**. This use of the dative case appears most often with verbs of *giving, showing,* and *telling.*

Accusative Case

—used for the *direct object* of a verb
—used following certain prepositions

In the sentence "The poet writes poems," "poems" is the *direct object* of the verb "writes" because the action of the verb "writes" is directly exerted on the object "poems." The word "poems" would be expressed in Latin in the accusative case, and the syntax of that word would be **Accusative, Direct Object**.

In addition to being used to express the direct object of a verb, the accusative case follows prepositions that express *motion toward, into, around,* and *through*. For example, to express the phrase "toward the field" in Latin, the preposition **ad** (toward) is followed by the word "field" in Latin in the accusative case.

Ablative Case

—used to express *separation* (original function of the ablative case); in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English preposition "from"
—also expresses *association* or *instrument*; in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions "with" or "by"
—also expresses *location* (in space or time); in this usage, corresponds to a translation using the English prepositions "in," "on," or "at"

Separation

In the sentence "He came from Italy," the phrase "from Italy" expresses motion from a place: "he" is *separated from* "Italy." In the sentence "The king freed the people from slavery," "the people" are *separated from* "slavery." These two examples suggest the range of meaning expressed by the ablative's separative function. The idea of going *from* a *place* (out from/away from/down from) usually requires a preposition and a noun in the ablative case. Thus, in the example above, "from Italy" would be expressed in Latin by the preposition **ab** ([away] from) and "Italy" in the ablative case. The idea of "from slavery" in the second example would be expressed by the word "slavery" in the ablative case and might be accompanied by a preposition.

Association/Instrument

In the sentence "The woman came to the party with a poet," the phrase "with a poet" indicates that the woman was *accompanied by* a poet. The phrase "with a poet" would be expressed in Latin by the preposition **cum** (with) and "poet" in the ablative case; the syntax of that word would be **Ablative of Accompaniment**. NOTE THAT THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT *REQUIRES* THE PREPOSITION **CUM**.

In the sentence "The farmer is fighting with a sword," the phrase "with a sword" indicates what the farmer *uses* to fight, or the *instrument by means of which* he is fighting. The phrase "with a sword" would be expressed in Latin by the word "sword" in the ablative case *with no preposition;* the syntax of that word would be **Ablative of Means** (or **Ablative of Instrument**). NOTE THAT *NO* PREPOSITION IS USED WITH THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS.

Location

In the sentences "Farmers work in fields" and "The queen lives on an island," the phrases "in fields" and "on an island" express ideas of *location* or *place where*. The phrases "in fields" and "on an island" would be expressed in Latin by the preposition **in** (in, on) and the words "fields" and "island" in the ablative case. NOTE THAT SUCH AN ABLATIVE *REQUIRES* THE PREPOSITION **IN**.

Vocative Case

—used for *addressing* someone *directly*

In the sentence "Tell me, father, why you have come," the word "father" expresses the person being directly addressed by the speaker of the sentence. The word "father" would be expressed in Latin in the vocative case. In Latin, a word in the vocative case is sometimes preceded by the interjection **ō** (O).

Summary of Cases and Their Basic Functions

Case Name	Used to Express
Nominative	1. subject 2. predicate nominative
Genitive	"of"
Dative	"to," "for"
Accusative	1. direct object 2. with certain prepositions
Ablative	1. "from" 2. "with," "by (means of)" 3. "in," "on"
Vocative	direct address

☛ DRILL 1, PAGE 7, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§2. The Five Declensions

Latin nouns are grouped in five different families called **declensions**. Each noun belongs to *one declension only,* and each declension has its own distinctive set of case endings. The five groups of nouns are most reliably distinguished and identified by the *genitive singular* ending of each declension:

	Genitive Singular Ending
1st declension	**-ae**
2nd declension	**-ī**
3rd declension	**-is**
4th declension	**-ūs**
5th declension	**-eī/-ēī**

A full vocabulary entry for a Latin noun contains, in the following order, the *nominative singular*, the *genitive singular*, a notation of gender, and the English meaning(s). For example:

puella, **puellae** *f.* girl
servus, **servī** *m.* slave
vir, **virī** *m.* man; husband
perīculum, **perīculī** *n.* danger

OBSERVATIONS

1. The **-ae** ending on the genitive singular of **puella** indicates that this noun belongs to the first declension.

2. The **-ī** endings on the genitive singular forms of **servus**, **vir**, and **perīculum** indicate that these nouns all belong to the second declension. Even though the endings of their nominative singular forms differ, the endings of the genitive singular forms do not.

Finding the Stem

The genitive singular is given in the vocabulary for purposes of identifying the declension to which each noun belongs, but the genitive singular is also the form from which a **stem** is derived for use in making all other forms of the noun.

To find the stem of *any* noun, *remove the ending from the genitive singular* (the second element given in the vocabulary). What remains is the stem.

patria, ***patri*/ae** *f.* country	stem = **patri-**
puella, ***puell*/ae** *f.* girl	stem = **puell-**
liber, ***libr*/ī** *m.* book	stem = **libr-**
servus, ***serv*/ī** *m.* slave	stem = **serv-**
vir, ***vir*/ī** *m.* man; husband	stem = **vir-**

All the forms of a noun are created by taking the stem of that noun and adding the case endings that belong to its particular declension. When one generates a complete set of forms for a noun in Latin, one is said to **decline** the noun, and the resulting set of forms is called a **declension** of the noun.[5]

§3. Noun Morphology: First Declension

Gender Note: Most nouns of the first declension are feminine, some are masculine. There are no neuter first-declension nouns.

Case Endings of the First Declension

	Singular	*Plural*
Nominative/Vocative	**-a**	**-ae**
Genitive	**-ae**	**-ārum**
Dative	**-ae**	**-īs**
Accusative	**-am**	**-ās**
Ablative	**-ā**	**-īs**

5. There are thus two meanings for the word "declension": 1. the name for each of the five families of nouns (first declension, second declension, etc.); 2. a complete set of forms for an individual noun.

MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a noun of the first declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

puella, **puellae** *f.* girl
stem = **puell-**

		Singular
Nom./Voc.	puella	the girl (subject or predicate nominative)
		girl (direct address)
Gen.	puell**ae**	of the girl
Dat.	puell**ae**	to the girl/for the girl
Acc.	puell**am**	the girl (direct object)
Abl.	puell**ā**	from the girl; by/with the girl; in the girl
		Plural
Nom./Voc.	puell**ae**	the girls (subj. or pred. nom.)
		girls (d.a.)
Gen.	puell**ārum**	of the girls
Dat.	puell**īs**	to the girls/for the girls
Acc.	puell**ās**	the girls (d.o.)
Abl.	puell**īs**	from the girls; by/with the girls; in the girls

OBSERVATIONS

1. The abbreviations for the case names used in the model declension above are standard and appear frequently in this book, as do the abbreviations *subj.* (subject), *pred. nom.* (predicate nominative), *d.a.* (direct address), and *d.o.* (direct object).

2. In the first declension, as in most other declensions, the nominative and vocative endings in both singular and plural are identical and are therefore listed together.

3. Certain endings of the first declension are used to mark more than one case: **-ae** = genitive singular, dative singular, and nominative/vocative plural; **-īs** = dative plural and ablative plural. ALWAYS CONSIDER ALL POSSIBILITIES WHEN IDENTIFYING THE FORM OF A NOUN. Context usually makes clear which form occurs in a particular sentence.

4. Two first-declension words in the vocabulary of this chapter, **dea**, **deae** *f.*, "goddess," and **fīlia**, **fīliae** *f.*, "daughter," occasionally have irregular dative and ablative plural forms: **deābus** and **fīliābus**, but these forms do not appear in this textbook.

5. The Latin language has *no definite article* (the) and *no indefinite article* (a, an). English definite or indefinite articles may be freely added in translations of Latin nouns as context demands. Thus, the noun translated above as "the girl," "of the girl," etc., could also be translated "a girl," "of a girl," etc. Sometimes it is appropriate to use no article: "money" or "of books." Although there are words in Latin for "his," "her," and "their," possessive adjectives such as these are often omitted in Latin. They may be freely added in English translations.

☛ DRILL 2–3, PAGE 9, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§4. Noun Morphology: Second Declension

Gender Note: Most nouns of the second declension are masculine, some are feminine, and many are neuter with endings slightly different from masculine and feminine nouns.

Case Endings of the Second Declension: Masculine/Feminine

	Singular	*Plural*
Nominative	**-us/—**[6]	**-ī**
Genitive	**-ī**	**-ōrum**
Dative	**-ō**	**-īs**
Accusative	**-um**	**-ōs**
Ablative	**-ō**	**-īs**
Vocative	**-e**	**-ī**

MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *masculine* or *feminine* noun of the second declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

servus, servī *m.* slave
stem = **serv-**

		Singular
Nom.	serv**us**	a slave (subj. or pred. nom.)
Gen.	serv**ī**	of a slave
Dat.	serv**ō**	to a slave/for a slave
Acc.	serv**um**	a slave (d.o.)
Abl.	serv**ō**	from a slave; by/with a slave; in a slave
Voc.	serv**e**	slave (d.a.)
		Plural
Nom./Voc.	serv**ī**	slaves (subj. or pred. nom.) slaves (d.a.)
Gen.	serv**ōrum**	of slaves
Dat.	serv**īs**	to slaves/for slaves
Acc.	serv**ōs**	slaves (d.o.)
Abl.	serv**īs**	from slaves; by/with slaves; in slaves

6. Most masculine and feminine nouns of the second declension use **-us** as the nominative singular ending. As is clear from the vocabulary entries, however, a number of nouns lack any nominative singular ending and instead use a *form of the stem of the noun* as the nominative singular form. Thus, **servus, servī** *m.* slave, but **puer, puerī** *m.* boy and **liber, librī** *m.* book.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine nouns of the second declension are used to mark more than one case: **-ī** = genitive singular and nominative/vocative plural; **-ō** = dative singular and ablative singular; **-īs** = dative plural and ablative plural. ALWAYS CONSIDER ALL POSSIBILITIES WHEN IDENTIFYING THE FORM OF A NOUN. Context usually makes clear which form appears in a particular sentence.

2. Many endings of the second declension are either similar to or identical with corresponding endings of the first declension. Compare accusative singular **-um** to **-am**; genitive plural **-ōrum** to **-ārum**; dative and ablative plural **-īs** to **-īs**; and accusative plural **-ōs** to **-ās**.

3. Second-declension nouns whose stems end in **-i** have two possible forms for the genitive singular, one a contraction of the other. For example:

gladius, **gladiī** *or* **gladī** *m.* sword

In the second form, the short **-i** of the stem has contracted with the **-ī** of the ending. This shortened form of the genitive singular is not given in the vocabulary entry for nouns whose stems end in **-i**, but it appears in drills, sentences, and readings.

4. The second declension is the only declension in which the vocative differs from the nominative, and it does so *only in the singular* for masculine/feminine nouns. For nouns whose nominative singular ending is **-us**, the vocative singular ending is **-e**. For the noun **fīlius** and proper names of the second declension whose nominative singular ending is **-ius**, the vocative singular ending is **-ī**. For other masculine and feminine nouns of this declension, the vocative singular is identical with the nominative singular. For example:

servus	vocative singular = **serve**
fīlius	vocative singular = **fīlī**
puer	vocative singular = **puer**

5. Every vocative plural is identical with the nominative plural in all declensions.

6. The noun **deus**, **deī** *m.* has certain irregular forms in the plural: **dī** (nom./voc. pl.), **deum** (gen. pl.), and **dīs** (dat./abl. pl.). For the full declension of this noun see the vocabulary note on p. 12.

Case Endings of the Second Declension: Neuter

	Singular	*Plural*
Nominative/Vocative	**-um**	**-a**
Genitive	**-ī**	**-ōrum**
Dative	**-ō**	**-īs**
Accusative	**-um**	**-a**
Ablative	**-ō**	**-īs**

MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a *neuter* noun of the second declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

perīculum, **perīculī** *n.* danger
stem = **perīcul-**

		Singular
Nom./Voc.	perīcul**um**	danger (subj. or pred. nom.) danger (d.a.)
Gen.	perīcul**ī**	of danger
Dat.	perīcul**ō**	to danger/for danger
Acc.	perīcul**um**	danger (d.o.)
Abl.	perīcul**ō**	from danger; by/with danger; in danger
		Plural
Nom./Voc.	perīcul**a**	dangers (subj. or pred. nom.) dangers (d.a.)
Gen.	perīcul**ōrum**	of dangers
Dat.	perīcul**īs**	to dangers/for dangers
Acc.	perīcul**a**	dangers (d.o.)
Abl.	perīcul**īs**	from dangers; by/with dangers; in dangers

OBSERVATIONS

1. Most of the endings for neuter nouns of the second declension are identical with the endings for masculine/feminine second-declension nouns. Neuter nouns differ only in having **-um** in the nominative and vocative singular and **-a** in the nominative, vocative, and accusative plural. ALL NEUTER WORDS IN LATIN HAVE IDENTICAL NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE FORMS IN BOTH THE SINGULAR AND THE PLURAL. Context usually makes clear which form occurs in a particular sentence.

2. As is true for masculine/feminine second-declension nouns, neuter nouns whose stems end in **-i** have two possible forms for the genitive singular, one a contraction of the other. For example:

cōnsilium, **cōnsiliī** *or* **cōnsilī** *n.* plan, advice; judgment

☛ DRILL 4, PAGE 15, MAY NOW BE DONE.

CHAPTER II

Vocabulary

cūra, cūrae *f.* care, concern; anxiety
➤ **īra, īrae** *f.* anger, wrath
poena, poenae *f.* punishment, penalty
sapientia, sapientiae *f.* wisdom
vīta, vītae *f.* life

➤ **animus, animī** *m.* (rational) soul, mind; spirit; *pl.*, strong feelings
➤ **arma, armōrum** *n. pl.* arms, weapons
studium, studiī *n.* zeal, enthusiasm; pursuit, study
vēlum, vēlī *n.* sail

➤ **ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum** (1-intr.) walk
➤ **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus** (1-tr.) love
➤ **cōgitō** (1-tr.) think; ponder
➤ **dō, dare, dedī, datus** give, grant
  ➤ **poenās dare** (idiom) to pay the penalty
  ➤ **vēla dare** (idiom) to set sail
➤ **dōnō** (1-tr.) give; present, reward
errō (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake
labōrō (1-intr.) work; suffer, be distressed
➤ **mōnstrō** (1-tr.) show, point out
➤ **optō** (1-tr.) desire
➤ **vocō** (1-tr.) call; summon; name

➤ **dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus** owe; ought
habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus have, hold; consider
➤ **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus** order
➤ **moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus** set in motion, stir (up), move
➤ **respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus** answer, respond
➤ **timeō, timēre, timuī,** — fear, be afraid (of)
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see

➤ **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** be; exist
➤ **possum, posse, potuī,** — be able, can

cūr (interrog. adv.) why
➤ **enim** (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed; for
etenim (conj.) and indeed; for in fact
➤ **nam** (conj.) for
namque (conj.) for in fact
➤ **-ne** (interrog. enclitic particle) *added to the first word of a question*
➤ **neque** or **nec** (conj.-adv.) and not
  neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . neither . . . nor . . .
➤ **nōn** (adv.) not
sed (conj.) but

Vocabulary Notes

➤ When **īra** appears in the plural, it may be translated "(feelings of) anger."

➤ **animus, animī** *m.* is the "(rational) soul" or "mind" of a human being. It is distinct from **anima**, which is the physical soul, that part of a human that would descend to the underworld. By comparison, Greek and English have one word, *psychē* and "soul" respectively, that is used for both. **animus** may also mean "heart" as the source of emotion and passion, or it may indicate a specific passion. In the plural, it often means "spirits" in the sense of "strong feelings," and in certain contexts "anger," "courage," or "pride."

➤ The second-declension noun **arma, armōrum** *n. pl.* never appears in the singular in Latin. The vocabulary entry is given in the plural but is analogous in other respects to any other vocabulary entry for a noun: it gives the nominative, the genitive, the gender, and the meaning(s) of the word. All such entries also indicate that the word listed is plural.

Principal Parts

As is explained in §7, the fourth principal part of a verb is usually the perfect passive participle of that verb. In this book, two different endings of the perfect passive participle— **-us** and **-um**—are used in the vocabulary lists beginning each chapter. Verbs that are *transitive*—that express an action that is directly exerted on a person or thing—have a fourth principal part ending in **-us**. Verbs that are *intransitive*—that express an action that is not directly exerted on a person or thing—have a fourth principal part ending in **-um**. For more on the distinction between transitive and intransitive verbs, see §11.

Certain intransitive verbs have no perfect passive participle. For some intransitive verbs a future active participle, whose ending is **-ūrus**, is supplied as the fourth principal part. This is true, for example, for the irregular intransitive verb **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**. The fourth principal part, **futūrus**, is a future active participle.

Certain verbs, both transitive and intransitive, have no fourth principal part at all.[1] When memorizing and reciting aloud such verbs, say "blank" for the missing fourth principal part.

➤ Most verbs of the first conjugation have principal parts that follow the pattern of **ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum** (an intransitive verb) or **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātus** (a transitive verb). Verbs whose second, third, and fourth principal parts end in **-āre, -āvī, -ātus** are identified in the vocabulary list by the notation (1-tr.) following the first principal part. Verbs whose second, third, and fourth principal parts end in **-āre, -āvī, -ātum** are identified in the vocabulary list by the notation (1-intr.). No other principal parts are listed for these verbs. However, when learning verbs of this conjugation, ALWAYS WRITE OUT AND/OR SAY ALL FOUR PRINCIPAL PARTS. For example, **optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus**, not **optō** (1-tr.).

➤ **cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātus** takes two grammatical constructions. It takes a direct object, or it may also be used with the preposition **dē**.

Animam cōgitat.	She is pondering the soul.
Dē animā cōgitat.	She is thinking about the soul.

➤ **dō, dare, dedī, datus** is an irregular first-conjugation verb because its principal parts do not follow the pattern of other first-conjugation verbs, and its present stem, **da-**, contains a *short* **-a-**. However, two forms have **-ā-**: the second person singular present active indicative (**dās**) and the second person singular present active imperative (**dā**). (For the indicative see §9; for the imperative see §32.) MEMORIZE THESE FORMS. The third principal part, **dedī**, is called **reduplicated** because the first consonant of the root, **d-**, has been doubled with an intervening vowel. Like all verbs of *giving, showing,* and *telling*, **dō** regularly takes both a direct object and an indirect object.

➤ Two common idioms using **dō** are **poenās dare**, "to pay the penalty," and **vēla dare**, "to set sail." An **idiom** is an expression whose meaning cannot be rendered by a literal translation. Idioms are included in the vocabulary lists with their verbs in the infinitive. MEMORIZE EACH IDIOM AS A SEPARATE VOCABULARY ENTRY.

Nautae poenās dabunt.	The sailors will pay the penalty.
Nautae vēla nōn dant.	The sailors are not setting sail.

1. A missing fourth principal part indicates that no forms derived from this part occur in the Latin that has survived.

➤ **dōnō, dōnāre, dōnāvī, dōnātus** is a denominative verb. The term **denominative** is used of verbs that are derived from nouns or adjectives. The verb **dōnō** is derived from the noun **dōnum, dōnī** *n*. Two constructions regularly occur with this verb.

Poētae pecūniam dōnāmus.	We are giving the poet money. We are giving money to the poet.
Poētam pecūniā dōnāmus.	We are rewarding the poet with (by means of) money.

In the first sentence **dōnō** functions as an ordinary verb of *giving, showing,* and *telling* and takes a direct object and an indirect object. In this usage **dōnō** is a synonym of **dō**. In the second sentence **dōnō** means "present" or "reward" with a *person* as an Accusative, Direct Object and an Ablative of Means.

➤ **mōnstrō, mōnstrāre, mōnstrāvī, mōnstrātus** is a verb of *giving, showing,* and *telling* and thus takes both a direct object and an indirect object.

➤ **optō, optāre, optāvī, optātus** may take a direct object or an Object Infinitive (§13).

Cum agricolīs labōrāre optat.	He desires to work with the farmers.

➤ **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus** means "call" both in the sense of "summon" and in the sense of "name." In the latter sense, it takes a direct object and another noun called a **Predicate Accusative**.

Patriam īnsulam vocō.	I call the island (d.o.) (my) homeland (Predicate Accusative).

➤ The verb **dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus** has two distinct meanings. When it takes a direct object, it is translated "owe." When it is followed by a Complementary Infinitive, it is translated "ought" (§12).

Poētae pecūniam dēbeō.	I owe money to the poet.
Labōrāre dēbeō.	I ought to work.

To translate the past and future tenses of **dēbeō** with a Complementary Infinitive, use the English verb "have."

Labōrāre dēbēbam.	I had (was having) to work.
Labōrāre dēbēbō.	I shall have to work.

➤ **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus** frequently takes an Object Infinitive (§13), most often with a subject of the infinitive in the accusative case (§107). This accusative is translated as if it were a direct object of the form of **iubeō**.

Rēgīna nautam labōrāre iubet.	The queen orders the sailor to work.

➤ **moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus** means "set (something or someone) in motion," either physically or emotionally.

➤ **respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus** takes a Dative of Indirect Object to express the person whom one answers (to whom one responds).

Respondēbis fēminae?	Will you answer the woman? Will you respond to the woman?

➤ **timeō, timēre, timuī,**— lacks a fourth principal part and thus lacks the tenses formed from this principal part. MEMORIZE THE BLANK IN PLACE OF A FOURTH PRINCIPAL PART. **timeō** is transitive but may be used absolutely (§11). It may be accompanied by a Dative of Reference or by the preposition **dē** (as well as by other prepositions).

Agricola timet.	The farmer is afraid.
Agricola rēgīnam timet.	The farmer fears the queen.
Agricola rēgīnae timet.	The farmer fears for the queen.
Agricola dē fīliō timet.	The farmer is afraid about (his) son.

➤ The principal parts of the irregular verb **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** derive from two different PIE roots, ***Ees-**, "be; exist" (the root for the first two principal parts) and ***bheu-**, "be, exist, grow" (for the third and fourth

principal parts).[2] The fourth principal part, **futūrus** (about to be), is the future active participle. **sum** has two different uses but is always intransitive. For the conjugation and uses of **sum** see §10.

➤ **possum, posse, potuī,** — is an intransitive verb that is regularly followed by a Complementary Infinitive (§12). It lacks a fourth principal part and thus lacks the tenses formed from this principal part. MEMORIZE THE BLANK IN PLACE OF A FOURTH PRINCIPAL PART. For the conjugation of **possum** see §10.

➤ **enim** is called a **postpositive** conjunction (< **postpōnō**, put after) because it is regularly *placed after* the first word (or second word) in a sentence. **enim** is used to join two sentences or clauses when the second sentence or clause explains (for) or confirms (in fact, indeed) a preceding one.

Rēgīna ad oppidum ambulat. Dōna *enim* dīs dare optat. (**enim** with explanation)
The queen is walking to the town. *For* she desires to give gifts to the gods.
Agricola vēla dare optat. Nihil *enim* timet. (**enim** with confirmation)
The farmer desires to set sail. *Indeed,* he is afraid of nothing.

enim is never placed first in a Latin sentence, but it is nearly always the first word in an English translation.

➤ **nam** is another conjunction used to join two sentences or clauses when the second sentence or clause explains a preceding one. Unlike **enim**, **nam** is not postpositive.

Rēgīna ad oppidum ambulat. *Nam* dōna dīs dare optat.
The queen is walking to the town. *For* she desires to give gifts to the gods.

➤ **-ne** is an enclitic[3] added to the first word of a sentence to indicate that it is a question. Its use in questions is *optional,* and it has no English translation. The word to which it is added is often a verb, since verbs often occur first in questions, but **-ne** may be added to other words as well.

Optāsne rēgīnam īnsulae vidēre?	Do you desire to see the queen of the island?
Rēgīnamne īnsulae vidēre optās?	Do you desire to see the queen of the island?

➤ **neque** or **nec** is a conjunction (and) *and* an adverb (not) at the same time.

Vir pugnat nec dē perīculō cōgitat.	The man fights and does not think about danger.

neque . . . neque . . . , **nec . . . nec . . .** , or a mixture of the two mark balanced pairs and is translated "neither . . . nor . . . "

Nec fēminae nec virō dōnum dabō.	Neither to the woman nor to the man shall I give a gift.

When a parallel series is longer than two (**nec fēminae nec virō nec rēgīnae**), translate the first **nec** as "not" and say "and not" for the others (not to the woman and not to the man and not to the queen).

➤ **nōn** (adv.) almost always precedes the word it emphasizes.

Agricola dōna nōn optat.	The farmer does not desire gifts.
Agricola agrum, nōn pecūniam, optat.	The farmer desires a field, not money.

	Derivatives	Cognates
ambulō	somn**ambul**ist	
cūra	**cur**ious	
dō	**do**native; par**don**	anti**dot**e; **dos**e
habeō	**hab**it; **able**	give; **gav**el
īra	**ir**ate	**ir**on; **hi**erarchy
moveō	**mo**bile; e**mo**tion	
possum	**poss**ible; **pot**ent	des**pot**; **Pad**ishah
sapientia	in**sip**id; **sav**ant; **sav**vy	
sum, esse	inter**est**; ab**sent**; essence	am; is; yes; sin
fuī, futūrus	future	be; **bu**ild; **ph**ysics
videō	**vis**ion; **vis**age; **voy**eur	guide; wise; **id**ol
vīta	**vit**al	**bi**o-; **qui**ck; hy**gie**ne; **whis**key
vocō	**voc**al; in**vok**e; **vow**el	**ep**ic

2. An asterisk next to a form indicates that the form is hypothetical.

3. See the vocabulary note on **-que** (p. 13).

§5. The Finite Latin Verb and Its Properties: Person, Number, Tense, Voice, Mood

A verb is the part of speech that expresses action, existence, or occurrence. It is used to declare or assert something about the subject.[4] Every verb form in Latin may have five properties: **person**, **number**, **tense**, **voice**, and **mood**. A *finite* verb form is *defined* or limited by *all five* of these properties.

PERSON—Latin verbs appear in the **first person** when the subject of the verb is the speaker or speakers (I, we), in the **second person** when the subject is the person addressed (you, you [pl.]), and in the **third person** when the subject is the person or thing spoken about (he, she, it, they, or any specific noun that could replace these pronouns: e.g., the boy, Cicero, dangers).[5]

NUMBER—Latin verbs appear in the **singular** when the subject is one and in the **plural** when the subject is more than one.[5]

TENSE—The tense of a Latin verb indicates both **time** and **aspect**:

1. time: present, past, or future
2. aspect: simple, progressive, repeated, or completed

Aspect refers to the way the action of a verb is looked at and in particular indicates the relation of the action to the passage of time.
A verb that has *simple aspect* represents an action as *simply* occurring.

Mom, I *see* a baby duck! (present time)
That boy *ate* two dinners. (past time)
The candidate *will lose* the election tomorrow. (future time)

A verb that has *progressive aspect* represents an action as being *in progress*.

The girl *is eating* an ice-cream cone. (present time)
The boy *was walking* to school when he saw a baby duck. (past time)
She*'ll be comin'* 'round the mountain when she comes. (future time)

A verb that has *repeated aspect* represents an action as *repeated* or habitual.

She *walks* to school every day. (present time)
The boy *used to play soccer*. (past time)
I *shall sit* here on and off for days and days. (future time)

A verb that has *completed aspect* represents an action as already *completed*.

I *have* now *finished* my lunch. (present time)
When they returned home, the sailors *had sailed* a thousand miles. (past time)
She *will have cleaned up* her room by the time Dad gets home. (future time)

4. There are, in fact, several kinds of verbs:
   —**transitive** verbs, which carry the action from a subject to a direct object: the cat *catches* the mouse
   —**intransitive** verbs, which do *not* carry the action from a subject to a direct object: the cat *sleeps*
   —**linking** (copulative) verbs, which equate the subject with a noun or adjective in the predicate: the cat *is* a thief; the cat *is* black.
5. A verb agrees with its subject in *person* and *number*. This is called **subject-verb agreement**.

It should be clear that verb tenses can share the same time but differ in aspect. The verbs in the following English sentences are all in past time; they differ only in aspect.

The boy *laughed.*	simple aspect
The boy *was laughing.*	progressive aspect
Every time his friend sang, the boy *laughed.*	repeated aspect
Because the boy *had laughed,* his friend was angry.	completed aspect

All the Latin tenses that express progressive aspect may also express repeated aspect. Context usually makes clear whether a progressive aspect or a repeated aspect translation is more appropriate.

Voice—Latin verbs appear in the **active** voice when their subjects are performing the action of the verb. (The cat scratches.) They appear in the **passive** voice when their subjects are receiving the action of the verb. (The cat is scratched.)

Mood—Latin verbs occur in one of three different moods based on the writer's or speaker's attitude toward the factuality or likelihood of the action expressed. One uses the **indicative** mood to represent something as factual or to ask a question of fact. (The cat *is scratching* the furniture. Why *is* the cat *scratching* the furniture?) One uses the **imperative** mood to give a command. (Mom, *scratch* my back.) To represent an action as *possible, wished for, doubtful,* or *nonfactual* in some other way, one uses the **subjunctive** mood. (*If only* my cat *would not scratch* the furniture. My cat *might scratch* your arm.)

§6. The Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood: Overview

Since Latin tenses have three possible times (present, past, future) and three possible aspects (simple, progressive/repeated, completed—the progressive and repeated always being grouped together in Latin), it would have been most efficient if Latin had had nine tenses corresponding to the nine possible combinations of time and aspect. In fact, Latin has only six tenses in the indicative mood. Three Latin tenses have two possible combinations of time and aspect. A list of the six tenses of the indicative mood and their times and aspects follows, with sample English translations for each.

1. **Present**: reports an action in *present* time with either *simple* or *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She thinks. She is thinking. She thinks [every day/often/repeatedly].)
2. **Imperfect**: reports an action in *past* time with *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She was thinking. She used to think. She thought [every day/often/repeatedly].)
3. **Future**: reports an action in *future* time with either *simple* or *progressive/repeated* aspect. (She will think. She will be thinking. She will think [every day/often/repeatedly].)
4. **Perfect**: reports either an action in *present* time with *completed* aspect (She has thought.)
   or an action in *past* time with *simple* aspect. (She thought.)
5. **Pluperfect**: reports an action in *past* time with *completed* aspect. (She had thought.)
6. **Future Perfect**: reports an action in *future* time with *completed* aspect. (She will have thought.)

The chart below shows these six tenses arranged according to time and aspect with a sample verb showing the corresponding tense in English:

The Six Latin Tenses of the Indicative Mood

TIME	ASPECT: Simple	Progressive/Repeated	Completed
Present	Present "he sings"	Present "he is singing" "he sings (every day)"	Perfect "he has sung"
Past	Perfect "he sang"	Imperfect "he was singing" "he sang (every day)"	Pluperfect "he had sung"
Future	Future "he will sing"	Future "he will be singing" "he will sing (every day)"	Future perfect "he will have sung"

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present indicative and the future indicative have both simple aspect and progressive/repeated aspect. Be flexible when considering how to translate these tenses. Context usually makes clear the appropriate translation.

2. The perfect tense is unique among the indicative tenses in that it refers to *two different times* with *two different aspects* (present completed or past simple). Context usually makes clear the appropriate translation.

☛ Drill 5–6, page 37, may now be done.

§7. The Vocabulary Entry for a Verb: Principal Parts

The full vocabulary entry for a verb contains four **principal parts** and English meanings for the verb. The four principal parts are the given elements from which all the forms of a Latin verb are created. For example:

moveō, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtus** move

Principal Part			
1	**moveō**[6]	first person sing. present active indicative	"I move"
2	**movēre**	present active infinitive[7]	"to move"
3	**mōvī**	first person sing. perfect active indicative	"I moved"/"I have moved"
4	**mōtus**	perfect passive participle[8]	"(having been) moved"

Learn what each principal part is and how it is to be translated. Always memorize all four principal parts of each verb.

6. Latin verbs are named by the first principal part (**moveō**, **vocō**). By contrast, English verbs are named by the infinitive (to move, to call).

7. An **infinitive** is a verbal noun with the properties of tense and voice.

8. A **participle** is a verbal adjective with the properties of tense and voice. As mentioned in the vocabulary note on principal parts (p. 26), the fourth principal part is usually but not always the perfect passive participle ending in either **-us** or **-um**. Certain verbs that lack perfect passive participles have future active participles as their fourth principal parts, which end in **-ūrus**.

§8. The Four Conjugations

Latin verbs are grouped in four different families called **conjugations**. Each verb belongs to one conjugation only, and each conjugation differs slightly from the others in how it creates certain forms. The four conjugations are distinguished and identified by the *vowel preceding the* ***-re*** *ending of the second principal part* (present active infinitive). The following sets of principal parts will serve as examples of the four conjugations:

1st conjugation	**-ā-**	**vocō**, **vocāre**, **vocāvī**, **vocātus** call
2nd conjugation	**-ē-**	**moveō**, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtus** move
3rd conjugation	**-e-**	**regō**, **regere**, **rēxī**, **rēctus** rule
4th conjugation	**-ī-**	**audiō**, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītus** hear

OBSERVATION

The **-ē-** indicating a second-conjugation verb is long, but the **-e-** indicating the third conjugation is short.

The finite forms of a Latin verb are created by:

1. taking a stem from one of the principal parts
2. sometimes adding an **infix**[9] that indicates the tense
3. adding *personal endings* that indicate three things: person, number, and voice.

When one generates a complete set of forms of a particular tense in Latin, one is said to **conjugate** the verb in that tense, and the resulting set of forms is called a **conjugation** of that tense.[10]

Since verbs of the first and second conjugations form the present, imperfect, and future active indicative in the same ways, they are here introduced together.

Finding the Present Stem

For all conjugations the stem for the present, imperfect, and future active indicative is found by removing the **-re** from the *second principal part*. This stem is called the **present stem**. All verb forms made with the present stem when taken together are called the **present system** of the verb. The vowel at the end of this stem is called the **stem vowel**. Thus, for example:

1st:	**vocō**, ***vocā*re**, **vocāvī**, **vocātus** call	present stem: **vocā-**
2nd:	**moveō**, ***movē*re**, **mōvī**, **mōtus** move	present stem: **movē-**

☛ DRILL 7–8, PAGE 41, MAY NOW BE DONE.

9. An **infix** (< **īnfīgō**, fasten in) is an inflectional element appearing in the middle of a word.

10. There are thus two meanings for the word "conjugation": 1. the name for each of the four families of verbs (first conjugation, second conjugation, etc.); 2. a complete set of forms for a particular tense of a given verb.

§9. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

Present Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the present active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the **-re** from the *second principal part*)
2. add the **active personal endings** directly to the present stem

The active personal endings are:

Person	*Singular*	
1	**-ō, -m**	I
2	**-s**	you
3	**-t**	he, she, it
	Plural	
1	**-mus**	we
2	**-tis**	you (pl.)
3	**-nt**	they

OBSERVATIONS

1. The active personal endings are used to form the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. Although two endings are given for the first person singular (**-ō**, **-m**), they are not interchangeable. The present active indicative and the future active indicative use **-ō**. The imperfect active indicative uses **-m**.

2. The active personal endings will be used to form many tenses and conjugations in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.

Thus the present active indicative conjugations of, for example, **vocō** and **moveō** are:

Present Stem:		**vocā-**		**movē-**
Singular				
1	**vocō**	I call	**moveō**	I move
2	**vocās**	you call	**movēs**	you move
3	**vocat**	he, she, it calls	**movet**	he, she, it moves
Plural				
1	**vocāmus**	we call	**movēmus**	we move
2	**vocātis**	you (pl.) call	**movētis**	you (pl.) move
3	**vocant**	they call	**movent**	they move

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present active indicative of first- and second-conjugation verbs has no infix to mark tense. The personal endings are added directly to the present stem.

2. In the first person singular of all first-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-ā-** contracts with the **-ō** of the ending (*vocāō > **vocō**).[11] THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART AND MUST BE MEMORIZED.

3. In the first person singular of all second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-ē-** shortens before the **-ō** of the ending (*movēō > **moveō**). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART AND MUST BE MEMORIZED.

11. The symbol > means "becomes."

4. In the third person singular and plural of both first- and second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowels (**-ā-** and **-ē-** respectively) shorten before the endings **-t** and **-nt**. A long vowel always shortens when it immediately precedes these two endings. The shortening of long vowels before certain final consonants is referred to in this book as the **long vowel rule**.

5. Although there are words in Latin for the personal pronouns "I," "you," etc., these are regularly omitted when they are the subjects of verbs. THE ACTIVE PERSONAL ENDINGS SUPPLY THE SUBJECTS, AND SO THESE PRONOUNS ARE NOT REQUIRED. In the third person singular, if no subject is expressed, the appropriate pronoun (he, she, or it) must be determined from context. If the subject is expressed, no pronoun should be supplied. Compare, for example:

ambulat	he, she, it walks
poēta ambulat	the poet walks

6. The English translations for the present-tense forms given above have simple aspect. Because the present tense also has progressive/repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: "I am calling," "I call (repeatedly)," etc.

Imperfect Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the imperfect active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the **-re** from the *second principal part*)
2. add the *infix* for the imperfect active indicative: **-bā-**
3. add the *active personal endings* (use **-m** for first person singular)

Thus the imperfect active indicative conjugations of, for example, **vocō** and **moveō** are:

Present Stem:		**vocā-**		**movē-**
Infix:		**-bā-**		**-bā-**
Singular				
1	**vocābam**	I was calling	**movēbam**	I was moving
2	**vocābās**	you were calling	**movēbās**	you were moving
3	**vocābat**	he, she, it was calling	**movēbat**	he, she, it was moving
Plural				
1	**vocābāmus**	we were calling	**movēbāmus**	we were moving
2	**vocābātis**	you (pl.) were calling	**movēbātis**	you (pl.) were moving
3	**vocābant**	they were calling	**movēbant**	they were moving

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending **-m**, as they do before the endings **-t** and **-nt**. Thus the **long vowel rule** is:

THE ENDINGS **-M**, **-T**, AND **-NT** SHORTEN PRECEDING LONG VOWELS.

2. The English translations for the imperfect tense forms given above have progressive aspect. Because the imperfect tense also has repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: "I used to call," "I called (repeatedly)," etc.

Future Active Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the future active indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem (by removing the **-re** from the *second principal part*)
2. add the *infix* for the future active indicative: **-bi-**
3. add the *active personal endings* (use **-ō** for first person singular)

Thus the future active indicative conjugations of, for example, **vocō** and **moveō** are:

Present Stem:	**vocā-**		**movē-**	
Infix:	**-bi-**		**-bi-**	
Singular				
1	**vocābō**	I shall call	**movēbō**	I shall move
2	**vocābis**	you will call	**movēbis**	you will move
3	**vocābit**	he, she, it will call	**movēbit**	he, she, it will move
Plural				
1	**vocābimus**	we shall call	**movēbimus**	we shall move
2	**vocābitis**	you (pl.) will call	**movēbitis**	you (pl.) will move
3	**vocābunt**	they will call	**movēbunt**	they will move

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the **-i-** of the infix **-bi-** contracts with the ending **-ō** to give the resulting form (*vocābiō > **vocābō**; *movēbiō > **movēbō**). MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION TO THE RULES FOR FORMING THE FUTURE ACTIVE INDICATIVE.

2. In the third person plural, the **-i-** of the infix **-bi-** changes to **-u-**. The **-u-** is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the future active indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

3. The English translations for the future tense forms given above have simple aspect. Because the future tense also has progressive/repeated aspect, alternate translations are possible: "I shall be calling," "I shall call (repeatedly)," etc.

☛ DRILL 9, PAGE 45, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§10. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active Indicative of the Irregular Verbs *sum* and *possum*

The verb **sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**,[12] "be, exist," and the verb **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, —, "be able, can," are irregular verbs. An **irregular verb** is a verb that does not belong to any of the four conjugations. **Sum** and **possum** have irregular forms in the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. The conjugations of these three tenses of these verbs are presented below. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

12. The fourth principal part of most verbs is the perfect passive participle (see §7). However, the fourth principal part of **sum—futūrus**—is a future active participle and is translated "about to be."

Present Active Indicative of **sum** and **possum**

Singular				
1	**sum**	I am	**possum**	I am able
2	**es**	you are	**potes**	you are able
3	**est**	he, she, it is	**potest**	he, she, it is able
Plural				
1	**sumus**	we are	**possumus**	we are able
2	**estis**	you (pl.) are	**potestis**	you (pl.) are able
3	**sunt**	they are	**possunt**	they are able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present active indicative, the stem of **sum** shifts between **s-** (first person singular and plural, third person plural) and **es-** (second person singular and plural, third person singular). The active personal endings are familiar: **-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

2. The verb **possum** is in origin a combination of the Latin adjective **potis** or **pote** (able) and the verb **sum**. The adjective appears as a prefix: either **pos-** (added to forms of **sum** beginning with **s-**) or **pot-** (added to forms of **sum** beginning with **e-**).

Imperfect Active Indicative of **sum** and **possum**

Singular				
1	**eram**	I was	**poteram**	I was able
2	**erās**	you were	**poterās**	you were able
3	**erat**	he, she, it was	**poterat**	he, she, it was able
Plural				
1	**erāmus**	we were	**poterāmus**	we were able
2	**erātis**	you (pl.) were	**poterātis**	you (pl.) were able
3	**erant**	they were	**poterant**	they were able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the imperfect active indicative, the stem of **sum** is **erā-**.[13] The stem vowel **-ā-** in the first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural shortens according to the long vowel rule. Compare this stem vowel (**-ā-**) with the sign of the imperfect active indicative for first- and second-conjugation verbs (**-bā-**).

2. Since the stem of **sum** in the imperfect active indicative begins with **e-**, the prefix **pot-** is used throughout the imperfect active indicative conjugation of **possum**.

3. A strict English translation of the verb **sum** in the imperfect tense with progressive aspect would be "I was (being)," "you were (being)," etc. However, the English past tense is regularly used in contexts that make this progressive aspect clear. For example, in the phrase "when I was a girl," the state of being a girl is understood to have occurred over time. Thus the past tense in English may express progressive aspect.

13. **erā-** was derived by the addition of **-ā-** to the original stem ***es-**. Whenever the single letter ***-s-** appeared between vowels in Latin, it changed to **-r-**. This sound change is called **rhotacism** (< the Greek letter *rho*) and is thought to have occurred in the fifth and fourth centuries B.C.E.

Future Active Indicative of **sum** and **possum**

Singular				
1	**erō**	I shall be	**poterō**	I shall be able
2	**eris**	you will be	**poteris**	you will be able
3	**erit**	he, she, it will be	**poterit**	he, she, it will be able
Plural				
1	**erimus**	we shall be	**poterimus**	we shall be able
2	**eritis**	you (pl.) will be	**poteritis**	you (pl.) will be able
3	**erunt**	they will be	**poterunt**	they will be able

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the future active indicative, the stem of **sum** is **eri-**.[14] Compare this stem vowel (**-i-**) with the sign of the future active indicative for first- and second-conjugation verbs (**-bi-**). In the first person singular, the stem vowel **-i-** contracts with the **-ō** of the ending (*eriō > **erō**). In the third person plural, the **-i-** changes to a **-u-**, a remnant of an earlier form. Compare the third person plurals of the future active indicative conjugation of first- and second-conjugation verbs.

2. Since the stem of **sum** in the future active indicative begins with **e-**, the prefix **pot-** is used throughout the future active indicative conjugation of **possum**.

The Two Meanings of the Verb *sum*

The two meanings given for the verb **sum**, "be, exist," must be carefully distinguished. For example:

Rēgīna *est* fīlia deae.	The queen *is* the daughter of a goddess.
***Est* rēgīna in īnsulā.**	A queen *exists* on the island. *There is* a queen on the island.

In the first sentence, **est** is a copulative or linking verb. It equates the subject (**rēgīna**, queen) with a Predicate Nominative (**fīlia**, daughter). When **sum** is used as a copulative verb, it is usually placed between the subject and the Predicate Nominative.

In the second sentence, **est** is *not* a copulative verb. It simply states that the subject (**rēgīna**, queen) exists. When **sum** is not copulative, it asserts the existence of the subject and often (though not always) precedes the subject. It is convenient to translate this use of **sum** with the English expletive "there" and the appropriate form of the verb "be," as in the second translation offered above.[15] Although "there" comes first in the translation, it is not the subject: it is the "queen" who exists.

☛ DRILL 10, PAGE 53, MAY NOW BE DONE.

14. **eri-** was derived by the addition of **-i-** to the original stem ***es-**, and, by rhotacism, the intervocalic **-s-** changed to an **-r-**.

15. An **expletive** is a word that stands in place of or anticipates a following word or phrase.

§11. Distinguishing Transitive and Intransitive Verbs

A **transitive verb** expresses an action that is directly exerted on a person or thing. The person or thing receiving the action is the direct object (§1). For example:

The dog *catches* the ball.
She *was sending* a package.

The verbs in these sentences ("catches" and "was sending") are transitive (< **trānseō**, go across). The direct objects in these sentences ("ball" and "package") would be expressed in Latin in the accusative case.

Many transitive verbs require direct objects to complete their meanings. Many transitive verbs, however, may be used **absolutely**; that is, they may occur without an expressed direct object. For example, to the question "What are you doing?" the response "I am writing" could be considered complete, although a direct object (book, some letters) is implied.

An **intransitive verb** expresses an action that is not directly exerted on a person or thing. It cannot take a direct object. For example:

He *stands* on the corner.
I *shall go* home.

Two important types of intransitive verbs are copulative verbs[16] and verbs that express motion (go, come, etc.). The actions of the verbs in these sentences are not exerted on direct objects. In the second sentence, the adverb "home" (= homeward) is *not* a direct object since the action of "shall go" is not exerted upon "home."

Verbs that are transitive in English are often transitive in Latin. However, there are many important exceptions. These are indicated in the vocabulary lists and notes.

☛ Drill 11, page 57, may now be done.

§12. Complementary Infinitive

An **infinitive** is an abstract verbal noun in the neuter singular. It is **indeclinable**; that is, although it is a noun, it does not have case endings, and it has limited syntactic functions. An infinitive has the verbal properties of tense (present, perfect, or future) and voice (active or passive).[17] As noted in §7, the second principal part of every verb is the present active infinitive and is regularly translated "to _____." For example: **movēre**, "to move."

16. For a definition of copulative verbs see §1.
17. An infinitive (< **īnfīnītīvus**, not limited) is a verb form that is *not limited* by person and number.

An infinitive may be used to *complete* the meaning of another verb. Such an infinitive is called a **Complementary Infinitive** (< **compleō**, fill out). For example:

Īnsulam *vidēre* possum.	The island (d.o.) *to see* I am able. I am able *to see* the island.
***Labōrāre* dēbēmus.**	*To work* we ought. We ought *to work*.

The syntax of each italicized word (**vidēre**, **labōrāre**) is **Complementary Infinitive**.

OBSERVATION

In the first sentence the verbal idea begun with "I am able" is completed by the infinitive "to see": the infinitive specifies what the subject of **possum** is able to do. In the second sentence the verbal idea begun with "we ought" is completed by the infinitive "to work": the infinitive specifies what the subject of **dēbēmus** ought to do. Verbs that can take a Complementary Infinitive are identified in the vocabulary notes.

§13. Object Infinitive

An infinitive may be used as the *direct object* of a transitive verb. Such an infinitive is called an **Object Infinitive**. For example:

Agricola *labōrāre* optat.	The farmer *to work* desires. The farmer desires *to work*.

The syntax of the italicized word (**labōrāre**) is **Object Infinitive**.

OBSERVATION

The Object Infinitive may be understood as a variety of Complementary Infinitive. The infinitive **labōrāre** in the sentence above both is the direct object of **optat** and serves to complete the verbal idea begun with **optat**.

§14. Dative of the Possessor

A noun in the dative case is used to indicate the *person who possesses* something. This use is an extension of the case's referential function, and a dative so used is called a **Dative of the Possessor**. For example:

***Dominō* est liber.**	*To the master* there is a book. *The master* has a book.
Erat *fēminīs* cōnsilium.	There was *to the women* a plan. *The women* had a plan.

The syntax of each italicized word (**dominō**, **fēminīs**) is **Dative of the Possessor**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a sentence containing a Dative of the Possessor, the noun *possessed* appears in the nominative case as the subject of a form of the verb **sum**. The verb asserts the existence of the noun in the nominative case with reference to the person in the dative case.

2. The translations of these sentences move from the more to the less literal. In the less literal translation, the Dative of the Possessor becomes in English the subject of the verb "have," and the nominative of the thing possessed becomes the direct object.

3. The Dative of the Possessor is *always* a person.

Expressions of Possession Compared

In addition to the Dative of the Possessor, Latin may report that someone possesses something in two other ways: with the verb **habeō**, **habēre**, **habuī**, **habitus**, "have, hold; consider," and with the Genitive of Possession (see §1). Although these three constructions differ slightly in emphasis, the differences cannot always be represented in English translations. For example:

Dominus librum habet.	The master a book (d.o.) has. The master has a book.
Dominō est liber.	To the master there is a book. The master has a book.
Liber est dominī.	The book is of the master. The book is the master's.

The sentence **Dominus librum habet** is a neutral statement of ownership, in which equal stress is given to both possessor and thing possessed.

In the sentence **Dominō est liber** (Dative of the Possessor), the thing possessed receives slightly greater stress because it is the subject of the sentence. A sentence with a Dative of the Possessor asserts *both* the existence of the thing possessed *and* possession by the person in the dative.

In the sentence **Liber est dominī**, the Genitive of Possession *in the predicate* lays stress on the possessor. The existence of the thing possessed is assumed, and the sentence asserts only its possession by the person in the genitive.

The first two sentences answer the question "What does the master have?" The third answers the question "Whose is the book?"

§15. Introduction to the Latin Sentence and Prose Word Order

Like any language, Latin seeks to be understood, and its aim is most often toward *clarity*. A sentence of Latin prose is not a puzzle to be figured out and not an ill-arranged version of English in a foreign tongue. Although it is rarely the same as the order of an English sentence with equivalent meaning, the word order of a Latin sentence is important and joins with the words themselves to convey the writer's precise meaning. The same may be said of English, but because English words have far fewer inflectional endings than Latin words, fewer orders are available for conveying a particular meaning. In the sentence "The girl loves the boy," "girl" is understood as the subject of the verb because it appears *before* the verb, and "boy" is understood as the direct object because it appears *after* the verb.

A greater degree of inflection of its nouns and verbs allows Latin a more flexible

word order than is possible in English. The same sentence (The girl loves the boy) could theoretically be written in Latin in six different orders. The three words **puella**, **puerum**, and **amat** could appear in any order, and basic syntax and meaning would be clear from the particular inflectional ending on each word.

Meaning may thus be conveyed by a variety of orders, but the determining factors in the order of a Latin sentence are **emphasis**, **balance**, and **economy**.

Emphasis—The two most important places in a Latin sentence are the beginning (first word) and the end (last word).[18] If no special emphasis is given to any element of a sentence, the subject and the verb—the most important syntactic elements of a sentence—normally occupy these positions, the subject first and the verb last. The other elements of a sentence (e.g., direct object, indirect object, prepositional phrases) appear between the subject and the verb. This unemphatic Latin word order may be called **neutral** because although it contains two important positions (first and last), no special emphasis is placed on the words that occupy these positions.

When neutral order is *not* followed, the words in the first and last positions often receive special emphasis. For example:

Fēmina fīliīs dōna dat.	The woman to (her) sons gifts (d.o.) is giving.
(neutral word order)	The woman is giving gifts to (her) sons.
Dōna fēmina fīliīs dat.	*Gifts* (d.o.) the woman to (her) sons is giving.
(**dōna** emphasized)	The woman is giving *gifts* to (her) sons.

The second sentence violates neutral word order by placing the direct object first, ahead of the subject. Thus **dōna** receives additional emphasis.[19] However, in the sentence **Dōna fīliīs dat** (She gives gifts to [her] sons), *no additional emphasis* is placed on **dōna** because no subject expressed in the nominative case has been moved from its normal position at the beginning of the sentence.

Balance—Latin sentences often exhibit symmetrical arrangements and thereby achieve a kind of balance. For example, the placing of subject first and verb last gives equal weight to the beginning and end of a sentence. The use of conjunctions that signal parallelism such as **et** . . . **et** . . . also contributes to an impression of balance.

Latin writers often achieve *balance between contrasting phrases* by arranging grammatical elements in *parallel* sequence:

Rēgīna et *pecūniam agricolīs* et *librōs poētīs* dat.
A B A B
The queen both *money* (d.o.) *to the farmers* and *books* (d.o.) *to the poets* gives.
The queen gives both *money to the farmers* and *books to the poets*.

In this sentence the accusatives (**pecūniam** and **librōs**) and the datives (**agricolīs** and **poētīs**) are placed in a parallel ABAB arrangement.

18. The observations made here regarding the Latin sentence apply as well to Latin phrases and clauses.

19. Such emphasis is often hard to convey in an English translation, but stressing or italicizing the emphasized word(s) is sometimes effective.

Equally common is the arrangement of grammatical elements in inverted sequence:

Rēgīna et *pecūniam agricolīs* et *poētīs librōs* dat.
A B B A
The queen both *money* (d.o.) *to the farmers* and *to the poets books* (d.o.) gives.
The queen gives both *money to the farmers* and *to the poets books.*

In this sentence a grammatical sequence (accusative, dative) is reversed the second time it appears (dative, accusative). In this way, the contrasting parts of the sentence (**pecūniam agricolīs** and **poētīs librōs**) are balanced against each other. This ABBA, or inverted, arrangement is the rhetorical device **chiasmus** (< Greek letter *chi* [χ], in which the lines are crossed).

Economy—Consider the following Latin phrase and its English translation:

librum poētae the book [d.o.] of the poet

Because Latin has inflectional endings for its nouns and because Latin lacks a definite article (the), five words and a notation about syntax are required in English to translate what Latin expresses in two words. This comparison gives some indication of the *natural economy* of the Latin language.

In general, Latin writers use all the syntactic features of the language to express ideas in the shortest and clearest way. A common feature of Latin writing is called **ellipsis**, the omission of one or more words that can easily be supplied from context. For example:

Agricolīs pecūniam rēgīna dat, poētīs librōs.
To the farmers money (d.o.) the queen gives, to the poets books (d.o.).
To the farmers the queen gives money; to the poets [the queen gives] books.

In this sentence a grammatical sequence is set forth in the first clause (dative, accusative, nominative, verb). This pattern is then repeated in the second clause (dative, accusative), but the syntactic elements *common* to the two clauses (subject, verb) are omitted: *only the changed elements are expressed.* That is, the reader is expected to supply **rēgīna dat** to complete the second clause.

Latin sentences that contain ellipses of this kind may seem to exhibit a quality that is the very opposite of balance since one clause is longer and contains more grammatical elements than the other. However, the ready comprehension of a sentence with ellipsis is only possible because of an underlying sense of symmetry, a predisposition to make the parts of a sentence as balanced as possible.

Often grammatically shared elements are *distributed between* two balanced clauses. For example:

Puerī nautās in viā, in agrō agricolās vident.
The boys sailors (d.o.) in the street, in the field farmers (d.o.) see.
The boys [see] sailors in the street; [the boys] see farmers in the field.

The subject and verb, placed first and last, are common to both clauses. Ellipses of this kind create clauses and sentences that exhibit both balance (in length) and economy (in words).

Guidelines for Reading and Translating Latin Sentences

Reading Latin means comprehending Latin in Latin. *English does not play a part in reading Latin,* but an important stage on the way to achieving reading ability in Latin is the translating of many Latin sentences and larger texts into English. Translation should usually be as literal as possible because the English rendering should replicate as closely as possible the Latin original. Literal translation allows student and teacher to be sure that the Latin text is being understood in the same way, particularly with reference to syntax. Moreover, literal translation trains the student to think in the syntactic patterns of Latin and thereby to achieve true *reading* proficiency more quickly. The following guidelines will help develop good habits for both translating and reading.

1. When translating a Latin sentence, go in order from left to right. First translate in Latin word order, then give a second version, making minimum necessary changes for clear English. Going in order makes it possible to:
   a. note and appreciate nuances of meaning signaled by particular word orders;
   b. give correct sense when ambiguities arise;
   c. most important, *read and understand Latin as it was written.*
2. Assume that the subject of a new sentence is the same as the subject of preceding sentence if no new nominative subject is expressed.
3. Major grammatical elements (subject, indirect object, direct object), particularly those referring to *PEOPLE* rather than *THINGS,* tend to be placed at or near the beginning of a sentence.
4. Genitives are regularly placed *AFTER* the nouns they qualify or limit.
5. Adverbial elements (adverbs, adverbial phrases) are regularly placed *BEFORE* the verbs or other words they modify.
6. In questions, verbs tend to be placed *FIRST.*
7. Copulative verbs are generally placed *BETWEEN* subjects and Predicate Nominatives or Predicate Adjectives, both of which tend to come first in sentences or clauses.
8. When **SUM** means "exist," it tends to come *BEFORE* its subject and is often first in a sentence.
9. Postpositive words appear in the second or third position in a sentence. A **postpositive** word does not appear first in a sentence, but, when it connects two sentences and indicates the logical relation between them, it may be translated first.

☛ Drill 12–15, page 61, may now be done.

Short Readings

1. The master Lysidamus asks his wife's slave a timorous question about the unwilling object of his affection.

   Lys. sed etiamne habet nunc Casīna gladium?

   Par. habet, duōs. (Plautus, *Casīna* 690–91)

Lys. = Lysidamus
etiam (adv.) even
nunc (adv.) now
Casīna, **Casīnae** *f.* Casina
Par. = Pardalisca (slave of Lysidamus's wife)
duōs, *masc. pl. acc. adj.*, two

2. A clever slave, Davus, is pretending not to understand his master's plan to stop his son's marriage.

   Davo' sum, nōn Oedipus. (Terence, *Andria* 194)

Davus, **Davī** *m.* Davus; **Davo'** = **Davos**, archaic nom. sing. for **Davus**
Oedipus, **Oedipī** *m.* Oedipus (who solved the riddle of the Sphinx)

3. In a letter to her husband, Protesilaus, Laodamia tells how long she watched the harbor after his departure for the war at Troy.

   ut tē nōn poteram, poteram tua vēla vidēre. (Ovid, *Hērōides* XIII.17)

ut (conj.) when
tē, *personal pron., acc. sing.*, you
tua, *neut. pl. acc. adj.*, your

4. A debatable view of the gods

   Nōn dat deus beneficia. (Seneca the Younger, *Dē Beneficiīs* IV.5.1)

beneficium, **beneficiī** *n.* favor, benefit

5. The philosopher makes a fine distinction.

   nunc enim amās mē, amīcus nōn es. (Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs*, XXXV.1)

nunc (adv.) now
mē, *personal pron., acc. sing.*, me
amīcus, **amīcī** *m.* friend

6. A remark attributed to Herodes Atticus (an Athenian who became a Roman consul in 107 C.E.) when he responded to a man attempting to appear to be what he was not

   videō barbam et pallium; philosophum nōndum videō.

   (Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* IX.2.4)

barba, **barbae** *f.* beard
pallium, **palliī** *n.* cloak
philosophus, **philosophī** *m.* philosopher
nōndum (adv.) not yet

§16. Names in Latin I

Like any noun, each proper name in Latin belongs to a particular declension and is declined using the endings of that declension. For example:

Rōmulus, **Rōmulī** *m.* Romulus (legendary founder of Rome)
Remus, **Remī** *m.* Remus (brother of Romulus)

While legendary and fictional characters often had one name, a Roman man regularly had three names: a **praenōmen** (name in front), a **nōmen** (name), and a **cognōmen** (additional name).[1] For example:

Lūcius	**Cornēlius**	**Sulla,**	**Lūciī Cornēliī Sullae** *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla
praenōmen	nōmen	cognōmen	

The *praenōmen* was the name for an individual and is equivalent to a first name in English. The *nōmen* was the name of the **gēns** (clan or group of families) to which a person belonged and is equivalent to a last name. The *cognōmen* often indicated a particular family or a smaller group of families within the *gēns*. In the example above, **Lūcius** is a first name, **Cornēlius** is the name of the clan to which he belongs, and **Sulla** is a particular family within that clan.[2] A Roman might be addressed by his *praenōmen* alone (**Lūcī**), by a combination of his *praenōmen* and *nōmen* (**Lūcī Cornēlī**), or by his *cognōmen* alone (**Sulla**).

There were very few *praenōmina* in common use in Latin, and they were often abbreviated. The most common *praenōmina* and their abbreviations are:

A.	**Aulus**, **Aulī** *m.* Aulus	**P.**	**Publius**, **Publiī** *m.* Publius
App.	**Appius**, **Appiī** *m.* Appius	**Q.**	**Quintus**, **Quintī** *m.* Quintus
C.[3]	**Gaius**,[4] **Gaī** *m.* Gaius	**Ser.**	**Servius**, **Serviī** *m.* Servius
Cn.[3]	**Gnaeus**, **Gnaeī** *m.* Gnaeus	**Sex.**	**Sextus**, **Sextī** *m.* Sextus
D.	**Decimus**, **Decimī** *m.* Decimus	**Sp.**	**Spurius**, **Spuriī** *m.* Spurius
L.	**Lūcius**, **Lūciī** *m.* Lucius	**T.**	**Tītus**, **Tītī** *m.* Titus
M.	**Marcus**, **Marcī** *m.* Marcus	**Ti.**	**Tiberius**, **Tiberiī** *m.* Tiberius
M'.	**Manius**, **Maniī** *m.* Manius		

OBSERVATION

All these *praenōmina* belong to the second declension.

1. The plurals of *praenōmen, nōmen*, and *cognōmen* are **praenōmina**, **nōmina**, and **cognōmina**.

2. Sometimes the *cognōmen* was based on some attribute of an old member of a family. An early hero of Rome, for example, **Gaius Mūcius**, earned the *cognōmen* **Scaevola** (Lefty) because when he was captured in the camp of an enemy king, he defiantly burned his right hand to demonstrate the stubborn will of the Roman people. The name **Mūcius Scaevola** then passed on to his descendants. The origins of many *cognōmina*, however, are unknown.

3. A capital **C** is in origin a form of the Greek letter *gamma*. In the abbreviations **C.** and **Cn.** it still represents a sound equivalent to English and Latin **G**.

4. **Gaius** is pronounced as if it were spelled *Gaiius. The first **-i-** combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, **-ai-**, which is pronounced exactly the same as **-ae-**. The second **-i-** is consonantal and is thus pronounced like English **-y-**. Only one **-ī** is written in the genitive and vocative singular forms, but they are pronounced as if they were spelled *Gaiī (with a consonantal and a vocalic **i**).

A Roman woman had only a single name, and this was derived from the name of the *gēns* to which she belonged. The Roman writer Cicero, for example, had the *nōmen* **Tullius**. His daughter was therefore named **Tullia**, **Tulliae** *f.*

The preceding bold faced names and following names that belong to the first or second declension appear in the sentences and readings throughout this book. FAMILIARIZE YOURSELF WITH THESE NAMES AND BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THEM AS THEY OCCUR. When translating proper names into English, always give the nominative form of the name. For example, ***Marcō* librum dabō**, "I shall give a book to *Marcus*."

Poets[5]

C. Valerius Catullus, **C. Valeriī Catullī** *m.* Gaius Valerius Catullus (Catullus)

Q. Horātius Flaccus, **Q. Horātiī Flaccī** *m.* Quintus Horatius Flaccus (Horace)

Historical and Legendary Figures[5]

Aenēās, **Aenēae** *m.* Aeneas; **Aenēān** = *acc. sing.*; **Aenēā** = *voc. sing.*[6]

M. Antōnius, **M. Antōniī** *m.* Marcus Antonius (Marc Antony)

L. Cornēlius Sulla, **L. Cornēliī Sullae** *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla (Sulla)

Cn. Pompeius Magnus, **Cn. Pompeiī Magnī** *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus (Pompey the Great)

Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, **Ti. Semprōniī Gracchī** *m.* Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus

C. Semprōnius Gracchus, **C. Semprōniī Gracchī** *m.* Gaius Sempronius Gracchus

L. Sergius Catilīna, **L. Sergiī Catilīnae** *m.* Lucius Sergius Catilina (Catiline)

Famous Women[7]

Iūlia, **Iūliae** *f.* Julia

Līvia, **Līviae** *f.* Livia

Place Names

Graecia, **Graeciae** *f.* Greece

Īlium, **Īliī** *n.* Ilium, Troy

Troia, **Troiae** *f.* Troy

5. **Catullus** and **Horace** were the two greatest Latin lyric poets. **Aeneas** is the legendary Trojan son of Venus and the subject of Vergil's epic poem, the *Aeneid*. The **Gracchi**, as the two brothers Tiberius and Gaius are often called, were prominent in the political struggles at the end of the second century B.C.E. Each was murdered by members of the senatorial class after attempting to introduce various legal reforms. **Sulla** was a successful general and conservative politician of the late second and early first centuries B.C.E. In 63 B.C.E., **Catiline** led a conspiracy of dissatisfied nobles and debtors that was suppressed by Cicero when he was consul. **Pompey** (who chose the *cognōmen* "Great" for himself) was the most powerful man in Rome until the rise of Julius Caesar. **Antony** was Caesar's right-hand man and spent the years following Caesar's death in 44 B.C.E. fighting over Caesar's legacy.

6. **Aenēās** is a first-declension noun with an irregular nominative singular (**Aenēās**).

7. **Livia** was Augustus's wife. **Julia** is the name of both the daughter and the granddaughter of Augustus, each notorious.

CHAPTER III

Vocabulary

dīligentia, **dīligentiae** *f.* diligence
➤ **incola**, **incolae** *m.* inhabitant
mora, **morae** *f.* delay
➤ **prōvincia**, **prōvinciae** *f.* province
terra, **terrae** *f.* land, earth

➤ **amīcus**, **amīcī** *m.* friend
➤ **forum**, **forī** *n.* public square, market-place, forum
➤ **imperium**, **imperiī** *n.* power, authority, command; empire
➤ **inimīcus**, **inimīcī** *m.* (personal) enemy
odium, **odiī** *n.* hatred
➤ **populus**, **populī** *m.* (the) people; populace
➤ **Rōmānī**, **Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Romans

➤ **nihil** or **nīl** (indeclinable noun) *n.* nothing

laudō (1-tr.) praise
➤ **pugnō** (1-intr.) fight
superō (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass

➤ **teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, **tentus** hold, grasp; keep, possess; occupy
videō, **vidēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsus** *passive,* be seen; seem (§26)

eō, **īre**, **iī/īvī**, **itum** go (§21)

➤ **amīcus**, **-a**, **-um** friendly (+ dat.)
➤ **inimīcus**, **-a**, **-um** unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.)
bonus, **-a**, **-um** good
➤ **laetus**, **-a**, **-um** happy
➤ **līber**, **lībera**, **līberum** free
➤ **magnus**, **-a**, **-um** large, big; great
malus, **-a**, **-um** bad, evil
miser, **misera**, **miserum** wretched, pitiable, miserable
multus, **-a**, **-um** much, many
parvus, **-a**, **-um** small, little
➤ **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum** beautiful, handsome
Rōmānus, **-a**, **-um** Roman

ā, **ab** (prep. + abl.) by (§25)
➤ **atque** or **ac** (conj.) and (also)
➤ **mox** (adv.) soon; then
nunc (adv.) now
➤ **prō** (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of, for; in return for, instead of
propter (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of
semper (adv.) always
sine (prep. + abl.) without

Vocabulary Notes

- **incola**, **incolae** *m.* appears as a feminine noun in a few passages in Latin literature.
- **prōvincia**, **prōvinciae** *f.* is the term applied to a legally defined territory outside of Italy that was acquired by the Romans and made part of their *imperium*. The first Roman province was **Sicilia**, **Siciliae** *f.* Sicily.
- **amīcus**, **amīcī** *m.* and **inimīcus**, **inimīcī** *m.* are substantives of the adjectives **amīcus**, **-a**, **-um** and **inimīcus**, **-a**, **-um** (§19). These and certain other common substantives require their own vocabulary entries.
- **forum**, **forī** *n.* refers to the center of a town where business, politics, entertainment, and public life take place. The Roman forum (**Forum Rōmānum**) housed the law courts and many major temples.
- **imperium**, **imperiī** *n.* may mean simply a "command," "order," or the "authority" that a person in power has to give a command. When a Roman general or legate was sent to a province in order to govern, he was given **imperium**—that is, "power" or "authority"—over that province. By extension from these specific cases the word came to mean "supreme power," and finally, in the Imperial period, it came to be the word used to describe the "empire."
- **inimīcus**, **inimīcī** *m.* means a "personal enemy" as opposed to a public or political enemy.
- **populus**, **populī** *m.* is a **collective noun**, a noun that denotes a collection of persons regarded as a single entity. If it is used in the plural, it refers to several peoples.

Populus Rōmānus nōn timet.	The Roman populace is (people are) not afraid.
Dī populōs Italiae amant.	The gods love the peoples (populaces) of Italy.

- **Rōmānī**, **Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.* is a substantive of the adjective **Rōmānus**, **-a**, **-um**. Although **Rōmānī** is masculine, it may refer to a group of mixed gender.
- **nihil** is an *indeclinable neuter singular* noun. A noun that is **indeclinable** lacks case endings and has only one form. **nihil** may perform only the functions of the nominative or the accusative case. **nīl** is a contracted form of **nihil**: the **-h-** has dropped out, and the two **-i-**'s have contracted into one **-ī-**.
- **pugnō**, **pugnāre**, **pugnāvī**, **pugnātum** is an intransitive verb. It often takes an Ablative of Accompaniment that indicates the person *against* whom one is fighting.

Servī cum dominīs pugnant.	The slaves are fighting with (= against) the masters.

- **teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, **tentus** may mean "hold" something in one's hands or "grasp" something with one's intellect. It has an accessory idea of maintaining possession of something once held or grasped. It may also mean "occupy" in the sense of holding to one's place of habitation.

Adjectives

- Most first-second-declension adjectives have masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative forms that follow exactly the pattern of **amīcus**, **amīca**, **amīcum**. Thus they are given in the vocabulary list in a shortened form (e.g., **inimīc*us*, *-a*, *-um***). However, when learning new adjectives, ALWAYS WRITE OUT ADJECTIVE ENTRIES IN FULL (e.g., **inimīcus**, **inimīca**, **inimīcum**). Adjectives that do not follow this pattern are written out in full in the vocabulary lists.

  Both **amīcus**, **-a**, **-um** and **inimīcus**, **-a**, **-um** are often found with a Dative of Reference that indicates the *person to whom* someone is friendly or unfriendly. The dative is often found between the adjective and the noun that it modifies.

Rēgīna amīca dōnum virō dōnat.	The friendly queen is giving a gift to the man.
Rēgīna animam virīs inimīcam habet.	The queen has a soul hostile to men.

- **inimīcus**, **-a**, **-um** is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** (not) to **amīcus**.
- The most common meaning for **laetus**, **-a**, **-um** in all periods of Latin literature is "happy," but when it describes plants, crops, or soil, it may mean "flourishing" or "fertile." The same word is used metaphorically of literary or oratorical style, in which context its closest English equivalents are "rich" or "luxuriant." When it describes omens or weather, **laetus** often carries the notion of "favorable" or "propitious."

Laetī sunt nautae.	The sailors are happy.
Agrōs laetōs agricolae videō.	I see the flourishing fields of the farmer.

- **līber, lībera, līberum** means "free" both in a general sense (unrestrained, open) and in a social sense (free as opposed to enslaved).
- **magnus, -a, -um** has a quantitative sense (big, large) and a qualitative sense (great).
- The stem of **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** is **pulchr-** and thus, for example, the masculine singular genitive is **pulchrī.** Latin does not distinguish between "handsome" and "beautiful"; the adjective is used equally of men and women.
- **atque** and its alternate form **ac** are coordinating conjunctions. They connect a more particular or emphatic element or clause to what has gone before and thus may sometimes be translated "and (also)." **atque** or **ac** also may introduce a new point or aspect to a subject already under discussion. While there is no difference in meaning between the two words, **atque** is used before words beginning with vowels and words that begin with **h-**. Both are used before words beginning with consonants.
- The basic meaning of the adverb **mox** is "soon." By extension from this basic meaning it may mean "then" to mark the next in a series of events or actions.

Poēta in viam ambulat. *Mox* rēgīnam vidēbit.
The poet is walking into the street. *Soon* he will see the queen.
Poēta īram virōrum cōgitābit, *mox* deōrum.
The poet will ponder the anger of men, *then* [the anger] of the gods.

- The preposition **prō** has several distinct meanings illustrated in the following sentences:

Est via *prō* oppidō.	There is a street *in front of* the town.
***Prō* fīliīs labōrat.**	He works *on behalf of* (his) sons.
***Prō* factīs poenās dabit.**	He will pay the penalty *in return for (in exchange for)* (his) deeds.

	Derivatives	Cognates
bonus	**bon**anza; boon	
forum	**for**eign, **for**ensic	door
imperium	**imper**ial	
malus	**mal**ice; **mal**ady	
nihil	**nihil**istic; an**nihil**ate	
pugnō	**pugn**acious; im**pugn**	**pyg**my
teneō	ob**tain**; tenet; **ten**acious	**ten**don; tone
terra	**terri**tory	**toas**t; **thirs**t

§17. First-Second-Declension Adjectives

An **adjective** describes or modifies a noun. Examples of adjectives in English are "good," "happy," "green," "generous."

The vocabulary entry for a first-second-declension adjective contains the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative forms, followed by the English meaning(s). For example:

bonus, **bona**, **bonum** good

With very few exceptions, Latin nouns have only one gender and belong to only one declension. Adjectives, however, have *all genders,* and first-second-declension adjectives use endings borrowed from the first declension when modifying feminine nouns and from the second declension when modifying masculine and neuter nouns.

Like nouns, adjectives are declined. To decline a first-second-declension adjective, take the *stem from the feminine singular nominative form by dropping the -a* and add endings familiar from the first and second declensions of nouns. For example:

bonus, ***bon*a**, **bonum**
Stem: **bon-**

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bon**us**	bon**a**	bon**um**	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**
Gen.	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**ī**	bon**ōrum**	bon**ārum**	bon**ōrum**
Dat.	bon**ō**	bon**ae**	bon**ō**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Acc.	bon**um**	bon**am**	bon**um**	bon**ōs**	bon**ās**	bon**a**
Abl.	bon**ō**	bon**ā**	bon**ō**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**	bon**īs**
Voc.	bon**e**	bon**a**	bon**um**	bon**ī**	bon**ae**	bon**a**

OBSERVATIONS

1. For first-second-declension adjectives, the endings of masculine/feminine second-declension nouns are used for masculine forms; the endings of first-declension nouns are used for feminine forms; and the endings of neuter second-declension nouns are used for neuter forms.

2. Adjectives whose masculine singular nominative ends in **-us** have a separate vocative singular ending (**-e**). All other vocative forms of adjectives are identical with the nominative forms.

3. As is true for certain masculine/feminine second-declension nouns, some adjectives lack a masculine singular nominative ending and use instead a version of the stem as the masculine singular nominative. For example:

mis*er*, misera, miserum	wretched, pitiable, miserable
pulch*er*, pulchra, pulchrum	beautiful, handsome

For these adjectives also, the stem is taken from the feminine singular nominative. Thus the stem of **miser**, **misera**, **miserum** is **miser-**, and the stem of **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum** is **pulchr-**.

§18. Noun-Adjective Agreement

Adjectives are usually placed *after* the nouns they modify, but adjectives of size or quantity often *precede* their nouns. Although a Latin adjective is usually placed after its noun, it is best translated before. For example:

fēmina bona	good woman
multum aurum	much gold

When a noun is modified by two or more adjectives, **et** or **-que** is regularly used to connect the modifiers:

vir magnus et bonus	a great and good man

Adjectives must always agree with the nouns they modify in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. This is called **noun-adjective agreement**. For example:

deam pulchram	a beautiful goddess (d.o.)
servōrum miserōrum	of miserable slaves
poēta bonus	a good poet (subj.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. Because the noun **deam** is feminine singular accusative, the form of the adjective **pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum** that modifies it must be feminine singular accusative. Because the noun **servōrum** is masculine plural genitive, the form of the adjective **miser**, **misera**, **miserum** must be masculine plural genitive.

2. Because the noun **poēta** is masculine singular nominative, the form of the adjective **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum** that modifies it must be masculine singular nominative. Although **poēta** is a first-declension noun, it is masculine in gender, and the adjective that modifies it must have a masculine (i.e., second-declension) ending. **bonus** does not have the same ending as **poēta**, but it agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

☛ DRILL 17–18, PAGE 83, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§19. Substantive Use of the Adjective

Sometimes an adjective stands alone and does not modify a noun. When this occurs, the adjective is being **used substantively** (as a noun) and is called a **substantive**. When adjectives are used as substantives, they are translated with the addition of the English words "man," "woman," "thing" (sing.) or "men," "women," "things" (pl.), depending on the gender and number indicated by the ending of the adjective.[1] Case, as always, determines syntax. For example:

***Laetus bonam* amat.**	*The happy man the good woman* (d.o.) loves. *The happy man* loves *the good woman*.
Sunt *multa* in oppidō.	There are *many things* in the town.

1. The substantive use of the masculine plural may refer to groups of mixed gender. Hence, **bonī**, for example, may be translated "good people" to indicate that it refers to both men and women.

Because **laetus** has a masculine singular ending, the word "man" is added to the translation; because **bonam** has a feminine singular ending, the word "woman" is added to the translation. Because **multa** has a neuter plural ending, the word "things" is added to the translation.

Some Latin adjectives are so commonly used as substantives that they have become nouns: **amīcus**, **amīcī** *m.*, "friend" (friendly man); **inimīcus**, **inimīcī** *m.*, "(personal) enemy" (unfriendly man); **Rōmānī**, **Rōmānōrum** *m. pl.*, "(the) Romans" (Roman men).

☛ Drill 19, page 87, may now be done.

§20. Predicate Adjective

Like nouns, adjectives may appear with copulative verbs. When an adjective functions in this way, it is called a **Predicate Adjective**, and it must agree with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. For example:

Liber est *malus*.	The book is *bad*.
***Miserī* erant servī.**	*Miserable* were the slaves.
	The slaves were *miserable*.
Puerōs iubēbō esse *bonōs*.	The boys I shall order to be *good*.
	I shall order the boys to be *good*.

The syntax of **malus** and **miserī** is **Predicate Adjective in the nominative case**. The syntax of **bonōs** is **Predicate Adjective in the accusative case**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences, **malus**, **miserī**, and **bonōs** agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case.

2. Predicate adjectives may sometimes be viewed as substantives. Thus the second sentence may be translated "The slaves were miserable men." If the adjective **miserī**, for example, is understood as a substantive, its syntax is Predicate Nominative.

☛ Drill 19–20, page 91, may now be done.

§21. The Irregular Verb *eō*

The verb **eō**, **īre**, **iī/īvī**, **itum**, "go," is an irregular intransitive verb. It has irregular forms in the present, imperfect, and future active indicative. The conjugations of these three tenses of **eō** are presented below. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

Active Indicative

	Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*
Singular			
1	**eō**	**ībam**	**ībō**
2	**īs**	**ībās**	**ībis**
3	**it**	**ībat**	**ībit**
Plural			
1	**īmus**	**ībāmus**	**ībimus**
2	**ītis**	**ībātis**	**ībitis**
3	**eunt**	**ībant**	**ībunt**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Although the second principal part of **eō** has an **ī-** before the **-re** ending, it is *not* a fourth-conjugation verb.

2. In the present active indicative, the stem of **eō** shifts between **e-** (first person singular and third person plural) and **ī-**. (The **ī-** shortens in the third person singular according to the long vowel rule.) The **-u-** in the third person plural is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural.

3. In the imperfect and future active indicative, the stem of **eō** is always **ī-**. The infixes **-bā-** and **-bi-** are used to form these two tenses.

4. For all tenses of **eō**, the active personal endings are familiar: **-ō/-m**, **-s**, **-t**, **-mus**, **-tis**, **-nt**.

☛DRILL 21, PAGE 93, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§22. Introduction to the Passive Voice

The subject of a verb in the *active* voice *performs the action* of the verb. When a verb is in the *passive* voice, the subject does not perform but rather *receives the action* of the verb (see §5). For example:

The master *summons* the slave.
The master *is summoned* by the slave.

In the first sentence the subject, "master," performs the action of the verb, "summons," and the verb "summons" is in the active voice. The master is doing the summoning. In the second sentence the subject, "master," receives the action of the verb, "is summoned," and the verb "is summoned" is in the *passive* voice. The master is being summoned.

OBSERVATION

In Latin, as in English, any *transitive* verb—one that takes a direct object—may be found in both the active voice and the passive voice. An *intransitive verb*—one that does not take a direct object—is generally not found in the passive voice in Latin.[2]

The Latin translation of the first sentence above is:

Dominus servum vocat.

The verb **vocat** is third person singular present active indicative. In the second sentence, the Latin translation of the verb "is summoned" requires a verb in the third person singular present indicative, but since the subject, "master," receives the action of the verb, the voice must be *passive*.

All English passive forms are called **compound forms** (< **compōnō**, put together) because they are made of at least two separate words. For example, "is summoned" is a compound of "is" (the third person singular present indicative of the verb "be") and "summoned" (the past participle of the verb "summon"). Some Latin tenses use compound forms in the passive, but many are uncompounded.

☛ Drill 22, page 97, may now be done.

§23. Present, Imperfect, and Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

Passive Personal Endings

The present, imperfect, and future passive indicative of the first and second conjugations are formed exactly as are their active counterparts, except that **passive personal endings** are added instead of active personal endings.

		Active Personal Endings	Passive Personal Endings
Person		*Singular*	*Singular*
1	I	**-ō, -m**	**-or, -r**
2	you	**-s**	**-ris/-re**
3	he, she, it	**-t**	**-tur**
		Plural	*Plural*
1	we	**-mus**	**-mur**
2	you (pl.)	**-tis**	**-minī**
3	they	**-nt**	**-ntur**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Although two endings are given for the first person singular passive (**-or**, **-r**), they are *not* interchangeable. Rather, when an active form ends in **-ō**, its corresponding passive form ends in **-or**. When an active form ends in **-m**, its corresponding passive form ends in **-r**.

2. The second person singular endings **-ris** and **-re** *are* interchangeable. There is no distinction in meaning.

2. For the impersonal use of the passive of intransitive verbs, see §54.

3. Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending **-r** and the third person plural ending **-ntur**. Thus, the complete **LONG VOWEL RULE** is:

LONG VOWELS SHORTEN BEFORE THE ENDINGS -M, -T, -NT, -R, AND -NTUR.

MEMORIZE THIS RULE.

4. The passive personal endings are used to form many tenses in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.

Nearly every form of the present passive system may be formed by replacing the active personal ending of a particular form with the equivalent passive ending.

Present Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the present passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the *passive personal endings* (use **-or** for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the present passive indicative conjugation of **vocō**, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem: **vocā-**

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular				
1	**vocō**	I call	**vocor**	I am (being) called
2	**vocās**	you call	**vocāris/ vocāre**	you are (being) called
3	**vocat**	he, she, it calls	**vocātur**	he, she, it is (being) called
Plural				
1	**vocāmus**	we call	**vocāmur**	we are (being) called
2	**vocātis**	you (pl.) call	**vocāminī**	you (pl.) are (being) called
3	**vocant**	they call	**vocantur**	they are (being) called

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the stem vowel **-ā-** contracts with the ending **-or** (*vocāor > **vocor**). In the first person singular of second-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-ē-** shortens before the ending **-or** (e.g., *movēor > **moveor**).

2. For verbs of both the first and second conjugations, whenever the ending **-re** is used, the second person singular present passive indicative resembles exactly the present active infinitive (e.g., **vocāre**). Context usually makes clear which form occurs in a particular sentence. ALWAYS WRITE OUT ALL ALTERNATE FORMS COMPLETELY WHEN DOING DRILLS OR EXERCISES.

3. Long vowels shorten before the third person plural ending **-ntur** according to the long vowel rule. Long vowels do not shorten before the third person singular ending **-tur**.

4. The English translations for the present passive forms given above reflect the fact that these forms, like their active counterparts, may indicate either simple or progressive/repeated aspect. For example, **vocor** may be translated "I am called" (simple aspect), "I am called (repeatedly)" (repeated aspect), or "I am being called" (progressive aspect).

Imperfect Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the imperfect passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the infix for the imperfect indicative: **-bā-**
3. add the *passive personal endings* (use **-r** for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the imperfect passive indicative conjugation of **vocō**, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem: **vocā-**
Infix: **-bā-**

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
Singular				
1	**vocābam**	I was calling	**vocābar**	I was being called
2	**vocābās**	you were calling	**vocābāris/ vocābāre**	you were being called
3	**vocābat**	he, she, it was calling	**vocābātur**	he, she, it was being called
Plural				
1	**vocābāmus**	we were calling	**vocābāmur**	we were being called
2	**vocābātis**	you (pl.) were calling	**vocābāminī**	you (pl.) were being called
3	**vocābant**	they were calling	**vocābantur**	they were being called

OBSERVATION

Long vowels shorten before the first person singular ending **-r** and the third person plural ending **-ntur** according to the long vowel rule. Long vowels do *not* shorten before the third person singular ending **-tur**.

Future Passive Indicative of First and Second Conjugations

To form the future passive indicative of the first and second conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. add the infix for the future indicative: **-bi-**
3. add the *passive personal endings* (use **-or** for first person singular)

Thus, for example, the future passive indicative conjugation of **vocō**, with the active conjugation beside it for comparison, is:

Present Stem:	**vocā-**			
Infix:	**-bi-**			
	ACTIVE		**PASSIVE**	
Singular				
1	**vocābō**	I shall call	**vocābor**	I shall be called
2	**vocābis**	you will call	**vocāberis/ vocābere**	you will be called
3	**vocābit**	he, she, it will call	**vocābitur**	he, she, it will be called
Plural				
1	**vocābimus**	we shall call	**vocābimur**	we shall be called
2	**vocābitis**	you (pl.) will call	**vocābiminī**	you (pl.) will be called
3	**vocābunt**	they will call	**vocābuntur**	they will be called

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the **-i-** of the infix **-bi-** contracts with the ending **-or** to give the resulting form (*vocābior > **vocābor**).

2. In the second person singular passive, the **-i-** of **-bi-** changes to **-e-** before the endings **-ris** and **-re**. The following mnemonic device may be useful:

BEFORE **-RIS** AND **-RE**, **-I-** TURNS TO **-E-**.

3. In the third person plural, the **-i-** of the infix **-bi-** changes to **-u-**. The **-u-** is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the future passive indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

§24. Synopsis I: Present Active and Passive Indicative

A **synopsis** (< Greek *synopsis*, a seeing all together) is a brief summary or condensed view of the forms of a Latin verb. Generating a synopsis is a systematic way of reviewing and sharpening one's knowledge of verb morphology. To make a synopsis, one chooses at random a verb and then a person and number for the subject. Then the principal parts for that verb are generated, followed by the forms of the verb in all tenses in the given person and number. Here is a model synopsis for **timeō** in the third person singular.

Principal Parts:	**timeō, timēre, timuī, ——**			
Person and Number:	**3rd sing.**			
Indicative	*Active*	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Present	**timet**	he, she, it fears	**timētur**	he, she, it is (being) feared
Imperfect	**timēbat**	he, she, it was fearing	**timēbātur**	he, she, it was being feared
Future	**timēbit**	he, she, it will fear	**timēbitur**	he, she, it will be feared

OBSERVATION

In a synopsis, basic English translations should be given for indicative forms.

☛ DRILL 23–24, PAGE 101, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§25. Ablative of Personal Agent

The preposition **ā/ab** followed by a noun in the ablative case is frequently used with verbs in the passive voice to express the *agent* or *person by whom* the action of the verb is done. The preposition **ā/ab** is translated "by,"[3] and an ablative so used is called an **Ablative of Personal Agent**. For example:

Fīlius *ā rēgīnā* vocābātur.	The son *by the queen* was being summoned. The son was being summoned *by the queen*.

The syntax of **rēgīnā** is **Ablative of Personal Agent**.

The Ablative of Personal Agent expresses the person *by whose agency* an action is performed. Thus it is quite different from the Ablative of Means, which expresses the inanimate tool or instrument *by means of which* an action is performed. For example:

Nautae *verbīs* poētae moventur.	The sailors *by (means of) the words* of the poet are (being) stirred up. The sailors are (being) stirred up *by the words* of the poet.
Nautae *ā poētā* moventur.	The sailors *by (the agency of) the poet* are (being) stirred up. The sailors are (being) stirred up *by the poet*.

No preposition is used with the Ablative of Means, while the preposition **ā/ab** must be used with the Ablative of Personal Agent.

§26. The Uses of *habeō* and *videō* in the Passive Voice

When **habeō** appears in the passive voice with the meaning "be considered," it takes a Predicate Nominative or a Predicate Adjective in the Nominative Case. For example:

Deus vir habētur.	A god the man is considered. The man is considered a god.
Bona habēbantur cōnsilia fēminārum.	Good were being considered the plans of the women. The plans of the women were being considered good.

3. Although it is convenient to translate the Ablative of Personal Agent with the English preposition "by," in Latin the agent of an action in the passive is understood as the person *from* whom the action originates, and thus Latin uses the preposition **ā/ab**.

When **videō** appears in the passive voice with the meaning "seem," it takes a Predicate Nominative or a Predicate Adjective in the Nominative Case. For example:

Dea fēmina esse vidētur.	A goddess the woman to be seems. The woman seems to be a goddess.
Miser rēgīnae poēta vidētur.	Wretched to the queen the poet seems. The poet seems wretched to the queen.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Both a Complementary Infinitive (as in the first sentence) and a Dative of Reference (as in the second sentence) may accompany the verb **videō** meaning "seem."

2. Sometimes a Complementary Infinitive alone appears with **videō** meaning "seem." For example:

Patriam amāre vidēris.	You seem to love (your) country.

In the sentences above, passive forms of **habeō** and **videō** function as copulative verbs. Passive forms of both verbs may also have passive meanings such as "be held," "be seen." An Ablative of Personal Agent often makes clear the passive meaning of the verb. For example:

Dominus ā servīs vidētur.	The master is seen by (his) slaves.

§27. Ablative of Manner

A noun in the ablative case may express the *way* or *manner* in which an action is performed. An ablative so used is called an **Ablative of Manner**. When a noun functioning as an Ablative of Manner is *not modified by an adjective,* the preposition **cum** must be used. When a noun *is* modified by an adjective, **cum** is optional. For example:

Agricolae cum *studiō* labōrābant.	The farmers *with zeal* were working. The farmers were working *with zeal.* The farmers were working *zealously.*
Magnā (cum) *cūrā* in viā ambulābō.	*With great care* in the street I shall walk. I shall walk in the street *with great care.* I shall walk in the street *very carefully.*

The syntax of each italicized word (**studiō**, **cūrā**) is **Ablative of Manner**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence **cum** is required because no adjective modifies **studiō**.

2. In the second sentence, because **magnā** modifies **cūrā**, **cum** is optional. If **cum** does occur, it usually appears between the adjective and the noun, as shown above, because it is the least important element of the phrase, and greater balance of the important elements (**magnā** and **cūrā**) is achieved.

3. An Ablative of Manner may often be translated—less literally—by an English adverb ending in "-ly." In the translation of the second sentence, the word "very" must be used to represent the force of the adjective **magnā**.

§28. Subject Infinitive

The infinitive is an indeclinable verbal noun in the neuter singular (see §12). The infinitive may be used as the *subject* of another verb. Such an infinitive is called a **Subject Infinitive**. For example:

Bonum est *labōrāre*.	Good is *to work*. *To work* is good. *Working* is good.
Pulchrum est patriam *amāre*.	Beautiful is the country (d.o.) *to love*. *To love* the country is beautiful. *Loving* (one's) country is beautiful.

The syntax of each italicized word (**labōrāre**, **amāre**) is **Subject Infinitive**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences **bonum** and **pulchrum** are neuter singular nominative to agree with the subject infinitives they modify. The syntax of each is Predicate Adjective in the nominative case. They may also be considered substantives functioning as Predicate Nominatives (To work is *a good thing*, To love (one's) country is *a beautiful thing*).
2. The Subject Infinitive may take a direct object. In the second sentence **patriam** is the direct object of the infinitive **amāre**.
3. Each of the two subject infinitives in the sentences above may also be translated with an English gerund, also a verbal noun: "working," "loving."
4. When translating sentences with subject infinitives, it is often convenient to add the English expletive "it."[4] For example: "It is good to work."

§29. Apposition

Sometimes a noun receives further definition or limitation from another noun placed next to it and often set off in commas. The second noun is called an **appositive** (< **ad-pōnō**, place near to) or is said to be **in apposition to** the noun before it. A noun in apposition must be in the same case as the word that it defines or limits.

Rēgīna, *fēmina* bona et magna, patriam *Italiam* amat.
The queen, a good and great *woman,* (her) country (d.o.) *Italy* loves.
The queen, a good and great *woman,* loves (her) country, *Italy*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Rēgīna** is in the nominative case because it is the subject of the verb. **Fēmina** is nominative because it is *in apposition to* or is an *appositive of* **rēgīna**. **Fēmina bona et magna** defines **rēgīna**.
2. **Patriam** is in the accusative case because it is the direct object of the verb. **Italiam** is accusative because it is *in apposition to* or is an *appositive of* **patriam**.

☛ DRILL 25–29, PAGE 107, MAY NOW BE DONE.

4. For the meaning of "expletive," see §10.

Short Readings

1. With his lovesick son in mind, an old man makes this observation.

   . . . lepidumst amāre semper. (Plautus, *Cistellāria* 312)

lepidus, **-a**, **-um** pleasant, agreeable; **lepidumst = lepidum est**[5]

2. An old man desires his friend to be understanding about his newfound crush.

   hūmānum amārest, hūmānum autem ignōscerest. (Plautus, *Mercātor* 320)

hūmānus, **-a**, **-um** human
amārest = amāre est[5]
autem (postpositive adv.) however; moreover
ignōscō, **ignōscere**, **ignōvī**, **ignōtus** forgive, pardon; **ignōscerest = ignōscere est**[5]

3. In a discussion about poverty, the lives of ancient philosophers call to mind the following line of the comic poet Caecilius Statius.

   saepe est etiam sub palliolō sordidō sapientia.

   (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* III.56)

saepe (adv.) often
etiam (adv.) even
sub (prep. + abl.) under
palliolum, **palliolī** *n.* little cloak
sordidus, **-a**, **-um** dirty, grimy, unwashed

4. The poet describes the bliss of two lovers.

   mūtuīs animīs amant amantur. (Catullus XLV.20)

mūtuus, **-a**, **-um** shared, reciprocal, mutual

5. The historian reports the senators' response to Cato's speech about the punishment of the Catilinarian conspirators.

   Catō clārus atque magnus habētur. (Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 53)

Catō = *nom. sing.*, (Marcus Porcius) Cato
clārus, **-a**, **-um** bright, clear; famous; honorable

6. Macareus, one of Odysseus's men, speaks wearily.

   . . . rursus inīre fretum, rursus dare vēla iubēmur. (Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* XIV.437)

rursus (adv.) again
ineō, **inīre**, **iniī**, **initus** go into
fretum, **fretī** *n.* sea

5. When **es** or **est** follows a word ending in **-m** or **-e**, it may drop the initial **e-** and join the preceding word. This is called **aphaeresis** (< Greek *aphairēsis*, taking away).

7. The historian reports the command of the leader Camillus to the Roman soldiers starving at the time of the siege of the Gauls. (The soldiers and other Romans had been about to pay ransom for their freedom.)

suōs in acervum conicere sarcinās et arma aptāre ferrōque nōn aurō reciperāre patriam iubet . . . (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* V.49.3)

suus, **-a**, **-um** his own
acervus, **acervī** *m.* heap, pile
coniciō, **conicere**,[6] **coniēcī**, **coniectus** throw together
sarcina, **sarcinae** *f.* pack, bundle
aptō (1-tr.) fit, put on
reciperō (1-tr.) get back, recover, regain

Two Roman proverbs

8. Incertus animus dīmidium est sapientiae. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* I52)

incertus, **-a**, **-um** uncertain
dīmidium, **dīmidiī** *n.* half

9. Patientia animī occultās dīvitiās habet. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* P7)

patientia, **patientiae** *f.* forbearance, patience
occultus, **-a**, **-um** hidden
dīvitiae, **dīvitiārum** *f. pl.* wealth, riches

6. **coniciō** and **conicere** are pronounced as if they were spelled *coniiciō and *coniicere (with a consonantal and a vocalic **-i-**).

CHAPTER IV

Vocabulary

➤ **causa**, **causae** *f.* reason, cause; case
glōria, **glōriae** *f.* renown, glory
invidia, **invidiae** *f.* envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment
➤ **sententia**, **sententiae** *f.* thought, feeling; opinion

➤ **altum**, **altī** *n.* deep sea; height
➤ **auxilium**, **auxiliī** *n.* aid, help
➤ **auxilia, auxiliōrum** *n. pl.* auxiliary troops
caelum, **caelī** *n.* sky, heaven
➤ **socius**, **sociī** *m.* ally, comrade

ego, **meī** (personal pron.) I; me (§38)
nōs, **nostrum/nostrī** (personal pron.) we; us (§38)
tū, **tuī** (personal pron.) you (§38)
vōs, **vestrum/vestrī** (personal pron.) you (pl.) (§38)
is, **ea**, **id** (personal pron.) he, she, it; they; him, her, it; them (§38)

➤ **agō**, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctus** drive; do; spend, conduct
causam agere (idiom) to plead a case
➤ **canō**, **canere**, **cecinī**, **cantus** sing (of)
➤ **capiō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus** take (up), capture; win
cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan
➤ **dīcō**, **dīcere**, **dīxī**, **dictus** say, speak, tell
➤ **dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductus** lead; consider
➤ **faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus** make; do
➤ **gerō**, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestus** bear; manage, conduct; perform
bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war
➤ **mittō**, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missus** send
➤ **pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus** put, place; set aside
regō, **regere**, **rēxī**, **rēctus** rule, control
scrībō, **scrībere**, **scrīpsī**, **scrīptus** write

➤ **audiō**, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītus** hear, listen (to)
➤ **sentiō**, **sentīre**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus** perceive; feel
➤ **veniō**, **venīre**, **vēnī**, **ventum** come

is, **ea**, **id** (demonstr. adj.) this, that; these, those (§38)

altus, **-a**, **-um** tall, high; deep
➤ **clārus**, **-a**, **-um** bright, clear; famous
➤ **cupidus**, **-a**, **-um** desirous (+ gen.)
meus, **-a**, **-um** my, mine (§39)
noster, **nostra**, **nostrum** our, ours (§39)
➤ **paucī, paucae, pauca** few
socius, **-a**, **-um** allied
tuus, **-a**, **-um** your, yours (§39)
validus, **-a**, **-um** strong; healthy
vester, **vestra**, **vestrum** your (pl.), yours (pl.) (§39)

➤ **per** (prep. + acc.) through; by
➤ **quidem** (postpositive adv.) indeed, certainly; at least
➤ **equidem** (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part
➤ **nē . . . quidem** not even

Vocabulary Notes

- The noun **causa**, **causae** *f.* has a general meaning of "reason" or "cause" and a more particular meaning of legal "case."
- **sententia**, **sententiae** *f.* is derived from the verb **sentiō** and refers to an opinion, either privately held (thought, feeling) or publicly given (vote, opinion). In the former sense, it may refer to the meaning underlying a speech or an expression. In the latter sense, it may mean the "judgment" or "sentence" of a court. It may also refer to a written or spoken "sentence."
- **altum**, **altī** *n.* is a substantive of the adjective **altus**, **-a**, **-um** and may mean either "deep sea" or "height."
- **auxilium**, **auxiliī** *n.* is an **abstract noun**, a noun that denotes something that cannot be perceived by the senses (e.g., wisdom, happiness, slavery). The plural of an abstract noun in Latin is often used with a concrete meaning. Thus, in military contexts, the plural of **auxilium—auxilia**, **auxiliōrum** *n. pl.*—means "auxiliary troops," troops of allied soldiers, not citizens.
- **socius**, **sociī** *m.* is a substantive of the adjective **socius**, **-a**, **-um**. It is used both in personal contexts (comrade) and in legal and political ones (ally). It is often used of cities or peoples from outside Italy that were allies of Rome.
- **agō**, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctus** is a verb describing action generally, its particular meanings being derived from context and from the specific direct objects accompanying the verb. It may mean "drive" (cattle, goats, plunder, a chariot, the winds); "do," "act," "manage," "plead" (a court case); or "spend," "conduct" (time, life).
- **canō**, **canere**, **cecinī**, **cantus** is a transitive verb and thus takes a direct object. The third principal part, **cecinī**, is reduplicated (cf. **dedī**).

Poēta bellum canēbat.	The poet was singing of war.

The translation includes the preposition "of" because this is the common English expression. In Latin the direct object of this verb is always accusative.

- In the third principal part of **capiō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus**, the root vowel changes to a long **-ē-**. The change of the vowel indicates a change in tense. A change in root vowel that corresponds to a change in meaning is called **ablaut**. This phenomenon is common to all PIE languages. Cf. English **sing**, **sang**, **sung**; **song**.
- **dīcō**, **dīcere**, **dīxī**, **dictus** is a verb of *giving, showing,* and *telling* and thus may take a direct object and an indirect object.
- **dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductus** has a concrete and an abstract meaning: "lead" and "consider."
- In the third principal part of **faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-** (cf. **capiō**). **faciō** is a transitive verb that means "make," "do." "Make" includes ideas of creating, causing, or representing something. "Do" means perform or carry out an action, a deed, a crime, orders, etc. In the passive voice of the present system, **faciō** has irregular forms made from the verb **fīō** (§126). Until these forms are learned, synopses of **faciō** should include active forms only.
- **gerō**, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestus** has three distinct meanings: 1. "bear" or "carry" (equipment, clothing); 2. "have" or "bear" as a permanent or temporary feature of body or mind (wounds, reputation, anger); or 3. "manage," "conduct," or "perform" (oneself, business, political office). The first of these three meanings is found only in poetry.
- In the third principal part of **mittō**, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missus**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ī-**. **mittō** is regularly found with two constructions indicating the recipient: **ad** + accusative or a Dative of Reference.

Agricola ad fīlium pecūniam mittit.	The farmer sends money to (his) son.
Agricola fīliō pecūniam mittit.	The farmer sends money to (his) son.

When **mittō** is accompanied by **ad** + accusative, the prepositional phrase emphasizes motion toward someone or something. With a Dative of Reference, the person for whom something is meant is emphasized (i.e., The farmer sends money meant for his son).

- **pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus** has two distinct meanings: "put," "place," *or* "set aside." Compare the following sentences:

Incolae arma in oppidō pōnunt.	The inhabitants are placing weapons in the town.
Incolae arma pōnunt.	The inhabitants are setting aside (their) weapons.

Context usually makes clear which meaning is appropriate.

➤ **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus** is a transitive verb that may be used absolutely. When it takes a direct object, it may be translated either "hear" or "listen to." When it is used absolutely, it may be translated either "hear" or "listen."

Rēgīna incolās audit.	The queen listens to/hears the inhabitants.
Rēgīna audit.	The queen listens/hears.

➤ In the third principal part of **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-**. The **-ē-** in the fourth principal part is long before **-ns-**. A SHORT VOWEL BEFORE **-ns-** ALWAYS BECOMES LONG (e.g., **īnsula**). The basic meaning of **sentiō** is "perceive through one of the senses." Thus it has an intellectual sense (perceive, observe, notice) and a more physical or emotional sense (experience, feel, suffer).

➤ In the third principal part of **veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum**, the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-**. **veniō** is an intransitive verb.

➤ The basic meaning of **clārus, -a, -um** is the visual idea of "bright" or "clear." In this sense, it regularly describes such things as sky, color, or lightning. It has a transferred sense of "evident" or "manifest" when describing more abstract concepts (plans, affairs). When applied to people, it means "famous" or "distinguished."

➤ **cupidus, -a, -um** is an adjective often found with an Objective Genitive (§36).

➤ Because the adjective **paucī, paucae, pauca** means "few," it appears only in the plural, and its vocabulary entry includes the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural nominative forms. The stem is **pauc-**. This word often appears with a Partitive Genitive (§34).

➤ **per** is a preposition that takes the accusative case and expresses motion "through" space or time. It may also be translated "throughout" or "along." **per** also expresses ideas of means or agency (often with personal pronouns) and may sometimes be translated "by."

Per viās oppidī ambulābimus.
We shall walk through the streets of the town.
Sententia populī per bonōs mōnstrātur.
The opinion of the people is being shown through (by) the good men.
Oppidum per arma tenēbant.
They were holding the town through (by) arms.

➤ **quidem** is a postpositive adverb that usually emphasizes (indeed, certainly) or limits (at least) the word immediately preceding it.

Pulchrum quidem est amāre.	Beautiful indeed it is to love. (emphasizes)
Mihi quidem malum est bellum.	To me at least war is bad. (limits)

quidem can also emphasize or limit an entire sentence.

➤ **equidem** (the particle **e-** + **quidem**) is an adverb that usually occurs with a verb in the first person singular or plural. It is used to emphasize something about oneself or to affirm one's own opinion. **equidem** is not postpositive.

Equidem prō patriā pugnābō.	I for my part shall fight for the country.

➤ **nē . . . quidem** is translated "not even" and surrounds the word or words being qualified.

Rēgīna nē fīliō quidem aurum dat.	The queen is giving gold not even to (her) son.

	Derivatives	Cognates
agō	act, **ag**ent	**ag**ony; ped**ag**ogue; prot**ag**onist; **ax**iom
auxilium	**auxil**iary	wax
caelum	**cel**estial	
canō	**cant**ata; chant, in**cent**ive	hen
capiō	**capt**ure; per**ceive**; muni**cip**al	have; haven; **haw**k; gaff
clārus	**cal**endar; de**clare**	**l**ow; hale
decem	**Decem**ber; **deci**mal; **d**ime; do**zen**	seven**teen**; dean; **deca**de; ten
dīcō	**dict**ate; **d**itto; **d**itty	**tok**en; para**digm**; theo**dic**y
dūcō	ab**duct**; **duk**e; pro**duce**	tug; tow; team
ego	ego	I
meī		me; **my**self
gerō	**ger**und	
invidia	**invid**ious; envy	
is	**id**; **id**entify; **i**terate	
mittō	**miss**ive; inter**mitt**ent	
nōs	**nos**trum	**us**; **ou**r
paucī	**pauc**ity; poco	**po**ny
scrībō	**scrib**ble; manu**script**	
sentiō	**sent**ence; **sent**iment; sense	send
socius	**soci**al; **soci**ety; as**soci**ate	
validus	in**valid**; **val**ence; a**vail**	wield
veniō	e**vent**; co**ven**ant; pre**vent**	come

§30. Present, Imperfect, and Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

Verbs of the third conjugation are distinguished by a short **-e-** at the end of the present stem. For example:

regō, **regere**, **rēxī**, **rēctus** rule Present Stem: **rege-**

A subgroup of the third conjugation (third i-stem) is further distinguished by an **-i-** before the **-ō** ending of the first principal part. For example:

cap*iō*, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus** take, capture Present Stem: **cape-**

Verbs of the fourth conjugation are distinguished by a long **-ī-** at the end of the present stem and an **-i-** before the **-ō** ending of the first principal part. For example:

aud*iō*, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītus** hear, listen (to) Present Stem: **audī-**

To form the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of first- and second-conjugation verbs, infixes, endings, or both are added directly to the present stem. By contrast, to form the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of third-, third i-stem-, and fourth-conjugation verbs, CERTAIN REGULAR CHANGES MUST BE MADE IN THE STEM VOWELS BEFORE INFIXES OR ENDINGS CAN BE ADDED.

Present Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the present active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

3rd	*3rd i-stem*	*4th*
-e- → -i-	**-e- → -i-**	**-ī-** stays as is

3. add the *active or passive personal endings* (use **-ō** or **-or** for first person singular) directly to the *changed* present stem

Thus the present active and passive indicative conjugations of, for example, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are:

Changed Present Stems:

	regi-		**capi-**		**audī-** (no change)	
Singular						
	Active	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*
1	**regō**	**regor**	**capiō**	**capior**	**audiō**	**audior**
2	**regis**	**regeris/ regere**	**capis**	**caperis/ capere**	**audīs**	**audīris/ audīre**
3	**regit**	**regitur**	**capit**	**capitur**	**audit**	**audītur**
Plural						
1	**regimus**	**regimur**	**capimus**	**capimur**	**audīmus**	**audīmur**
2	**regitis**	**regiminī**	**capitis**	**capiminī**	**audītis**	**audīminī**
3	**regunt**	**reguntur**	**capiunt**	**capiuntur**	**audiunt**	**audiuntur**

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular of all third-conjugation verbs, the **-i-** at the end of the changed present stem contracts with the endings **-ō** and **-or** (e.g., *regiō > **regō**; *regior > **regor**). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.

2. In the third person plural of all third-conjugation verbs, the **-i-** changes to **-u-**. The **-u-** is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

3. In the first person singular of all third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, the **-i-** at the end of the changed present stem does *not* contract with the endings **-ō** and **–or**. THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.

4. In the third person plural of all third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, the **-i-** is followed by **-u-**. The **-u-** is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

5. In the second person singular passive indicative of third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, the **-i-** changes to an **-e-** before the endings **-ris** and **-re**.[1] MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

6. In the present indicative, third-i-stem-conjugation verbs differ from third-conjugation verbs only in the first person singular and the third person plural.

7. In the first person singular of fourth-conjugation verbs, the **-ī-** at the end of the present stem shortens before the endings **-ō** and **-or** (e.g., *audīō > **audiō**; *audīor > **audior**). THE FIRST PERSON SINGULAR ACTIVE IS THE FIRST PRINCIPAL PART.

8. In the third person plural of all fourth-conjugation verbs, the **-ī-** is shortened to **-i-** and is followed by **-u-**. The **-u-** is a remnant of an earlier form of the third person plural and is thus an exception to the rules for forming the present active indicative. MEMORIZE THIS EXCEPTION.

9. In the third person singular active of all fourth-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-ī-** shortens according to the long vowel rule.

10. Third-i-stem-conjugation verbs and fourth-conjugation verbs are identical in the first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural.

1. The original stem vowel of the third conjugation was **-i-**, but this **-i-** changed to **-e-** before the **-re** ending of the present active infinitive.

Imperfect Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the imperfect active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

3rd	*3rd i-stem*	*4th*
-e- → -ē-	**-e- → -iē-**	**-ī- → -iē-**

3. add the *infix* for the imperfect indicative: **-bā-**
4. add the *active or passive personal endings* (use **-m** or **-r** for first person singular)

Thus the imperfect active indicative conjugations of, for example, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are:

Changed Present Stems:

	regē-		capiē-		audiē-	
Infix:	-bā-		-bā-		-bā-	
Singular						
	Active	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*
1	regēbam	regēbar	capiēbam	capiēbar	audiēbam	audiēbar
2	regēbās	regēbāris/ regēbāre	capiēbās	capiēbāris/ capiēbāre	audiēbās	audiēbāris/ audiēbāre
3	regēbat	regēbātur	capiēbat	capiēbātur	audiēbat	audiēbātur
Plural						
1	regēbāmus	regēbāmur	capiēbāmus	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmus	audiēbāmur
2	regēbātis	regēbāminī	capiēbātis	capiēbāminī	audiēbātis	audiēbāminī
3	regēbant	regēbantur	capiēbant	capiēbantur	audiēbant	audiēbantur

OBSERVATIONS

1. The changed present stem of third-conjugation verbs (e.g., **regē-**) is identical with the present stem of second-conjugation verbs (e.g., **movē-**). As a result, the conjugation of the imperfect indicative of third-conjugation verbs resembles that of second-conjugation verbs.

2. The imperfect indicative of both third-i-stem- and fourth-conjugation verbs has **-iē-** before the infix **-bā-**. As a result, the conjugation of the imperfect indicative of third-i-stem-conjugation verbs resembles that of fourth-conjugation verbs.

3. In the first person singular active and passive, third person singular active, and third person plural active and passive of all three conjugations above, long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

Future Active and Passive Indicative of Third, Third i-stem, and Fourth Conjugations

To form the future active and passive indicative of the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. change the stem vowels as follows:

3rd	*3rd i-stem*	*4th*
-e- → -ē-	**-e- → -iē-**	**-ī- → -iē-**

3. add the *active or passive personal endings* (use **-m** or **-r** for first person singular)

Thus the future active indicative conjugations of, for example, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are:

Changed Present Stems:

	regē-		**capiē-**		**audiē-**	
Singular						
	Active	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*	*Active*	*Passive*
1	**regam**	**regar**	**capiam**	**capiar**	**audiam**	**audiar**
2	**regēs**	**regēris/ regēre**	**capiēs**	**capiēris/ capiēre**	**audiēs**	**audiēris/ audiēre**
3	**reget**	**regētur**	**capiet**	**capiētur**	**audiet**	**audiētur**
Plural						
1	**regēmus**	**regēmur**	**capiēmus**	**capiēmur**	**audiēmus**	**audiēmur**
2	**regētis**	**regēminī**	**capiētis**	**capiēminī**	**audiētis**	**audiēminī**
3	**regent**	**regentur**	**capient**	**capientur**	**audient**	**audientur**

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular of third-conjugation verbs, **-ā-** appears rather than **-ē-** before the endings **-m** and **-r**. Similarly, in the first person singular of third-i-stem- and fourth-conjugation verbs, **-iā-** rather than **-iē-** appears before the endings **-m** and **-r**. MEMORIZE THESE EXCEPTIONS. In all cases, **-ā-** shortens before **-m** and **-r** according to the long vowel rule. In all other persons, the sign of the future is **-ē-**.

2. The infix **-bi-**, used to mark the future tense of first- and second-conjugation verbs, is not used in the third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations. For these conjugations the sign of the future is **-ē-**. The following mnemonic device may be useful:

IN CONJUGATIONS 4 AND 3, THE SIGN OF THE FUTURE IS LONG **-Ē-**.

3. In the first person singular active and passive, third person singular active, and third person plural active and passive of all three conjugations above, long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

☛ DRILL 30, PAGE 127, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§31. Present Passive Infinitive of All Verbs

The infinitive has been defined as a verbal noun with the properties of tense (present, perfect, or future) and voice (active or passive) (§12). The second principal part of every verb is the present active infinitive and is regularly translated "to_____." To form the present passive infinitive for verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, CHANGE THE FINAL **-E** OF THE PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE TO **-Ī**. For example:

Present Active Infinitive	*Present Passive Infinitive*
vocāre (to call)	**vocārī** (to be called)
movēre (to move)	**movērī** (to be moved)
audīre (to hear)	**audīrī** (to be heard)

To form the present passive infinitive of third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, DROP THE FINAL **-ERE** OF THE PRESENT ACTIVE INFINITIVE AND ADD **-Ī**.[2] For example:

Present Active Infinitive	*Present Passive Infinitive*
regere (to rule)	**regī** (to be ruled)
capere (to capture)	**capī** (to be captured)

§32. Present Active and Passive Imperative of All Verbs

The imperative mood has been identified as the mood used for giving direct commands (see §5). Each of the verbs italicized below would be rendered in Latin by a verb in the imperative mood:

Eat your vegetables!
Give me a sword.
Listen, friends.

Commands such as these are addressed either to "you" (singular) or "you" (plural). These second-person subjects are seldom expressed in Latin or English. Because imperatives are in the second person, they are often (but not always) found with nouns in the vocative case that indicate the persons to whom the commands are addressed. In the third sentence above, for example, "friends" would be vocative plural.

To form the present active imperative of all four conjugations:

1. (for the singular) take the present stem *and make no changes*
2. (for the plural) take the present stem and add **-te**

Present Stem	*Present Active Imperative Sing.*		*Present Active Imperative Pl.*	
vocā-	**vocā**	summon	**vocāte**	summon (pl.)
movē-	**movē**	move	**movēte**	move (pl.)
rege-	**rege**	rule	**regite**	rule (pl.)
cape-	**cape**	take	**capite**	capture (pl.)
audī-	**audī**	listen	**audīte**	listen (pl.)

2. The present passive infinitive of **faciō** is supplied by another verb. See §126.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present active imperative plural of third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-e-** changes to **-i-** before the ending **-te**. Compare this stem vowel change to the change that occurs in the present active and passive indicative of third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs (e.g., **rege- > regi-**).

2. The present active imperative singular of **dō** is **dā**. Although the stem has a short **-a-**, the **-a-** is lengthened in the imperative singular form (**dā**) by analogy with other first-conjugation verbs.

3. The imperatives of **eō** are regularly formed: **ī** (singular) and **īte** (plural).[3]

4. Present imperatives are so called because they are formed with the present stem, but imperatives look to the future and are future in time. Some verbs have alternate imperative forms that are called future imperatives. Such forms are identified in the vocabulary notes and in readings.

Four third-conjugation verbs (**dīcō**, **dūcō**, **faciō**, **ferō**[4]) have irregular present active imperative forms in the singular. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.

Present Active Imperative Sing.		*Present Active Imperative Pl.*	
dīc	say	**dīcite**	say (pl.)
dūc	lead	**dūcite**	lead (pl.)
fac	make	**facite**	make (pl.)
fer	carry	**ferte**	carry (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The singular forms of these imperatives lack a stem vowel.

2. **Dīcō**, **dūcō**, and **faciō** have regular imperative forms in the plural. The imperative of **ferō** is irregular in the plural also, where it again lacks a stem vowel.

To form the present passive imperative of all four conjugations:

1. (for the singular) take the present stem and add **-re**
2. (for the plural) take the present stem and add **-minī**

Present Stem	*Pres. Passive Imperative Sing.*		*Pres. Passive Imperative Pl.*	
vocā-	**vocāre**	be summoned	**vocāminī**	be summoned (pl.)
movē-	**movēre**	be moved	**movēminī**	be moved (pl.)
rege-	**regere**	be ruled	**regiminī**	be ruled (pl.)
cape-	**capere**	be taken	**capiminī**	be captured (pl.)
audī-	**audīre**	be heard	**audīminī**	be heard (pl.)

3. The irregular verb **possum** has no imperative forms. The imperative forms of **sum** are **es** (singular) and **este** (plural). Both forms are rare except in compounds of **sum**.

4. The verb **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, "bring," "bear," "carry," "endure," is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present system, which are presented in §43.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the present passive imperative plural of third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs, the stem vowel **-e-** changes to **-i-** before the ending **-minī**.

2. Both the singular and plural present passive imperative are identical in form with the second person singular and plural present passive indicative. In addition, the singular present passive imperative for all verbs is identical in form with the present active infinitive. For example:

vocāminī	be summoned (pl.) (imperative) you are being summoned (indicative)
vocāre	be summoned (imperative) you are being summoned (indicative) to summon (infinitive)

Context usually makes clear which form occurs in a particular sentence.

Dīcō and **dūcō** have regular present passive imperatives. The present passive imperative singular of **ferō** is **ferre** (be carried). MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR FORM. The plural is regular (**feriminī**, be carried [pl.]). **Faciō** does not have passive imperatives.

The present active imperatives of **agō**, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctus**, "drive," "do," **age** and **agite**, are often used in colloquial Latin to strengthen other commands. They may be translated "come on!" For example:

***Age*, dōnā puellīs dōna!**	*Come on*, give gifts to the girls!
***Agite*, ō virī, pugnāte!**	*Come on*, o men, fight!

§33. Synopsis II: Present Active and Passive Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative

In a synopsis imperatives are always given in the second person singular and plural. Here is a model synopsis of **capiō** in the first person plural.

Principal Parts: **capiō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus**
Person and Number: **1st pl.**

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	**capimus**	we are capturing	**capimur**	we are (being) captured
Imperfect	**capiēbāmus**	we were capturing	**capiēbāmur**	we were being captured
Future	**capiēmus**	we shall capture	**capiēmur**	we shall be captured
Infinitive				
Present	**capere**	to capture	**capī**	to be captured
Imperative				
Singular	**cape**	capture	**capere**	be captured
Plural	**capite**	capture (pl.)	**capiminī**	be captured (pl.)

OBSERVATION

In a synopsis basic English translations should be given for indicative and imperative forms.

☛ DRILL 31–33, PAGE 143, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§34. Partitive Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case represents the *whole* of which another noun is a *part,* it is called a **Partitive Genitive.**[5] For example:

Multī *incolārum* nōn labōrābunt.	Many *of the inhabitants* will not work.
Nihil *odiī* habeō.	Nothing (d.o.) *of hatred* I have. I have nothing *of hatred.*

The syntax of each italicized word (**incolārum**, **odiī**) is **Partitive Genitive**.

§35. Subjective Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case expresses the person or thing *performing a verbal action implied in another noun,* it is called a **Subjective Genitive**. For example:

Magnum erat odium *malī* in bonōs.
Great was the hatred *of the bad man* against good men.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence the syntax of the italicized word (**malī**) is **Subjective Genitive** since the bad man *feels* or *performs the action* of hating implied by the noun **odium**: the bad man (subject) *hates* the good men.

§36. Objective Genitive

When a noun in the genitive case expresses the person or thing *receiving a verbal action implied in another noun,* it is called an **Objective Genitive**. For example:

Propter odium *dominōrum* servī nōn labōrant.
On account of (their) hatred *of (their) masters,* the slaves are not working.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In this sentence the syntax of the italicized word (**dominōrum**) is **Objective Genitive** since the masters *receive* or *are objects of* the action of hating implied by the noun **odium**: the slaves *hate* their masters (d.o.).

2. An Objective Genitive is often translated more idiomatically into English with the preposition "for." Thus the sentence above may be translated "On account of (their) hatred for (their) masters, the slaves are not working."

In addition to depending on other nouns, an Objective Genitive may appear with certain adjectives and verbs. For example:

Vir *aurī cupidus* poenās dabit.	A man *of gold desirous* will pay the penalty.
(**cupidus, -a, -um** desirous)	A man *desirous of gold* will pay the penalty.

In this sentence the Objective Genitive (**aurī**) depends on the adjective **cupidus**.

5. The Partitive Genitive is also known as the Genitive of the Divided Whole.

Subjective and Objective Genitives may appear together, and word order may help to distinguish between them. For example:

Magnum erat *malī* odium *bonōrum*.
Great was *of the bad man* (Subjective Genitive) the hatred *of good men* (Objective Genitive).
The hatred *of the bad man for good men* was great.

A Subjective Genitive often precedes and an Objective Genitive often follows the noun on which both depend. It is possible, however, that this sentence means "The hatred of the good men (Subjective Genitive) for the bad man (Objective Genitive) was great." Context usually makes clear whether a particular genitive is subjective or objective.

§37. Ablative of Respect

When a noun in the ablative case *without a preposition* is used to *limit* or further *specify* the meaning of an adjective or a verb, it is called an **Ablative of Respect**. For example:

Bonus *cōnsiliō* erat Gracchus.
Good *in respect to judgment* was Gracchus.
Gracchus was good *in judgment*.
Meā *sententiā* imperium habēre dēbēs. (**meus, -a, -um** my)
(**sententia, sententiae** *f.* opinion)
In respect to my opinion power (d.o.) to have you ought.
In my opinion you ought to have power.
Gaius Marcum *dīligentiā* superat.
Gaius Marcus (d.o.) *in respect to diligence* surpasses.
Gaius surpasses Marcus *in diligence*.

The syntax of each italicized word (**cōnsiliō**, **sententiā**, **dīligentiā**) is **Ablative of Respect**.

☛ Drill 34–37, page 149, may now be done.

§38. Personal Pronouns

A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun, and a **personal pronoun** represents the speaker(s) or writer(s) (I, we), the one(s) spoken to (you, you [pl.]), or the one(s) spoken about (he, she, it, they).

Like nouns, personal pronouns in Latin are declined, and their declensions must be memorized. For the first- and second-person personal pronouns, MEMORIZE DOWN THE SINGULAR AND DOWN THE PLURAL.

	First Person		Second Person	
	Singular		*Singular*	
Nom.	**ego**	I	**tū**	you
Gen.	**meī**	of me	**tuī**	of you
Dat.	**mihi**	to/for me	**tibi**	to/for you
Acc.	**mē**	me (d.o.)	**tē**	you (d.o.)
Abl.	**mē**	from me (etc.)	**tē**	from you (etc.)
	Plural		*Plural*	
Nom.	**nōs**	we	**vōs**	you (pl.)
Gen.	**nostrum/ nostrī**	of us	**vestrum/ vestrī**	of you (pl.)
Dat.	**nōbīs**	to/for us	**vōbīs**	to/for you (pl.)
Acc.	**nōs**	us (d.o.)	**vōs**	you (pl.) (d.o.)
Abl.	**nōbīs**	from us (etc.)	**vōbīs**	from you (pl.) (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. Personal pronouns do not have vocative forms.

2. Since the inflectional endings of finite verbs indicate the subject (**-ō** = "I," **-s** = "you," etc.), the nominative forms of all personal pronouns are not required in a Latin sentence. Nominative case forms of personal pronouns are most often used for added emphasis. For example:

***Ego* ambulō, nōn *tū*.** *I* am walking, not *you*.

3. In the singular the genitive forms of the first- and second-person personal pronouns (**meī**, **tuī**) are used *only* as Partitive or Objective Genitives (§§34 and 36). In the plural these functions of the genitive are distinguished by different endings: **nostrum**, **vestrum** = Partitive, **nostrī**, **vestrī** = Objective. For example:

Habēsne odium *meī*?	Do you have a hatred *of me*? (objective)
Multī *nostrum* rēgīnam amant.	Many *of us* love the queen. (partitive)
Magnum erat odium *vestrī*.	Hatred *of you (pl.)* was great. (objective)

4. When a first- or second-person personal pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition **cum** is attached directly to the pronoun. Thus, **mēcum** (with me), **nōbīscum** (with us), **tēcum** (with you), and **vōbīscum** (with you [pl.]).

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THE THIRD-PERSON PERSONAL PRONOUN *ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL* (**is**, **ea**, **id**, **eius**, **eius**, **eius** . . .).

	Third Person					
	Singular					
	M.		F.		N.	
Nom.	**is**	he	**ea**	she	**id**	it
Gen.	**eius**	of him	**eius**	of her	**eius**	of it
Dat.	**eī**	to/for him	**eī**	to/for her	**eī**	to/for it
Acc.	**eum**	him (d.o.)	**eam**	her (d.o.)	**id**	it (d.o.)
Abl.	**eō**	from him (etc.)	**eā**	from her (etc.)	**eō**	from it (etc.)
	Plural					
	M.		F.		N.	
Nom.	**eī/iī**	they	**eae**	they	**ea**	they
Gen.	**eōrum**	of them	**eārum**	of them	**eōrum**	of them
Dat.	**eīs/iīs**	to/for them	**eīs/iīs**	to/for them	**eīs/iīs**	to/for them
Acc.	**eōs**	them (d.o.)	**eās**	them (d.o.)	**ea**	them (d.o.)
Abl.	**eīs/iīs**	from them (etc.)	**eīs/iīs**	from them (etc.)	**eīs/iīs**	from them (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Eius** is pronounced as if it were spelled *eiius. The first **-i-** combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong **ei-**. The second **-i-** is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English **y**.

2. All forms of **is**, **ea**, **id** are disyllabic with these exceptions: **is**, **id** (monosyllabic), **eōrum**, **eārum**, **eōrum** (trisyllabic).

3. When a form of **is**, **ea**, **id** refers to a person or thing previously mentioned, it agrees in *gender* and *number* with the noun to which it refers. For example:

Liber pulcher puellae dabitur. *Eum*ne habēs?

The beautiful book will be given to the girl. Do you have *it*? (**eum** refers to **liber**)

The personal pronoun **is**, **ea**, **id** was in origin a demonstrative adjective (this, that; these, those), and the demonstrative adjective remained in use. A **demonstrative adjective** (< **dēmōnstrō**, point out) regularly precedes the noun it modifies and serves to *point out* that noun. For example:

eum virum	this (*or* that) man (d.o.) (**eum** is a demonstrative adj. modifying **virum**)
ea perīcula	these (*or* those) dangers (subj. or d.o.) (**ea** is a demonstrative adj. modifying **perīcula**)

§39. Possessive Adjectives

A noun in the genitive case may express ownership or possession: **liber *puerī*** (the book *of the boy*) (§1). However, the genitives of the first- and second-person personal pronouns (**meī**, **nostrum/nostrī**, **tuī**, **vestrum/vestrī**) are not used to express possession (§38). There are instead **possessive adjectives** that correspond to each personal pronoun:

Personal Pronoun		*Corresponding Possessive Adjective*	
ego	I	**meus, -a, -um**	my, mine
nōs	we	**noster, nostra, nostrum**	our, ours
tū	you	**tuus, -a, -um**	your, yours
vōs	you (pl.)	**vester, vestra, vestrum**	your, yours (pl.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Meus**, **noster**, **tuus**, and **vester** are all first-second-declension adjectives.

2. Like all adjectives, possessive adjectives agree with the nouns they modify in gender, number, and case. They may precede or follow the nouns they modify. For example:

meās fīliās	my daughters (d.o.)
patriā nostrā	from our homeland (etc.)
dominus vester	your (pl.) master (subj.)

3. Possessive adjectives may function as substantives. For example:

meōrum	of my men *or* of my things
tuōs	your men (d.o.)

4. The masculine singular vocative form of **meus** is **mī**. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR VOCATIVE FORM.

5. Possessive adjectives are often omitted if the meaning is clear without them, but they are used for added clarity, emphasis, or contrast.

The third-person personal pronoun (**is**, **ea**, **id**) does not have a corresponding possessive adjective. Rather, the genitive singular and genitive plural forms are used as Genitives of Possession. For example:

librōs *eius*	the books (d.o.) *of him/of her* *his/her* books (d.o.)
rēgīna *eōrum*	the queen (subj.) *of them* (m.) *their* queen (subj.)

Summary of Possession

First Person	**meus fīlius** **noster fīlius**	my son our son	**meus** and **noster** are possessive adjectives modifying **fīlius**
Second Person	**tuus fīlius** **vester fīlius**	your son your (pl.) son	**tuus** and **vester** are possessive adjectives modifying **fīlius**
Third Person	**fīlius eius** **fīlius eōrum**	his/her son their son	**eius** and **eōrum** are personal pronouns in the genitive case expressing possession

☛ DRILL 38–39, PAGE 153, MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. Andronicus translates the first line of Homer's *Odyssey* into Latin.

   Virum mihi, Camēna, īnsece versūtum . . . (Livius Andronicus, *Odyssey* frag. 1)

Camēna, **Camēnae** *f.* Camena, any one of the Italic divinities connected with springs and waters and identified with the (Greek) Muses
īnsecō, **īnsecere**, **īnsexī**, —— tell of
versūtus, **-a**, **-um** versatile, cunning

2. His beloved prostitute Lemniselenis greets the slave Toxilus with a question.

   Toxile mī, cūr ego sine tē sum?
   cūr tū autem sine mē's? (Plautus, *Persa* 763–64)

Toxilus, **Toxilī** *m.* Toxilus
autem (adv.) moreover
mē's = **mē es**[6]

3. One drunk slave sings the following to another.

   ego tū sum, tū es ego: ūnanimī sumus. (Plautus, *Stichus* 731)

ūnanimus, **-a**, **-um** of one mind; harmonious

4. Demea wonders that his brother Micio is not more upset about his nephew's troubles.

   De. Dīc mihi,
   nōn clāmās? nōn īnsānīs?
   Mi. Nōn. (Terence, *Adelphoe* 725–27)

De. = Demea
clāmō (1-intr.) shout
īnsāniō, **īnsānīre**, **īnsānii/īnsānīvī**, **īnsānītum** be mad, rage
Mi. = Micio

5. A fragment from a comic play

   audīte, puerī, pauca: vōs succēdite. (L. Afranius, *Togātae* frag. 153)

succēdō, **succēdere**, **successī**, **successum** approach, draw near

6. Varro explains the different shades of meaning of certain Latin verbs.

   potest† enim aliquid facere et nōn agere, ut poēta facit fābulam et nōn agit; contrā āctor agit et nōn facit, . . . contrā imperātor . . . neque facit neque agit sed gerit . . .

   (Varro, *Dē Linguā Latīnā* VI.77)

†**potest**, *subject is "one"*
aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, something
ut (conj.) as
fābula, **fābulae** *f.* story, tale; play, drama
contrā (adv.) in opposition, in turn
āctor = *masc. sing. nom.*, doer, actor
imperātor = *masc. sing. nom.*, general, commander

6. When **es** or **est** follows a word ending in **-m** or **-e**, it may drop the initial **e-** and join the preceding word. This is called **aphaeresis** (< Greek *aphaeresis*, taking away).

7. In a discussion of immortality the Roman epic poet Ennius is paraphrased.

Rōmulus in caelō cum dīs agit aevum. (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.28)

aevum, **aevī** *n.* age, lifetime; life

8. A Stoic view of the gods

magna dī cūrant, parva neglegunt. (Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* II.167)

cūrō (1-tr.) watch over, look after
neglegō, **neglegere**, **neglēxī**, **neglēctus** overlook, neglect

Some Roman proverbs

9. amāre et sapere vix deō concēditur. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* A22)

sapiō, **sapere**, **sapiī/sapīvī**, —— be intelligent, show good sense, be sensible
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly
concēdō, **concēdere**, **concessī**, **concessus** concede, grant; permit

10. animō virum pudīcae nōn oculō ēligunt. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* A36)

pudīcus, **-a**, **-um** chaste, pure, honorable
oculus, **oculī** *m.* eye
ēligō, **ēligere**, **ēlēgī**, **ēlēctus** select, choose

11. numquam perīclum sine perīclō vincitur. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* N7)

numquam (adv.) never
perīclum, **perīclō** = **perīculum**, **perīculō**
vincō, **vincere**, **vīcī**, **victus** conquer, overcome

12. satis est superāre inimīcum, nimium est perdere. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* S44)

satis (indeclinable subst.) enough
nimium (indeclinable subst.) too much
perdō, **perdere**, **perdidī**, **perditus** destroy

13. With these opening words the poet suggests that his epic poem will be a blend of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*.

Arma virumque canō . . . (Vergil, *Aeneid* I.1)

14. In expressing his preference for country life over life in the city, the poet makes a bold claim.

nātūram expellēs furcā, tamen ūsque recurret. (Horace, *Epistulae* I.10.24)

nātūra, **nātūrae** *f.* nature
expellō, **expellere**, **expulī**, **expulsus** drive out
furca, **furcae** *f.* pitchfork
tamen (adv.) nevertheless
ūsque (adv.) continuously
recurrō, **recurrere**, **recurrī**, **recursum** run back, rush back

15. The chorus of a tragic play comments on the nature of rulers.

metuī cupiunt metuīque timent. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 73)

metuō, **metuere**, **metuī**, —— fear, dread
cupiō, **cupere**, **cupiī/cupīvī**, **cupītus** desire, long for, want

16. The philosopher summarizes the difference between his own attitude toward wealth and his brother's.

. . . dīvitiae meae sunt, tū es dīvitiārum. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGĪ* VII.22.5)

dīvitiae, **dīvitiārum** *f. pl.* riches, wealth

17. The poet has a brief message for Sabidius.

Nōn amo† tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē;
hoc tantum possum dīcere: nōn amo* tē. (MARTIAL I.32)

†The **-ō** of **amō** here scans *short*.
Sabidius, **Sabidiī** *m.* Sabidius (an acquaintance of the poet)
quārē (interrog. adv.) why
hoc = *neut. sing. acc. of demonstr. pron.*, this thing
tantum (adv.) only

18. A Roman inscription

Cape mē; tua sum. (*CIL* I.1499)

CHAPTER V

Vocabulary

➤ **amīcitia**, **amīcitiae** *f.* friendship
➤ **inimīcitia**, **inimīcitiae** *f.* enmity, hostility

➤ **fātum**, **fātī** *n.* destiny, fate
proelium, **proeliī** *n.* battle

➤ —, **meī** (reflexive pron.) myself (§44)
➤ —, **nostrum/nostrī** (reflexive pron.) ourselves (§44)
➤ —, **tuī** (reflexive pron.) yourself (§44)
➤ —, **vestrum/vestrī** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (§44)
➤ —, **suī** (reflexive pron.) himself, herself, itself; themselves (§44)

➤ **accipiō**, **accipere**, **accēpī**, **acceptus** receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of)
➤ **cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessum** go, move; yield; withdraw
➤ **accēdō**, **accēdere**, **accessī**, **accessum** go to, come to, approach
➤ **discēdō**, **discēdere**, **discessī**, **discessum** go away, depart
➤ **interficiō**, **interficere**, **interfēcī**, **interfectus** kill
➤ **perficiō**, **perficere**, **perfēcī**, **perfectus** complete, accomplish

➤ **abeō**, **abīre**, **abiī**, **abitum** go away
➤ **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus** bring, bear, carry; endure (§43)
➤ **sē ferre** (idiom) to proceed (quickly)

➤ **meminī**, **meminisse** (defective verb) remember
➤ **ōdī**, **ōdisse** (defective verb) hate
➤ **redeō**, **redīre**, **rediī**, **reditum** go back, return

dūrus, **-a**, **-um** hard; harsh
ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum** (intensive adj.) -self, -selves; very (§46)
meus, **-a**, **-um** my (own) (§45)
noster, **nostra**, **nostrum** our (own) (§45)
➤ **pius**, **-a**, **-um** dutiful, loyal
➤ **impius**, **-a**, **-um** disloyal, wicked
suus, **-a**, **-um** his (own), her (own), its (own); their (own) (§45)
tuus, **-a**, **-um** your (own) (§45)
vester, **vestra**, **vestrum** your (pl.) (own) (§45)

bene (adv.) well
etsī (conj.) although
➤ **male** (adv.) badly
multum (adv.) much, a lot
nisi (conj.) if . . . not, unless
postquam (conj.) after
quamquam (conj.) although
quoniam (conj.) since, because
sī (conj.) if
➤ **sīc** (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way
➤ **tamen** (adv.) nevertheless
➤ **ubi** (conj.) when; (interrog. adv.) where, when
➤ **ut** (conj.) as; when
valdē (adv.) strongly

Vocabulary Notes

➤ **amīcitia**, **amīcitiae** *f.* and **inimīcitia**, **inimīcitiae** *f.* are both abstract nouns. They are formed by the addition of the suffix **-tia** to the stems of **amīcus**, **-a**, **-um** and **inimīcus**, **-a**, **-um**. All abstract nouns of this type are thus first-declension nouns. A **suffix** (< **suffīgō**, fasten beneath [as a support]) is a unit of meaning added to the end of a word to produce another word.

➤ **inimīcitia** usually appears in the plural to indicate not the abstract notion of "enmity" but a concrete instance of it. The plural may be translated "unfriendly relations," "hostilities."

➤ **fātum**, **fātī** *n.* is derived from a verb that means "utter"; hence, its basic meaning is an "utterance" (cf. **fāma**). Through the meaning of "prophetic utterance" or "oracle" it came to mean "destiny" or "fate." With reference to an individual the plural often means "ill fate" and thus "death." When capitalized in the plural, **Fāta** refers to the divine "Fates."

➤ —, **meī**; —, **nostrum/nostrī**; —, **tuī**; —, **vestrum/vestrī**; and —, **suī** are reflexive pronouns. Because they are reflexive pronouns, they do not have nominative forms. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR. For the forms and meanings of these words see §44.

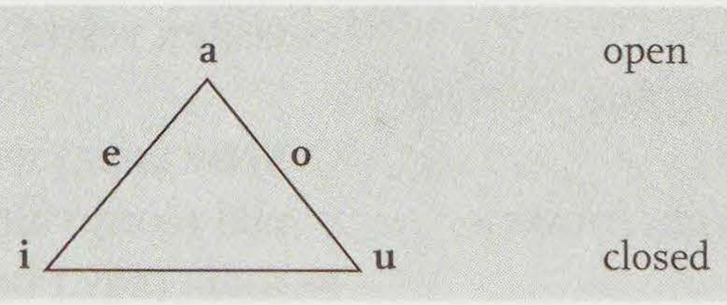
Compound Verbs, Prefixes, Assimilation, and Vowel Weakening

A **compound verb** (< **compōnō**, put together) is a verb formed from the combination of a simple, or uncompounded, verb and a prefix. A **prefix** (< **praefīgō**, fasten in front) is a unit of meaning added to the beginning of a word to produce another word. Most prefixes in Latin are derived from adverbs, and many prefixes have corresponding prepositions. A prefix has a basic meaning, and the meaning of a compound Latin verb can sometimes be deduced by combining the meaning of the simple verb with the basic meaning of the prefix. Thus **accēdō** is a compound formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** (to, toward) to **cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessum**, "go," and this compound means "go toward," "approach." However, the meanings of many compound verbs cannot be deduced in this way, and for this reason compound verbs are given as separate vocabulary entries.

When a prefix is combined with a simple verb, two kinds of phonetic change[1] may occur: assimilation and vowel weakening. **Assimilation** (< **assimilō**, make similar to) occurs when the prefix ends in a consonant and that consonant *changes to become similar to or identical with* the sound of the first consonant of the simple verb. For example: **ad** + **cēdō** > ***ac***cēdō. The **-d** at the end of **ad** *assimilates to* the **c-** at the beginning of **cēdō**.

Vowel weakening refers to the change in the quality of the vowel of a stem. For example: **ad-** + **c*a*piō** > **acc*i*piō**. When the compound **accipiō** was formed, the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **capiō** caused the **-a-** of the stem **cap-** to change (weaken) into **-i-**. Vowel weakening is due to an earlier accentual system in Latin, whereby only the first syllable of a word was stressed. The other, unstressed syllables were regularly pronounced more weakly than they would have been if accented. When the first syllable of a simple verb was no longer the initial syllable (because of the addition of a prefix), it was more weakly pronounced.

The vowels of Latin (as of English) are regularly represented by the **vowel triangle:**



The vowel **a** is described as **open** because the tongue is placed at the bottom of the mouth, and the mouth is as open as possible when it is pronounced. The vowels **i** and **u** at the bottom of the triangle are described as **closed** because the tongue is raised when the vowels are pronounced and the mouth is more closed. **e** and **o** are in between. When vowel weakening occurs, open vowels become more closed. When initial vowels become **medial** (i.e., not first), the following instances of vowel weakening are most frequent:

	Example
1. **a** → **i** before a single consonant *except* **-r**	**per-** + **faciō** > **perficiō**
2. **a** → **e** before two consonants *and* before **-r**	**per-** + **factus** > **perfectus**
3. **e** → **i** before a single consonant *except* **-r**	**per-** + **teneō** > **pertineō**

There are compound verbs in which vowel weakening does not occur. The compounds of **audiō**, **dūcō**, **gerō**, **mittō**, **moveō**, **pōnō**, **scrībō**, **sentiō**, **veniō**, and **videō**—all verbs from previous chapters—do not show

1. A **phonetic change** is an alteration in pronunciation with a corresponding change in spelling.

vowel weakening. When a compound of one of these verbs appears in readings, its principal parts are not supplied, but the prefix and simple verb are given. Instances of vowel weakening or retention of the simple verb within the compound are cited in the vocabulary notes.

The concepts and rules of assimilation and vowel weakening highlight and explain the similarities between sets of principal parts. (Cf. **perficiō**, **perficere**, **perfēcī**, **perfectus** with **interficiō**, **interficere**, **interfēcī**, **interfectus**.) Familiarity with these rules will aid in the speedy acquisition of new vocabulary by making similarities in patterns of principal parts more apparent and by making it possible to anticipate the patterns of other compound verbs.

➤ **accipiō**, **accipere**, **accēpī**, **acceptus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **capiō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. Its basic meaning is "take to oneself," "receive." **accipiō** may also mean "hear (of)" (receive through one's ears). By extension of this meaning **accipiō** may refer to understanding information received and thus may mean "learn (of)." Compare **audiō**, whose meaning is more restricted. The principal parts of all compounds of **capiō** follow the pattern of the principal parts of **accipiō**. When a compound of **capiō** appears in readings, its principal parts are not supplied, but the prefix and simple verb are given.

➤ **cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessum** is an intransitive verb. In addition to its basic meaning of "go" or "move," it may mean "yield" to a person or idea or "withdraw" from a place or activity. Compounds of **cēdō** do not exhibit vowel weakening. When a compound of **cēdō** appears in readings, its principal parts are not supplied, but the prefix and simple verb are given.

➤ **accēdō**, **accēdere**, **accessī**, **accessum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **cēdō**, and its basic meaning is "go to" or "come to." **accēdō** is usually intransitive in prose authors and is regularly followed by **ad** + accusative. The preposition **ad** repeats the prefix **ad-** and often cannot be translated.

Auxilia ad oppidum accēdēbant.	The auxiliary troops were approaching (toward) the town.

➤ **discēdō**, **discēdere**, **discessī**, **discessum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **dis-** to **cēdō**. It is an intransitive verb.

➤ **interficiō**, **interficere**, **interfēcī**, **interfectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **inter-** to **faciō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening.

➤ **perficiō**, **perficere**, **perfēcī**, **perfectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to **faciō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. The principal parts of all compounds of **faciō** follow the pattern of the principal parts of **interficiō** and **perficiō**. When a compound of **faciō** appears in readings, its principal parts are not supplied, but the prefix and simple verb are given.

➤ **abeō**, **abīre**, **abiī**, **abitum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ab-** to the irregular verb **eō**, and its basic meaning is "go away." **abeō** conjugates exactly as **eō** *except* that it has only one third principal part. For the forms of **eō** in the perfect active indicative, see §41.

➤ **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus** is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present system (§43). **ferō** derives from two PIE roots: ***bher-** and ***telA-**. **ferō** may mean "bring," "bear," or "carry," and by extension "endure" (hardships, troubles). **ferō** may also mean "say," "report," particularly when a common story or a myth is being reported. When **ferō** takes a reflexive pronoun as a direct object, the idiom means "proceed (quickly)."

Auxilium virīs prōvinciae ferō.	I am bringing aid to the men of the province.
Multa mala tulī.	I have endured many evil things.
Mē ad prōvinciam ferēbam.	I was proceeding (quickly) to the province.

➤ **meminī**, **meminisse** is a **defective verb**, a verb that lacks certain normal inflected forms. **meminī** has forms of the perfect active system only (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect). However, the *perfect* forms are translated as if they were *present*, the *pluperfect* forms as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. The first principal part is the first person singular perfect active indicative, and thus the perfect stem is **memin-**. The second principal part, **meminisse**, is the perfect active infinitive (§105), but it is translated as if it were the present active infinitive (to remember).

meminī often takes an Objective Genitive.[2] **meminī** may also take an Accusative, Direct Object, particularly when the object is a neuter pronoun. It may also take an Object Infinitive.

2. The Objective Genitive that appears with **meminī** is also called the Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting.

Meministīne patriae?	Do you remember (your) homeland? (Objective Genitive)
Id memineram.	I was remembering it. (Accusative, Direct Object)
Semper tuī meminerō.	I shall always remember you. (Objective Genitive)

meminī has no present active imperative forms, but it uses instead the future active imperative forms **mementō** (singular) and **mementōte** (plural) with present meanings. MEMORIZE THESE FORMS.

➤ **ōdī, ōdisse** is a defective verb. **ōdī** has forms of the perfect active system only (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect). However, the *perfect* forms are translated as if they were *present,* the *pluperfect* forms as if they were *imperfect,* and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future.* The first principal part is the first person singular perfect active indicative, and thus the perfect stem is **ōd-**. The second principal part, **ōdisse**, is the perfect active infinitive (§105), but it is translated as if it were the present active infinitive (to hate).

Malōs ōdimus.	We hate bad men.
Malōs ōderātis.	You (pl.) used to hate bad men.
Malōs ōderō.	I shall hate bad men.

ōdī has no imperative forms.

➤ **redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **red-** to **eō**, and its basic meaning is "go back." **redeō** conjugates exactly as **eō** *except* that it has only one third principal part. For the forms of **eō** in the perfect active indicative, see §41.

➤ **pius, -a, -um** describes a person who acts in accordance with duty to one's family, one's country, or one's gods. When **pius** describes a thing (war, weapon, cause), the dutifulness of a person has been transferred to the thing. **impius, -a, -um** is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** (not) to **pius**. Neither **pius** nor **impius** has a masculine singular vocative in classical Latin.

➤ **male**, "badly," includes the following range of meanings: "wickedly," "wrongfully"; "poorly," "scarcely"; "inopportunely," "ill-advisedly."

➤ The adverb **sīc** indicates that the action of the verb it modifies is being done in a manner that has just been indicated in a preceding clause or sentence or is about to be indicated in a following clause or sentence.

Sīc pugnābant.	They were fighting in such a way (as I have just described). They were fighting in such a way (as I shall now describe).

➤ The adverb **tamen** regularly occurs in a main clause following a concessive clause. **tamen** may also occur without an expressed concession in the preceding clause or sentence to indicate that the statement that includes **tamen** is true in spite of what has just been said.

Quamquam bonam fāmam optās, tamen cum incolīs malīs nōn pugnās.
Although you desire a good reputation, nevertheless you are not fighting against the bad inhabitants.
Dominus nōn est in agrīs. Servus tamen cum dīligentiā labōrat.
The master is not in the fields. Nevertheless, the slave is working diligently.

➤ **ubi** may be used as a subordinating conjunction (when) that introduces a temporal clause or as an interrogative adverb (when, where) that introduces a question.

Ubi ad oppidum venit, labōrāre nōn optat.	When she comes to the town, she does not desire to work.
Ubi veniet? Ubi est?	When will she come? Where is she?

➤ **ut** may mean "as" and introduce a comparative clause or "when" and introduce a temporal clause (§48). A comparative clause introduced by **ut** provides a standard of comparison for a main clause, which often includes the adverb **sīc**. **ut** meaning "as" may also introduce virtual parenthetic remarks.

Ut agricola agrōs, sīc poēta verba cōgitat.
As a farmer [ponders] the fields, so a poet ponders words.
Bonum est sapientia, ut mihi vidētur.
Wisdom is a good thing, as it seems to me.

	Derivatives	Cognates
cēdō	ance**s**tor; cease, cede; ne**cess**ary	
ferō, ferre	circum**fer**ence; dif**fer**; suf**fer**; **fer**tile; aqui**fer**; voci**fer**ous	bear; bier; **bar**row; **bur**ly; **bur**den; **bir**th; **br**ing; eu**phor**ia; peri**phery**; para**pher**nalia
tulī, lātus	re**late**; col**late**; superl**ative**; legis**lat**or	toll; **tol**erate; ex**tol**; (perhaps) A**tlas**
—, suī	**sui**cide	**self**; **swa**mi; **se**cede; **se**cret; **so**ber; **eth**nic; Sinn **Fein**

§40. The Perfect Active System

Since the present, imperfect, and future active and passive indicative of all conjugations are formed with a stem taken from the second principal part, it is convenient to say that these tenses belong to the present system of the verb (§8).

The remaining three tenses of the active indicative, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect, are said to belong to the **perfect active system** because they are all formed with a stem taken from the third principal part (first person singular perfect active indicative).

Each of the three tenses of the perfect active system (perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect) is formed in the same way for *all* verbs of *all* conjugations and for **sum** and **possum**.

Finding the Perfect Active Stem

For all verbs the stem for the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect active indicative is found by removing the ending **-ī** from the third principal part. This stem is called the **perfect active stem**. For example:

vocō, **vocāre**, ***vocāvī***, **vocātus** call	Perfect Active Stem:	**vocāv-**
moveō, **movēre**, ***mōvī***, **mōtus** move	Perfect Active Stem:	**mōv-**
regō, **regere**, ***rēxī***, **rēctus** rule	Perfect Active Stem:	**rēx-**
capiō, **capere**, ***cēpī***, **captus** take	Perfect Active Stem:	**cēp-**
audiō, **audīre**, ***audīvī***, **audītus** hear	Perfect Active Stem:	**audīv-**
sum, **esse**, ***fuī***, **futūrus** be	Perfect Active Stem:	**fu-**
possum, **posse**, ***potuī***, —— be able	Perfect Active Stem:	**potu-**

§41. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the perfect active indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending **-ī** from the third principal part)
2. add the **perfect active personal endings** directly to the perfect active stem

The perfect active personal endings are:

Person	*Singular*	
1st	**-ī**	I
2nd	**-istī**	you
3rd	**-it**	he, she, it
	Plural	
1st	**-imus**	we
2nd	**-istis**	you (pl.)
3rd	**-ērunt** or **-ēre**	they

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect active personal endings are used to form the perfect active indicative of all verbs in Latin. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS AND BE PREPARED TO RECITE THEM QUICKLY.

2. There are two possible endings in the third person plural, **-ērunt** or **-ēre**. **-ēre** is the older ending, and certain authors in all periods preferred it to **-ērunt**. There is no distinction in meaning. MEMORIZE BOTH ENDINGS.

Thus the perfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem: **rēx-**		
Singular		
1	**rēxī**	I ruled; I have ruled
2	**rēxistī**	you ruled; you have ruled
3	**rēxit**	he, she, it ruled; he, she, it has ruled
Plural		
1	**rēximus**	we ruled; we have ruled
2	**rēxistis**	you (pl.) ruled; you (pl.) have ruled
3	**rēxērunt/rēxēre**	they ruled; they have ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first person singular perfect active indicative is the third principal part.

2. The perfect is the only tense of the indicative that has two different times with two different aspects (see §6). It is therefore important always to keep in mind two translations. For example, **rēxī** may be translated "I ruled" (past time, simple aspect) or "I have ruled" (present time, completed aspect). Context usually makes clear which translation is correct.

Eō has two third principal parts, **iī** and **īvī**, with two corresponding perfect active stems, **i-** and **īv-**. The perfect active indicative conjugation formed from **īv-** is regular, but the conjugation formed from **i-** displays certain irregularities. MEMORIZE THIS CONJUGATION.

	Singular	*Plural*
1	**iī**	**iimus/īmus**
2	**īstī**	**īstis**
3	**iit/īt**	**iērunt/iēre**

OBSERVATION

The second person singular and plural perfect active indicative (**īstī**, **īstis**) are contractions of the stem, **i-**, with the endings **-istī** and **-istis**. The third person singular and first person plural perfect active indicative may be contracted (**īt**, **īmus**) or uncontracted (**iit**, **iimus**). The **ī-** of **īt** does not shorten before final **-t**.

Pluperfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect active indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending **-ī** from the third principal part)
2. add the *infix* **-erā-**
3. add the active personal endings (use **-m** for first person singular)

Thus the pluperfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem:	**rēx-**	
Infix:	**-erā-**	
Singular		
1	**rēxeram**	I had ruled
2	**rēxerās**	you had ruled
3	**rēxerat**	he, she, it had ruled
Plural		
1	**rēxerāmus**	we had ruled
2	**rēxerātis**	you (pl.) had ruled
3	**rēxerant**	they had ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, third person singular, and third person plural, the **-ā-** of the infix shortens according to the long vowel rule.
2. The pluperfect active indicative conjugation may also be viewed as the perfect active stem plus the imperfect active indicative of **sum**. For example: **rēxeram** = **rēx-** + **eram**.
3. The English word "had" is always used in translating the pluperfect indicative. This tense is used to indicate an event that was completed *before another past event*. The pluperfect tense has past time with completed aspect.
4. The pluperfect active indicative conjugation of **eō** is regularly formed from both stems.

Future Perfect Active Indicative of All Verbs

To form the future perfect active indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem (by removing the ending **-ī** from the third principal part)
2. add the *infix* **-eri-**
3. add the active personal endings (use **-ō** for first person singular)

Thus the future perfect active indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem:	**rēx-**	
Infix:	**-eri-**	
Singular		
1	**rēxerō**	I shall have ruled
2	**rēxeris**	you will have ruled
3	**rēxerit**	he, she, it will have ruled
Plural		
1	**rēxerimus**	we shall have ruled
2	**rēxeritis**	you (pl.) will have ruled
3	**rēxerint**	they will have ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first person singular, the **-i-** of the infix **-eri-** contracts with the ending **-ō** (*rēxeriō > **rēxerō**).
2. The future perfect active indicative conjugation may also be viewed as the perfect active stem plus the future active indicative of **sum**. For example: **rēxerō** = **rēx-** + **erō**. The third person plural, however, is **rēxer*i*nt**.

3. The future perfect indicative is used to indicate an event that will be completed at a future time. It has future time with completed aspect.

4. The future perfect active indicative conjugation of **eō** is regularly formed from both stems.

§42. Synopsis III: Present Indicative System, Perfect Active Indicative System, Infinitive, and Imperative

Here is a model synopsis of **sentiō** in the third person plural. It includes the forms of the perfect active indicative system.

Principal Parts: **sentiō**, **sentīre**, **sēnsī**, **sēnsus**
Person and Number: **3rd pl.**

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	**sentiunt**	they perceive	**sentiuntur**	they are (being) perceived
Imperfect	**sentiēbant**	they were perceiving	**sentiēbantur**	they were being perceived
Future	**sentient**	they will perceive	**sentientur**	they will be perceived
Perfect	**sēnsērunt/ sēnsēre**	1. they perceived 2. they have perceived		
Pluperfect	**sēnserant**	they had perceived		
Future Perfect	**sēnserint**	they will have perceived		
Infinitive				
Present	**sentīre**	to perceive	**sentīrī**	to be perceived
Imperative				
Singular	**sentī**	perceive	**sentīre**	be perceived
Plural	**sentīte**	perceive (pl.)	**sentīminī**	be perceived (pl.)

OBSERVATION

In a synopsis basic English translations should be given for indicative, infinitive, and imperative forms. The perfect indicative always requires two translations, one that is past time with simple aspect and one that is present time with completed aspect.

☛ Drill 40–42, page 177, may now be done.

§43. The Irregular Third-Conjugation Verb *ferō*

The verb **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātus**, "bring, bear, carry; endure," is a third-conjugation verb with certain irregular forms in the present indicative, present infinitive, and present imperative, which are italicized below. These irregular forms lack the stem vowel, but the remaining forms of the present system are conjugated regularly as if the present stem were **fere-**. All the forms of the perfect active system are regular.

MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING FORMS.

Present Indicative

	Active	*Passive*
Sing.		
1	**ferō**	**feror**
2	***fers***	***ferris/ferre***
3	***fert***	***fertur***
Pl.		
1	**ferimus**	**ferimur**
2	***fertis***	**feriminī**
3	**ferunt**	**feruntur**

Present Infinitive

Active	*Passive*
ferre	***ferrī***

Present Imperative

Active	*Passive*
Sing.	
fer	***ferre***
Pl.	
ferte	**feriminī**

☛ DRILL 43, PAGE 189, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§44. Reflexive Pronouns

A **reflexive pronoun** *bends back* (< **reflectō**, bend back) or *refers to* the subject of the clause or sentence in which it appears. For example:

I saw *myself* in the mirror.
The women spoke among *themselves*.

Each italicized word is a reflexive pronoun because it refers to the subject of the sentence in which it appears.

In Latin, reflexive pronouns for the first and second persons borrow the forms of the personal pronouns.

	First Person *Singular*		Second Person *Singular*	
Nom.	——		——	
Gen.	**meī**	of myself	**tuī**	of yourself
Dat.	**mihi**	to/for myself	**tibi**	to/for yourself
Acc.	**mē**	myself (d.o.)	**tē**	yourself (d.o.)
Abl.	**mē**	from myself (etc.)	**tē**	from yourself (etc.)
	Plural		*Plural*	
Nom.	——		——	
Gen.	**nostrum/ nostrī**	of ourselves	**vestrum/ vestrī**	of yourselves
Dat.	**nōbīs**	to/for ourselves	**vōbīs**	to/for yourselves
Acc.	**nōs**	ourselves (d.o.)	**vōs**	yourselves (d.o.)
Abl.	**nōbīs**	from ourselves (etc.)	**vōbīs**	from yourselves (etc.)

For the third person *one* reflexive pronoun functions as both the singular and the plural. The third-person reflexive pronoun is not borrowed from the third-person personal pronoun and must be memorized.

Third Person *Singular/Plural*		
Nom.	——	
Gen.	**suī**	of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves
Dat.	**sibi**	to/for himself, to/for herself, to/for itself, to/for themselves
Acc.	**sē/sēsē**	himself (d.o.), herself (d.o.), itself (d.o.), themselves (d.o.)
Abl.	**sē/sēsē**	from himself, from herself, from itself, from themselves (etc.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are no nominative forms of the reflexive pronouns because reflexive pronouns *refer to but never are* the subjects of clauses or sentences in which they appear. The alternate accusative and ablative forms **sē** and **sēsē** are interchangeable, although originally **sēsē** may have conveyed greater emphasis.

2. The genitive forms of reflexive pronouns, like those of personal pronouns, can be used as Partitive or Objective Genitives only.

3. The first and second persons of the personal and reflexive pronouns differ in translation only. For example:

Mē videt.	He sees *me*. (**mē** is a personal pron.)
Mē videō.	I see *myself*. (**mē** is a reflexive pron.)

The third person of the personal and reflexive pronouns differs in both form and translation. For example:

Eum videt.	He (person A) sees *him (person B)*. (**eum** is a personal pron.)
Sē videt.	He sees *himself*. (**sē** is a reflexive pron.)

4. The correct translation of the third-person reflexive pronoun is determined by the subject. For example:

Puer *sē* in perīculō pōnit.	The boy is putting *himself* in danger.
Incolae *sē* regēbant.	The inhabitants were ruling *themselves*.

5. When a reflexive pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition **cum** is attached directly to the pronoun. For example: **tēcum** (with yourself), **nōbīscum** (with ourselves), **sēcum** (with himself, with herself, with itself, with themselves).

6. When followed by a reflexive pronoun, the preposition **per** may be translated "for one's own sake" or "by oneself (alone)." For example:

Optātur *per sē* sapientia.	Wisdom is desired *for its own sake*.
***Per mē* populum regam.**	*By myself* I shall rule the people.

§45. Reflexive-Possessive Adjectives

The genitive forms of the reflexive pronouns are not used to express possession. There are instead **reflexive-possessive adjectives** that correspond to each reflexive pronoun.

Reflexive Pronoun		*Reflexive-Possessive Adjective*	
—, **meī**	of myself, etc.	**meus, -a, -um**	my (own)
—, **nostrum/nostrī**	of ourselves, etc.	**noster, nostra, nostrum**	our (own)
—, **tuī**	of yourself, etc.	**tuus, -a, -um**	your (own)
—, **vestrum/vestrī**	of yourselves, etc.	**vester, vestra, vestrum**	your (pl.) (own)
—, **suī**	of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves, etc.	**suus, -a, -um**	his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first- and second-person reflexive-possessive adjectives are borrowed from the possessive adjectives and differ in translation only. For example:

***Meōs* librōs habēs.**	You have *my* books. (**meōs** is a possessive adj.)
***Meōs* librōs habeō.**	I have *my (own)* books. (**meōs** is a reflexive-possessive adj.)

2. The third-person reflexive-possessive adjective is not borrowed from a possessive adjective form, and it is used for both singular and plural. For example:

***Suam* patriam amat.**	She loves *her (own)* homeland.
***Suam* patriam laudant.**	They praise *their (own)* homeland.

§46. The Intensive Adjective *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum is an intensive adjective. An **intensive adjective** emphasizes or intensifies the noun it modifies.[3] MEMORIZE ITS DECLENSION *ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.*

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
Gen.	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
Acc.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsa**
Abl.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Ipse** does not have vocative forms.

2. The declension of **ipse** differs from that of ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in the genitive and dative singular only.

The translation of **ipse** depends on the word it modifies or replaces. Words such as "himself," "herself," "itself," or "themselves" may be used. When **ipse** modifies

3. **Ipse** is sometimes used as a substantive. When **ipse** is used as a substantive, it may be called an **intensive pronoun**.

the unexpressed subject of a verb, phrases such as "I myself," "he himself," "she herself," "they themselves" may be used. For example:

Catilīna *ipse* ad prōvinciam it.	Catiline *himself* is going to the province.
***Ipsa* ad prōvinciam ībam.**	*I myself* (f.) was going to the province.
Antōnius causam *ipsam* cōgitat.	Antony is pondering the case *itself*.

Ipse may also serve to identify a particular person or thing and may then be translated "very."

In *ipsīs* agrīs rēgīnae eram.	I was in the *very* fields of the queen.

Ipse often appears in sentences containing reflexive pronouns and modifies the subject or the reflexive pronoun. For example:

***Ipse* prō sē pugnābat.**	He *himself* was fighting for himself.
Prō sē *ipsō* pugnābat.	He was fighting for his *very* self.

In the first sentence, **ipse** intensifies the subject of the verbal action (he). In the second sentence, **ipsō** intensifies the reflexive pronoun (himself).

☛ Drill 44–46, page 193, may now be done.

§47. Adverbs I

An adverb may modify a verb, an adjective, or another adverb. Some examples of English adverbs are "not," "happily," "well," "very." Many Latin words are identified as adverbs in the vocabulary entries, but other adverbs may be formed from adjectives.

To form adverbs from first-second-declension adjectives:

1. take the stem (by dropping the ending of the feminine singular nominative)
2. add the ending **-ē**

Thus, for example:

Adjective	*Stem*	*Adverb*	
altus, *alt*a, altum	**alt-**	**altē**	highly, deeply
pulcher, *pulchr*a, pulchrum	**pulchr-**	**pulchrē**	beautifully

Some first-second-declension adjectives do not have corresponding adverbs, and some have irregularly formed adverbs. Memorize these common irregular adverbs:

Adjective	*Irregular Adverb*	
multus, -a, -um	**multum**	much, a lot
bonus, -a, -um	**bene**	well
malus, -a, -um	**male**	badly
validus, -a, -um	**validē**	strongly (regularly formed)
	valdē	strongly (irregularly formed)

OBSERVATION

Certain adjectives, such as **validus**, **-a**, **-um**, have both a regularly and an irregularly formed adverb. Irregularities such as these are mentioned in the vocabulary notes.[4]

Adverbs are usually placed directly before the words they modify. For example:

Puellam *nōn* amō.	The girl (d.o.) I do *not* love. (**nōn** modifies **amō**) I do *not* love the girl.
Poēta *pulchrē* canēbat.	The poet *beautifully* was singing. (**pulchrē** modifies **canēbat**) The poet was singing *beautifully*.

The Ablative of Manner (§27) represents an alternate way of expressing an adverbial idea. The Ablative of Manner, however, requires a noun in the ablative case and most often modifies verbs.

When certain adjectives modify the subjects (usually not expressed) of verbs, they may have the force of adverbs. For example:

Vēla dabant *laetī*.	They were setting sail, happy. They were setting sail *happily*.

☛ DRILL 47, PAGE 201, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§48. Subordinate Clauses I

In Latin, as in English, there are three types of sentences: simple, compound, and complex. A **simple sentence** has one subject and one predicate (e.g., I cooked the dinner). A **compound sentence** has more than one subject and predicate joined by a coordinating conjunction such as "and," "but," "or," "for," "nor" (e.g., I cooked the dinner, and you slept). A **complex sentence** has one or more than one independent clause combined with one or more than one dependent clause (e.g., When I was cooking the dinner, you were sleeping).

Simple and compound sentences contain *independent clauses* only, but complex sentences contain *dependent* or *subordinate clauses* as well. An **independent clause** contains a subject and a verb and expresses a complete thought, and it *may stand alone* as a simple sentence. If it is part of a larger sentence, an independent clause is often called a **main clause**. A **dependent** or **subordinate clause** contains a subject and a verb, but it *cannot stand alone* as a complete sentence.

Subordinate clauses in both Latin and English are introduced by a wide variety of subordinating conjunctions. A **subordinating conjunction** is a conjunction that introduces a subordinate clause. The Latin subordinating conjunctions introduced in this chapter and their corresponding English meanings are:

4. In the case of **valdē**, the stress on the antepenult (**válidē**) resulted in a weakly pronounced penult, and the unstressed penult eventually dropped out altogether. The loss of a syllable in the middle of a word is called **syncope** (< Greek *synkope,* cutting together). For a similar development compare Latin **tabula** with its English derivative, "table."

Latin	*English*	*Type of Clause Introduced*
postquam	after	Temporal
ubi	when	Temporal
ut	when	Temporal
quoniam	since, because	Causal
ut	as	Comparative
etsī	although	Concessive
quamquam	although	Concessive
sī	if	Conditional
nisi	if . . . not, unless	Conditional

OBSERVATION

The subordinating conjunctions in this chapter introduce five types of subordinate clauses: *temporal, causal, comparative, concessive,* and *conditional.* A **temporal clause** indicates a particular relation in time of the event in the subordinate clause to the event in the main clause. A **causal clause** gives the reason for the event in the main clause. A **comparative clause** expresses a standard to which an event in the main clause is compared. A **concessive clause** reports an event in spite of which the event in the main clause occurs. A **conditional clause** states a condition under which the event in the main clause occurs.

A subordinate clause in a complex sentence in either English or Latin may appear either before or after the main clause:

***Ubi dīxit*, audiēbam.**	*When he spoke,* I was listening.
Audiēbam *ubi dīxit*.	I was listening *when he spoke.*

When the subordinate clause precedes the main clause, it is set off by a comma. When the subordinate clause follows the main clause, most often no comma is used.

In Latin, when an expressed subject is common to both the subordinate clause and the main clause, the order is often as follows:

Rēgīna, quoniam bellum gerēbat, arma optābat.
The queen, since war (d.o.) she was waging, arms (d.o.) was desiring.
The queen, since she was waging war, was desiring arms.
Since the queen was waging war, she was desiring arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The placement of **rēgīna** in first position signals that this word is the subject of both the verb in the main clause and the verb in the subordinate clause. For greater cohesion and economy—**rēgīna** does not have to be repeated in the subordinate clause—the main clause **rēgīna arma optābat** surrounds the subordinate clause.

2. The third translation given above is to be preferred for correct English and requires the addition of the English pronoun "she" to begin the main clause.

☛ Drill 48, page 203, may now be done.

§49. Conditional Sentences I

A **conditional sentence** is the name given to a complex sentence that includes a *condition* or conditional clause—a type of subordinate clause—and a main clause. For example:

If he has friends, he does not desire money.
If he had friends, he was not desiring money.
If we capture the town, the poets will sing of our deeds.
If we had captured the town, the poets would have sung of our deeds.

The italicized portion of each of these sentences states the condition that must occur in order for the main clause to occur. For example, only "if we capture the town" will "the poet sing of our deeds." The subordinate clause or "if clause" of a conditional sentence is called a **protasis** (< Greek *protasis,* proposition). The main clause is called an **apodosis** (< Greek *apodosis,* giving back, return). Both in Latin and in English the protasis may precede or follow the apodosis. For example:

Protasis	**Apodosis**
If he has friends,	he does not desire money.
Apodosis	**Protasis**
He does not desire money	if he has friends.

There are three classes of conditional sentences in Latin: simple, future, and contrary-to-fact. **Simple** conditional sentences make statements of fact about present or past time (the first two sentences above are simple conditional sentences). **Future** conditional sentences make statements about the future (the third sentence above is a future conditional sentence). **Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentences make statements that suppose that the actions of both the protasis and the apodosis are not occurring now or did not occur in the past (the fourth sentence above is a contrary-to-fact conditional sentence). In this section only simple and future conditional sentences in Latin are introduced.[5] The protases of all kinds of conditional sentences in Latin are most commonly introduced by **sī** (if) or **nisi** (if . . . not, unless).

Simple Conditional Sentences

Simple conditional sentences are of two types: present or past. In a **Present Simple** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *present indicative.* In a **Past Simple** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in *any past tense of the indicative.* The first two sentences above would be rendered in Latin as follows:

Sī amīcōs *habet,* pecūniam nōn *optat.* (Present Simple)
If he *has* friends, he *does* not *desire* money.
Sī amīcōs *habēbat,* pecūniam nōn *optābat.* (Past Simple)
If he *(repeatedly) had* friends, he *(repeatedly)* did not *desire* money.

5. For contrary-to-fact conditional sentences, see §71.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Simple conditional sentences make simple factual statements about the present or the past in the indicative mood, the mood used to express something as factual. They may have a *particular* meaning, stating something about a particular moment in time, or a *generalizing* meaning, making a general statement. Context usually makes clear whether a simple conditional sentence is particular or general.

2. The syntax of, for example, **habēbat** is **imperfect indicative** in the **protasis** of a **Past Simple** conditional sentence.[6]

Future More Vivid Conditional Sentences

One kind of future conditional sentence is called the **Future More Vivid** because it vividly imagines future events in the indicative mood.[7] In a Future More Vivid conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *future indicative*. The third sentence above would be rendered in Latin as follows:

Sī oppidum *capiēmus*, poētae nostra facta *canent*.
If we *shall capture* the town, the poets *will sing of* our deeds.
If we *capture* the town, the poets *will sing of* our deeds.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Future More Vivid conditional sentence in Latin requires the future indicative in both the protasis and the apodosis because both events will occur in the future. The second translation above is to be preferred, however, since in English the present tense is commonly used in the protasis of such a conditional sentence. The English phrase "if we capture" is understood to refer to future time because the verb in the main clause clearly indicates future time.

2. The syntax of, for example, **canent** is **future indicative** in the **apodosis** of a **Future More Vivid** conditional sentence.

The *future perfect indicative* may sometimes appear in the protasis of a future conditional sentence in combination with a *future indicative* in the apodosis. Such a conditional sentence is called a **Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis**. The future perfect may emphasize the speed or completeness with which the action in the protasis will be done. For example:

Sī oppidum *cēperimus*, poētae nostra facta *canent*.
If we *shall have captured* the town, the poets *will sing of* our deeds.
If we *capture* the town, the poets *will sing of* our deeds.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Since English cannot easily express the special emphasis indicated by the future perfect in the protasis, once again the English present tense is to be preferred in translation. Thus the translations of Future More Vivid and Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis conditional sentences are the same.

2. The syntax of, for example, **cēperimus** is **future perfect indicative** in the **protasis** of a **Future More Vivid** conditional sentence **with Emphatic Protasis**.

6. The syntax of a verb comprises tense, mood, reason for mood, and reason for tense.

7. For Future Less Vivid conditional sentences, see §71.

In all future conditional sentences, it is possible to replace the future indicative in the apodosis with an *imperative* since commands look to future time. For example:

Sī rēgīnam vidēre optābis, *venī* ad forum.
If the queen (d.o.) to see you desire, *come* to the forum.
If you desire to see the queen, *come* to the forum.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence the imperative **venī** is used instead of a future indicative in the apodosis of a Future More Vivid conditional sentence.

Summary of Conditional Sentences

Name	*Verbs in Latin*	*Verbs in English*[8]
Present Simple	Present Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	NO SPECIAL TRANSLATION
Past Simple	Any Past Tense of the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	NO SPECIAL TRANSLATION
Future More Vivid[9]	Future Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis	Present (does) in Protasis, Future (will do) in Apodosis
Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis[10]	Future Perfect Indicative in Protasis, Future Indicative in Apodosis	Present (does) in Protasis, Future (will do) in Apodosis

☛ DRILL 49, PAGE 207, MAY NOW BE DONE.

8. The model verb "do" is used in English translation formulas.
9. This name is commonly abbreviated FMV.
10. This name is commonly abbreviated FMVE.

Short Readings

1. A quick exchange between two slaves

   Euclio: Tacē atque abī intrō. *Staphyla*: Taceō atque abeō. (Plautus, *Aululāria* 103)

taceō, **tacēre**, **tacuī**, **tacitūrus** be silent, keep silent
intrō (adv.) within, inside

2. The old Nicobulus gives his slave an important command.

   Cape hoc tibi aurum, Chrȳsale, ī, fer fīliō. (Plautus, *Bacchides* 1059)

hoc = *neut. sing. acc. of demonstrative adj.*, this
Chrȳsalus, **Chrȳsalī** *m.* Chrysalus

3. An example of Ennian alliteration in a scornful remark perhaps uttered by Romulus against Titus Tatius, a Sabine king

   Ō Tite, tūte, Tatī, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulistī. (Ennius, *Annālēs* I.104)

Titus Tatius, **Titī Tatiī** *m.* Titus Tatius
tūte = *emphatic form of* **tū**
tantus, **-a**, **-um** so great, so much
tyrannus, **tyrannī** *m.* monarch; tyrant

4. Cato gives a summary of the essence of agriculture.

   quid est agrum bene colere? bene arāre. quid est secundum? arāre. quid tertium? stercorāre. (Cato, *Dē Agrī Cultūrā* 61)

quid = *neut. sing. nom. of interrog. pron.*, what
colō, **colere**, **coluī**, **cultus** cultivate, tend
arō (1-tr.) plough, till
secundus, **-a**, **-um** second
tertius, **-a**, **-um** third
stercorō (1-tr.) spread with manure

5. A keen comparison

   sīc multī librōs dēgustant ut convīvae dēliciās. ([Varro], *Sententiae* 86)

dēgustō (1-tr.) take a taste of
cōnvīva, **convīvae** *m.* dinner guest
dēliciae, **dēliciārum** *f. pl.* delicacies

6. The orator identifies what is of value to the Romans.

   ōdit populus Rōmānus prīvātam luxuriam, pūblicam magnificentiam dīligit. (Cicero, *Prō Murēnā* 76)

prīvātus, **-a**, **-um** private
luxuria, **luxuriae** *f.* extravagance, excess, luxury
pūblicus, **-a**, **-um** public
magnificentia, **magnificentiae** *f.* magnificence, sumptuousness
dīligō, **dīligere**, **dīlēxī**, **dīlēctus** value, esteem, love

7. One of the interlocutors in a philosophical dialogue offers a persuasive analogy.

. . . ut ager . . . sine cultūrā frūctuōsus esse nōn potest, sīc sine doctrīnā animus . . .

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* II.5)

cultūra, **cultūrae** *f.* cultivation
frūctuōsus, **-a**, **-um** fruitful
doctrīna, **doctrīnae** *f.* training, instruction

8. A Roman proverb

Avārus miseriae causa est suae. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* A14)

avārus, **-a**, **-um** greedy
miseria, **miseriae** *f.* misery

9. A distressed Queen Dido calls to her men as Aeneas and the Trojans sail away.

. . . īte,

ferte citī flammās, date tēla, impellite rēmōs! (Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.593–94)

citus, **-a**, **-um** swift, quick
flamma, **flammae** *f.* flame, fire
tēlum, **tēlī** *n.* weapon; spear
impellō, **impellere**, **impulī**, **impulsus** set in motion, drive forward
rēmus, **rēmī** *m.* oar

10. The poet concludes a poem to a wealthy but always worried friend, who insists on trying to make the poet worry as well.

ut tū fortūnam, sīc nōs tē, Celse, ferēmus. (Horace, *Epistulae* I.8.17)

fortūna, **fortūnae** *f.* fortune
Celsus, **Celsī** *m.* Celsus

11. The poet describes an emotional difficulty.

ōderō sī poterō; sī nōn, invītus amābō. (Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.11.35)

invītus, **-a**, **-um** unwilling

12. Advice to a would-be lover

rīserit, arrīdē; sī flēbit, flēre mementō. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* II.201)

rīdeō, **rīdēre**, **rīsī**, **rīsus** laugh; **rīserit**, *subject is* "she"
arrīdeō, **arrīdēre**, **arrīsī**, **arrīsus** laugh with
fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētus** weep

13. Apollo's command to the poet

dūc, age, discipulōs ad mea templa tuōs . . . (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* II.493)

discipulus, **discipulī** *m.* pupil, follower
templum, **templī** *n.* temple

14. A portion of Queen Clytaemnestra's soliloquy

tēcum ipsa nunc ēvolve fēmineōs dolōs . . . (Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 116)

ēvolvō, **ēvolvere**, **ēvolvī**, **ēvolūtus** unroll; turn over (in one's mind)
fēmineus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to a woman, feminine
dolus, **dolī** *m.* deceit, trick, cunning

15. When Clytaemnestra hesitates to carry through their deadly plan, her lover and partner-in-crime, Aegisthus, urges her to action.

nec rēgna socium ferre nec taedae sciunt. (Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 259)

rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* kingdom, realm; *pl.* kingship, power
taeda, **taedae** *f.* (marriage) torch
sciō, **scīre**, **sciī/scīvī**, **scītus** know (how) (+ infin.)

16. Aegisthus speaks bravely about the possible consequences of his planned actions.

exilia mihi sunt haud nova; assuēvī malīs. (Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 302)

exilium, **exiliī** *n.* exile
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
novus, **-a**, **-um** new
assuēscō, **assuēscere**, **assuēvī**, **assuētum** become accustomed; *perfect*, be accustomed (+ dat.)

17. Cassandra addresses the god Apollo, her nemesis.

recēde, Phoebe, iam nōn sum tua. (Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 722)

recēdō (**re- + cēdō**) go back, withdraw
Phoebus, **Phoebī** *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
iam (adv.) now; by now

18. The beginning and end of the Chorus's closing reflection on human nature

fātīs agimur; cēdite fātīs.

multī ad fātum
vēnēre suum dum fāta timent. (Seneca the Younger, *Oedipus* 980; 993–94)

dum (conj.) while

19. The philospher begins his discussion of the happy life with a comment about himself.

cum multīs inimīcitiās gessī et in grātiam ex odiō, sī modo ūlla inter malōs grātia est, rediī; mihi ipsī nōndum amīcus sum. (Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* VII.2.3)

grātia, **grātiae** *f.* favor; friendly feeling
modo (adv.) at all
ūllus, **-a**, **-um** any
inter (prep. + acc.) between; among
nōndum (adv.) not yet

20. An irritated dinner guest finds fault with another diner.

in aliō pēduclum vidēs, in tē ricinum nōn vidēs. (Petronius, *Satyricon* 57.7)

alius, **alia**, **aliud** other, another
pēduc(u)lum, **pēduc(u)lī** *m.* louse
ricinus, **ricinī** *m.* tick

21. In a passage examining Cicero's reasoning in his legal speeches, Quintilian ponders the rationale behind the following defense of murder.

sī occīdī, rēctē fēcī; sed nōn occīdī. (Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria* IV.5.13)

occīdō, **occīdere**, **occīdī**, **occīsus** kill
rēctē (adv.) rightly, justly

22. Each reader's capacity determines how he evaluates the books he reads.

. . . habent sua fāta libellī. (Terentianus Maurus, *Dē Syllabīs* 1286)

libellus, **libellī** *m.* (little) book

Four gravestone inscriptions

23. NFFNSNC (Nōn fuī. Fuī. Nōn sum. Nōn cūrō.) (*CIL* V.2893)

cūrō (1-intr.) worry, care

24. . . . nōn fueram, nōn sum, nesciō, nōn ad mē pertinet. (*CIL* V.3415)

nesciō, **nescīre**, **nesciī/nescīvī**, **nescītus** not know
pertineō, **pertinēre**, **pertinuī**, **pertentus** pertain, matter

25. Plōtia C.l. Thalassia virīs suīs et amīcīs amāra fuit numquam. (*CIL* VI.7595)

Plōtia, **Plōtiae** *f.* Plotia
C.l. = **Gaī līberta**; **līberta**, **lībertae** *f.* freedwoman
Thalassius, **-a**, **-um** Thalassian
amārus, **-a**, **-um** bitter
numquam (adv.) never

26. Fātīs cessit suīs. (*CIL* X.7658)

CHAPTER VI

Vocabulary

➤ **Athēnae, Athēnārum** *f. pl.* Athens
Rōma, Rōmae *f.* Rome

dictum, dictī *n.* word; saying
domus, domī *f.* house, home

➤ **amor, amōris** *m.* love
animal, animālis, -ium *n.* animal
➤ **carmen, carminis** *n.* song, poem
➤ **Carthāgō, Carthāginis** *f.* Carthage
➤ **cīvis, cīvis, -ium** *m.* or *f.* citizen
corpus, corporis *n.* body
➤ **homō, hominis** *m.* human being, man
➤ **hostis, hostis, -ium** *m.* (public) enemy
➤ **iūs, iūris** *n.* right, law; judgment; court
➤ **mare, maris, *-ium** *n.* sea
māter, mātris *f.* mother
➤ **mēns, mentis, -ium** *f.* mind; intention, purpose; attitude
mīles, mīlitis *m.* soldier
➤ **moenia, moenium** *n. pl.* (city) walls
pater, patris *m.* father
➤ **patrēs cōnscrīptī**, *voc. pl.* enrolled fathers, senators
rēx, rēgis *m.* king
➤ **rūs, rūris** *n. sing. or pl.*, country(side)
➤ **servitūs, servitūtis** *f.* slavery
timor, timōris *m.* fear
➤ **urbs, urbis, -ium** *f.* city
➤ **vīs, ——, -ium** *f.* force, power; violence; *pl.*, strength (§55)

➤ **līberō** (1-tr.) free

➤ **careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus** lack, be without, be free (from) (+ abl.)

➤ **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus** choose; read
➤ **intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus** understand
➤ **vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus** live, be alive

ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen; fierce
➤ **facilis, facile** easy
➤ **difficilis, difficile** difficult
➤ **fēlīx, fēlīcis** lucky, fortunate, happy
īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis unlucky, unfortunate, unhappy
fortis, forte brave; strong
ingēns, ingentis huge, vast; remarkable
omnis, omne every; all

➤ **autem** (postpositive conj.) however; moreover
difficulter (adv.) with difficulty
facile (adv.) easily; readily
inter (prep. + acc.) between, among; during
➤ **iūre** (adv.) rightly, justly
omnīnō (adv.) entirely; at all
➤ **sub** (prep. + acc.) under; up to
(prep. + abl.) under; at the foot of; near
umquam (adv.) ever
numquam (adv.) never

Vocabulary Notes

- **Athēnae, Athēnārum** *f. pl.* appears in the plural only. (In English, too, the "s" on the end of Athens indicates that the name is plural in form.)
- The plural of **amor, amōris** *m.* may be translated "(feelings of) love," "affection," "love affair," or "object of affection." In Latin, the plural of an abstract noun is often used with a concrete meaning. When capitalized, **Amor** refers to the god Cupid.
- **carmen, carminis** *n.* is formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb **canō**. The basic meaning of **carmen** is thus something sung or chanted. It may mean a hymn, a ritual utterance, or an incantation. Since ancient poetry was often sung and always spoken out loud, **carmen** may describe a poem, a play, or a part of a play, regardless of whether it was actually sung. It may also refer abstractly to "poetry" or "song."
- **Carthāgō, Carthāginis** *f.* (often spelled with a **K**) was a city in northern Africa and the capital of the Carthaginian or Phoenician empire. The Carthaginian empire was the most powerful in the western Mediterranean until Rome's expansion. War broke out between Rome and Carthage in the third century B.C.E. and again in the middle of the second century B.C.E. These wars are referred to as the Punic wars (< **Pūnicus, -a, -um**, Phoenician, Carthaginian). The last of the Punic wars ended with the destruction of Carthage. Its legendary founder and queen was Dido, whom Aeneas encounters in the *Aeneid*.
- **cīvis, cīvis, -ium** *m.* or *f.* means "citizen" of a political unit as opposed to a foreigner, noncitizen, or slave. It may also mean "fellow citizen" or "countryman," particularly in political addresses.
- The basic meaning of **homō, hominis** *m.* is "human being" as distinct from anything nonhuman (gods, animals). **homō** is more neutral than **vir**, which is always explicitly male and may convey the notion of a man of honor or principle. The plural forms of **homō** are often used to mean "people" in general as opposed to **populus**, which means a particular "people" or "populace."

Hominēs multa impia dīcunt.	People say many wicked things.

- **hostis, hostis, -ium** *m.* is a "public enemy" of a country as opposed to **inimīcus**, a "personal enemy."
- **iūs, iūris** *n.* expresses the abstract notion of "law" or "right," rather than a particular law, for which Latin uses the word **lēx**. It may also refer to "right" in the sense of "rights of citizens." **iūs** may also mean "judgment" or "court" (the place of judgment).
- **mare, maris, *-ium** *n.* has an asterisk before the genitive plural ending because the form *marium does not occur in the Latin literature that survives. Although the genitive form **marum** does occur, **mare** displays all other i-stem features.
- **mēns, mentis, -ium** *f.* may mean "mind" as the seat of intellectual activity, "intention" or "purpose" as a result of that intellectual activity, or "frame of mind," "attitude."
- **moenia, moenium** *n. pl.* is the word for the walls that surround a city for defense.
- The phrase **patrēs cōnscrīptī**, most frequently seen in the vocative case, means "fathers (having been) enrolled" (in the senate) (< **cōnscrībō** [**con-** + **scrībō**], **cōnscrībere, cōnscrīpsī, cōnscrīptus**, enroll). It is a frequent appellation for the collective Roman senate. The phrase occasionally appears in other cases. The plural **patrēs** without the participle **cōnscrīptī** may also be used to mean "senators."
- **rūs, rūris** *n.* means the "countryside" as opposed to the city and often appears in the plural as well with this meaning. Its locative form is **rūrī**.
- **servitūs, servitūtis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tūs** to the stem of the noun **servus**.
- The final **-bs** of **urbs** is pronounced as **ps** in "taps." **urbs** often refers specifically to Rome, while **oppidum** designates a smaller town in Italy.
- **vīs, —, -ium** *f.* is an irregular third-declension noun. (For the full declension of **vīs** see §55.) In the singular, **vīs** has the meaning "force," "power," or "violence," while in the plural it means "(physical or mental) strength."

Incolae oppidum vī cēpērunt.	The inhabitants captured the town by force.
Vīrēs nautārum superābantur.	The strength of the sailors was being overcome.

- **līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātus** is a transitive verb that is often accompanied by an Ablative of Separation (§58).

Incolās perīculō līberāvimus.	We freed the inhabitants from danger.

➤ **careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus** is an intransitive verb. The fourth principal part, **caritūrus** (about to lack), is a future active participle. In addition to its basic meanings of "lack" and "be without," **careō** may mean "be free from." **careō** takes an Ablative of Separation (§58) that may be translated as a direct object in English.

Agricola amīcīs nōn caret.	The farmer does not lack friends. The farmer is not without friends.
Fīlius rēgīnae cūrīs caruit.	The son of the queen was free from cares.

➤ **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus** may mean "gather" (shells, bones, spoils of war) or "choose" (leaders, judges). Through the notion of gathering something with one's eyes and observing something, it comes to have the particular meaning of "read."

➤ **intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **inter-** to **legō**. In compounds **inter-** often means "thoroughly." From the notion of thoroughly reading or observing something, **intellegō** comes to mean "understand."

➤ **vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus** is an intransitive verb. The fourth principal part, **vīctūrus** (about to live), is a future active participle.

➤ In addition to meaning "easy," **facilis, facile** may be used of materials that are easy to work (tractable); of people or things that move with ease (nimble, agile); and of gods or people that are easily moved (favorable, gracious, indulgent).

➤ **difficilis, difficile** is an adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **dis-** to **facilis**. **difficilis** exhibits regular vowel weakening of the stem vowel. In addition to meaning "difficult," **difficilis** may be used of people or animals that are hard to move (stubborn, inflexible, intractable).

➤ When **fēlīx, fēlīcis** describes plants, trees, land, etc., it means "fruitful," "rich," or "productive." It may often have a more expanded meaning of "lucky" or "auspicious" for omens and the like. A person who is **fēlīx** is "fortunate" and by extension "happy."

➤ **autem** is a postpositive conjunction that joins two sentences or clauses. Most often **autem** adds a thought that is in opposition to a previous one (however), but sometimes the new thought is merely a different, additional idea (moreover).

Nihil scrībō. Multa autem legō.	I write nothing. However, I read many things.
Antōnius bene dīcit. Bene autem scrībit.	Antony speaks well. Moreover, he writes well.

➤ The adverb **iūre** is in origin the ablative singular of **iūs**.

➤ Like **in**, the preposition **sub** takes both the accusative and the ablative. When it takes the accusative, it conveys an idea either of motion "under" or of motion from below "up to" a place (city walls, mountains). When it takes an ablative, it indicates something "under" which someone or something is located. It can also mean "at the foot of," "close up to," or "near" (city walls, mountains).

Mīlitēs sub moenia mīsit.	He sent the soldiers up to the city walls.
Erant mīlitēs sub oppidō.	There were soldiers close up to/at the foot of the town.

	Derivatives	Cognates
ācer	vi**negar**; **acr**id; eager	ear; **ac**ute; **h**ammer; **hea**ven; **ac**me; **ac**robat
careō	caret	**cas**trate; **cas**tle; **chas**te; **cas**te; in**cest**
cīvis	**civ**il; **c**ity	**Shi**va; **ce**metery
fortis	fort; **fort**e; ef**fort**; **force**	**barr**ow; ice**berg**; **bor**ough; **bur**glar
homō	**homi**cide; **hom**bre; **hom**age	bride**groom**; **cham**eleon; **hum**ble
hostis	host; **host**ile	guest
iūs	**jur**y; in**jur**y; per**jur**e; **just**	
legō	**leg**end; **leg**ible; col**lect**; **lect**ern	**lex**icon; dys**lex**ia; -logue; **log**ic
mare	**mari**time; **mari**ne	**mer**maid; **meer**schaum; **mar**sh; **mor**ass
māter	**mater**nal; **matr**ix; **matri**mony	mother; **metro**polis; **mater**ial; De**meter**
mēns	**ment**al; de**ment**ed	mind; auto**mat**ic; **maen**ad; **men**tor; **man**ia; **man**tra
pater	**pater**nal; **patr**ician; **patr**on	father; **patri**arch
paucī	**pauc**ity; poco	**po**ny
rūs	**rur**al; **rus**tic	**roo**m; **ru**mmage; **re**am
vīs	vim; **vi**olate; **vi**olent	

§50. The Perfect Passive System

The perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative are all formed with the fourth principal part combined with forms of the verb **sum**. These two parts are written separately, and all forms of the perfect passive system are **compound verb forms**.

The fourth principal part has been identified as the perfect passive participle, and the participle has been defined as a verbal adjective with the properties of tense and voice. Although the perfect passive participle of a transitive verb appears in the vocabulary entry with the ending **-us**,[1] it may also be written with a full set of adjective endings: **-us**, **-a**, **-um**. For example: **rēctus**, **-a**, **-um**. When this adjective joins with forms of **sum** to make compound forms in the perfect passive system, it always agrees with the *subject of the verb* and therefore is *always in the nominative case*. The subject also determines the *gender* and *number*.

§51. Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the perfect passive indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the present tense of **sum**

Thus the perfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: **rēctus**, **-a**, **-um**

Singular		
1	**rēctus, -a, -um sum**	I was ruled; I have been ruled
2	**rēctus, -a, -um es**	you were ruled; you have been ruled
3	**rēctus, -a, -um est**	he, she, it was ruled; he, she, it has been ruled
Plural		
1	**rēctī, -ae, -a sumus**	we were ruled; we have been ruled
2	**rēctī, -ae, -a estis**	you (pl.) were ruled; you (pl.) have been ruled
3	**rēctī, -ae, -a sunt**	they were ruled; they have been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the perfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises cannot be translated word by word but must be treated as a unit and translated in accordance with the two meanings of the perfect tense (past time with simple aspect or present time with completed aspect). In all compound forms in Latin it is common for the form of **sum** to appear after the participle; however, these forms are often reversed, and other words may intervene. For example, **rēctus est** and **est rēctus** are equally correct.

2. The perfect passive participle ends in **-us** (sing.) or **-ī** (pl.) if the subject is masculine, **-a** (sing.) or **-ae** (pl.) if the subject is feminine, **-um** (sing.) or **-a** (pl.) if the subject is neuter. For example:

1. The perfect passive participle of *intransitive verbs* is given with the neuter ending **-um**. Remember that intransitive verbs are generally not found in the passive voice, but see §54.

Rēctus est.	He was/has been ruled.
Rēctae sumus.	We (fem.) were/have been ruled.
Oppida rēcta sunt.	The towns were/have been ruled.

Pluperfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect passive indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the imperfect tense of **sum**

Thus the pluperfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: **rēctus, -a, -um**

Singular		
1	**rēctus, -a, -um eram**	I had been ruled
2	**rēctus, -a, -um erās**	you had been ruled
3	**rēctus, -a, -um erat**	he, she, it had been ruled
Plural		
1	**rēctī, -ae, -a erāmus**	we had been ruled
2	**rēctī, -ae, -a erātis**	you (pl.) had been ruled
3	**rēctī, -ae, -a erant**	they had been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the pluperfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises cannot be translated word by word but must be treated as a unit and translated in accordance with the meaning of the pluperfect tense (past time with completed aspect). The English words "had been" always appear in translations of the pluperfect passive indicative.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle. For example:

Rēcta erat.	She had been ruled.
Nautae rēctī erant.	The sailors had been ruled.

Future Perfect Passive Indicative of All Verbs

To form the future perfect passive indicative of all verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part)
2. add *as a separate word* the future tense of **sum**

Thus the future perfect passive indicative conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: **rēctus, -a, -um**

Singular		
1	**rēctus, -a, -um erō**	I shall have been ruled
2	**rēctus, -a, -um eris**	you will have been ruled
3	**rēctus, -a, -um erit**	he, she, it will have been ruled
Plural		
1	**rēctī, -ae, -a erimus**	we shall have been ruled
2	**rēctī, -ae, -a eritis**	you (pl.) will have been ruled
3	**rēctī, -ae, -a erunt**	they will have been ruled

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the future perfect passive indicative is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises cannot be translated word by word but must be treated as a unit and translated in accordance with the meaning of the future perfect tense (future time with completed aspect).

2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle. For example:

Oppidum rēctum erit.	The town will have been ruled.
Rēctī erunt.	They (masc.) will have been ruled.

§52. Synopsis IV: Indicative, Infinitive, and Imperative

When one generates a synopsis that includes the perfect passive system, one chooses a gender for the subject in addition to a verb, a person, and a number because the compound forms of the perfect passive system include an adjective (the perfect passive participle) that always agrees with the subject of the verb. Here is a model synopsis of **agō** in the first person singular feminine:

Principal Parts: **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus**
Person, Number, and Gender: **1st sing. f.**

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	**agō**	I drive	**agor**	I am (being) driven
Imperfect	**agēbam**	I was driving	**agēbar**	I was being driven
Future	**agam**	I shall drive	**agar**	I shall be driven
Perfect	**ēgī**	1. I drove	**ācta sum**	1. I was driven
		2. I have driven		2. I have been driven
Pluperfect	**ēgeram**	I had driven	**ācta eram**	I had been driven
Future Perfect	**ēgerō**	I shall have driven	**ācta erō**	I shall have been driven
Infinitive				
Present	**agere**	to drive	**agī**	to be driven
Imperative				
Singular	**age**	drive	**agere**	be driven
Plural	**agite**	drive (pl.)	**agiminī**	be driven (pl.)

OBSERVATION

In a synopsis basic English translations should be given for indicative, infinitive, and imperative forms. The perfect indicative always requires two translations, one that is past time with simple aspect and one that is present time with completed aspect.

☛ Drill 50–52, page 227, may now be done.

§53. The Omission of *sum* in Compound Verb Forms; A Note on the Perfect Passive Participle

In the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the forms of **sum** are frequently omitted, or one form of **sum** may apply to more than one participle. For example:

Postquam oppidum *captum* [est], miserī erant incolae.
After the town *(was) captured,* wretched were the inhabitants.
After the town *was captured,* the inhabitants were wretched.
Poēta ā populō et *vīsus* et *audītus est*.
The poet by the people both *(was) seen* and *was heard*.
The poet *was* both *seen* and *heard* by the people.

OBSERVATION

The tense of the compound verb form from which **sum** has been omitted is most often perfect, and the tense of **sum** omitted is present. In special contexts, the tense may be assumed to be pluperfect or future perfect.

Apart from its use in the formation of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect passive indicative, the perfect passive participle (fourth principal part) may be used like any other first-second-declension adjective. It is then translated "(having been) _____ed." For example:

Servōs *captōs* vīdimus.
The slaves *(having been) captured* (d.o.) we saw.
We saw the *captured* slaves.

Fēminīs *interfectōrum* auxilium dabō.
To the wives *of the (having been) killed men* aid I shall give.
I shall give aid to the wives *of the killed men*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect passive participle in the first sentence agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case. The parentheses indicate that the words "having been" may be omitted from the translation.

2. The perfect passive participle in the second sentence is used substantively. Certain substantives of perfect passive participles are so common that they are considered neuter second-declension nouns. For example: **factum**, **factī** *n.* deed ([having been] done thing); **dictum**, **dictī** *n.* word ([having been] said thing).

3. When the perfect passive participle appears alone as an adjective (i.e., *not* in a compound verb form), the action it describes is always already completed at the time of the main verb. For example, "we saw" the slaves when they had already been "captured."

§54. Impersonal Passive

Intransitive verbs whose fourth principal parts end in **-um** ordinarily do not have any forms in the passive voice. Sometimes, however, such verbs appear in *third person singular* passive forms with *no expressed subjects*. The third person singular passive (in any tense and any mood) of an intransitive verb is called the **impersonal passive**. (The word **impersonal** means "having no personal subject.") Such a form reports and emphasizes that the action of the verb is being done (will be done, was done, etc.) but gives no indication of who performs that action. For example:

Per viās errātur.	Through the streets wandering is being done. There is (a) wandering through the streets.
Bene pugnātum est in prōvinciā.	Fighting was done well in the province. There was good fighting in the province.

OBSERVATIONS

1. It is convenient to translate an impersonal passive using the English gerund, a verbal noun ending in "-ing."

2. Compound verb forms that are impersonal passives always have a perfect passive participle ending in the neuter nominative singular **-um** (e.g., **pugnā*tum* est**). This neuter ending on the participle indicates that this form is impersonal.

3. Since an impersonal passive is a finite verb form, it may be modified by an adverb, as in the second sentence. In an English translation using the gerund, however, an adjective is used to modify the verbal noun.

☛ DRILL 53–54, PAGE 237, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§55. Noun Morphology: Third Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE THIRD DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS **-IS**.

Gender Note: The third declension contains masculine nouns and feminine nouns, which have a common set of endings, and neuter nouns, which have endings slightly different from those of the masculine/feminine nouns.

Case Endings of the Third Declension

Masculine/Feminine			Neuter		
	Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	—[2]	**-ēs**	Nom./Voc.	—[2]	**-a**
Gen.	**-is**	**-um**	Gen.	**-is**	**-um**
Dat.	**-ī**	**-ibus**	Dat.	**-ī**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**-em**	**-ēs**	Acc.	—[2]	**-a**
Abl.	**-e**	**-ibus**	Abl.	**-e**	**-ibus**

2. Nouns of the third declension show wide variation in the nominative singular, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR ENDING. The neuter singular accusative is always identical with the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NEUTER SINGULAR ACCUSATIVE ENDING.

MEMORIZE EACH OF THESE TWO SETS OF ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THESE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a masculine or feminine noun or a neuter noun of the third declension, add the appropriate endings to the stem.[3] For example:

	mīles, **mīlitis** *m.* soldier stem = **mīlit-**	**corpus**, **corporis** *n.* body stem = **corpor-**
	Singular	*Singular*
Nom./Voc.	mīles	corpus
Gen.	mīlit**is**	corpor**is**
Dat.	mīlitī	corporī
Acc.	mīlit**em**	corpus
Abl.	mīlit**e**	corpor**e**
	Plural	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	mīlit**ēs**	corpor**a**
Gen.	mīlit**um**	corpor**um**
Dat.	mīlit**ibus**	corpor**ibus**
Acc.	mīlit**ēs**	corpor**a**
Abl.	mīlit**ibus**	corpor**ibus**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine third-declension nouns are used to mark more than one case: **-ēs** = nominative/vocative plural and accusative plural; **-ibus** = dative plural and ablative plural.

2. Most of the endings for neuter third-declension nouns are identical with the endings for masculine/feminine third-declension nouns. Neuter nouns differ only in having **-a** in the nominative/vocative and accusative plural. The neuter singular nominative is supplied by the vocabulary entry only, and the accusative singular is always identical with the nominative singular. REMEMBER: ALL NEUTER WORDS IN LATIN HAVE IDENTICAL NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE FORMS IN BOTH THE SINGULAR AND THE PLURAL.

3. REMEMBER: TO FIND THE STEM OF ANY NOUN, REMOVE THE ENDING FROM THE GENITIVE SINGULAR FORM.

Third-Declension i-Stem Nouns

Some nouns of the third declension have a genitive plural ending **-ium** instead of **-um** and certain other slightly different endings. These nouns are called **third-declension i-stem nouns.**

Case Endings of the Third-Declension i-Stem

Masculine/Feminine			Neuter		
	Singular	*Plural*		*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	—[4]	**-ēs**	Nom./Voc.	—[4]	***-ia***
Gen.	**-is**	***-ium***	Gen.	**-is**	***-ium***
Dat.	**-ī**	**-ibus**	Dat.	**-ī**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**-em**	**-ēs/*-īs***	Acc.	—[4]	***-ia***
Abl.	**-e**	**-ibus**	Abl.	***-ī***	**-ibus**

MEMORIZE EACH OF THESE TWO SETS OF ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THESE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a masculine or feminine third-declension i-stem noun or a neuter third-declension i-stem noun, add the appropriate endings to the stem. For example:

	urbs, **urbis**, **-ium** *f.* city stem = **urb-**	**animal**, **animālis**, **-ium** *n.* animal stem = **animāl-**
	Singular	*Singular*
Nom./Voc.	urbs	animal
Gen.	urb**is**	animāl**is**
Dat.	urbī	animālī
Acc.	urb**em**	animal
Abl.	urb**e**	animālī
	Plural	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	urb**ēs**	animāl**ia**
Gen.	urb**ium**	animāl**ium**
Dat.	urb**ibus**	animāl**ibus**
Acc.	urb**ēs**/urb**īs**	animāl**ia**
Abl.	urb**ibus**	animāl**ibus**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The vocabulary entry for every i-stem noun in this book contains the genitive plural ending (**-ium**) following the full genitive singular. This additional vocabulary element serves to identify each i-stem noun as such and must be memorized.

2. There are two endings for the accusative plural of masculine/feminine i-stem nouns (**-ēs/-īs**) with no difference in meaning. Masculine/feminine i-stem nouns differ from ordinary third-declension nouns in the *genitive and accusative plural only*.

4. Nouns of the third-declension i-stem show wide variation in the nominative singular, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NOMINATIVE SINGULAR ENDING. The neuter singular accusative is always identical with the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending. MEMORIZE A BLANK IN PLACE OF A NEUTER SINGULAR ACCUSATIVE ENDING.

3. Neuter i-stem nouns differ from all other nouns of the third declension in having **-ī** (not **-e**) as the ablative singular ending. Neuter i-stem nouns differ from ordinary neuter third-declension nouns in having **-ia** (not **-a**) as the nominative and accusative plural ending.

4. There are a few masculine/feminine i-stem nouns that sometimes use **-ī** instead of **-e** in the ablative singular. Such nouns are identified in the vocabulary notes.

Among nouns of the third declension, there are many possible forms in the nominative singular and notable differences in the spellings of the nominative singular and genitive singular, from where the stem is taken. In addition, some nouns belong to the i-stem group, and others do not. All such important information for each noun is contained in the vocabulary entry. Therefore, memorizing full vocabulary entries for every third-declension noun is essential.

Since adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify only in gender, number, and case, first-second-declension adjectives are able to modify third-declension nouns. For example:

mīlitēs bonī	good soldiers (masc. pl. nom./voc.)
corpus validum	strong body (neut. sing. nom./voc./acc.)
urbis pulchrae	of the beautiful city (fem. sing. gen.)
multīs animālibus	to/for/from (etc.) many animals (neut. pl. dat./abl.)

The Irregular Third-Declension Noun *vīs*

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF THIS IMPORTANT IRREGULAR THIRD-DECLENSION NOUN:

vīs, ——, **-ium** *f.* force, power; violence; *pl.* strength

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	**vīs**	**vīrēs**
Gen.	——	**vīrium**
Dat.	——	**vīribus**
Acc.	**vim**	**vīrēs/vīrīs**
Abl.	**vī**	**vīribus**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The genitive and dative singular forms do not appear in the Latin literature that survives. MEMORIZE A BLANK AS THE SECOND ELEMENT OF THE VOCABULARY ENTRY AND BLANKS FOR THESE TWO FORMS IN THE DECLENSION.

2. In the plural **vīs** is a third-declension i-stem noun with the stem **vīr-**. The **-s-** of the original stem *vīs- has changed to **-r-** because of rhotacism (see n. 13, p. 36).

☛ DRILL 55, PAGE 241, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§56. Third-Declension Adjectives

All adjectives that are declined in Latin borrow endings from the declensions of nouns. There are two groups of adjectives only: first-second-declension adjectives, such as **bonus, bona, bonum** (§17), and **third-declension adjectives**, which borrow their endings from third-declension nouns using *all i-stem features* all the time.

Third-declension adjectives may have three forms (m., f., n.), two forms (m./f., n.), or one form (m./f./n.) in the nominative singular. For example:

ācer, ācris, ācre sharp, keen; fierce (three forms)
fortis, forte brave; strong (two forms)
fēlīx, fēlīcis lucky, fortunate, happy (one form)

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a third-declension adjective has three forms in the nominative singular, the vocabulary entry contains the same elements as the entry for a first-second-declension adjective: the masculine, feminine, and neuter singular nominative.
2. When a third-declension adjective has two forms in the nominative singular, of which the first ends in **-is** and the second ends in **-e**, the first form is the nominative singular for both masculine and feminine, and the second form is the neuter singular nominative.
3. Certain third-declension adjectives have only one nominative singular form for masculine, feminine, and neuter. In the vocabulary entry, this form is followed by the *genitive singular*.

To find the stem of third-declension adjectives with three or two nominative singular forms, take the *feminine singular nominative* and drop the ending **-is**. To find the stem of third-declension adjectives with one nominative singular form, take the *genitive singular* and drop the ending **-is**. Thus, for the examples above:

ācer, *ācr*is, ācre	Stem = **ācr-**
***fort*is, forte**	Stem = **fort-**
fēlīx, *fēlīc*is	Stem = **fēlīc-**

To decline a third-declension adjective, add these endings to the stem:

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	—	—	—	**-ēs**	**-ēs**	**-ia**
Gen.	**-is**	**-is**	**-is**	**-ium**	**-ium**	**-ium**
Dat.	**-ī**	**-ī**	**-ī**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**-em**	**-em**	—	**-ēs/-īs**	**-ēs/-īs**	**-ia**
Abl.	**-ī**	**-ī**	**-ī**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**	**-ibus**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Third-declension adjectives show wide variation in the nominative singular, where there may be three endings, two endings, or one ending. MEMORIZE THE VOCABULARY ENTRY FOR EACH THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVE. The neuter singular accusative is always identical with the neuter singular nominative, and there is no single ending.
2. *All third-declension adjectives use all i-stem features.* The ablative singular ending for all genders is **-ī**, an ending borrowed from neuter i-stem nouns. The plural endings include all i-stem features borrowed from third-declension i-stem nouns: **-ia** in the neuter nominative/vocative and accusative, **-ium** in the genitive, **-īs** as an alternate for **-ēs** in the masculine/feminine accusative.

The adjective **fortis**, **forte**, for example, declines as follows:

Stem: **fort-**

	Singular		*Plural*	
	M./F.	N.	M./F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	fortis	forte	fort**ēs**	fort**ia**
Gen.	fort**is**	fort**is**	fort**ium**	fort**ium**
Dat.	fort**ī**	fort**ī**	fort**ibus**	fort**ibus**
Acc.	fort**em**	forte	fort**ēs**/fort**īs**	fort**ia**
Abl.	fort**ī**	fort**ī**	fort**ibus**	fort**ibus**

Since adjectives must agree with the nouns they modify only in gender, number, and case, both first-second-declension adjectives and third-declension adjectives are able to modify nouns of all declensions. For example:

nautae ācrēs	fierce sailors (masc. pl. nom./voc.)
fortia facta	brave deeds (neut. pl. nom./voc./acc.)
fēlīcīs virōs	fortunate men (masc. pl. acc.)
rēgis fortis	of a brave king (masc. sing. gen.)
mente ācrī	by a keen mind (fem. sing. abl.)

☛ Drill 56, page 247, may now be done.

§57. Adverbs II

To form adverbs from third-declension adjectives:

1. take the stem[5]
2. add the ending **-iter**

Thus, for example:

Adjective	*Stem*	*Adverb*	
ācer, ***ācr*is**, **ācre**	**ācr-**	**ācriter**	fiercely
***fort*is**, **forte**	**fort-**	**fortiter**	bravely, strongly
fēlīx, ***fēlīc*is**	**fēlīc-**	**fēlīciter**	fortunately

Some third-declension adjectives do not have corresponding adverbs (e.g., **ingēns, ingentis**), and some have irregularly formed adverbs. Memorize these common irregular adverbs:

Adjective	*Irregular Adverb*	
omnis, omne	**omnīnō**	entirely, at all
facilis, facile	**facile**	easily, readily
difficilis, difficile	**difficulter**	with difficulty

☛ Drill 56–57, page 249, may now be done.

5. For adjectives with three or two endings in the nominative singular, drop the **-is** from the feminine singular nominative. For adjectives with one ending in the nominative singular, drop the **-is** from the genitive singular.

§58. Ablative of Separation

When a noun in the ablative case expresses the idea that someone is *apart from* someone or something, it is called an **Ablative of Separation.**[6] The prepositions **ā/ab**, **ē/ex**, and **dē** are sometimes used, but an Ablative of Separation more often occurs with no preposition. It is usually translated "from _____." For example:

Vir magnus populum *perīculō* līberābit. (**līberō** [1-tr.] free)
The great man the people (d.o.) *from danger* will free.
The great man will free the people *from danger.*
Bona est nostra vīta; nam *cūrīs* carēmus. (**careō**, **carēre**, **caruī**, **caritūrus** be without)
Good is our life; for *(from) cares* we are without.
Our life is good; for we are without *cares.*
***Odiō* lībera semper erat.**
From hatred free always she was.
She was always free *from hatred.*

The syntax of each italicized word (**perīculō**, **cūrīs**, **odiō**) is **Ablative of Separation.**

§59. Ablative of Cause

When a noun in the ablative case *without a preposition* expresses the *cause* or *reason* for a quality or verbal action, it is called an **Ablative of Cause**. For example:

Incolae *īrā* atque *odiō* bellum gerēbant.
The inhabitants *because of (from) anger* and *hatred* war (d.o.) were waging.
The inhabitants were waging war *because of anger* and *hatred.*

The syntax of each italicized word (**īrā**, **odiō**) is **Ablative of Cause.**

OBSERVATION

The use of the ablative case to express cause indicates that cause is understood as the *source* of a particular event or as something *from which* an event arises. Thus, an Ablative of Cause reflects the basic *separative* function of the ablative case. Other expressions of reason or cause that may be equivalent to the Ablative of Cause include: **propter** + accusative, **per** + accusative, and **ē/ex** or **dē** + ablative.

6. For separation as the original function of the ablative case see §1.

§60. Ablative of Place From Which

When a noun in the ablative case is used to express *motion from a place*, it is called an **Ablative of Place From Which**. The prepositions **ā/ab**, **ē/ex**, or **dē** are regularly used. However, *the prepositions are omitted with names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns* ***domus*** *and* ***rūs***. For example:

Ab *Italiā* vēla dedimus.	*Away from Italy* we set sail. We set sail *(away) from Italy*.
Agēbāmur ex *patriā*.	We were being driven *out from the country*.
***Rōmā* discēdam.**	*From Rome* I shall depart. I shall depart *from Rome*.

The syntax of each italicized word (**Italiā**, **patriā**, **Rōmā**) is **Ablative of Place From Which**. The Ablative of Place From Which is a particular variety of the Ablative of Separation.

§61. Ablative of Place Where and the Locative Case

Ablative of Place Where

When a noun in the ablative case expresses the idea of *location,* it is called an **Ablative of Place Where**.[7] The preposition **in** (less frequently certain other prepositions such as **sub** or **prō**) is regularly used.[8] For example:

In *oppidō* erant multī nautae.	*In the town* there were many sailors.

The syntax of the italicized word (**oppidō**) is **Ablative of Place Where**.

Locative Case

At an early stage in its development, Latin had a separate case for nouns to express location. This case was called the **Locative Case** and had endings that sometimes resembled genitive endings and sometimes resembled ablative endings. Most nouns lost their locative forms early, and location came to be expressed by the ablative case. However, *the names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns* ***domus*** *and* ***rūs*** *retained their locative case forms.* MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING COMMON LOCATIVE FORMS:

Noun	*Locative*	*Translation*
domus, domī *f.*	**domī**	at home
rūs, rūris *n.*	**rūrī**	in the countryside
Rōma, Rōmae *f.*	**Rōmae**	in/at Rome
Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.*	**Athēnīs**	in/at Athens
Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.*	**Carthāginī** or **Carthāgine**	in/at Carthage

7. For location as a function of the ablative case see §1.

8. With certain words in certain authors the preposition is omitted, and certain common phrases may also appear without the preposition. For example: **terrā marīque** (on land and on sea).

OBSERVATIONS

1. For nouns that have surviving locative forms, the Ablative of Place Where with the preposition **in** is not regularly used.

2. For first- and second-declension nouns:

   a. The locative singular ending is identical with the genitive singular ending.
   b. The locative plural ending is identical with the ablative plural ending.

For third-declension nouns, no consistent rule applies. The locative singular ending may be either **-ī** or **-e** or both.

§62. Accusative of Place To Which

When a noun in the accusative case is used to express *motion toward a place*, it is called an **Accusative of Place To Which**. The prepositions **ad** and **in** (less frequently certain other prepositions such as **sub**) are regularly used. However, *the prepositions are omitted with names of cities, towns, and small islands, and the nouns* ***domus*** *and* ***rūs***. For example:

Fēmina ad *prōvinciam* mittitur.	The woman *to the province* is being sent. The woman is being sent *to the province*.
Rōmānī *Athēnās* vēnērunt.	The Romans *to Athens* came. The Romans came *to Athens*.

The syntax of each italicized word (**prōvinciam**, **Athēnās**) is **Accusative of Place To Which.**

Summary of Place Expressions

	→ "to" a place	x "in" a place	← "from" a place
Most Nouns and Pronouns	**ad/in/sub +** Accusative of Place To Which	**in/sub +** Ablative of Place Where	**ē, ex/ā, ab +** Ablative of Place From Which
Names of Cities, Towns, Small Islands, **domus**, and **rūs**	*No preposition* Accusative of Place To Which **Rōmam** **Athēnās** **Carthāginem** **domum** **rūs**	*Locative* **Rōmae** **Athēnīs** **Carthāginē/Carthāginī** **domī** **rūrī**	*No Preposition* Ablative of Place From Which **Rōmā** **Athēnīs** **Carthāgine** **domō** **rūre**

☛ Drill 58–62, page 253, may now be done.

Short Readings

1. A character expresses his opinion about the gods' attitude toward human action.

   ōdērunt dī hominēs iniūrōs. (NAEVIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 37)

iniūrus, **-a**, **-um** lawless, unjust

2. The opinion of a character in a comic play

   edepol proinde ut diū vīvitur, bene vīvitur. (PLAUTUS, *TRINUMMUS* 65)

edepol (interj.) by Pollux
proinde (adv.) according, in the same way
diū (adv.) for a long time

3. At the outset of his epic poem, the poet recalls what he saw in a dream.

   vīsus Homērus adesse poēta . . . (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLĒS* I.3)

Homērus, **Homērī** *m.* Homer
adsum (**ad-** + **sum**), **adesse**, **adfuī**, **adfutūrus** be present

4. A fragment from the epic poetry of Ennius

   fortibus est fortūna virīs data. (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLĒS* VII.19)

fortūna, **fortūnae** *f.* fortune, chance

5. Cicero asks rhetorically how one ought to respond to divine portents.

   . . . vōx ipsa deōrum immortālium nōn mentīs omnium permovēbit?

   (CICERO, *DĒ HARUSPICUM RESPŌNSĪS* 62)

vōx, **vōcis** *f.* voice
immortālis, **immortāle** immortal
permoveō (**per-** + **moveō**) thoroughly move, thoroughly stir

6. As part of his defense of a man charged with murder, Cicero reminds the jurors of the atmosphere in a politically disturbed city.

   silent lēgēs inter arma . . . (CICERO, *PRŌ MILŌNE* 11)

sileō, **silēre**, **siluī**, —— be silent
lēx, **lēgis** *f.* law

7. The orator quotes a common saying.

   iūcundī āctī labōrēs. (CICERO, *DĒ FĪNIBUS* II.105)

iūcundus, **-a**, **-um** pleasing, delightful, agreeable
labor, **labōris** *m.* work, labor

8. The province of Gaul does not recognize Antony as consul. Therefore, Antony is not consul.

   omnēs enim in cōnsulis iūre et imperiō dēbent esse prōvinciae.

   (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS IV* 9)

cōnsul, **cōnsulis** *m.* consul

9. An example of the brevity and wit of Cicero's epistolary style

Cipius ōlim: "nōn omnibus dormiō." sīc ego nōn omnibus, mī Galle, serviō.

(Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* VII.24.1)

Cipius, **Cipiī** *m.* Cipius
ōlim (adv.) once
dormiō, **dormīre**, **dormiī/dormīvī**, **dormītum** sleep, be asleep
Gallus, **Gallī** *m.* Gallus
serviō, **servīre**, **serviī/servīvī**, **servītūm** be a slave (+ dat.)

10. The biographer Nepos explains why Hannibal was made a king.

ut enim Rōmae cōnsulēs, sīc Carthāgine quotannīs annuī bīnī rēgēs creābantur.

(Cornelius Nepos, *Vīta Hannibalis* 7)

cōnsul, **cōnsulis** *m.* consul
quotannīs (adv.) yearly, every year
annuus, **-a**, **-um** yearly; appointed for one year
bīnī, **bīnae**, **bīna** two each, two at a time
creō (1-tr.) create

Some Roman proverbs

11. contrā fēlīcem vix deus vīrēs habet. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* C36)

contrā (prep. + acc.) against
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

12. damnātī lingua vōcem habet, vim nōn habet. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* D2)

damnō (1-tr.) condemn
lingua, **linguae** *f.* tongue
vōx, **vōcis** *f.* voice

13. extrēma semper dē ante factīs indicant. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* E17)

extrēmus, **-a**, **-um** last, final
ante (adv.) before, previously
indicō (1-tr.) reveal, inform, indicate

14. invidiam ferre aut fortis aut fēlīx potest. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* I36)

15. nihil agere semper īnfēlīcī est optimum. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* N43)

optimus, **-a**, **-um** best

16. patiēns et fortis sē ipsum fēlīcem facit. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* P15)

patiēns, **patientis** enduring, patient

17. The poet reflects on the lives of farmers.

. . . redit agricolīs labor āctus in orbem,

atque in sē sua per vestīgia volvitur annus. (VERGIL, *GEORGICS* II.401–2)

labor, labōris *m.* work, labor
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle
vestīgium, vestīgiī *n.* trace; footstep, track
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus *active and passive,* turn, roll
annus, annī *m.* year

18. The poet introduces the city that would become Rome's archenemy.

urbs antīqua fuit (Tyriī tenuēre colōnī)

Carthāgō . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.12–13)

antīquus, -a, -um old, ancient
Tyrius, -a, -um Tyrian, Phoenician
colōnus, colōnī *m.* farmer; settler

19. Finally in sight of Italy, Anchises addresses the gods.

"dī maris et terrae tempestātumque potentēs,

ferte viam ventō facilem et spīrāte secundī."

crēbrēscunt optātae aurae . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* III.528–30)

tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm
potēns, potentis powerful, having power over (+ gen.)
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
spīrō (1-tr.) breathe, blow
secundus, -a, -um favorable
crēbrēscō, crēbrēscere, ——, —— increase, grow strong
aura, aurae *f.* breeze

20. The poet describes a violent encounter on the battlefield.

Catillus Iollān

ingentemque animīs, ingentem corpore et armīs

dēicit Herminium . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* XI.640–42)

Catillus, Catillī *m.* Catillus (an Italian warrior)
Iollās, Iollae *m.* Iollas (a Trojan); **Iollān** = *acc. sing.*
dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī, dēiectus throw down, cast down
Herminius, Herminiī *m.* Herminius (a Trojan)

21. Turnus responds bravely to Aeneas's taunts.

. . . nōn mē tua fervida terrent

dicta, ferōx: dī mē terrent et Iuppiter hostis. (VERGIL, *AENEID* XII.894–95)

fervidus, -a, -um seething; furious
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus terrify, frighten
ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; defiant
Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* Jupiter

22. In the context of a country festival and sacrifice, the poet addresses his patron, Messala.

hūc ades aspīrāque mihi, dum carmine nostrō
redditur agricolīs grātia caelitibus.
rūra canō rūrisque deōs. . . . (Tibullus, *Elegīae* II.1.35–37)

hūc (adv.) (to) here, hither
adsum, **adesse**, **adfuī**, **adfutūrus** be present; **ades** = *sing. imper. act.*
aspīrō (1-intr.) breathe upon; be favorable (+ dat.)
dum (conj.) while, as long as
reddō, **reddere**, **reddidī**, **redditus** give back, return
grātia, **grātiae** *f.* favor; thanks
caeles, **caelitis** heavenly, celestial

23. The poet identifies one difficulty in trying to write poetry correctly.

in vitium dūcit culpae fuga sī caret arte. (Horace, *Ars Poētica* 31)

vitium, **vitiī** *n.* vice, fault
culpa, **culpae** *f.* guilt, blame; fault
fuga, **fugae** *f.* flight; avoidance
ars, **artis**, **-ium** *f.* art, skill

24. The poet addresses this remark to his beloved, Cynthia.

omnia sī dederīs† ōscula, pauca dabis. (Propertius II.15.50)

†The **-i-** of **dederis** here scans *long.*
ōsculum, **ōsculī** *n.* kiss

25. Part of Hypermnestra's apostrophe to Io, another unjustly punished victim

per mare, per terrās cognātaque flūmina curris:
dat mare, dant amnēs, dat tibi terra viam. (Ovid, *Hērōides* XIV.101–2)

cognātus, **-a**, **-um** related, kindred
flūmen, **flūminis** *n.* river, stream
currō, **currere**, **cucurrī**, **cursum** run, rush
amnis, **amnis**, **-ium** *m.* stream, torrent

26. The poet expresses an emotional quandary.

sīc ego nec sine tē nec tēcum vīvere possum,
et videor vōtī nescius esse meī. (Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.11.39–40)

vōtum, **vōtī** *n.* vow; desire
nescius, **-a**, **-um** not knowing; unaware (+ gen.)

27. Odysseus attacks Ajax, his rival for Achilles' arms.

fortis ubi est Aiāx? ubi sunt ingentia magnī
verba virī? . . . (Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* XIII.340–41)

Aiāx, **Aiācis** *m.* Ajax (one of the Greek leaders at Troy)

28. The poet sends his new collection of poems off to Rome.

Parve—nec invideō—sine mē, liber, ībis in urbem. (Ovid, *Trīstia* I.1.1)

invideō (**in-** + **videō**) envy, be jealous

29. In a letter to an enemy, the poet in exile explains why he is still a threat.

omnia, sī nescīs, Caesar mihi iūra relīquit,

et sōla est patriā poena carēre meā. (Ovid, *Trīstia*, IV.9.11–12)

nesciō, nescīre, nesciī/nescīvī, nescītus not know
Caesar, Caesaris *m.* Caesar (Augustus)
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus leave (behind)
sōlus, -a, -um only

30. While despairing that he may have lost his ability to compose, the poet mentions an old source of inspiration.

dēnique nōn parvās animō dat glōria vīrēs,

et fēcunda facit pectora laudis amor. (Ovid, *Trīstia*, V.12.37–38)

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
fēcundus, -a, -um fertile, productive, fruitful
pectus, pectoris *n. sing. or pl.*, heart; soul, spirit
laus, laudis *f.* praise

31. The historian comments on Hannibal's taking of Saguntum.

captum oppidum est cum ingentī praedā. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXI.15.1)

praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder

32. The historian makes a comparison between a Roman citizen and a citizen of Tarentum, a town in southern Italy.

nōn animō, nōn armīs, nōn arte bellī, nōn vigōre ac vīribus corporis pār Rōmānō Tarentīnus erat . . . (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXVII.16.1)

ars, artis, -ium *f.* art, skill
vigor, vigōris *m.* liveliness, vigor
pār, paris equal
Tarentīnus, -a, -um of Tarentum, Tarentine

33. Seneca remarks on one of the consequences of wealth.

magna servitūs est magna fortūna. (Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* XI.6.5)

fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune

34. Part of the naturalist's description of a particular class of taloned birds

omnibus ālae grandēs, corpus exiguum; ambulant difficulter; . . .

(Pliny the Elder, *Natural History* X.42)

āla, ālae *f.* wing
grandis, grande great, large
exiguus, -a, -um small, slight

35. Having praised another writer for his ability to dash off a few verses, the poet makes a distinction.

facile est epigrammata bellē
scrībere, sed librum scrībere difficile est. (Martial VII.85.4–5)

epigramma, **epigrammatis** *n.* epigram
bellē (adv.) beautifully, prettily

36. After a blistering description of Roman excess, the satirist summarizes his predicament.

difficile est saturam nōn scrībere. (Juvenal, *Saturae* I.30)

satura, **saturae** *f.* satire

37. The poet compares Cicero to Octavian, who took the title *pater patriae*.

sed Rōma parentem,
Rōma patrem patriae Cicerōnem lībera dīxit.† (Juvenal, *Saturae* VIII.244)

parēns, **parentis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* parent
Cicerō, **Cicerōnis** *m.* Cicero
†**dīcō**, *here*, call

Two gravestone inscriptions

38. Francus ego cīvis, Rōmānus mīles in armīs,
ēgregiā virtūte tulī bellō mea<m> dextera<m> semper. (*CIL* III.3576)

Francus, **-a**, **-um** Frankish, of *or* belonging to the Franks (a German tribe)
ēgregius, **-a**, **-um** excellent, distinguished
virtūs, **virtūtis** *f.* courage
dexter, **dext(e)ra**, **dext(e)rum** right; *fem. subst.*, right hand

39. Nihil sumus et fuimus mortālēs. Respice, lēctor,
in nihil ab nihilō quam citō recidimus. (*CIL* VI.26003)

mortālis, **mortāle** mortal
respiciō, **respicere**, **respexī**, **respectus** look (back); consider, be mindful
lēctor, **lēctōris** *m.* reader
nihilum, **nihilī** *n.* nothing
quam (adv.) how
citō (adv.) swiftly
recidō, **recidere**, **recidī**, —— fall (back)

40. A gravestone inscription for a guard dog

Raedārum custōs numquam latrāvit ineptē:
nunc silet et cinerēs vindicat umbra suōs. (*CIL* IX.5785)

raeda, **raedae** *f.* wagon
custōs, **custōdis** *m.* or *f.* guardian, sentry
latrō (1-intr.) bark
ineptē (adv.) improperly, inappropriately
sileō, **silēre**, **siluī**, —— be silent
cinis, **cineris** *m.* ash
vindicō (1-tr.) lay claim to; protect, defend
umbra, **umbrae** *f.* shadow, shade

Longer Readings

1. Ennius, *Annālēs* I.37–42

After the death of Aeneas, his daughter Ilia (later the mother of Romulus and Remus) relates to her sister a frightening dream.

vīrēs vītaque corpus meum nunc dēserit omne.
nam mē vīsus homō pulcher per amoena salicta
et rīpās raptāre locōsque novōs. ita sōla
postillā, germāna soror, errāre vidēbar
tardaque vestīgāre et quaerere tē neque posse
corde capessere; sēmita nūlla pedem stabilībat.

dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus abandon, desert, forsake
amoenus, -a, -um pleasing, beautiful
salictum, salictī *n.* willow bed
rīpa, rīpae *f.* (river) bank
raptō (1-tr.) carry away by force
locus, locī *m.* place
novus, -a, -um new, strange
ita (adv.) thus, so
sōlus, -a, -um alone
postillā (adv.) afterward
germānus, -a, -um having the same father and mother; true, real
soror, sorōris *f.* sister
tardus, -a, -um slow
vestīgō (1-tr.) track down, try to find
quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesīvī, quaesītus search for, seek
cor, cordis *n.* heart; mind
capessō, capessere, capessiī/capessīvī, capessītus take hold of, grasp
sēmita, sēmitae *f.* path, track
nūllus, -a, -um no, not any
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
stabilō, stabilīre, stabilīvī, stabilītus make steady, make sure; **stabilībat = stabiliēbat**

Quintus Ennius (239–169 B.C.E.) is the most prominent writer of archaic Latin literature. He was born near Brundisium in southern Italy and was a native speaker of Oscan. He was called the man of three hearts because he spoke Oscan, Latin, and Greek. His epic poem *Annālēs* (*Annals*) is the first Latin epic poem written in dactylic hexameter, the meter of Greek epic. It related all of Roman history in eighteen books, and several hundred fragments of it have survived. In the *Annālēs,* Ennius attempted with considerable success to incorporate many elements of Greek literary style into his work, and his pioneering efforts influenced many later Latin poets, including Vergil.[9]

9. For these and all biographical and literary notes, the authors are indebted to G.B. Conte, *Latin Literature: A History* (Johns Hopkins, 1994).

2. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 4.30

Cicero addresses and attacks his enemy Clodius, who attempted to prevent Cicero's return from exile in 57 B.C.E.

an tū cīvem ab hoste nātūrā ac locō, nōn animō factīsque distinguis? caedem in forō fēcistī, armātīs latrōnibus templa tenuistī, prīvātōrum domōs, aedēs sacrās incendistī. cūr hostis Spartacus sī tū cīvis?

an (conj.) *introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer,* can it really be that . . .
nātūra, nātūrae *f.* nature
locus, locī *m.* place; position, rank
distinguō, distinguere, distīnxī, distīnctus mark out, distinguish
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm
latrō, latrōnis *m.* hired soldier; criminal, thief
templum, templī *n.* temple
prīvātus, -a, -um private
aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine
sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus set on fire, (cause to) burn
Spartacus, Spartacī *m.* Spartacus (Thracian gladiator who led a slave revolt [73–71 B.C.E.])

Marcus Tullius Cicero (106–43 B.C.E.), lawyer, statesman, philosopher, and would-be poet, is central to any study of Latin prose style, and he is the single most influential Latin prose writer. His smooth and balanced style was studied by all, emulated by many, and steadfastly avoided by a strong-minded few. Cicero's many writings that have survived—including political and legal orations, philosophical works, and volumes of letters—paint the most detailed portrait that we have of a life in ancient Rome. His political career reached its height when as consul (in 63) he repressed an attempted revolt led by the prominent nobleman Catiline. Twenty years later he was killed at the order of Marc Antony, whose enmity he had incurred through a series of virulent public attacks.

The *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* (Paradoxes of the Stoics), written in 46 B.C.E., comprises explanations of six theories of the Stoic school of philosophy that appeal least to common sense.

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* IX.37–39

Caïcus summons the Trojans to action as the Rutulians attack.

". . . ferte citī ferrum, date tēla, ascendite mūrōs;
hostis adest, heia!" ingentī clāmōre per omnīs
condunt sē Teucrī portās et moenia complent.

citus, -a, -um swift, quick
tēlum, tēlī *n.* spear; weapon
ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsus climb, scale
mūrus, mūrī *m.* walls
adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus be present, be near
heia (interj.) ho! come on!
clāmor, clāmōris *m.* shout
condō, condere, condidī, conditus hide
Teucrī, Teucrōrum *m. pl.* Teucrians, Trojans
porta, portae *f.* gate
compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētus fill (completely)

Publius Vergilius Marō (70–19 B.C.E.) was born near Mantua in northern Italy. By the time of his death his reputation as the greatest Roman poet was already established. In Vergil the Latin poetry of the Golden Age reaches its height. Each of his three works, the *Eclogues,* the *Georgics,* and the *Aeneid,* is the masterwork of its genre. Vergil's poetry is indebted to both the Greek and Roman literary traditions, but although the poet drew freely on his predecessors—in particular, Homer, Hesiod, Theocritus, Ennius, Lucretius, and Catullus—Vergil produced a series of works that demonstrate the poet's mastery of poetic technique and the depth of his insight into the whole Roman world. The study of Vergil became a staple of Roman education, and as a result his vocabulary, his syntax, and his command of the dactylic hexameter are echoed in all later Roman writers.

The *Aeneid,* Vergil's most well-known work and the most famous work of Latin literature, is an epic poem written in dactylic hexameters and arranged in twelve books. It traces the travels and development of the Trojan hero Aeneas as he makes his way from his fallen homeland to Italy, where he is to found a new Troy in the form of Rome. Vergil may well have been encouraged by Maecenas and Augustus to write a Roman epic that could rival Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey.* In this poem Vergil creates a new kind of Roman hero, whose greatest virtue, **pietās** (devotion to duty), is secured at a high price. In retelling the legendary foundation of Rome, Vergil appears to weave together both a positive and negative interpretation of the Roman empire and its virtues: while praising the greatness of Rome, the *Aeneid* also calls attention to the cost of that greatness.

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* XI.141–43

After King Midas discovers that his golden touch is more of a curse than a blessing, he learns from an oracle how to rid himself of his power. The oracle sends him to a particular river and orders him to do the following.

". . . subde caput corpusque simul, simul ēlue crīmen."

rēx iussae succēdit aquae: vīs aurea tīnxit

flūmen et hūmānō dē corpore cessit in amnem; . . .

subdō (**sub-** + **dō**), **subdere**, **subdidī**, **subditus** put under, place under
caput, capitis *n.* head
simul (adv.) at the same time
ēluō, ēluere, ēluī, ēlūtus wash out; remove
crīmen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation; fault, defect
succēdō (**sub-** + **cēdō**) go under, enter (+ dat.)
aqua, aquae *f.* water
aureus, -a, -um golden
tingō, tingere, tīnxī, tīnctus dye, tinge
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream
hūmānus, -a, -um human
amnis, amnis, -ium *m.* stream, torrent

Publius Ovidius Nasō (43 B.C.E.–17 C.E.) was born at Sulmo, educated in Athens, and then moved to Rome. His talent was quickly noticed, and by the age of forty Ovid was Rome's leading poet. He is usually considered the last of the great poets of the Augustan age. For reasons that are still obscure he was banished to the Black Sea in 8 C.E., where he lived out his remaining years endeavoring to return to Rome. While in exile Ovid produced many elegiac poems pleading for his return, and it is from these that most of our biographical information about him derives. In all his works Ovid's erudition combines with his fantastic imagination to produce a poetic style that is varied, allusive, and often humorous and surprising. He employs a simplicity of syntax and word choice to produce a smoothness and immediate intelligibility that belie the complexity of his material.

The *Metamorphōsēs* is an epic poem in fifteen books and is considered Ovid's masterpiece. It weaves some 250 mythological stories into a single narrative from the beginning of time down to the deification of Julius Caesar.

5. Seneca the Younger, *Herculēs Furēns* 181–85

The chorus sings of the Fates.

dūrae peragunt pēnsa sorōrēs
nec sua retrō fīla revolvunt.
at gēns hominum fertur rapidīs
obvia fātīs incerta suī:
Stygiās ultrō quaerimus undās.

peragō (per- + agō), peragere, perēgī, perāctus thoroughly do; accomplish, complete
pēnsum, pēnsī *n.* weight; wool (weighed out to be spun in a day); *pl.*, spinning
soror, sorōris *f.* sister
retrō (adv.) back, backward
fīlum, fīlī *n.* thread
revolvō, revolvere, revolvī, revolūtus (un)roll; go through (again)
at (conj.) but
gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation; clan, family
rapidus, -a, -um consuming; rushing, rapid
obvius, -a, -um in the way, face to face; (so as) to meet (+ dat.)
incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain
Stygius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the underworld river Styx; Stygian
ultrō (adv.) of one's own accord, spontaneously, voluntarily
quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesīvī, quaesītus search for, seek
unda, undae *f.* wave, water

Lūcius Annaeus Seneca (4? B.C.E.–65 C.E.) was born in Cordoba in southern Spain and came to Rome when he was a young boy. He is called **Seneca the Younger** to distinguish him from his father, who was a writer of rhetorical exercises. Seneca the Younger's career as a teacher and politician saw many high and low points: he was banished on charges of adultery in 41, recalled through the influence of Claudius's wife Agrippina, and made praetor in 49. He became Nero's tutor at the same time. When Claudius was murdered and Nero became emperor, Seneca was one of his closest advisers. Eventually, however, he fell from grace and was forced to commit suicide in 65. Seneca's literary output was prodigious and includes philosophical treatises, satire, letters, speeches, geography, and, not least, tragedies.

In the *Herculēs Furēns,* based on a play by Euripides, the hero kills his wife and children while in the grip of a madness imposed on him by Juno. After he regains his sanity, Hercules considers killing himself as well, but he is kept from doing this and instead finds sanctuary with Theseus in Athens. The play abounds in the rhetorical excesses that mark all of Seneca's tragedies.

§63. Names in Latin II

Proper names in Latin may belong to the first, second, or third declension. Many of the names of Roman gods belong to the third declension. Here is a list of the names of the most prominent Roman gods and the names of the Greek gods with whom they are identified.

Roman God	*Greek Counterpart*
Iuppiter, **Iovis** *m.* Jupiter, king of the gods, god of sky, weather	Zeus
Iūnō, **Iūnōnis** *f.* Juno, goddess of women, marriage	Hera
Neptūnus, **Neptūnī** *m.* Neptune, god of the sea	Poseidon
Orcus, Orcī *m.* Orcus, god of the underworld	Pluto, Hades
Dīs, **Dītis** *m.* Dis ("Rich one"), god of the underworld	Pluto, Hades
Cerēs, **Cereris** *f.* Ceres, goddess of agriculture	Demeter
Vesta, **Vestae** *f.* Vesta, goddess of the hearth	Hestia
Venus, **Veneris** *f.* Venus, goddess of desire, passion	Aphrodite
Amor, **Amōris** *m.* Love, Amor, son of Venus, god of desire, passion	Eros
Cupīdō, **Cupīdinis** *m.* Cupid (another name for **Amor**)	Eros
Apollō, **Apollinis** *m.* Apollo, god of the arts (medicine, poetry, etc.)	Apollo
Diāna, **Diānae** *f.* Diana, goddess of virginity, hunting	Artemis
Minerva, **Minervae** *f.* Minerva, goddess of arts, sciences, wisdom	Athena
Mars, **Martis** *m.* Mars, god of war	Ares
Mercurius, **Mercuriī** *m.* Mercury, messenger god, conductor of souls	Hermes
Vulcānus, **Vulcānī** *m.* Vulcan, god of fire	Hephaestus
Bacchus, **Bacchī** *m.* Bacchus, god of wine	Dionysus
Līber, **Līberī** *m.* Liber ("Free one") (another name for **Bacchus**)	Dionysus

The Roman poet Ennius composed two dactylic hexameter[1] lines that contain the names of the twelve principal Olympian gods:

Iūnō Vesta Minerva Cerēs Dīāna Venus Mars
Mercurius Iovis Neptūnus Volcānus Apollō[2]

Although the Romans borrowed much from Greek literature and culture, many aspects of Roman religion, including most of the names of their gods, have native Italic origins. Many Italic deities lost their original significance through being identified with a particular god of the Greek pantheon. For example, although Mars became the name for the war god in classical Rome, the name originally belonged to an Italic god of agriculture.

The Romans also engaged in the practice of making men gods. In the historical period this began after the assassination of Julius Caesar in 44 B.C.E.[3] When a comet was seen in the sky in 43, it was declared to be **dīvus Iūlius** ("divine" or "deified Julius"). (LEARN THESE ADJECTIVES: **DĪVUS, -A, -UM** DEIFIED, DIVINE; **DĪVĪNUS, -A, -UM** BELONGING TO THE GODS, DIVINE.) Even the title **Augustus**, adopted by Octavian in 27 B.C.E.,

1. For this meter see §83.

2. The **-i-** of **Dīāna** here scans *long*. **Iovis** is here nominative singular, and its last syllable here scans *short*. The spelling **Volcānus** is archaic.

3. According to legend Romulus was also deified.

reflects the unique relation of the Romans to things religious. Before Octavian took it as an honorific name, the adjective **augustus**, **-a**, **-um** ("venerable," "revered") had been applied only to religious objects, temples, and the like, but never to a person.

Below are listed names that belong to the third declension and additional names that belong to the first and second declensions. These names and the names above are used in the sentences throughout this book. When they appear in readings, they are not included in vocabulary lists. FAMILIARIZE YOURSELF WITH THESE NAMES AND BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THEM AS THEY OCCUR.

Historical Figures[4]

C. Iūlius Caesar, **C. Iūliī Caesaris** *m.* Gaius Julius Caesar (Julius Caesar)
M. Porcius Catō, **M. Porciī Catōnis** *m.* Marcus Porcius Cato (Cato)
M. Tullius Cicerō, **M. Tulliī Cicerōnis** *m.* Marcus Tullius Cicero (Cicero)
Hannibal, **Hannibalis** *m.* Hannibal

Poets

P. Ovidius Nāsō, **P. Ovidiī Nāsōnis** *m.* Publius Ovidius Naso (Ovid)
Sex. Propertius, **Sex. Propertiī** *m.* Sextus Propertius (Propertius)
P. Vergilius Marō, **P. Vergiliī Marōnis** *m.* Publius Vergilius Maro (Vergil)

Poets' Names for Their Beloveds[5]

Corinna, **Corinnae** *f.* Corinna
Cynthia, **Cynthiae** *f.* Cynthia
Lesbia, **Lesbiae** *f.* Lesbia

4. The name **Caesar** may designate Julius Caesar, but it was also taken as a *cognōmen* by all the emperors until Hadrian in the second century C.E. There are two important Romans named **Marcus Porcius Cato**: Cato the Elder (**Catō Maior**) and Cato of Utica (**Catō Uticēnsis**). Cato the Elder, so called to distinguish him from the second Cato, was also known as Cato the Censor. He played a central role in the political and cultural life of the second century B.C.E. Cato of Utica, the Elder's great-grandson, fought on Pompey's side against Julius Caesar and committed suicide rather than accept Caesar's pardon. **Hannibal** was the leader of the Carthaginians in the second Punic war. He was Rome's fiercest opponent, invading Italy, winning many important battles, and nearly succeeding in subduing Rome.

5. **Lesbia**, **Cynthia**, and **Corinna** are the names assigned in their love poetry to their beloveds by the poets **Catullus**, **Propertius**, and **Ovid** respectively.

CHAPTER VII

Vocabulary

āra, ārae *f.* altar
➤ **cōpia, cōpiae** *f.* abundance; *pl.*, troops, forces
➤ **fortūna, fortūnae** *f.* fortune, chance
➤ **īnsidiae, īnsidiārum** *f. pl.* ambush, plot, treachery
nātūra, nātūrae *f.* nature
umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade

➤ **ingenium, ingeniī** *n.* nature; disposition; (natural) talent
templum, templī *n.* temple

➤ **ars, artis, -ium** *f.* skill, art; guile, trick
➤ **cīvitās, cīvitātis** *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship
frāter, frātris *m.* brother
mors, mortis, -ium *f.* death
➤ **pars, partis, -ium** *f.* part
soror, sorōris *f.* sister
➤ **virtūs, virtūtis** *f.* manliness, courage; excellence, virtue
➤ **vōx, vōcis** *f.* voice; word

➤ **maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus** remain, stay; *tr.*, await
➤ **terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus** terrify, frighten

➤ **cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus** desire, long for, want
➤ **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus** flee
➤ **petō, petere, petiī/petīvī, petītus** ask (for), seek; attack
➤ **trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus** hand over, surrender; hand down
➤ **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus** conquer, overcome; *intr.*, win

➤ **auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus** carry away, take away, remove
➤ **differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus** *intr.*, differ, be different; *tr.*, carry in different directions

acerbus, -a, -um bitter; harsh
antīquus, -a, -um old, ancient
➤ **cārus, -a, -um** precious; dear (to) (+ dat.)
➤ **certus, -a, -um** sure, certain, reliable
incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain, unreliable
falsus, -a, -um deceptive, false
➤ **novus, -a, -um** new; strange
vērus, -a, -um real, true

➤ **mortālis, mortāle** mortal
➤ **immortālis, immortāle** immortal

➤ **ante** (adv.) before, earlier, previously
(prep. + acc.) before; in front of
➤ **aut** (conj.) or
➤ **aut . . . aut . . .** either . . . or . . .
➤ **etiam** (adv.) also, even; still
➤ **ita** (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way
➤ **nē** (adv.) not (§70)
➤ **post** (adv.) after(ward), later; behind
(prep. + acc.) after; behind
➤ **sōlum** (adv.) only
➤ **nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . .** not only . . . but also . . .
➤ **utinam** (particle) *introduces an Optative subjunctive* (§70)
➤ **vērō** (adv.) certainly, indeed; but (in fact)
vērum (conj.) but

Vocabulary Notes

- In the singular **cōpia**, **cōpiae** *f.* means "abundance" (of food, of material). In the plural it most often means "troops" or "forces" (an abundance of soldiers).
- **fortūna**, **fortūnae** *f.* indicates something that is opposed to reason or predictability. **fortūna** may be good or bad and is often personified as the divine agent Fortune.
- **īnsidiae**, **īnsidiārum** *f. pl.* never appears in the singular in Latin, but it has singular meanings (ambush, plot, treachery).
- **nātūra**, **nātūrae** *f.* descends from the PIE root ***genE** (be born). **nātūra** is thus the power that determines the physical properties of plants, animals, humans—of the world. It may also refer to the essence, function, or fundamental quality of anything (the nature of the soul, of gods, of fear). Both **nātūra** and **ingenium** may refer to the "(innate) character" of a person, and they are sometimes used together. In philosophical contexts, **nātūra** (sometimes capitalized) means the order or guiding principle that governs the world.
- Like **nātūra**, **ingenium**, **ingeniī** *n.* also descends from the PIE root ***genE** (be born). **ingenium** thus refers to a quality that is inborn, and it is most commonly used of human beings. In some instances it refers to a person's natural "temperament" or "disposition." It is often used of literary or oratorical "ability" or "talent."
- In contrast to **nātūra** or **ingenium**, **ars**, **artis**, **-ium** *f.* refers to a "skill" learned or acquired through practice. **ars** may be used of any "craft" or "trade," including the crafts of artistic expression (music, poetry). It may also mean a specific body of knowledge (the art of divination, of philosophy). Sometimes **ars** is used of a particular "work of art." **ars** may have a negative sense (artificiality, craftiness) and so may mean "guile" or "trick." The term **bonae artēs** means "liberal studies" or "cultural pursuits," those pursuits that are the mark of civilized society.
- **cīvitās**, **cīvitātis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the abstract noun suffix **-tās** to the stem of the noun **cīvis**. **cīvitās** may mean an organized community to which one belongs as a citizen (state, citizenry), or it may mean the rights one has as a citizen (citizenship).

Magnō in perīculō cīvitās fuit.	The state was in great danger.
Poētam cīvitāte dōnābimus.	We shall reward the poet with citizenship.

- **pars**, **partis**, **-ium** *f.* refers to one of the portions into which a thing is divided. It may be repeated to indicate different groups or sections, and when it is the subject, **pars** may take a *plural* verb.

Caesar partem mīlitum in bellum dūxit, partem in prōvinciam mīsit.
Caesar led part of the soldiers into war, he sent part into the province.
Pars hostium proelium optābant, pars timēbant.
Part of the enemies were desiring battle, part were fearing (it).

pars may also mean a "side," "position," or "opinion" held or taken. In both the singular and the plural, **pars** may refer to a political "faction" or to either "side" in a lawsuit or trial.

- **virtūs**, **virtūtis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the abstract noun suffix **-tūs** to the stem of the noun **vir**. Its specific sense is thus "manliness" or "courage," but it also may refer more generally to any intellectual or moral "excellence" or "virtue."
- **vōx**, **vōcis** *f.* may mean the "voice" of a human or of a musical instrument, or it may mean that which is produced by the human voice or instrument (word or sound). The singular may also be used to refer to an "utterance" or "speech."
- **maneō**, **manēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus** is regularly an intransitive verb meaning "remain" or "stay." The fourth principal part, **mānsūrus** (about to remain), is a future active participle. With **in** + ablative **maneō** may mean "remain steady in" or "abide by" (the truth, a conviction, a pact). It is occasionally used transitively and means "await" or "wait for" someone or something. Compounds of **maneō** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. When a compound of **MANEŌ** appears in readings, its principal parts are not supplied, but the prefix and simple verb are given.

Ubi incolae discessērunt, mānsimus.	When the inhabitants departed, we remained.
Sulla semper in sententiā mānsit.	Sulla always remained (steady) in (his) opinion.
Fāta et bonum virum manent.	The fates await even the good man.

- Compounds of **terreō**, **terrēre**, **terruī**, **territus** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. When a compound of **TERREŌ** appears in readings, its principal parts are not supplied, but the prefix and simple verb are given.

➤ **cupiō, cupere, cupiī** or **cupīvī, cupītus** may take an Object Infinitive, often with a subject of the infinitive in the accusative case (see §108). **cupiō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **cupi-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**cupīstī, cupīstis**). While both **cupiō** and **optō** mean "desire," **cupiō** expresses a natural or involuntary desire, while **optō** suggests a more deliberate choice.

Servī esse līberī cupiunt.	Slaves desire to be free. (natural desire)
Servī gladiōs optant.	The slaves desire swords. (deliberate desire)

➤ **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus** is most often intransitive but is occasionally used transitively. The fourth principal part, **fugitūrus** (about to flee), is a future active participle. **fugiō** is often used of a person going into exile. Compounds of **fugiō** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **FUGIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

➤ **petō, petere, petiī/petīvī, petītus** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **peti-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**petīstī, petīstis**). When **petō** means "ask for" or "seek," it takes a direct object of the thing asked for. The person from whom something is sought is expressed by **ā/ab** + ablative. When the verb means "attack," it takes a direct object of the person or thing attacked. Compounds of **petō** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **PETŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Servus pecūniam ā dominō petit.	The slave asks for money from (his) master.
Servus gladiō dominum petit.	The slave attacks (his) master with a sword.

➤ **trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **trāns-** (across) to **dō**; it exhibits regular vowel weakening in the third and fourth principal parts. **trādō** may mean "hand over" or "surrender." It often means "hand down" in the sense of transmitting something to posterity or of relating a story. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ALL* COMPOUNDS OF **DŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **TRĀDŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **DŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

➤ **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus** has the intransitive meaning "win" in the sense of "prevail," "be victorious." Compounds of **vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **VINCŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

➤ **auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus** is formed by the addition of the prefix **ab-** to **ferō**. In the first two principal parts the **-b-** of the prefix drops out, and the **a-** lengthens into the diphthong **au-**. When a vowel lengthens to compensate for the loss of another letter, this phonetic change is called **compensatory lengthening**. In the third principal part, a fuller form of the prefix, **abs-**, appears. ALL THE COMPOUNDS OF **FERŌ** SHOW THE SAME IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AS **FERŌ**.

➤ **differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus** is formed by the addition of the prefix **dis-** to **ferō**. In the first two principal parts the final **-s-** of **dis-** assimilates to the **f-** of **ferō**. In the fourth principal part the **-s-** of the prefix drops out and the **-i-** is lengthened. **differō** is more often intransitive (differ, be different) than transitive, and it may appear with an Ablative of Respect. The person or group from whom one differs is usually expressed by a noun in the ablative case with the preposition **ā/ab**. ALL THE COMPOUNDS OF **FERŌ** SHOW THE SAME IRREGULARITIES OF FORM AS **FERŌ**.

Ā frātre sententiā differt.	He differs from (his) brother in (respect to) (his) opinion.

➤ The adjective **cārus, -a, -um** is often found with a Dative of Reference that indicates the person to whom someone or something is dear. The dative is often found between the adjective and the noun that it modifies.

Incolae dīs cārī discēdunt.	The inhabitants dear to the gods are departing.

➤ **certus, -a, -um** may describe both things (plans, decisions) and people as "determined," "certain," or "fixed." The adverb **certē**, in addition to affirming (surely, certainly), may also limit (certainly, at least).

Verba poētae intellegere certē potes.	You are certainly able to understand the words of the poet.
Ego certē prō patriā pugnābō.	I at least shall fight for the homeland.

➤ **novus, -a, -um** may be translated either "new" or "strange" and is used to describe people or things previously unseen or unknown. When a man from an unestablished family achieved a major political office for the first time, he was called a **homō novus** or **novus homō**, "new man." The term often carried an implied insult.

➤ **mortālis, mortāle**, "mortal," is derived from the noun **mors** by the addition of the suffix **-ālis, -āle** (of, belonging to, subject to) to the stem **mort-**. Any living being described as **mortālis** is subject to death. **mortālis** and the related adjective **immortālis, immortāle** (**in-** [not] + **mortālis**) are commonly used as substantives.

➤ **ante** may be either an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. As an adverb, it most frequently has a temporal sense (earlier, previously, before). As a preposition with the accusative, it may have a temporal sense (before) or a spatial one (before, in front of).

Verba poētae ante nōn intellēxī.	I did not understand the words of the poet before (previously).
Ante bellum miserī erant incolae.	Before the war the inhabitants were miserable.
Nauta ante templum ambulābat.	The sailor was walking in front of the temple.

➤ **aut** is a coordinating conjunction and thus connects only parallel or grammatically balanced words, phrases, or clauses. **aut** joins a previous word, phrase, or clause with another equivalent one that is antithetical to it. **aut** is used to indicate mutually exclusive propositions.

Servus aut līber est incola.	The inhabitant is a slave or a free man.

To emphasize the strict balance of elements that are to be joined in Latin, **aut** is often used to mark each element: e.g., **aut fīlium aut fīliam**. It is convenient to translate the first **aut** by the English word "either": "either the son or the daughter" (direct objects). When such a parallel series is longer than two (**aut nautam aut agricolam aut poētam**), omit translating the first **aut** and say "or" for the others: "the sailor or the farmer or the poet" (direct objects).

➤ The adverb **etiam**, "also," "even," marks a fact or thought added to one already mentioned. The additional idea or thought is usually understood to be more important than the preceding one. When the thought is related to time, **etiam** means "still." **etiam** is usually placed immediately before the word it emphasizes.

Discēdam. Nōn etiam timēbō.	I shall depart. I shall not also fear.
Etiam puerōs ex prōvinciā agēs?	Will you drive even the boys out from the province?
Quoniam superāvistī, virōs interficere etiam optās?	Because you have conquered, do you still desire to kill the men?

➤ The adverb **ita** may refer to what precedes or what follows. Like **sīc**, it may be used in comparisons to correlate with **ut** (as).

Nōn ita amō ut hominēs.	I do not love so as humans (do).

In answers, it is used for strong affirmation or negation.

Ita est.	It is so.
Nōn est ita.	It is not so.

➤ **nē** is a negating adverb (like **nōn**) used only in particular constructions with verbs in the subjunctive. It may be used to negate a Hortatory/Jussive or Optative subjunctive (§70).

➤ **post** may be either an adverb or a preposition that takes the accusative. As an adverb, it most frequently has a temporal sense (after[ward], later), but it sometimes conveys the spatial sense of "behind." As a preposition with the accusative, it may have a temporal sense (after) or a spatial one (behind).

➤ **sōlum** is an irregular adverb meaning "only." It is derived from the adjective **sōlus, -a, -um** (alone, only). **vērum** is a conjunction derived from the adjective **vērus, -a, -um** and means "but." **sōlum** and **vērum** may be used separately, but they are often used in the construction **nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . .** (not only . . . but also . . .).

Crassus inimīcōs nōn sōlum pecūniā sed/vērum etiam gladiō superāvit.
Crassus overcame (his) enemies not only by money but also by the sword.

➤ **utinam** is an introductory particle that may introduce an Optative subjunctive (§70). An **introductory particle** introduces a particular kind of clause or speech. **utinam** is not translated in this construction.

➤ **vērō** is an irregular adverb derived from the adjective **vērus, -a, -um**. Although it may mean "truly," it is more often used in answers to express agreement (certainly, indeed) *or* with mild adversative force to join two sentences (but [in fact]) and add an additional corroborating thought. In this second usage, it is always postpositive.

Fuistī in oppidō?	Were you in the town?
Vērō.	Indeed (I was).

Bonus poēta erat Catullus, magnus vērō Vergilius.
Catullus was a good poet, but (in fact) Vergil (was a) great (one).

	Derivatives	Cognates
acerbus	**acerb**ic; **ac**rid; **ac**id	**ac**me; **ac**ute; **h**ammer
āra	**ar**id	**ash**
cārus	**char**ity; **car**ess; **cher**ish	**Ka**masutra
certus	certain; de**cree**; se**cre**t	**cri**me; **cri**tic; **r**iddle
maneō	**man**sion; per**man**ent; **mén**age	
mors	**mor**tal; a**mor**tize	**mur**der; a**mbros**ia; **man**ticore
pars	**par**cel; parse; part	pair; par; com**pare**
petō	**petit**ion; ap**petite**; re**peat**	archaeo**pt**eryx; sym**pt**om
vērus	**ver**ity; **ver**dict; **very**; **ver**ify	**war**lock
vincō	**van**quish; con**vince**, e**vict**	wight; Ordo**vic**ian

§64. Introduction to the Subjunctive

The subjunctive mood has been identified as the mood used to express a variety of nonfactual ideas (§5). It contrasts with the indicative, the mood used to represent something as factual. For example:

Indicative	*Subjunctive*
We are beginning.	Let us begin. (exhortation)
I fell.	I might have fallen. (potentiality)
She will come.	If only she would come! (wish)

In Latin the verbs in the sentences on the right would all be in the subjunctive mood because the writer or speaker wishes to represent these actions as nonfactual.

While Latin has six tenses in the indicative mood, it has only four tenses in the subjunctive mood: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.[1] The tenses of the indicative always indicate specific times (present, past, future) and aspects (simple, progressive/repeated, completed) and always have the same translations that reflect those times and aspects in a concrete, factual way. The tenses of the subjunctive, however, may express a complex range of nonfactual ideas and therefore cannot be limited to one, always correct, translation. Sometimes a tense of the subjunctive indicates not a fixed point in time but rather a relation in time of one verb to another. Although there are many possible translations of the subjunctive, *each individual use* of this mood does have *its own translation formula that must be memorized.*

Each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood is formed in the same way for verbs of all conjugations. The four tenses of the subjunctive occur in both the active and the passive voices. Like the indicative, the subjunctive may be divided as follows:

Present System (tenses formed with the stem from the second principal part)
- Present Active and Passive Subjunctive
- Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive

Perfect Active System (tenses formed with the stem from the third principal part)
- Perfect Active Subjunctive
- Pluperfect Active Subjunctive

Perfect Passive System (tenses formed with the fourth principal part)
- Perfect Passive Subjunctive
- Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive

1. There is neither a future nor a future perfect subjunctive.

§65. Present Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the present active and passive subjunctive of *all* conjugations:

1. take the present stem
2. *change the stem* by replacing the stem *vowels* with the following infixes:[2]

1st	*2nd*	*3rd*	*3rd i-stem*	*4th*
-ē-	**-eā-**	**-ā-**	**-iā-**	**-iā-**

3. add the active or passive personal endings directly to the changed present stem (use **-m/-r** for first person singular)

Thus the present active and passive subjunctive conjugations of, for example, **vocō**, **moveō**, **regō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are:

	Active		*Passive*	
1st Conjugation	*Sing.*	*Plural*	*Sing.*	*Plural*
Changed	1 **vocem**	**vocēmus**	**vocer**	**vocēmur**
Stem:	2 **vocēs**	**vocētis**	**vocēris/vocēre**	**vocēminī**
vocē-	3 **vocet**	**vocent**	**vocētur**	**vocentur**
2nd Conjugation	*Sing.*	*Plural*	*Sing.*	*Plural*
Changed	1 **moveam**	**moveāmus**	**movear**	**moveāmur**
Stem:	2 **moveās**	**moveātis**	**moveāris/moveāre**	**moveāminī**
moveā-	3 **moveat**	**moveant**	**moveātur**	**moveantur**
3rd Conjugation	*Sing.*	*Plural*	*Sing.*	*Plural*
Changed	1 **regam**	**regāmus**	**regar**	**regāmur**
Stem:	2 **regās**	**regātis**	**regāris/regāre**	**regāminī**
regā-	3 **regat**	**regant**	**regātur**	**regantur**
3rd Conjugation				
i-stem	*Sing.*	*Plural*	*Sing.*	*Plural*
Changed	1 **capiam**	**capiāmus**	**capiar**	**capiāmur**
Stem:	2 **capiās**	**capiātis**	**capiāris/capiāre**	**capiāminī**
capiā-	3 **capiat**	**capiant**	**capiātur**	**capiantur**
4th Conjugation	*Sing.*	*Plural*	*Sing.*	*Plural*
Changed	1 **audiam**	**audiāmus**	**audiar**	**audiāmur**
Stem:	2 **audiās**	**audiātis**	**audiāris/audiāre**	**audiāminī**
audiā-	3 **audiat**	**audiant**	**audiātur**	**audiantur**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The personal endings added to the changed present stems are the same as those used in the indicative conjugations. No new endings must be learned. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

2. No English translations can be given for subjunctive verb forms unless they appear in Latin sentences because different grammatical uses or structures require different translations. Context usually makes clear the correct English translation for each subjunctive verb.

2. The following sentence may serve as a useful mnemonic device for remembering these infixes:
Shē weārs ā giānt diāmond.

3. The first person singular present active and passive subjunctive of the third, third-i-stem, and fourth conjugations are identical with the first person singular future active and passive indicative. For example, **regam** (present subjunctive) = **regam** (I shall rule). Context usually makes clear which form is more appropriate.

4. The present active and passive subjunctive conjugations of the irregular third-conjugation verb **ferō** are regularly formed.

The present active subjunctive conjugations of **sum**, **possum**, and **eō** are irregular and must be memorized:[3]

	Singular		
1	**sim**	**possim**	**eam**
2	**sīs**	**possīs**	**eās**
3	**sit**	**possit**	**eat**
	Plural		
1	**sīmus**	**possīmus**	**eāmus**
2	**sītis**	**possītis**	**eātis**
3	**sint**	**possint**	**eant**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The stem of **sum** in the present active subjunctive is **sī-**. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule. The present active subjunctive of **possum** adds the prefix **pos-** to the present active subjunctive of **sum** (§10).

2. The stem of **eō** in the present active subjunctive is **eā-**. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

§66. Imperfect Active and Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the imperfect active and passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the present active infinitive (*all of* the second principal part)
2. lengthen the final **-e** (**-e** → **-ē**)
3. add the active and passive personal endings directly to the second principal part with lengthened final **-ē** (use **-m**/**-r** for first person singular)

Thus the imperfect active and passive subjunctive conjugations of, for example, **regō** are:

Present Active Infinitive with lengthened final **-e**:	**regerē-**	
	Active	Passive
	Singular	*Singular*
1	**regerem**	**regerer**
2	**regerēs**	**regerēris/regerēre**
3	**regeret**	**regerētur**
	Plural	*Plural*
1	**regerēmus**	**regerēmur**
2	**regerētis**	**regerēminī**
3	**regerent**	**regerentur**

3. **Sum** and **possum** have no passive. **Eō** has only impersonal passive forms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

2. The imperfect active subjunctive conjugations of **sum**, **possum**, and **eō** are regularly formed. The imperfect active and passive subjunctive conjugations of **ferō** are also regularly formed.

§67. Perfect and Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

Perfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the perfect active subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem
2. add the infix **-eri-**
3. add the active personal endings (use **-m** for first person singular)

Thus the perfect active subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem: **rēx-**
Infix: **-eri-**

	Singular	*Plural*
1	**rēxerim**	**rēxerimus**
2	**rēxeris**	**rēxeritis**
3	**rēxerit**	**rēxerint**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The conjugation of the perfect active subjunctive is identical with that of the future perfect active indicative except in the first person singular. For example, compare **rēxerō** (future perfect indicative) with **rēxerim** (perfect subjunctive).

2. The perfect active subjunctive conjugations of **sum**, **possum**, **eō**, and **ferō** are regularly formed.

Pluperfect Active Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect active subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect active stem
2. add the infix **-issē-**
3. add the active personal endings (use **-m** for first person singular)

Thus the pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Active Stem: **rēx-**
Infix: **-issē-**

	Singular	*Plural*
1	**rēxissem**	**rēxissēmus**
2	**rēxissēs**	**rēxissētis**
3	**rēxisset**	**rēxissent**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Long vowels shorten according to the long vowel rule.

2. The pluperfect active subjunctive conjugations of **sum**, **possum**, and **ferō** are regularly formed. The pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of **eō** is regularly formed from the stem **īv-**. However, the alternate stem **i-** contracts with the **i-** of the infix **-issē-**. Thus the pluperfect active subjunctive conjugation of **eō** formed from this alternate stem is: **īssem**, **īssēs**, **īsset**, **īssēmus**, **īssētis**, **īssent**.

3. For all verbs with stems ending in **-i-** in the third principal part (e.g., **cupiō**, **petō**), the **-i-** regularly contracts with the **-i-** of the infix **-issē-** to produce **-ī-** (**-īssē-**) (e.g., **petīssem**).

§68. Perfect and Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

Perfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the perfect passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle
2. add *as a separate word* the present subjunctive of **sum**

Thus the perfect passive subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: **rēctus**, **-a**, **-um**

	Singular	*Plural*
1	**rēctus**, **-a**, **-um sim**	**rēctī**, **-ae**, **-a sīmus**
2	**rēctus**, **-a**, **-um sīs**	**rēctī**, **-ae**, **-a sītis**
3	**rēctus**, **-a**, **-um sit**	**rēctī**, **-ae**, **-a sint**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the perfect passive subjunctive is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises must be treated as a unit.

2. The perfect passive participle ends in **-us** (sing.) or **-ī** (pl.) if the subject is masculine, **-a** (sing.) or **-ae** (pl.) if the subject is feminine, **-um** (sing.) or **-a** (pl.) if the subject is neuter.

3. The perfect passive subjunctive conjugation of **ferō** is regularly formed.

Pluperfect Passive Subjunctive of All Verbs

To form the pluperfect passive subjunctive of *all* verbs:

1. take the perfect passive participle
2. add *as a separate word* the imperfect subjunctive of **sum**

Thus the pluperfect passive subjunctive conjugation of, for example, **regō** is:

Perfect Passive Participle: **rēctus**, **-a**, **-um**

	Singular	*Plural*
1	**rēctus**, **-a**, **-um essem**	**rēctī**, **-ae**, **-a essēmus**
2	**rēctus**, **-a**, **-um essēs**	**rēctī**, **-ae**, **-a essētis**
3	**rēctus**, **-a**, **-um esset**	**rēctī**, **-ae**, **-a essent**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each form of the pluperfect passive subjunctive is a compound verb form. The two words it comprises must be treated as a unit.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the perfect passive participle.
3. The pluperfect passive subjunctive conjugation of **ferō** is regularly formed.

§69. Synopsis V: Indicative, Subjunctive, Infinitive, and Imperative

When one generates a synopsis that includes the subjunctive mood, the subjunctive immediately follows the indicative and precedes the infinitive. *No English translations are given for subjunctive forms.* Here is a model synopsis of **audiō** in the third person plural masculine:

Principal Parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**
Person, Number, and Gender: **3rd pl. m.**

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	**audiunt**	they hear	**audiuntur**	they are (being) heard
Imperfect	**audiēbant**	they were hearing	**audiēbantur**	they were being heard
Future	**audient**	they will hear	**audientur**	they will be heard
Perfect	**audīvērunt/ audīvēre**	1. they heard 2. they have heard	**audītī sunt**	1. they were heard 2. they have been heard
Pluperfect	**audīverant**	they had heard	**audītī erant**	they had been heard
Future Perfect	**audīverint**	they will have heard	**audītī erunt**	they will have been heard
Subjunctive				
Present	**audiant**		**audiantur**	
Imperfect	**audīrent**		**audīrentur**	
Perfect	**audīverint**		**audītī sint**	
Pluperfect	**audīvissent**		**audītī essent**	
Infinitive				
Present	**audīre**	to hear	**audīrī**	to be heard
Imperative				
Singular	**audī**	hear	**audīre**	be heard
Plural	**audīte**	hear (pl.)	**audīminī**	be heard (pl.)

☛ DRILL 64–69, PAGE 275, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§70. Three Independent Subjunctives

Although its name refers to its eventual appearance in many kinds of *dependent or subordinate* clauses (subjunctive < **sub-** + **iungō**, join under), in origin the subjunctive was a mood for verbs in *independent* or *main* clauses when certain basic nonfactual ideas were to be expressed. Later uses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses developed from these basic independent uses, but the subjunctive never ceased being used as an independent mood as well.

Hortatory/Jussive Subjunctive

A verb in the present subjunctive may express a strong suggestion or exhortation. The particle **nē** is used for negation. A subjunctive so used is called a **Hortatory** (when the verb is in the first person) or a **Jussive** (when the verb is in the second or third person) subjunctive.[4] For example:

Rōmam *eāmus*.	*Let us go* to Rome. (Hortatory)
***Nē* ex urbe *discēdat*.**	*Let him not depart* from the city. (Jussive)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The English word "let" is regularly used to translate the Hortatory/Jussive subjunctive.
2. The syntax of, for example, **discēdat** is **present subjunctive**, **Jussive**.[5]
3. In early and colloquial Latin the Jussive subjunctive in the second person was used as the equivalent of an *imperative* to express a positive command. In the classical period the Jussive as a positive command remains common in poetry. For example: **Abeās!** Go away!

Negative Commands

When preceded by **nē**, the second person singular or plural present or perfect subjunctive expresses a negative command. This is a particular use of the Jussive subjunctive.

***Nē labōrēs*, serve.**	*Do not work*, slave.
***Nē* ab hostibus *captī sītis*.**	*Do not (pl.) be captured* by the enemies.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In classical Latin the perfect subjunctive is more common in prose and more emphatic than the present subjunctive in negative commands. In this use the perfect subjunctive has *simple* rather than completed aspect.
2. The syntax of, for example, **captī sītis** is **perfect subjunctive**, **Jussive in a negative command**.

4. Hortatory is derived from the Latin **hortor** (exhort) and Jussive from **iubeō** (order).
5. The syntax of a verb comprises tense, mood, reason for mood, and reason for tense.

Potential Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* or *perfect* subjunctive may express a *possibility in present or future time*. A verb in the *imperfect* subjunctive may express a *possibility that existed in the past*. The adverb **nōn** is used for negation. A subjunctive so used is called a **Potential** subjunctive. For example:

Rōmae multa *videās*.	*You could see* many things in Rome. (Potential, pres./fut. time)
Id *nōn fēcerim*.	*I would not do* this thing. (Potential, pres./fut. time)
Domum *venīrent*.	*They might have come* home. (Potential, past time)

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect subjunctive is rarely used in early Latin and becomes more common by the time of Cicero. In this use the perfect subjunctive has *simple* rather than completed aspect.
2. When the potential subjunctive appears in the second person singular, its subject is often an imaginary or general "you."
3. The English words "might," "could," or "would" are regularly used to translate the Potential subjunctive in present or future time.
4. The English phrases "might have," "could have," or "would have" are regularly used to translate the Potential subjunctive in past time.
5. When the Potential subjunctive is negated, as in the second sentence, the possibility of the verbal action is *denied*. Only "would not/would not have" or "could not/could not have" should be used to translate the *negative* of Potential subjunctives.[6]
6. The syntax of, for example, **venīrent** is **imperfect subjunctive, Potential, past time**.

Optative Subjunctive

A verb in the *present* subjunctive may express a *wish that can be fulfilled in the future*. A verb in the *imperfect* subjunctive may express a *wish that cannot be fulfilled in the present*, and a *pluperfect* subjunctive may express a *wish that could not be fulfilled in the past*. A subjunctive so used is called an **Optative** subjunctive. All Optative subjunctives express wishes felt or uttered by the writer or speaker. The particle **nē** is used for negation. The word **utinam** may be used to introduce an Optative subjunctive, but it is not required.[7] For example:

[*Utinam*] mīlitēs nostrī *superent*!	*If only* our soldiers *would conquer!* *May* our soldiers *conquer!* (future wish capable of fulfillment)
Rōmae *vīverem*!	*If only I were living* in Rome! (present wish incapable of fulfillment)
***Nē* id *ēgisset*!**	*If only he had not done* it! (past wish incapable of fulfillment)

6. If the second sentence were translated "I might not do this thing," the English still allows the possibility that the subject *might* do this thing.

7. **Ut** rather than **utinam** appears in early Latin and, rarely, in poetry.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present subjunctive in the first sentence implies that the wish *can come true* at some future time. By contrast, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctives in the second and third sentences imply that these wishes *cannot/could not come true.*

2. Three English translation formulas distinguish among the three types of Optative subjunctives:

Present Subjunctive	"If only . . . would . . . " (future wish capable of fulfillment)
Imperfect Subjunctive	"If only . . . were . . . " (present wish incapable of fulfillment)
Pluperfect Subjunctive	"If only . . . had . . . " (past wish incapable of fulfillment)

A present wish capable of fulfillment may also be translated with the English word "may," as in the translation of the first sentence.

3. The syntax of, for example, **vīverem** is **imperfect subjunctive, Optative, present wish incapable of fulfillment.**

Summary of Independent Subjunctives

Name	*Tense of Subjunctive*	*Negation*	*English Translation*
Hortatory (1st person)	**Present**	**nē**	"Let . . ."
Jussive (3rd person)	**Present**		"Let . . ."
(2nd person)	**Present**		as imperative
(2nd person negated = negative command)	**Present** or **Perfect**		"Do not . . ."
Potential			
Present or Future Time	**Present** or **Perfect**	**nōn**	"might,"[8] "could," "would"
Past Time	**Imperfect**		"might have,"[8] "could have," "would have"
Optative (**utinam** or ——)			
Future Capable of Fulfillment	**Present**	**nē**	"If only . . . would . . . ," "May . . ."
Present Incapable of Fulfillment	**Imperfect**		"If only . . . were . . ."
Past Incapable of Fulfillment	**Pluperfect**		"If only . . . had . . ."

☛ Drill 70, page 281, may now be done.

§71. Conditional Sentences II

Some conditional sentences (Simple, Future More Vivid, Future More Vivid with Emphatic Protasis) have verbs in the indicative mood (§49). Other conditional sentences have verbs in the subjunctive mood to reflect the *nonfactual* character of the ideas they express.

8. "Might" and "might have" can be used only when a potential subjunctive is not negated.

Future Less Vivid Conditional Sentences

In a **Future Less Vivid** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *present subjunctive*. The Future Less Vivid contrasts with the Future More Vivid in that it represents future events *less vividly* (i.e., less factually) by using verbs in the subjunctive rather than the indicative mood. For example:

Sī Catilīna *capiātur*, laetī *sint* multī cīvēs.
If Catiline *should be captured*, happy *would be* many citizens.
If Catiline *should be captured*, many citizens *would be* happy.

OBSERVATION

The English words "should" (in the protasis) and "would" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Future Less Vivid conditional sentence.

Contrary-to-Fact Conditional Sentences

Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentences make statements that suppose that the actions of both the protasis and the apodosis are *not* occurring or *did not* occur. Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentences are of two types: present or past. In a **Present Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verbs of both the protasis and the apodosis are in the *imperfect subjunctive*. In a **Past Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verbs of both protasis and apodosis are in the *pluperfect subjunctive*. For example:

Sī ad bellum *īrem*, arma *caperem*.
If to war I *were going (but I am not)*, arms (d.o.) I *would be taking up (but I am not)*.
If I *were going* to war, I *would be taking up* arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence, the verbs in the imperfect subjunctive report nonfactual or contrary-to-fact events that are not occurring in the present.
2. The English words "were" (in the protasis) and "would" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

Sī rēx *interfectus esset*, cīvēs timōre *līberātī essent*.
If the king *had been killed (but he was not)*, the citizens from fear *would have been freed (but they were not)*.
If the king *had been killed*, the citizens *would have been freed* from fear.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In a Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence, the verbs in the pluperfect subjunctive report nonfactual or contrary-to-fact events that did not occur in the past.
2. The English words "had" (in the protasis) and "would have" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

Mixed Conditional Sentences

In addition to the types of conditional sentences described thus far, two mixed conditional sentences commonly occur, which combine protases and apodoses from

two conditional sentences. In a **Mixed Future** conditional sentence, the verb of the *protasis* is in the *present subjunctive,* and the verb of the *apodosis* is in the *future indicative.* For example:

> **Sī servus miser *capiātur,* poenās *dabit.***
> If the miserable slave *should be captured,* he *will pay* the penalty.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Mixed Future conditional sentence combines the protasis of a Future Less Vivid (present subjunctive) with the apodosis of a Future More Vivid (future indicative). The event of the protasis is represented less vividly (i.e., less factually) by the subjunctive. By contrast, the event of the apodosis is represented more vividly (i.e., more factually) by the indicative.

2. The English words "should" (in the protasis) and "will" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Mixed Future conditional sentence.

In a **Mixed Contrary-to-Fact** conditional sentence, the verb of the *protasis* is in the *pluperfect subjunctive* and the verb of the *apodosis* is in the *imperfect subjunctive.* For example:

> **Sī ad īnsulam *īvissēmus,* līberī nunc timōre bellī *essēmus.***
> If we *had gone* to the island, we *would* now *be* free from fear of war.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence combines the protasis of a Past Contrary-to-Fact (pluperfect subjunctive) with the apodosis of a Present Contrary-to-Fact (imperfect subjunctive). The verb of the protasis reports an event that did not occur in the past, and the verb of the apodosis reports an event that is not occurring in the present.

2. The English words "had" (in the protasis) and "would" (in the apodosis) are regularly used to translate a Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence.

Summary of Conditional Sentences[9]

Name	*Verbs in Latin*	*Verbs in English*
Future Less Vivid	Present Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	"should" in Protasis, "would" in Apodosis
Present Contrary-to-Fact	Imperfect Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	"were" in Protasis, "would" in Apodosis
Past Contrary-to-Fact	Pluperfect Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis	"had" in Protasis, "would have" in Apodosis
Mixed Future	Present Subjunctive in Protasis, Future Indicative in Apodosis	"should" in Protasis, "will" in Apodosis
Mixed Contrary-to-Fact	Pluperfect Subjunctive in Protasis, Imperfect Subjunctive in Apodosis	"had" in Protasis, "would" in Apodosis

☛ Drill 71, page 289, may now be done.

9. For other conditional sentence formulas see §49.

§72. Dative of Purpose and the Double Dative Construction

A noun in the dative case, usually not modified by an adjective, may express an idea of purpose or service. A **Dative of Purpose**[10] usually joins with a Dative of Reference (§1) to form what is called the **double dative construction**. For example:

Tū *mihi cūrae* es.	You *to me for the purpose of a concern* are. You are *for the purpose of a concern to me.* You are *a source of concern to me.*
***Fīliō* librum *dōnō* tulī.**	*For (my) son* a book (d.o.) *for the purpose of a gift* I brought. I brought a book *for the purpose of a gift for (my) son.* I brought a book *(to serve) as a gift for (my) son.*

The syntax of **cūrae** and **dōnō** is **Dative of Purpose**. The syntax of **mihi** and **fīliō** is **Dative of Reference**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Dative of Purpose may be translated "for the purpose of _____," but may also be translated more loosely with phrases such as "a source of _____" or "(serve) as a _____."
2. Although the Dative of Purpose frequently appears with a Dative of Reference in the double dative construction, it may also appear alone. For example:

Mīlitēs ad Crassum *auxiliō* missī sunt.
Soldiers were sent to Crassus *for the purpose of aid.*

§73. Dative of Advantage, Dative of Disadvantage

Sometimes a Dative of Reference clearly expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage the event of a sentence occurs. In such sentences a Dative of Reference may be called instead a **Dative of Advantage** or a **Dative of Disadvantage**. For example:

Poēta carmina *puerīs puellīsque* canit.
The poet songs (d.o.) *for (the advantage of) boys and girls* is singing.
The poet is singing songs *for boys and girls.*
Moram *nautae* fēcistī.
A delay (d.o.) *for (the disadvantage of) the sailor* you made.
You made a delay *for the sailor.*
***Servō* poena magnō erat malō.**
To (the disadvantage of) the slave punishment for the purpose of a great evil was.
Punishment was a source of great evil *to the slave.*

The syntax of **puerīs** and **puellīs** is **Dative of Advantage**. The syntax of **nautae** and **servō** is **Dative of Disadvantage**. All, however, may also be identified as Datives of Reference.

☛ DRILL 72–73, PAGE 295, MAY NOW BE DONE.

10. The Dative of Purpose is also known as the Predicate Dative.

Short Readings

1. A comic character makes an unveiled threat.

   auferēre, nōn abībis, sī ego fustem sūmpserō. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUŌ* 358)

fustis, fustis, -ium *m.* club
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize

2. Realizing that he has mistakenly believed slanderous things about his close friend, Mnesilochus despairs.

   multa mala mī in pectore nunc ācria atque acerba ēveniunt. (PLAUTUS, *BACCHIDES* 628)

mī = mihi
pectus, pectoris *n.* chest; heart
ēveniō (ē- + veniō) come out, happen, turn out

3. The scoundrel Dordalus, fleeced and beaten, curses those who justly conned him.

   dī deaeque et tē et geminum frātrem excrucient. (PLAUTUS, *PERSA* 831)

geminus, -a, -um twin
excruciō (1-tr.) torture, torment

4. A fragment from the *Annals* of Ennius

   omnēs mortālēs sēsē laudārier optant. (*ENNIUS, SĒD. INC.* 560)

laudārier = laudārī

5. A proverb employing metonymy

   sine Cerere et Līberō frīget Venus. (TERENCE, *EUNUCHUS* 732)

frīgeō, frīgēre, ——, —— be cold

6. Achilles has the last word in a fragment from a tragedy by the poet Accius (170–CA. 86 B.C.E.).

   immō enim vērō corpus Priamō reddidī, Hectorem abstulī.

   (ACCIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 667)

immō . . . vērō no, on the contrary
Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
reddō (red- + dō) give back, return
Hector, Hectoris *m.* Hector (son of Priam)

7. Varro explains why agriculture has existed longer than cities.

   . . . dīvīna nātūra dedit agrōs, ars hūmāna aedificāvit urbēs.

   (VARRO, *RĒS RŪSTICAE* III.1)

hūmānus, -a, -um human
aedificō (1-tr.) build, construct

8. Two examples of epiphora or epistrophe, the repetition of the same word at the end of successive phrases

"Poenōs populus Rōmānus iūstitiā vīcit, armīs vīcit, līberālitāte vīcit."

"C. Laelius homō novus erat, ingeniōsus erat, doctus erat, bonīs virīs et studiīs amīcus erat; ergō in cīvitāte prīmus erat." (*Rhētorica Ad Herennium* IV.13.19)

Poenī, Poenōrum *m. pl.* (the) Phoenicians, (the) Carthaginians
iūstitia, iūstitiae *f.* justice, righteousness
līberālitās, līberālitātis *f.* kindness; generosity
C. Laelius, C. Laeliī *m.* C. Laelius (friend of Scipio Africanus and consul, 190 B.C.E.)
ingeniōsus, -a, -um talented, gifted
doctus, -a, -um learned
ergō (adv.) therefore
prīmus, -a, -um first

9. While prosecuting Verres, Cicero accepts some limitations.

nē difficilia optēmus. (Cicero, *In Verrem II* 4.15)

10. A fragment of Cicero's poem about his consulship

cēdant arma togae, concēdat laurea laudī . . . (Cicero, *Dē Cōnsulātū Suō* frag. 11)

toga, togae *f.* toga
concēdō (**con-** + **cēdō**) concede, grant; give place to, be second to
laurea, laureae *f.* laurel branch (as token of military victory); victory
laus, laudis *f.* praise

11. Cato recalls an exchange between M. Livius Salinator and Q. Fabius Maximus, his superior officer. (Salinator had previously lost the town of Tarentum to the Carthaginian general Hannibal.)

"meā operā, Q. Fabī, Tarentum recēpistī."

"certē," inquit, . . . "nam nisi tū āmīsissēs, numquam recēpissem."

(Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 11)

opera, operae *f.* effort, work
Q. Fabius, Q. Fabiī *m.* Q. Fabius (Maximus) (hero of the second Punic war)
Tarentum, Tarentī *n.* Tarentum (town in southern Italy)
recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) take back; recapture
inquam (defective verb) say; **inquit** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
āmittō (**ā-** + **mittō**) send away; lose

12. Laelius, a character in a philosophical dialogue, makes the following remark while discussing the views of those who believe that souls perish along with bodies.

. . . ut nihil bonī est in morte, sīc certē nihil malī . . . (Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 14)

13. Having argued that the soul is mortal, the poet draws a conclusion.

nīl igitur mors est ad nōs neque pertinet hīlum,
quandoquidem nātūra animī mortālis habētur.

(Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* III.830–31)

igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore
pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, pertentus pertain
hīlum (adv.) at all
quandoquidem (conj.) since (indeed)

14. The first line of a poem of Catullus

Vīvāmus, mea Lesbia, atque amēmus . . . (Catullus V.1)

Some Roman proverbs

15. Amēs parentem sī aequus est, sī aliter, ferās. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* A8)

parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
aequus, -a, -um equitable, just
aliter (adv.) otherwise, in another way

16. Amīcī vitia, sī ferās, faciās tua. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* A16)

vitium, vitiī *n.* vice, fault

17. Mora omnis odiō est, sed facit sapientiam. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* M3)

18. Virtūtis omnis impedīmentum est timor. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* V29)

impedīmentum, impedīmentī *n.* hindrance, impediment

19. The historian describes the Roman troops after their attack on the town of Zama has been repelled.

. . . paucī integrī, magna pars volneribus cōnfectī abeunt.

(Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 60)

integer, integra, integrum whole; unscathed
volnus (= **vulnus**), **volneris** *n.* wound
cōnficiō (**con- + faciō**) accomplish, complete; wear out, enfeeble

20. In a poetic competition between two shepherds, one of them, Damoetas, makes this boast.

mālō mē Galatēa petit, lascīva puella,
et fugit ad salicēs et sē cupit ante vidērī. (Vergil, *Eclogues* III.64–65)

mālum, mālī *n.* apple
Galatēa, Galatēae *f.* Galatea
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
salix, salicis *f.* willow (tree)

21. Vergil and Gallus come to realize that there is no escape from unhappiness in love.

omnia vincit Amor: et nōs cēdāmus Amōrī. (Vergil, *Eclogues* X.69)

22. Apollo encourages Iulus, Aeneas's young son.

macte novā virtūte, puer, sīc ītur ad astra. (Vergil, *Aeneid* IX.641)

macte (interj.) hurrah, bravo
astrum, astrī *n.* star

23. Jupiter informs the nymph Juturna that her brother, Turnus, is destined to die.

disce tuum, nē mē incūsēs, Iūturna, dolōrem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* XII.146)

discō, discere, didicī, —— learn
incūsō (1-tr.) (lay the) blame (on), reproach
Iūturna, Iūturnae *f.* Juturna
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain

24. The poet compares the motives of good men to those of his addressee, Quinctius.

ōdērunt peccāre bonī virtūtis amōre:
tū nihil admittēs in tē formīdine poenae . . . (HORACE, *EPISTULAE* I.16.51–52)

peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake; do wrong
admittō (ad- + mittō) admit; become guilty of, commit
formīdō, formīdinis *f.* fear

25. The poet begins a poem with fear about a new rival for Cynthia's affection.

Praetor ab Illyricīs vēnit modo, Cynthia, terrīs,
maxima praeda tibī,† maxima cūra mihi. (PROPERTIUS II.16.1–2)

praetor, praetōris *m.* praetor (a judicial official both in and outside of Rome)
Illyricus, -a, -um Illyrian, of Illyria (an area east of the Adriatic sea and a Roman province)
modo (adv.) just now
maximus, -a, -um greatest, very great
praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder; prey
†The final **-i** of **tibi** here scans *long*.

26. Dido addresses an absent Aeneas.

tū quoque cum ventīs utinam mūtābilis esses!
Et, nisi dūritiā robora vincis, eris. (OVID, *HĒRŌIDES* VII.51)

quoque (adv.) also
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
mūtābilis, mūtābile changeable
dūritia, dūritiae *f.* hardness; insensibility
robor, roboris *n.* oak; *pl.*, strength

27. The poet describes Io's reaction after she has been turned into a cow.

. . . territaque est formā, territa vōce suā. (OVID, *HĒRŌIDES* XIV.92)

forma, formae *f.* shape, form

28. Banished to Tomis on the Black Sea, the poet pleads with Augustus to forgive him and consider his writings from exile.

atque utinam revocēs animum paulisper ab īrā,
et vacuō iubeās hinc tibi pauca legī . . . (OVID, *TRĪSTIA* II.557–58)

revocō (re- + vocō) (1-tr.) summon back, recall
paulisper (adv.) for a short time
vacuus, -a, -um empty; idle, free from distractions
hinc (adv.) from this place

29. The historian describes fear moving through the city.

alternae vōcēs "ad arma" et "hostēs in urbe sunt" audiēbantur.

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* III.15.6)

alternus, **-a**, **-um** alternating, in alternation

30. Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general and near conqueror of Rome, summarizes his relationship to the Romans.

ōdī odiōque sum Rōmānīs. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXXV.19.6)

31. In 183 B.C.E. Hannibal committed suicide with these words (according to the historian).

līberēmus diuturnā cūrā populum Rōmānum . . .

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXXIX.51.9)

diuturnus, **-a**, **-um** long-lasting, permanent, continual

32. A comment about the renowned orator Porcius Latro

memoria eī nātūrā quidem fēlīx, plūrimum tamen arte adiūta.

(Seneca the Elder, *Contrōversiae praef.* 17)

memoria, memoriae *f.* memory
plūrimum (adv.) very much
adiuvō, **adiuvāre**, **adiūvī**, **adiūtus** assist, support

33. In the context of enumerating certain predictable and visible temporal phenomena, such as the rotation of the seasons, the philosopher adds remarks on another sphere.

sunt et sub terrā minus nōta nōbīs iūra nātūrae, sed nōn minus certa.

(Seneca the Younger, *Nātūrālēs Quaestiōnēs* III.16.4)

minus (adv.) less
nōtus, **-a**, **-um** known

34. Quintilian lays down the first principle in education.

nōmina dēclīnāre et verba† in prīmīs puerī sciant . . .

(Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria* I.4.22)

nōmen, **nōminis** *n.* name; noun
dēclīnō (1-tr.) decline; conjugate
†**verbum**, *here,* verb
in prīmīs especially, above all; first
sciō, **scīre**, **sciī/scīvī**, **scītus** know (how) (+ infin.)

35. The historian reports the mood of Roman soldiers unwilling to endure a long siege and impatient to attack Jerusalem.

. . . poscēbantque perīcula, pars virtūte, multī ferōciā et cupīdine praemiōrum.

(TACITUS, *HISTORIAE* V.11)

poscō, poscere, poposcī, —— demand
ferōcia, ferōciae *f.* fierceness, savagery
cupīdō, cupīdinis *f.* desire
praemium, praemiī *n.* reward, prize

36. The historian reports how the stalwart soldier Subrius Flavus, a participant in the failed conspiracy to assassinate Nero, addressed the man ordered to execute him.

. . . admonitusque fortiter prōtendere cervīcem, "utinam," ait,

"tū tam fortiter feriās." (TACITUS, *ANNĀLĒS* XV.67)

admoneō, admonēre, admonuī, admonitus advise, admonish
prōtendō, prōtendere, prōtendī, prōtentus/prōtēnsus stretch forth, extend
cervīx, cervīcis *f.* neck
aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
tam (adv.) so, to such a degree
feriō, ferīre, ——, —— strike

37. The biographer reports Caesar's response to a supernatural event that occurs when he and his troops are hesitating on the banks of the Rubicon.

"eātur," inquit, "quō deōrum ostenta et inimīcōrum inīquitās vocat.

iacta ālea est." (SUETONIUS, *VĪTA IŪLIĪ* 32)

inquam (defective verb) say; **inquit** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
quō (adv.) to where
ostentum, ostentī *n.* wonder, prodigy
inīquitās, inīquitātis *f.* unfairness, injustice
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus throw, cast
ālea, āleae *f.* die

38. The historian reports what was written on a placard carried in front of a triumph of Julius Caesar. He tells us that these words indicated not what Caesar did but how quickly he did it.

VĒNĪ·VĪDĪ·VĪCĪ (SUETONIUS, *VĪTA IŪLIĪ* 37)

39. The historian recounts Caligula's expression of contempt for the fawning Roman public.

utinam populus Rōmānus ūnam cervīcem habēret. (SUETONIUS, *VĪTA CALIGULAE* 30)

ūnus, -a, -um one
cervīx, cervīcis *f.* neck

40. The historian reports what the scholar M. Pomponius Porcellus said to Tiberius after the ill-spoken emperor had uttered a nonexistent word.

tū enim, Caesar, cīvitātem dare potes hominibus, verbō nōn potes.

(SUETONIUS, *DĒ GRAMMATICĪS ET RHĒTORIBUS* 22)

Longer Readings

1. Propertius I.8A.5–12

The poet tries to discourage his beloved from departing with another man.

tūne audīre potes vēsānī murmura pontī
  fortis, et in dūrā nāve iacēre potes?
tū pedibus tenerīs positās† fulcīre pruīnās,
  tū potes īnsolitās, Cynthia, ferre nivēs?
ō utinam hībernae duplicentur tempora brūmae
  et sit iners tardīs nāvita Vergiliīs,
nec tibi Tyrrhēnā solvātur fūnis harēnā,
  nēve inimīca meās ēlevet aura precēs!

vēsānus, -a, -um insane, frenzied
murmur, murmuris *n.* murmur; rumbling
pontus, pontī *m.* sea
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie; rest
pēs, pedis *m.* foot
tener, tenera, tenerum slender, delicate, tender
†**positus, -a, -um**, *here,* layered
fulciō, fulcīre, fulsī, fultus prop up, support; tread upon
pruīna, pruīnae *f.* frost
īnsolitus, -a, -um unaccustomed
nix, nivis, -ium *f. sing. or pl.,* snow
hībernus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to winter
duplicō (1-tr.) double
tempus, temporis *n.* time
brūma, brūmae *f.* winter solstice; time (of winter)
iners, inertis sluggish, slow
tardus, -a, -um late
nāvita = nauta
Vergiliae, Vergiliārum *f. pl.* the Vergiliae, the Pleiades (a constellation that appears in the winter sky)
Tyrrhēnus, -a, -um Tuscan, Etruscan
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen, free
fūnis, fūnis, -ium *m.* (mooring) rope
harēna, harēnae *f.* sand; shore
nēve = nē + -ve (enclitic conj.) or
ēlevō (1-tr.) lift up; weaken
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
precēs, precum *f. pl.* prayers

Sextus Propertius (49?–16? B.C.E.) was born in Umbria of equestrian rank and moved to Rome to begin a legal career. Instead, in 28 he published the first of four books of poems written in elegiac couplets, the chosen meter for love poetry in the Augustan period (§83). In the first book Propertius, the poet-lover, introduces his beloved Cynthia, and many of the poems concern his stormy relationship with her. Shortly after his first book's publication Propertius came under the patronage of Maecenas. Propertius's poetry abounds in mythological references and ostentatious displays of obscure learning. His poems are marked by a studied unpredictability in syntax, imagery, and logical movement. Such poetry—erudite, personal, short, and dense with meaning—was meant to supplant the more sedate and grandiose epic.

2. Ovid, *Fastī* V.583–88

The poet ponders the Parthian victory over the Romans.

addiderant animōs Crassōrum fūnera gentī,
  cum† periit mīles signaque duxque simul.
signa, decus bellī, Parthus Rōmāna tenēbat,
  Rōmānaeque aquilae signifer hostis erat.
isque pudor mānsisset adhūc nisi fortibus armīs
  Caesaris Ausoniae prōtegerentur opēs.

addō (**ad-** + **dō**) add
Crassī, **Crassōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Crassi (father and son who fell in battle against the Parthians)
fūnus, **fūneris** *n.* death
gēns, **gentis**, **-ium** *f.* nation; family
†**cum**, *here* (conj.) when
pereō, **perīre**, **periī**, **peritūrus** be destroyed; perish, die
signum, **signī** *n.* standard
dux, **ducis** *m.* leader
simul (adv.) at the same time
decus, **decoris** *n.* ornament; glory, honor
Parthus, **Parthī** *m.* (the) Parthian
aquila, **aquilae** *f.* eagle (symbol of a legion)
signifer, **signiferī** *m.* standard bearer
pudor, **pudōris** *m.* shame; disgrace
adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still
Ausonius, **-a**, **-um** Ausonian; Italian, Roman
prōtegō, **prōtegere**, **prōtēxī**, **prōtēctus** protect
ops, **opis** *f.* power, ability, might, effort; *pl.*, power, resources

Unique in the Latin literature that survives, the *Fastī* (Festival Days) was intended to be a calendar of the Roman year with a book for each month, but it remained unfinished at the time of Ovid's exile in 8 C.E. Written in elegiac couplets, the *Fastī* provides much information on Roman holidays and religious practices and also contains digressions on Roman myth and history.

3. Martial VIII.73.5–8

The poet addresses the elegiac love poets.

Cynthia tē vātem fēcit, lascīve Propertī;
  ingenium Gallī pulchra Lycōris erat;
fāma est argūtī Nemesis formōsa Tibullī;
  Lesbia dictāvit, docte Catulle, tibi . . .

vātēs, **vātis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* prophet; bard, poet
lascīvus, **-a**, **-um** playful, naughty, free from restraint
Gallus, **Gallī** *m.* (C. Cornelius) Gallus (elegiac poet [69?–26 B.C.E.])
Lycōris, **Lycōridis** *f.* Lycoris (Gallus's poetic name for his beloved)
argūtus, **-a**, **-um** clear-voiced; melodious, tuneful
Nemesis, **Nemeseōs** *f.* Nemesis (goddess of retribution; Tibullus's poetic name for his beloved)
formōsus, **-a**, **-um** beautiful, shapely
Tibullus, **Tibullī** *m.* Tibullus (elegiac poet [55?–19? B.C.E.])
dictō (1-tr.) say repeatedly; compose, dictate
doctus, **-a**, **-um** learned, erudite

Marcus Valerius Martiālis (38?–104? C.E.) was born in Spain and came in 64 to Rome, where he was befriended and aided by Seneca. His poetry reflects the poet's ambivalent attitude toward the city, which he disliked for its artificiality and conventionality, but upon which he and his poetry thrived. Martial's poems, written between 80 and 102, are collected and published in twelve books as *Epigrammata* (Epigrams).

§74. Greetings and Interjections in Latin

Vocabulary

salūs, **salūtis** *f.* safety; health
salūtem dīcere (idiom) to say "greetings," to say hello

salvē/salvēte hello! good day!
valeō, **valēre**, **valuī**, **valitūrus** be strong, be able; be well, fare well

valē/valēte greetings! farewell!

ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look!
herc(u)le (interj.) by Hercules!
mehercule/meherculēs (interj.) by Hercules!
heu (interj.) alas! oh!

MEMORIZE THESE VOCABULARY WORDS. Their meanings are not given when they appear in the remainder of this book.

Although there are no living speakers of classical Latin, information about everyday speech and conversation in Latin may be partially recovered from the Latin literary texts that survive. Some of the best sources for colloquial or spoken Latin are the comedies of Plautus and Terence, the poems of Catullus, and the letters of Cicero. It is not surprising that colloquial Latin was distinguished by short sentences, colorful idioms and metaphors, oaths and interjections, obscenities, ellipses, and other features of a living, spoken language.

There are no exact Latin equivalents for the English words "hello" and "goodbye." The Romans most often greeted and departed from one another by saying words that resembled singular and plural active imperatives.

Sing.	*Pl.*	
salvē	**salvēte**	Hello! Good day!
valē	**valēte**	Greetings! Farewell!

OBSERVATIONS

1. While these words are imperative forms, only **valē/valēte** can be traced to a Latin verb with a full set of forms.

2. Both **salvē/salvēte** and **valē/valēte** may be said when one is departing, but **valē/valēte** is more common. **Salvē/salvēte** may be said to someone who sneezes. Both may be addressed to the dying and the dead.

Bone serve, salvē. (Plautus, *Bacchides* 775)	Good slave, greetings.
Valē, puella. (Catullus VIII.12)	Farewell, girl.
A. **Bene valē.** B. **Et tū bene valē.** (Plautus, *Poenulus* 1358)	A. Farewell. B. You, too, farewell.
Salvē multum, mī pater. (Plautus, *Menaechmī* 775)	Greetings, my father.
Valē atque salvē. (Plautus, *Captīvī* 744)	Farewell and good day.
A. **Valēn? Valuistīn?**[1] B. **Valeō, et valuī . . .** (Plautus, *Trinummus* 50)	A. Are you well? Have you been well? B. Yes, I am well, and I have been well . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. The adverbs **bene** and **multum** may appear with **salvē/salvēte** and **valē/valēte** to strengthen the greeting or farewell. There is no English equivalent for these adverbs in such contexts.

2. The second person of **valeō**, in both the present and perfect tenses, may be used to inquire after a person's health. There is no Latin equivalent for the English "yes"; an affirmative answer is given by repeating the verb.

The salutation of a letter in Latin is actually a complete sentence. For example:

Cicerō Atticō salūtem dīcit.	Cicero to Atticus "health" (d.o.) says. Cicero says "greetings" to Atticus Cicero says hello to Atticus.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The person writing the letter is in the nominative case and is the subject of **dīcit**. The person to whom the letter is being written is in the dative case and is the indirect object.

2. This common salutation is often abbreviated. For example:

Cicerō Atticō s.d.
Cicerō Atticō sal.

The first sentence after a salutation often takes a standard form:

Sī valēs, bene est. (often abbreviated **s.v.b.e.**)
If you are strong, it is well.

In this sentence the adverb **bene** modifies the third person singular of **sum** used impersonally: that is, **est** has no personal subject. This expression is an idiomatic way of reporting how a person is or how a situation is for the speaker. For example:

1. **Valēn** is a contraction of **valēsne**, and **valuistīn** is a contraction of **valuistīne**. Uncontracted forms do not occur in the Latin literature that survives.

Male est mihi.	It is badly for me. I am feeling bad.
Bene est mihi.	It is well for me. I am fine.
Nōn est mihi male.	It is not badly for me. It doesn't bother me. I'm not bad.

OBSERVATIONS

1. These expressions and other analogous ones occur in conversations in the comedies of Plautus and Terence and in some poems of Catullus.

2. The less literal English translations given above are meant to approximate the meanings of the Latin sentences.

In origin a demonstrative adverb, the interjection **ecce** (lo! behold! look!) is usually used to call attention to something that is visible or present. The interjection **heu** (alas! oh!) is regularly used as an expression of pain or grief. **Hercule** or **hercle** (by Hercules!) is an oath used by men as an expression of strong feeling. In origin this interjection was an address to the deified Hercules, but its identification with the god weakened through common use.[2] **Mehercule** or **meherculēs** are extended forms of **hercule**.

A. **Ubi tū es?** B. **Ecce mē!** (Plautus, *Cistellāria* 283)	A. Where are you? B. Behold me! (Here I am!)
Tibi līlia ecce ferunt nymphae. (Vergil, *Eclogues* II.46) **līlium, līliī** *n.* lily **nympha, nymphae** *f.* nymph	For you the nymphs are bringing—behold!— lilies.
Heu, cor meum finditur! (Plautus, *Bacchides* 251) **cor, cordis** *n.* heart **findō, findere, fīdī, fissus** split apart	Alas, my heart is being split apart!
Fēlīx, heu nimium fēlīx . . . (Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.657) **nimium** (adv.) excessively, too	Fortunate, alas too fortunate . . .
Pulchrē mehercle dictum et sapienter. (Terence, *Eunuchus* 416) **sapienter** (adv.) wisely	Beautifully, by Hercules, said—and wisely.

2. The interjections **ēcastor** and **edepol**, which appear in Plautus and Terence, were originally addresses to the gods Castor and Pollux respectively.

CHAPTER VIII

Vocabulary

➤ **fuga, fugae** *f.* flight

➤ **ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī** *n.* exile
gaudium, gaudiī *n.* joy
➤ **locus, locī** *m.* place
➤ **loca, locōrum** *n. pl.* places
➤ **modus, modī** *m.* measure; limit; rhythm, meter; manner, way
oculus, oculī *m.* eye

➤ **cōnsul, cōnsulis** *m.* consul
➤ **lēx, lēgis** *f.* law
➤ **lēgem ferre** (idiom) to pass a law

➤ **lībertās, lībertātis** *f.* freedom
➤ **mūnus, mūneris** *n.* service, duty; gift
➤ **pāx, pācis** *f.* peace; favor

quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) who, which, that (§78)
quis, quid (interrog. pron.) who, what (§80)

➤ **cōnor** (1-tr.) try, attempt (§75)

➤ **audeō, audēre, ausus sum** dare (§76)
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum confess, admit (§75)
➤ **pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus** be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (§82)
➤ **placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum** be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (§82)

➤ **morior, morī, mortuus sum** die (§75)
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus leave (behind); abandon
➤ **patior, patī, passus sum** experience, suffer, endure; allow (§75)

➤ **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** follow (§75)

experior, experīrī, expertus sum test; try; experience (§75)

➤ **inquam** (defective verb) say

hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) this; these (§77)
ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that; those (§77)
iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that (of yours); those (of yours) (§77)
quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) what . . . , which . . . (§81)

➤ **caecus, -a, -um** blind; hidden, secret, dark

➤ **audāx, audācis** daring, bold; reckless
gravis, grave heavy; important, serious; severe
levis, leve light; trivial; fickle

➤ **īdem, eadem, idem** same

➤ **audacter/audāciter** (adv.) boldly; recklessly
➤ **quemadmodum** (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how
➤ **quō modō** (interrog. adv.) in what way, how
➤ **quoque** (adv.) also
saepe (adv.) often
➤ **tandem** (adv.) finally, at last; *in questions and commands,* pray, I ask you, then

Vocabulary Notes

- **fuga, fugae** *f.* is often found with a Subjective Genitive (§35). It may refer to an act of fleeing or the rapidity with which someone or something moves. It may also be used of "banishment" or "exile."
- **ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī** *n.* may refer to the act of banishment or the place to which one is exiled. The **s** placed in parentheses in the vocabulary entry indicates that the word may be spelled either with or without an **s**.
- **locus, locī** *m.* may mean a physical "place"; a "position," "rank," or "post" in society; or "room" or "opportunity" to engage in an activity. In classical Latin, the plural of **locus** is most often declined as if it were a neuter noun, and therefore the entry **loca, locōrum** *n. pl.* is given. The masculine plural form is also used, particularly when the noun means "passages" in a written work or "topics" or "subjects." Both Vergil and Sallust, however, use the masculine plural with the more general meaning of physical "places." The ablative singular or plural of **locus** is often used as an Ablative of Place Where with no preposition (**multīs locīs**, "in many places").
- **modus, modī** *m.* means "measure" in the sense of a quantity (of land, of grain). From this basic notion of quantity or amount arise several extended meanings, including "limit" (an amount that should not be exceeded) and more abstractly "moderation" or "restraint." In musical and poetic contexts, **modus** may mean "rhythm," "meter," or even the "tone" of a voice or a song. Another common meaning is "mode," "way," or "manner."

Modum agrī fīliīs dedit.	He gave a measure of land (field) to his sons.
Modum īrae pōnet?	Will he place a limit to (his) anger?
Id eō modō fēcī.	I did it in this way.

The prepositional phrases **in . . . modum** and **ad . . . modum** (in the manner, according to the manner) frequently occur with a genitive or with an adjective modifying **modum**.

Rēgis *in/ad modum* dīxit.	She spoke *in/according to the manner* of a king.
***In/Ad hunc modum* dīxit.**	She spoke *in/according to this manner.*

- **cōnsul, cōnsulis** *m.* is the title given to the highest political magistrate in Rome at the time of the Republic. According to tradition, the Roman Republic was founded after the expulsion of the Etruscan king Tarquinius Superbus (ca. 509 B.C.E.). Two consuls, elected annually, were the political leaders of the senate and the commanding generals whenever occasion required. Even during the imperial period—when the emperor held the highest power in Rome—there continued to be consuls, although their role in running the government and the military was greatly decreased. One referred to a given year by the names of the two consuls of that year.
- **lēx, lēgis** *f.* means a particular law proposed (bill) or passed (statute). It may be used of a "regulation" laid down by a variety of authorities. It may also mean "law" as the collective legal authority of a state. **lēx** appears in the idiom **lēgem ferre**, "to pass a law."
- **lībertās, lībertātis** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tās** to the stem of the adjective **līber**.
- **mūnus, mūneris** *n.* is the word for any sort of "service," "duty," or "function" (of war, of women, of eyes). In either the singular or the plural **mūnus** may refer particularly to "duties" or "services" for the dead. A second important meaning, an extension of the idea of service, is "gift."
- **pāx, pācis** *f.* initially meant a "pact" or "agreement," usually to avert or end hostilities. It then came to mean more broadly the opposite of **bellum**. It may also have the specialized meaning of "blessing" or "favor" granted by one or more of the gods.
- **cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum** is a transitive deponent verb. It often takes an Object Infinitive and is sometimes used absolutely (make an effort).

Hostem vincere cōnāmur.	We are trying to conquer the enemy.
Quamquam cōnāmur, hostis vincit.	Although we are trying, the enemy is conquering.

➤ **audeō, audēre, ausus sum** is a transitive semideponent verb. Like **cōnor** it may take an Object Infinitive or be used absolutely (be bold).

➤ **pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus** is an intransitive verb that may be used absolutely or may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (§82). The fourth principal part, **pāritūrus** (about to obey), is a future active participle.

➤ **placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum** is an intransitive verb that may be used absolutely or may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (§82). **placeō** may be used impersonally to mean "seem good." In public contexts it may mean "be resolved" (by the senate, etc.). When **placeō** is used impersonally, it often has a Subject Infinitive (§28).

Mihi placet rūs īre.	To go to the country is pleasing to me. It is pleasing to me to go to the country.
Placuit populō bellum gerere.	It seemed good to the people to wage war.

➤ **morior, morī, mortuus sum** is an intransitive deponent verb. Compounds of **morior** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. When a compound of **MORIOR** appears in readings, its principal parts are not supplied, but the prefix and simple verb are given.

➤ The basic meaning of **patior, patī, passus sum** is "experience" a process or an action. It thus may mean "suffer" or "undergo" when the process or action is a difficult one. By extension **patior** may mean "allow" a person or thing (accusative) to perform an action (Object Infinitive).

Multa mala passus sum.	I have experienced (suffered) many bad things.
Pompeium Rōmam redīre patiar.	I shall permit Pompey to return to Rome.

➤ The compounds of **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. When a compound of **SEQUOR** appears in readings, its principal parts are not supplied, but the prefix and simple verb are given.

➤ **inquam**, "say," is a defective verb with a few common indicative forms in the present and future active. In classical Latin **inquam** occurs rarely in other tenses of the indicative or subjunctive. It does not have an infinitive. Six forms only must be memorized:

	Present Active Indicative	Future Active Indicative
	Singular	*Singular*
1	**inquam**	
2	**inquis**	**inquiēs**
3	**inquit**	**inquiet**
	Plural	
3	**inquiunt**	

inquam is often used with a direct quotation. It is regularly placed after the first word or words of a sentence, often in order to emphasize the word(s) that precede(s) it.

"Vērum," inquit, "ex mē audiēs."
"The truth (a true thing)," he says, "you will hear from me."

➤ **caecus, -a, -um** may have either an active sense—"blind" (i.e., not *seeing*)—or a passive one—"hidden," "secret," "dark" (i.e., not *being seen*). Many adjectives in Latin convey a variety of meanings based on an active and a passive idea in their root meaning.

➤ **audāx, audācis** is a third-declension adjective with one form in the nominative singular. The second part of the entry is the genitive singular, from which the stem **audāc-** is taken. **audāx** may mean "bold" in a good sense (daring, confident) or in a bad sense (reckless, rash). It may be applied to both people and things (plans, deeds).

➤ The adjective **īdem, eadem, idem** is formed by the addition of the suffix **-dem** to the demonstrative adjective **is, ea, id.** Memorize the following irregular declension.

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**īdem**	**eadem**	**idem**	**īdem/eīdem**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
Gen.	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**īsdem/eīsdem**	**īsdem/eīsdem**	**īsdem/eīsdem**
Acc.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eadem**
Abl.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**īsdem/eīsdem**	**īsdem/eīsdem**	**īsdem/eīsdem**

The declension of **īdem, eadem, idem** follows the declension of **is, ea, id** with certain variations:

1. The masculine singular nominative **īdem** is formed by the addition of **-dem** to **is**. When the **-s-** is dropped, the **i-** is lengthened because of compensatory lengthening.
2. In the neuter singular nominative and accusative, the final **-d** of **id** is dropped before the ending **-dem**.
3. In the masculine and feminine singular accusative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural genitive, the final **-m** changes to an **-n-** before **-dem**.
4. In the masculine plural nominative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural dative and ablative, disyllabic forms of **is, ea, id, iī**, and **iīs** usually exhibit contraction of the two **i**'s (**īdem, īsdem**). The uncontracted forms **iīdem** and **iīsdem** occasionally occur.

"(The) same as" in Latin is usually expressed by a form of **īdem** followed by a relative clause (§78), sometimes with the ellipsis of the verb in the relative clause because it can be supplied from the main verb.

Sociī dīcunt idem quod ego dīcēbam.
The allies are saying the same thing that I was saying.
Semper eadem sentiō quae tū (sentīs).
I always feels the same things that (as) you (feel).

➤ The irregular adverb **audacter** is more common than the regularly formed **audāciter**.

➤ The **quem** of the adverb **quemadmodum** may be either a relative adjective (§79)— "(according) to which manner," "as,"—or, less commonly, an interrogative adjective—"how." As a relative adverb, **quemadmodum** introduces a comparative clause, and a corresponding adverb (**sīc, ita**) often appears in the main clause. **quemadmodum** may be written as three separate words (**quem ad modum**).

Sīc tē amant fīliī quemadmodum tū patrem mātremque.
So (your) sons love you as you (love) (your) father and mother.

➤ The **quō** in the phrase **quō modō** is an interrogative adjective (§81). **quō modō**, "in what manner," "how," is in origin an Ablative of Manner. **quō modō** may be written as one word (**quōmodō**).

➤ The adverb **quoque** is usually placed directly after the word that it qualifies.

Mihi quoque dōnum dedit. To me also he gave a gift.

➤ **tandem** is an adverb that has a temporal meaning (finally, at last). With imperatives and questions it often expresses impatience or indignation (pray, I ask you, then).

Ad urbem tandem accessimus. Finally we approached the city.
Cūr tandem hoc fēcistī? Why, pray, did you do this thing?

Derivatives	Cognates
modus	mete; **med**ical; **med**itate
mūnus	com**mon**; im**mune**
oculus	**op**tic; aut**opsy**; **oph**thalmologist
patior	**fie**nd
quī/quis	who; what; how; **wh**en; **whi**ther; **wh**ere
sequor	e**spy**; **speci**men; **spec**tacle; **skep**tic; epi**scop**al; tele**scope**

§75. Deponent Verbs

Certain Latin verbs are called **deponent** verbs because they appear to have "put aside" or "put down" (**dē-** + **pōnō**) their active forms.[1] These verbs may belong to any of the four conjugations, but all deponent verbs *have passive forms only and active meanings only*.[2] Deponent verbs are easily identified by their principal parts. Each has only *three* principal parts. For example:

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum	try, attempt	(1st conjugation)[3]
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum	confess, admit	(2nd conjugation)
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum	follow	(3rd conjugation)
morior, morī, mortuus sum	die	(3rd conjugation i-stem)
experior, experīrī, expertus sum	experience	(4th conjugation)

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each principal part of these verbs is in form the *passive equivalent* of each of the first three principal parts of a nondeponent verb. The first principal part is the first person singular present indicative *passive;* the second principal part is the present *passive* infinitive; and the third principal part is the first person singular (masc.) perfect *passive* indicative. Deponent verbs *lack active forms.*

2. Just as for nondeponent verbs, the ending of the second principal part of every deponent verb (the present passive infinitive) indicates the conjugation to which each belongs: **-ārī** = first conjugation, **-ērī** = second conjugation, **-ī** = third conjugation, and **-īrī** = fourth conjugation. Third- and third-i-stem-conjugation verbs form their present passive infinitives by dropping **-ere** from the present active infinitives and adding **-ī** (§31).

3. The third principal part of a deponent verb provides the perfect passive participle, which has an active meaning. For example: **cōnātus**, **-a**, **-um**, "having tried"; **secūtus**, **-a**, **-um**, "having followed."

The conjugations of deponent verbs follow all the same rules of formation (including various regular changes in the present stem) that apply to nondeponent verbs. Thus there are *no new forms* to be learned for deponent verbs. The present stem for first-, second-, and fourth-conjugation deponent verbs may be found by dropping **-rī** from the second principal part. For the third conjugation, it is necessary to imagine a present *active* infinitive (e.g., **sequere, *morere*) from which the present stem may be found by dropping **-re** (e.g., **seque-**, **more-**). All deponent verbs form the *imperfect subjunctive by adding regular passive endings to an imaginary present active infinitive with a lengthened final* **-e**:

1. Deponent verbs and their forms are actually derived from a third voice (in addition to active and passive) called the **middle** voice. PIE had only an active and a middle voice and no passive voice. Subjects of verbs in both the active and the middle performed the action of the verb, and verbs in both the active and the middle could take direct objects. When the passive voice developed, many of its forms were derived from the middle voice. The only remnant of the middle voice in Latin is the existence of deponent verbs, verbs with passive forms but active meanings.

2. For the only exceptions to this rule see §95.

3. Deponent verbs of the first conjugation have principal parts that follow the pattern of **cōnor**, **cōnārī**, **cōnātus sum**. Deponent verbs whose second and third principal parts end in **-ārī**, **-ātus sum** are identified in vocabulary lists by either the notation (1-tr.) for transitive verbs or (1-intr.) for intransitive verbs. No other principal parts are listed for these verbs. However, when learning verbs of this conjugation, ALWAYS WRITE OUT AND/OR SAY ALL THREE PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Present Passive Infinitive	*Present Stem*	*Imaginary Present Active Infinitive with Lengthened Final* **-e**
cōnārī	**cōnā-**	**cōnārē-**
fatērī	**fatē-**	**fatērē-**
sequī	**seque-**	**sequerē-**
morī	**more-**	**morerē-**
experīrī	**experī-**	**experīrē-**

In order to generate a synopsis of a deponent verb, follow the regular synopsis format, but enter all deponent verb forms on the *passive* side. Remember that the English *meanings* are *active*. Here is a model synopsis of **morior** in the third person plural masculine:

Principal Parts: **morior, morī, mortuus sum**
Person, Number, and Gender: **3rd pl. m.**

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present			**moriuntur**	they die
Imperfect			**moriēbantur**	they were dying
Future			**morientur**	they will die
Perfect			**mortuī sunt**	1. they died 2. they have died
Pluperfect			**mortuī erant**	they had died
Future Perfect			**mortuī erunt**	they will have died
Subjunctive				
Present			**moriantur**	
Imperfect			**morerentur**	
Perfect			**mortuī sint**	
Pluperfect			**mortuī essent**	
Infinitive				
Present			**morī**	to die
Imperative				
Singular			**morere**	die
Plural			**moriminī**	die (pl.)

§76. Semideponent Verbs

A few verbs in Latin are *deponent in the perfect system only* and therefore are called **semideponent** verbs. These verbs are easily identified by their principal parts. For example:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum dare

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first two principal parts of semideponent verbs are active in form and meaning and are similar to the first two principal parts of nondeponent verbs. The entire present system, made with the stem from the second principal part, has *active forms* and *active meanings*.[4]

2. As is true for deponent verbs, the third principal part of semideponent verbs is *passive in form* (first person singular [masc.] perfect indicative passive) but *active in meaning*. **Ausus sum**, for example, means "I (m.) dared," "I (m.) have dared."

To conjugate semideponent verbs in the present system, follow all the rules of formation that apply to regular, nondeponent verbs. In order to generate a synopsis of a semideponent verb, follow the regular synopsis format, but enter present system forms on the active side and perfect system forms on the passive side. Remember that the English meanings of *all* forms are *active*. Here is a model synopsis of **audeō** in the third person singular feminine:

Principal Parts: **audeō, audēre, ausus sum**
Person, Number, and Gender: **3rd sing. f.**

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	**audet**	she dares		
Imperfect	**audēbat**	she used to dare		
Future	**audēbit**	she will dare		
Perfect			**ausa est**	1. she dared 2. she has dared
Pluperfect			**ausa erat**	she had dared
Future Perfect			**ausa erit**	she will have dared
Subjunctive				
Present	**audeat**			
Imperfect	**audēret**			
Perfect			**ausa sit**	
Pluperfect			**ausa esset**	
Infinitive				
Present	**audēre**	to dare		
Imperative				
Singular	**audē**	dare		
Plural	**audēte**	dare (pl.)		

☛ DRILL 75–76, PAGE 315, MAY NOW BE DONE.

4. Although passive forms could be made for the present system of semideponent verbs, these forms do not appear in the Latin that survives.

§77. Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns: *hic, iste,* and *ille*

In addition to **is**, **ea**, **id**, Latin has three other demonstrative adjectives that regularly precede the nouns they modify and serve to point out those nouns. The specific sphere of reference for each Latin demonstrative adjective is identified with one of the three persons.

1st person	**hic, haec, hoc**	"this"/ "these" (near *me,* the speaker)
2nd person	**iste, ista, istud**	"that"/ "those" (of *yours;* which *you* know well)
3rd person	**ille, illa, illud**	"that"/ "those" (near *him, her, them*)

MEMORIZE THE DECLENSION OF EACH DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE *ACROSS THE SINGULAR AND THEN ACROSS THE PLURAL.*

hic, haec, hoc

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**hic**	**haec**	**hoc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**huius**	**huius**	**huius**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Demonstrative adjectives do not have vocative forms.
2. The **-i-** of **huius** in the genitive singular is consonantal and is pronounced like English **y**. Thus **hu-ius** (*hu-yus*) is disyllabic. The **-ui-** of **huic** in the dative singular is a diphthong and is pronounced like English **wi**. Thus **huic** (*hwik*) is monosyllabic.
3. The letter **c** that appears at the end of many of the forms of **hic**, **haec**, **hoc** is called a **deictic** (< Greek *deiknūmi,* point out) or **demonstrative suffix**. The hard sound of this suffix strengthens the demonstrative force of the adjective.[5]
4. When forms of **hic**, **haec**, **hoc** appear in the singular, the English translation "this" is used. Plural forms are translated "these."

iste, ista, istud

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**iste**	**ista**	**istud**	**istī**	**istae**	**ista**
Gen.	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istōrum**	**istārum**	**istōrum**
Dat.	**istī**	**istī**	**istī**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**
Acc.	**istum**	**istam**	**istud**	**istōs**	**istās**	**ista**
Abl.	**istō**	**istā**	**istō**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declension of **iste**, **ista**, **istud** is almost identical with that of **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, except that the neuter singular nominative and accusative forms end in **-ud** (§46). This neuter ending, though less common than **-um**, is not unique to this word.
2. The dative singular ending **-ī** is identical with the dative singular ending of the third declension.

5. The full suffix form is **-ce**, which appears in the emphatic forms **huiusce** and **hīsce**.

3. Many endings of **iste, ista, istud** are familiar from first-second-declension adjectives. All the endings of the plural forms are identical with the plural endings of first-second-declension adjectives.

4. When forms of **iste, ista, istud** appear in the singular, the English translation "that (of yours)" is used. Plural forms are translated "those (of yours)."

ille, illa, illud

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**	**illī**	**illae**	**illa**
Gen.	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**
Acc.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**	**illōs**	**illās**	**illa**
Abl.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declension of **ille, illa, illud** is identical with that of **iste, ista, istud.** Thus all the observations made for the forms of **iste** apply to **ille** as well.

2. When forms of **ille, illa, illud** appear in the singular, the English translation "that" is used. Plural forms are translated "those."

When **hic, iste,** and **ille** are used as adjectives, they most often precede and always agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns they modify. For example:

hanc fēminam	this woman (d.o.) (fem. sing. acc.)
istī amīcō	to/for that friend (of yours) (masc. sing. dat.)
illōrum oppidōrum	of those towns (neut. pl. gen.)

When the demonstrative adjectives stand alone as substantives, they are referred to as **demonstrative pronouns.** Demonstrative pronouns are translated with the addition of the English words "man," "woman," "thing" (sing.) or "men," "women," "things" (pl.), depending on the gender and number of the pronoun. For example:

hae	these women (subj.)
istōs	those men (of yours) (d.o.)
illud	that thing (subj. or d.o.)

Special Uses of the Demonstrative Adjectives/Pronouns

Hic, most frequently in the neuter forms, may point to either what has preceded or what is to follow. For example:

***Haec* dē amīcitiā dīxit.**	*These things* (i.e., *the preceding things*) about friendship he said. He said *these (preceding) things* about friendship.
***Hoc* petō: Esne miser?**	*This thing* (i.e., *the following thing*) I am asking: Are you miserable? I am asking *this (following) thing:* Are you miserable?

Ille, most frequently in the neuter forms, also may point to either what has preceded or what is to follow.

Ille may also be used to point to what is famous or notorious. When **ille** has this meaning, it is often placed *after* the noun it modifies. For example:

Crassus *ille* multam pecūniam habēbat.
That famous/notorious Crassus used to have much money.

When **hic** and **ille** are used together to refer to two elements previously mentioned, they often mean "the latter" (**hic**) and "the former" (**ille**). For example:

Sunt in oppidō cīvēs et piī et impiī. *Hōs* ōdimus, *illōs* amāmus.
There are in the town both loyal and disloyal citizens. *The latter (citizens)* (d.o.) we hate, *the former (citizens)* (d.o.) we love.

Iste may, but does not always, express contempt. This meaning arose from its use in addressing opponents in legal or political contexts.

***Ista* verba dē patriā audīvī, falsa et impia.**
I heard *those (contemptible)* words about the country, false and disloyal.

☛ Drill 77, page 323, may now be done.

§78. The Relative Pronoun *quī, quae, quod* and the Relative Clause

A **relative pronoun** introduces a subordinate clause that qualifies an **antecedent**, a word that "goes before" (< **antecēdō**, go before) the relative pronoun. For example:

People ***who*** *live in glass houses* shouldn't throw stones.
The evil ***that*** *men do* lives after them.

In these English sentences "who" and "that" are examples of relative pronouns. Each *refers to* the word that goes before it.[6] "People" is the antecedent of "who," and "evil" is the antecedent of "that." The italicized portion of each sentence (including the relative pronoun) is called a **relative clause**. Each relative clause has a verb of its own (in addition to the verb in the main clause). A relative clause is an **adjectival clause**.

The relative pronoun in Latin has singular and plural forms in all three genders. Memorize the declension of the relative pronoun *across the singular and then across the plural.*

6. The word "relative" is derived from the fourth principal part of the verb **referō**, **referre**, **rettulī**, **relātus** "bring back, refer": a relative pronoun "refers" to its antecedent.

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	**cuius**	**cuius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The relative pronoun does not have vocative forms.

2. The **-i-** of **cuius** in the genitive singular is consonantal and is pronounced like English **y**. Thus **cu-ius** *(cu-yus)* is disyllabic. The **-ui** of **cui** in the dative singular is a diphthong and is pronounced like English **wi**. Thus **cui** (*kwi*) is monosyllabic.

3. When a form of the relative pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition **cum** may be attached directly to the pronoun. Thus **quōcum** (with whom) and **quibuscum** (with whom). The neuter forms are rarely used as Ablatives of Accompaniment.

MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING RULE: THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AGREES WITH ITS ANTECEDENT IN GENDER AND NUMBER. ITS CASE, HOWEVER, IS DETERMINED BY ITS SYNTAX WITHIN THE RELATIVE CLAUSE. For example:

Carmina *quae nunc legō* ā Catullō scrīpta sunt.
The poems *that (d.o.) now I am reading* by Catullus were written.
The poems *that I am now reading* were written by Catullus.
Librum *quī est in manibus tuīs* legere optō.
The book (d.o.) *that is in your hands* to read I desire.
I desire to read the book *that is in your hands.*
Ager *in quō meus frāter labōrābat* ab hostibus captus est.
The field *in which my brother was working* by the enemies was captured.
The field *in which my brother was working* was captured by the enemies.

In the first sentence, the relative pronoun (**quae**) introduces a relative clause (**quae nunc legō**) that describes its antecedent (**carmina**). **Quae** is *neuter* and *plural* in order to agree with **carmina**, its antecedent. It is *accusative,* however, because it is the direct object of **legō**, the verb in the relative clause. In the second sentence, **quī** is *masculine* and *singular* to agree with **librum**, its antecedent. It is *nominative,* however, because it is the subject of **est**, the verb in the relative clause. In the third sentence, **quō** is *masculine* and *singular* to agree with **ager**, its antecedent. It is *ablative,* however, because its syntax in the relative clause is Ablative of Place Where.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The relative pronoun usually comes first in its clause unless it is the object of a preposition.

2. The relative pronoun is often placed immediately after its antecedent.

3. The verb of the relative clause is often placed at the end of the relative clause (e.g., **quae . . . legō**, **in quō . . . labōrābat**).

4. Translations of relative pronoun forms in Latin require mastery of the uses of the relative pronoun in English:

	Beings (sing. or pl.)	*Things (sing. or pl.)*
Subject	who	that/which
Possessive	whose	whose
Objects of verbs and prepositions	whom	that/which

A Note on Restrictive and Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses

In both Latin and English there are two different kinds of relative clauses. A **restrictive** relative clause contains information about the antecedent that is *essential* to the meaning of the sentence. In English such a clause *is not set off in commas,* and an antecedent that is not a person is referred to in English by the relative pronoun "that." A **nonrestrictive** relative clause contains information about the antecedent that is *not essential* to the meaning of the sentence. In English such a clause *is always set off in commas,* and an antecedent that is not a person is referred to in English by the relative pronoun "which." For example:

Restrictive Relative Clauses
Men *who are without weapons* will not fight.
I lost the book *that you lent me.*

In each of these sentences the relative clause *restricts* the meaning of the antecedent in a way that is essential for the sense of the sentence. The men who "will not fight" are not men in general, but "men who are without weapons." The book that "I lost" is not any book, but "the book that you lent me." Such restrictive relative clauses are *not set off in commas.* "That" is used when the antecedent is not a person.

Nonrestrictive Relative Clauses
Horace, *who was born in Apulia,* lived in the country.
You would enjoy this book, *which was written by my sister.*

In each of these sentences the relative clause contains additional but *nonessential* information about the antecedent. Such *nonrestrictive* clauses are *always set off in commas.* "Which" is used when the antecedent is not a person.

In Latin there are *no different pronouns* used to distinguish restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses. The two types may be distinguished *by punctuation only.*[7]

☛ Drill 78, page 329, may now be done.

7. In modern Latin texts different conventions in punctuation make even punctuation an unreliable method of distinguishing between restrictive and nonrestrictive clauses.

§79. Special Features of the Relative Pronoun

The Indefinite or Generic Antecedent

Often a relative pronoun in Latin lacks an expressed antecedent, but an **indefinite** or **generic** one should be supplied in an English translation. The gender and number of the relative pronoun indicate what word(s) should be supplied: "he," "she," "it," "a/the thing," "they," "those," "a/the man," "people." For example:

Quī nihil timent bellum gerent. (relative pron. = masc. pl.)
(They/Those/Men who nothing (d.o.) fear war (d.o.) will wage.
Those who fear nothing will wage war.
Catilīna, quod semper dīxī, mē interficere cupit.
Catiline, (a thing) that I have always said, me (d.o.) to kill desires.
Catiline, a thing that I have always said, desires to kill me.

OBSERVATION

In the second sentence the antecedent for **quod** is *either* the entire main clause (Catiline desires to kill me) *or* an ellipsed neuter pronoun such as **id**, which itself is in apposition to the main clause.

While certain kinds of antecedents may be omitted in Latin, the relative pronoun itself can *never* be omitted, although it is often omitted in English. For example:

English: I have the book you were desiring. (relative pronoun omitted)
Latin: **Librum *quem* optābās habeō.** (relative pronoun introduces relative clause)
I have the book *that* you were desiring.

The Connective Relative

When a relative pronoun begins a sentence in Latin, its antecedent may be generic and implied, but it may also be *a specific word or an entire idea expressed in the preceding sentence*. A relative pronoun whose antecedent is to be found in a preceding sentence is called a **connective** relative pronoun.

The connective relative pronoun gives greater cohesion to the ideas being presented and makes the closest possible connection between sentences. Since standard English usage does not allow a relative pronoun at the beginning of a new sentence, a demonstrative pronoun or adjective may be used in translation. For example:

Crassus Rōmam vēnit. *Quem* quoniam timeō, ex urbe discēdam.
Crassus to Rome has come. *Whom* since I fear, from the city I shall depart.
Crassus has come to Rome. [*And*] since I fear *this man,* I shall depart from the city.
Hostēs accēdēbant cīvēsque arma capiēbant. *Quae* mē terruērunt.
The enemies were approaching, and the citizens arms (d.o.) were taking up. *Which things* me (d.o.) terrified.
The enemies were approaching, and the citizens were taking up arms. [*And*] *these things* terrified me.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Because a connective relative joins two sentences, the conjunction "and" may be added to the English translation, and a demonstrative pronoun or adjective may be used to translate the relative pronoun. In the first sentence **quem** is the equivalent of **et hunc**. In the second sentence **quae** is the equivalent of **et haec**.

2. The antecedent of **quem** in the second sentence of the first example is **Crassus**, with which it agrees in gender and number (masculine and singular). The antecedent of **quae** in the second sentence of the second example is not a specific word, but is the actions in the first sentence, with which it agrees in gender and number (neuter and plural).

3. **Quem** is Accusative, Direct Object of **timeō**, the verb in the causal clause introduced by **quoniam**. A connective relative usually appears first in its clause even if, as here, the clause has an introductory conjunction.

Placement of the Antecedent in and after the Relative Clause

Although a relative clause usually follows its antecedent, sometimes a relative clause *precedes* its antecedent. When this occurs, the antecedent is often simply a demonstrative pronoun that appears immediately after the relative clause. The antecedent also may be *drawn inside* the relative clause and then *restated* in the main clause as a pronoun. For example:

***Quōs* multum laudābās, *eōs* in bellum mīsī.**
Whom (pl.) you were praising a lot, *them (those men) (d.o.)* into war I sent.
I sent into war *those men whom* you were praising a lot.
***Quam urbem* hostēs cēpērunt, *hanc* līberāre dēbētis.**
Which city (d.o.) the enemies have captured, *this (one) (d.o.)* to free you (pl.) ought.
You (pl.) ought to free *this city that* the enemies have captured.

OBSERVATION

In the second sentence the antecedent **urbem** has been drawn inside the relative clause, and the relative word **quam** is virtually an *adjective* modifying **urbem**. It may be called a **relative adjective**. The second translation, in which **urbem** has been placed in the main clause, is to be preferred.

☛ Drill 79, page 337, may now be done.

§80. The Interrogative Pronoun *quis, quid*

A pronoun used to ask a question is called an **interrogative pronoun**. In the questions "Who are you?" and "What are you doing?" the words "who" and "what" are examples of interrogative pronouns in English. Most of the forms of the interrogative pronoun in Latin are identical with the forms of the relative pronoun.

Memorize the declension of the interrogative pronoun *across the singular and then across the plural.*

	Singular				*Plural*		
	M./F.		N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quis**	who?	**quid**	what?	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	whose? of whom?	**cuius**	of what?	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	to/for whom?	**cui**	to/for what?	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	whom?	**quid**	what (d.o.)?	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	from whom?	**quō**	from what?	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
		(etc.)		(etc.)			

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the singular there is one set of forms for both masculine and feminine. All forms are identical with those of the relative pronoun except the masculine/feminine nominative form (**quis**) and the neuter nominative and accusative form (**quid**).

2. In the plural there are different forms for all three genders, and all the forms are identical with those of the relative pronoun. The English translations of the plural forms are identical with those of the singular except for the addition of notes about number and gender. For example:

quis	who?	**quī**	who (masc. pl.)?
quid	what? (*or* what thing?)	**quae**	what (pl.)? (*or* what things?)

3. When a form of the interrogative pronoun functions as an Ablative of Accompaniment, the preposition **cum** is occasionally attached directly to the pronoun. Thus **quōcum** (with whom?) and **quibuscum** (with whom [pl.]?).

4. In Latin, as in English, an interrogative pronoun is placed first in a question, unless it is the object of a preposition. For example:

***Quis* illud dīxit?**	*Who* said that thing?
***Ā quō* amāris?**	*By whom* are you loved?
***Quid* tē terret?**	*What* is frightening you?
***Quae* dīxit rēx?**	*What things* did the king say?

5. The interrogative enclitic **-ne** is not added to an interrogative pronoun since the pronoun itself indicates a question.

§81. The Interrogative Adjective *quī, quae, quod*

In the questions "What book are you reading?" and "Which poems were written by Horace?" the words "what" and "which" are examples of interrogative adjectives in English because each modifies an expressed noun that directly follows. An interrogative pronoun, by contrast, stands alone. For example:

What man was chosen consul? ("what" modifies "man" and is an interrogative *adjective*)
What are you doing? ("what" stands alone and is an interrogative *pronoun*)

In Latin, the interrogative adjective *is identical in all its forms, singular and plural, with the relative pronoun*. For example:

***Quem virum* amās?**	*Which man* do you love?
***In quibus oppidīs* vīxistī?**	*In which towns* have you lived?
***Quod animal* in agrō erat?**	*What animal* was in the field?
***Cum quā fēminā* ambulābat?**	*With what woman* was he walking?

OBSERVATIONS

1. The interrogative adjective may be translated either "what" or "which."

2. The interrogative enclitic **-ne** is not added to an interrogative adjective since the adjective itself indicates a question.

☛ Drill 80–81, page 339, may now be done.

§82. Dative with an Intransitive Verb

Certain intransitive verbs regularly appear with a Dative of Reference indicating the person or thing affected by the action of the verb. Such a dative is called a **Dative with an Intransitive Verb**. For example:

Mea sententia *Antōniō* placet. (**placeō**, **placēre**, **placuī**, **placitum** be pleasing, please)
My opinion is pleasing to *Antony*.
My opinion pleases *Antony*.
***Rēgī* nostrō pāreātur.** (**pāreō**, **pārēre**, **pāruī**, **pāritūrus** be obedient, obey)
Let there be an obeying to our *king*.
Let our *king* be obeyed.

The syntax of each italicized word (**Antōniō**, **rēgī**) is **Dative with an Intransitive Verb**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Verbs that take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb are so indicated in the vocabulary list by the addition of "(+ dat.)" at the end of their entries. Although these verbs are usually intransitive in Latin, they may often be translated less literally by transitive English verbs. For example, in the second translation of the first sentence, "Antony" is the direct object of the English verb "pleases."

2. Verbs that take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb may occur in the passive voice *in an impersonal use only*. In such a construction, it is often convenient to translate the Dative with an Intransitive Verb as the personal subject of an English verb in the passive voice. For example, in the second translation of the second sentence, "king" is the subject of the passive voice English verb "let . . . be obeyed."

Short Readings

1. While speaking to his housekeeper, a rich old man is less than truthful.

   pauper sum; fateor, patior; quod dī dant ferō. (PLAUTUS, *AULULĀRIA* 88)

pauper, **pauperis** poor

2. Eunomia asks her brother a pressing question.

   dīc mihi, quaesō, quis ea est quam vīs† dūcere† uxōrem? (PLAUTUS, *AULULĀRIA* 170)

quaesō = *1st sing. pres. act. indic.*, I ask you, please
†**volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, —— be willing, want, wish; **vīs** = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic.*
†**dūcō**, *here*, bring home
uxor, **uxōris** *f.* wife

3. A slave's response after he has been ordered to hard labor

   vīs haec quidem hercle est, et trahī et trūdī simul. (PLAUTUS, *CAPTĪVĪ* 750)

trahō, **trahere**, **trāxī**, **tractus** draw, drag; pull
trūdō, **trūdere**, **trūsī**, **trūsus** shove, push
simul (adv.) at the same time

4. The first line of Ennius's epic poem

   Mūsae, quae pedibus magnum pulsātis Olympum . . . (ENNIUS, *ANNĀLĒS* I.1)

Mūsa, **Mūsae** *f.* Muse
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
pulsō (1-tr.) strike, beat
Olympus, **Olympī** *m.* (Mount) Olympus

5. A fragment from an unknown work of Ennius

   ōrātor audāx esse dēbet. (ENNIUS, *SĒD. INC.* FRAG. 21)

ōrātor, **ōrātōris** *m.* speaker

6. A fragment of the poetry of Ennius

   quī vincit nōn est victor nisi victus fatētur. (ENNIUS, *SĒD. INC.* FRAG. 513)

victor, **victōris** *m.* conqueror, victor

7. A woman's fate is reported with heavy irony.

   placēre occēpit graviter postquam ēmortuast. (CAECILIUS STATIUS, *PALLIĀTAE* FRAG. 163)

occipiō (**ob-** + **capiō**) take up, begin
ēmorior (**ē-** + **morior**) die; **ēmortuast** = **ēmortua est**

8. A fragment from the tragic poet Accius

sapimus animō, fruimur animā; sine animō anima est dēbilis.

(Accius, *Tragoediae* frag. 296)

sapiō, **sapere**, **sapiī/sapīvī**, —— be intelligent, show good sense
fruor, **fruī**, **frūctus sum** enjoy, take delight
dēbilis, **dēbile** weak, feeble

9. A fragment on mortality attributed to Varro

Diī essēmus nī morerēmur. (Pseudo-Varro, *Sententiae* 1)

diī = deī
nī = nisi

10. In defending his client accused of attempted murder, Cicero asks a series of rhetorical questions intended to expose the preposterous charge.

ipsīus autem venēnī quae ratiō fingitur? ubi quaesītum est, quem ad modum parātum, quō pactō, cui, quō in locō trāditum? (Cicero, *Prō Caeliō* 58)

venēnum, **venēnī** *n.* poison
ratiō, **ratiōnis** *f.* manner, way
fingō, **fingere**, **fīnxī**, **fictus** fashion, contrive; imagine
quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesiī/quaesīvī**, **quaesītus** seek
parō (1-tr.) get, obtain
pactum, **pactī** *n.* manner, way; means

11. Cicero quotes Ennius's epitaph, which may have been written by the poet himself. It was placed beneath a statue of the poet at the tomb of the Scipios.

Aspicite, ō cīvēs, senis Enni imāgini' formam.
hic vestrum† pānxit maxima facta patrum.

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.34)

aspiciō, **aspicere**, **aspexī**, **aspectus** look toward, look at; behold
senex, **senis** old
Ennius, **Enniī** *m.* Ennius; the final **-i** of **Ennī** here scans *short*.
imāgō, **imāginis** *f.* image, likeness; **imāgini' = imāginis**
forma, **formae** *f.* shape, form; appearance
†vestrum = vestrōrum
pangō, **pangere**, **pānxī/pepigī**, **pāctus** fix, fasten; compose, record
maximus, **-a**, **-um** biggest, greatest, very great

12. Laelius makes this observation about Fortune.

nōn enim sōlum ipsa Fortūna caeca est, sed eōs etiam plērumque efficit caecōs quōs conplexa est. (Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 54)

plērumque (adv.) on most occasions; to a great extent
efficiō (**ex-** + **faciō**) make; render
conplector (= complector), **conplectī**, **conplexus sum** embrace

13. Near the end of the dialogue, Laelius recalls his recently deceased friend, Scipio Aemilianus.

mihi quidem Scīpiō, quamquam est subitō ēreptus, vīvit tamen semperque vīvet;
virtūtem enim amāvī illīus virī. (CICERO, *DĒ AMĪCITIĀ* 102)

Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis *m.* (P.) Scipio (Africanus Aemilianus) (consul 147, 134 B.C.E.)
subitō (adv.) suddenly
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away

14. The poet and his beloved Lesbia have something in common.

Lesbia mī dīcit semper male nec tacet umquam
dē mē; Lesbia mē dispeream nisi amat.
quō signō? quia sunt totidem mea; dēprecor illam
assiduē, vērum dispeream nisi amō. (CATULLUS XCII)

mī = mihi
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent, keep silent
dispereō (dis- + per- + eō), disperīre, disperiī, —— perish
signum, signī *n.* sign; indication
quia (conj.) because
totidem (indeclinable numerical adj.) just as many; just the same
dēprecor (1-tr.) deprecate, abuse
assiduē (adv.) constantly

15. Caesar describes the position of the common people in Gaul.

nōbilibus in† hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in* servōs.
(CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ*, VI.13)

nōbilis, nōbile noble
†**in**, *here*, toward

Some Roman proverbs

16. Bis vincit quī sē vincit in victōriā. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* B21)

bis (adv.) twice
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

17. Etiam quī faciunt ōdērunt iniūriam. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* E10)

iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injustice

18. Hominem experīrī multa paupertās iubet. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* H8)

paupertās, paupertātis *f.* poverty

19. Levis est Fortūna: citō reposcit quod dedit. (PUBLILIUS SYRUS, *SENTENTIAE* L4)

citō (adv.) swiftly
reposcō, reposcere, ——, —— demand back

20. A shepherd laments his inability to make money from selling his animals.

nōn umquam gravis aere domum mihi dextra redībat. (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* I.35)

aes, aeris *n.* copper, bronze; money
dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.*, right hand

21. Having detected a storm on the sea's surface, Neptune emerges and scolds the winds.

iam caelum terramque meō sine nūmine, ventī,
miscēre et tantās audētis tollere mōlēs? (Vergil, *Aeneid* I.133–34)

iam (adv.) now
nūmen, nūminis *n.* divine power, divinity
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise up
mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass, pile

22. Aeneas speaks to Dido and concludes the defense of his departure from Carthage.

dēsine mēque tuīs incendere tēque querēlīs;
Ītaliam nōn sponte sequor. (Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.360–61)

dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsiī/dēsīvī, dēsitum stop, cease (+ infin.)
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus set on fire, (cause to) burn; inflame, provoke
querēla, querēlae *f.* lament, complaint
***spōns, *spontis** *f.* (one's own) will

23. Dido speaks before committing suicide.

. . . moriēmur inultae,
sed moriāmur. . . . (Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.659–60)

inultus, -a, -um unavenged

24. Mezentius gloats as he kills an opponent.

nunc morere. ast dē mē dīvum† pater atque hominum rēx
vīderit. (Vergil, *Aeneid* X.743–44)

ast (conj.) but
†**dīvum = dīvōrum**

25. After rejecting a well-dressed, mean-spirited friend, the poet speaks approvingly of a man whose appearance might seem more provincial and laughable.

. . . at ingenium ingēns
incultō latet hōc sub corpore. . . . (Horace, *Sermōnēs* I.3.33–34)

at (conj.) but
incultus, -a, -um uncouth, rough, uncultivated
lateō, latēre, latuī, —— hide, lie hidden, be concealed

26. Which is better, city or country?

Rōmae rūs optās; absentem rūsticus urbem
tollis ad astra levis . . . (Horace, *Sermōnēs* II.7.28–29)

absēns, absentis not present, absent
rūsticus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the country *or* a farm, rustic
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise
astrum, astrī *n.* star; *pl.*, (the) heavens, sky

27. The poet describes how he won Cynthia.

hanc ego nōn aurō, nōn Indīs flectere conchīs,
sed potuī blandī carminis obsequiō. (Propertius I.8b.39–40)

Indus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to India, Indian
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend; soften, influence
concha, conchae *f.* sea-shell, conch; pearl
blandus, -a, -um charming, ingratiating, seductive
obsequium, obsequiī *n.* assiduous attention

28. The poet explains the source of inspiration for his poems.

nōn haec Calliopē, nōn haec mihi cantat Apollō.
ingenium nōbīs ipsa puella facit. (Propertius II.1.3–4)

Calliopē, Calliopēs *f.* Calliope (Muse of epic poetry)
cantō (1-tr.) sing; compose

29. One advantage of being in love

omne in amōre malum, sī patiāre, leve est. (Propertius II.5.16)

30. The poet assumes the role of betrayed lover and imagines another, luckier man.

fēlīx quī quod amat dēfendere fortiter audet,
cui sua "nōn fēcī" dīcere amīca† potest. (Ovid, *Amōrēs* II.5.9–10)

dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus defend
†**amīca, amīcae** *f.* girlfriend; mistress

31. An observation on protesting too much

quī nimium multīs "nōn amo"† dīcit amat. (Ovid, *Remedia Amōris* 648)

nimium (adv.) too much, excessively
†The **-ō** of **amō** here scans *short*.

32. Coriolanus's mother, Veturia, reviles her son, an exiled Roman general about to attack Rome.

ergō ego nisi peperissem, Rōma nōn oppugnārētur; nisi fīlium habērem, lībera in līberā patriā mortua essem. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* II.40.8)

ergō (adv.) therefore
pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth (to), bear (of a mother)
oppugnō (1-tr.) attack

33. The commander of Roman troops in Sicily advises his men before a battle with the Carthaginians.

quī prior strīnxerit ferrum, eius victōria erit. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXIV.38.5)

prior = *masc. sing. nom. of comparative adj.*, earlier, sooner
stringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus draw
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory

34. A faithful old dog responds to his master after he is scolded for losing his prey.

quod fuimus laudā si iam damnās quod sumus.

(Phaedrus, *Fābulae Aesōpiae* V.10.9)

iam (adv.) now
damnō (1-tr.) condemn

35. The philosopher gives a definition.

philosophia studium virtūtis est, sed per ipsam virtūtem: nec virtūs autem esse sine studiō suī potest nec virtūtis studium sine ipsā. nōn enim quemadmodum in iīs quī aliquid ex distantī locō ferīre cōnantur, alibi est quī petit, alibi quod petītur, nec quemadmodum itinera quae ad urbēs perdūcunt, sīc viae ad virtūtem sunt extrā ipsam: ad virtūtem venītur per ipsam, cōhaerent inter sē philosophia virtūsque. (Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* LXXXIX.8)

philosophia, **philosophiae** *f.* philosophy
aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indefinite pron.*, something
distāns, **distantis** (being) distant
feriō, **ferīre**, ——, —— strike, hit
alibi (adv.) elsewhere; **alibi . . . alibi . . .** , in one place . . . , in another place . . .
iter, **itineris** *n.* journey; route
perdūcō (**per-** + **dūcō**) lead, bring
extrā (prep. + acc.) outside of
cōhaereō, **cōhaerēre**, **cōhaesī**, **cōhaesūrus** cling together, belong together, be united

36. Having acknowledged that the world is ruled by the laws of fortune, the philosopher offers advice.

in eum intrāvimus mundum in quō hīs lēgibus vīvitur. placet; pārē. nōn placet; quācumque vīs,† exī. (Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* XCI.15)

intrō (1-intr.) enter
mundus, **mundī** *m.* universe, world
quācumque (adv.) by whatever way
†**volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, —— be willing, want, wish; **vīs** = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic.*
exeō (**ex-** + **eō**) go out

37. The philosopher argues about the rationality of the fear of death.

quemadmodum fāmam extimuistī sine causā, sīc et illa,† quae numquam timērēs nisi fāma iussisset. (Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* XCI.20)

extimēscō, **extimēscere**, **extimuī**, —— be thoroughly afraid of, dread
†**illa** = things said about death and the afterlife

38. The philosopher makes a claim for the power of confidence.

nōn quia difficilia sunt nōn audēmus, sed quia nōn audēmus difficilia sunt.

(Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* CIV.26)

quia (conj.) because

39. Arguing with her slave, Clytaemnestra explains her own cure for anger.

et ferrum et ignis saepe medicīnae locō est. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 152)

ignis, **ignis**, **-ium** *f.* fire
medicīna, **medicīnae** *f.* medicine; treatment, cure

40. Eurybates reports the shouts of the Greeks as a storm overwhelms their ships during the homeward voyage from Troy.

nīl nōbile ausōs pontus atque undae ferent?†

ignāva fortēs fāta cōnsūment virōs? (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 517–18)

nōbilis, **nōbile** noble
pontus, **pontī** *m.* sea
unda, **undae** *f.* wave, water
†**ferō**, *here*, carry away, carry off
ignāvus, **-a**, **-um** lazy, sluggish; cowardly; ignoble
cōnsūmō, **cōnsūmere**, **cōnsūmpsī**, **cōnsūmptus** destroy, consume

41. An opinion uttered by the Chorus

numquam est ille miser cui facile est morī.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *HERCULES OETAEUS* 111)

42. A woman responds to a man who has just offered her his beloved brother.

"Quid? Tū," inquit illa, "dōnās mihi eum sine quō nōn potes vīvere, ex cuius ōsculō pendēs, quem sīc tū amās quemadmodum ego tē volō?"

(PETRONIUS, *SATYRICON* 127)

ōsculum, **ōsculī** *n.* (little) mouth
pendeō, **pendēre**, **pependī**, —— hang
volō, **velle**, **voluī**, —— love, like, be fond of

43. After the death of Pompey, one of his soldiers argues for accepting Caesar's victory.

. . . nōn barbara victōs

rēgna manent, nōn Armenium mihi saeva minātur

aut Scythicum fortūna iugum; sub iūra togātī

cīvis eō . . . (LUCAN, *BELLUM CĪVĪLE* IX.236–39)

barbarus, **-a**, **-um** foreign
rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* kingdom, realm
Armenius, **-a**, **-um** Armenian
saevus, **-a**, **-um** cruel, savage
minor (1-intr.) threaten (someone, dat.) with (something, acc.)
Scythicus, **-a**, **-um** Scythian
iugum, **iugī** *n.* yoke (of slavery)
togātus, **-a**, **-um** wearing a toga

44. Having finished a book of poems, the poet instructs his slave.

ī, puer, et cārō perfer leve mūnus amīcō
quī meruit nūgās prīmus habēre meās. (Martial IV.10.3–4)

perferō (**per-** + **ferō**) carry through, bring
mereō, **merēre**, **meruī**, **meritus** earn; deserve
nūgae, **nūgārum** *f. pl.* trifles, nuggets; nonsense
prīmus, **-a**, **-um** first

45. An ominous observation

Mūnera quī tibi dat locuplētī, Gaure, senīque,
sī sapis et sentīs, hoc tibi ait: "Morere." (Martial VIII.27)

locuples, **locuplētis** wealthy, rich
Gaurus, **Gaurī** *m.* Gaurus
senex, **senis** old
sapiō, **sapere**, **sapiī/sapīvī**, —— be intelligent
aiō (defective verb) sat; **ait** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*

46. The poet addresses a friend or lover.

Difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus es īdem:
nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē. (Martial XII.46)

iūcundus, **-a**, **-um** pleasing, delightful, agreeable

47. A rhetorical question uttered by a mournful mother who is no longer able to see the ghost of her son

ubi sunt quī acerbās mortium necessitātēs et ferrea iūra fātōrum et invictās nec ūllō maerōre mūtābilēs ināniūm lēgēs querēbantur umbrārum?

([Quintilian], *Dēclāmātiōnēs Maiōrēs* 10.8)

necessitās, **necessitātis** *f.* necessity, force
ferreus, **-a**, **-um** made of iron; rigid, unyielding
invictus, **-a**, **-um** unconquerable
ūllus, **-a**, **-um** any
maeror, **maerōris** *m.* lamentation
mūtābilis, **mūtābile** mutable, changeable
inānis, **ināne** empty; hollow; illusory
queror, **querī**, **questus sum** complain (of), protest; lament

48. An example of Cato the Elder's rhetoric when he expresses indignation at the beating of Roman citizens

quis hanc contumēliam, quis hoc imperium, quis hanc servitūtem ferre potest?

(Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* X.3.17)

contumēlia, **contumēliae** *f.* abuse

Longer Readings

1. Varro, *Rēs Rūsticae* I.1.4–5

Varro's version of a poetic invocation

. . . invocābō eōs, nec, ut Homērus et Ennius, Mūsās, sed duodecim deōs Cōnsentīs; neque tamen eōs urbānōs, quōrum imāginēs ad† forum aurātae stant, sex marēs et fēminae totidem, sed illōs XII deōs, quī maximē agricolārum ducēs sunt. prīmum, quī omnīs frūctōs agrī cultūrae caelō et terrā continent, Iovem et Tellūrem; itaque, quod† iī parentēs magnī dīcuntur, Iuppiter pater appellātur, Tellūs terra māter.

invocō (**in-** + **vocō**) call upon, invoke
Homērus, **Homērī** *m.* Homer
Ennius, **Enniī** *m.* Ennius
Mūsa, **Mūsae** *f.* Muse
duodecim (indeclinable numerical adj.) twelve
deī Cōnsentēs, **deōrum Cōnsentium** *m. pl.* (the) *dei Consentes* (the twelve major deities that oversee Rome)
urbānus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to the city
imāgō, **imāginis** *f.* image
†**ad**, *here*, at, near
aurātus, **-a**, **-um** gilded with gold, golden
stō, **stāre**, **stetī**, **stātūrus** stand
sex (indeclinable numerical adj.) six
mās, **maris**, **-ium** *m.* male
totidem (indeclinable numerical adj.) just as many
XII, 12
maximē (adv.) especially
dux, **ducis** *m.* leader; guide
prīmum (adv.) first
frūctus, **frūctī** *m.* fruit; return, reward
cultūra, **cultūrae** *f.* cultivation; **agrī cultūra**, agriculture
contineō (**con-** + **teneō**), **continēre**, **continuī**, **contentus** contain, enclose, encompass
Tellūs, **Tellūris** *f.* Tellus (the goddess Earth)
itaque (adv.) and thus, and therefore
†**quod**, *here* (conj.) because
parēns, **parentis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* parent
appellō (1-tr.) name, call

Marcus Terentius Varro (116–27 B.C.E.) was a follower of Pompey during the civil war between Pompey and Caesar, but he was forgiven by Caesar and avoided being killed in the same year as Cicero. Varro may have been the most prolific writer in ancient Rome. Only a few works have survived and those only in partial form.

The *Rēs Rūsticae* (Agricultural Matters) was written when Varro was in his eighties, perhaps with the aim of reviving interest in country life. The work, only a small part of which survives, treats in a practical way various topics concerning agriculture and animal husbandry.

2. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.290–94

As the Greeks overrun Troy, the ghost of Hector warns Aeneas.

hostis habet mūrōs; ruit altō ā culmine Troia.
sat patriae Priamōque datum: sī Pergama dextrā
dēfendī possent, etiam hāc dēfēnsa fuissent.
sacra suōsque tibī† commendat Troia Penātīs;
hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quaere . . .

mūrus, mūrī *m.* wall
ruō, ruere, ruī, —— rush; fall (with violence)
culmen, culminis *n.* summit, peak
sat (indeclinable subst.) enough
Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
Pergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama (citadel of Troy)
dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.,* right hand
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect, defend; **dēfēnsa fuissent = dēfēnsa essent**
sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred
†The final **-i** of **tibi** here scans *long.*
commendō (1-tr.) entrust (for preservation), give in trust
Penātēs, Penātium *m. pl.* Penates (guardian deities of a household or country)
comes, comitis *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade
quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesīvī, quaesītus search for, seek

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.376–81

An enraged and sarcastic Dido addresses Aeneas after she hears him claim that the gods have ordered him to leave her realm.

(heu furiīs incēnsa feror!): nunc augur Apollō,
nunc Lyciae sortēs, nunc et Iove missus ab ipsō
interpres dīvum† fert horrida iussa† per aurās.
scīlicet is superīs labor est, ea cūra quiētōs
sollicitat. neque tē teneō neque dicta refellō:
ī, sequere Ītaliam ventīs, pete rēgna per undās.

furiae, furiārum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy; (the) furies
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsus set on fire, (cause to) burn; inflame, provoke
augur, auguris *m.* prophet, augur
Lycius, -a, -um Lycian, of Lycia
sors, sortis, -ium *f.* lot, portion; oracle
interpres, interpretis *m.* or *f.* go-between, agent; interpreter
†**dīvum = dīvōrum**
horridus, -a, -um rough, wild; horrible, dreadful
†**iussum, iussī** *n.* order, command
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
scīlicet (adv.) *often used ironically,* of course, no doubt, obviously
superī, superōrum *m. pl.* gods above
labor, labōris *m.* work, labor
quiētus, -a, -um calm, serene
sollicitō (1-tr.) disturb, trouble, agitate
refellō, refellere, refellī, —— contradict, refute
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
unda, undae *f.* wave, water

4. Vergil, *Aeneid* VIII.51–57

Part of the advice given in a dream by the river god Tiberinus to a sleeping Aeneas

Arcades hīs ōrīs, genus ā Pallante profectum,
quī rēgem Ēvandrum comitēs, quī signa secūtī,
dēlēgēre locum et posuēre in montibus urbem
Pallantis proavī dē nōmine Pallantēum.
hī bellum adsiduē dūcunt† cum gente Latīnā; 55
hōs castrīs adhibē sociōs et foedera iunge.
ipse ego tē rīpīs et rēctō flūmine dūcam . . .

Arcades, **Arcadum** *m. pl.* Arcadians
ōra, **ōrae** *f.* shore
genus, **generis** *n.* race, stock
Pallās, **Pallantis** *m.* Pallas (a legendary Arcadian king)
proficīscor, **proficīscī**, **profectus sum** set forth; come forth, arise
Ēvander, **Ēvandrī** *m.* Evander (king of the Arcadians)
comes, **comitis** *m.* companion
signum, **signī** *n.* (military) standard
dēligō (**dē-** + **legō**), **dēligere**, **dēlēgī**, **dēlēctus** choose, select
mōns, **montis**, **-ium** *m.* mountain
proavus, **proavī** *m.* great-grandfather
nōmen, **nōminis** *n.* name
Pallantēum, **Pallantēī** *n.* Pallanteum (city founded by Evander on the future site of Rome)
adsiduē (adv.) continuously, incessantly
†**dūcō**, *here*, conduct
gēns, **gentis**, **-ium** *f.* nation, people
Latīnus, **-a**, **-um** Latin
castra, **castrōrum** *n. pl.* (military) camp
adhibeō (**ad-** + **habeō**), **adhibēre**, **adhibuī**, **adhibitus** bring; summon
foedus, **foederis** *n.* pact, agreement
iungō, **iungere**, **iūnxī**, **iūnctus** join; enter into
rīpa, **rīpae** *f.* bank
rēctus, **-a**, **-um** straight
flūmen, **flūminis** *n.* stream

5. Horace, *Sermōnēs* I.9.57–60

A pestering man from whom the poet cannot escape says that he intends to pursue a friendship with the poet's patron, the wealthy Maecenas.

mūneribus servōs corrumpam; nōn, hodiē sī
exclūsus fuerō, dēsistam; tempora quaeram,
occurram in triviīs, dēdūcam. nīl sine magnō
vīta labōre dedit mortālibus.

corrumpō, **corrumpere**, **corrūpī**, **corruptus** corrupt, bribe
hodiē (adv.) today
exclūdō, **exclūdere**, **exclūsī**, **exclūsus** deny entry, bar, exclude; **exclūsus fuerō** = **exclūsus erō**
dēsistō, **dēsistere**, **destitī**, —— cease, leave off
tempus, **temporis** *n*, time; opportunity
quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesiī/quaesīvī**, **quaesītus** search for, seek
occurrō, **occurrere**, **occurrī**, **occursum** run to meet
trivium, **triviī** *n*. crossroads
dēdūcō (**dē-** + **dūcō**) lead down; escort, accompany
labor, **labōris** *m*. work, labor; effort

Quintus Horātius Flaccus (65–8 B.C.E.) was born in Venusia in southern Italy, the son of a freedman. He was educated in Rome and in Athens. In Athens he joined with Brutus, Julius Caesar's assassin, and followed him in 42 to the battle of Philippi, where Brutus was killed. Horace returned to Rome, became acquainted with Vergil (who was to become his closest friend), and eventually came under the patronage of Maecenas. Horace wrote poetry in a dazzling variety of meters and tones. His works include satires, odes, and poetic epistles, in each of which Horace outdoes even Catullus in combining simplicity and sophistication. His mastery of Latin poetry written in Greek meter was never equaled (or even attempted) by another Roman writer. While his poems never attain the length of Vergilian epic, they cover an even wider variety of themes in addressing all aspects of public and private life. Like Vergil, whom Horace calls "half of my soul" (**animae dīmidium meae**), Horace achieved legendary status within his own lifetime.

The *Sermōnēs* (Conversations, but usually referred to as *Satires*) are Horace's first published work. Two separate books were published, the first in 35 and the second five years later. Written in dactylic hexameters, they are satiric sketches of a variety of human weaknesses. As the title *Sermōnēs* implies, the poems are conversational in tone and are marked by brevity, ellipsis, and brutal but clever frankness.

6. Horace, *Epistulae* I.11.25–30

The poet reflects on the restless discontent of men.

. . . nam sī ratiō et prūdentia cūrās,
nōn locus effūsī lātē maris arbiter aufert,
caelum nōn animum mūtant quī trāns mare currunt.
strēnua nōs exercet inertia: nāvibus atque
quadrīgīs petimus bene vīvere. quod petis hīc est,
est Ulubrīs, animus sī tē nōn dēficit aequus.

ratiō, **ratiōnis** *f.* account, reason; reasoning
prūdentia, **prūdentiae** *f.* good sense, judgment, prudence
effundō, **effundere**, **effūdī**, **effūsus** pour out; spread out
lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
arbiter, **arbitrī** *m.* spectator, onlooker; *here, as adj.,* commanding a view (of)
mūtō (1-tr.) change
trāns (prep. + acc.) across
currō, **currere**, **cucurrī**, **cursum** run, rush
strēnuus, **-a**, **-um** active, vigorous, energetic
exerceō, **exercēre**, **exercuī**, **exercitus** keep busy, occupy; train, exercise
inertia, **inertiae** *f.* inactivity, laziness
nāvis, **nāvis**, **-ium** *f.* ship
quadrīga, **quadrīgae** *f.* (four-horse) chariot
hīc (adv.) here
Ulubrae, **Ulubrārum** *f. pl.* Ulubrae (a small town in Latium)
dēficiō (**dē-** + **faciō**) let down, fail
aequus, **-a**, **-um** level, even; calm, tranquil

Written some time after 20 B.C.E., the *Epistulae* (*Letters*) are poems in dactylic hexameter in a conversational style. Much of our information about Horace's own life is derived from these *Epistulae*.

7. Ovid, *Amōrēs* I.9.1–8

The poet expands on a common motif.

Mīlitat omnis amāns, et habet sua castra Cupīdō;
Attice, crēde mihī,† mīlitat omnis amāns.
quae bellō est habilis Venerī quoque convenit aetās.
turpe senex mīles, turpe senīlis amor.
quōs petiēre ducēs animōs in mīlite fortī,
hōs petit in sociō bella† puella virō.
pervigilant ambō; terrā requiēscit uterque—
ille forēs dominae servat, at ille ducis.

mīlitō (1-intr.) be a soldier
amāns, amantis, -ium *m.* or *f.* lover
castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) camp
Atticus, Atticī *m.* Atticus
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus believe, trust (+ dat.)
†The final **-i** of **mihi** here scans *long*.
habilis, habile suitable, fit
conveniō (con- + veniō) fit (with), be suited (to)
aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful
senex, senis old
senīlis, senīle aged
dux, ducis *m.* leader
†**bellus, -a, -um** beautiful, pretty
pervigilō (1-intr.) remain awake all night, stand watch all night
ambō, ambae, ambō both; **ambō** = *masc. pl. nom.*
requiēscō, requiēscere, requiēvī, —— rest
uterque, utraque, utrumque each (of two)
forēs, forum *f. pl.* door(s)
domina, dominae *f.* mistress
servō (1-tr.) preserve, save; guard
at (adv.) but; on the other hand

The *Amōrēs* (Loves or Love Affairs) is a collection of forty-nine poems written in elegiac couplets, the meter established for Latin love poetry. The *Amōrēs*, one of Ovid's first published works, describes in frankly erotic, playful, and irreverent vignettes his love relations with a woman he names Corinna, but he also treats a wide variety of other subjects.

8. Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.9.1–6

The poet reports on the death of a poet.

Memnona sī māter, māter plōrāvit Achillem,
et tangunt magnās trīstia fāta deās,
flēbilis indignōs, Elegeiia, solve capillōs!
ā! nimis ex vērō nunc tibi nōmen erit:
ille tuī vātēs operis, tua fāma, Tibullus
ardet in extructō, corpus ināne, rogō.

Memnōn, Memnonis *m.* Memnon (king of the Ethiopians, ally of the Trojans, killed at Troy by Achilles); **Memnona** = *acc. sing.*
plōrō (1-tr.) weep for
Achillēs, Achillis *m.* Achilles
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus touch, move, affect
trīstis, trīste sad, mournful, bitter
flēbilis, flēbile weeping, tearful
indignus, -a, -um unworthy; unbecoming
Elegīa, Elegīae *f.* Elegy (goddess of elegiac poetry); **Elegeiia = Elegīa**
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen
capillus, capillī *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
ā (interj.) alas! ah!
nimis (adv.) too, excessively
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* prophet; bard, poet
opus, operis *n.* work
Tibullus, Tibullī *m.* Tibullus (an elegiac poet)
ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn
ex(s)truō, ex(s)truere, ex(s)trūxī, ex(s)tructus heap up, raise, construct
inānis, ināne lifeless
rogus, rogī *m.* funeral pyre

§83. About Meter I

Introduction to Quantitative Meter

The different meters of classical Latin poetry are all **quantitative**; that is, they are based on the alternation of long and short syllables according to particular patterns. The quantity of each syllable in a word is either **long** (–) or **short** (˘), terms (and marks) that indicate the *quantity* of time for which that syllable is to be held when the line is recited. As with whole and half notes in music, one long syllable is equivalent to two short syllables. When one marks the long and short syllables in lines of poetry, one is said to **scan** those lines, and both the process and product of scanning are called **scansion**.

Each vowel or diphthong represents a new syllable. The **quantity** (long or short) of the vowel or diphthong determines the length of the syllable. A syllable is long if it contains:

1. a long vowel or diphthong (**long by nature**)
2. a short vowel *followed by* two or more consonants *not necessarily in the same word* (**long by position**)[1]

If a syllable is **not** long, it is short.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The letter **x** counts as a double consonant.
2. Short vowels before consonantal **-i-** count long.[2]
3. The consonant groups **qu**, **gu**, and **su** count as *single* consonants.[3]
4. A syllable containing a short vowel followed by two consonants, a **mute** (**p**, **ph**, **b**, **t**, **th**, **d**, **c**, **g**) followed by a **liquid** (**l**, **r**), can be *either long or short*.[4] (This is sometimes called the **mute/liquid rule**.) For example, the first syllable of **patria** may be *long* or *short*.
5. When the consonant **f** is followed by a liquid, a preceding syllable containing a short vowel is almost always short but *may* be long.
6. The consonant **h** does *not* count toward making a syllable long by position. For example, in the phrase **hostis habet** the second syllable of **hostis** (**-tis**) is *short*.

Dactylic Hexameter and Elegiac Couplet

Many lines of Latin poetry are regularly divided into units called **feet**. Certain metrical systems employ the **dactyl** (< Greek *dactylos,* finger), a foot composed of one long syllable followed by two short syllables: – ˘ ˘. The dactyl can be replaced by a **spondee**, a foot composed of two long syllables: – –. The meter of epic poetry (Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey,* Lucretius's *Dē Rērum Nātūrā,* Vergil's *Aeneid,* etc.) is called **dactylic**

1. See Introduction, p. 8.

2. When a single consonantal **i** is written after another vowel, it in fact represents two **i**'s. For example, **Troia** = **Troiia**. The first **-i-** combines with the preceding vowel to create the diphthong **-oi** (pronounced as -oe), while the second is pronounced consonantally.

3. **g** and **s**, however, may also be followed by a vocalic **u**. For example: **arguit**, **suōs**.

4. When a mute is followed by a **nasal** (**m**, **n**), a preceding syllable containing a short vowel is almost always long but *may* be short.

hexameter (< Greek *hexametron,* composed of six measures) because each line contains six dactylic feet, with substitutions of spondees for dactyls permitted. The following scheme represents the dactylic hexameter line:

– ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – (—) | – x

1 2 3 4 5 6

OBSERVATIONS

1. The sixth (last) foot always consists of *two* syllables. The **x** marking the final syllable of the line is the symbol used for a syllable that may be *either* long *or* short. Such a syllable is called **anceps** (two-headed, two-fold; doubtful).

2. In the first four feet of a dactylic hexameter line, a dactyl may be replaced by a spondee. In the metrical scheme above, this substitution is indicated by the long mark above the two short marks. The dactyl in the fifth foot is rarely replaced by a spondee. When a dactylic hexameter line contains a spondee in the fifth foot, the line is called a **spondaic line**.

In scanning a line of poetry, a slash (|) is used to mark the divisions between the individual feet. For example:

(heu furi|īs in|cēnsa fe|ror!): nunc | augur A|pollō

nunc Lyci|ae sor|tēs, nunc | et Iove | missus ab | ipsō

OBSERVATION

In order to scan any line of Latin poetry, it is necessary to treat the line as one long word of many syllables. For example, in the first line, the final syllable of **feror** is long by position because the **-o-** is followed by **-r** and **n-**. Compare the length of **et** in the second line.

The meter of Roman elegiac poetry is called the **elegiac couplet**. It is composed of one line of dactylic hexameter in alternation with one line called **dactylic pentameter** (five feet), one foot of which is split into two halves. Catullus, Propertius, Ovid, and Martial all wrote poetry in this meter. The following scheme represents the elegiac couplet:

– ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – (—) | – x

1 2 3 4 5 6

– ⏑⏑ | – ⏑⏑ | – || – ⏑ ⏑ | – ⏑ ⏑ | x

1 2 $2\frac{1}{2}$ $3\frac{1}{2}$ $4\frac{1}{2}$ 5

magnī |saepe du|cēs, mag|nī ceci|dēre ty|rannī

et Thē|bae stete|rant || altaque |Troia fu|it.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The dactylic pentameter line is in fact made up of two segments of two and a half feet each. Each half of the line is also called a **hemiepes** (– ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ –). The double line in the middle of the pentameter line marks what is called a **caesura** (see below).

2. In the second half of the dactylic pentameter line no substitution of spondees for dactyls is regularly allowed.

3. In the elegiac couplet the pentameter line is always indented under the hexameter line.

Elision, Caesura, Diaeresis, and Hiatus

Elision (< **ēlīdō**, eliminate, omit) is the full or partial suppression of a final syllable of a word. It occurs in the scansion and reading of poetry under the following circumstances:

1. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or diphthong:

   (hae tibi e⁀runt ar⁀tēs), pā⁀cīque⁀im⁀pōnere mōrem

2. when a word ending in a vowel or diphthong is followed by a word beginning with **h-**:

   nunc more⁀re⁀ast dē⁀mē dī⁀vum pater atque⁀homi⁀num rēx

3. when a word ending in a vowel followed by **-m** is followed by a word beginning with a vowel, a diphthong, or **h-**:

   Dardani⁀ae, fui⁀mus Trō⁀es, fuit Īlium⁀et ingēns.

   dēfen⁀dī pos⁀sent, et⁀iam⁀hāc dē⁀fēnsa fu⁀issent.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The symbol ⁀ is used in scansion to mark the elision of a syllable.

2. When elision occurs, the elided syllable either is not pronounced or is pronounced slightly and quickly so that the *quality* is heard but the *quantity* is lost. The elided syllable is *not* scanned.

When **es** or **est** follows a word ending in a vowel or a word ending in a vowel followed by **-m**, the initial **e-** is dropped, and the rest of the word is joined to the preceding word. This is called **inverse elision** or **aphaeresis** (< Greek *aphairesis,* taking away). For example, **mea est** may be pronounced and written **meast**; **relictum est** may be pronounced and written **relictumst.** BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE INVERSE ELISION OR APHAERESIS WHEN IT APPEARS IN READINGS.

A **caesura** (< **caesūra**, cutting) is an internal pause in a line of poetry that occurs whenever *a word ends within a foot.* A double slash (//) is used to mark a caesura. For example:

magnī | saepe // du⁀cēs, // mag⁀nī // ceci⁀dēre // ty⁀rannī

When a word ends with a *long* syllable within a foot, the caesura is called **strong** (e.g., after **ducēs** and the second **magnī**). When a word ends with a *short* syllable within a foot, the caesura is called **weak** (e.g., after **saepe** and **cecidēre**). There can be no caesura between two words that are elided.

A **principal caesura** falls at a natural pause in the line (often indicated by punctuation). In many dactylic hexameter lines it occurs in the *third* foot and is *strong.* Also common is a principal caesura in the *second* or *fourth* foot, and frequenty both

second and fourth foot caesurae appear. When scanning a line, one usually marks only the principal caesura(e). For example:

magnī | saepe du|cēs, || mag|nī ceci|dēre ty|rannī

Dardani|ae, || fui|mus Trō|es, || fuit | Īlium et | ingēns.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The principal caesura in the first line occurs in the third foot and is strong. It corresponds to a sense pause as well. The second line has two caesurae, both strong, in the second and fourth feet, and these pauses also reinforce sense.
2. The caesura in the pentameter line of an elegiac couplet regularly falls after two and a half feet.
3. In choosing a principal caesura (or principal caesurae) for a given line, one should favor a caesura that reinforces the sense or grammatical structure of the line.

A **diaeresis** (< Greek *diairesis,* division) is also a pause within a line, but it occurs *at the end of* and not within a metrical foot. When the *end of a word and the end of a foot coincide,* the resulting pause is called a diaeresis. A diaeresis is marked by a triple slash (|||). For example:

quid struit? ||| aut quā ||| spē ini|mīcā in ||| gente mo|rātur

When scanning a line, one usually marks a diaeresis *only* if it is a true sense pause. In the line just scanned, only the diaeresis after **struit** would ordinarily be marked.

A **hiatus** (< **hiātus**, gaping) occurs *when conditions for elision exist but elision does not occur.* For example:

quid struit? ||| aut quā | spē ini|mīcā in | gente mo|rātur

A hiatus is marked by a wavy line (≀).

OBSERVATIONS

1. Hiatus occurs between **spē** and **inimīcā**.
2. Hiatus is rare in classical Latin poetry, but it most often occurs when the syllable not elided is an interjection (**heu**, **ō**, etc.) or is at the principal caesura (as in the line above).

Guidelines for Reading Latin Poetry

Romans did not read silently to themselves under any circumstances. All Latin poetry—indeed, all Latin literature—was written to be read out loud. Learning to read Latin poetry aloud with comparative ease not only enhances the aesthetic appreciation of that poetry but also aids comprehension.

1. Read all passages of poetry aloud, slowly at first, paying attention to long and short syllables.
2. Focus on making elisions and word accent. Allow the meter to assert itself.
3. Pause slightly at the principal caesura (or caesurae). The caesural breaks help reinforce the meter and often also clarify ambiguities of meaning.

While the word order in poetry is sometimes similar to that of prose, more often the demands of meter, the importance of line composition, and the extreme economy of poetic expression result in word orders that are different from those seen in prose. Certain observations about word order in dactylic hexameter and dactylic pentameter lines may be made:

1. Individual words are placed for maximum effect and emphasis even if they stand far apart from modifiers.
2. Words that are closely related (subject and verb, noun and adjective, etc.) are often placed at either end of the hexameter line.
3. A caesural pause often signals the end of a phrase or word group.
4. In both hexameter and pentameter lines, a word ending at the caesura often goes with a word at the end of the line.

☛ Drill 83, page 359, may now be done.

CHAPTER IX

Vocabulary

annus, annī *m.* year
➤ **iussum, iussī** *n.* order, command

➤ **nēmō, nēminis** *m.* or *f.* no one
nox, noctis, -ium *f.* night
tempus, temporis *n.* time

➤ **cōnsulātus, cōnsulātūs** *m.* consulship
➤ **domus, domūs** *f.* house, home
exercitus, exercitūs *m.* army
➤ **manus, manūs** *f.* hand; band, troop
➤ **mōtus, mōtūs** *m.* motion, movement; disturbance
➤ **senātus, senātūs** *m.* senate

➤ **aciēs, aciēī** *f.* sharp edge; keenness; battle line
➤ **diēs, diēī** *m.* or *f.* day
➤ **fidēs, fideī** *f.* faith, trust; trustworthiness; loyalty
➤ **rēs, reī** *f.* thing; property; matter, affair; situation
➤ **rēs gestae, rērum gestārum** *f. pl.* accomplishments; history
➤ **rēs novae, rērum novārum** *f. pl.* revolution
➤ **rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae** *f.* republic
speciēs, *speciēī[1] *f.* appearance, aspect

➤ **hortor** (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort
➤ **imperō** (1-intr.) give an order (to); order, command (+ dat.)
➤ **parō** (1-tr.) prepare (for); get, obtain

➤ **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus** warn; remind; advise

➤ **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus** push, drive (off)
➤ **quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesīvī, quaesītus** search for, seek, ask (for)

pūblicus, -a, -um public

alius, alia, aliud other, another (§86)
alter, altera, alterum the other (of two) (§86)
➤ **neuter, neutra, neutrum** neither (of two) (§86)
nūllus, -a, -um not any, no (§86)
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only (§86)
tōtus, -a, -um whole, entire; all (§86)
ūllus, -a, -um any (§86)
ūnus, -a, -um one; only (§86)
➤ **uter, utra, utrum** (interrog. adj.) which (of two) (§86)

➤ **aliter** (adv.) otherwise, in another way
➤ **iam** (adv.) (by) now; (by) then, already; presently
nē (conj.) *introduces negative Purpose clause,* in order that . . . not (§87); *introduces negative Indirect Command,* that . . . not (§88)
ob (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of
➤ **quam ob rem** (rel. or interrog. adv.) on account of which thing; therefore; why
➤ **quārē** (rel. or interrog. adv.) because of which thing; therefore; why
quō (rel. adv.) to where, whither
ubi (rel. adv.) where
unde (rel. adv.) from where, whence
ut (conj.) *introduces Purpose clause,* in order that (§87); *introduces Indirect Command,* that (§88)

1. The asterisk before the genitive singular of **speciēs** indicates that the form does not occur in the Latin that survives.

Vocabulary Notes

➤ The ablative singular of **iussum, iussī** *n.* is **iussū**, as if it were formed from a fourth-declension noun ***iussus, *iussūs** *m.* The ablative appears most frequently with a possessive adjective or a Subjective Genitive. Although **iussū** is an Ablative of Cause, it is usually translated with the English words "at" or "by."

Mīlitēs meō iussū ad prōvinciam īvērunt.	The soldiers went to the province at my command.
Iussū Caesaris incolae līberābuntur.	By the order of Caesar the inhabitants will be freed.

➤ **nēmō, nēminis** *m.* or *f.* occurs in the singular only. Although the genitive and ablative occasionally appear, usually forms of **nūllus** (**nūllīus**, **nūllō**, or **nūllā**) replace the forms of **nēmō**. **nēmō** is formed by the addition of the negative particle **nē-** to the noun **homō**.

➤ **cōnsulātus, cōnsulātūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-ātus** to the stem of the noun **cōnsul**. It means the "office of consul" or the "consulship."

➤ The noun **domus** appears here as a fourth-declension noun (**domus, domūs** *f.*), while it appeared in Chapter VI as a second-declension noun (**domus, domī** *f.*). It is declined in *both* declensions. However, some forms are more common than others. The declension of **domus** that follows lists the less common forms in parentheses.

	Sing.	*Pl.*
Nom./Voc.	**domus**	**domūs**
Gen.	**domūs (domī)**	**domōrum/domuum**
Dat.	**domuī (domō)**	**domibus**
Acc.	**domum**	**domūs/domōs**
Abl.	**domō (domū)**	**domibus**

There are only fourth-declension forms of the nominative, dative, and ablative plural. Second- and fourth-declension genitive and accusative plural forms are equally common. The locative is always **domī**.

➤ **manus, manūs** *f.* has two distinct meanings: "hand" (of a human) or an "armed force" of any size (band, troop).

➤ **mōtus, mōtūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tus** to a stem of the verb **moveō**. It means "motion" or "movement," or, more concretely, the result of motion or movement, "disturbance."

➤ **senātus, senātūs** *m.*, "senate," is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-ātus** to the stem of the substantive **senex** (old man). The **senātus** was the highest deliberating body in Rome. One became a senator by winning election to one of the higher political offices (quaestorship, praetorship, consulship). All senators were members of the senate for life unless formally removed. Sometimes the genitive singular form **senātī** appears, as if **senātus** were a second-declension noun.

➤ **aciēs, aciēī** *f.* means the "sharp edge" of a weapon and, by extension, the sharp edge or "keenness" of one's eyes or "acuity" of one's mind. It is also used of a "battle line" or "battle formation" of troops.

➤ **diēs, diēī** is regularly masculine, but when **diēs** refers to a festival day, a day appointed for a business transaction, or the date of a letter, it is usually feminine.

➤ **fidēs, fideī** *f.* can be felt toward others or recognized by others in oneself. One has "trust" or "faith" in a person or a thing expressed by a Dative of Reference, less often an Objective Genitive. One's "trustworthiness" inspires "confidence" in others, and one's "loyalty" is a sense of duty toward other persons or things.

Semper virō bonō fidem habēmus.
We always have trust for (in) a good man.
Sociī fidem Rōmānam atque arma laudābant.
The allies were praising Roman trustworthiness and weapons.
Superātī in fidē maneant.
Let the conquered men remain in loyalty.

➤ Like its most common English translation, "thing," **rēs, reī** *f.* is a noun that may convey a wide range of abstract and concrete ideas. The vocabulary entry for this word offers five common meanings: 1. "thing," something that exists or occurs; 2. "property" or "wealth," something that belongs to a person or family; 3. "matter" or "affair," something that occupies one's attention; 4. "activity" or "practice" in a particular field; and 5. "situation," the state of affairs at a particular moment. **rēs** appears in several Latin idioms, including: **rēs gestae** (things having been accomplished), "accomplishments," "history"; **rēs novae** (new things), "revolution"; and **rēs pūblica**, "republic" (cf. English commonwealth).

➤ **hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum** is a transitive verb that may introduce an Indirect Command (§88).

Caesar suōs hortātus est nē timērent.	**Caesar urged his own men that they not fear.**

➤ **imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum** is an intransitive verb that may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb (§82). It may also introduce an Indirect Command (§88).

Caesar suīs imperāvit nē fugerent.	Caesar commanded his own men that they not flee.

➤ **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātus** means "prepare (for)"; "get," "obtain." In addition to a wide variety of direct objects, **parō** may appear with an Object Infinitive.

Catilīna Cicerōnī īnsidiās parābat.	Catiline was preparing treachery for Cicero.
Caesar bellum parat.	Caesar prepares for war.
Amīcōs facile parābit.	She will easily get friends.
Quis pācem parāre nōn optet?	Who would not desire to obtain peace?

➤ **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus** may introduce an Indirect Command (§88). Compounds of **moneō** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **MONEŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

➤ **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus** has a reduplicated third principal part (cf. **dō**).

➤ **quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesīvī, quaesītus** may introduce an Indirect Command (§88). **quaerō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **quaesi-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**quaesīstī, quaesīstis**). The person from whom something is sought is expressed by **ā/ab** + ablative (cf. **petō**).

Marcus ā mē quaesīvit nē frātrem ad bellum mitterem.
Marcus asked from me that I not send (his) brother to war.
Marcus asked me not to send (his) brother to war.

➤ **neuter, neutra, neutrum** is an adjective formed by the addition of the negative particle **nē-** to **uter**. It thus means "neither (of two)." A noun that is neuter is *neither* masculine *nor* feminine.

➤ **uter, utra, utrum** is an interrogative adjective that means "which (of two)?" It assumes that there are only two possible answers to the question it poses. **uter** is often used substantively.

In utrō oppidō vīvis?	In which town (of two [towns]) do you live?
Utrum vidēre optās?	Which (man or thing) (of two) do you desire to see?

➤ **aliter** is an irregular adverb formed from the adjective **alius, alia, aliud**.

➤ **iam** is an adverb that may indicate a variety of moments in time depending on the tense of the verb and the context in which it appears. It may mean "now" as opposed to any other moment in time. It may mark the completion of an action before the time indicated by the verb: "(by) now" with a present time verb, "(by) then" or "already" with a past time verb. When **iam** appears with a future tense, it often emphasizes the time immediately approaching and may be translated "presently."

Accipe iam haec dōna.	Receive now these gifts.
Hic iam mihi hostis est.	This man is (by) now an enemy to me.
Carmen iam perfēcerat.	By then (already) he had completed (his) poem.
Iam veniet meus amīcus.	My friend will come presently.

When **iam** follows any negation, translations such as "no longer," "not any longer" may be used.

Nōn iam illī pācem cupiunt.	No longer (Not any longer) do those men desire peace.

➤ The **quam** of the adverb **quam ob rem** may be either a relative adjective (§79)—"on account of which thing," "therefore"—or an interrogative adjective (§81), "on account of which thing," "why." **quam ob rem** may be written as a single word (**quamobrem**).

➤ The **quā** of the adverb **quārē** may be either a relative adjective (§79)—"because of which thing," "therefore,"—or an interrogative adjective (§81), "because of which thing," "why." **quārē** was originally an Ablative of Cause. **quārē** may be written as two words (**quā rē**).

	Derivatives	Cognates
alius	**ali**as; **ali**en; hid**al**go	**al**arm; **al**ligator; **el**se; **al**legory
alter	alter; **alter**nate; sub**altern**	para**ll**ax
diēs	**di**urnal; **jour**nal	**Ju**piter; Zeus
fidēs	**fe**alty; faith; in**fid**el	con**fide**; de**fy**; a**bide**
manus	**man**acle; **man**age; **manu**script; **main**tain; **man**euver	e**mancipate**; **man**date; comm**mand**
parō	pre**pare**; **par**ade; ap**par**atus	**par**ent
pellō	pulse; push; re**pel**; com**pel**	**po**lish; an**vil**; **fel**t
rēs	**re**public; **re**ify; re; **re**al	
speciēs	species; e**spec**ial	e**spy**; **spec**imen; **spec**tacle; **skep**tic; epi**scop**al; tele**scope**
tempus	**temp**orary; **temp**est	

§84. Noun Morphology: Fourth Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE FOURTH DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS **-ŪS**.

Gender Note: Most nouns of the fourth declension are masculine, some are feminine, and a very few are neuter.

Case Endings of the Fourth Declension: Masculine/Feminine

	Singular	*Plural*
Nominative/Vocative	**-us**	**-ūs**
Genitive	**-ūs**	**-uum**
Dative	**-uī/-ū**	**-ibus**
Accusative	**-um**	**-ūs**
Ablative	**-ū**	**-ibus**

ALL MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THESE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a masculine/feminine noun of the fourth declension, add these endings to the stem. For example:

mōtus, **mōtūs** *m*. motion, movement; disturbance
stem = **mōt-**

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	mōt**us**	mōt**ūs**
Gen.	mōt**ūs**	mōt**uum**
Dat.	mōt**uī**/mōt**ū**	mōt**ibus**
Acc.	mōt**um**	mōt**ūs**
Abl.	mōt**ū**	mōt**ibus**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Certain endings for masculine/feminine nouns of the fourth declension are used to mark more than one case: **-ūs** = genitive singular, nominative/vocative plural, and accusative plural; **-ibus** = dative plural and ablative plural.

2. The dative singular ending is regularly **-uī**, but the archaic form **-ū** is often found.[2]

3. There are only three neuter nouns of the fourth declension in common use: **cornū** (horn), **genū** (knee), and **verū** ([broiling] spit). The endings for these neuter nouns differ slightly from the endings of the masculine/feminine fourth-declension nouns:

	Singular	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	**-ū**	**-ua**
Gen.	**-ūs**	**-uum**
Dat.	**-ū**	**-ibus**
Acc.	**-ū**	**-ua**
Abl.	**-ū**	**-ibus**

Because there are only three nouns in regular use, the neuter endings of the fourth declension need not be memorized immediately.

2. The archaic dative and ablative plural ending **-ubus** also occurs occasionally.

§85. Noun Morphology: Fifth Declension

A NOUN BELONGS TO THE FIFTH DECLENSION IF ITS GENITIVE SINGULAR ENDING IS **-EĪ** OR **-ĒĪ**.

Gender Note: Most nouns of the fifth declension are feminine, one is sometimes masculine. There are no neuter fifth-declension nouns.

Case Endings of the Fifth Declension

	Singular	*Plural*
Nominative/Vocative	**-ēs**	**-ēs**
Genitive	**-eī/-ēī**	**-ērum**
Dative	**-eī/-ēī**	**-ēbus**
Accusative	**-em**	**-ēs**
Ablative	**-ē**	**-ēbus**

ALL NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION USE THESE ENDINGS. MEMORIZE THESE ENDINGS THOROUGHLY, PROCEEDING FIRST DOWN THE SINGULAR COLUMN AND THEN DOWN THE PLURAL COLUMN. BE PREPARED TO RECITE THESE ENDINGS QUICKLY.

To decline a noun of the fifth declension, add these endings to the stem. When the stem ends in a vowel, use the ending **-ēī** in the genitive and dative singular. For example:

	rēs, **reī** *f.* thing stem = **r-**	**diēs**, **diēī** *m.* or *f.* day stem = **di-**
	Singular	*Singular*
Nom./Voc.	rēs	diēs
Gen.	reī	diēī
Dat.	reī	diēī
Acc.	rem	diem
Abl.	rē	diē
	Plural	*Plural*
Nom./Voc.	rēs	diēs
Gen.	rērum	diērum
Dat.	rēbus	diēbus
Acc.	rēs	diēs
Abl.	rēbus	diēbus

OBSERVATION

Certain endings for nouns of the fifth declension are used to mark more than one case: **-ēs** = nominative/vocative singular, nominative/vocative plural, and accusative plural; **-eī** or **-ēī** = genitive singular and dative singular; **-ēbus** = dative plural and ablative plural.

☛ DRILL 84–85, PAGE 363, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§86. Nine Irregular Adjectives

There are nine first-second-declension adjectives that have slight irregularities. These adjectives are:

alius, **alia**, **aliud** other, another
alter, **altera**, **alterum** the other (of two)
neuter, **neutra**, **neutrum** neither (of two)
nūllus, **-a**, **-um** not any, no
sōlus, **-a**, **-um** alone, only
tōtus, **-a**, **-um** whole, entire; all
ūllus, **-a**, **-um** any
ūnus, **-a**, **-um** one; only
uter, **utra**, **utrum** which (of two)

The declension of these adjectives differs from ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in the *genitive and dative singular only*. For example:

Nom.	**tōtus**	**tōta**	**tōtum**
Gen.	**tōtīus**	**tōtīus**	**tōtīus**
Dat.	**tōtī**	**tōtī**	**tōtī**
Acc.	**tōtum**	**tōtam**	**tōtum**
Abl.	**tōtō**	**tōtā**	**tōtō**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The genitive and dative singular endings used for these adjectives are identical with those used for the intensive adjective **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum** and the demonstrative pronouns/adjectives **iste**, **ista**, **istud** and **ille**, **illa**, **illud**.

2. **Alius**, **alia**, **aliud** also differs from ordinary first-second-declension adjectives in its neuter singular nominative and accusative form (**aliud**). (Cf. **istud**, **illud**.)

3. The genitive singular form **alterīus** is regularly used for both **alius** and **alter**.

alius, **alia**, **aliud** and **alter**, **altera**, **alterum** are often used in parallel constructions with two forms of these words in the same case. Special translations are required. For example:

***Aliam* pecūniā, *aliam* cīvitāte dōnāvimus.**
We rewarded *one woman* with money, *another woman* with citizenship.
***Aliī* cīvēs bellum gerēbant, *aliī* timōre fugiēbant.**
Some citizens were waging war, *others* were fleeing because of fear.
***Alter* in agrō labōrat, *alter* in urbe.**
(The) one man (of two) works in the field, *the other* (works) in the city.
***Alterī* rūs fugiunt, *alterī* Rōmae manent.**
(The) one group (of two) is fleeing to the countryside, *the other group* remains in the city.

OBSERVATION

Singular forms of **alius** arranged in parallel constructions should be translated "one . . . another . . ." Plural forms so arranged should be translated "some . . . other(s) . . ." Singular forms of **alter** should be translated "(the) one . . . the other . . ." Plural forms should be translated "(the) one group . . . the other group . . ."

When two forms of **alius** or **alter** in *different* cases are used in the same sentence, a comparison is implied, and the first part of the comparison must be supplied in an English translation.

Alius aliud dīxit.
One man said one thing, another man said another thing.
Aliōs servōs aliō in agrō vīdērunt.
They saw some slaves in one field, they saw other slaves in another field.
Alter alterum vincere cōnātur.
(The) one man tries to conquer the one man, the other the other.

☛ Drill 86, page 373, may now be done.

§87. Purpose Clauses and the Sequence of Tenses

Sometimes the precise relation between the meanings of two sentences is implied but not expressed. For example:

I like him. He's nice.

Although it is likely that the second sentence (He's nice) is stating the reason or cause for the first sentence (I like him), this causal relation *is not expressed*. When independent clauses or sentences are *placed next to each other*, with neither being subordinated to the other, such an arrangement is called **parataxis** (< Greek *parataxis,* placing beside) or **coordination**. The principal feature of **paratactic** writing is the *absence of subordination.*

When the precise relation between the meanings of two independent sentences *is expressed,* a complex sentence is created with a main clause and a subordinate clause. For example:

I like him *because he is nice.*

Such complex sentences are said to exhibit **hypotaxis** (< Greek *hypotaxis,* placing under) or **subordination**. Many types of subordinate clauses in Latin began as independent sentences in paratactic arrangement with other sentences. When one idea was subordinated to another, subordinating conjunctions were added, and two simple sentences arranged paratactically were joined to make one complex **hypotactic** sentence. For example:

Hunc eī librum dōnō. Rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegat.
I am giving him this book. Let him understand the history of the Romans.

The second of these two sentences, containing a Jussive subjunctive, appears to express the aim, intention, or *purpose* for the action of the first sentence. This relation was eventually expressed in a particular kind of subordinate clause called a **Purpose clause**.

Main Clause — Purpose Clause
Hunc eī librum dōnō *ut rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegat*.
I am giving him this book *in order that he may understand the history of the Romans.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subordinate clause italicized in the Latin sentence above is a Purpose clause.

2. Purpose clauses in Latin are introduced by the conjunctions **ut** (in order that) or **nē** (in order that . . . not).

3. The subjunctive verb in a Purpose clause was in origin a Jussive subjunctive. Also, the action of the verb in a Purpose clause is only aimed at or intended. As always, nonfactual ideas are expressed in the subjunctive mood in Latin.

4. A Purpose clause is an **adverbial clause** because the clause *modifies the action of the main verb as a whole:* it indicates the purpose for which the subject performs the action of the main clause.

The verb in the main clause in the sentence above—**dōnō**, the **main verb**—is in the present tense, but sentences containing Purpose clauses may have main verbs in any tense. For example:

Hunc eī librum dōnāveram *ut rēs gestās Rōmānōrum intellegeret*.
I had given him this book *in order that he might understand the history of the Romans.*

The particular tense of the subjunctive verb in any Purpose clause—and in most other subordinate clauses in Latin that require verbs in the subjunctive mood—is determined by fixed rules called the **sequence of tenses**. These rules are represented by the following chart:

	Verb in Main Clause	*Verb in Subordinate Clause*
	Indicative	**Subjunctive**
PRIMARY (present or future time)	Present Future Perfect (present completed) Future Perfect	Present Perfect
SECONDARY (past time)	Imperfect Perfect (past simple) Pluperfect	Imperfect Pluperfect

MEMORIZE THIS CHART.

The tenses of the indicative in the box at the upper left all refer to present or future time and are called **primary tenses**. When any of these tenses appears as the verb in a main clause, the verb in a subordinate clause requiring the subjunctive mood *must be either the present or the perfect subjunctive,* as is represented by the box at the upper right. These tenses of the subjunctive have no absolute time value of their own: they have only **relative time**.

The *present* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb or *subsequent* to the main verb.

The *perfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action is that is *prior* to the main verb.

When a complex sentence includes a main verb in a primary tense and a subordinate verb in either the present or perfect subjunctive, the subordinate verb is said to be following **primary sequence**.

The tenses of the indicative in the box at the lower left all refer to past time and are called **secondary tenses**. When any of these tenses appears as the verb in a main clause, the verb in a subordinate clause requiring the subjunctive mood *must be either the imperfect or the pluperfect subjunctive,* as is represented by the box at the lower right. These tenses of the subjunctive have no absolute time value of their own: they have only **relative time**.

The *imperfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb or *subsequent* to the main verb.

The *pluperfect* subjunctive is used to represent an action that is *prior* to the main verb.

When a complex sentence includes a main verb in a secondary tense and a subordinate verb in either the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, the subordinate verb is said to be following **secondary sequence**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect indicative may be a primary tense or a secondary tense, depending on whether it expresses present time (with completed aspect) or past time (with simple aspect).
2. Almost all subordinate clauses that require subjunctive verbs follow the sequence of tenses.[3]

Since the verb in every Purpose clause represents an action that may occur at a time subsequent to (after) the verb in the main clause, the only possible tenses of the subjunctive that can be used for Purpose clauses are the present subjunctive in primary sequence and the imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence.[4]

When a Purpose clause occurs in primary sequence and its verb is therefore in the present subjunctive, it is translated: "in order that . . . *may*." When a Purpose clause occurs in secondary sequence and its verb is in the imperfect subjunctive, it is translated: "in order that . . . *might*." For example:

Gladium capiō *ut pugnem*. (primary sequence)
I am taking up a sword *in order that I* ***may*** *fight.*
Gladium capiēbam *ut pugnārem*. (secondary sequence)
I was taking up a sword *in order that I* ***might*** *fight.*

OBSERVATION

The syntax of the verb **pugnem** is **present subjunctive, Purpose clause, primary sequence**. The syntax of the verb **pugnārem** is **imperfect subjunctive, Purpose clause, secondary sequence**.

Since the perfect indicative may be a primary tense *or* a secondary tense, the tense of the subjunctive verb in the Purpose clause indicates whether a main verb in the perfect tense is present time (with completed aspect) or past time (with simple aspect). For example:

3. Although conditional sentences are complex sentences containing main clauses (apodoses) and subordinate clauses (protases), the protases *do not follow* the rules of sequence of tenses.

4. The remaining subjunctive tenses that appear on the sequence of tenses chart (perfect and pluperfect) are used in many other subordinate clauses to represent actions that occurred prior to the main verb, but they are not used in Purpose clauses.

Gladium *cēpī* ut *pugnem*. (primary sequence: perfect must be present completed)
I have taken up a sword in order that *I may fight.*
Gladium *cēpī* ut *pugnārem*. (secondary sequence: perfect must be past simple)
I took up a sword in order that *I might fight.*

Sometimes a verb in the subjunctive introduces a purpose clause (or other subordinate clause with a verb in the subjunctive). When a subjunctive verb expresses an action in present or future time, it introduces primary sequence. When a subjunctive verb expresses an action in past time, it introduces secondary sequence. For example:

Pres. Subjunc. — Primary Sequence

Sī hostis accēdat, arma *capiāmus* ut *pugnēmus*.
If an enemy should approach, *we would take up* arms in order that *we may fight.*

Pluperf. Subjunc. — Secondary Sequence

Sī hostis *accessisset* ut *pugnāret*, arma cēpissēmus.
If an enemy *had approached* in order that *he might fight,* we would have taken up arms.

Summary of the Rules of Sequence of Tenses

1. If the verb in the main clause is primary, the subjunctive verb in a subordinate clause must be primary. The subjunctive verb has only relative time.
   A present subjunctive represents an action that is simultaneous with or subsequent to the main verb.
   A perfect subjunctive represents an action that is prior to the main verb.
2. If the verb in the main clause is secondary, the subjunctive verb in a subordinate clause must be secondary. The subjunctive verb has only relative time.
   An imperfect subjunctive represents an action that is simultaneous with or subsequent to the main verb.
   A pluperfect subjunctive represents an action that is prior to the main verb.

☛ Drill 87, page 377, may now be done.

§88. Indirect Commands

A direct command may be expressed in Latin by the imperative mood or a Jussive subjunctive. For example:

Audīte dicta rēgis! (Imperative)
Listen to (pl.) the words of the king!
Nē audiātis dicta illīus rēgis malī! (Jussive)
Do not (pl.) listen to the words of that evil king!

In each of these sentences the command is expressed directly to a group in the second person plural.

When a command is *reported indirectly* as part of a complex sentence, the command is subordinated to a main verb, and the resulting subordinate clause is called an **Indirect Command**. The verb of an Indirect Command is in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence. For example:

Petō *ut dicta rēgis audiātis*.
I ask *that you (pl.) listen to the words of the king.*
I ask *you (pl.) to listen to the words of the king.*
Petimus *nē dicta illīus rēgis malī audiātis*.
We ask *that you (pl.) not listen to the words of that evil king.*
We ask *you (pl.) not to listen to the words of that evil king.*
Ā dīs petīvī *nē meus fīlius interficerētur*.
I asked from the gods *that my son not be killed.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subordinate clauses italicized in the sentences above are all Indirect Commands. Indirect Commands in Latin are introduced by the conjunctions **ut** (that) or **nē** (that . . . not).

2. The subjunctive verb in an Indirect Command was in origin a Jussive subjunctive. Also, the action of the verb in an Indirect Command is only ordered. As always, nonfactual ideas are expressed in the subjunctive mood in Latin.

3. Indirect Commands may be distinguished from Purpose clauses by the verbs that introduce them. Verbs that mean "beg," "ask," "advise," "urge," "command," "order," etc. regularly introduce Indirect Commands. Verbs in Chapters I–IX that introduce Indirect Commands are **hortor**, **imperō**, **moneō**, **petō**, and **quaerō**. **Iubeō**, which regularly takes an Object Infinitive (with a subject in the accusative), less frequently introduces Indirect Command. Other verbs that introduce Indirect Commands are identified in the vocabulary notes.

4. Since the verb in every Indirect Command represents an action that may occur at a time subsequent to (after) the verb in the main clause, the only possible tenses of the subjunctive that can be used in Indirect Commands are the present subjunctive in primary sequence and the imperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence.

5. An Indirect Command is regularly translated using the English present subjunctive.[5] There is no difference between the translation of an Indirect Command in primary sequence and the translation of one in secondary sequence. An Indirect Command may also be translated using an English infinitive, as in the second translations for the first two sentences above.

6. An Indirect Command is a **noun clause** because the clause *functions as the direct object (less frequently the subject) of the main verb*: it indicates *what* is asked for, begged, advised, ordered, etc. Contrast Purpose clauses, which are *adverbial* clauses.

☛ Drill 87–88, page 383, may now be done.

5. The English present subjunctive is the infinitive form of the verb with the word "to" omitted (e.g., "work," "complete," "do"). For example: "I advised the dog that he not *cross* the street when there was heavy traffic."

§89. Relative Clauses of Purpose

Purpose clauses are regularly introduced by the conjunctions **ut** (in order that) or **nē** (in order that . . . not) (§87). When a Purpose clause is instead introduced by a relative pronoun or adverb, it is called a **Relative Clause of Purpose**. For example:

Rēgīna mīlitēs in prōvinciam mittet *quī incolās terreant*.
The queen soldiers (d.o.) into the province will send *who the inhabitants (d.o.) may frighten.*
The queen will send soldiers into the province *who may frighten the inhabitants.*
The queen will send soldiers into the province *in order that they may frighten the inhabitants.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. A relative pronoun regularly replaces **ut** in introducing a Purpose clause only when there is a clear antecedent in the main clause. The antecedent for **quī** in the sentence above is **mīlitēs**.

2. A Purpose clause introduced by **ut** (or **nē**) states the broad purpose for which someone performs the action of the main verb. By contrast, a Purpose clause introduced by a relative word states the specific use that is to be made of the antecedent.

3. When a main clause contains a verb that involves motion (**eō**, **mittō**, **veniō**, etc.), a Relative Clause of Purpose often follows.

4. In the sentence above the third English translation (in order that they may . . .) is to be preferred because it most clearly indicates the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.

5. In the sentence above the syntax of **terreant** is **present subjunctive**, **Relative Clause of Purpose**, **primary sequence**.

Certain idiomatic expressions include a Relative Clause of Purpose. For example:

Haec habuī quae dē amīcitiā dīcerem.
I had these things that about friendship I might say.
I had these things to say about friendship.
Nīl habeō quod agam.
I have nothing that I may do.
I have nothing to do.

OBSERVATION

In such expressions English translations with infinitives expressing purpose are to be preferred.

Certain relative adverbs (**ubi**, where; **unde**, whence, from where; **quō**, whither, to where) may also introduce Relative Clauses of Purpose. For example:

Rōmam vēneram *ubi* auxilium ab amīcīs *peterem*.
To Rome I had come *where* aid (d.o.) from friends *I might seek.*
I had come to Rome *where I might seek* aid from friends.
I had come to Rome *in order that there I might seek* aid from friends.

Eāmus *quō* laetī *sīmus*.
Let us go *to where we may be* happy.
Let us go *(to a place) where we may be* happy.
Let us go *where we may be* happy.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence **Rōmam** is the antecedent for the relative adverb **ubi**. The third English translation (in order that there . . . might . . .) is to be preferred. The addition of the English adverb "there" preserves the close connection between the main clause and the subordinate clause that the relative adverb in Latin achieves. The words "in order that . . . might" clearly indicate the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.

2. The syntax of **peterem** in the first sentence is **imperfect subjunctive, Relative Clause of Purpose, secondary sequence**.

3. In the second sentence the antecedent for the relative adverb **quō** is implied (to a place) but is not expressed.

☛ Drill 89, page 389, may now be done.

§90. Accusative of Duration of Time

When a noun in the accusative case *with no preposition* is used to express the *amount of time during which* the action of a verb occurs, it is called an **Accusative of Duration of Time**. It is translated "for _____." For example:

In Italiā multōs *annōs* fuerant rēgēs. (**annus, annī** *m.* year)
In Italy *for* many *years* there had been kings.

The syntax of the italicized word (**annōs**) is **Accusative of Duration of Time.**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Any word that expresses some idea of time, such as "day," "night," "hour," may be used as an Accusative of Duration of Time.

2. Sometimes the preposition **per** is used to strengthen an Accusative of Duration of Time: **per multōs annōs**, "through many years."

3. In PIE and in early Latin the accusative case originally expressed an idea of extent that limited the action of the verb. The Accusative of Duration of Time is developed from this original idea of the accusative.

When the Accusative of Duration of Time is used with a verb in the *present* tense, the present tense indicates an action that *has been going on for some time and is still going on*. When the Accusative of Duration of Time is used with a verb in the *imperfect* tense, the imperfect tense indicates an action that *had been going on for some time and was still going on*. These uses of the present and imperfect tenses require special English translations.

In agrīs *multōs annōs labōrō*.
In the fields *for many years I have been working [and am still working].*
I have been working in the fields *for many years.*

In agrīs *multōs annōs labōrābam*.
In the fields *for many years I had been working [and was still working].*
I had been working in the fields *for many years.*

§91. Ablative of Time When

When a noun in the ablative case *with no preposition* is used to express *the point in time when* the action of a verb occurs, it is called an **Ablative of Time When**. It is translated "at _____" or "on _____." For example:

> **Eā *nocte* Pompeius oppidum cēpit.** (**nox, noctis, -ium** *f.* night)
> *On* that *night* Pompey took the town.

The syntax of the italicized word (**nocte**) is **Ablative of Time When**.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Time When expresses a *location in time* and thus arises from the ablative's ability to express location.

§92. Ablative of Time Within Which

When a noun in the ablative case *with no preposition* is used to express the *period of time within which* the action of a verb occurs, it is called an **Ablative of Time Within Which**. It is translated "within _____" or "in _____." For example:

> **Paucīs *diēbus* Vergilius magnum carmen perficiet.** (**diēs, diēī** *m.* or *f.* day)
> *(With)in* a few *days* Vergil will complete a great poem.

The syntax of the italicized word (**diēbus**) is **Ablative of Time Within Which**.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Time Within Which expresses a *location in time* and thus arises from the ablative's ability to express location.

☛ DRILL 90–92, PAGE 391, MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. Hegio is ordered by an ecstatic and near-mad Ergasilus to fetch a sacrificial animal.

Heg. Cūr? *Erg.* Ut sacruficēs.

H. Cui deōrum? *E.* Mī hercle, nam ego nunc tibi sum summus Iuppiter,
īdem ego sum Salūs, Fortūna, Lūx, Laetitia, Gaudium. (Plautus, *Captīvī* 862–64)

sacrificō (= **sacrificō**) (1-intr.) perform a sacrifice
mī = **mihi**
summus, **-a**, **-um** highest
lūx, **lūcis** *f.* light
laetitia, **laetitiae** *f.* happiness

Two fragments from Ennius cited as examples of his experimentation with alliteration.

2. Āfrica terribilī tremit horrida terra tumultū. (Ennius, *Annālēs* IX.309)

Āfricus, **-a**, **-um** African
terribilis, **terribile** terrifying, frightening, terrible
tremō, **tremere**, **tremuī**, —— tremble, quake
horridus, **-a**, **-um** rough, wild; horrible
tumultus, **tumultūs** *m.* uproar, tumult

3. at tuba terribilī sonitū "taratantara" dīxit. (Ennius, *Sēd. Inc.* frag. 459)

at (conj.) but
tuba, **tubae** *f.* horn, trumpet
terribilis, **terribile** terrifying, frightening, terrible
sonitus, **sonitūs** *m.* sound, noise

4. A fragment from the poet Ennius

amīcus certus in rē incertā cernitur. (Ennius, *Tragoediae* frag. 351)

cernō, **cernere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** distinguish, determine, perceive

5. Cato summarizes the essence of farming.

rēs rūstica sīc est: sī ūnam rem sērō fēceris, omnia opera sērō faciēs.

(Cato, *Dē Agrī Cultūrā* 5)

rūsticus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to the country or a farm, rustic; **rēs rūstica**, agriculture
sērō (adv.) late, tardily; too late
opus, **operis** *n.* work, task

6. Cato's famous advice about oratory

rem† tenē, verba sequentur. (Cato, *Dē Rhētoricā* frag. 15)

†**rēs**, *here*, subject matter, topic

7. Cato's view of love

aliud est, Philippe, amor, longē aliud est cupīdō. accessit īlicō alter ubi alter recessit. alter bonus, alter malus. (CATO, *ŌRĀTIŌNĒS* FRAG. 71)

Philippus, Philippī *m.* Philip
longē (adv.) far
cupīdō, cupīdinis *m.* or *f.* desire
īlicō (adv.) at once; at that moment
recēdō (**re-** + **cēdō**) withdraw, recede

8. Two lines in which Wisdom gives her genealogy.

ūsus mē genuit, māter peperit memoria.
"Sophiam" vocant mē Grāī, vōs "Sapientiam." (L. AFRANIUS, *TOGĀTAE* FRAG. 298–99)

ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use, experience
gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus beget (of a father)
pariō, parere, peperī, partus give birth to, bear (of a mother)
memoria, memoriae *f.* memory
Sophia, Sophiae *f.* Sophia ("wisdom" in Greek)
Grāī, Grāiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Greeks

9. After reproaching Catiline for his treacherous activities, the *patria* proposes a solution.

quam ob rem discēde atque hunc mihi timōrem ēripe; sī est vērus, nē opprimar; sīn falsus, ut tandem aliquandō timēre dēsinam. (CICERO, *IN CATILĪNAM I* 18)

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus snatch away, take away
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus overwhelm, oppress
sīn (conj.) but if
falsus, -a, -um false
aliquandō (adv.) at (long) last
dēsinō, dēsinere, dēsiī/dēsīvī, dēsitum stop, cease (+ infin.)

10. Cicero notes the relation between the value of things and the degree to which they are desired.

etenim quī modus est in hīs rēbus cupiditātis, īdem est aestimātiōnis; difficile est fīnem facere pretiō nisi libīdinī fēceris. (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 4.14)

cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire
aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis *f.* value
fīnis, fīnis, -ium *m.* end, limit
pretium, pretiī *n.* price, value
libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire

11. Cicero compares wisdom to an artist.

ut Phīdiās potest ā prīmō īnstituere signum idque perficere, potest ab aliō inchoātum accipere et absolvere, huic est sapientia similis; nōn enim ipsa genuit hominem, sed accēpit ā nātūrā inchoātum. (Cicero, *Dē Fīnibus* IV.34)

Phīdiās, **Phīdiae** *m.* Phidias (fifth-century B.C.E. Athenian sculptor, designer of the Parthenon sculpture)
prīmum, **prīmī** *n.* first part, beginning
īnstituō, **īnstituere**, **īnstituī**, **īnstitūtus** set up; set to work (on), start (on)
signum, **signī** *n.* sign; statue, figure
inchoō (1-tr.) start, begin
absolvō, **absolvere**, **absolvī**, **absolūtus** finish, complete
similis, **simile** similar (+ dat.)
gignō, **gignere**, **genuī**, **genitus** create; beget

12. Laelius considers the plight of the tyrant who, though wealthy, loves no one and is loved by no one.

Haec enim est tyrannōrum vīta nīmīrum, in quā nūlla fidēs, nūlla cāritās, nūlla stabilis benivolentiae potest esse fīdūcia, omnia semper suspecta atque sollicita, nūllus locus amīcitiae. (Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 52–53)

tyrannus, **tyrannī** *m.* monarch; absolute ruler; tyrant
nīmīrum (adv.) without doubt, presumably
cāritās, **cāritātis** *f.* affection
stabilis, **stabile** (standing) firm, constant
benivolentia, **benivolentiae** *f.* goodwill, friendliness
fīdūcia, **fīdūciae** *f.* confidence, trust, reliance
suspectus, **-a**, **-um** viewed with suspicion, suspect
sollicitus, **-a**, **-um** disturbed, troubled

13. Part of Cicero's reflections on men's generosity

sunt autem multī et quidem cupidī splendōris et glōriae quī ēripiunt aliīs quod aliīs largiantur . . . (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* I.43)

splendor, **splendōris** *m.* brilliance; honor
ēripiō, **ēripere**, **ēripuī**, **ēreptus** snatch away, take away
largior, **largīrī**, **largītus sum** give bountifully, bestow

14. Cicero speaks about areas of excellence.

itaque sē aliī ad philosophiam, aliī ad iūs cīvīle, aliī ad ēloquentiam applicant, ipsārumque virtūtum in aliā alius māvult excellere. (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* I.115–16)

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
philosophia, **philosophiae** *f.* philosophy
cīvīlis, **cīvīle** of *or* connected with citizens, civil
ēloquentia, **ēloquentiae** *f.* eloquence; rhetoric
applicō (1-tr.) apply
mālō, **mālle**, **māluī**, —— prefer; **māvult** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
excellō, **excellere**, ——, —— be superior, be conspicuous, excel

15. Cicero contrasts Rome with other societies.

aliae nātiōnēs servitūtem patī possunt, populī Rōmānī est propria lībertās. (Cicero, *Philippics VI* 7)

nātiō, **nātiōnis** *f.* nation
proprius, **-a**, **-um** one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (+ gen.)

16. Cicero describes to the senate the fearful state of affairs in Rome after Julius Caesar's assassination.

armōrum officīnās in urbe vidētis; mīlitēs cum gladiīs sequuntur cōnsulem; praesidiō sunt speciē cōnsulī, rē et vēritāte nōbīs; . . . (Cicero, *Philippics VII* 4)

officīna, **officīnae** *f.* workshop
praesidium, **praesidiī** *n.* guard, garrison
vēritās, **vēritātis** *f.* truth

17. In January 49 B.C.E. Cicero replies to his friend Atticus's attempt to encourage him about Pompey's state of readiness for war with Julius Caesar.

erat enim ars difficilis rēctē rem pūblicam regere. sed iam iamque† omnia sciēmus et scrībēmus ad tē statim. (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* VII.25.1)

rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly
†**iam iamque**, any time now
sciō, **scīre**, **sciī/scīvī**, **scītus** know
statim (adv.) immediately

18. Caesar describes what the Romans did after the Germans' formation repelled their assault.

repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī in phalangem īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.52)

reperiō, **reperīre**, **repperī**, **repertus** find, discover
complūrēs, **complūr(i)a** several, very many
phalanx, **phalangis** *f.* phalanx (a close formation of troops)
īnsiliō, **īnsilīre**, **īnsiluī**, —— jump (on), leap (on)
scūtum, **scūtī** *n.* shield
revellō, **revellere**, **revellī**, **revulsus** tear, tear away
dēsuper (adv.) from above
vulnerō (1-tr.) wound; inflict wounds

19. The poet summarizes his doctrine of the eternal regeneration of atoms.

sīc alid† ex aliō numquam dēsistet orīrī
vītaque mancipiō nūllī datur, omnibus ūsū. (Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* III.970–71)

†**alid** = **aliud**
dēsistō, **dēsistere**, **dēstitī**, —— cease
orior, **orīrī**, **ortus sum** rise, arise
mancipium, **mancipiī** *n.* ownership
ūsus, **ūsūs** *m.* use; enjoyment

20. The historian begins a comparison between those who make history and those who write it.

pulchrum est bene facere reī pūblicae, etiam bene dīcere haud absurdum est. (Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 3)

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
absurdus, **-a**, **-um** discordant; inappropriate

21. The historian describes the ultimate decree of the senate.

ea potestās per senātum mōre Rōmānō magistrātuī maxuma permittitur: exercitum parāre, bellum gerere, coërcēre omnibus modīs sociōs atque cīvīs, domī mīlitiaeque imperium atque iūdicium summum habēre; aliter sine populī iussū nūllīus eārum rērum cōnsulī iūs est. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 29)

potestās, **potestātis** *f.* power
mōs, **mōris** *m.* custom
magistrātus, **magistrātūs** *m.* (public) official, magistrate
maxumus, **-a**, **-um** greatest
permittō (**per-** + **mittō**) entrust, grant
coërceō, **coërcēre**, **coërcuī**, **coërcitus** restrain, control
mīlitia, **mīlitiae** *f.* military service; **mīlitiae** = *loc. sing.*
iūdicium, **iūdiciī** *n.* judgment
summus, **-a**, **-um** highest; final

22. The historian characterizes young Julius Caesar.

. . . sibi magnum imperium, exercitum, bellum novum exoptābat ubi virtūs ēnitēscere posset. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 54)

exoptō (**ex-** + **optō**) (1-tr.) desire greatly, long for
ēnitēscō, **ēnitēscere**, **ēnituī**, —— shine forth, become bright

23. The Trojan Panthus speaks to Aeneas as Troy falls.

vēnit summa diēs et inēluctābile tempus
Dardaniae. fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium et ingēns
glōria Teucrōrum; ferus omnia Iuppiter Argōs
trānstulit; . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.324–27)

summus, **-a**, **-um** highest; final, last
inēluctābilis, **inēluctābile** that cannot be fought, inescapable
Dardania, **Dardaniae** *f.* Dardania (city in the Troad, used poetically for Troy)
Trōes, **Trōum** *m. pl.* Trojans
Teucrī, **Teucrōrum** *m. pl.* Teucrians (descendants of Teucer), Trojans
ferus, **-a**, **-um** wild, uncultivated; fierce; cruel
Argī, **Argōrum** *m. pl.* Argos (Greek city, home of Agamemnon)
trānsferō (**trāns-** + **ferō**), **trānsferre**, **trānstulī**, **trānslātus** carry across, transfer

24. Aeneas speaks to his comrades.

ūna salūs victīs nūllam spērāre salūtem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.354)

spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)

25. At the end of a satire in which the poet's slave Davus has been attacking his master with words and finally with a stone, Davus ends his attack.

aut īnsānit homō aut versūs facit. (HORACE, *SERMŌNĒS* II.7.117)

īnsāniō, **īnsānīre**, **īnsāniī/īnsānīvī**, **īnsānītus** be mad, be crazy
versus, **versūs** *m.* verse (of poetry)

26. The poet concludes a poem with an address to his beloved Cynthia.

tū mihi sōla domus, tū, Cynthia, sōla parentēs,
omnia tū nostrae tempora laetitiae.
seu trīstis veniam seu contrā laetus amīcīs,
quicquid erō, dīcam "Cynthia causa fuit." (PROPERTIUS I.11.23–26)

parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness
seu (conj.) or if, whether; **seu . . . seu . . .** , whether . . . or (if) . . .
contrā (adv.) on the contrary; in turn
trīstis, trīste sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim
quicquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.*, whatever

27. Part of the poet's description of the creation of animals out of soil, rock, and water after the great flood

. . . et eōdem in corpore saepe
altera pars vīvit, rudis est pars altera tellūs. (OVID, *METAMORPHŌSĒS* I.428–29)

rudis, rude unformed, rough, raw
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land

28. The poet describes how Orestes and his close friend Phoceus responded to the threat of death.

nec tamen hunc sua† mors, nec mors sua† terruit illum:
alter ob alterius† fūnera maestus erat. (OVID, *TRĪSTIA* IV.4B.21–22)

†**sua** refers to **hunc**, his own.
†**sua** refers to **illum**, his own.
†The **-ī-** of **alterīus** here scans *short*.
fūnus, fūneris *n. sing. or pl.*, funeral; death
maestus, -a, -um sad, gloomy, melancholy

29. A couplet about the human condition

tendimus hūc omnēs, mētam properāmus ad ūnam,
omnia sub lēgēs Mors vocat ātra suās. (*EPICĒDĪON DRŪSĪ* 359–60)

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus/tēnsus stretch out, extend; proceed
hūc (adv.) to this place, hither
mēta, mētae *f.* goalpost; end, limit
properō (1-intr.) hasten, rush
āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark

30. Juno explains her departure from the sky.

Soror Tonantis (hoc enim sōlum mihi
nōmen relictumst) semper aliēnum Iovem
ac templa summī vidua dēseruī aetheris
locumque caelō pulsa paelicibus dedī. (Seneca the Younger, *Herculēs Furēns* 1–4)

Tonāns, **Tonantis** *m.* (the) Thunderer (god of thunder)
nōmen, **nōminis** *n.* name
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um** belonging to another
summus, **-a**, **-um** highest; top (of)
viduus, **-a**, **-um** deprived, bereft, deserted
dēserō, **dēserere**, **dēseruī**, **dēsertus** abandon, desert
aethēr, **aetheris** *m.* aether, ether (the upper region of the sky); heaven
paelex, **paelicis** *f.* concubine, mistress

31. The chorus puzzles over why the gods do not seem concerned with human justice.

rēs hūmānās ordine nūllō
Fortūna regit sparsitque manū
mūnera caecā . . . (Seneca the Younger, *Phaedra* 978–80)

hūmānus, **-a**, **-um** human
ordō, **ordinis** *m.* order
spargō, **spargere**, **sparsī**, **sparsus** scatter, distribute

32. The philosopher cites a remark of Aristotle about the poetic mind.

nūllum magnum ingenium sine mixtūrā dēmentiae fuit.
(Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* IX.17.10)

mixtūra, **mixtūrae** *f.* mixture; admixture
dēmentia, **dēmentiae** *f.* madness, insanity

33. The historian describes King Agis, who led a revolt against Alexander's Macedonians.

inter omnēs tamen Lacedaemoniōs rēx ēminēbat, nōn armōrum modo et corporis speciē, sed etiam magnitūdine animī, quō ūnō vincī nōn potuit.
(Curtius Rufus, *Historiae Alexandrī Magnī* VI.1.3)

Lacedaemonius, **-a**, **-um** Lacedaemonian, Spartan
ēmineō, **ēminēre**, **ēminuī**, —— stand out, be outstanding
modo (adv.) only
magnitūdō, **magnitūdinis** *f.* (great) size

34. Quintilian cites an example of a rhetorical figure employing reversal.

nōn ut edam vīvō, sed ut vīvam edō. (Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria* IX.3.85)

edō, **ēsse**, **ēdī**, **ēsus** (irregular 3rd conj. verb) eat; **edam** = *1st sing. pres. act. subjunc.*

35. Pliny recalls part of what all the senators said when they were giving thanks to Trajan in the senate.

super haec precātī sumus ut sīc tē amārent dī quemadmodum tū nōs.

(PLINY THE YOUNGER, *PANEGYRICUS* 74)

super (prep. + acc.) in addition to
precor (1-tr.) pray, beg

36. The poet suggests an example of madness.

Hostem cum† fugeret, sē Fannius ipse perēmit.
hic, rogo, nōn furor est: nē moriāre morī? (MARTIAL II.80)

†**cum**, *here* (conj. + subjunc.) when
Fannius, **Fanniī** *m.* Fannius
perimō, **perimere**, **perēmī**, **perēmptus** destroy
rogō (1-tr.) ask; the final **-ō** of **rogō** here scans *short*.
furor, **furōris** *m.* madness

37. The poet explains something to an acquaintance named Pontilianus.

cūr nōn mitto† meōs tibi, Pontiliāne, libellōs?
nē mihi tū mittās, Pontiliāne, tuōs. (MARTIAL VII.3)

†The **-ō** of **mittō** here scans *short*.
Pontiliānus, **Pontiliānī** *m.* Pontilianus
libellus, **libellī** *m.* (little) book

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Prō Quīnctiō* 98

Part of Cicero's address to the judge, in which he summarizes his client's desperate situation

. . . ab ipsō† repudiātus, ab amīcīs eius nōn sublevātus, ab omnī magistrātū agitātus atque perterritus, quem praeter tē appellet habet nēminem; tibi sē, tibi suās omnēs opēs fortūnāsque commendat, tibi committit exīstimātiōnem ac spem reliquae vītae;

†**ipsō** refers to Sextus Naevius.

repudiō (1-tr.) reject, refuse
sublevō (1-tr.) support, assist
magistrātus, magistrātūs *m.* magistrate
agitō (1-tr.) disturb, vex, trouble
perterreō (**per-** + **terreō**) (thoroughly) terrify
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except
appellō (1-tr.) call; apply to, entreat
ops, opis *f.* power, ability; *pl.*, resources, wealth
commendō (1-tr.) commend, entrust
committō (**con-** + **mittō**) entrust, commit
exīstimātiō, exīstimātiōnis *f.* reputation, good name
spēs, speī *f.* hope
reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)

In the *Prō Quīnctiō* (81 B.C.E.), perhaps the oldest surviving speech of Cicero, the orator defends Publius Quinctius against charges by his dead brother's business partner, Sextus Naevius, through which Naevius sought to have Quinctius's property seized and forfeited.

2. Cicero, *Dīvinātiō in Caecilium* 19

Cicero attacks Verres, who had been proconsul in Sicily.

Sicilia tōta sī ūnā vōce loquerētur, hoc dīceret: "Quod aurī, quod argentī, quod ornāmentōrum in meīs urbibus, sēdibus, dēlūbrīs fuit, quod in ūnā quāque† rē beneficiō senātūs populīque Rōmānī iūris habuī, id mihi tū, C. Verrēs, ēripuistī atque abstulistī . . ."

Sicilia, Siciliae *f.* Sicily
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum speak
argentum, argentī *n.* silver
ornāmentum, ornāmentī *n.* adornment, embellishment
sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home, abode
dēlūbrum, dēlūbrī *n.* temple, shrine
†**quāque** = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, each
beneficium, beneficiī *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit
C. Verrēs, C. Verris *m.* C. Verres (proconsul of Sicily, prosecuted by Cicero in 70 B.C.E.)
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away

The *Dīvinātiō in Caecilium* was delivered in 70 B.C.E. A **dīvinātiō** was a legal inquiry held to determine who should conduct the prosecution of a case. Cicero successfully argued that he—and not Q. Caecilius, a corrupt alternative—should try the case against C. Verres, a Roman nobleman charged with severe misgovernment of the province of Sicily. The case pitted Cicero against the leading lawyer of the day, Hortensius, and Cicero's victory established him as the foremost orator in Rome. Verres was forced into exile.

3. Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* II.75–79

The poet describes the never-ending life and change of the physical world.

. . . sīc rērum summa novātur
semper, et inter sē mortālēs mūtua vīvunt.
augēscunt aliae gentēs, aliae minuuntur,
inque brevī spatiō mūtantur saecla animantum
et quasi cursōrēs vītāī† lampada trādunt.

summa, **summae** *f.* sum, whole, total, totality
novō (1-tr.) make new, renew
mūtua (adv.) through successive changes, reciprocally, with mutual interaction
augēscō, **augēscere**, **auxī**, —— increase, grow
gēns, **gentis**, **-ium** *f.* nation, people
minuō, **minuere**, **minuī**, **minūtus** make smaller, reduce, diminish
brevis, **breve** short, brief
spatium, **spatiī** *n.* course, lap; space, interval
mūtō (1-tr.) change
saec(u)lum, **saec(u)lī** *n.* age, generation
animāns, **animantis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* or *n.* living creature; **animantum** = **animantium**
quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
cursor, **cursōris** *m.* runner
†**vītāī** = **vītae**
lampas, **lampadis** *f.* torch; **lampada** = *acc. sing.*

Virtually nothing is known about the life of **Tītus Lucrētius Cārus** (98?–55? B.C.E.), but his didactic epic poem *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* (*Concerning the Nature of Things*) is one of the masterpieces of Latin literature. Lucretius explains the Greek philosopher Epicurus's atomic theory of the universe in order to dispel the fear of death and so to free mankind from religion and superstition. His style owes much to his predecessor Ennius and is thus more archaic than that of his contemporary Catullus. Lucretius's command of meter and poetic diction exerted considerable influence on Vergil's poetic development, and several lines of Lucretius's poem appear in slightly altered form in Vergil's works.

4. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.1

Caesar begins his commentary on the Gallic war.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt.

Gallia, **Galliae** *f.* Gaul
dīvidō, **dīvidere**, **dīvīsī**, **dīvīsus** separate, divide
trēs, **tria** (numerical adj.) three; **trēs** = *fem. pl. acc.*
incolō, **incolere**, **incoluī**, —— inhabit
Belgae, **Belgārum** *m. pl.* (the) Belgae
Aquītānī, **Aquītānōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Aquitani
tertius, **-a**, **-um** third
lingua, **linguae** *f.* tongue; language
Celtae, **Celtārum** *m. pl.* (the) Celts
Gallī, **Gallōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
appellō (1-tr.) name, call
īnstitūtum, **īnstitūtī** *n.* custom, institution

Gaius Iūlius Caesar (100–44 B.C.E.) was born at Rome and began his political career in the 60s. After entering into an alliance with the two most powerful people in Rome—the wealthy M. Licinius Crassus and the general Pompey—Caesar became consul for the first time in 59. After his consulship Caesar was chosen to govern the province Gaul (modern France and northern Italy). At the time Rome controlled only the southernmost portion of Gaul. Over the next several years Caesar conquered the remainder of it. Caesar then sought to return to Rome as consul in 49, but Pompey, his supporters, and others at Rome—fearing Caesar's increasing power—blocked his candidacy. As a result, Caesar invaded Italy and set off the civil war that lasted until 45 in various parts of the Roman Empire. On 15 March 44, after it had become clear that he had decided not to resign his dictatorship (a legal, temporary office in Rome), Caesar was assassinated.

The *Commentāriī dē Bellō Gallicō* (Commentaries About the Gallic War) were probably written during the campaigns in Gaul. They provide both an account of those campaigns and a description of the customs of the peoples Caesar encountered in Gaul and Britain. Written in seven books, the *Commentāriī* are a third-person account in a plain, lucid, and orderly style with a notable absence of florid rhetoric. When Quintilian surveys the orators of the late Republic, he rates Caesar second only to Cicero himself. Both Cicero and Quintilian praise Caesar's purity of vocabulary and clarity of thought as a speaker—qualities also apparent in his writings.

5. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 20

At a secret meeting Catiline begins an address to his fellow conspirators.

Nī virtūs fidēsque vostra spectāta mihi† foret, nēquīquam opportūna rēs cecidisset; spēs magna, dominātiō in manibus frūstrā fuissent, neque ego per ignāviam aut vāna ingenia incerta prō certīs captārem.

nī = **nisi**
vostra = **vestra**
spectō (1-tr.) look (at), observe; examine, prove; **spectāta . . . foret** = **spectāta . . . esset**
†**mihi**, *here, Dative of Agent,* by me
nēquīquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain
opportūnus, **-a**, **-um** favorable, advantageous
cadō, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus** fall; occur
spēs, **speī** *f.* hope
dominātiō, **dōminātiōnis** *f.* absolute rule, dominion
frūstrā (adv.) in vain
ignāvia, **ignāviae** *f.* idleness; cowardice
vānus, **-a**, **-um** empty; unreliable; useless
captō (1-tr.) try to capture, seek after

Gaius Sallustius Crispus (86–35 B.C.E.) became prominent in Roman politics as a young man but was forced out of political life because of accusations of provincial misgovernment and extortion. But Sallust is far better known as a historian. He wrote short monographs rather than long historical works, and his style is marked by a studied response to the flowing style of Cicero and by much imitation of the earlier Cato. His compressed, rapid, and antithetical style became a model for later historians, particularly Tacitus.

The *Bellum Catilīnae* is a monograph on the conspiracy led by Catiline in 63 B.C.E., the year of Cicero's consulship.

6. Vergil, *Aeneid* I.200–203

After the Trojan fleet has endured a storm at sea, Aeneas addresses the dispirited survivors.

vōs et Scyllaeam rabiem penitusque sonantīs
accestis† scopulōs, vōs et Cyclōpia saxa
expertī: revocāte animōs maestumque timōrem
mittite;† forsan et haec ōlim meminisse iuvābit.

Scyllaeus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the monster Scylla; Scyllaean
rabiēs, ***rabiēī** *f.* ferocity, savageness
penitus (adv.) (from) within, deeply
sonāns, sonantis resounding
†**accestis** = **accessistis**
scopulus, scopulī *m.* (projecting) rock, crag
Cyclōpius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the Cyclopes
saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone
revocō (**re-** + **vocō**) (1-tr.) summon back; recall; renew
maestus, -a, -um sad, mournful, gloomy, grim
†**mittō**, *here,* set aside, dismiss
forsan (adv.) perhaps
ōlim (adv.) at some time
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help; delight, be pleasing

7. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.26–34

Aeneas describes how the Trojans venture out of their city when they believe that the Greeks have departed.

ergō omnis longō solvit sē Teucria lūctū;
panduntur portae, iuvat īre et Dōrica castra
dēsertōsque vidēre locōs lītusque relictum:
hīc Dolopum manus, hīc saevus tendēbat Achillēs;
classibus hīc locus, hīc aciē certāre solēbant. 30
pars stupet innuptae dōnum exitiāle Minervae
et mōlem mīrantur equī; prīmusque Thymoetēs
dūcī intrā mūrōs hortātur et arce locārī,
sīve dolō seu iam Troiae sīc fāta ferēbant.

ergō (adv.) therefore
longus, **-a**, **-um** long; long-standing
solvō, **solvere**, **solvī**, **solūtus** loosen; free, release
Teucria, **Teucriae** *f.* Teucria (land of the Teucri), Troy
lūctus, **lūctūs** *m.* mourning
pandō, **pandere**, ——, **pānsus/passus** spread out, open
porta, **portae** *f.* gate
iuvō, **iuvāre**, **iūvī**, **iūtus** help; delight, be pleasing
Dōricus, **-a**, **-um** Doric, Greek
castra, **castrōrum** *n. pl.* (military) camp
dēserō, **dēserere**, **dēseruī**, **dēsertus** abandon, desert
lītus, **lītoris** *n.* shore, beach
hīc (adv.) here
Dolopes, **Dolopum** *m. pl.* (the) Dolopes (a Greek people from Thessaly)
saevus, **-a**, **-um** cruel, savage
tendō, **tendere**, **tetendī**, **tentus/tēnsus** stretch out, extend; pitch one's tents, encamp
Achillēs, **Achillis** *m.* Achilles
classis, **classis**, **-ium** *f.* fleet; *pl.*, ships
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
soleō, **solēre**, **solitus sum** be accustomed
stupeō, **stupēre**, **stupuī**, —— be stunned (at), be speechless (at)
innuptus, **-a**, **-um** unmarried, maiden
exitiālis, **exitiāle** fatal, deadly
mōlēs, **mōlis**, **-ium** *f.* mass; bulk
mīror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at
equus, **equī** *m.* horse
prīmus, **-a**, **-um** first
Thymoetēs, ***Thymoetis** *m.* Thymoetes (son of Laomedon, brother of Priam)
intrā (prep. + acc.) within
mūrus, **mūrī** *m.* wall
arx, **arcis** *f.* tower, citadel
locō (1-tr.) place
sīve/seu (conj.) or if; **sīve** (**seu**) . . . **sīve** (**seu**) . . . , whether . . . or if . . .
dolus, **dolī** *m.* deceit, trick, cunning

8. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.65–74

Aeneas begins his account of the deception of Sinon, whose false tale ensures that the Trojan horse is brought into the city.

accipe nunc Danaum īnsidiās et crīmine ab ūnō
disce omnīs.†
namque ut cōnspectū in mediō turbātus, inermis
cōnstitit atque oculīs Phrygia agmina circumspexit,
"heu, quae nunc tellūs," inquit, "quae mē aequora possunt
accipere? aut quid iam miserō mihi dēnique restat,
cui neque apud Danaōs usquam locus, et super ipsī
Dardanidae īnfēnsī poenās cum sanguine poscunt?"
quō gemitū conversī animī compressus et† omnis
impetus.

Danaī, **Danaōrum** *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks; **Danaum** = *gen. pl.*
crīmen, **crīminis** *n.* charge, accusation; crime
discō, **discere**, **didicī**, —— learn
†A few lines of the *Aeneid* remained unfinished at the time of Vergil's death.
cōnspectus, **cōnspectūs** *m.* sight, view
medius, **-a**, **-um** middle (of)
turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into confusion
inermis, **inerme** unarmed
cōnstō, **cōnstāre**, **cōnstitī**, **cōnstātūrus** stand still
Phrygius, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to Phrygia (the region in which Troy was situated), Phrygian, Trojan
agmen, **agminis** *n.* (battle-)line; throng
circumspiciō, **circumspicere**, **circumspexī**, **circumspectus** look around (at)
tellūs, **tellūris** *f.* earth, land
aequor, **aequoris** *n.* level surface; sea
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
restō, **restāre**, **restitī**, —— remain, be left
apud (prep. + acc.) at, near; among
usquam (adv.) anywhere
super (adv.) in addition
Dardanidēs, **Dardanidae** *m.* descendant of Dardanus (founder of Troy), Trojan
īnfēnsus, **-a**, **-um** hostile, threatening
sanguis, **sanguinis** *m.* blood
poscō, **poscere**, **poposcī**, —— demand
gemitus, **gemitūs** *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
convertō, **convertere**, **convertī**, **conversus** reverse; change; win over
comprimō, **comprimere**, **compressī**, **compressus** crush; subdue, suppress
†**et** in poetry is frequently placed in the position of **-que**.
impetus, **impetūs** *m.* attack, assault; (violent) impulse

9. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.651–58

Before committing suicide, Dido mounts her funeral pyre and addresses relics of her love affair with Aeneas.

dulcēs exuviae, dum fāta deusque sinēbat,
accipite hanc animam mēque hīs exsolvite cūrīs.
vīxī et quem dederat cursum Fortūna perēgī,
et nunc magna meī sub terrās ībit imāgō.
urbem praeclāram statuī, mea moenia vīdī,
ulta virum poenās inimīcō ā frātre recēpī,
fēlīx, heu nimium fēlīx, sī lītora tantum
numquam Dardaniae tetigissent nostra carīnae.

dulcis, **dulce** sweet
exuviae, **exuviārum** *f. pl.* (stripped) armor; mementos
dum (conj.) while, as long as
sinō, **sinere**, **siī/sīvī**, **situs** allow, permit
exsolvō, **exsolvere**, **exsolvī**, **exsolūtus** set free, release
cursus, **cursūs** *m.* course
peragō (**per-** + **agō**), **peragere**, **perēgī**, **perāctus** thoroughly do; accomplish, complete
imāgō, **imāginis** *f.* image, likeness
praeclārus, **-a**, **-um** very famous
statuō, **statuere**, **statuī**, **statūtus** cause to stand, set up, establish
ulcīscor, **ulcīscī**, **ultus sum** avenge
recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) take back, receive
nimium (adv.) too much, excessively
lītus, **lītoris** *n.* shore, beach
tantum (adv.) only
Dardanius, **-a**, **-um** Dardanian, Trojan
tangō, **tangere**, **tetigī**, **tāctus** touch; reach
carīna, **carīnae** *f.* keel; ship

10. Vergil, *Aeneid* VI.126–29

The Cumaean Sibyl, an Italian prophetess, responds to Aeneas's request for help in journeying to the underworld.

Trōs Anchīsiadē, facilis dēscēnsus Avernō
(noctīs atque diēs patet ātrī iānua Dītis):
sed revocāre gradum superāsque ēvādere ad aurās,
hoc opus, hic labor est . . .

Trōs, **Trōis** *m.* Trojan (man)
Anchīsiadēs, **Anchīsiadae** *m.* son of Anchises; **Anchīsiadē** = *voc. sing.*
dēscēnsus, **dēscēnsūs** *m.* descent
Avernus, **Avernī** *m.* (lake) Avernus (entrance to the underworld)
pateō, **patēre**, **patuī**, —— lie open
āter, **ātra**, **ātrum** black, dark
iānua, **iānuae** *f.* door
revocō (**re-** + **vocō**) (1-tr.) summon back, recall; take back
gradus, **gradūs** *m.* step, pace
superus, **-a**, **-um** upper
ēvādō, **ēvādere**, **ēvāsī**, **ēvāsus** go out, escape
aura, **aurae** *f.* breeze
opus, **operis** *n.* work, task
labor, **labōris** *m.* work, labor

11. Propertius II.8.1–12; 17–20

The poet offers a friend a bleak reflection on his love affair.

Ēripitur nōbīs iam prīdem cāra puella:
    et tū mē lacrimās fundere, amīce, vetās?
nūllae sunt inimīcitiae nisi amōris acerbae:
    ipsum mē iugulā, lēnior hostis erō.
possum ego in alterius† positam spectāre lacertō?
    nec mea dīcētur,† quae modo dicta mea est?†
omnia vertuntur: certē vertuntur amōrēs:
    vinceris aut vincīs,† haec in amōre rota est.
magnī saepe ducēs, magnī cecidēre tyrannī,
    et Thēbae steterant altaque Troia fuit.
mūnera quanta dedī vel quālia carmina fēcī!
    illa tamen numquam ferrea dīxit "amō."

sīc igitur prīmā moriēre aetāte, Propertī?
    sed morere; interitū gaudeat illa tuō!
exagitet nostrōs Mānīs, sectētur et† umbrās,
    īnsultetque rogīs, calcet et† ossa mea!

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away
prīdem (adv.) formerly, previously; **iam prīdem**, long since, for a long time now
lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, shed
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid
iugulō (1-tr.) kill (by cutting the throat), slaughter
lēnior, lēnius (comparative adj.) weaker, gentler; **lēnior** = *masc. sing. nom.*
†The **-ī-** of **alterīus** here scans *short.*
spectō (1-tr.) look (at), observe
lacertus, lacertī *m.* (upper) arm
†**dīcō**, *here*, call
modo (adv.) just now
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn; change, reverse
†The second **-i-** of **vincis** here scans *long.*
rota, rotae *f.* wheel
dux, ducis *m.* leader
tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* monarch; tyrant
Thēbae, Thēbārum *f. pl.* Thebes
stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus stand; last
quantus, -a, -um how much, how great; what size
vel (conj.) or
quālis, quāle what sort of, what kind of
ferreus, -a, -um made of iron; hard-hearted, unfeeling
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore
prīmus, -a, -um first; first (part of)
aetās, aetātis *f.* age; life
interitus, interitūs *m.* death, demise
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in), be glad, be pleased
exagitō (1-tr.) arouse, disturb, torment
Mānēs, Mānium *m. pl.* Manes (spirits of the dead); shade (spirit of a particular person)
sector (1-tr.) pursue, chase
†**et** in poetry is frequently placed in the position of **-que**.
īnsultō (1-intr.) leap upon, dance upon (+ dat.)
rogus, rogī *m.* funeral pyre; *pl.*, ashes
calcō (1-tr.) trample upon, tread upon
os, ossis *n.* bone

12. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.1–9

The opening lines of Ovid's mythological epic

In nova fert animus† mūtātās dīcere† formās
corpora; dī coeptīs (nam vōs mūtāstis et illa)
adspīrāte meīs prīmāque ab orīgine mundī
ad mea perpetuum dēdūcite tempora carmen.
ante mare et terrās et quod tegit omnia caelum
ūnus erat tōtō nātūrae vultus in orbe,
quem dīxēre† Chaos: rudis indīgestaque mōlēs
nec quicquam nisi pondus iners congestaque eōdem†
nōn bene iūnctārum discordia sēmina rērum.

†**fert animus**, (my) mind proposes
mūtō (1-tr.) change; **mūtāstis** = **mūtāvistis**
†**dīcō**, *here*, tell of
forma, formae *f.* form
coeptum, coeptī *n.* beginning
adspīrō (1-intr.) breathe upon; favor (+ dat.)
prīmus, -a, -um first
orīgō, orīginis *f.* origin, birth
mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world
perpetuus, -a, -um continuous; everlasting
dēdūcō (**dē-** + **dūcō**) lead down; spin; compose
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
vultus, vultūs *m.* expression; face
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world
†**dīcō**, *here*, call
Chaos, Chaī *n.* Chaos
rudis, rude unformed, rough
indīgestus, -a, -um disordered, confused
mōlēs, mōlis, -ium *f.* mass, weight
quicquam = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, anything
pondus, ponderis *n.* weight
iners, inertis inactive, inert
congerō (**con-** + **gerō**) gather together, collect
†**eōdem**, *here* (adv.) to the same place
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctus join
discors, discordis discordant
sēmen, sēminis *n.* seed

13. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.39.11

The historian records a speech by Fabius Maximus, one of the heroes of the second Punic war, to Aemilius Paulus (consul 216 B.C.E.), who is about to set off to meet Hannibal on Roman soil. Fabius summarizes his view of the strategic situation. Aemilius later dies in combat near the Italian town of Cannae.

in Italiā bellum gerimus, in sēde ac solō nostrō; omnia circā plēna cīvium ac sociōrum sunt; armīs, virīs, equīs, commeātibus iuvant iuvābuntque,—id iam fideī documentum in adversīs rēbus nostrīs dedērunt. . . . Hannibal contrā in aliēnā, in hostīlī est terrā inter omnia inimīca īnfestaque, procul ab domō, ab patriā; neque illī terrā neque marī est pāx; nūllae eum urbēs accipiunt, nūlla moenia; nihil usquam suī videt . . .

sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home
solum, solī *n.* soil
circā (adv.) round about, on either side
plēnus, -a, -um full
equus, equī *m.* horse
commeātus, commeātūs *m.* transport, convoy; *pl.*, supplies, provisions
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus help, assist
documentum, documentī *n.* example; proof
adversus, -a, -um opposite; hostile, adverse
contrā (adv.) in opposition, in turn
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; alien, strange
hostīlis, hostīle of *or* belonging to an enemy, hostile
īnfestus, -a, -um hostile; dangerous
procul (adv.) at a distance, far
usquam (adv.) anywhere

Tītus Līvius (59 B.C.E.–17? C.E.) was born in Patavium in northern Italy. Little is known of his life other than that he did not take part in politics but was on good terms with Augustus. He is said to have encouraged Claudius, who later became emperor, to write history.

Livy's work, *Ab Urbe Conditā* (*From the Founding of the City*), a historical work written in 142 books, is one of the greatest of Roman literary achievements. Only one quarter of the work has survived, but the contents of almost all the lost books are known from summaries that date from the fourth century C.E. Livy traces Roman history from its mythical origins to his own day. Much of Livy's material, particularly in the early books, is based on traditional tales and legends whose historical accuracy cannot be established. Livy's narrative style is marked by dramatic and emotional coloring, part of his effort to illustrate and extol the Roman qualities of **virtūs**, **dignitās** (worthiness), and **pietās** (devotion to duty). Livy's mixed prose style shows the influence of both Cicero and Sallust as well as that of Vergil.

14. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 698–709

Cassandra, the daughter of Priam, explains to the chorus why she has nothing left to fear.

Fortūna vīrēs ipsa cōnsūmpsit suās.
quae patria restat, quis† pater, quae iam soror?
bibēre tumulī sanguinem atque ārae meum.† 700
quid illa fēlīx turba frāternī gregis?
exhausta nempe: rēgiā miserī senēs
vacuā relictī, totque per thalamōs vident
praeter Lacaenam cēterās viduās nurūs.
tot illa rēgum māter et regimen Phrygum, 705
fēcunda in† ignēs Hecuba fātōrum novās
experta lēgēs induit vultūs ferōs;
circā ruīnās rabida latrāvit suās,
Troiae superstes, Hectorī, Priamō, sibi.

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptus expend, use up
restō, restāre, restitī, —— remain, be left
†**quis**, *here, interrog. pron. used adjectivally*
bibō, bibere, bibī, —— drink
tumulus, tumulī *m.* burial mound, grave
sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood
†**meum** = **meōrum**
turba, turbae *f.* crowd, throng
frāternus, -a, -um brotherly, fraternal
grex, gregis *m.* flock, herd
exhauriō, exhaurīre, exhausī, exhaustus drain dry
nempe (adv.) without doubt, to be sure
rēgia, rēgiae *f.* royal residence, palace
senex, senis old; *masc. subst.,* old man
vacuus, -a, -um empty
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
thalamus, thalamī *m.* inner room, wedding chamber
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except
Lacaena, Lacaenae *f.* Laconian woman; Helen
cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), (the) other
viduus, -a, -um widowed
nurus, nurūs *f.* daughter-in-law
regimen, regiminis *n.* controller, manager
Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan
fēcundus, -a, -um fertile, productive, fruitful
†**in**, *here,* toward
ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire
Hecuba, Hecubae *f.* Hecuba (wife of Priam)
induō, induere, induī, indūtus put on; assume, adopt
vultus, vultūs *m. sing.* or *pl.,* expression; face
ferus, -a, -um wild; fierce
circā (prep. + acc.) around, near
ruīna, ruīnae *f.* downfall, ruin
rabidus, -a, -um raging, rabid, mad
latrō (1-intr.) bark, bay
superstes, superstitis surviving (+ dat.)
Hectōr, Hectoris *m.* Hector (son of Priam)
Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)

Based in part on Aeschylus's *Agamemnon,* Seneca's play of the same name tells the tale of Agamemnon's homecoming from Troy and his subsequent murder by his wife, Clytaemnestra, and his cousin, her lover, Aegisthus.

15. Tacitus, *Dē Vītā Agricolae* 1

The first sentence of Tacitus's first work, a monograph on the life of his father-in-law, Agricola

Clārōrum virōrum facta mōrēsque posterīs trādere, antīquitus ūsitātum, nē nostrīs quidem temporibus quamquam incūriōsa suōrum aetās omīsit quotiēns magna aliqua ac nōbilis virtūs vīcit ac supergressa est vitium parvīs magnīsque cīvitātibus commūne, ignōrantiam rēctī et invidiam.

mōs, mōris *m.* custom; *pl.*, character
posterī, posterōrum *m. pl.* descendants; posterity
antīquitus (adv.) from of old; long ago
ūsitātus, -a, -um commonly practiced, customary
incūriōsus, -a, -um not interested (in), not concerned (with) (+ gen.)
aetās, aetātis *f.* age; era
omittō (ob- + mittō) pass over; fail, neglect
quotiēns (rel. adv.) as often as, whenever
aliqua = *fem. sing. nom. of indef. adj.*, some
nōbilis, nōbile noble; remarkable
supergredior, supergredī, supergressus sum pass beyond; exceed, surpass
vitium, vitiī *n.* vice, fault
commūnis, commūne common
ignōrantia, ignōrantiae *f.* ignorance
rēctus, -a, -um straight; right; *neut. subst.*, right

Cornēlius Tacitus (55–118 C.E.) was born in northern Italy during Nero's principate and had a successful public career under a succession of emperors. Tacitus is best known for his historical works, which include three short monographs and two longer works: the *Historiae* (*Histories*) and the *Annālēs* (*Annals*). In these last two works Tacitus's prose style reaches its most distinctive form. Tacitean point and antithesis owe much to the earlier historian Sallust, with whom Tacitus shares a penchant for archaisms, weighty abstract nouns, poetic language, and Greekisms. The intensity and compressed nature of Tacitus's style are unmatched in Latin literature.

The *Agricola* or *Dē Vītā Agricolae* (*About the Life of Agricola*), the historian's first work, is a short biography of the historian's father-in-law, Julius Agricola, who conquered and governed Britain during the principate of Domitian (81–96 C.E.). The work contains information about the geography and native population of Britain and recounts the activities of the province's governor. The son-in-law presents Agricola as an example of a virtuous man living and serving under a repressive tyrant. The mixed style of the *Agricola* shows the influences of Cicero, Sallust, and Livy.

16. Tacitus, *Annālēs* I.1

The historian summarizes concisely modes of Roman rule from the city's beginnings down to Augustus.

Urbem Rōmam ā prīncipiō rēgēs habuēre; lībertātem et cōnsulātum L. Brūtus īnstituit. dictātūrae ad tempus† sūmēbantur; neque decemvirālis potestās ultrā biennium, neque tribūnōrum mīlitum cōnsulāre iūs diū valuit. nōn Cinnae, nōn Sullae longa dominātiō; et Pompeī Crassīque potentia citō in Caesarem, Lepidī atque Antōniī arma in Augustum cessēre, quī cūncta discordiīs cīvīlibus fessa nōmine prīncipis sub imperium accēpit.

prīncipium, **prīncipiī** *n.* beginning
L. Brūtus, **L. Brūtī** *m.* L. (Junius) Brutus (legendary founder of the Roman republic)
īnstituō, **īnstituere**, **īnstituī**, **īnstitūtus** set up, establish
dictātūra, **dictātūrae** *f.* dictatorship (an emergency office with unlimited powers)
†**ad tempus**, for the occasion, in emergencies
sūmō, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus** take up; assume
decemvirālis, **decemvirāle** pertaining to the *decemvirī* (a commission of ten magistrates)
potestās, **potestātis** *f.* (legitimate) power
ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond
biennium, **biennii** *n.* biennium, two years
tribūnus, **tribūnī** *m.* tribune, military commander
cōnsulāre iūs, **cōnsulāris iūris** *n.* consular right *or* power (sometimes granted to military tribunes)
diū (adv.) for a long time
Cinna, **Cinnae** *m.* (L. Cornelius) Cinna (Roman dictator 87–84 B.C.E., enemy of Sulla)
longus, **-a**, **-um** long
dominātiō, **dominātiōnis** *f.* absolute rule, dominion
Crassus, **Crassī** *m.* Crassus (member of first triumvirate with Pompey and Caesar)
potentia, **potentiae** *f.* (illegitimate) power, influence
citō (adv.) quickly
Lepidus, **Lepidī** *m.* (M. Aemilius) Lepidus (member of second triumvirate with Antony and Octavian)
Augustus, **Augustī** *m.* Augustus
cūnctus, **-a**, **-um** all
discordia, **discordiae** *f.* discord, dissension, conflict
cīvīlis, **cīvīle** of *or* connected with citizens, civil
fessus, **-a**, **-um** weary, exhausted, worn out
nōmen, **nōminis** *n.* name
prīnceps, **prīncipis** first, chief; *subst.*, leading man, *princeps* (the name chosen by Augustus as his title)

The *Annālēs* appear to have comprised eighteen books, of which only eight survive completely and four others in part. Their subject is the history of Rome from the death of Augustus to the death of Nero (14–68 C.E.) The *Annālēs* is generally considered Tacitus's most mature work. The first six books in particular are marked by Tacitus's characteristic compression and his pronounced avoidance of Ciceronian balance. In these books the complexity of Tacitus's thought is expressed as economically as possible. The resulting narrative is vivid, surprising, and inimitable.

§93. Numbers in Latin

Cardinal numbers are adjectives that answer the question "how many?" They are the numbers used in counting. Most but not all cardinal numbers in Latin are indeclinable. **Ordinal numbers** are adjectives that answer the question "which one in a series?" *All* ordinal numbers in Latin are first-second-declension adjectives. Most ordinal numbers are derived from the corresponding cardinal numbers.

Arabic Numeral	Roman Numeral	*Cardinal Number*	*Ordinal Number*
1	I	**ūnus, -a, -um** one	**prīmus, -a, -um** first
2	II	**duo, duae, duo** two	**secundus, -a, -um** second
3	III	**trēs, tria** three	**tertius, -a, -um** third
4	IIII or IV	**quattuor** four	**quartus, -a, -um** fourth
5	V	**quīnque** five	**quintus, -a, -um** fifth
6	VI	**sex** six	**sextus, -a, -um** sixth
7	VII	**septem** seven	**septimus, -a, -um** seventh
8	VIII	**octō** eight	**octāvus, -a, -um** eighth
9	VIIII or IX	**novem** nine	**nōnus, -a, -um** ninth
10	X	**decem** ten	**decimus, -a, -um** tenth
11	XI	**ūndecim** eleven	**ūndecimus, -a, -um** eleventh
12	XII	**duodecim** twelve	**duodecimus, -a, -um** twelfth
13	XIII	**tredecim** thirteen	**tertius decimus, -a, -um** thirteenth
14	XIIII or XIV	**quattuordecim** fourteen	**quartus decimus, -a, -um** fourteenth
15	XV	**quīndecim** fifteen	**quintus decimus, -a, -um** fifteenth
16	XVI	**sēdecim** sixteen	**sextus decimus, -a, -um** sixteenth
17	XVII	**septendecim** seventeen	**septimus decimus, -a, -um** seventeenth
18	XVIII	**duodēvīgintī** eighteen	**duodēvīcēsimus, -a, -um** eighteenth
19	XVIIII or XIX	**ūndēvīgintī** nineteen	**ūndēvīcēsimus, -a, -um** nineteenth
20	XX	**vīgintī** twenty	**vīcēsimus, -a, -um** twentieth
21[1]	XXI	**vīgintī ūnus, -a, -um** or **ūnus et vīgintī** twenty-one	**vīcēsimus prīmus, -a, -um** or **ūnus et vīcēsimus, -a, -um** twenty-first
22	XXII	**vīgintī duo** or **duo et vīgintī** twenty-two	**vīcēsimus, -a, -um alter, altera, alterum** or **alter, altera, alterum et vīcēsimus, -a, -um** twenty-second

1. In the numbers from 21 to 29, for example, the numbers up to 27 are made by *adding to twenty* the necessary numbers from 1 to 7. The numbers 28–29 are made by *subtracting from thirty* the numbers 2 and 1. Such a system is followed in every unit of ten numbers.

Arabic Numeral	Roman Numeral	*Cardinal Number*	*Ordinal Number*
23	XXIII	**vīgintī trēs** or **trēs et vīgintī** twenty-three	**vīcesimus tertius, -a, -um** or **tertius et vīcēsimus, -a, -um** twenty-third
28	XXVIII	**duodētrīgintā** twenty-eight	**duodētrīcēsimus, -a, -um** twenty-eighth
29	XXVIIII or XXIX	**ūndētrīgintā** twenty-nine	**ūndētrīcēsimus, -a, -um** twenty-ninth
30	XXX	**trīgintā** thirty	**trīcēsimus, -a, -um** thirtieth
40	XXXX or XL	**quadrāgintā** forty	**quadrāgēsimus, -a, -um** fortieth
50	L	**quīnquāgintā** fifty	**quīnquāgēsimus, -a, -um** fiftieth
60	LX	**sexāgintā** sixty	**sexāgēsimus, -a, -um** sixtieth
70	LXX	**septuāgintā** seventy	**septuāgēsimus, -a, -um** seventieth
80	LXXX	**octōgintā** eighty	**octōgēsimus, -a, -um** eightieth
90	LXXXX or XC	**nōnāgintā** ninety	**nōnāgēsimus, -a, -um** ninetieth
100	C	**centum** hundred	**centēsimus, -a, -um** hundredth
200	CC	**ducentī, -ae, -a**	**ducentēsimus, -a, -um**
300	CCC	**trecentī, -ae, -a**	**trecentēsimus, -a, -um**
400	CCCC	**quadringentī, -ae, -a**	**quadringentēsimus, -a, -um**
500	D	**quīngentī, -ae, -a**	**quīngentēsimus, -a, -um**
600	DC	**sēscentī, -ae, -a**	**sēscentēsimus, -a, -um**
700	DCC	**septingentī, -ae, -a**	**septingentēsimus, -a, -um**
800	DCCC	**octingentī, -ae, -a**	**octingentēsimus, -a, -um**
900	DCCCC	**nōngentī, -ae, -a**	**nōngentēsimus, -a, -um**
1000	M	**mīlle; mīlia, mīlium**	**mīllēsimus, -a, -um**

duo, duae, duo has an irregular declension. **trēs, tria** is declined regularly as a third-declension adjective (*plural* forms *only*). The stem is **tr-**.

	Plural				*Plural*	
	M.	F.	N.		M./F.	N.
Nom.	**duo**	**duae**	**duo**	Nom.	**trēs**	**tria**
Gen.	**duōrum**	**duārum**	**duōrum**	Gen.	**trium**	**trium**
Dat.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	Dat.	**tribus**	**tribus**
Acc.	**duo**	**duās**	**duo**	Acc.	**trēs**	**tria**
Abl.	**duōbus**	**duābus**	**duōbus**	Abl.	**tribus**	**tribus**

MEMORIZE THE CARDINAL NUMBERS 1 TO 10 (INCLUDING THE DECLENSIONS OF **DUO, DUAE, DUO** AND **TRĒS, TRIA**), 100, AND 1000. MEMORIZE THE ORDINAL NUMBERS THAT CORRESPOND TO 1 TO 10. REFER TO THIS SECTION WHENEVER CARDINAL OR ORDINAL NUMBERS APPEAR IN READINGS.

The cardinal numbers 200 to 900 are all declined (plural forms only) as first-second-declension adjectives. **mīlle** is indeclinable in the singular, but **mīlia, mīlium**

is declined regularly as a neuter plural substantive of a third-declension adjective. The stem is **mīl-**. The Romans frequently measured distance in "thousands of paces" or "miles." For example:

mīlle passuum	one thousand of paces, one mile (**passus**, **passūs** *m.* pace)
decem mīlia passuum	ten thousands of paces, ten miles

OBSERVATION

In the expressions above the syntax of **passuum** is Partitive Genitive.

CHAPTER X

Vocabulary

➤ **lēgātus, lēgātī** *m.* legate, envoy; lieutenant
➤ **nātus, nātī** *m.* son

➤ **dux, ducis** *m.* or *f.* leader
➤ **fīnis, fīnis, -ium** *m.* or *f.* end, limit, boundary; *pl.,* territory
➤ **genus, generis** *n.* descent, origin; race, stock; kind, sort
➤ **labor, labōris** *m.* work, labor; effort, hardship
➤ **mōs, mōris** *m.* custom, practice; *pl. (sometimes),* character
➤ **opus, operis** *n.* work
  ➤ **opus est** (idiom) there is need of (+ abl. or nom.)
➤ **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis** *f.* oration, speech
  ōrātiōnem habēre (idiom) to make a speech
  ōrātor, ōrātōris *m.* speaker, orator
➤ **pectus, pectoris** *n. sing. or pl.,* chest, breast; heart

➤ **cāsus, cāsūs** *m.* fall; occurrence; chance, misfortune
  metus, metūs *m.* fear, dread

  spēs, speī *f.* hope

➤ **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** (indef. pron.) (a) certain person, (a) certain thing
➤ **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (indef. adj.) (a) certain

➤ **oppugnō** (1-tr.) attack
  servō (1-tr.) save, preserve
➤ **stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus** stand; stand fast, endure

  dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus destroy

➤ **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus** fall; die
➤ **nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum** be born
➤ **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus** come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect,* know
  ➤ **cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus** come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect,* know
➤ **proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum** set out, set forth
➤ **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum** use; experience; enjoy (+ abl.)

➤ **perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus** suffer, endure; report
➤ **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** bring back; report

➤ **aequus, -a, -um** level, even; equitable, just; calm, tranquil
  ➤ **inīquus, -a, -um** uneven; inequitable, unjust
➤ **honestus, -a, -um** honorable, respectable
➤ **medius, -a, -um** middle (of); *neut. subst.,* midst; the open
➤ **nōtus, -a, -um** known, well-known; familiar

➤ **apud** (prep. + acc.) at the house of, in the presence of, among
➤ **contrā** (adv.) on the contrary, in opposition; in turn
  (prep. + acc.) against, contrary to; facing
➤ **magnopere** (adv.) greatly
  quīn (conj.) *introduces Relative Clause of Characteristic,* who/that . . . not (§94)
➤ **satis/sat** (adv.) enough, sufficiently;
  (indeclinable neut. subst.) enough

Vocabulary Notes

- **lēgātus, lēgātī** *m.* may refer to a "legate" or "envoy" involved in matters of diplomacy. It may also be used to identify an assistant to an army commander or provincial governor (lieutenant, legate).
- **nātus, nātī** *m.* means "a male having been born" and is a substantive of the perfect passive participle of **nāscor**. Less common is the feminine substantive **nāta, nātae** *f.*, "daughter."
- **dux, ducis** *m.* or *f.* may mean a "leader" in the sense of a "guide," but it is commonly used for a political or military "leader."
- The gender of **fīnis, fīnis, -ium** is regularly masculine, but in early Latin and in poetry the singular only is sometimes treated as feminine. In the plural, **fīnis** may refer to the "boundary" of a territory or country and, by extension, the "territory" that is enclosed by boundaries.
- **genus, generis** *n.* is derived from the PIE root ***genE-** (give birth, bear). **genus** may refer to an individual's "origin" or "birth." It may refer more broadly to a "race" or "class" of people or things that arise from a single origin (human race, race of the gods, Greek stock). When used of abstract things, it often means "sort" or "kind," the abstract class to which someone or something belongs.
- **labor, labōris** *m.* means the abstract concept of "work" or "the act of working" (labor). **labor** may also mean the "effort" or "hardship" required to accomplish something.
- **mōs, mōris** *m.* means "custom," an established practice as opposed to an enacted law. The plural **mōrēs** may mean "customs," but it may also refer to the collective habits of an individual and thus may be translated "character."
- **opus, operis** *n.* may mean something that needs to be done (work [to do]) or something that has been accomplished ([piece of] work, product, achievement). **opus** may convey the sense of how much is required to accomplish something (effort), and it is often used for the products of artistic endeavor (poetic work).

Hoc opus perficere nōn poterit.	He will not be able to complete this work.
Clāra sunt opera poētārum.	The works of the poets are famous.

- The idiom **opus est** most often takes an ablative to express the thing needed. This ablative is translated with the English preposition "of." It is also common for a Dative of Reference to occur with this idiom.

Mihi opus est magnā dīligentiā.	There is need to me of great diligence. I need great diligence.

Less frequently, the thing needed is the Nominative, Subject, and **opus** functions as a Predicate Nominative. A Nominative, Subject occurs most often when the subject is a neuter pronoun.

Hoc mihi opus est.	This thing is a need to me. There is need to me of this thing. I need this thing.

Rarely **opus est** takes a genitive of the thing needed.

- **ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis** *f.* may mean the abstract notion of "speaking," the power of "speech," or a particular "speech" or "oration."
- **pectus, pectoris** *n.*, "chest," "breast"; "heart," often appears in the plural in poetry with the same meanings as the singular.
- **cāsus, cāsūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tus** to a stem of the verb **cadō**. The **-t-** of the suffix assimilated to the **-s-** of the stem **cās-** and was then lost. In addition to its basic meaning of "fall," **cāsus** refers to the "occurrence" of an event, usually by chance (accident), which may be positive (fortune) or negative (misfortune).
- **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** is an *indefinite pronoun* formed by the addition of the suffix **-dam** to the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod**. An **indefinite pronoun** is a pronoun that does not define or specify the person or thing for which it stands. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR DECLENSION.

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quīdam**	**quaedam**	**quiddam**	**quīdam**	**quaedam**	**quaedam**
Gen.	**cuiusdam**	**cuiusdam**	**cuiusdam**	**quōrundam**	**quārundam**	**quōrundam**
Dat.	**cuidam**	**cuidam**	**cuidam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**
Acc.	**quendam**	**quandam**	**quiddam**	**quōsdam**	**quāsdam**	**quaedam**
Abl.	**quōdam**	**quādam**	**quōdam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**

The declension of **quīdam** follows the declension of **quī**, **quae**, **quod** with certain variations:

1. The neuter singular nominative and accusative are formed by the addition of **-dam** to **quid**.
2. In the masculine and feminine singular accusative and the masculine, feminine, and neuter plural genitive, the final **-m** changes to an **-n-** before **-dam**.

➤ **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** is an *indefinite adjective* formed by the addition of the suffix **-dam** to the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod**. An **indefinite adjective** is an adjective that does not define or specify the person or thing it modifies. The declension of **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** is identical with that of **quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** except in the neuter singular nominative and accusative (cf. **quoddam** with **quiddam**).

Quīdam Rōmam vēnit.	A certain man came to Rome. (indefinite pronoun)
Poēta quīdam Rōmam vēnit.	A certain poet came to Rome. (indefinite adjective)

➤ **oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **pugnō**. Unlike **pugnō**, **oppugnō** is a transitive verb.

Incolae oppidum oppugnant.	The inhabitants are attacking the town.

➤ **stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus** is an irregular intransitive first-conjugation verb. The third principal part exhibits reduplication, and the fourth principal part has a short **-a-**. In addition to its basic meaning of "stand," **stō** may also mean "remain standing," "endure," or "last."

➤ **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus** is an intransitive verb. The third principal part, **cecidī**, exhibits reduplication. In addition to its basic meaning of "fall," **cadō** may also mean "cease" (when the subject is winds, noise, etc.). It may also have the extended meaning of "die" or "perish."

➤ **nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum** is an intransitive deponent verb. Compounds of **nāscor** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **NĀSCOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

➤ **nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus** is derived from the PIE root ***gneO-** (know). It is an *inchoative* (< **incohō**, start) or *inceptive* (< **incipiō**, begin) verb. An **inchoative** verb indicates that an action is *beginning to occur*. All verbs whose first and second principal parts end in **-scō** and **-scere** are in origin inchoative verbs. The basic meaning of **nōscō** is "begin to know" and thus "learn." The *perfect* indicative of many inchoative verbs is often equivalent to an English *present* tense since the perfect tense indicates the *completion* of the action of the verb. **nōvī** means "I have learned" and thus "I know." The *pluperfect* forms may be translated as if they were *imperfect*, and the *future perfect* forms as if they were *future*. On occasion, the perfect tense may be translated "have learned" or "learned," but the meaning "know" is more common. When **nōscō** in the perfect tenses takes an infinitive, it means "know how."

Nātūram hominum nōscere optō.	I desire to learn the nature of human beings.
Lēgēs huius urbis nōvistī?	Do you know [= Have you learned] the laws of this city?
Nōverāsne lēgēs huius urbis?	Did you know (progressive [=Had you learned]) the laws of this city?

The present forms of **nōscō** may mean "recognize" or "become acquainted with" a person. The perfect forms may mean "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" a person or an object of study.

Cicerōnem nōn nōvī.	I do not know (am not acquainted with) Cicero.

➤ **cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **com-** to **nōscō**. It exhibits irregular vowel weakening in the fourth principal part. **cognōscō** is a strengthened form of **nōscō** with all the same meanings.

➤ **proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum** is an intransitive third-conjugation deponent verb. In origin an inchoative verb, **proficīscor** means "set out" or "set forth" on a journey or from a certain starting point.

➤ **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum** is an intransitive verb that takes an *ablative* of the thing used or experienced. The ablative is translated as a direct object in English. Compounds of **ūtor** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **ŪTOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

Tuō cōnsiliō ūtar.	I shall use your advice.
Utinam bonā nunc fortūnā ūterēmur.	If only we were experiencing good fortune now.

➤ **perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to **ferō**. **perferō** regularly means "endure" or "suffer" (hardships, troubles), but it may also mean "report" or "express."

➤ **referō, referre, rettulī, relātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **re-** to **ferō**. Although **referō** may mean "carry back," it most commonly means "report."

➤ From the basic physical meaning of **aequus, -a, -um** (level or even) come its more expanded senses of "fair" or "just" (level in a legal or political context) and "calm" or "tranquil" (i.e., level-headed). **inīquus, -a, -um** is a compound adjective formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** (not) to **aequus**.

➤ **honestus, -a, -um** is an adjective derived from the noun **honor, honōris** *m.*, "(political) office"; "honor," "repute." In the strictest sense **honestus** describes a person who is "honorable" or "respectable" because he has held a public office. **honestus** has a more extended sense of being "morally honorable" *or* "respectable."

➤ **medius, -a, -um** expresses the notion of the "middle of" a place by modifying that place. It usually appears before the noun it modifies. As a neuter substantive, **medius** is often translated "midst" or "the open."

Mīlitēs in mediā urbe ā rēge positī sunt.
Soldiers were placed in the middle of the city by the king.
Postquam populō dīxit, ē mediō discessit.
After he spoke to the people, he departed (out) from (their) midst.
Cōnsul tōtam rem in mediō posuit.
The consul placed the whole matter in the open.

➤ The fourth principal part of **nōscō, nōtus, -a, -um** (having been learned) often appears as an adjective meaning "known," "well-known," or "familiar." The adjective **nōtus, -a, -um** often appears with a Dative of Reference.

➤ **apud** is a preposition that takes the accusative. It may mean "at the house of," "in the presence of," "among," or "with" (individuals, groups), and "in (the writings of)" (authors, books). Context usually makes clear the appropriate translation.

Cicerō apud frātrem manet.	Cicero is staying at the house of/with (his) brother.
Haec apud Rōmānōs sunt iūra.	These are the laws among the Romans.
Haec verba apud Cicerōnem lēgī.	I have read the following words in (the writings of) Cicero.

➤ **contrā** is an adverb that is often used to emphasize that a statement or action opposes an earlier one (on the contrary, in opposition). Sometimes the second action is understood to be reciprocal rather than in opposition (in turn).

Tibi malus vidētur? Mihi contrā bonus.
Does he seem bad to you? To me, on the contrary, (he seems) good.
Fīlius patrem amat, pater contrā fīlium.
The son loves the father, the father in turn (loves) the son.

contrā is also a preposition that takes the accusative. It may have meanings analogous to those of the adverb (against, contrary to), or, particularly with verbs that mean "stand," it may mean "facing."

Contrā hostēs īvimus.	We went against the enemies.
Hostēs contrā nostrōs stābant.	The enemies were standing facing our men.

➤ The adverb **magnopere** is in origin the Ablative of Manner **magnō opere**, "with great work," and it is sometimes written as two words.

➤ **satis** may be an indeclinable neuter substantive, which is often followed by a Partitive Genitive, or an adverb. The shortened form **sat** is more common in poetry.

Satis agricolae est ager bonus.	A good field is enough for the farmer. (subst.)
Satisne cōpiārum tibi est?	Do you have enough (of) troops? (subst. + Partitive Gen.)
Satisne labōrābās?	Were you working enough? (adverb)

	Derivatives	Cognates
cadō	**cad**aver; **cad**ence; cas**cade**; case; chance; acc**id**ent; occ**a**sion; de**cid**uous	
fīnis	de**fine**; **fin**al; fine; finish	
genus	**genu**ine; **gen**der; **gen**re; en**gine**; **germ**; **geni**tal; mali**gn**	kind; **king**; **gen**ocide; **gen**e
mōs	**mo**ral; **mo**rose; mores	**mood**
nōscō	**not**ice; **not**orious; **not**ify	know; can; ken; dia**gnos**is; **no**ble
cognōscō	**cogni**tion; re**cogni**tion	
satis	**satis**fy; **sa**turate; **sa**tire	sad
spēs		de**spa**ir; pro**sp**er, **sp**eed
ūtor	use; **ut**ility; **ut**ensil	

§94. Relative Clauses of Characteristic

When the verb in a relative clause is in the indicative mood, the relative clause helps make clear *what specific person or thing* is indicated by the antecedent. For example:

Virum quī rem pūblicam petit nōn laudāmus.
The (specific) man (d.o.) who the republic (d.o.) is (actually) attacking we do not praise.
We do not praise the man who is attacking the republic.

When the verb in a relative clause is in the subjunctive rather than the indicative mood, the relative clause may supply information about *what sort of person or thing* is indicated by the antecedent. Such a clause is called a **Relative Clause of Characteristic**.[1] For example:

Virum *quī rem pūblicam petat* nōn laudāmus.
A man (d.o.) *who the republic (d.o.) would attack* we do not praise.
We do not praise a man *who would attack the republic.*
We do not praise a man *of the sort who attacks the republic.*
Virum *quī rem pūblicam petīverit* nōn laudāmus.
A man (d.o.) *of the sort who the republic (d.o.) attacked* we do not praise.
We do not praise a man *of the sort who attacked the republic.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. The subjunctive mood in Relative Clauses of Characteristic developed from the Potential subjunctive, and it both generalizes about and characterizes an indefinite antecedent.

2. Unlike Purpose clauses and Indirect Commands, Relative Clauses of Characteristic may use both the perfect subjunctive (in primary sequence) and the pluperfect subjunctive (in secondary sequence) because the action of a Relative Clause of Characteristic may have occurred prior to the main verb. Thus in the second sentence above **petīverit** is used to indicate time prior to the main verb and is translated accordingly.

3. The tenses of the subjunctive verbs in Relative Clauses of Characteristic follow the rules of sequence. The syntax of **petat** in the first sentence is **present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Characteristic, primary sequence, time subsequent to the main verb**. The syntax of **petīverit** in the second sentence is **perfect subjunctive, Relative Clause of Characteristic, primary sequence, time prior to the main verb**.

4. In a translation of a Relative Clause of Characteristic, the relative pronoun is most often translated "of the sort who/that . . . ," and the subjunctive is translated as an indicative. Sometimes a Relative Clause of Characteristic in the present or imperfect subjunctive may be translated "who/that . . . would . . ."

Certain formulaic phrases with *indefinite antecedents* regularly introduce Relative Clauses of Characteristic. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING PHRASES:

Quis est quī . . .	Who is there (of the sort) who . . . (would)
Quid est quod . . .	What is there (of the sort) that . . . (would)
Nēmō est quī . . .	There is no one (of the sort) who . . . (would)
Nihil est quod . . .	There is nothing (of the sort) that . . . (would)
Sunt quī . . .	There are people (of the sort) who . . . (would)
Sōlus est quī . . .	He is the only one (of the sort) who . . . (would)

1. The Relative Clause of Characteristic is also known as the **Generic Relative Clause**.

In addition to various unspecified or indefinite antecedents, any person or thing may serve as the antecedent for a Relative Clause of Characteristic. For example:

Cicerō erat quī vītam prō rē pūblicā daret.
Cicero was (a man) who would give (his) life for the republic.
Illud est verbum quod omnēs intellegant.
That is a word of the sort that all men understand.
That is a word that all men would understand.

When the main clause contains an expressed or implied negation, the conjunction **quīn** (without its being the case that) may replace a relative pronoun in introducing a Relative Clause of Characteristic. A relative pronoun and the English adverb "not" should be added to the translation of such a clause. For example:

Nēmō est *quīn* prō patriā pugnet.
There is no one *who* would *not* fight for (his) homeland.
Sōla erat *quīn* haec intellegeret.
She was the only one *of the sort who* did *not* understand these things.

☛ Drill 94, page 413, may now be done.

§95. Introduction to Participles

A participle has been defined as a *verbal adjective* with the properties of *tense* and *voice,* and one participle, the perfect passive participle, has already been learned. There are a total of four participles in Latin: present active, perfect passive, future active, and future passive.[2] The following chart presents all the participles and their basic translations:

	Active	*Passive*
Present	Present Stem + **-ns**, **-ntis** (for 3rd-i-stem- and 4th-conjugation verbs, change the stem vowel to **-ie-**) **vocāns, vocantis** **movēns, moventis** **regēns, regentis** "_____ing" **capiēns, capientis** **audiēns, audientis**	——
Perfect	——	4th Principal Part **vocātus, -a, -um** **mōtus, -a, -um** **rēctus, -a, -um** "(having been) **captus, -a, -um** _____ed" **audītus, -a, -um**
Future	drop the **-us, -a, -um** from 4th Principal Part and add **-ūrus, -a, -um** **vocātūrus, -a, -um** "about to **mōtūrus, -a, -um** _____" **rēctūrus, -a, -um** **captūrus, -a, -um** "going to **audītūrus, -a, -um** _____"	Present Stem + **-ndus, -a, -um** (for 3rd-i-stem- and 4th-conjugation verbs, change the stem vowel to **-ie-**) **vocandus, -a, -um** **movendus, -a, -um** **regendus, -a, -um** "having to be **capiendus, -a, -um** _____ed" **audiendus, -a, -um**

OBSERVATIONS

1. A present active participle is a third-declension adjective with one nominative singular form for the masculine, feminine, and neuter (cf. **ingēns, ingentis**). Its stem is found by dropping the ending **-is** from the genitive singular form (§56). *Unlike* other third-declension adjectives, the present active participle has **-ī** *or* **-e** as its *masculine/feminine singular ablative* ending. When the participle functions as an adjective and modifies an expressed noun, the ablative singular ending is usually **-ī**. When the participle functions as a substantive, the ablative singular ending is usually **-e**. For example:

dē virō regentī	about the ruling man (adjective)
dē regente	about the ruling man/ruler (substantive)

2. The Latin verb has neither a present passive nor a perfect active participle.

2. A short vowel *lengthens* before the nominative singular ending of the present active participle (**-ns**) (e.g., **regēns** < **rege-** + **ns**). However, a long vowel *shortens* before the **-nt-** at the end of the stem (e.g., **vocant-** < **vocā-** + **-nt-**).

3. The perfect passive participle of intransitive verbs (e.g., **veniō**) may occur only in the impersonal passive construction with a neuter singular ending (e.g., **ventum est**) (§54).

4. The fourth principal parts of certain intransitive verbs that lack perfect passive participles are future active participles: **futūrus**, **-a**, **-um** (about to be); **caritūrus**, **-a**, **-um** (about to lack), etc.

5. A long vowel shortens before the **-nd-** at the end of the stem of the future passive participle (e.g., **vocand-** < **vocā-** + **-nd-**).

6. The future passive participle conveys a sense of obligation or necessity. For example: **oppidum capiendum**, "the town having to be captured" (nom./acc.). For the use of the future passive participle of intransitive verbs in an impersonal passive construction, see §99.

Participles of Irregular Verbs

Sum has only a future active participle (the fourth principal part), **futūrus**, **-a**, **-um**, "about to/going to be." **Possum** has no participles.

The present active participle of **eō** is irregular: **iēns**, **euntis** (stem = **eunt-**). The future passive participle of **eō** is also irregular: **eundum**. For its use in an impersonal passive construction, see §99. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR PARTICIPLES. **Eō** forms its future active participle regularly: **itūrus**, **-a**, **-um**.

Ferō forms its present active participle regularly: **ferēns**, **ferentis**.

The regular verb **morior** has an irregular future active participle: **moritūrus**, **-a**, **-um**. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR PARTICIPLE.

Participles of Deponent and Semideponent Verbs

The participles of deponent and semideponent verbs follow all the same rules of formation that apply to nondeponent verbs. However, deponent and semideponent verbs have the following participles:

Present active participles that are *active* in both *form* and *meaning*
Perfect passive participles that are *passive* in *form* but *active* in *meaning*
Future active participles that are *active* in both *form* and *meaning*
Future passive participles that are *passive* in both *form* and *meaning*

The following chart provides an example of the forms and basic translations of the participles of deponent verbs.

	Active	*Passive*
Present	**patiēns** enduring	———
Perfect	———	**passus**, **-a**, **-um** having endured
Future	**passūrus**, **-a**, **-um** about to/going to endure	**patiendus**, **-a**, **-um** having to be endured

§96. Synopsis VI: Indicative, Subjunctive, Participle, Infinitive, and Imperative

When one generates a synopsis that includes participles, they follow the subjunctive and precede the infinitive and imperative. Here is a model synopsis of **sentiō** in the third-person singular feminine:

Principal Parts: **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus**
Person, Number, and Gender: **3rd sing. f.**

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	**sentit**	she perceives	**sentītur**	she is (being) perceived
Imperfect	**sentiēbat**	she was perceiving	**sentiēbātur**	she was being perceived
Future	**sentiet**	she will perceive	**sentiētur**	she will be perceived
Perfect	**sēnsit**	1. she perceived 2. she has perceived	**sēnsa est**	1. she was perceived 2. she has been perceived
Pluperfect	**sēnserat**	she had perceived	**sēnsa erat**	she had been perceived
Future Perfect	**sēnserit**	she will have perceived	**sēnsa erit**	she will have been perceived
Subjunctive				
Present	**sentiat**		**sentiātur**	
Imperfect	**sentīret**		**sentīrētur**	
Perfect	**sēnserit**		**sēnsa sit**	
Pluperfect	**sēnsisset**		**sēnsa esset**	
Participle				
Present	**sentiēns**	perceiving	———	
Perfect	———		**sēnsus, -a, -um**	(having been) perceived
Future	**sēnsūrus, -a, -um**	about to perceive	**sentiendus, -a, -um**	having to be perceived
Infinitive				
Present	**sentīre**	to perceive	**sentīrī**	to be perceived
Imperative				
Singular	**sentī**	perceive	**sentīre**	be perceived
Plural	**sentīte**	perceive (pl.)	**sentīminī**	be perceived (pl.)

OBSERVATION

Since participles are not finite forms, one always gives the *full nominative singular* no matter what person, number, and gender have been chosen for the indicative and subjunctive forms. In synopses of intransitive verbs, the perfect passive and future passive participles are given in the neuter singular nominative only (e.g., **cessum**, **cēdendum**).

☛ DRILL 95–96, PAGE 417, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§97. Notes on the Participle: Relative Time; Attributive and Circumstantial Uses

The three tenses of the participle—present, perfect, future—*have no absolute time values of their own;* rather, they have only *relative time:*

A *present* participle indicates an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb.
A *perfect* participle indicates an action that is *prior* to the main verb.
A *future* participle indicates an action that is *subsequent* to the main verb.

For example:

Hominēs in agrīs *labōrantēs* vīdī. (present active participle)
The men (d.o.) in the fields *working* I saw.
I saw the men *working* in the fields.
Mihi dē mīlitibus *captīs* dīcit. (perfect passive participle)
To me about the (having been) *captured* soldiers he is speaking.
He is speaking to me about the *captured* soldiers.
Rēx *discessūrus* arma cēpit. (future active participle)
The king *about to depart* took up arms.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the present active participle **labōrantēs** indicates an action occurring at the same time as the main verb, **vīdī**.

2. In the second sentence the perfect passive participle **captīs** indicates an action that occurred before the main verb, **dīcit**.

3. In the third sentence the future active participle **discessūrus** indicates an action that is to occur after the main verb, **cēpit**.

4. Since a participle is a verbal adjective, it usually follows the noun it modifies. Often a participle is separated from its noun by several words in order to enclose a phrase that is syntactically connected to the participle. For example, **labōrantēs** is separated from **hominēs** to enclose the prepositional phrase **in agrīs**.

As in the sentences above, a participle may be used simply to indicate that the noun it modifies has the *attribute* or *quality* described by the participle. Such a use of the participle is called **attributive**. The basic translations supplied for the four Latin participles (_____ing, [having been] _____ed, about to _____, and having to be _____ed) are usually used for translating attributive participles. It is sometimes convenient to translate an attributive participle with a relative clause in English. For example, the last sentence above may be translated "The king *who was about to depart* took up arms." In such a translation care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle to the main verb.

A participle may also be used to describe the *circumstances* under which the action of the main clause occurs. This use of the participle is called **circumstantial**. Often the circumstances described by such a participle may be more specifically **temporal**, **causal**, **concessive**, or **conditional**. A phrase containing a circumstantial participle is often best translated into English as a subordinate clause introduced by a subordinating conjunction. For example:

***Marcus ad forum iēns* interfectus est.**
Marcus going to the forum was killed.
While/When Marcus was going to the forum, he was killed. (temporal)
Because Marcus was going to the forum, . . . (causal)
Although Marcus was going to the forum, . . . (concessive)

***Marcus ad forum iēns* interficiātur.**
Marcus going to the forum would be killed.
If Marcus should go to the forum, he would be killed. (conditional)

***Caesar suōs hortātus* discessit.**
Caesar his own (men) (d.o.) having encouraged departed.
When Caesar had encouraged his own men, he departed. (temporal)
After Caesar encouraged his own men, . . . (temporal)

***Rēx moritūrus* servōs līberāvit.**
The king about to die freed (his) slaves.
When the king was about to die, he freed (his) slaves. (temporal)
Because the king was about to die, . . . (causal)
Although the king was about to die, . . . (concessive)

***Mīles timōre carēns* nōn tamen pugnat.**
Although the soldier is without fear, nevertheless he is not fighting. (concessive)

OBSERVATIONS

1. A circumstantial participle may be translated using the basic translation of the participle, but often the full meaning of the participial phrase requires that it be translated as a subordinate clause. When a circumstantial participle is translated as part of a subordinate clause, the participle is translated as a *finite verb*. In such a translation care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle to the main verb.

2. A circumstantial participle with conditional force always functions as the protasis of a conditional sentence. The main verb is the verb of the apodosis, and it provides the only indication of what type of conditional sentence is represented. In the second sentence above, the main verb **interficiātur** (present subjunctive) indicates that the conditional sentence is a Future Less Vivid, and the participle **iēns** is translated accordingly (If . . . should go).

3. The appropriate force of a circumstantial participle (temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional) can usually be determined by context only. A circumstantial participle with concessive force may be indicated by the presence of the adverb **tamen** (nevertheless) at or near the beginning of the main clause. When **tamen** appears in the main clause, the participle is translated as part of a concessive subordinate clause beginning with the conjunction "although." A circumstantial participle with conditional force is often indicated by the presence of a main verb in the subjunctive, as in the second sentence above.

☛ Drill 97, page 421, may now be done.

§98. Ablative Absolute

A noun in the ablative case that is *accompanied by a circumstantial participle* and *unconnected in syntax* with the rest of the sentence is called an **Ablative Absolute** (< **absolūtus**, having been freed from). For example:

***Mīlitibus discēdentibus*, omnēs cīvēs ob timōrem fugiēbant.**
(With) the soldiers departing, all the citizens on account of fear were fleeing.
When the soldiers were departing, . . .
Because the soldiers were departing, . . .
Although the soldiers were departing, . . .

***Perfectō bellō*, cōnsul Rōmam rediit.**
(With) the war having been completed, the consul to Rome returned.
When the war had been completed, the consul returned to Rome.
Because the war had been completed, . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. An Ablative Absolute functions as a subordinate clause and is part of a complex sentence. Like all participles, the participle in an Ablative Absolute shows time relative to the main verb. In translations of Ablatives Absolute care must be taken to show the relative time of the participle.

2. An Ablative Absolute is often best translated with a temporal, causal, concessive, or conditional clause.

3. The present active and the perfect passive participles appear most often in Ablatives Absolute. The present active participle in the singular in an Ablative Absolute always ends in **-e**.

4. A participle in an Ablative Absolute may precede the noun, as in the second example above.

5. An Ablative Absolute often appears first in a sentence, and several Ablatives Absolute may appear together. The Ablative Absolute allows for the compression of several actions or events into one complex sentence.

Sometimes two nouns (or a noun and an adjective) in the ablative case may form an Ablative Absolute. For example:

***Rōmulō rēge*, fēlīx erat urbs.**
(With) Romulus (being) king, the city was fortunate.
When Romulus was king, . . .

***Dīs inimīcīs*, Aenēās ad Italiam accēdere nōn poterat.**
(With) the gods (being) hostile, Aeneas was not able to approach Italy.
Because the gods were hostile, . . .

OBSERVATION

Since the verb **sum** lacks a present active participle, no participle appears in this type of Ablative Absolute, but the English present participle "being" is supplied as a copulative verb in a translation of an Ablative Absolute of this type. If the Ablative Absolute is translated as a subordinate clause, a finite form of "be" is supplied, and care must be taken to show relative time.

☛ DRILL 98, PAGE 427, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§99. Active and Passive Periphrastics

A finite, compound verb form that comprises a form of the future active participle and a form of **sum** is called an **active periphrastic** (< Greek *periphrazō*, speak around). For example:

Rōmā *discessūrī sumus*.	*We are going to depart* from Rome.
Rōmā *discessūrī erāmus*.	*We were going to depart* from Rome.
Rōmā *discessūrī erimus*.	*We shall be about to depart* from Rome.

OBSERVATIONS

1. An active periphrastic indicates a *future* or *intended* action (the future active participle) viewed from another point in time (the form of **sum**). The tense and mood of the active periphrastic are identical with the tense and mood of the form of **sum**. For example, **discessūrī sumus** is first person plural masculine present indicative of the active periphrastic. An active periphrastic may occur in any of the six tenses of the indicative or the four tenses of the subjunctive.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the future active participle in an active periphrastic.
3. An active periphrastic is best translated word by word, beginning with the form of **sum**.
4. As in the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the form of **sum** may appear before or after the participle in the active periphrastic. For example, **captūrus est** and **est captūrus** are equally correct.

A finite, compound verb form that comprises a form of the future passive participle and a form of **sum** is called a **passive periphrastic**. For example:

Cīvēs *regendī sunt*.	The citizens *are having to be ruled*.
	The citizens *must be ruled*.
	The citizens *have to be ruled*.
Cīvēs *regendī erant*.	The citizens *were having to be ruled*.
	The citizens *had to be ruled*.
Cīvēs *regendī erunt*.	The citizens *will be having to be ruled*.
	The citizens *will have to be ruled*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A passive periphrastic indicates an action that is viewed as *obligatory* (the future passive participle) at a certain point in time (the form of **sum**). The tense and mood of the passive periphrastic are identical with the tense and mood of the form of **sum**. For example, **regendī erant** is third person plural masculine imperfect indicative of the passive periphrastic. A passive periphrastic may occur in any of the six tenses of the indicative or the four tenses of the subjunctive.
2. The gender and number of the subject determine the ending of the future passive participle in a passive periphrastic.
3. Although passive periphrastics may be translated word by word, the alternate translations given above (must, have to, had to, will have to) are to be preferred. Note that "must" can be used *only* for the present indicative of the passive periphrastic.
4. As in the compound forms of the perfect passive system, the form of **sum** may appear before or after the participle in the passive periphrastic. For example, **capiendus est** and **est capiendus** are equally correct.

An active or passive periphrastic may appear wherever any finite verb form may be used. For example:

Mīles, sī hostem capiat, *laudandus sit*.
The soldier, if the enemy (d.o.) he should capture, *would be having to be praised.*
If the soldier should capture the enemy, *he would have to be praised.*

When an intransitive verb appears in a passive periphrastic, it is a type of impersonal passive construction. For example:

Rōmam veniendum est.	To Rome there must be a coming. There must be a coming to Rome.

§100. Dative of Agent with a Passive Periphrastic

A noun in the dative case is usually used with a passive periphrastic to express the *agent* or *person by whom* the action of the verb must be done. Such a dative is called a **Dative of Agent with a passive periphrastic**. For example:

Carmen *mihi* canendum est.	A poem *by me* must be sung. A poem must be sung *by me.*
***Tibi* moriendum erit.**	*By you* there will have to be a dying. *You* will have to die.

The syntax of the italicized words (**mihi, tibi**) is **Dative of Agent with a passive periphrastic.**

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Dative of Agent with a passive periphrastic is regularly used *instead of* an Ablative of Personal Agent when the verb is a passive periphrastic.[3]

2. When a Dative of Agent appears with an impersonal passive periphrastic, a less literal translation in the active voice may be used, as in the second translation of the second example.

3. Occasionally an Ablative of Personal Agent may be used with a passive periphrastic for the sake of clarity. For example:

Carmen tibi ā mē canendum est.	A poem must be sung for you by me.

In this sentence an Ablative of Personal Agent (**ā mē**) is used to avoid the confusion that might arise if there were two datives in the same sentence.

☛ Drill 99–100, page 431, may now be done.

3. The Dative of Agent may be derived from the Dative of the Possessor. Thus, **Carmen mihi canendum est** may be understood to mean "I have a poem having to be sung." Therefore, "A poem must be sung *by me.*"

§101. Genitive of Description

When a noun in the genitive case *modified by an adjective* is used to describe another noun, it is called a **Genitive of Description**. For example:

> **Rōmulus, vir magnae *dīligentiae*, multa perfēcit.**
> Romulus, a man of great *diligence*, accomplished many things.

The syntax of the italicized word (**dīligentiae**) is **Genitive of Description**.

§102. Ablative of Description

When a noun in the ablative case *modified by an adjective* is used to describe another noun, it is called an **Ablative of Description**. For example:

> **Sōlus cum multīs hostibus pugnābat. Erat enim magnā *virtūte*.**
> He alone with many enemies was fighting. For he was of (with) great *courage*.
> He alone was fighting with many enemies. For he was of great *courage*.

The syntax of the italicized word (**virtūte**) is **Ablative of Description**.

OBSERVATION

Like Latin, English attaches some descriptions with "of" and some with "with." Compare, for example, the phrases "men of great courage" and "men with blue eyes." English and Latin usages do not always coincide; therefore, idiomatic English may require "of" rather than "with" in the translation of an Ablative of Description.

The noun-adjective phrases that make up Genitives or Ablatives of Description function adjectivally in that they define or limit another noun. The Genitive of Description is thus an extension of the basic function of the genitive case. The Ablative of Description derives from that case's associative function since an Ablative of Description is an accompanying feature of the noun it describes. Although some kinds of descriptions are limited to the genitive (size, number) and some to the ablative (qualities of the body), in many expressions the Genitive and Ablative of Description appear to have converged in use and meaning during the classical period.

§103. Ablative of Origin

When the ablative case, with or without the preposition **ē/ex** or **dē**, reports *parentage* or *ancestry*, it is called an **Ablative of Origin**. For example:

Aenēās *(ē) deā* nātus est.	Aeneas *from a goddess* was born.
(**nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum** be born)	Aeneas was born *from a goddess*.

The syntax of the italicized word (**deā**) is **Ablative of Origin**. The Ablative of Origin is a particular variety of the Ablative of Separation (§58).

☛ DRILL 100–103, PAGE 437, MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. A brave and loyal slave faces the severest punishment with equanimity.

   post mortem in morte nihil est quod metuam malī. (Plautus, *Captīvī* 741)

metuō, **metuere**, **metuī**, —— fear, dread

2. A proverbial utterance

   dictum sapientī sat est. (Plautus, *Persa* 729)

sapiēns, **sapientis** sensible, wise

3. An exchange of pleasantries between two characters

   Callicles. Ehō tū, tua uxor, quid† agit? *Megaronides.* Immortālis est:
   vīvit vīctūraque est. (Plautus, *Trinummus* 55–56)

ehō (interj.) *used to attract attention,* hey
uxor, **uxōris** *f.* wife
†**quid**, *here,* how

4. A fragment from Ennius cited by Cicero for its brevity and truth

   mōribus antīquīs rēs stat Rōmāna virīsque. (Ennius, *Annālēs* V.156)

5. An alliterative line from Ennius

   ōrātor sine pāce redit rēgīque refert rem. (Ennius, *Annālēs* VI.202)

6. The poet describes what happens when news of battle is proclaimed.

   pellitur ē mediō sapientia, vī geritur rēs;
   spernitur ōrātor bonus, horridus mīles amātur;
   haud doctīs dictīs certantēs, sed maledictīs
   miscent inter sēsē inimīcitiās agitantēs. (Ennius, *Annālēs* VIII.248–51)

spernō, **spernere**, **sprēvī**, **sprētus** scorn, reject
horridus, **-a**, **-um** rough, wild; horrible
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
doctus, **-a**, **-um** learned, erudite
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
maledictum, **maledictī** *n.* insult, taunt
misceō, **miscēre**, **miscuī**, **mixtus** mix, stir up, produce
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion

7. The speaker of the prologue of the play generalizes about originality.

   nūllumst iam dictum quod nōn sit dictum prius. (Terence, *Eunuchus* 41)

prius (adv.) earlier, before

8. A fragment from the comic poet Lucilius about the relation between work and reward

   hunc labōrem sūmās laudem quī tibi ac frūctum ferat. (Lucilius, *Saturae* frag. 620)

sūmō, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus** take up, seize; take on
laus, **laudis** *f.* praise
frūctus, **frūctūs** *m.* profit, benefit, advantage

9. The character Thyestes speaks in a fragment of a Greek tragedy.

vigilandum est semper; multae īnsidiae sunt bonīs. (Accius, *Tragoediae* frag. 214)

vigilō (1-intr.) stay awake; be watchful, remain vigilant

10. The orator compares different faults in keeping accounts.

nam quem ad modum turpe est scrībere† quod nōn dēbeātur, sīc improbum est nōn referre quod dēbeās. aequē enim tabulae condemnantur eius quī vērum nōn rettulit et eius quī falsum perscrīpsit. (Cicero, *Prō Rosciō Comoedō* 2)

turpis, **turpe** base, shameful
†**scrībere**, i.e., *in account books*
improbus, **-a**, **-um** wicked, dishonest
tabulae, **tabulārum** *f. pl.* account books
condemnō (1-tr.) condemn, disapprove
perscrībō (**per-** + **scrībō**) write out; enter

11. Cicero asks Catiline a rhetorical question.

quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit, in quā nēmō est, extrā istam coniūrātiōnem perditōrum hominum, quī tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī nōn ōderit? (Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 13)

dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
extrā (prep. + acc.) outside
coniūrātiō, **coniūrātiōnis** *f.* conspiracy
perditus, **-a**, **-um** lost, desperate, degenerate
metuō, **metuere**, **metuī**, —— fear, dread

12. Cicero addresses Catiline directly.

ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna. līberā rem pūblicam metū; in exsilium, sī hanc vōcem exspectās, proficīscere. (Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 20)

ēgredior, **ēgredī**, **ēgressus sum** go out, depart
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect

13. Cicero begins the conclusion of the defense of his client Caelius.

cōnservāte igitur reī pūblicae, iūdicēs, cīvem bonārum artium, bonārum partium, bonōrum virōrum. (Cicero, *Prō Caeliō* 77)

cōnservō (**con-** + **servō**) (1-tr.) keep from danger, save, preserve
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore
iūdex, **iūdicis** *m.* juror, judge

14. Cicero reflects on a difference between the state and mankind.

itaque nūllus interitus est reī pūblicae nātūrālis ut hominis, in quō mors nōn modo† necessāria est, vērum etiam optanda persaepe.

(Cicero, *Dē Rē Pūblicā* III.34, frag. 2)

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
interitus, **interitūs** *m.* death, demise
nātūrālis, **nātūrāle** natural
†**nōn modo** = **nōn sōlum**
necessārius, **-a**, **-um** necessary
persaepe (adv.) very often

15. A definition of law

lēx est ratiō summa īnsita in nātūrā, quae iubet ea quae facienda sunt prohibetque contrāria. (Cicero, *Dē Lēgibus* I.18)

ratiō, **ratiōnis** *f.* account, reason; rationale
summus, **-a**, **-um** highest
īnsitus, **-a**, **-um** inborn
prohibeō (**prō-** + **habeō**), **prohibēre**, **prohibuī**, **prohibitus** prevent; prohibit, forbid
contrārius, **-a**, **-um** opposite, contrary

16. Cicero comments on the fate of the venerable Cato in the contemporary world.

Catōnem vērō quis nostrōrum ōrātōrum, quī quidem nunc sunt, legit? aut quis nōvit omnīnō? at quem virum,† dī bonī! mittō† cīvem aut senātōrem aut imperātōrem: ōrātōrem enim hōc locō quaerimus.† (Cicero, *Brūtus* 65)

at (conj.) but
†**quem virum**, *Accusative of Exclamation,* what a man!
†**mittō**, *here,* send away, dismiss
senātor, **senātōris** *m.* senator
imperātor, **imperātōris** *m.* commander, general
†**quaerō**, *here,* inquire into, examine, consider

17. While pleading in court before Caesar on behalf of a Roman ally, Cicero praises Caesar for his temperate behavior in the wake of his victory over Pompey.

quae semper in cīvīlī victōriā sēnsimus, ea tē victōre nōn vīdimus. sōlus, inquam, es, C. Caesar, cuius in victōriā ceciderit nēmō nisi armātus.

(Cicero, *Prō Rēge Dēiotarō* 32)

cīvīlis, **cīvīle** of *or* connected with citizens, civil; resulting from civil war
victōria, **victōriae** *f.* victory
victor, **victōris** *m.* conqueror, victor
armātus, **armātī** *m.* armed man, soldier

18. Part of a discussion about the nature of the soul

. . . nūlla est celeritās quae possit cum animī celeritāte contendere.

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.43)

celeritās, **celeritātis** *f.* speed
contendō, **contendere**, **contendī**, **contentus** contend; compare

19. A reflection on the causes of human responses to perilous situations

saepe enim multī, quī aut propter victōriae cupiditātem aut propter glōriae aut etiam ut iūs suum et lībertātem tenērent volnera excēpērunt fortiter et tulērunt, īdem omissā contentiōne dolōrem morbī ferre nōn possunt; neque enim illum quem facile tulerant ratiōne aut sapientiā tulerant, sed studiō potius et glōriā. (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* II.65)

victōria, **victōriae** *f.* victory
cupiditās, **cupiditātis** *f.* desire
volnus, **volneris** *n.* wound
excipiō (**ex-** + **capiō**) take out; absorb, sustain
omittō (**ob-** + **mittō**) discontinue, leave off
contentiō, **contentiōnis** *f.* effort; competition
dolor, **dolōris** *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
morbus, **morbī** *m.* disease, illness
ratiō, **ratiōnis** *f.* reason
potius (adv.) rather

20. Cicero paraphrases a common saying.

nihil est, inquiunt, quod deus efficere nōn possit. (Cicero, *Dē Dīvinātiōne* II.86)

efficiō (**ex-** + **faciō**) make; bring about

21. Cicero expresses his opinion on the only legitimate purpose for war.

quārē suscipienda quidem bella sunt ob eam causam, ut sine iniūriā in pāce vīvātur. (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* I.35)

suscipiō (**sub-** + **capiō**) undertake, venture upon
iniūria, **iniūriae** *f.* injustice, injury

22. Cicero notes that only one group of Romans was captured at the battle of Cannae.

octō hominum millia tenēbat Hannibal, nōn quōs in aciē cēpisset, aut quī perīculō mortis diffūgissent, sed quī relictī† in castrīs fuissent† ā Paulō et ā Varrōne cōnsulibus. (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* III.114)

millia = **mīlia**
diffugiō (**dis-** + **fugiō**) run away, flee in several directions, scatter
†**relictī . . . fuissent** = **relictī . . . essent**
castra, **castrōrum** *n. pl.* (military) encampment, camp
Paulus, **Paulī** *m.* (L. Aemilius) Paulus (consul 216 B.C.E., leader at the battle of Cannae)
Varrō, **Varrōnis** *m.* (C. Terentius) Varro (consul 216 B.C.E., leader at the battle of Cannae)

23. Cicero compares Marc Antony to Rome's ancient enemy Hannibal.

oppugnat† D. Brūtum, imperātōrem, cōnsulem dēsignātum, cīvem nōn sibi, sed nōbīs et reī pūblicae nātum. ergō Hannibal hostis, cīvis Antōnius? quid ille fēcit hostīliter quod hic nōn aut fēcerit aut faciat aut mōliātur et cōgitet?

(Cicero, *Philippics V* 24–25)

†**oppugnat**, *subject is Antony*
D. Brūtus, **D. Brūtī** *m.* D. Brutus (brother of M. Brutus)
imperātor, **imperātōris** *m.* commander, general
dēsignātus, **-a**, **-um** elect, appointed (but not yet installed)
ergō (adv.) therefore
hostīliter (adv.) in the manner of an enemy
mōlior, **mōlīrī**, **mōlītus sum** strive to bring about, plan

24. In a letter written in early 54 B.C.E. Cicero comments on the quality of Lucretius's poetry.

Lucrētī poēmata, ut scrībis, ita sunt, multīs lūminibus ingenī, multae tamen artis. (CICERO, *AD QUINTUM FRĀTREM* II.10.3)

Lucrētius, Lucrētiī *m.* Lucretius (94?–55? B.C.E., author of the poem *Dē Rērum Nātūrā*)
poēma, poēmatis *n.* poem; *pl.*, poetry
lūmen, lūminis *n.* light; illumination; ray of light

25. The deaths of brave centurions change the course of an apparently hopeless battle.

mīlitum pars hōrum† virtūte submōtīs hostibus praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbarīs circumventa periit. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* VI.40)

†**hōrum** refers to the dead centurions.
submoveō (sub- + moveō) move from an occupied position, drive off
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond
incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe
castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) encampment, camp
perveniō (per- + veniō) come through, arrive
barbarus, barbarī *m.* foreigner; barbarian
circumveniō (circum- + veniō) surround
pereō (per- + eō), perīre, periī, peritūrus pass away, be destroyed; perish, die

26. In his monograph on the conspiracy of Catiline, the historian introduces Catiline.

L. Catilīna, nōbilī genere nātus, fuit magnā vī et animī et corporis, sed ingeniō malō prāvōque. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 5)

nōbilis, nōbile noble
prāvus, -a, -um twisted, corrupt, perverse

27. The historian begins a brief survey of Roman history

urbem Rōmam, sīcutī ego accēpī, condidēre atque habuēre initiō Troiānī, quī Aenēā duce profugī sēdibus incertīs vagābantur, cumque hīs Aborīginēs, genus hominum agreste, sine lēgibus, sine imperiō, līberum atque solūtum. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 6)

sīcutī (conj.) just as
condō, condere, condidī, conditus found
initium, initiī *n.* beginning
Troiānus, -a, -um Trojan
profugus, -a, -um fugitive, fleeing; *masc. subst.*, exile; refugee
sēdēs, sēdis, -ium *f.* seat; home, abode
vagor (1-intr.) wander
Aborīginēs, Aborīginum *m. pl.* (the) Aborigines (the Italian ancestors of the Romans)
agrestis, agreste of *or* living in the fields, rustic; uncivilized
solūtus, -a, -um unrestricted, free; unconnected

28. The historian describes the reaction to Cato's speech advocating harsh punishment of the Catilinarian conspirators.

postquam Catō adsēdit, cōnsulārēs omnēs itemque senātūs magna pars sententiam eius laudant, virtūtem animī ad caelum ferunt, aliī aliōs increpantēs timidōs vocant. Catō clārus† atque magnus habētur. (Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 53)

adsīdō, **adsīdere**, **adsēdī**, —— sit down, take one's seat
cōnsulāris, **cōnsulāris**, **-ium** *m.* ex-consul
item (adv.) similarly, in turn, likewise
increpō, **increpāre**, **increpuī**, **increpitus** reproach, upbraid
timidus, **-a**, **-um** fearful, cowardly
†**clārus**, *here*, honorable

Two Roman proverbs

29. Amōrī fīnem tempus, nōn animus facit. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* A42)

30. Etiam hostī est aequus quī habet in cōnsiliō fidem. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* E15)

31. The poet speaks of a common impulse in all living creatures.

omne adeō genus in terrīs hominumque ferārumque
et genus aequoreum, pecudēs pictaeque volucrēs
in furiās ignemque ruunt: amor omnibus īdem. (Vergil, *Georgics* III.242–44)

adeō (adv.) indeed, in fact
fera, **ferae** *f.* wild animal, beast; **ferārumque** elides into the next line.
aequoreus, **-a**, **-um** of the sea, marine
pecus, **pecudis** *f.* (herd) animal
pictus, **-a**, **-um** painted, colored
volucris, **volucris**, **-ium** *f.* bird
furiae, **furiārum** *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy
ignis, **ignis**, **-ium** *m.* fire; rage, passion
ruō, **ruere**, **ruī**, —— rush

32. The severed head of Orpheus still calls for his wife in the underworld.

. . . Eurydicēn vōx ipsa et frīgida lingua
ā miseram Eurydicēn! animā fugiente vocābat;
Eurydicēn tōtō referēbant flūmine rīpae. (Vergil, *Georgics* IV.525–27)

Eurydicē, **Eurydicēs** *f.* Eurydice (wife of Orpheus); **Eurydicēn** = *acc. sing.*
frīgidus, **-a**, **-um** cold, icy
lingua, **linguae** *f.* tongue
ā (interj.) ah!
flūmen, **flūminis** *n.* river, stream
rīpa, **rīpae** *f.* (river) bank

33. The first four lines of Vergil's epic poem

Arma virumque canō, Troiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs
Ītaliam, fātō profugus Lāvīnaque vēnit
lītora, multum ille et terrīs iactātus et altō
vī superum, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob īram, . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.1–4)

ōra, **ōrae** *f.* shore
profugus, **-a**, **-um** fugitive, fleeing; *masc. subst.*, exile; refugee
Lāvīnus, **-a**, **-um** of Lavinium (a town in Italy); Lavinian
lītus, **lītoris** *n.* shore, beach
iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment
superī, **superōrum** *m. pl.* gods above; **superum** = **superōrum**
saevus, **-a**, **-um** cruel, savage
memor, **memoris** mindful, remembering

34. As Troy falls, the ghost of Hector speaks to Aeneas in a dream.

"heu, fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs," ait, "ēripe flammīs." (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.289)

aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
ēripiō, **ēripere**, **ēripuī**, **ēreptus** tear away, snatch away
flamma, **flammae** *f.* flame

35. As the battle turns, Turnus encourages himself.

audentīs Fortūna iuvat. . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* X.284)

iuvō, **iuvāre**, **iūvī**, **iūtus** help, assist, aid

36. The poet comments on Turnus's exultation in victory.

nescia mēns hominum fātī sortisque futūrae
et servāre modum rēbus sublāta secundīs! (VERGIL, *AENEID* X.501–2)

nescius, **-a**, **-um** not knowing, unaware (+ gen.); not knowing how (+ infin.)
sors, **sortis**, **-ium** *f.* lot, portion; destiny
tollō, **tollere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus** lift, raise; take away, carry off
secundus, **-a**, **-um** favorable

37. Aeneas addresses his son Ascanius.

disce, puer, virtūtem ex mē vērumque labōrem,
fortūnam ex aliīs. . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* XII.435–36)

discō, **discere**, **didicī**, —— learn

38. The poet addresses his patron Maecenas.

. . . magnum hoc ego dūcō,
quod† placuī tibi, quī turpī sēcernis honestum
nōn patre praeclārō, sed vītā et pectore pūrō. (HORACE, *SERMŌNĒS* I.6.62–64)

†**quod**, *here* (conj.) the fact that
turpis, **turpe** foul, ugly; base, shameful
sēcernō, **sēcernere**, **sēcrēvī**, **sēcrētus** separate, distinguish
praeclārus, **-a**, **-um** very famous
pūrus, **-a**, **-um** pure

39. The poet warns the would-be writer.

tū nihil invītā dīcēs faciēsve Minervā. (Horace, *Ars Poētica* 385)

invītus, **-a**, **-um** unwilling
-ve (enclitic conj.) or

40. The poet comments on the nature of love.

errat quī fīnem vēsānī quaerit amōris:
vērus amor nūllum nōvit habēre modum. (Propertius II.15.29–30)

vēsānus, **-a**, **-um** frenzied, mad, insane

41. The poet summarizes his view of one part of human nature.

singula nē referam, nīl nōn mortāle tenēmus
pectoris exceptīs ingeniīque bonīs. (Ovid, *Trīstia* III.7.43–44)

singulī, **-ae**, **-a** individual, single, one at a time
excipiō (**ex-** + **capiō**) take out; exclude

42. The historian describes the distribution of responsibilities by the senate after an embassy to the Latin tribe of the Aequi fails.

Rōmam ut rediēre lēgātī, senātus iussit alterum cōnsulem contrā Gracchum in Algidum exercitum dūcere, alterī populātiōnem fīnium Aequōrum prōvinciam† dedit. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* III.25.9)

Gracchus, **Gracchī** *m.* Gracchus
Algidus, **Algidī** *m.* Algidus (a mountain in Latium)
populātiō, **populātiōnis** *f.* plundering
Aequī, **Aequōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Aequi (an ancient people of Latium)
†**prōvincia**, *here,* special assignment *or* task

43. The historian describes an encounter in northern Italy between Carthaginian and Roman forces and the leaders of the two armies.

iam prope in cōnspectū erant exercitūs convēnerantque ducēs sīcutī inter sē nōndum satis nōtī, ita iam imbūtus uterque† quādam admīrātiōne alterīus. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXI.39.7)

prope (adv.) nearly
cōnspectus, **cōnspectūs** *m.* sight
conveniō (**con-** + **veniō**) come together
sīcutī (conj.) just as
nōndum (adv.) not yet
imbuō, **imbuere**, **imbuī**, **imbūtus** fill, imbue
†**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque** each; both
admīrātiō, **admīrātiōnis** *f.* wonder, admiration

44. The historian summarizes the situation on the Roman side after the disastrous defeat at Cannae.

ad Cannās fugientem cōnsulem vix quīnquāgintā secūtī sunt, alterīus morientis prope tōtus exercitus fuit. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.50.3)

Cannae, **Cannārum** *f. pl.* Cannae (a village in southeast Italy, site of Hannibal's greatest victory)
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly
prope (adv.) nearly, almost

45. A succinct summary of the Romans' defeat of King Antiochus's army in the narrow pass of Thermopylae in Greece

multīs in ipsō itinere caesīs captīsque, nōn equīs virīsque tantum sed etiam elephantīs, quōs capere nōn potuerant, interfectīs, in castra revertērunt; . . .

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXXVI.19.6)

iter, itineris *n.* journey
caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus slaughter, kill
tantum (adv.) only
elephantus, elephantī *m.* elephant
castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (military) camp
revertō, revertere, revertī, reversum turn back, return; **revertērunt**, *subject is the Roman soldiers*

46. The historian's pithy description of Sulla

. . . cōnsulātum iniērunt Q. Pompeius et L. Cornēlius Sulla, vir quī neque ad† fīnem victōriae satis laudārī neque post victōriam abundē vituperārī potest.

(Velleius Paterculus, *Historiae* II.17.1)

ineō (in- + eō), inīre, iniī/inīvī, initus enter
†**ad**, *here,* up to, until
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory
abundē (adv.) amply, fully
vituperō (1-tr.) find fault with, criticize

47. The poet raises the question of how to judge whether Pompey or Caesar more justly went to war.

victrīx causa deīs placuit, sed victa Catōnī. (Lucan, *Bellum Cīvīle* I.128)

victrīx, victrīcis victorious
deīs = dīs

48. The poet offers a comment on loyalty.

. . . stat nūlla diū mortālibus usquam,
Fortūnā titubante, fidēs. . . . (Silius Italicus, *Pūnica* XI.3–4)

diū (adv.) for a long time
usquam (adv.) anywhere
titubō (1-intr.) totter, stagger, falter

49. The historian offers an explanation of the emperor Domitian's hatred of the general Agricola.

proprium hūmānī ingeniī est ōdisse quem laeseris. (Tacitus, *Dē Vītā Agricolae* 42)

proprius, -a, -um one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (+ gen.)
hūmānus, -a, -um human
laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm

50. The biographer reports what participants in a mock sea battle said to Claudius before commencing.

havē imperātor, moritūrī tē salūtant! (Suetonius, *Vīta Claudiī* 21)

havē greetings! hail!
imperātor, **imperātōris** *m.* commander, general
salūtō (1-tr.) greet, hail, salute

51. The jurist Paulus's definition of a day

mōre Rōmānō diēs ā mediā nocte incipit et sequentis noctis mediā parte fīnītur.

(Justinian, *Dīgesta* 2.12.8)

incipiō (**in-** + **capiō**) begin
fīniō, **fīnīre**, **fīniī/fīnīvī**, **fīnītus** limit, bound

Longer Readings

1. Plautus, *Mīles Glōriōsus* 33–35

In an aside to the audience the parasite Artotrogus explains why he is forced to cater to the ego of Pyrgopolynices, no matter how distasteful.

Artotrogus. venter creat omnīs hāsce aerumnās: auribus
peraudienda sunt nē dentēs dentiant,
et adsentandumst quidquid hic mentībitur.

venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach
creō (1-tr.) create, conceive
hāsce = emphatic form of **hās**
aerumna, aerumnae *f.* task, trouble, affliction
auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear
peraudiō (**per-** + **audiō**) listen to (to the end); **peraudienda sunt**, *subject is the boasts of Pyrgopolynices*
dēns, dentis, -ium *m.* tooth
dentiō, dentīre, ——, —— cut teeth; grow longer
adsentor (1-intr.) agree (to)
quidquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. rel. pron.*, whatever
mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum lie, state falsely; **mentībitur** = *3rd sing. fut. act. indic.*

Tītus Maccius Plautus (ca. 255–184 B.C.E.) was born in north-central Italy. He is the most well-known and successful of Roman comic writers, and twenty of his plays survive. Plautus is renowned for his explosive comic sensibility and verbal creativity, and his plays are an important source of information about living, spoken Latin. Ellipsis, parataxis, colloquialisms, and unusual syntax and word choice abound in Plautus's plays, which are for the most part romantic comedies inhabited by stock characters.

The *Mīles Glōriōsus* (Braggart Soldier) is considered one of Plautus's finest comedies. Its plot centers on a clever slave (Palaestrio) helping his young master secure the girl of his dreams, but the play also features a host of other memorable characters, including the swaggering, self-important, lying soldier, Pyrgopolynices (Great Tower-Taker), and a clever sycophant, Artotrogus (Bread-Eater).

2. Plautus, *Mīles Glōriōsus* 42–46

Artotrogus has brought out a make-believe record book of Pyrgopolynices' make-believe victories. Pyrgopolynices asks to be reminded of his military greatness.

Pyrgopolynices. ecquid meministī? *Artotrogus.* meminī centum in Ciliciā
et quīnquāgintā, centum in Scytholatrōniā,
trīgintā Sardōs, sexāgintā Macedones—
sunt hominēs quōs tū occīdistī ūnō diē.
Pyrgo. Quanta istaec hominum summast? *Arto.* septem mīlia.

ecquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, anything
Cilicia, Ciliciae *f.* Cilicia (a country in eastern Asia Minor)
***Scytholatrōnia, *Scytholatrōniae** *f.* Scythian-Thief-Land
Sardī, Sardōrum *m. pl.* Sardinians
Macedones, Macedonum *m. pl.* Macedonians
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsus kill, slaughter
quantus, -a, -um how much, how great
istaec = *archaic form of* **ista**
summa, summae *f.* sum, total

3. Cicero, *In Catilīnam II* 1

The opening of Cicero's second speech against Catiline

Tandem aliquandō, Quirītēs, L. Catilīnam, furentem audāciā, scelus anhelantem, pestem patriae nefāriē mōlientem, vōbīs atque huic urbī ferrō flammāque minitantem ex urbe vel ēiēcimus vel ēmīsimus vel ipsum ēgredientem verbīs prōsecūtī sumus. abiit, excessit, ēvāsit, ērūpit. nūlla iam perniciēs ā mōnstrō illō atque prōdigiō moenibus ipsīs intrā moenia comparābitur. atque hunc quidem ūnum huius bellī domesticī ducem sine contrōversiā vīcimus. nōn enim iam inter latera nostra sīca illa versābitur, nōn in campō, nōn in forō, nōn in cūriā, nōn dēnique intrā domesticōs parietēs pertimēscēmus. locō ille mōtus est cum† est ex urbe dēpulsus. palam iam cum hoste, nūllō impediente, bellum iūstum gerēmus. sine dubiō perdidimus hominem magnificēque vīcimus cum† illum ex occultīs īnsidiīs in apertum latrōcinium coniēcimus.

aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally; at (long) last (often coupled with **tandem** to express finality)
Quirītēs, **Quirītium** *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
furō, **furere**, ——, —— be crazy; rage, rave
audācia, **audāciae** *f.* boldness; recklessness
scelus, **sceleris** *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy
anhelō (1-tr.) breathe out
pestis, **pestis**, **-ium** *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
nefāriē (adv.) unspeakably, wickedly
mōlior, **mōlīrī**, **mōlītus sum** plan
flamma, **flammae** *f.* flame
minitor (1-intr.) threaten (+ dat.)
vel (conj.) or; **vel . . . vel . . .** either . . . or . . .
ēiciō, **ēicere**, **ēiēcī**, **ēiectus** throw out
ēmittō (**ē-** + **mittō**) send out
ēgredior, **ēgredī**, **ēgressus sum** go out, depart
prōsequor (**prō-** + **sequor**) accompany, escort
excēdō (**ex-** + **cēdō**) go out, depart
ēvādō, **ēvādere**, **ēvāsī**, **ēvāsus** go out, escape
ērumpō, **ērumpere**, **ērūpī**, **ēruptus** break out, burst forth
perniciēs, **perniciēī** *f.* destruction, ruin, disaster
mōnstrum, **mōnstrī** *n.* omen, portent; monster
prōdigium, **prōdigiī** *n.* unnatural event, prodigy; creature, monstrosity
intrā (prep. + acc.) within
comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; devise
domesticus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to the house; personal, domestic
contrōversia, **contrōversiae** *f.* dispute, controversy
latus, **lateris** *n.* side, flank
sīca, **sīcae** *f.* dagger
versō (1-tr.) twist
campus, **campī** *m.* plain; *here, supply* **Martius**, plain of Mars
cūria, **cūriae** *f.* (the) Curia, (the) senate house
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
pariēs, **parietis** *m.* wall (of a house)
pertimēscō, **pertimēscere**, **pertimuī**, —— become very afraid, take fright
†**cum**, *here* (conj.) when
dēpellō (**dē-** + **pellō**), **dēpellere**, **dēpulī**, **dēpulsus** drive away
palam (adv.) openly, publicly
impediō, **impedīre**, **impediī/impedīvī**, **impedītus** hinder, impede
iūstus, **-a**, **-um** just, fair, right
dubium, **dubiī** *n.* doubt
perdō (**per-** + **dō**) lose; destroy
magnificē (adv.) splendidly, excellently
occultus, **-a**, **-um** hidden, secret
apertus, **-a**, **-um** open
latrōcinium, **latrōciniī** *n.* robbery; criminality
coniciō, **conicere**, **coniēcī**, **coniectus** throw (together), cast, bring

The *Ōrātiō Secunda in Catilīnam* was delivered on 9 November 63 B.C.E., one day after the first speech and immediately after Catiline's departure from the city. This second speech was delivered before the people.

4. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 5.36

A passage from Cicero's description of the truly free man

an ille mihi līber cui mulier imperat, cui lēgēs impōnit, praescrībit, iubet, vetat quod vidētur?† quī nihil imperantī negāre potest, nihil recūsāre audet? poscit, dandum est; vocat, veniendum est; ēicit, abeundum; minātur, extimēscendum.

an (conj.) *introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer,* can it really be that
mulier, **mulieris** *f.* woman
impōnō (**in-** + **pōnō**) place, impose (acc.) upon (dat.)
praescrībō (**prae-** + **scrībō**) prescribe
vetō, **vetāre**, **vetuī**, **vetitus** forbid
†**vidētur**, *here,* seems best
negō (1-tr.) deny, refuse
recūsō (1-tr.) refuse, reject, oppose
poscō, **poscere**, **poposcī**, —— demand
ēiciō, **ēicere**, **ēiēcī**, **ēiectus** throw out
minor (1-intr.) threaten
extimēscō, **extimēscere**, **extimuī**, —— take fright, be scared

5. Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* II.140

In speaking of the wonders of the human body and nature's miraculous contribution to it, the character Balbus, recalling Aristotle, attributes to a god one particular human attribute and tells how it sets humans apart from other animals.

quī† prīmum† eōs humō excitātōs celsōs et ērēctōs cōnstituit, ut deōrum cognitiōnem caelum intuentēs capere possent. sunt enim ex terrā hominēs nōn ut incolae atque habitātōrēs sed quasi spectātōrēs superārum rērum atque caelestium, quārum spectāculum ad nūllum aliud genus animantium pertinet.

†**quī**, *connective relative whose antecedent is an unspecified god or divine force*
†**prīmum**, *here* (adv.) first; for the first time
humus, **humī** *f.* earth, ground
excitō (1-tr.) cause to move, stir up; raise
celsus, **-a**, **-um** lofty, tall; upright, erect
ērēctus, **-a**, **-um** upright, erect
cōnstituō, **cōnstituere**, **cōnstituī**, **cōnstitūtus** set up, establish
cognitiō, **cognitiōnis** *f.* acquaintance, knowledge
intueor, **intuērī**, **intuitus sum** look upon, gaze at; reflect upon, consider
habitātor, **habitātōris** *m.* inhabitant, occupier
quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
spectātor, **spectātōris** *m.* witness, spectator
superus, **-a**, **-um** upper, above
caelestis, **caeleste** heavenly, divine
spectāculum, **spectāculī** *n.* sight, spectacle
animāns, **animantis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* or *n.* living creature
pertineō (**per-** + **teneō**), **pertinēre**, **pertinuī**, **pertentus** extend, pertain

The *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* is a philosophical work in three books. Each book discusses the approach to divine things of a different school of philosophy: Epicurean, Stoic, and Academic.

6. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 37

Cicero describes Appius Claudius Caecus—consul, censor, builder of the Via Appia—near the end of his life.

quattuor rōbustōs fīliōs, quīnque fīliās, tantam domum, tantās clientēlās Appius regēbat et caecus et senex; intentum enim animum tamquam arcum habēbat nec languēscēns succumbēbat senectūtī; tenēbat nōn modo† auctōritātem, sed etiam imperium in† suōs; metuēbant servī, verēbantur līberī, cārum omnēs habēbant; vigēbat in illā domō mōs patrius, disciplīna.

rōbustus, -a, -um (physically) strong; mature
tantus, -a, -um so great
clientēla, clientēlae *f.* client's relation to patron; *pl.*, clients, dependents (individuals, cities, or provinces)
senex, senis old
intentus, -a, -um stretched; attentive, intent
tamquam (conj.) as it were, as if
arcus, arcūs *m.* bow (for shooting arrows)
languēscō, languēscere, languī, —— grow feeble, decline
succumbō, succumbere, succubuī, succubitum give in, yield (+ dat.)
senectūs, senectūtis *f.* old age
†**nōn modo = nōn sōlum**
auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority, influence, prestige
†**in**, *here,* over
metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread
vereor, verērī, veritus sum be in awe of, respect, dread
vigeō, vigēre, viguī, —— be vigorous, thrive, flourish
patrius, -a, -um of *or* belonging to a father, paternal; ancestral
disciplīna, disciplīnae *f.* training; orderly conduct

The *Dē Senectūte* (or *Catō Maior Dē Senectūte,* Cato the Elder Concerning Old Age) is a short philosophical dialogue with Cato the Elder (author of the *Dē Agrī Cultūrā*) as the chief speaker. The dialogue is set in 150 B.C.E., shortly before Cato's death, and was written in 44 B.C.E. (the same year as the *Dē Amīcitiā*), shortly before Cicero's death.

7. Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* I.1–9

The poet begins his poem with an address to Venus.

Aeneadum genetrīx, hominum dīvomque† voluptās,
alma Venus, caelī subter lābentia signa
quae mare nāvigerum, quae terrās frūgiferentīs
concelebrās, per tē quoniam genus omne animantum
concipitur vīsitque exortum lūmina sōlis:
tē, dea, tē fugiunt ventī, tē nūbila caelī
adventumque tuum, tibi suāvīs daedala tellūs
summittit flōrēs, tibi rīdent aequora pontī
plācātumque nitet diffūsō lūmine caelum.

Aeneadēs, **Aeneadum** *m. pl.* descendants of Aeneas; Romans
genetrīx, **genetrīcis** *f.* mother, creator
†**dīvom** = **dīvum** = **dīvōrum**
voluptās, **voluptātis** *f.* pleasure, joy
almus, **-a**, **-um** nourishing; gracious, kindly
subter (prep. + acc.) under, beneath
lābor, **lābī**, **lāpsus sum** slip, glide
signum, **signī** *n.* sign, signal; constellation
nāviger, **nāvigera**, **nāvigerum** ship-bearing, navigable
frūgiferēns, **frūgiferentis** fruit-bearing
concelebrō (1-tr.) visit frequently; fill
animāns, **animantis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* or *n.* living creature; **animantum** = **animantium**
concipiō (**con-** + **capiō**) conceive, produce
vīsō, **vīsere**, **vīsī**, **vīsus** go to see, visit; view
exorior, **exorīrī**, **exortus sum** rise out, emerge, appear
lūmen, **lūminis** *n.* light
sōl, **sōlis** *m.* sun
ventus, **ventī** *m.* wind
nūbila, **nūbilōrum** *n. pl.* clouds
adventus, **adventūs** *m.* arrival
suāvis, **suāve** sweet(-smelling), fragrant
daedalus, **-a**, **-um** skillful, dexterous, artful
tellūs, **tellūris** *f.* earth, land
summittō (**sub-** + **mittō**) send up (from below), put forth
flōs, **flōris** *m.* flower, blossom
rīdeō, **rīdēre**, **rīsī**, **rīsus** smile, laugh
aequor, **aequoris** *n.* level surface; sea, water
pontus, **pontī** *m.* sea
plācō (1-tr.) make calm, soothe, placate
niteō, **nitēre**, **nituī**, —— be radiant, shine
diffundō, **diffundere**, **diffūdī**, **diffūsus** spread widely, extend, diffuse

8. Catullus XLVI (hendecasyllable; see §113)

A spring poem

Iam vēr ēgelidōs refert tepōrēs,
iam caelī furor aequinoctiālis
iūcundīs Zephyrī silēscit aurīs.
linquantur Phrygiī, Catulle, campī
Nīcaeaeque ager ūber aestuōsae:
ad clārās Asiae volēmus urbēs.
iam mēns praetrepidāns avet vagārī,
iam laetī studiō pedēs vigēscunt.
ō dulcēs comitum valēte coetūs,
longē quōs simul ā domō profectōs
dīversae variē viae reportant.

vēr, **vēris** *n.* spring
ēgelidus, **-a**, **-um** tepid, lukewarm, mild
tepor, **tepōris** *m. sing. or pl.*, warmth, mildness
furor, **furōris** *m.* madness
aequinoctiālis, **aequinoctiāle** equinoctial, of the equinox
iūcundus, **-a**, **-um** pleasing, delightful, agreeable
Zephyrus, **Zephyrī** *m.* Zephyr (the west wind)
silēscō, **silēscere**, ——, —— become still, fall silent, grow calm
aura, **aurae** *f.* breeze
linquō, **linquere**, **līquī**, **lictus** leave (behind)
Phrygius, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to Phrygia (the region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan
campus, **campī** *m.* plain
Nīcaea, **Nīcaeae** *f.* Nicaea (a city in Bithynia [a Roman province on the coast of Asia Minor])
ūber, **ūberis** rich, fertile
aestuōsus, **-a**, **-um** full of heat, burning, very hot
Asia, **Asiae** *f.* Asia (a Roman province [modern Asia Minor])
volō (1-intr.) fly
praetrepidō (1-intr.) tremble in anticipation
aveō, **avēre**, ——, —— be eager
vagor (1-intr.) wander
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
vigēscō, **vigēscere**, ——, —— come alive, be vigorous
dulcis, **dulce** sweet
comes, **comitis** *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade
coetus, **coetūs** *m.* gathering
longē (adv.) far, a long way
simul (adv.) at the same time
dīversus, **-a**, **-um** different
variē (adv.) variously, differently
reportō (1-tr.) carry back

Gaius Valerius Catullus (84?–54? B.C.E.) was born at Verona, but as a young man he came to live in Rome, where he became associated with several other young poets. These **poētae novī** were very much influenced by the Greek lyric poets and Hellenistic poets. Reacting against long epic and didactic models in earlier Latin poetry, the **neoterics** (< Greek *neōteros,* newer) chose to write shorter, personal lyrics, of which the 116 poems of Catullus are the best surviving examples. By coining new words and by giving new meanings to existing words Catullus created a new poetic diction for Latin. His vocabulary added liveliness, humor, and even obscenity to the language. Many later Latin poets, including Vergil and Horace, were significantly influenced by Catullan diction and style.

9. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.24–25

In the midst of hostilities with the Helvetians, Caesar is compelled to turn his troops away to seek supplies. The Helvetians follow and harass Caesar's men from behind.

postquam id† animadvertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit† equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocārī, ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab iīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī, cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

Caesar prīmum† suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

†**id** = the pursuit of the Helvetians
animadvertō, **animadvertere**, **animadvertī**, **animadversus** turn one's attention to, notice
proximus, **-a**, **-um** nearest
collis, **collis**, **-ium** *m.* hill
†**subdūcō** (**sub-** + **dūcō**) lead up (from below), draw up; **subdūcit**, *historical use of present tense; translate as perfect*
equitātus, **equitātūs** *m.* cavalry
sustineō (**sub-** + **teneō**), **sustinēre**, **sustinuī**, —— withstand
impetus, **impetūs** *m.* attack, assault
interim (adv.) meanwhile
triplex, **triplicis** threefold; triple
īnstruō, **īnstruere**, **īnstrūxī**, **īnstrūctus** arrange, draw up
legiō, **legiōnis** *f.* legion
veterānus, **-a**, **-um** veteran, composed of veterans
summus, **-a**, **-um** highest; top (of)
iugum, **iugī** *n.* yoke; (mountain) ridge
Gallia citerior, **Galliae citeriōris** *f.* Nearer *or* Cisalpine Gaul (on the Italian side of the Alps)
proximē (superlative adv.) most recently
cōnscrībō (**con-** + **scrībō**) enlist, enroll
collocō (1-tr.) place, position, arrange
mōns, **montis**, **-ium** *m.* mountain
compleō, **complēre**, **complēvī**, **complētus** fill completely, cover
intereā (adv.) meanwhile
sarcina, **sarcinae** *f.* pack, bundle; *pl.*, luggage, baggage
cōnferō (**con-** + **ferō**) collect, gather together
superior, **superius** (comparative adj.) upper, higher; **superiōre** = *masc./fem. sing. abl.*
cōnsistō, **cōnsistere**, **cōnstitī**, —— take one's position, make a stand, halt
mūniō, **mūnīre**, **mūniī/mūnīvī**, **mūnītus** fortify
Helvētiī, **Helvētiōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Helvetians
carrus, **carrī** *m.* cart, wagon
impedīmentum, **impedīmentī** *n.* hindrance; *pl.*, baggage
cōnfertissimus, **-a**, **-um** very crowded, very dense, very packed close together
reiciō, **reicere**, **reiēcī**, **reiectus** throw back, drive back
phalanx, **phalangis** *f.* phalanx (a close formation of troops)
succēdō (**sub-** + **cēdō**) approach (from below)
†**prīmum**, *here* (adv.) first
deinde (adv.) thereupon, then, next
cōnspectus, **cōnspectūs** *m.* (range of) sight, view
removeō (**re-** + **moveō**) move back, remove
equus, **equī** *m.* horse
aequō (1-tr.) make equal
tollō, **tollere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus** lift, raise; take away
cohortor (1-tr.) exhort, encourage
committō (**con-** + **mittō**) join, engage in
pīlum, **pīlī** *n.* spear, javelin
perfringō, **perfringere**, **perfrēgī**, **perfrāctus** break through
disiciō, **disicere**, **disiēcī**, **disiectus** break, rout, disperse
dēstringō, **dēstringere**, **dēstrīnxī**, **dēstrictus** draw

10. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.28

Part of Caesar's report about the unusual animals that live in the vast Hercynian forest

tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. hī sunt magnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs. speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. magna vīs est eōrum et magna vēlōcitās; neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspexērunt parcunt. hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt.† hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimōniō, magnam ferunt laudem. sed adsuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

ūrus, **ūrī** *m.* (wild) ox, ure-ox
appellō (1-tr.) call
magnitūdō, **magnitūdinis** *f.* size
paulum, ***paulī** *n.* small amount, a little; **paulō**, (by) a little
īnfrā (prep. + acc.) below, smaller than
elephantus, **elephantī** *m.* elephant
color, **colōris** *m.* color
figūra, **figūrae** *f.* shape
taurus, **taurī** *m.* bull
vēlōcitās, **vēlōcitātis** *f.* speed, fleetness
fera, **ferae** *f.* wild animal, beast
cōnspiciō, **cōnspicere**, **cōnspexī**, **cōnspectus** see, catch sight of
parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī**, **parsūrus** be sparing to, spare (+ dat.)
studiōsē (adv.) eagerly, zealously
fovea, **foveae** *f.* small pit (for catching animals)
†**interficiunt**, *subject is (the) Germans*
dūrō (1-tr.) harden
adulēscēns, **adulēscentis**, **-ium** *m.* young man
vēnātiō, **vēnātiōnis** *f.* hunting
exerceō, **exercēre**, **exercuī**, **exercitus** exercise, train
plūrimus, **-a**, **-um** very much, very many, (the) most
cornū, **cornūs** *n.* horn
testimōnium, **testimōniī** *n.* evidence
laus, **laudis** *f.* praise
adsuēscō, **adsuēscere**, **adsuēvī**, —— accustom oneself (to), become accustomed (to)
mānsuēfīō, **mānsuēfierī**, **mānsuēfactus sum** be tamed; **mānsuēfierī** = *pres. infin.*
parvulus, **-a**, **-um** very small, very young
excipiō (**ex-** + **capiō**) except
amplitūdō, **amplitūdinis** *f.* breadth; size; grandeur
bōs, **bovis** *m.* bull, ox; **boum** = *gen. pl.*
conquīrō (**con-** + **quaerō**), **conquīrere**, **conquīsiī/conquīsīvī**, **conquīsītus** seek after; collect
labrum, **labrī** *n.* lip
argentum, **argentī** *n.* silver
circumclūdō, **circumclūdere**, **circumclūsī**, **circumclūsus** surround
amplissimus, **-a**, **-um** most magnificent, most splendid
epulae, **epulārum** *f. pl.* banquet, feast
pōculum, **pōculī** *n.* drinking cup

11. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 2

The historian reflects on the dual nature of man.

nam utī genus hominum conpositum ex corpore et animā est, ita rēs cūnctae studiaque omnia nostra, corporis alia, alia animī nātūram secuntur.† igitur praeclāra faciēs,† magnae dīvitiae, ad hoc† vīs corporis et alia omnia huiusce modī brevī dīlābuntur; at ingenī ēgregia facinora, sīcutī anima, inmortālia sunt. postrēmō corporis et fortūnae bonōrum, ut initium, sīc fīnis est, omniaque orta occidunt et aucta senēscunt; animus incorruptus, aeternus, rēctor hūmānī generis agit atque habet cūncta neque ipse habētur.

utī = **ut**
conpōnō (**con-** + **pōnō**) put together, compose
cūnctus, **-a**, **-um** all
†**secuntur** = **sequuntur**
igitur (conj.) therefore *(usually postpositive)*
praeclārus, **-a**, **-um** very famous; radiant, beautiful
†**faciēs**, **faciēī** *f.* face; appearance
dīvitiae, **dīvitiārum** *f. pl.* wealth, riches
†**ad hoc** (added) to this
huiusce = emphatic form of **huius**
brevis, **breve** short, brief; **brevī**, *supply* **tempore**
dīlābor, **dīlābī**, **dīlāpsus sum** slip away, disappear
at (conj.) but
ēgregius, **-a**, **-um** outstanding, extraordinary
facinus, **facinoris** *n.* deed
sīcutī (conj.) just as
inmortālia = **immortālia**
postrēmō (adv.) finally
initium, **initiī** *n.* beginning
orior, **orīrī**, **ortus sum** rise, arise
occidō (**ob-** + **cadō**), **occidere**, **occidī**, **occāsūrus** fall; perish, die
augeō, **augēre**, **auxī**, **auctus** grow, increase
senēscō, **senēscere**, **senuī**, —— grow old, grow weak, decline
incorruptus, **-a**, **-um** uncorrupted, pure
aeternus, **-a**, **-um** eternal, everlasting
rēctor, **rēctōris** *m.* director, ruler, master
hūmānus, **-a**, **-um** human

The *Bellum Iugurthae* (War of Jugurtha) is the second of Sallust's surviving historical monographs. It recounts the war between Rome and Jugurtha, king of Numidia (in North Africa), which lasted from 111 to 105 B.C.E. Sallust's focus is the corruption of the Roman aristocracy, which allowed Jugurtha to maintain power by bribing those sent to wage war against him.

12. Vergil, *Eclogues* IV.4–7

The poet describes the beginning of a new age.

ultima Cūmaeī vēnit iam carminis aetās;
magnus ab integrō saeclōrum nāscitur ordō.
iam redit et Virgō, redeunt Sāturnia rēgna,
iam nova prōgeniēs caelō dēmittitur altō.

ultimus, -a, -um farthest, most remote; last, final
Cūmaeus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Cumae; of *or* belonging to the Sibyl of Cumae
aetās, aetātis *f.* age, time of life; era
integer, integra, integrum whole; fresh; **ab integrō**, afresh, anew
saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation
ordō, ordinis *m.* order; series, sequence
Virgō, Virginis *f.* (the) Virgin (Astraea) (goddess of Justice)
Sāturnius, -a, -um of Saturn (king of the Titans and father of Jupiter and Juno); **Sāturnia rēgna**, (golden) age of Saturn
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
prōgeniēs, ***prōgeniēī** *f.* offspring, progeny
dēmittō (dē- + mittō) send down

Vergil's first work, the *Eclogues* (< Greek *Eklogai,* Selections) or *Bucolics* (< Greek *Boukolika,* [Poems] of Oxherds), is a collection of ten pastoral poems written between 42 and 39 B.C.E. and published shortly thereafter. The poetry of the *Eclogues* demonstrates Vergil's knowledge of Greek Hellenistic poetry (particularly the work of Theocritus) and his ability to translate this genre into a Roman context. The poems are marked by rustic settings, shepherd-poets engaged in love affairs, poetic contests, and an apparent escapist atmosphere. Closer examination of these poems reveals a sociopolitical element absent from Vergil's Greek models. When first published, the *Eclogues* won Vergil wide praise in Rome's literary circle, and Vergil soon came under the patronage of Maecenas, a wealthy patron of the arts and perhaps Octavian's closest friend.

13. Vergil, *Georgics* I.505–14

The peace-loving poet describes the effects of civil war. These lines conclude the first book of the *Georgics*.

. . . tot bella per orbem,
tam multae scelerum faciēs,† nōn ūllus arātrō
dignus honōs, squālent abductīs arva colōnīs,
et curvae rigidum falcēs cōnflantur in ēnsem.
hinc movet Euphrātēs, illinc Germānia bellum;
vīcīnae ruptīs inter sē lēgibus urbēs
arma ferunt; saevit tōtō Mars impius orbe,
ut cum† carceribus sēsē effūdēre quadrīgae,
addunt in spatia, et frūstrā retinācula tendēns
fertur equīs aurīga neque audit† currus habēnās.

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
orbis, **orbis**, **-ium** *m.* ring, circle; world
tam (adv.) so
scelus, **sceleris** *n.* wicked deed, crime
†**faciēs**, **faciēī** *f.* face; appearance, sight
arātrum, **arātrī** *n.* plough
dignus, **-a**, **-um** worthy (of) (+ abl.)
honōs, **honōris** *m.* office; honor, respect
squāleō, **squālēre**, **squāluī**, —— be dirty; lie barren (from neglect)
abdūcō (**ab-** + **dūcō**) lead away, take away, carry off
arvum, **arvī** *n.* (ploughed) field
colōnus, **colōnī** *m.* farmer
curvus, **-a**, **-um** curved
rigidus, **-a**, **-um** rigid, stiff; erect; inflexible
falx, **falcis** *f.* scythe, sickle
cōnflō (1-tr.) forge
ēnsis, **ēnsis** *m.* sword
hinc (adv.) from *or* on this side
Euphrātēs, **Euphrātī**/**Euphrātae** *m.* (the river) Euphrates
illinc (adv.) from *or* on that side
Germānia, **Germāniae** *f.* Germany
vīcīnus, **-a**, **-um** neighboring
rumpō, **rumpere**, **rūpī**, **ruptus** split, burst, break
saeviō, **saevīre**, **saeviī**, **saevītum** behave savagely, rage
†**cum**, *here* (conj. + perf. indic.) whenever
carcer, **carceris** *m.* prison; barrier (at the beginning of a racecourse)
effundō, **effundere**, **effūdī**, **effūsus** pour out, pour forth; send forth; **effūdēre**, *translate as present*
quadrīga, **quadrīgae** *f.* (four-horse) chariot
addō (**ad-** + **dō**) add; increase speed
spatium, **spatiī** *n.* course, track; lap; **in spatia**, lap by lap
frūstrā (adv.) in vain
retināculum, **retināculī** *n.* rope, rein
tendō, **tendere**, **tetendī**, **tentus**/**tēnsus** stretch out, extend
equus, **equī** *m.* horse
aurīga, **aurīgae** *f.* charioteer, driver
†**audiō**, *here,* heed
currus, **currūs** *m.* chariot
habēna, **habēnae** *f.* rein

Because of the success of the *Eclogues,* Vergil joined the poets Horace and Propertius in receiving the patronage of Maecenas, a close personal friend of Octavian. Vergil's next work was completed ca. 29 B.C.E. The *Georgics* (< Greek *Geōrgica,* [Poems] About Farming) is a didactic poem in four books on the art of farming. In addition to offering practical advice for farmers, the *Georgics* describes and praises the simplicity and purity of rustic life, and Vergil paints a picture of Italian country life and virtue that stands in stark contrast to the turmoil of actual life in the city Rome.

14. Vergil, *Georgics* II.490–99

In his praise of the life of the farmer the poet makes reference to the Roman poet Lucretius, to the Greek philosopher Epicurus, and, more generally, to any follower of the Epicurean school of philosophy.

fēlīx quī potuit rērum cognōscere causās
atque metūs omnīs et inexōrābile fātum
subiēcit pedibus strepitumque Acherontis avārī;
fortūnātus et ille deōs quī nōvit agrestīs
Pānaque Silvānumque senem nymphāsque sorōrēs.
illum nōn populī fascēs, nōn purpura rēgum
flexit et īnfīdōs agitāns discordia frātrēs,
aut coniūrātō dēscendēns Dācus ab Histrō,
nōn rēs Rōmānae peritūraque rēgna; neque ille
aut doluit miserāns inopem aut invīdit habentī.

inexōrābilis, **inexōrābile** inexorable, relentless
subiciō, **subicere**, **subiēcī**, **subiectus** place (something, acc.) below (something, dat.)
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
strepitus, **strepitūs** *m.* noise; roar
Acherōn, **Acherontis** *m.* Acheron (a river of the underworld)
avārus, **-a**, **-um** greedy, rapacious
fortūnātus, **-a**, **-um** fortunate
agrestis, **agreste** of *or* living in the fields, rustic
Pān, **Pānos** *m.* Pan (an Arcadian pastoral god); **Pāna** = *acc. sing.*
Silvānus, **Silvānī** *m.* Silvanus (a Roman god of the forest)
senex, **senis** old
nympha, **nymphae** *f.* nymph (a semidivine female spirit of nature)
fascēs, **fascium** *m. pl.* the *fasces* (bundle of rods with an axe, symbol of power)
purpura, **purpurae** *f.* purple-dyed cloth; purple color
flectō, **flectere**, **flexī**, **flexus** bend
īnfīdus, **-a**, **-um** faithless, treacherous
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass
discordia, **discordiae** *f.* discord, dissension, conflict
coniūrō (1-intr.) join in a plot, form a conspiracy; **coniūrātō** = *perf. pass. part. used with active meaning*
dēscendō, **dēscendere**, **dēscendī**, **dēscēnsus** go down, descend
Dācus, **Dācī** *m.* Dacian, inhabitant of Dacia (a province north of the Danube [modern Romania and Hungary])
Hister, **Histrī** *m.* (the) Hister (the lower Danube river)
pereō (**per-** + **eō**), **perīre**, **periī**, **peritūrus** pass away, be destroyed; perish, die
rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* kingdom, realm
doleō, **dolēre**, **doluī**, —— suffer, grieve, feel pain
miseror (1-tr.) pity
inops, **inopis** poor, in want
invideō (**in-** + **videō**) envy (+ dat.)

15. Vergil, *Aeneid* X.466–72

Jupiter speaks consoling words to his son Hercules, who is distressed at the imminent death of Pallas.

tum genitor nātum dictīs adfātur amīcīs:
"stat sua† cuique† diēs, breve et inreparābile tempus
omnibus est vītae; sed fāmam extendere factīs,
hoc virtūtis opus. Troiae sub moenibus altīs
tot gnātī cecidēre deum, quīn† occidit ūnā† 470
Sarpēdōn, mea prōgeniēs. etiam sua† Turnum
fāta vocant mētāsque datī pervēnit ad aevī."

tum (adv.) then, at that time
genitor, **genitōris** *m.* father
adfor (1-tr.) address
†**sua** refers to **cuique**, his/her own.
†**cuique** = *masc./fem./neut. sing. dat. of indef. pron.*, each man, each person, each thing
brevis, **breve** short, brief
inreparābilis, **inreparābile** irretrievable
extendō, **extendere**, **extendī**, **extentus** stretch out, extend
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
gnātī = **nātī**
†**quīn**, *here*, (conj.) really, verily; nay, in fact
occidō (**ob-** + **cadō**), **occidere**, **occidī**, **occāsūrus** fall; perish, die
†**ūnā** (adv.) together, at the same time
Sarpēdōn, **Sarpēdonis** *m.* Sarpedon (Lycian king and Trojan ally, son of Zeus)
prōgeniēs, ***prōgeniēī** *f.* offspring, progeny
†**sua** refers to **Turnum**, his own.
Turnus, **Turnī** *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)
mēta, **mētae** *f.* goalpost; end, limit
perveniō (**per-** + **veniō**) arrive at (+ **ad** + acc.)
aevum, **aevī** *n.* age, lifetime; life

16. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.92–102

Fierce Turnus takes up a spear with which he hopes to kill Aeneas and speaks to it.

exim quae mediīs ingentī adnīxa columnae
aedibus astābat validam vī corripit hastam,
Actoris Auruncī spolium, quassatque trementem
vōciferāns: "nunc, ō numquam frūstrāta vocātūs
hasta meōs, nunc tempus adest; tē maximus Actor,
tē Turnī nunc dextra gerit; dā sternere corpus
lōrīcamque manū validā lacerāre revulsam
sēmivirī Phrygis et foedāre in pulvere crīnīs
vibrātōs calidō ferrō murrāque madentīs."
hīs agitur furiīs, tōtōque ardentis ab ōre
scintillae absistunt, oculīs micat ācribus ignis . . .

exim (adv.) then, next, thereafter
adnītor, adnītī, adnīxus sum lean against (+ dat.)
columna, columnae *f.* column
aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *pl.*, house, abode
astō (ad- + stō), astāre, astitī, —— stand (near)
corripiō, corripere, corripuī, correptus snatch up
hasta, hastae *f.* spear
Actor, Actoris *m.* Actor (the man who used to own the spear)
Auruncus, -a, -um of Aurunca (a town in Campania), Auruncan
spolium, spoliī *n.* booty, spoil
quassō (1-tr.) shake, wave, brandish
tremō, tremere, tremuī, —— tremble, quiver, quake
vōciferor (1-intr.) shout, yell, cry out
frūstror (1-tr.) deceive, disappoint
vocātus, vocātūs *m.* summons, call
adsum (ad- + sum), adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus be present; be at hand
maximus, -a, -um biggest, greatest, very great
Turnus, Turnī *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)
dexter, dextra, dextrum right; *fem. subst.*, right hand
sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew; lay low, slay, kill
lōrīca, lōrīcae *f.* corselet, cuirass, breastplate
lacerō (1-tr.) tear to pieces, rend, mutilate
revellō, revellere, revulsī, revulsus pull away, tear off
sēmivir, sēmivirī *m. adj.* half-man; semi-masculine
Phryx, Phrygis Phrygian, Trojan
foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile
pulvis, pulveris *m.* dust
crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
vibrō (1-tr.) give a wavy appearance, crimp, curl
calidus, -a, -um hot
murra, murrae *f.* myrrh (an aromatic gum)
madeō, madēre, ——, —— be wet, drip
furiae, furiārum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy
ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire; rage
ōs, ōris *n.* mouth; face
scintilla, scintillae *f.* spark
absistō, absistere, abstitī, —— move apart; burst forth
micō (1-tr.) dart, flicker, flash
ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire

17. Horace, *Carmina* I.23 (Asclepiadean; see §113)

The poet addresses a timid girl.

Vītās innuleō mē similis, Chloē,
quaerentī pavidam montibus āviīs
mātrem nōn sine vānō
aurārum et silvae metū.

nam seu mōbilibus vēris inhorruit
adventus foliīs seu viridēs rubum
dīmōvēre lacertae,
et corde et genibus tremit.

atquī nōn ego tē tigris ut aspera
Gaetūlusve leō frangere persequor:
tandem dēsine mātrem
tempestīva sequī virō.

vītō (1-tr.) avoid
(h)innuleus, **(h)innuleī** *m.* young deer, fawn
similis, **simile** similar (+ dat.)
Chloē, **Chloēs** *f.* Chloe
pavidus, **-a**, **-um** trembling, frightened
mōns, **montis**, **-ium** *m.* mountain
āvius, **-a**, **-um** pathless, trackless
vānus, **-a**, **-um** empty, illusory; groundless, false
aura, **aurae** *f.* breeze
silva, **silvae** *f.* forest; *for purposes of scansion,* **silvae** = **siluae**
seu (conj.) or if, whether; **seu . . . seu . . .**, whether . . . or (if) . . .
mōbilis, **mōbile** movable; moving, shifting
vēr, **vēris** *n.* spring
inhorreō, **inhorrēre**, **inhorruī**, —— bristle, quiver, shudder
adventus, **adventūs** *m.* arrival
folium, **foliī** *n.* leaf
viridis, **viride** green, verdant
rubus, **rubī** *m.* bramble, blackberry bush
dīmoveō (**dis-** + **moveō**) separate; set in motion
lacerta, **lacertae** *f.* lizard
cor, **cordis** *n.* heart
genū, **genūs** *n.* knee
tremō, **tremere**, **tremuī**, —— tremble, quiver, quake
atquī (conj.) but, and yet
tigris, **tigris**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* tiger
asper, **aspera**, **asperum** harsh, fierce, pitiless
Gaetūlus, **-a**, **-um** Gaetulian, Moroccan
-ve (enclitic conj.) or
leō, **leōnis** *m.* lion
frangō, **frangere**, **frēgī**, **frāctus** break, shatter, crush
persequor (**per-** + **sequor**) follow earnestly, pursue
dēsinō, **dēsinere**, **dēsiī/dēsīvī**, **dēsitum** stop, cease (+ infin.)
tempestīvus, **-a**, **-um** timely, ripe, ready

Horace's *Carmina* (usually referred to as *Odes*) comprise three books (eighty-eight poems) of lyric poetry published in 23 B.C.E. and a fourth book (fifteen poems), written considerably later, perhaps at the request of Augustus himself. These poems, written in the Greek lyric meters of Sappho, Alcaeus, Archilochus, and others, take as their themes all aspects of poetry, life, and death, but they do so in a delightfully enigmatic fashion. The hallmark of a Horatian ode is meticulous word choice and word placement that impart to the poem many levels of meaning.

18. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXVIII.5.15–16

The historian reports some actions of Philip of Macedon, who is at war with King Attalus of Pergamum. Philip attempts to disrupt a meeting (attended by Attalus) to discuss defending the Aetolians against Philip.

et conciliō quidem dīmissō iam vēnit;† segetibus tamen quae iam prope mātūritātem erant maximē in sinū Aeniānum ēvastātīs, Scotussam cōpiās redūcit. ibi exercitū omnī relictō, cum cohorte rēgiā Dēmētriādem sēsē recipit. inde ut ad omnēs hostium mōtūs posset occurrere, in Phōcidem atque Euboeam et Peparēthum mittit† quī loca alta ēligerent unde ēditī ignēs appārērent.

concilium, conciliī *n.* gathering, meeting
dīmittō (**dis-** + **mittō**) break up, dismiss
†**vēnit**, *subject is Philip*
seges, segetis *f.* cornfield; crop
prope (prep. + acc.) near (to)
mātūritās, mātūritātis *f.* ripeness
maximē (adv.) especially
sinus, sinūs *m.* bay
Aeniānēs, Aeniānum *m. pl.* (the) Aenianes (a people of Thessaly)
ēvastō (1-tr.) devastate, lay waste
Scotussa, Scotussae *f.* Scotussa (a town in Thessaly)
redūcō (**re-** + **dūcō**) lead back
ibi (adv.) there
cohors, cohortis, -ium *f.* company, cohort; retinue
rēgius, -a, -um royal, belonging to the king
Dēmētriās, Dēmētriādis *f.* Demetrias (a city in Thessaly)
recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) take back; **sē recipere**, to withdraw
inde (adv.) thence; thereupon
occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursum run up to meet; **occurrere ad**, to meet, to oppose
Phōcis, Phōcidis *f.* Phocis (a country between Boeotia and Aetolia)
Euboea, Euboeae *f.* Euboea (an island in the Aegean)
Peparēthus, Peparēthī *m.* Peparethus (an island in the Aegean)
†**mittit**, *historical present tense; translate as perfect*
ēligō (**ē-** + **legō**), **ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus** choose, select
ēdō (**ē-** + **dō**) produce, put forth
ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire; signal fire
appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, —— appear, be visible

19. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXX.18.7

Sent into a battle against the Carthaginians, the Roman cavalry almost succeeds in driving back the enemies.

tumultum equestrem auxit clāmor ab legiōnibus additus, nec stetisset hostium aciēs nī Māgo ad† prīmum equitum mōtum parātōs elephantōs extemplō in proelium indūxisset; ad quōrum strīdōrem odōremque et adspectum territī equī vānum equestre auxilium fēcērunt.

tumultus, tumultūs *m.* uproar, commotion, disturbance
equester, equestris, equestre of a horseman; of the cavalry
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus increase
clāmor, clāmōris *m.* shout; shouting, clamor
legiō, legiōnis *f.* legion
addō (**ad-** + **dō**) add (to)
nī = **nisi**
Māgo, Māgōnis *m.* Mago (brother of Hannibal)
†**ad**, *here*, for
eques, equitis *m.* horseman; *pl.* cavalry
elephantus, elephantī *m.* elephant
extemplō (adv.) immediately
indūcō (**in-** + **dūcō**) lead (into)
strīdor, strīdōris *m.* harsh noise
odor, odōris *m.* odor; stink
adspectus, adspectūs *m.* sight, appearance
equus, equī *m.* horse
vānus, -a, -um meaningless, useless, vain

20. Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.9.37–42

The poet reflects with bitterness on the early death of fellow elegiac poet Tibullus (55?–19? B.C.E.).

vīve pius—moriēre; pius cole sacra—colentem
  mors gravis ā templīs in cava busta trahet;
carminibus cōnfīde bonīs—iacet, ecce, Tibullus:
  vix manet ē tōtō parva quod urna capit!
tēne, sacer vātēs, flammae rapuēre rogālēs
  pectoribus pāscī nec timuēre tuīs?

colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; worship
sacer, sacra, sacrum sacred
cavus, -a, -um hollow
bustum, bustī *n. sing. or pl.*, funeral pyre; grave mound, tomb
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag
cōnfīdō, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsus sum put trust in, have confidence in (+ dat.)
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie dead
Tibullus, Tibullī *m.* Tibullus
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly
urna, urnae *f.* urn
vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* or *f.* prophet; bard, poet
flamma, flammae *f.* flame
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off; consume
rogālis, rogāle of *or* belonging to a funeral pyre
pāscor, pāscī, pāstus sum feed upon (+ abl.)

21. Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* I.113–24

The poet describes the legendary Roman rape of the Sabine women, which takes place in the middle of a public entertainment to which the Sabines have been invited.

in mediō plausū (plausūs tunc arte carēbant)
  rēx populō praedae signa petīta dedit.
prōtinus exiliunt, animum clāmōre fatentēs,
  virginibus cupidās iniciuntque manūs.
ut fugiunt aquilās, timidissima turba, columbae,
  ut fugit invīsōs agna novella lupōs:
sīc illae timuēre virōs sine mōre† ruentēs;
  cōnstitit in nūllā quī fuit ante color.
nam timor ūnus erat, faciēs nōn ūna timōris:
  pars laniat crīnēs, pars sine mente sedet;
altera maesta silet, frūstrā vocat altera mātrem:
  haec queritur, stupet haec; haec manet, illa fugit . . .

plausus, **plausūs** *m.* clapping, applause
tunc (adv.) then, at that time
praeda, **praedae** *f.* booty, plunder; prey
signum, **signī** *n.* sign, signal
prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway
ex(s)iliō, **ex(s)ilīre**, **ex(s)iluī**, —— spring forth, jump out
clāmor, **clāmōris** *m.* shout, shouting
virgō, **virginis** *f.* maiden, virgin
iniciō, **inicere**, **iniēcī**, **iniectus** throw (something, acc.) on (someone, dat.), lay (something, acc.) on (someone, dat.)
aquila, **aquilae** *f.* eagle
timidissimus, **-a**, **-um** very fearful, very afraid
turba, **turbae** *f.* crowd
columba, **columbae** *f.* dove
invīsus, **-a**, **-um** hateful, odious
agna, **agnae** *f.* ewe, lamb
novellus, **-a**, **-um** young, tender
lupus, **lupī** *m.* wolf
†**sine mōre**, *here,* lawlessly, wildly
ruō, **ruere**, **ruī**, —— rush
cōnsistō, **cōnsistere**, **cōnstitī**, —— make a stand, halt; remain
color, **colōris** *m.* color
faciēs, **faciēī** *f.* face; appearance
laniō (1-tr.) tear, mutilate
crīnis, **crīnis**, **-ium** *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
sedeō, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessūrus** sit, be seated
maestus, **-a**, **-um** sad, mournful, gloomy, grim
sileō, **silēre**, **siluī**, —— be silent
frūstrā (adv.) in vain
queror, **querī**, **questus sum** complain, lament
stupeō, **stupēre**, **stupuī**, —— be stunned, be speechless

The *Ars Amātōria* (Art of Love) is a collection of three books of elegiac poems that are both erotic and didactic in subject matter and style. The poet offers detailed advice to men (books I and II) and to women (book III) on how to seduce and hold love partners. With a mixture of irony and genuine enthusiasm Ovid's counsel favors fun and pleasure over fidelity and morality. This work of the poet may have aroused the displeasure of Augustus and may have led to Ovid's exile.

22. Augustus, *Rēs Gestae Dīvī Augustī,* Proem, 1–2

The preface and opening words of Augustus's autobiographical report to the Roman people

Rērum gestārum dīvī Augustī, quibus orbem terrārum imperiō populī Rōmānī subiēcit, et impēnsārum quās in† rem pūblicam populumque Rōmānum fēcit, incīsārum in duābus ahēneīs pīlīs, quae sunt Rōmae positae, exemplar subiectum.

Annōs undēvīgintī nātus exercitum prīvātō cōnsiliō et prīvātā impēnsā comparāvī, per quem rem pūblicam ā dominātiōne factiōnis oppressam in lībertātem vindicāvī. eō nōmine senātus dēcrētīs honōrificīs in ordinem suum mē adlēgit, C. Pānsā et A. Hirtiō cōnsulibus, cōnsulārem locum sententiae dīcendae† tribuēns, et imperium mihi dedit.

orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; **orbis terrārum**, circle of lands, world
subiciō, subicere, subiēcī, subiectus place below; make (something, acc.) subject to (something, dat.)
impēnsa, impēnsae *f.* expense, expenditure
†**in**, *here,* for
incīdō, incīdere, incīdī, incīsus cut into, inscribe onto
a(h)ēneus, -a, -um (made of) bronze
pīla, pīlae *f.* column; squared pillar
exemplar, exemplāris, -ium *n.* copy
prīvātus, -a, -um private
comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; raise
dominātiō, dominātiōnis *f.* absolute power, dominion; despotism
factiō, factiōnis *f.* faction, partisanship
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down; suppress
vindicō (1-tr.) lay claim to; **in lībertātem vindicāre**, to free
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name; reason, purpose
dēcrētum, dēcrētī *n.* decision, order, decree
honōrificus, -a, -um conferring honor, honorific
ordō, ordinis *m.* order, rank, class, body
adlegō (ad- + legō), adlegere, adlēgī, adlēctus elect, admit
C. Pānsa, C. Pānsae *m.* C. (Vibius) Pansa (consul 43 B.C.E.)
A. Hirtius, A. Hirtiī *m.* A. Hirtius (consul 43 B.C.E.)
cōnsulāris, cōnsulāre of *or* belonging to a consul, consular; of consular rank
†**dīcendae**, *fem. sing. gen. of a gerundive;* **sententiae dīcendae**, of speaking (my) opinion
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus grant, bestow, assign

The *Rēs Gestae Dīvī Augustī* is one of three documents that Augustus left with the Vestal Virgins shortly before his death in 14 C.E. This first-person description of Augustus's accomplishments is written in an unadorned and clear style. After Augustus's death, and by his order, the *Rēs Gestae* was inscribed on two pillars placed in front of his mausoleum in Rome and also on numerous copies throughout the empire (often with an accompanying Greek translation). The best surviving copy comes from Ankara in Turkey and includes the initial paragraph presented above.

23. Velleius Paterculus, *Historiae* II.18.1–3

The historian describes a Roman enemy in the East in 88 B.C.E.

Per ea tempora Mithridātēs, Ponticus rēx, vir neque silendus neque dīcendus sine cūrā, bellō ācerrimus, virtūte eximius, aliquandō fortūnā, semper animō maximus, cōnsiliīs dux, mīles manū,† odiō in Rōmānōs Hannibal, occupātā Asiā necātīsque in eā omnibus cīvibus Rōmānīs quōs quidem eādem diē atque hōrā redditīs cīvitātibus litterīs ingentī cum pollicitātiōne praemiōrum interimī iusserat, quō tempore neque fortitūdine adversus Mithridātem neque fidē in† Rōmānōs quisquam Rhodiīs pār fuit—hōrum fidem Mytilēnaeōrum perfidia illūminmāvit, quī M'. Aquilium aliōsque Mithridātī vīnctōs trādidērunt, quibus lībertās in ūnīus Theophanis grātiam posteā ā Pompeiō restitūta est—cum† terribilis Italiae quoque vidērētur imminēre, sorte obvēnit Sullae Asia prōvincia.

Mithridātēs, **Mithridātis** *m.* Mithridates (the Great) (king of Pontus, defeated by Sulla, Lucullus, and Pompey)
Ponticus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to the region adjoining the Black Sea (Pontus), of Pontus
sileō, **silēre**, **siluī**, —— be silent; pass over in silence
ācerrimus, **-a**, **-um** most *or* very fierce
eximius, **-a**, **-um** outstanding, remarkable
aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally
maximus, **-a**, **-um** biggest, greatest, very great
†**manus**, *here*, deed, action
occupō (1-tr.) seize; occupy
Asia, **Asiae** *f.* Asia (a Roman province [modern Asia Minor])
necō (1-tr.) put to death, kill
hōra, **hōrae** *f.* hour
reddō (**red-** + **dō**) give back, return; hand over, deliver
litterae, **litterārum** *f. pl.* letter, epistle
pollicitātiō, **pollicitātiōnis** *f.* promise
praemium, **praemiī** *n.* reward, prize
interimō, **interimere**, **interēmī**, **interēmptus** kill, do away with
fortitūdō, **fortitūdinis** *f.* bravery, fortitude
adversus (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against, in the face of
†**in**, *here*, toward
quisquam = *masc./fem. nom. sing. of indef. pron.*, anyone
Rhodiī, **Rhodiōrum** *m. pl.* Rhodians (inhabitants of the island Rhodes off the coast of Asia Minor)
pār, **paris** equal
Mytilēnaeī, **Mytilēnaeōrum** *m. pl.* Mytileneans, citizens of Mytilene (a city on the island Lesbos off the coast of Asia Minor)
perfidia, **perfidiae** *f.* faithlessness, treachery
illūminō (1-tr.) illuminate, reveal
M'. Aquilius, **M'. Aquiliī** *m.* M'. Aquilius
vinciō, **vincīre**, **vīnxī**, **vīnctus** bind, join, fetter
Theophanēs, **Theophanis** *m.* Theophanes (Greek historian from Mytilene, friend of Pompey)
grātia, **grātiae** *f.* favor, kindness; **in grātiam**, for the purpose of pleasing (+ gen.)
posteā (adv.) after, afterward
restituō, **restituere**, **restituī**, **restitūtus** set up again, restore
†**cum**, *here* (conj. + subjunc.) (under the circumstances) when
terribilis, **terribile** terrifying, frightening
immineō, **imminēre**, ——, —— hang over, threaten (+ dat.)
sors, **sortis**, **-ium** *f.* lot, portion; lottery
obveniō (**ob-** + **veniō**) be assigned to (+ dat.)

Velleius Paterculus was born in southern Italy and served under the future emperor Tiberius as commander of the cavalry in Germany. After his rise to the rank of praetor in 14 C.E., almost nothing is known of his life. The only known work of Velleius Paterculus is the *Historiae,* published in 30 C.E. in two books. The first book, the surviving text of which contains gaps, gives a cursory account of Roman history from Romulus to the fall of Carthage. The second book treats more contemporary history and includes a consistently positive portrait of Tiberius. Notable in the style of Velleius are a certain awkwardness and a pronounced lack of clarity in his long periodic sentences.

24. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 507–11

Eurybates describes the effect of a storm on the Greek sailors and their Trojan captives as they return from Troy.

Nīl ratiō et ūsus audet, ars cessit malīs;
tenet horror artūs, omnis officiō stupet
nāvita relictō, rēmus effugit manūs.
in vōta miserōs ultimus cōgit timor
ademque superōs Trōes et Danaī rogant.

ratiō, **ratiōnis** *f.* account, reason; reasoning
ūsus, **ūsūs** *m.* use, experience
horror, **horrōris** *m.* bristling, stiffening; trembling, dread
artus, **artūs** *m.* joint (of the body), limb
officium, **officiī** *n.* obligation; duty, task
stupeō, **stupēre**, **stupuī**, —— be stunned, be speechless
nāvita = **nauta**
rēmus, **rēmī** *m.* oar
effugiō (**ex-** + **fugiō**) flee from, escape, slip from
vōtum, **vōtī** *n.* vow, prayer
ultimus, **-a**, **-um** farthest, most remote; last, final
cōgō (**co-** + **agō**), **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctus** drive together, force, compel
superī, **superōrum** *m. pl.* gods above
Trōs, **Trōis** *m.* Trojan (man); **Trōes** = *nom. pl.*
Danaī, **Danaōrum** *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks
rogō (1-tr.) ask (someone, acc.) for (something, acc.)

25. Juvenal, *Saturae* X.283–88

After recovering from a fever that might have killed him, Pompeius Magnus was killed and beheaded in Egypt, to where he had fled during the civil wars with Caesar. The poet reflects on this end in comparison to the deaths of other Roman leaders.

prōvida Pompeiō dederat Campānia febrēs
optandās, sed multae urbēs et pūblica vōta
vīcērunt; igitur fortūna ipsīus et urbis
servātum victō caput abstulit. hōc cruciātū
Lentulus, hāc poenā caruit ceciditque Cethēgus
integer, et iacuit Catilīna cadāvere tōtō.

prōvidus, **-a**, **-um** having foreknowledge, provident
Campānia, **Campāniae** *f.* Campania (a province in southern Italy south of Latium)
febris, **febris**, **-ium** *f. sing. or pl.*, an attack of fever, fever
vōtum, **vōtī** *n.* vow, prayer
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore; then
caput, **capitis** *n.* head
cruciātus, **cruciātūs** *m.* torture, torment
Lentulus, **Lentulī** *m.* Lentulus (one of the leaders in the Catilinarian conspiracy)
Cethēgus, **Cethēgī** *m.* Cethegus (one of the leaders in the Catilinarian conspiracy)
integer, **integra**, **integrum** whole
iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —— lie, rest; lie dead
cadāver, **cadāveris** *n.* corpse

Decimus Iūnius Iuvenālis was born in southern Latium in the middle of the first century C.E. Juvenal began to write poetry sometime after the death of Domitian in 96 and continued to do so for the next thirty years. He lived until at least 127.

The *Saturae* (Satires) are sixteen satirical poems written in dactylic hexameter, which have been divided into five books. The poet caricatures and attacks various manifestations of what he views as the corruption of Roman society. Rhetoric, hypocrisy, the atmosphere surrounding the emperor, women, and human frailty in general are among the subjects scathingly attacked by the poet. Although Juvenal's subject matter is often crude, his poetry is highly developed and often colored by the language of epic and of tragedy.

Continuous Readings

1. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.479–90

While recounting the fall of Troy, Aeneas describes how Pyrrhus (= Neoptolemus), son of Achilles, breaks into the palace of Priam and slaughters the last members of the royal line.

ipse† inter prīmōs correptā dūra bipennī
līmina perrumpit postīsque ā cardine vellit
aerātōs; iamque excīsā trabe firma cavāvit
rōbora et ingentem lātō dedit ōre fenestram.
appāret domus intus et ātria longa patēscunt;
appārent Priamī et veterum penetrālia rēgum,
armātōsque vident stantīs in līmine prīmō.
at domus interior gemitū miserōque tumultū
miscētur, penitusque cavae plangōribus aedēs
fēmineīs ululant; ferit aurea sīdera clāmor.
tum pavidae tēctīs mātrēs ingentibus errant
amplexaeque tenent postīs atque ōscula fīgunt.

†**ipse** refers to Pyrrhus (= Neoptolemus).
corripiō, **corripere**, **corripuī**, **correptus** snatch up
bipennis, **bipennis** *f.* two-edged axe, **bipennī** = *abl. sing.*
līmen, **līminis** *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold
perrumpō, **perrumpere**, **perrūpī**, **perruptus** break *or* burst through
postis, **postis**, **-ium** *m.* doorpost, jamb
cardō, **cardinis** *m.* pivot; hinge
vellō, **vellere**, **vellī/vulsī**, **vulsus** pull (up), tear (from)
aerātus, **-a**, **-um** made of bronze
excīdō, **excīdere**, **excīdī**, **excīsus** cut down, cut out
trabs, **trabis** *f.* tree trunk; beam
firmus, **-a**, **-um** strong, sturdy
cavō (1-tr.) hollow out; cut through
rōbur, **rōboris** *n.* oak tree; timber
lātus, **-a**, **-um** broad, wide
ōs, **ōris** *n.* mouth; face; aperture, opening
fenestra, **fenestrae** *f.* window; hole, breach
appāreō, **appārēre**, **appāruī**, **appāritus** be visible; appear
intus (adv.) within, inside
ātrium, **ātriī** *n.* atrium (the main room of a Roman house)
longus, **-a**, **-um** long
patēscō, **patēscere**, **patuī**, —— become visible, be disclosed
Priamus, **Priamī** *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
vetus, **veteris** old, ancient; **veterum** = *gen. pl.*
penetrāle, **penetrālis**, **-ium** *n.* inner part, inmost recess; inner shrine
armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm
at (conj.) but
interior, **interius** (comparative adj.) inner; **interior** = *fem. sing. nom.*
gemitus, **gemitūs** *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
tumultus, **tumultūs** *m.* commotion, uproar
misceō, **miscēre**, **miscuī**, **mixtus** mix, stir up; throw into confusion
penitus (adv.) (from) within, deeply
cavus, **-a**, **-um** hollow
plangor, **plangōris** *m.* beating (of the breast in grief); lamentation
aedēs, **aedis**, **-ium** *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *pl.*, house, abode
fēmineus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to a woman, feminine
ululō (1-intr.) howl (in grief or as part of a religious ritual), wail
feriō, **ferīre**, ——, —— strike, hit
aureus, **-a**, **-um** golden
sīdus, **sīderis** *n.* star; constellation
clāmor, **clāmōris** *m.* shout, shouting; noise
tum (adv.) then, at that time
pavidus, **-a**, **-um** trembling, frightened
tēctum, **tēctī** *n.* roof; house, dwelling
amplector, **amplectī**, **amplexus sum** embrace; clasp (for protection)
ōsculum, **ōsculī** *n.* kiss
fīgō, **fīgere**, **fīxī**, **fīxus** fix, affix; plant

2. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.452–62

The poet recounts the tale of Apollo and Daphne.

prīmus amor Phoebī Daphnē Pēnēia, quem nōn
fors ignāra dedit, sed saeva Cupīdinis īra.
Dēlius hunc nūper victā serpente superbus
vīderat adductō flectentem cornua nervō
"quid" que "tibī,† lascīve puer, cum fortibus armīs?"
dīxerat; "ista decent umerōs gestāmina nostrōs,
quī† dare certa ferae, dare vulnera possumus hostī,
quī† modo pestiferō tot iūgera ventre prementem
strāvimus innumerīs tumidum Pȳthōna sagittīs.
tū face nescio quōs† estō contentus amōrēs
inrītāre tuā, nec laudēs† adsere nostrās!"

Phoebus, **Phoebī** *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
Daphnē, **Daphnēs** *f.* Daphne (a nymph, daughter of the river Peneus)
Pēnēius, **-a**, **-um** of Peneus (a river god)
fors, **fortis**, **-ium** *f.* chance, luck
ignārus, **-a**, **-um** not knowing, ignorant
saevus, **-a**, **-um** cruel, savage
Dēlius, **-a**, **-um** of Delos, Delian; *masc. subst.,* Delian Apollo
nūper (adv.) recently
serpēns, **serpentis**, **-ium** *f.* snake, serpent
superbus, **-a**, **-um** proud; haughty
addūcō (**ad-** + **dūcō**) lead toward; draw back, bend
flectō, **flectere**, **flexī**, **flexus** bend
cornū, **cornūs** *n.* horn; *sing. or pl.,* bow; **cornua** = *acc. pl.*
nervus, **nervī** *m.* sinew; (bow-)string
†The final **-i** of **tibi** here scans *long.*
lascīvus, **-a**, **-um** playful, naughty, free from restraint
deceō, **decēre**, ——, —— fit, befit
umerus, **umerī** *m.* shoulder
gestāmen, **gestāminis** *n.* something worn *or* carried; ornament, weapon
†**quī**, *antecedent is* **nōs** *implied in* **nostrōs**
fera, **ferae** *f.* wild animal, beast
vulnus, **vulneris** *n.* wound
modo (adv.) only, now; just now
pestifer, **pestifera**, **pestiferum** disease-carrying, deadly
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
iūgerum, **iūgerī** *n. iugerum* (measure of land = $\frac{2}{3}$ acre); acre
venter, **ventris** *m.* belly, stomach
premō, **premere**, **pressī**, **pressus** press (down), burden; afflict
sternō, **sternere**, **strāvī**, **strātus** strew; lay low, slay, kill
innumerus, **-a**, **-um** innumerable, countless
tumidus, **-a**, **-um** swollen
Pȳthōn, **Pȳthōnis** *m.* Python; **Pȳthōna** = *acc. sing.*
sagitta, **sagittae** *f.* arrow
fax, **facis** *f.* firebrand, torch
†**nescioquī**, **nescioquae**, **nescioquod** (indef. adj.) *sometimes written as two words,* some . . . or other
estō = *2nd sing. fut. act. imper., used in formal language or general precepts for orders,* (you will) be
contentus, **-a**, **-um** content, satisfied
inrītō (= **irrītō**) (1-tr.) provoke, stimulate
†**laus**, **laudis** *f.* praise
adserō, **adserere**, **adseruī**, **adsertus** claim as one's own, lay claim to; **nec . . . adsere** = *negative imperative*

§104. Rhetorical Terms

Writers of Latin prose and poetry regularly employed many modes of expression that are called **rhetorical devices**. Rhetoric, the principal subject studied in Roman education, may be defined as the art of persuasion in speech or in writing. *How* Roman speakers or writers expressed something was virtually inseparable from *what* they said or wrote. Indeed, the chosen style of any writer is in large part reflected in his distinctive use of the devices of rhetoric. LEARN THE FOLLOWING BASIC RHETORICAL TERMS AND THEIR DEFINITIONS. BE PREPARED TO IDENTIFY THEM IN THE READINGS.

Alliteration	repetition of the same sound at the beginning of successive words
Anaphora	(< Greek *anaphora,* "rising; repetition") repetition of the same word or words at the beginning of successive phrases or clauses
Antithesis	(< Greek *antithesis,* "opposition") opposition or contrast of two ideas
Assonance	(< **assonō**, "sound in accompaniment") repetition of identical or similar sounds in words
Asyndeton	(< Greek *asyndetos,* "unconnected") absence of connectives between phrases or clauses
Chiasmus	(< Greek *chiasmus,* "placing crosswise") arrangement of pairs, the second element of which is in inverted order (ABBA)
Ellipsis	(< Greek *elleipsis,* "ellipse, omission") omission of one or more grammatical elements that may be supplied from context
Hendiadys	(< Greek *hen dia duoin,* "one through two") one idea expressed through two nouns connected by "and" when a closer relation is suggested
Hyperbaton	(< Greek *hyperbatos,* "going beyond") separation of two words that normally belong together
Tricolon	(< Greek *trikōlos,* "three-limbed") three-part structure comprising three words, phrases, or clauses

Examples

quis hanc contumēliam, quis hoc imperium, quis hanc servitūtem ferre potest?
(Cato, quoted in Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* X.3.17)

(tricolon, anaphora, asyndeton, ellipsis)

Who is able to endure *this abuse, who this authority, who this slavery?*

haec enim est tyrannōrum vīta nīmīrum, in quā *nūlla fidēs, nūlla cāritās, nūlla* stabilis benivolentiae potest esse *fīdūcia* . . . (Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 52–53)

(tricolon, anaphora, asyndeton, hyperbaton)

This indeed is without doubt the life of tyrants, in which *no faith, no affection, no trust* of constant goodwill is able to exist.

ergō *Hannibal hostis, cīvis Antōnius?* (Cicero, *Philippics V* 24)

(chiasmus, antithesis, asyndeton, ellipsis)

Therefore *(is) Hannibal an enemy, (but) Antony a citizen?*

omnēs enim in cōnsulis iūre et imperiō dēbent esse *prōvinciae.* (Cicero, *Philippics IV* 9)
(hyperbaton)

For *all the provinces* ought to be in the right and power of the consul.

neque enim illum quem facile tulerant ratiōne aut sapientiā tulerant, sed *studiō* potius *et glōriā.* (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* II.65)
(hendiadys)

Nor indeed that (pain) that they had easily endured had they endured because of reason or wisdom, but rather because of *a zeal for glory.*

tēne, sacer vātēs, flammae *r*apuēre *r*ogālēs
*p*ectoribus *p*āscī nec *t*imuēre *t*uīs? (Ovid, *Amōrēs* III.9.41–42)
(alliteration)

Sacred poet, have the flames of the funeral pyre consumed you
and have they not feared to feed on your chest?

. . . hau*d doctīs dictīs c*ertan*tēs, se*d male*dictīs* . . . (Ennius, *Annālēs* VIII.250)
(assonance)

. . . contending not at all by learned words, but by insults . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. Several rhetorical devices may be combined in the same sentence. In the first example the tricolon gains speed through the use of anaphora and asyndeton. The repeated element **quis** emphasizes the structure of the tricolon and allows the succeeding elements to be highlighted (**contumēliam**, **imperium**, **servitūtem**).

2. Although the limbs of a tricolon are often of uniform length, the third limb is often expanded, as in the second example (**nūlla . . . fidūcia**).

3. In the second and fourth examples hyperbaton adds liveliness or surprise to the words that have been separated (**nūlla . . . fidūcia** and **omnēs . . . prōvinciae**).

4. In the fifth example the hendiadys **studiō . . . et glōriā** (because of zeal . . . and glory) expresses one idea: because of a zeal for glory.

When one studies a particular writer's use of rhetoric, it is convenient to refer to the unit known as the **period** (< Greek *periodos,* "a going around") or periodic sentence. A **periodic sentence** is a complex sentence arranged in such a way that meaning is not fully grasped until the end. The most important elements of the main clause are often placed at the beginning and the end, enclosing several subordinate structures. Additional elements and subordinate clauses are arranged within the whole for maximum cohesion and clarity. For example:

Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum *contulērunt; ipsī* cōnfertissimā aciē, reiectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem *successērunt.* (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I. 24)

The Helvetians, having followed with all their wagons, *brought together* (their) baggage into one place; *they themselves,* with the battle line being very dense, with our cavalry having been driven back, with a phalanx having been made, *approached* up to our first battle line.

The periodic structure of this sentence may be represented as follows:

Helvētiī
cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī
impedīmenta in ūnum locum *contulērunt*;
ipsī
cōnfertissimā aciē,
reiectō nostrō equitātū,
phalange factā,
sub prīmam nostram aciem *successērunt*.

CHAPTER XI

Vocabulary

➤ **audācia**, **audāciae** *f.* boldness; recklessness, audacity

➤ **campus**, **campī** *m.* (flat) plain
➤ **castra**, **castrōrum** *n. pl.* (military) camp
mūrus, **mūrī** *m.* wall
➤ **paulum**, ***paulī**[1] *n.* small amount, a little
➤ **signum**, **signī** *n.* sign, signal; standard
➤ **tēlum**, **tēlī** *n.* spear; weapon

➤ **ignis**, **ignis**, **-ium** *m.* fire
➤ **imperātor**, **imperātōris** *m.* commander, general
➤ **legiō**, **legiōnis** *f.* legion
➤ **lūx**, **lūcis** *f.* light, daylight
➤ **prīmā lūce** (idiom) at dawn
➤ **maiōrēs**, **maiōrum** *m. pl.* ancestors

➤ **sēnsus**, **sēnsūs** *m.* perception, feeling; sense

arbitror (1-tr.) judge, consider, think
putō (1-tr.) think, suppose

➤ **soleō**, **solēre**, **solitus sum** be accustomed

➤ **crēdō**, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditus** trust, believe (+ dat.)
➤ **iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iactus** throw; utter; lay, establish
➤ **ēiciō**, **ēicere**, **ēiēcī**, **ēiectus** throw out, expel

➤ **loquor**, **loquī**, **locūtus sum** speak, talk

➤ **inveniō**, **invenīre**, **invēnī**, **inventus** find, discover
➤ **sciō**, **scīre**, **sciī/scīvī**, **scītus** know
➤ **nesciō**, **nescīre**, **nesciī/nescīvī**, **nescītus** not know

➤ **pereō**, **perīre**, **periī**, **peritūrus** pass away, be destroyed; perish, die

longus, **-a**, **-um** long; far; long-standing; far-reaching
➤ **summus**, **-a**, **-um** highest; top (of); last, final

brevis, **breve** short, brief
humilis, **humile** humble
sapiēns, **sapientis** wise
➤ **similis**, **simile** similar (+ gen. *or* dat.)
➤ **dissimilis**, **dissimile** dissimilar, unlike, different (+ gen. *or* dat.)

➤ **diū** (adv.) for a long time
fore = **futūrus**, **-a**, **-um esse** (§105)
➤ **igitur** (postpositive conj.) therefore
longē (adv.) a long way, far; by far
➤ **parum** (indeclinable subst.) too little, not enough
(adv.) too little, inadequately
prīmum (adv.) first; for the first time
quam prīmum, as soon as possible
quam (adv.) as, how; (conj.) than (§112)

1. The asterisk before the genitive singular form of **paulum** indicates that the form does not occur in the Latin that survives.

Vocabulary Notes

- **audācia**, **audāciae** *f.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-ia** to the stem of **audāx**. **audācia** may have a positive sense (boldness, confidence), but more often has a negative sense of excessive boldness (recklessness, audacity).
- **campus**, **campī** *m.* is a flat expanse of land or "plain." The **Campus Martius** (< **Martius**, **-a**, **-um**, of *or* belonging to Mars) was the plain just outside the sacred boundary of Rome, on which the Roman troops trained, Roman armies mustered before entering the city in triumph, and Roman citizens gathered in assembly for elections. **campus** without an accompanying adjective may refer to the *Campus Martius*.
- Although **castra**, **castrōrum** *n. pl.* is plural in form, it has a singular meaning (military encampment). **castra** appears in two common idioms: **castra pōnere**, "to pitch *or* make camp" and **castra movēre**, "to break camp."
- **paulum**, ***paulī** *n.* appears in the nominative, accusative, and ablative singular only. It often functions as an Ablative of Degree of Difference (§112). It is also commonly found with a Partitive Genitive.

Paulō ante discesserant.	They had departed earlier by a little (a little earlier).
Paulum eī erat pecūniae.	There was a little of money to him. He had a little (of) money.

- **signum**, **signī** *n.* may mean any sort of mark or "sign." It may also mean "signal" or, in military contexts, a "standard" identifying a unit of the Roman army.
- **tēlum**, **tēlī** *n.* originally referred only to a throwing weapon (spear, javelin, dart), but its use was soon extended to include other weapons. It may also refer to the shaft of a throwing weapon as opposed to the point.
- The ablative singular of **ignis**, **ignis**, **-ium** *m.* is usually **ignī** (by analogy with *neuter* third-declension i-stem nouns). In poetry and in post-Augustan Latin, the regular form **igne** also occurs.
- **imperātor**, **imperātōris** *m.* is formed by the addition of the suffix **-tor** to the present stem of the verb **imperō**. An **imperātor** is one who gives orders, and the word is most often used of a military "commander" or "general." It is also an honorific title granted to a victorious commander either by his troops or by the senate.
- **legiō**, **legiōnis** *f.* was the largest unit of the Roman army. Its size ranged at various periods of the Roman Republic and Empire from 4,200 to 6,000 men.
- **lūx**, **lūcis** *f.* may mean "light" generally or "daylight" (the light of the sun). It may also mean "light" more metaphorically (mental illumination, light [of hope], etc.). **prīmā lūce**, literally "at first light," is an Ablative of Time When.
- **maiōrēs**, **maiōrum** *m. pl.* is a substantive of the comparative adjective **maior**, **maius** (§111).
- **sēnsus**, **sēnsūs** *m.* is an abstract noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-tus** to a stem of the verb **sentiō**. The **-t-** of the suffix assimilated to the **-s-** of the stem **sēns-** and was then lost.
- **soleō**, **solēre**, **solitus sum** is an intransitive semideponent verb. It regularly takes a Complementary Infinitive.

Bonus sine īrā dīcere solet.	A good man is accustomed to speak(ing) without anger.

- **crēdō**, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditus** may be transitive or intransitive. When transitive, it often takes a neuter pronoun as a direct object. When **crēdō** is intransitive, it may take a Dative with an Intransitive Verb. In the passive, **crēdō** may have a personal subject. **crēdō** may also introduce an Indirect Statement (§107).

Tē amō, crēde mihi.	I love you, believe me. (Dative with an Intransitive Verb)
Crēdunt id quod vident.	They believe that thing that they see. (d.o.)
Crēditur captus esse.	He is believed to have been captured. (passive voice, personal subject)
Crēdisne mē tē amāre?	Do you believe that I love you? (Indirect Statement)

- The first letter of the verb **iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iactus** is a *consonantal* **i** and is thus pronounced like English **y**. **iaciō** may mean "throw" or "cast" in a literal sense (rocks, javelins, lightning bolts) or a metaphorical one (injury, abuse, ridicule, remarks, kisses). It may also mean "lay" or "establish" (foundations, walls, ramparts).
- **ēiciō**, **ēicere**, **ēiēcī**, **ēiectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ē-** to **iaciō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in the first, second, and fourth principal parts. In the first two principal parts (and all forms made from them), the first **-i-** is pronounced as a consonantal **-i-** followed by the vocalic **-i-**, as if

they were spelled **ēiiciō, *ēiicere*. In the third principal part (**ēiēcī**), the root vowel exhibits ablaut and changes to **-ē-**. The **-i-** in the third and fourth principal parts is consonantal. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ALL* COMPOUNDS OF **IACIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ĒICIŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **IACIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

➤ **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** often appears absolutely. In classical Latin, the person with whom one speaks is expressed by **cum** and a person in the ablative. Except in early Latin **loquor** does *not* take a Dative of Indirect Object. Compounds of **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** do *not* exhibit vowel weakening. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **LOQUOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

➤ **inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of **in-** to **veniō** and does *not* exhibit vowel weakening. Unlike **veniō, inveniō** is a transitive verb.

➤ **sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītus** means "know" in the broadest sense of the word. In particular, **sciō** means "know" facts. **sciō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **sci-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**scīstī, scīstis**). When **sciō** takes an infinitive, it means "know how."

Poēta causās rērum scit.	The poet knows the causes of things.
Caesar vincere scīvit.	Caesar knew how to conquer.

The present active imperative forms of **sciō** almost never appear in the Latin that survives, but this verb uses instead the future active imperative forms **scītō** (singular) and **scītōte** (plural) with present meanings.

➤ **nesciō, nescīre, nesciī/nescīvī, nescītus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the negative prefix **ne-** to **sciō**. **nesciō** has two third principal parts, either of which may be used to make any of the forms of the perfect active system. In the second person singular and plural perfect active indicative the short **-i-** of the stem **nesci-** always contracts with the appropriate endings (**nescīstī, nescīstis**). When **nesciō** takes an infinitive, it means "not know how."

➤ **pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to the irregular verb **eō**. **pereō** conjugates exactly as **eō** *except* that it has only *one* third principal part. **pereō** may be used synonymously for **morior** and be translated "perish" or "die." When its subject is not human, **pereō** may mean "pass away" or "be destroyed." The first person singular present active subjunctive may be used as an Optative, future wish capable of fulfillment, to assert something strongly. The first person (singular and plural) perfect active indicative—and occasionally other forms—may be used hyperbolically to express panic (I am/We are destroyed/lost/done for).

Multī mīlitum periērunt.	Many of the soldiers died.
Magnae urbēs cum moenibus pereunt.	Great cities with their (city) walls pass away.
Peream nisi ista mē movent verba.	May I die if those words do not move me.
Ingeniō meō periī!	I am lost because of my own talent!

➤ In addition to "highest," "final," and "last," the irregular superlative adjective **summus, -a, -um** may mean "top of" when it modifies a place: **summa moenia**, "the top of the city walls" (subj., d.o.).

➤ **similis, simile** and **dissimilis, dissimile** may take either a genitive or a dative expressing that which something is "similar" or "dissimilar" to.

Patris similis est hic fīlius.	This son is similar to (his) father.
Quid illī simile bellō fuit?	What was similar to that war?

➤ The temporal adverb **diū** often appears in the phrase **iam diū**, "for a long time now/already." When this phrase occurs with a verb in the present tense, the present tense reports an action that has been going on for some time and is still going on. When this phrase occurs with a verb in the imperfect tense, the imperfect tense reports an action that had been going on for some time and was still going on (§90). These uses of the present and imperfect tenses require special English translations.

Hoc iam diū dīcō.	I have been saying this thing for a long time now.
Hoc iam diū dīcēbam.	I had been saying this thing for a long time already.

➤ In classical Latin, **igitur** is most frequently a postpositive conjunction. (In the historians Sallust and Tacitus, however, **igitur** is nearly always placed first.) **igitur** is used to join a sentence with a preceding one to indicate the consequence or inference of a preceding idea or series of ideas.

➤ Like **satis**, **parum** may be an indeclinable neuter substantive or an adverb. While **satis** means "enough," **parum** describes what falls short of enough (too little).

	Derivatives	Cognates
audācia	**audac**ity	
brevis	brief; ab**brev**iate	**mer**ry; **pre**tzel
campus	campus	
crēdō	**cred**o; **cred**it; **cred**ible; mis**crea**nt	heart; dis**cord**; **cour**age; **card**iac
iaciō	in**ject**; ad**ject**ive; jet	ca**thet**er
ignis	**ign**ite; **ign**eous	
longus	**long**itude; lunge; **long**evity; pur**loin**	long; **ling**er; be**long**; **Len**t
loquor	**loqu**acious; circum**locu**tion; soli**loqu**y	
lūx	**Luci**fer; **luc**ulent	**ligh**t
mūrus	**mur**al	
parum		poor; **fi**lly; **pu**er
putō	com**put**e	
sciō	**sci**ence; pre**sci**ent	**sh**yster; **sch**ism; re**sci**nd; **shed**
signum	sign; **sign**al; seal	
similis	**simil**ar; as**simil**ate; re**sembl**e	**sim**plex; **sim**ple; same; **sin**gle; **san**dhi; seem

§105. Infinitives

In addition to the present active infinitive (the second principal part) and present passive infinitive (§31), there are three other infinitives in regular use in Latin: the perfect active infinitive, perfect passive infinitive, and future active infinitive. The following chart presents these infinitives and their basic translations:

	Active	*Passive*
Present	2nd Principal Part **vocāre** **movēre** **regere** "to _____" **capere** **audīre**	Change final **-e** of 2nd Prinincipal Part to **-ī** (in 3rd conjugation, change final **-ere** to **-ī**) **vocārī** **movērī** **regī** "to be _____ed" **capī** **audīrī**
Perfect	Perfect Active Stem from 3rd Principal Part + **-isse** **vocāvisse** **mōvisse** **rēxisse** "to have **cēpisse** _____ed" **audīvisse**	Perfect Passive Participle + **esse** **vocātus, -a, -um esse** **mōtus, -a, -um esse** **rēctus, -a, -um esse** "to have been **captus, -a, -um esse** _____ed" **audītus, -a, -um esse**
Future	Future Active Participle + **esse** **vocātūrus, -a, -um esse** **mōtūrus, -a, -um esse** **rēctūrus, -a, -um esse** **captūrus,-a, -um esse** **audītūrus, -a, -um esse** "to be about to/ to be going to _____"	Rare

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect active infinitive of **eō** may be either **īvisse** or **īsse** (< **i-** + **-isse**). Any perfect active stem that ends in short **-i-** contracts with the **-i-** of the perfect active infinitive ending **-isse**. For example: **cupīsse**, **quaesīsse**.

2. Deponent verbs have three infinitives: present passive (second principal part), perfect passive, and future active. All have active meanings. For example:

cōnārī	to attempt
cōnātus, -a, -um esse	to have attempted
cōnātūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to attempt

3. Semideponent verbs have three infinitives: present active (second principal part), perfect passive, and future active. All have active meanings. For example:

audēre	to dare
ausus, -a, -um esse	to have dared
ausūrus, -a, -um esse	to be going to dare

4. A future passive infinitive exists in Latin, but it is rarely used. For its formation see §144, n. 4.

5. The future active infinitive of **sum** (**futūrus**, **-a**, **-um esse**) has an alternate form: **fore**. MEMORIZE THIS IRREGULAR INFINITIVE FORM.

6. The order of compound infinitive forms may be reversed. For example, **vocātus esse** and **esse vocātus** are equally correct.

Periphrastic Infinitives

Active and passive periphrastics also have infinitive forms. For example:

Active Periphrastic Infinitives		
Present	**rēctūrus, -a, -um esse**	to be about to rule
Perfect	**rēctūrus, -a, -um fuisse**	to have been about to rule

Passive Periphrastic Infinitives		
Present	**regendus, -a, -um esse**	to be having to be ruled
Perfect	**regendus, -a, -um fuisse**	to have been having to be ruled

OBSERVATION

The present infinitive of the active periphrastic is also used as the future active infinitive of the verb. Thus, for example, **rēctūrus**, **-a**, **-um esse** may be identified as the present infinitive of the active periphrastic of **regō** or as the future active infinitive of **regō**.

§106. Synopsis VII: Complete

When one generates a synopsis that includes the infinitive, the infinitive follows the participle and precedes the imperative. Here is a model synopsis of **agō** in the third person plural neuter:

Principal Parts: **agō, agere, ēgī, āctus**
Person, Number, and Gender: **3rd pl. n.**

	Active	*Translation*	*Passive*	*Translation*
Indicative				
Present	**agunt**	they are driving	**aguntur**	they are (being) driven
Imperfect	**agēbant**	they were driving	**agēbantur**	they were being driven
Future	**agent**	they will drive	**agentur**	they will be driven
Perfect	**ēgērunt/ ēgēre**	1. they drove 2. they have driven	**ācta sunt**	1. they (n.) were driven 2. they (n.) have been driven
Pluperfect	**ēgerant**	they had driven	**ācta erant**	they (n.) had been driven
Future Perfect	**ēgerint**	they will have driven	**ācta erunt**	they (n.) will have been driven
Subjunctive				
Present	**agant**		**agantur**	
Imperfect	**agerent**		**agerentur**	
Perfect	**ēgerint**		**ācta sint**	
Pluperfect	**ēgissent**		**ācta essent**	
Participle				
Present	**agēns**	driving	——	
Perfect	——		**āctus, -a, -um**	(having been) driven
Future	**āctūrus, -a, -um**	about to drive	**agendus, -a, -um**	having to be driven
Infinitive				
Present	**agere**	to drive	**agī**	to be driven
Perfect	**ēgisse**	to have driven	**āctus, -a, -um esse**	to have been driven
Future	**āctūrus, -a, -um esse**	to be going to drive	RARE	
Imperative				
Singular	**age**	drive	**agere**	be driven
Plural	**agite**	drive (pl.)	**agiminī**	be driven (pl.)

☛ Drill 105–106, page 457, may now be done.

§107. Indirect Statement and the Subject Accusative

In both English and Latin what someone says may be reported in a *direct quotation*. For example:

> He says, "I understand well the poems of Vergil."
> **Dīcit, "Carmina Vergilī bene intellegō."**

Speech, thoughts, and perceptions may also be reported *indirectly*. In English, no comma and no quotation marks are used, the conjunction "that" is usually added, and changes in pronouns and verb tenses regularly occur. For example:

> He says *that he understands well the poems of Vergil.*
> (Original statement: I understand well the poems of Vergil.)
> We thought *that he understood well the poems of Vergil.*
> (Original thought: He understands well the poems of Vergil.)

Each italicized phrase is a subordinate clause, part of a complex sentence, the main clause of which is the introductory phrase (He says, We thought). Such subordinate clauses are rendered in Latin by a construction called **Indirect Statement**. An Indirect Statement in Latin:

1. is introduced by a **verb of perception**
2. lacks a subordinating conjunction equivalent to the English "that"[2]
3. has a subject in the *accusative* case (called a **Subject Accusative of an Indirect Statement**)[3]
4. has a verb in the infinitive[3]

OBSERVATION

> A verb of perception is a verb of speaking, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like. In addition, certain phrases with related meanings—"There is a rumor," "There was a story," etc.—may also introduce Indirect Statement.

The tense and voice of the infinitive in Indirect Statement correspond as closely as possible to the tense and voice of the verb in the direct statement, thought, or perception that is being reported indirectly. In addition, the infinitive in an Indirect Statement shows time relative to the verb of perception that introduces it.

> A *present* infinitive represents an action that is *simultaneous* with the main verb.
> A *perfect* infinitive represents an action that is *prior* to the main verb.
> A *future* infinitive represents an action that is *subsequent* to the main verb.[4]

2. It is possible in colloquial English to omit the subordinating conjunction "that." For example: "We thought he understood well the poems of Vergil."

3. Cf. the English "I know *him to be* honorable" (= I know that he is honorable).

4. Cf. the relative time of participles, §97.

For example:

Carmina Vergilī bene *intellegit*.		*He understands* well the poems of Vergil.
Cōgitō	***eum* carmina Vergilī**	I think *that he understands . . .*
Cōgitābam	**bene *intellegere*.**	I was thinking *that he understood . . .*
Cōgitābō		I shall think *that he understands . . .*
Carmina Vergilī bene *intellēxit*.		*He understood* well the poems of Vergil.
Cōgitō	***eum* carmina Vergilī**	I think *that he understood . . .*
Cōgitābam	**bene *intellēxisse*.**	I was thinking *that he had understood . . .*
Cōgitābō		I shall think *that he understood . . .*
Carmina Vergilī bene *intelleget*.		*He will understand* well the poems of Vergil.
Cōgitō	***eum* carmina Vergilī**	I think *that he will understand . . .*
Cōgitābam	**bene *intellēctūrum***	I was thinking *that he would understand . . .*
Cōgitābō	***esse*.**	I shall think *that he will understand . . .*

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Subject Accusative is usually the first word of an Indirect Statement in Latin. The word "that" should be added at the beginning of an English translation of an Indirect Statement, and the infinitive should be translated as a finite verb.

2. In each Indirect Statement the syntax of **eum** is **Subject Accusative of an Indirect Statement**.

3. The infinitives **intellegere**, **intellēxisse**, and **intellēctūrum esse** are, respectively, present active, perfect active, and future active. Each is translated into English by a *finite verb* that shows *time relative to the main verb*. Care must be taken to indicate the relative time to the main verb of the infinitive in an Indirect Statement.

4. Any participle that is part of an infinitive in Indirect Statement agrees with the Subject Accusative in *gender, number, and case*. For example, the future active participle **intellēctūrum** (part of the future active infinitive) is *masculine singular accusative* to agree with **eum**.

5. An Indirect Statement is a noun clause. It most often functions as the direct object of the verb of perception that introduces it.

When the infinitive in an Indirect Statement is a linking verb such as **sum**, it is often accompanied by a **Predicate Accusative** or a **Predicate Adjective in the Accusative case**. For example:

Cōgitāsne nostram rēgīnam esse *fēminam* magnae sapientiae?
Do you think that our queen is *a woman* of great wisdom?

Cōgitāsne nostram rēgīnam esse *fēlīcem*?
Do you think that our queen is *fortunate*?

The syntax of **fēminam** is **Predicate Accusative**, and the syntax of **fēlīcem** is **Predicate Adjective in the Accusative case.**

The **esse** of infinitives that are compound forms may be omitted.[5] For example:

Dīcit sē quattuor diēbus ad prōvinciam *profectūram*. (future active infinitive)
She says that she within four days to the province *will set forth*.
She says that she *will set forth* to the province within four days.

In the English sentence "It is said that Marcus will lead the troops into battle," the verb of perception "is said" is used impersonally. In classical Latin this impersonal use of a verb of perception in the passive voice is avoided in the present system. Instead, the subject of the Indirect Statement appears as the subject of the verb of perception. This is called the **personal construction** of an Indirect Statement. For example:

Marcus dīcitur cōpiās in proelium ductūrus esse.
Marcus is said the troops (d.o.) into battle to be going to lead.
Marcus is said to be going to lead the troops into battle.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the personal construction the subject of the verb of perception in the passive voice is *nominative,* and the infinitive is translated with its basic meaning (§105). If the infinitive is a compound form, as in the sentence above, the participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the nominative subject of the sentence.

2. If the verb of perception is a compound form in the perfect passive system, it may be used impersonally with the entire Indirect Statement functioning as the impersonal subject. For example:

Dictum est Marcum cōpiās in proelium ductūrum esse.
It was said that Marcus the troops (d.o.) into battle would lead.
That Marcus would lead the troops into battle was said.
It was said that Marcus would lead the troops into battle.

☛ Drill 107, page 461, may now be done.

§108. A Note on the Subject Accusative

A Subject Accusative may appear as the subject of an infinitive in constructions other than Indirect Statement. For example:

Optō *mē* esse bonum.	I desire *myself* to be good.
***Mīlitēs* stāre iussit.**	*The soldiers* to stand he ordered. He ordered *the soldiers* to stand.
Satis est *mē* servitūte līberārī.	Enough (it) is *for me* from slavery to be freed. It is enough *for me* to be freed from slavery.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the syntax of **esse** is Object Infinitive, and the syntax of **mē** is **Subject Accusative**. In the second sentence the syntax of **stāre** is Object Infinitive, and the syntax of **mīlitēs** is **Subject Accusative**. (**optō** and **iubeō** are not verbs of perception.)

5. Cf. the omission of the forms of **sum** in compound forms of the perfect passive system (§53).

2. In the third sentence, the syntax of **līberārī** is Subject Infinitive, and the syntax of **mē** is **Subject Accusative**. It is often convenient to translate such noun clauses with the English words "for . . . to . . ."

§109. Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement

When a complex sentence is subordinated in Indirect Statement, the main clause appears with a Subject Accusative and verb in the infinitive. The subordinate clause appears with a verb in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.[6] Compare the same sentence presented first as a direct quotation and then in Indirect Statement:

Dux dīcit/dīcēbat, "Mīles quī fūgit poenās dabit."
The leader says/was saying, "The soldier who fled will pay the penalty."
Dux dīcit mīlitem quī *fūgerit* poenās datūrum esse.
The leader says that the soldier who *fled* will pay the penalty.
Dux dīcēbat mīlitem quī *fūgisset* poenās datūrum esse.
The leader was saying that the soldier who *had fled* would pay the penalty.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The perfect indicative verb (**fūgit**) in the relative clause of the direct quotation appears as a perfect subjunctive in primary sequence (**fūgerit**) and a pluperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence (**fūgisset**) when the direct quotation is reported indirectly. These tenses reflect the fact that the action of the verb in the relative clause in the direct quotation happened *prior* to the time of the main verb (**dīcit/dīcēbat**).

2. The syntax, for example, of **fūgisset** in the third sentence is **pluperfect subjunctive, Subordinate Clause in Indirect Statement, secondary sequence, time prior to the main verb.**

Although there is no special English translation for the subjunctive verb in a subordinate clause in Indirect Statement, the subjunctive mood indicates that the subordinate clause is to be understood as *part of the original statement or perception* being reported indirectly.

By contrast, the indicative mood appears in a subordinate clause in indirect statement when the subordinate clause: 1. is an addition of the writer or speaker of the sentence or 2. contains information vouched for by the writer or speaker. For example:

Cicerō sēnsit rem pūblicam, quam magnopere amābat, servandam esse.
Cicero perceived that the republic, which he greatly was loving, had to be saved.

OBSERVATION

In this sentence the person reporting Cicero's feeling that the republic had to be saved indicates by the use of the indicative mood (**amābat**) in the relative clause either 1. that the entire subordinate clause is *not* part of what Cicero felt, but is rather an addition of the writer or speaker, *or* 2. that the writer vouches for Cicero's love of the republic.

☛ DRILL 109, PAGE 469, MAY NOW BE DONE.

6. When certain types of conditional sentences are subordinated in Indirect Statement, they are treated differently from other complex sentences. The rules for the subordination of conditional sentences are not presented in this book.

§110. Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

In both English and Latin, adjectives and adverbs may appear in *three degrees*. For example:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
tall	taller; rather tall	tallest; very tall
quickly	more quickly; rather quickly	most quickly; very quickly

Comparative Degree of Adjectives

All regular first-second- and third-declension adjectives in Latin form the comparative degree in the same way. The comparative degree of every adjective in Latin is a third-declension adjective with two forms in the nominative singular. The endings **-ior** (m./f.), **-ius** (n.) are added to the stem of the positive degree of the adjective. For example:

Positive degree	**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**
Stem for forming the comparative	**pulchr-**
Comparative degree	**pulchrior, pulchrius**
Stem of the comparative adjective	**pulchriōr-**

The comparative degree of the adjective **pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** is declined as follows:

	Singular		*Plural*	
	M./F.	N.	M./F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	pulchrior	pulchrius	pulchriōrēs	pulchriōr**a**
Gen.	**pulchriōr**is	**pulchriōr**is	pulchriōr**um**	pulchriōr**um**
Dat.	pulchriōrī	pulchriōrī	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus
Acc.	pulchriōrem	pulchrius	pulchriōr**ēs**/pulchriōr**īs**	pulchriōr**a**
Abl.	pulchriōr**e**/ pulchriōr**ī**	pulchriōr**e**/ pulchriōr**ī**	pulchriōribus	pulchriōribus

OBSERVATIONS

1. The stem of adjectives in the comparative degree is obtained by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. For example: genitive singular = **pulchriōris**; stem = **pulchriōr-**.

2. The declension of the comparative degree of adjectives uses *some but not all i-stem features* of third-declension adjectives:

   a. the ablative singular ending may be either **-e** or **-ī**.
   b. the neuter plural nominative/vocative and accusative is **-a** (not **-ia**).
   c. the genitive plural ending is **-um** (not **-ium**).
   d. the masculine/feminine plural accusative ending may be either **-ēs** or **-īs**.

3. The comparative degree of an adjective has a variety of translations: "_____-er," "more _____," "quite _____," "rather _____," "too _____."

4. Since participles are verbal adjectives, some participles appear in the comparative degree. For example: **amantior, amantius**, "more loving"; **optātior, optātius**, "more (having been) desired."

Comparative Degree of Adverbs

To form the comparative degree of an adverb in Latin, add the ending **-ius** to a stem found by dropping the ending of the positive degree. For example:

Positive degree	**pulchrē, fortiter**
Stem for forming the comparative	**pulchr-, fort-**
Comparative degree	**pulchrius, fortius**

OBSERVATIONS

1. All regular adverbs formed from first-second- and third-declension adjectives form the comparative degree in the same way.
2. The comparative degree of every adverb is identical with the neuter accusative singular form of the comparative adjective.
3. The comparative degree of an adverb has a variety of translations: "more _____-ly," "quite _____-ly," "rather _____-ly," "too _____-ly."

Superlative Degree of Adjectives

To form the superlative degree of an adjective in Latin, add **-issimus**, **-a**, **-um** to the stem of the adjective in the positive degree. If the masculine singular nominative form of the positive degree ends in **-r**, add **-rimus**, **-a**, **-um** to that form. For example:

Positive degree	**fortis, forte**	Stem: **fort-**
Superlative degree	**fortissimus, -a, -um**	
Positive degree	**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**	masc. sing. nom. = **pulcher**
Superlative degree	**pulcherrimus, -a, -um**	

Five adjectives in Latin form the superlative degree by adding **-limus**, **-a**, **-um** to the stem.[7] These adjectives are:

facilis, facile	easy
difficilis, difficile	difficult
similis, simile	similar
dissimilis, dissimile	dissimilar
humilis, humile	humble

For example:

Positive degree	**humilis, humile**	Stem: **humil-**
Superlative degree	**humillimus, -a, -um**	

OBSERVATIONS

1. The superlative degree of an adjective has a variety of translations: " _____-est," "most _____," "very _____."
2. Since participles are verbal adjectives, some participles appear in the superlative degree. For example: **amantissimus, -a, -um**, "most loving," **amātissimus, -a, -um**, "most loved."

7. A sixth adjective, **gracilis, gracile**, "slender, fine, graceful," also forms its superlative degree by the addition of **-limus**, but the superlative degree of this adjective is rare.

Superlative Degree of Adverbs

To form the superlative degree of an adverb in Latin, add the ending **-ē** to the stem of the superlative degree of the adjective. For example:

Superlative degree of the adjective	**fortissimus, -a, -um**
Stem of the superlative adjective	**fortissim-**
Superlative degree of the adverb	**fortissimē**

OBSERVATION

The superlative degree of an adverb is translated "most _____-ly," "very _____-ly."

When one generates the comparative and superlative forms of an adjective or adverb from the positive form, one is said to **compare** that adjective or adverb. For example:

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
Adjective		
honestus, -a, -um honorable	**honestior, honestius** more honorable, etc.	**honestissimus, -a, -um** most honorable, etc.
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful	**pulchrior, pulchrius** more beautiful, etc.	**pulcherrimus, -a, -um** most beautiful, etc.
fortis, forte brave	**fortior, fortius** braver, rather brave, etc.	**fortissimus, -a, -um** bravest, most brave, etc.
Adverb		
honestē honorably	**honestius** more honorably, etc.	**honestissimē** most honorably, etc.
pulchrē beautifully	**pulchrius** more beautifully, etc.	**pulcherrimē** most beautifully, etc.
fortiter bravely	**fortius** more bravely, etc.	**fortissimē** most bravely, etc.

☛ Drill 110, page 471, may now be done.

§111. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs

Certain adjectives and adverbs in Latin have irregular forms in the comparative and superlative degrees. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR FORMS:

ADJECTIVES

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bonus, -a, -um good	**melior, melius** better	**optimus, -a, -um** best
malus, -a, -um bad	**peior, peius**[8] worse	**pessimus, -a, -um** worst
magnus, -a, -um great	**maior, maius**[8] greater	**maximus, -a, -um** greatest
parvus, -a, -um small	**minor, minus** smaller	**minimus, -a, -um** smallest
multus, -a, -um much, many	**plūs/plūrēs, plūra** more	**plūrimus, -a, -um** most
———	**prior, prius** earlier	**prīmus, -a, -um** first

OBSERVATIONS

1. The declensions of all irregular comparative adjectives follow the pattern of **pulchrior, pulchrius**, but the genitive plural of **plūs** is **plūrium** (not **plūrum*).

2. The comparative degree of the adjective **multus, -a, -um** has regular comparative adjective forms in the plural, but the singular exists only as a neuter substantive, "(the amount) more," which is usually followed by a Partitive Genitive. For example, **plūrēs amīcī** (more friends [subj.]; **plūrēs** is masculine plural nominative to agree with **amīcī**), but **plūs pecūniae** ([the amount] more of money; **plūs** is a neuter substantive, singular nominative or accusative, followed by **pecūniae**, Partitive Genitive).

ADVERBS

Positive	*Comparative*	*Superlative*
bene well	**melius** better	**optimē** best
male badly	**peius**[9] worse	**pessimē** worst
magnopere greatly	**magis** more (greatly)	**maximē** most greatly; especially
parum too little	**minus** less	**minimē** least; not at all
multum much	**plūs** more	**plūrimum** most
———	**prius** before, sooner	**prīmum** first
saepe often	**saepius** more often	**saepissimē** most often
diū for a long time	**diūtius** longer	**diūtissimē** longest

OBSERVATION

In the comparative degree several irregular adverbs are identical with the neuter singular accusative of the corresponding comparative adjectives: **melius**, **peius**, **minus**, and **prius**.

☛ DRILL 111, PAGE 475, MAY NOW BE DONE.

8. **Peior**, **peius** and **maior**, **maius** are pronounced as if they were spelled *peiior, *peiius and *maiior, *maiius. In each word the first **-i-** combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, **-ei-** or **-ai-**, the latter of which is pronounced exactly the same as **-ae-**. In each case the second **-i-** is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English **-y-**.

9. **Peius** is pronounced as if it were spelled *peiius. The first **-i-** combines with the preceding vowel to create a diphthong, **-ei-**. The second **-i-** is *consonantal* and is thus pronounced like English **-y-**.

§112. Constructions with the Comparative and Superlative Degrees

The comparative degree of adjectives and adverbs is regularly used to make comparisons between two persons or things. For example:

***Altior* est fīlius *quam* pater (est).**
Taller is the son *than* (his) father (is).
The son is *taller than* (his) father.
Omnēs sentiunt hunc hominem *pulchrius* cecinisse *quam* illum.
All men feel that this man *more beautifully* sang *than* that man.
All men feel that this man sang *more beautifully than* that man.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Latin word that corresponds to the English conjunction "than" is **quam**.
2. When comparisons are made with **quam**, the elements being compared must be in the same case.

When someone or something is compared to what is viewed as the *absolute standard* of a particular quality, an **Ablative of Comparison** is used instead of **quam** and the same case. For example:

Patria mihi *vītā* meā est cārior.
The homeland is dearer to me *than my life*. (Life is viewed as the absolute standard of dearness.)
Quis est nostrō *rēge* peior?
Who is worse *than our king*? (Our king is viewed as the absolute standard of badness.)

The syntax of each italicized word (**vītā**, **rēge**) is **Ablative of Comparison**.

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Comparison arose from the original separative or "from" function of the ablative case (e.g., From [the standpoint of] my life the country is dearer).

A noun or, more commonly, a neuter singular substantive in the ablative case is used to indicate *the degree* or *amount by which* persons or things being compared differ. Such an ablative is called an **Ablative of Degree of Difference**. For example:

***Multō* altior est fīlius quam pater.**	*By much* taller is the son than (his) father. The son is *much* taller than (his) father.
Multīs ante *diēbus* Rōmā discessit.	Earlier *by* many *days* from Rome he departed. He departed from Rome many *days* earlier.

The syntax of each italicized word (**multō**, **diēbus**) is **Ablative of Degree of Difference.**

OBSERVATION

The Ablative of Degree of Difference is a variety of the Ablative of Means.

A Purpose clause that contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree is frequently introduced by **quō** instead of **ut**. Such a clause is a type of Relative Clause of Purpose (§89). For example:

Clārā vōce dīcō *quō* melius audiās.
By means of a clear voice I speak *by which (degree)* better you may hear.
I speak by means of a clear voice *in order that by this (degree)* better you may hear.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In this construction **quō** is neuter singular ablative of the relative pronoun, and its antecedent is the *entire idea expressed by the main clause*. The syntax of **quō** is Ablative of Degree of Difference (modifying the comparative adverb in the Purpose clause). That is, "I speak by means of a clear voice in order that, *by the degree to which I speak in that way, (by that degree)* you may hear *better*."

2. The second English translation given above (in order that . . . by this [degree] . . . may) is to be preferred. The English phrase "by this (degree)" preserves the close connection between the main clause and the subordinate clause that the relative pronoun in Latin achieves. The words "in order that . . . may" clearly indicate the idea of purpose that the clause expresses.

The Partitive Genitive (§34) and the Ablative of Degree of Difference may be found with adjectives and adverbs in the superlative degree. For example:

Fortissimus *omnium* es.
The bravest *of all people* you are. (**omnium** = Partitive Genitive)
You are the bravest *of all people*.
Gladium *multō* optimum habeō.
A sword (d.o.) *by much* the best I have. (**multō** = Ablative of Degree of Difference)
I have *by far* the best sword.

The adverb **quam**, "as," "how," may be added to an adjective or adverb in the superlative degree to express the highest possible degree. The resulting phrase is translated "as _____ as possible."

***Quam clārissima* est vōx eius.**	*As clear as possible* is her voice.
	Her voice is *as clear as possible*.
Pugnāte *quam ācerrimē*.	Fight (pl.) as fiercely as possible.

☛ DRILL 112, PAGE 479, MAY NOW BE DONE.

Short Readings

1. The hungry parasite Ergasilus laments his fate.

   miser homō est quī ipse sibi quod edit quaerit et id aegrē invenit,
   sed ille est miserior quī et aegrē quaerit et nihil invenit;
   ille miserrimust† quī cum† ēsse cupit, tum quod edit nōn habet.
   (Plautus, *Captīvī* 461–63)

edō, **ēsse**, **ēdī**, **ēsus** (irregular 3rd conjugation verb) eat; **edit** = *3rd sing. pres. act. subjunc.*
aegrē (adv.) scarcely, with difficulty
†**miserrimust** = **miserrimus est**
†**cum**, *here* (conj.) when
tum (adv.) then, at that time

2. An excerpt from a prologue spoken by an actor to the audience.

   sī vērum dīxī, signum clārum date mihi
   ut vōs mī esse aequōs iam inde ā prīncipiō sciam.
   quī ūtuntur vīnō vetere sapientīs putō.
   et quī libenter veterēs spectant fābulās. (Plautus, *Casīna* 3–6)

mī = **mihi**
inde (adv.) from there
prīncipium, **prīncipiī** *n.* beginning
vīnum, **vīnī** *n.* wine
vetus, **veteris** old
libenter (adv.) gladly
spectō (1-tr.) look (at); observe
fābula, **fābulae** *f.* story, tale; play, drama

3. The slave Toxilus explains why he is about to throw a party for all those who helped him overcome his enemy.

   improbus est homō quī beneficium scit accipere et reddere nescit.
   (Plautus, *Persa* 762)

improbus, **-a**, **-um** wicked; shameless
beneficium, **beneficiī** *n.* kindness; favor, benefit
reddō (**red-** + **dō**) give back, return

4. The character Chremes responds to a suggestion that he mind his own business.

   homō sum: hūmānī nīl ā mē aliēnum putō. (Terence, *Heauton Timoroumenos* 77)

hūmānus, **-a**, **-um** human
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um** belonging to another; alien; estranged

5. An example of a proposition based on a false cause

   amor fugiendus nōn est; nam ex eō vērissima nāscitur amīcitia.
   (*Rhētorica Ad Herennium* II.35.15)

6. Cicero sums up a description of a Sicilian house that was plundered by Verres.

   Domus erat nōn dominō magis ornāmentō quam cīvitātī. (Cicero, *In Verrem II* 4.5)

ornāmentum, **ornāmentī** *n.* adornment, embellishment

7. In ridiculing an opposing argument, the orator recalls popular opinion about wisdom and stupidity.

sapientissimum esse dīcunt eum cui quod opus sit ipsī veniat in mentem; proximē accēdere† illum quī alterīus bene inventīs obtemperet. in stultitiā contrā est: minus enim stultus est is cui nihil in mentem venit quam ille quī quod stultē alterī venit in mentem comprobat. (Cicero, *Prō Cluentiō* 84)

proximē (adv.) most nearly
†**accēdō**, *supply* **ad sapientissimum**
obtemperō (1-intr.) attend (to), submit (to) (+ dat.)
stultitia, **stultitiae** *f.* stupidity, folly
stultus, **-a**, **-um** stupid, foolish
comprobō (1-tr.) approve of, assent to

8. Cicero comments on why elections are so unpredictable.

nihil est incertius vulgō, nihil obscūrius voluntāte hominum, nihil fallācius ratiōne tōtā comitiōrum. (Cicero, *Prō Murēnā* 36)

vulgus, **vulgī** *n.* common people, (the) multitude, crowd
obscūrus, **-a**, **-um** dark, dim, obscure; uncertain
voluntās, **voluntātis** *f.* will, intention
fallāx, **fallācis** deceptive, treacherous
ratiō, **ratiōnis** *f.* account, reason; reasoning; way, method
comitia, **comitiōrum** *n. pl.* (elective) assembly (of the Roman people)

9. Cicero tells Catiline clearly that the conspiracy is at an end.

tenēris undique; lūce sunt clāriōra nōbīs tua cōnsilia. (Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 6)

undique (adv.) from all sides, on all sides

10. After Cicero reassures the senate that all classes of the Roman people will support strong action against Catiline, he summarizes the nature of the plebs.

multō vērō maxima pars eōrum quī in tabernīs sunt, immō vērō†—id enim potius est dīcendum—genus hoc ūniversum amantissimum est ōtī. (Cicero, *In Catilīnam IV* 17)

taberna, **tabernae** *f.* shop
†**immō vērō**, *introduces a remark that makes a preceding phrase or comment more precise,* rather, more precisely
potius (comparative adv.) rather
ūniversus, **-a**, **-um** all together, entire, whole
ōtium, **ōtiī** *n.* leisure

11. In a speech delivered after Cicero's return from exile, the orator recalls those whom he missed most.

quid dulcius hominum generī ab nātūrā datum est quam suī† cuique† līberī?† mihi vērō et propter indulgentiam meam et propter excellēns eōrum ingenium vītā sunt meā cāriōrēs. (Cicero, *Post Reditum Ad Populum* 2)

dulcis, **dulce** sweet, pleasant
†**suī** refers to **cuique**, his own.
†**cuique** = *masc. sing. dat. of indef. pron.*, each man
†**līberī**, *here,* children
indulgentia, **indulgentiae** *f.* leniency, indulgence
excellēns, **excellentis** outstanding

12. After Cicero describes the many different areas of expertise required of an orator, he gives the following summary.

quam ob rem nihil in hominum genere rārius perfectō† ōrātōre invenīrī potest.

(Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* I.127)

rārus, **-a**, **-um** rare, uncommon
†**perfectus**, **-a**, **-um** complete, perfect

13. After Crassus imagines a broader ideal of the orator and his education, he turns to Antonius and comments on his view.

tū autem, quoniam exiguīs quibusdam fīnibus tōtum ōrātōris mūnus circumdedistī, hōc facilius nōbīs expōnēs ea quae abs tē dē officiīs praeceptīsque ōrātōris quaesīta sunt; . . . (Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* I.264)

exiguus, **-a**, **-um** small, little, scanty
circumdō (**circum-** + **dō**), **cirumdare**, **circumdedī**, **circumdatus** enclose, surround
expōnō (**ex-** + **pōnō**) set out, explain
abs = **ab**
officium, **officiī** *n.* duty, function
praeceptum, **praeceptī** *n.* rule, precept

14. A Ciceronian closing

haec, ut brevissimē dīcī potuērunt, ita ā mē dicta sunt. (Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* II.174)

15. Cicero resumes stating his main point after a short digression.

dictum est igitur† ab ērudītissimīs virīs nisi sapientem līberum esse nēminem.

(Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 5.33)

†**igitur**, *here*, so then
ērudītus, **-a**, **-um** learned, accomplished

16. In a case argued before Julius Caesar as judge, the orator addresses Caesar directly.

itaque illam tuam praeclārissimam et sapientissimam vōcem† invītus audīvī: "satis diū vel nātūrae vīxī vel glōriae." satis, sī ita vīs,† fortasse nātūrae, addō, etiam sī placet, glōriae, at quod maximum est, patriae certē parum. (Cicero, *Prō Marcellō* 25)

itaque (adv.) and so, accordingly
praeclārus, **-a**, **-um** (very) famous
†**vōx**, *here*, sentence, saying
invītus, **-a**, **-um** unwilling, reluctant
†**vīs** = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic. of* **volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, —— want
fortasse (adv.) perhaps
addō (**ad-** + **dō**) add
at (conj.) but

17. In a rhetorical overstatement Cicero favorably compares Roman writers to their Greek predecessors.

. . . sed meum semper iūdicium fuit omnia nostrōs aut invēnisse per sē sapientius quam Graecōs aut accepta ab illīs fēcisse meliōra . . .

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.1)

iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion
Graecus, -a, -um Greek

18. An opinion about the nature of death

sunt quī discessum animī ā corpore putent esse mortem.

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.18)

discessus, discessūs *m.* departure

19. A remark of Aristotle is recalled in a discussion of the relative longevity of mortal beings.

apud† Hypanim fluvium, quī ab Eurōpae parte in Pontum īnfluit, Aristotelēs ait bestiolās quāsdam nāscī quae ūnum diem vīvant.

(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.94)

†**apud**, *here,* near
Hypanis, Hypanis *m.* Hypanis (a river in Asia Minor); **Hypanim** = *acc. sing.*
fluvius, fluviī *m.* river, stream
Eurōpa, Eurōpae *f.* Europe
Pontus, Pontī *m.* Black Sea
īnfluō, īnfluere, īnfluxī, īnfluxus flow (into)
Aristotelēs, Aristotelis *m.* Aristotle
aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
bestiola, bestiolae *f.* little creature

20. Cicero suggests avoiding pretense.

quodsī vultum tibi, sī incessum fingerēs, quō gravior vidērēre, nōn essēs tuī similis; verba tū fingās et ea dīcās quae nōn sentiās? (Cicero, *Dē Dīvinātiōne* II.77)

quodsī (conj.) but if
vultus, vultūs *m.* expression, countenance; face
incessus, incessūs *m.* walking, gait
fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make; contrive

21. After Cicero recommends that extraordinary powers be granted to the young Octavian, the orator explains to the senate why he is sure that Caesar's adopted son will not repeat the mistakes of his father.

nihil est illī† rē pūblicā cārius, nihil vestrā auctōritāte gravius, nihil bonōrum virōrum iūdiciō optātius, nihil vērā glōriā dulcius. (Cicero, *Philippics V* 50)

†**illī** refers to Octavian.
auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* authority
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion
dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant

22. The orator suggests that one of the threats presented by Antony was foreshadowed by Caesar.

invītus dīcō, sed dīcendum est: hasta Caesaris, patrēs cōnscrīptī, multīs improbīs et spem adfert et audāciam. (Cicero, *Philippics VIII* 9)

invītus, **-a**, **-um** unwilling, reluctant
hasta, **hastae** *f.* spear; distribution of booty
improbus, **-a**, **-um** wicked
adferō, **adferre**, **adtulī**, **adlātus** bring forth; impart, produce

23. Cicero speaks affectionately of his best friend, Atticus.

. . . Pompōnium Atticum sīc amō ut alterum frātrem. nihil est illō mihi nec† cārius nec† iūcundius. (Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* XIII.1.5)

Pompōnius Atticus, **Pompōniī Atticī** *m.* Pomponius Atticus
†The redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.
iūcundus, **-a**, **-um** pleasing, delightful, agreeable

24. When Cicero finds his movements carefully monitored and controlled by Caesar's right-hand man, Antony, he complains to Atticus.

quidnam mihi futūrum est aut quis mē nōn sōlum īnfēlīcior sed iam etiam turpior? (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* X.12.1)

quisnam, **quidnam** (interrog. pron.) who, tell me; what, tell me
turpis, **turpe** foul, ugly; base, shameful

25. Caesar describes a moment of confusion in his camp as the enemy unexpectedly attacks.

tōtīs trepidātur castrīs, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.37)

trepidō (1-intr.) tremble; panic
tumultus, **tumultūs** *m.* commotion, uproar

26. Caesar describes rumors flying through the camp.

alius castra iam capta prōnuntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.37)

prōnuntiō (1-tr.) proclaim, pronounce, declare
victor, **victōris** *m.* conqueror, victor
barbarus, **-a**, **-um** foreign
contendō, **contendere**, **contendī**, **contentus** struggle; claim

27. The historian describes the character of the early Romans.

igitur domī mīlitiaeque bonī mōrēs colēbantur; concordia maxuma, minuma avāritia erat; iūs bonumque apud eōs nōn lēgibus magis quam nātūrā valēbat.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 9)

mīlitia, **mīlitiae** *f.* military service; **mīlitiae** = *loc.*
colō, **colere**, **coluī**, **cultus** cultivate
concordia, **concordiae** *f.* harmony
maxuma = **maxima**
minuma = **minima**
avāritia, **avāritiae** *f.* greed, avarice

28. Catiline exhorts his troops before the final battle against Cicero's forces.

semper in proeliō eīs maxumum est perīculum quī maxumē timent; audācia prō mūrō habētur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 58)

maxumum = **maximum**
maxumē = **maximē**

29. Adherbal addresses the Roman senate about his cousin Jugurtha's cruel treatment of captives.

captī ab Iugurthā pars in crucem āctī, pars bestiīs obiectī sunt, paucī, quibus relicta est anima, clausī in tenebrīs cum maerōre et lūctū morte graviōrem vītam exigunt.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 14)

Iugurtha, **Iugurthae** *m.* Jugurtha (king of Numidia)
crux, **crucis** *f.* wooden frame, cross
bestia, **bestiae** *f.* beast, animal
obiciō (**ob-** + **iaciō**) throw in front of, throw to (+ dat.)
claudō, **claudere**, **clausī**, **clausus** close, shut; confine, enclose
tenebrae, **tenebrārum** *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
maeror, **maerōris** *m.* grief, sorrow, mourning
lūctus, **lūctūs** *m.* mourning
exigō (**ex-** + **agō**), **exigere**, **exēgī**, **exāctus** drive out; spend, pass

30. The biographer offers his opinion about the egotism of the Athenian politician and general Alcibiades.

huic maximē putāmus malō fuisse nimiam opīniōnem ingeniī atque virtūtis.

(CORNELIUS NEPOS, *VĪTA ALCIBIADIS* 7)

nimius, **-a**, **-um** excessive, too great
opīniō, **opīniōnis** *f.* opinion, judgment

31. The shepherd Mopsus shows deference to his friend Menalcas.

tū maior: tibi mē est aequum pārēre . . . (VERGIL, *ECLOGUES* V.4)

32. After a storm has torn apart the Trojan fleet, Aeneas tries to revive the spirits of his companions.

ō sociī (neque enim ignārī sumus ante malōrum),
ō passī graviōra, dabit deus hīs quoque fīnem. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.198–99)

ignārus, **-a**, **-um** not knowing, ignorant, unaware

33. The Trojan Ilioneus, fearing that his friend and leader is dead, describes Aeneas to Dido.

rēx erat Aenēās nōbīs, quō iūstior alter
nec pietāte fuit nec bellō maior et armīs. (Vergil, *Aeneid* I.544–45)

iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right
pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety

34. The poet declares a new beginning for the war books that make up the second half of his epic.

. . . maior rērum mihi nāscitur ordō,
maius opus moveō. . . . (Vergil, *Aeneid* VII.44–45)

ordō, ordinis *m.* order, rank, class

35. Aeneas taunts an enemy in battle.

quō, moritūre, ruis maiōraque vīribus audēs? (Vergil, *Aeneid* X.803)

quō (interrog. adv.) (to) where, whither
ruō, ruere, ruī, —— rush, run

36. The poet advises a friend to take nothing for granted.

inter spem cūramque, timōrēs inter et īrās
omnem crēde diem tibi dīlūxisse suprēmum:
grāta superveniet quae nōn spērābitur hōra. (Horace, *Epistulae* I.4.12–14)

dīlūcēscō, dīlūcēscere, dīlūxī, —— become light, dawn
suprēmus, -a, -um final, last
grātus, -a, -um grateful, pleased; charming, pleasing
superveniō (super- + veniō) come down from above, arrive (unexpectedly)
spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)
hōra, hōrae *f.* hour

37. The elegist makes reference to Vergil's *Aeneid* as it is being written.

cēdite, Rōmānī scrīptōrēs, cēdite, Graī!
nescio quid† maius nāscitur Īliade. (Propertius II.34.65–66)

scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer
Graius, -a, -um Greek; **Graī** = *voc. pl.;* **Graī** scans as if it were spelled *Graiī.
†**nescioquis, nescioquid** (indef. pron.) *sometimes written as two words,* someone or other, something or other
Īlias, Īliadis *f.* the *Iliad*

38. In a poetic fiction Sappho addresses her beloved.

tū mihi cūra, Phaōn! tē somnia nostra redūcunt,
somnia formōsō candidiōra diē;
illīc tē inveniō, quamvīs regiōnibus absīs;
sed nōn longa satis gaudia somnus habet. (Ovid, *Hērōides* XV.123–26)

Phaōn, **Phaōnis** *m.* Phaon
somnium, **somniī** *n.* dream
redūcō (**re-** + **dūcō**) lead back, bring back
formōsus, **-a**, **-um** beautiful
candidus, **-a**, **-um** white, bright, radiant
illīc (adv.) there
quamvīs (conj. + subjunc.) although
regiō, **regiōnis** *f.* region, land
absum (**ab-** + **sum**), **abesse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus** be absent
somnus, **somnī** *m.* sleep

39. Helen addresses Paris in an imaginary letter.

apta magis Venerī quam sunt tua corpora† Martī.
bella gerant fortēs; tū, Pari, semper amā! (Ovid, *Hērōides* XVII.253–54)

aptus, **-a**, **-um** suitable, fit
†**corpus**, *here, pl.*, (physical) bearing, physique
Paris, **Paridis** *m.* Paris (son of Priam); **Pari** = *voc. sing.*

40. The poet explains why he writes elegiac poetry.

Arma gravī numerō violentaque bella parābam
ēdere, māteriā conveniente modīs;
pār erat īnferior versus; rīsisse Cupīdō
dīcitur atque ūnum surripuisse pedem. (Ovid, *Amōrēs* I.1–4)

numerus, **numerī** *m.* number; meter
violentus, **-a**, **-um** violent
ēdō (**ē-** + **dō**) produce
māteria, **māteriae** *f.* material; subject matter
conveniō (**con-** + **veniō**) fit, be suitable (+ dat.)
pār, **paris** equal
īnferior, **īnferius** lower
versus, **versūs** *m.* (line of) verse
rīdeō, **rīdēre**, **rīdī**, **rīsūs** laugh (at)
surripiō, **surripere**, **surripuī**, **surreptus** take secretly, steal
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot

41. The advice-giving poet recommends persistence to the would-be lover.

quid magis est saxō dūrum, quid mollius undā?
dūra tamen mollī saxa cavantur aquā.
Pēnelopēn ipsam, perstā modo, tempore vincēs;
capta vidēs sērō Pergama, capta tamen. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* I.475–78)

saxum, **saxī** *n.* rock
mollis, **molle** soft
unda, **undae** *f.* wave; water
cavō (1-tr.) make hollow, hollow out
aqua, **aquae** *f.* water
Pēnelopē, **Pēnelopēs** *f.* Penelope; **Pēnelopēn** = *acc. sing.*
perstō (**per-** + **stō**) stand firm, remain steadfast, persevere
sērō (adv.) late
Pergama, **Pergamōrum** *n. pl.* Pergama (citadel of Troy); Troy

42. The poet gives advice on concealing a particular physical flaw.

sī brevis es, sedeās nē stāns videāre sedēre. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* III.263)

sedeō, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessūrus** sit, be seated

43. When Hannibal hesitates to follow up his victory at Cannae by pressing his advantage, his lieutenant Maharbal criticizes him. The historian comments on the benefit to Rome.

"nōn omnia nīmīrum eīdem dī dedēre. vincere scīs, Hannibal, victōriā ūtī nescīs."

mora eius diēī satis† crēditur salūtī fuisse urbī atque imperiō.

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.51.4)

nīmīrum (adv.) without doubt, evidently
victōria, **victōriae** *f.* victory
†**satis**, *here,* generally

44. After a murderous plot is foiled in the Sicilian town of Syracuse, the public's emotions rage back and forth concerning what to do with the conspirators. The historian characterizes the crowd.

ea nātūra multitūdinis est: aut servit humiliter aut superbē dominātur; lībertātem,

quae media est, nec struere modicē nec habēre sciunt.

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXIV.25.8)

multitūdō, **multitūdinis** *f.* multitude
serviō, **servīre**, **serviī/servīvī**, **servītum** be a slave
superbē (adv.) proudly; haughtily, arrogantly
dominor (1-intr.) be a master
struō, **struere**, **strūxī**, **strūctus** construct, devise
modicē (adv.) moderately, temperately

45. The historian describes the valor of C. Popilius Sabellus in a battle against the Histri, a people living along the lower Danube river.

is pede sauciō relictus longē plūrimōs hostium occīdit.

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XLI.4.6)

pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
saucius, **-a**, **-um** wounded
occīdō, **occīdere**, **occīdī**, **occīsus** kill

46. Part of a consul's address to his soldiers, in which he explains his delay in beginning a battle with the enemy, caused in part by his concern for constructing a military camp

maiōrēs vestrī castra mūnīta portum ad† omnēs cāsūs exercitūs dūcēbant esse, unde

ad pugnam exīrent, quō iactātī tempestāte pugnae receptum habērent.

(Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XLIV.39.2)

mūniō, **mūnīre**, **mūniī/mūnīvī**, **mūnītus** fortify
portus, **portūs** *m.* port, harbor; haven
†**ad**, *here,* against
pugna, **pugnae** *f.* battle
exeō (**ex-** + **eō**) go out
iactō (1-tr.) toss, harass
tempestās, **tempestātis** *f.* storm
receptus, **receptūs** *m.* place of retreat, refuge

47. The tribune Valerius Flaccus concludes an address to his men, in which he encourages them to fight against Hannibal's besieging forces.

ego certē speciōsam optāns mortem aut fēlīcem audāciae exitum vel sōlus prōcurrere parātus sum. (VALERIUS MAXIMUS, *FACTA ET DICTA MEMORABILIA* III.2.20)

speciōsus, -a, -um beautiful, splendid, brilliant
exitus, exitūs *m.* outcome
vel (adv.) even
prōcurrō, prōcurrere, prōcurrī, prōcursūrus rush forth (into battle)

48. An utterance of a jurist in a rhetorical exercise

quaedam iūra nōn scrīpta, sed omnibus scrīptīs certiōra sunt.

(SENECA THE ELDER, *CONTRŌVERSIAE* I.1.14)

49. The philosopher quotes the opinion of the Greek philosopher Epicurus about the nature of poverty and comments upon it.

"honesta," inquit, "rēs est laeta paupertās." Illa vērō nōn est paupertās sī laeta est; nōn quī parum habet sed quī plūs cupit pauper est.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLĒS* II.6)

paupertās, paupertātis *f.* poverty
pauper, pauperis poor

50. The philosopher ponders the relation between hope and fear.

quemadmodum eadem catēna et custōdiam et mīlitem cōpulat, sīc ista, quae tam dissimilia sunt, pariter incēdunt; spem metus sequitur.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLĒS* V.7)

catēna, catēnae *f.* chain
custōdia, custōdiae *f.* captive, prisoner
cōpulō (1-tr.) unite; connect
tam (adv.) so
pariter (adv.) equally; in like manner
incēdō (in- + cēdō) proceed; appear, occur

51. Having explained that a beneficial friendship arises between people of like minds and similar learning, the philosopher gives his younger friend a reason to be quick in his studies.

Adfer itaque tē mihi ingēns mūnus, et quō magis īnstēs, cōgitā tē mortālem esse, mē senem. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLĒS* XXXV.3)

adferō, adferre, adtulī, adlātus bring forth; give
itaque (adv.) and so, accordingly
īnstō (in- + stō), īnstāre, īnstitī, —— press on, pursue eagerly
senex, senis old

52. Phaedra explains her silence.

cūrae levēs locuntur,† ingentēs stupent. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *PHAEDRA* 607)

†**locuntur = loquuntur**
stupeō, stupēre, stupuī, —— be stunned (into silence)

53. In an imagined conversation with his friend Serenus, the philosopher first asks whether his friend believes that the philosophers they admire lived up to their own ideals.

nōn dubiē respondēbis sīc illōs vīxisse quemadmodum dīxerant esse vīvendum: atquī nēmō illōrum rem pūblicam administrāvit. "nōn fuit," inquis, "illīs aut ea fortūna aut ea dignitās quae admittī ad pūblicārum rērum tractātiōnem solet."

(Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* VIII.6.5)

dubiē (adv.) doubtfully; **nōn dubiē**, undoubtedly
atquī (conj.) and yet, but still
administrō (1-tr.) take charge of, manage
dignitās, **dignitātis** *f.* dignity, rank, status
admittō (**ad-** + **mittō**) admit; grant access
tractātiō, **tractātiōnis** *f.* management

54. Age and wisdom are not necessarily linked.

saepe grandis nātū senex nūllum aliud habet argumentum quō sē probet diū vīxisse praeter aetātem. (Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* IX.3.8)

grandis, **grande** great
nātus, **nātūs** *m.* birth; age
senex, **senis** old
argumentum, **argumentī** *n.* proof
probō (1-tr.) prove, demonstrate
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except
aetās, **aetātis** *f.* age, time of life

55. Pompey the Great rushes to arms without fear.

aut nihil est sēnsūs animīs ā morte relictum
aut mors ipsa nihil. . . . (Lucan, *Bellum Cīvīle* III.39)

56. Pliny identifies two worthy human endeavors.

equidem beātōs putō quibus deōrum mūnere datum est aut facere scrībenda aut scrībere legenda. (Pliny the Younger, *Epistulae* VI.16.3)

beātus, **-a**, **-um** blessed, happy, fortunate

57. The historian reports a claim and a practice of the Germans.

fuisse apud eōs et Herculem memorant, prīmumque omnium virōrum fortium itūrī in proelia canunt. (Tacitus, *Germānia* 3.1)

Herculēs, **Herculis** *m.* Hercules (son of Jupiter and Alcmene)
memorō (1-tr.) recount, relate; say

58. Aulus Gellius recalls the opinion of an ancient poet.

alius quīdam veterum poētārum, cuius nōmen mihi nunc memoriae nōn est, vēritātem temporis fīliam esse dīxit. (Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* XII.11.7)

vetus, **veteris** old; **veterum** = *gen. pl.*
nōmen, **nōminis** *n.* name
memoria, **memoriae** *f.* memory
vēritās, **vēritātis** *f.* truth

Longer Readings

1. Plautus, *Boeōtia* frag.1–9

A fragment from a lost play of Plautus, in which a parasite makes a lament

ut† illum dī perdant prīmus quī hōrās repperit
quīque adeō prīmus statuit hīc sōlārium;
quī mihi comminuit miserō articulātim diem.
nam ūnum mē puerō venter erat sōlārium,
multō omnium istōrum optimum et vērissimum. 5
ubi is tē monēbat, ēssēs, nisi cum† nīl erat;
nunc etiam quod est nōn ēstur nisi sōlī libet.
itaque adeō iam opplētum oppidum est sōlāriīs:
maior pars populī āridī reptant fame.

†**ut** = **utinam**
perdō (**per-** + **dō**) lose; destroy, kill
hōra, **hōrae** *f.* hour
reperiō, **reperīre**, **repperī**, **repertus** find, discover
adeō (adv.) to that point; to such an extent; in addition to that, moreover
statuō, **statuere**, **statuī**, **statūtus** cause to stand, set up, erect, station
hīc (adv.) here
sōlārium, **sōlāriī** *n.* sundial
comminuō, **comminuere**, **comminuī**, **comminūtus** break into pieces, shatter
articulātim (adv.) limb by limb, limb from limb
venter, **ventris** *m.* belly, stomach
edō, **ēsse**, **ēdī**, **ēsus** (irregular 3rd conjugation verb) eat; **ēssēs** = *2nd sing. imperf. act. subjunc., iterative subjunc.,* "you used to eat"; **ēstur** = *3rd sing. pres. pass. indic.*
†**cum**, *here* (conj.) when
sōl, **sōlis** *m.* sun
libet, **libēre**, **libuit** or **libitum est** (impersonal verb) it is pleasing
itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
oppleō, **opplēre**, **opplēvī**, **opplētus** fill completely, fill up
āridus, **-a**, **-um** dry; parched, shriveled
reptō (1-intr.) crawl about, creep along
famēs, **famis** *f.* hunger, starvation

2. Cicero, *Prō Quīnctiō* 95

The orator summarizes the terrible predicament of his client.

miserum est exturbārī fortūnīs omnibus, miserius iniūriā; acerbum est ab aliquō circumvenīrī, acerbius ā propinquō; calamitōsum est bonīs ēvertī, calāmitōsius cum dēdecore; fūnestum est ā fortī atque honestō virō iugulārī, fūnestius ab eō cuius vōx in praeconiō quaestū prōstitit: indignum est ā parī vincī aut superiōre, indignius ab īnferiōre atque humiliōre; luctuōsum est trādī alterī cum bonīs, luctuōsius inimīcō; horribile est causam capitis dīcere, horribilius priōre locō† dīcere.

exturbō (1-tr.) drive out, drive away
iniūriā (adv.) unjustly
aliquō = *masc. sing. abl. of indefinite pron.*, someone
circumveniō (**circum** + **veniō**) circumvent, deceive, cheat
propinquus, **propinquī** *m.* relation, relative
calamitōsus, **-a**, **-um** ruinous, destructive
ēvertō, **ēvertere**, **ēvertī**, **ēversus** turn out, drive out
dēdecus, **dēdecoris** *n.* shame, disgrace, dishonor
fūnestus, **-a**, **-um** deadly, fatal, destructive
iugulō (1-tr.) cut the throat of, kill, slay
praecōnius, **-a**, **-um** of a public herald
quaestus, **quaestūs** *m.* profit; **quaestus praecōnius**, office of the public herald
prōstō (**prō-** + **stō**), **prōstāre**, **prōstitī**, —— be set out for sale
indignus, **-a**, **-um** unworthy
pār, **paris** equal
superior, **superius** superior
īnferior, **īnferius** inferior
luctuōsus, **-a**, **-um** full of sorrow, lamentable, grievous
horribilis, **horribile** horrible, dreadful
caput, **capitis** *n.* head; life; **causam capitis dīcere**, to plead a case for one's life
†**priōre locō**, in the earlier place (i.e., before the prosecution has spoken)

3. Cicero, *Prō Murēnā* 30

Cicero compares two skills of great importance in Roman life.

duae sint artēs igitur quae possint locāre hominēs in amplissimō gradū dignitātis, ūna imperātōris, altera ōrātōris bonī. ab hōc enim pācis ornāmenta retinentur, ab illō bellī perīcula repelluntur. cēterae tamen virtūtēs ipsae per sē multum valent, iūstitia, fidēs, pudor, temperantia; quibus tē, Servī, excellere omnēs intellegunt.

locō (1-tr.) place
amplus, **-a**, **-um** great, distinguished
gradus, **gradūs** *m.* step, pace; tier, rank
dignitās, **dignitātis** *f.* dignity, rank, status
ornāmentum, **ornāmentī** *n.* adornment, embellishment
retineō (**re-** + **teneō**), **retinēre**, **retinuī**, **retentus** keep hold of, retain, grasp
repellō (**re-** + **pellō**), **repellere**, **reppulī**, **repulsus** push back, repel
cēterus, **-a**, **-um** rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other
iūstitia, **iūstitiae** *f.* justice, fairness, equity
pudor, **pudōris** *m.* shame, decency, modesty
temperantia, **temperantiae** *f.* self-control, moderation
Servius, **Serviī** *m.* Servius (Sulpicius Rufus) (the prosecutor in the case)
excellō, **excellere**, ——, —— be superior, be conspicuous, excel

The *Prō Murēnā* is Cicero's speech in defense of L. Licinius Murena (consul 62 B.C.E.), who was charged with corruption after his victory in the consular elections in 63. The trial took place at the time of the exposure of the Catilinarian conspiracy. The prosecution was supported by, among others, Cato the Younger, the staunch moral and political conservative.

4. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 27

In his speech attacking Catiline, Cicero uses the rhetorical device of *prosopopoeia,* a sustained speech in character with words and gestures appropriate to the assumed identity.

etenim sī mēcum patria, quae mihi vītā meā multō est cārior, sī cūncta Italia, sī omnis rēs pūblica loquātur: "M. Tullī, quid agis? tūne eum quem esse hostem comperistī, quem ducem bellī futūrum vidēs, quem exspectārī imperātōrem in castrīs hostium sentīs, auctōrem sceleris, prīncipem coniūrātiōnis, ēvocātōrem servōrum et cīvium perditōrum, exīre patiēre, ut abs tē nōn ēmissus ex urbe, sed immissus in urbem esse videātur?"

cūnctus, **-a**, **-um** all
comperiō, **comperīre**, **comperī**, **compertus** find out, learn
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect
auctor, **auctōris** *m.* source, author
scelus, **sceleris** *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy
prīnceps, **prīncipis** first, foremost, chief; *subst.*, leading man
coniūrātiō, **coniūrātiōnis** *f.* conspiracy
ēvocātor, **ēvocātōris** *m.* summoner, recruiter
perditus, **-a**, **-um** lost, degenerate, desperate
exeō (**ex-** + **eō**) go out
abs = **ab**
ēmittō (**ē-** + **mittō**) send out
immittō (**in-** + **mittō**) send in, send against

5. Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* II.178

Cicero explains why it is important for an orator to appeal to an audience's emotions.

plūra enim multō hominēs iūdicant odiō aut amōre aut cupiditāte aut īrācundiā aut dolōre aut aliquā permōtiōne mentis quam vēritāte aut praescrīptō aut iūris normā aliquā aut iūdicī formulā aut lēgibus.

iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine
cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire
īrācundia, īrācundiae *f.* hot temper, anger
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
aliquā = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, some, any
permōtiō, permōtiōnis *f.* strong emotion
vēritās, vēritātis *f.* truth
praescrīptum, praescrīptī *n.* rule, precept
norma, normae *f.* standard
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion; legal proceeding
formula, formulae *f.* formula, rule, standard

The *Dē Ōrātōre* is a dialogue written shortly after Cicero's forced retirement from public life in 55 B.C.E. The dialogue is set in 91, and the chief speakers are the orators L. Licinius Crassus and M. Antonius (the grandfather of Marc Antony). The date places the dialogue immediately before the beginning of the war between Rome and her Italian allies or *sociī*. This Social War marks the beginning of a series of internal conflicts in the Roman Republic. All the characters in this fictional dialogue are historical, and many of them were to die within a few years of the dramatic date of the dialogue. In the first of the three books of the *Dē Ōrātōre,* the speakers discuss the importance of a liberal education for an orator. The remaining books are devoted to a closer analysis of the various parts of oratory.

6. Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* III.127

A report about what the sophist Hippias of Elis claimed when he happened to attend the Olympic games

. . . glōriātus est cūnctā paene audiente Graeciā nihil esse ūllā in arte rērum omnium quod ipse nescīret; nec sōlum hās artīs, quibus līberālēs doctrīnae atque ingenuae continērentur, geōmetriam, mūsicam, litterārum cognitiōnem et poētārum, atque illa quae dē nātūrīs rērum, quae dē hominum mōribus, quae dē rēbus pūblicīs dīcerentur, sē tenēre sed ānulum quem habēret, pallium quō amictus, soccōs quibus indūtus esset sē suā manū cōnfēcisse.

glōrior (1-tr.) boast
cūnctus, -a, -um all
paene (adv.) nearly, almost
līberālis, līberāle befitting a free man, honorable
doctrīna, doctrīnae *f.* teaching; science, art
ingenuus, -a, -um free-born; noble
contineō (con- + teneō), continēre, continuī, contentus hold in; *passive*, consist in, rest upon (+ abl.)
geōmetria, geōmetriae *f.* geometry
mūsica, mūsicae *f.* (art of) music
litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* literature
cognitiō, cognitiōnis *f.* knowledge, familiarity (with) (+ gen.)
ānulus, ānulī *m.* ring
pallium, palliī *n.* cloak
amiciō, amicīre, amicuī, amictus clothe, cover
soccus, soccī *m.* (light) shoe
induō, induere, induī, indūtus clothe, dress
cōnficiō (con- + faciō) make, produce

7. Catullus I (hendecasyllable; see §113)

The dedicatory poem of Catullus's published **libellus**

Cui dōnō lepidum novum libellum
āridā modo pūmice expolītum?
Cornēlī, tibi; namque tū solēbās
meās esse aliquid putāre nūgās
iam tum, cum† ausus es ūnus Ītalōrum
omne aevum tribus explicāre cartīs
doctīs, Iuppiter, et labōriōsīs.
quārē habē tibi quidquid hoc libellī
quālecumque; quod, <ō> patrōna virgō,
plūs ūnō maneat perenne saeclō.

lepidus, **-a**, **-um** pleasant, charming, elegant
libellus, **libellī** *m.* (little) book
āridus, **-a**, **-um** dry
modo (adv.) only, now; just now
pūmex, **pūmicis** *f.* pumice stone
expoliō, **expolīre**, **expoliī/expolīvī**, **expolītus** smooth, polish, finish
Cornēlius, **Cornēliī** *m.* Cornelius (Nepos) (writer of history and biography)
aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, something
nūgae, **nūgārum** *f. pl.* trifles, nuggets; nonsense
tum (adv.) then, at that time
†**cum**, *here* (conj.) when
Ītalī, **Ītalōrum** *m. pl.* Italians
aevum, **aevī** *n.* age, lifetime; generation
explicō (1-tr.) unfold, reveal, explain
c(h)arta, **c(h)artae** *f.* leaf (of papyrus); book
doctus, **-a**, **-um** learned, erudite
labōriōsus, **-a**, **-um** full of labor, elaborate
quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.*, whatever
quālecumque = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. adj.*, of whatever sort
patrōna, **patrōnae** *f.* patroness, protectress
virgō, **virginis** *f.* maiden, virgin
perennis, **perenne** everlasting, perpetual, perennial
saec(u)lum, **saec(u)lī** *n.* age, generation

8. Catullus XIII (hendecasyllable; see §113)

The poet issues an unusual invitation.

Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē
paucīs, sī tibi dī favent, diēbus,
sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam
cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā
et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs.
haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,
cēnābis bene; nam tuī Catullī
plēnus sacculus est arāneārum.
sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs
seu quid† suāvius ēlegantiusve est;
nam unguentum dabo,† quod meae puellae
dōnārunt Venerēs Cupīdinēsque;
quod tū cum† olfaciēs, deōs rogābis,
tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum.

cēnō (1-intr.) dine
Fabullus, **Fabullī** *m.* Fabullus
faveō, **favēre**, **fāvī**, **fautum** be favorable, favor (+ dat.)
afferō (**ad-** + **ferō**), **afferre**, **attulī**, **allātus** bring toward, bring along
cēna, **cēnae** *f.* dinner
candidus, **-a**, **-um** white, clear, bright, radiant
vīnum, **vīnī** *n.* wine
sal, **salis** *n.* salt; wit
cachinnus, **cachinnī** *m.* loud laugh
venustus, **-a**, **-um** charming, pleasing
plēnus, **-a**, **-um** full
sacculus, **sacculī** *m.* (little) bag, wallet
arānea, **arāneae** *f.* spider; cobweb
merus, **-a**, **-um** pure, unmixed
seu (conj.) or if
†**quid**, *here, neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.,* anything
suāvis, **suāve** sweet, pleasant; fragrant
ēlegāns, **ēlegantis** select, tasteful, elegant
-ve (enclitic conj.) or
unguentum, **unguentī** *n.* ointment; perfume
†The **-ō** of **dabō** here scans *short.*
dōnārunt = **dōnāvērunt**
†**cum**, *here* (conj.) when
olfaciō, **olfacere**, **olfēcī**, **olfactus** smell
rogō (1-tr.) ask
nāsus, **nāsī** *m.* nose

9. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.32–33

After representatives of the Gallic tribes (led by their spokesman Diviciacus) tearfully expressed their concern about the Germans' incursions into their territory, Caesar noticed and inquired about the grim silence of the Sequani.

cum† ab hīs† saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīviciācus Aeduus respondit: hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod† sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī. hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit.

†**cum**, *here* (conj. + subjunc.) when
†**hīs** = the Sequani
exprimō (**ex-** + **premō**), **exprimere**, **expressī**, **expressus** squeeze out, wring out, elicit
Dīviciācus, **Dīviciācī** *m.* Diviciacus (leader of the Aeduans)
Aeduus, **-a**, **-um** Aeduan (a member of the Aedui, a Gallic tribe)
Sēquanī, **Sēquanōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Sequani (a Gallic tribe)
reliquus, **-a**, **-um** remaining, rest (of)
†**quod**, *here* (conj.) because
occultum, **occultī** *n.* secrecy; **in occultō**, in secret
queror, **querī**, **questus sum** complain, lament
implōrō (1-tr.) ask for
absēns, **absentis** absent
Ariovistus, **Ariovistī** *m.* Ariovistus (German king)
crūdēlitās, **crūdēlitātis** *f.* cruelty, harshness
velut (conj.) just as
cōram (adv.) face to face
adsum (**ad-** + **sum**), **adesse**, **adfuī**, **adfutūrus** be present
horreō, **horrēre**, **horruī**, —— shudder at, tremble at
propterea quod (conj.) because
facultās, **facultātis** *f.* opportunity, possibility
intrā (prep. + acc.) within
recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) receive, welcome
potestās, **potestātis** *f.* power
cruciātus, **cruciātūs** *m.* torture, torment
cōnfirmō (1-tr.) strengthen, encourage
polliceor, **pollicērī**, **pollicitus sum** promise
beneficium, **beneficiī** *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit
auctōritās, **auctōritātis** *f.* authority; influence
addūcō (**ad-** + **dūcō**) induce, persuade
iniūria, **iniūriae** *f.* injury, injustice
concilium, **conciliī** *n.* council, meeting, assembly
dīmittō (**dis-** + **mittō**) send away, dismiss

10. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* II.3

When Caesar reaches the territory of the Belgae by a surprisingly swift march, a neighboring tribe responds.

eō† cum† dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecombōgium prīmōs cīvitātis mīsērunt quī dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum omnīnō coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; . . .

†**eō**, *here* (adv.) to that place (= the territory of the Belgae)
†**cum**, *here* (conj. + subjunc.) when
imprōvīsum, **imprōvīsī** *n.* that which is unforeseen; **dē imprōvīsō**, unexpectedly
celeriter (adv.) swiftly
opīniō, **opīniōnis** *f.* opinion, belief
Rēmī, **Rēmōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Remi (a Gallic tribe)
proximus, **-a**, **-um** nearest, next
Gallia, **Galliae** *f.* Gaul
Belgae, **Belgārum** *m. pl.* (the) Belgae (a Gallic tribe of Celtic and German descent)
Iccius, **Icciī** *m.* Iccius
Andecombōgius, **Andecombōgiī** *m.* Andecombogius
potestās, **potestātis** *f.* power
permittō (**per-** + **mittō**) entrust; **permittere**, *supply* **sē** *as Subject Accusative*
reliquus, **-a**, **-um** remaining, rest (of)
cōnsentiō (**con-** + **sentiō**) agree; plot together
coniūrō (1-intr.) swear together; conspire
obses, **obsidis** *m.* or *f.* hostage
imperātum, **imperātī** *n.* order, command
recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) receive, welcome; **recipere**, *supply* **eōs**
frūmentum, **frūmentī** *n.* grain
cēterus, **-a**, **-um** rest (of), (the) other
iuvō, **iuvāre**, **iūvī**, **iūtus** help, aid; **iuvāre**, *supply* **eōs**

11. Vergil, *Eclogues* I.19–25

One shepherd tells another (Meliboeus) of a mistaken idea.

Urbem quam dīcunt† Rōmam, Meliboee, putāvī
stultus ego huic nostrae similem, quō saepe solēmus
pastōrēs ovium tenerōs dēpellere fētūs.
sīc canibus catulōs similēs, sīc mātribus haedōs
nōram, sīc parvīs compōnere magna solēbam.
vērum haec tantum aliās inter caput extulit urbēs
quantum lenta solent inter vīburna cupressī.

†**dīcō**, *here,* call
Meliboeus, **Meliboeī** *m.* Meliboeus
stultus, **-a**, **-um** stupid, foolish
pastor, **pastōris** *m.* shepherd
ovis, **ovis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* sheep
tener, **tenera**, **tenerum** tender; young
dēpellō (**dē-** + **pellō**) drive (away)
fētus, **fētūs** *m.* offspring, young
canis, **canis** *m.* or *f.* dog
catulus, **catulī** *m.* puppy
haedus, **haedī** *m.* young goat, kid
nōram = **nōveram**
compōnō (**con-** + **pōnō**) put together; compose; compare
tantum (adv.) to so great an extent, so greatly, so much
caput, **capitis** *n.* head
efferō (**ex-** + **ferō**) raise up, bring forth, elevate
quantum (adv.) (as much) as, (as greatly) as; **tantum . . . quantum . . .** , as much . . . as . . .
lentus, **-a**, **-um** pliant; clinging
vīburnum, **vīburnī** *n.* guelder rose
cupressus, **cupressī** *f.* cypress tree

12. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.40–56

Aeneas reports the vain warning of the priest Laocoön as the Trojans debate whether to bring the Greeks' gift of a horse into the city.

prīmus ibi ante omnīs magnā comitante catervā
Lāocoōn ardēns summā dēcurrit ab arce,
et procul "ō miserī, quae tanta īnsānia, cīvēs?
crēditis āvectōs hostīs? aut ūlla putātis
dōna carēre dolīs Danaum? sīc nōtus Ulīxēs?
aut hōc inclūsī lignō occultantur Achīvī,
aut haec in nostrōs fabricāta est māchina mūrōs,
īnspectūra† domōs ventūraque† dēsuper urbī,
aut aliquis latet error; equō nē crēdite,† Teucrī,
quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentīs."

ibi (adv.) there; then
comitor (1-tr.) accompany, attend
caterva, **catervae** *f.* throng, crowd, troop
Lāocoōn, **Lāocoöntis** *m.* Laocoön
ardeō, **ardēre**, **arsī**, **arsūrus** burn, be on fire; rage
dēcurrō, **dēcurrere**, **dē(cu)currī**, **dēcursum** run down, hurry down
arx, **arcis** *f.* tower, citadel
procul (adv.) at a distance, from a distance
tantus, **-a**, **-um** so great
īnsānia, **īnsāniae** *f.* madness, insanity
āvehō, **āvehere**, **āvexī**, **āvectus** convey away; *passive*, go away, depart
dolus, **dolī** *m.* deceit, trick; cunning
Danaī, **Danaōrum** *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks; **Danaum** = **Danaōrum**
Ulīxēs, **Ulīxis** *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)
inclūdō, **inclūdere**, **inclūsī**, **inclūsus** enclose
lignum, **lignī** *n.* wood
occultō (1-tr.) hide, conceal
Achīvī, **Achīvōrum** *m. pl.* Achaeans, Greeks
fabricō (1-tr.) fashion, construct, devise
māchina, **māchinae** *f.* mechanism; structure
īnspiciō, **īnspicere**, **īnspexī**, **īnspectus** examine, inspect, observe
†**īnspectūra**, **ventūra**, *fut. act. participles expressing purpose,* in order to . . .
dēsuper (adv.) from above
aliquis = *masc. nom. sing. of indef. pron. used adjectivally,* some
lateō, **latēre**, **latuī**, —— (intr.) hide, lie hidden, be concealed
error, **errōris** *m.* mistake; deceit
equus, **equī** *m.* horse
†**nē crēdite** = negative imper.
Teucrī, **Teucrōrum** *m. pl.* descendants of Teucer, Teucrians, Trojans
quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.,* whatever

sīc fātus validīs ingentem vīribus hastam
in latus inque ferī curvam compāgibus alvum
contorsit. stetit illa tremēns, uterōque recussō
īnsonuēre cavae gemitumque dedēre cavernae.
et, sī fāta deum, sī mēns nōn laeva fuisset,
impulerat ferrō Argolicās foedāre latebrās,
Troiaque nunc stāret, Priamīque arx alta, manērēs.

for (1-tr.) speak, utter
hasta, **hastae** *f.* spear
latus, **lateris** *n.* side, flank
ferus, **ferī** *m.* wild beast
curvus, **-a**, **-um** curved
compāgēs, **compāgis** *f.* joint, seam; fastening
alvus, **alvī** *f.* belly
contorqueō, **contorquēre**, **contorsī**, **contortus** twist; hurl
tremō, **tremere**, **tremuī**, —— tremble, quiver, shake
uterus, **uterī** *m.* belly, womb
recutiō, **recutere**, **recussī**, **recussus** strike (back), shake
īnsonō, **īnsonāre**, **īnsonuī**, —— make a loud noise, resound
cavus, **-a**, **-um** hollow
gemitus, **gemitūs** *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
caverna, **cavernae** *f.* cavern, cavity, hollow
laevus, **-a**, **-um** left; unfavorable, adverse; dull
impellō (**in-** + **pellō**), **impellere**, **impulī**, **impulsus** push on; drive, compel; **impulerat**, *pluperf. indic. used for vividness in apodosis of Mixed Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence; subj. is "he" (Laocoön)*
Argolicus, **-a**, **-um** of Argos, Argive; Greek
foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile; wound savagely, mangle; *supply* **nōs** *as subj. of* **foedāre**
latebra, **latebrae** *f.* hiding place, lair, recess
Priamus, **Priamī** *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
arx, **arcis** *f.* tower, citadel

13. Vergil, *Aeneid* III.374–80

Helenus the seer begins his response to Aeneas, who has asked for advice on how to proceed to Italy.

Nāte deā (nam tē maiōribus īre per altum
auspiciīs manifesta fidēs;† sīc fāta deum rēx
sortītur volvitque vicēs, is vertitur ordō)
pauca tibi ē multīs, quō tūtior hospita lūstrēs
aequora et Ausoniō possīs cōnsīdere portū,
expediam dictīs; prohibent nam cētera Parcae
scīre Helenum fārīque vetat Sāturnia Iūnō . . .

auspicium, **auspiciī** *n.* augury, omen
manifestus, **-a**, **-um** revealed by clear signs, plain, obvious
†**fidēs**, *here,* proof
sortior, **sortīrī**, **sortītus sum** assign by lot, determine
volvō, **volvere**, **volvī**, **volūtus** turn, turn over; bring round
——, **vicis** *f.* turning, turn; change; lot
vertō, **vertere**, **vertī**, **versus** turn
ordō, **ordinis** *m.* order; series, sequence
tūtus, **-a**, **-um** safe
hospitus, **-a**, **-um** hospitable
lūstrō (1-tr.) traverse; survey
aequor, **aequoris** *n.* level surface; sea, water
Ausonius, **-a**, **-um** of Ausonia, Ausonian, Italian
cōnsīdō, **cōnsīdere**, **cōnsēdī**, —— sit; settle, make one's home
portus, **portūs** *m.* harbor; refuge, haven
expediō, **expedīre**, **expediī/expedīvī**, **expedītus** unravel, explain
prohibeō (**prō-** + **habeō**), **prohibēre**, **prohibuī**, **prohibitus** prevent; prohibit, forbid
cēterus, **-a**, **-um** rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other
Parcae, **Parcārum** *f. pl.* Parcae (goddesses of fate)
Helenus, **Helenī** *m.* Helenus (seer, son of Priam)
for (1-tr.) speak, utter
vetō, **vetāre**, **vetuī**, **vetitus** forbid
Sāturnius, **-a**, **-um** of Saturn (king of the Titans and father of Juno); Saturnian

14. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.653–57

The wounded Rutulian Saces implores Turnus to enter the battle.

Turne, in tē suprēma salūs, miserēre tuōrum.
fulminat Aenēās armīs summāsque minātur
dēiectūrum arcēs Italum excidiōque datūrum,
iamque facēs ad tēcta volant. in† tē ōra Latīnī,
in† tē oculōs referunt;† . . .

Turnus, **Turnī** *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)
suprēmus, **-a**, **-um** final, last
misereor, **miserērī**, **miseritus sum** pity, take pity on (+ gen.)
fulminō (1-intr.) strike (like lightning), flash fiercely
minor (1-intr.) threaten
dēiciō (**dē-** + **iaciō**) throw down, topple, overthrow; **dēiectūrum**, **datūrum**, *subject is* **sē**
arx, **arcis** *f.* tower, citadel
Italī, **Italōrum** *m. pl.* Italians; **Italum** = **Italōrum**
excidium, **excidiī** *n.* (military) destruction
fax, **facis** *f.* firebrand, torch
tēctum, **tēctī** *n.* roof; house
volō (1-intr.) fly
†**in**, *here,* toward
ōs, **ōris** *n.* mouth; face
Latīnī, **Latīnōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Latins (the peoples of Latium)
†**referō**, *here,* direct

15. Horace, *Carmina* I.5 (Asclepiadean; see §113)

The poet addresses an old and dangerous flame.

Quis† multā gracilis tē puer in rosā
perfūsus liquidīs urget odōribus
grātō, Pyrrha, sub antrō?
cui flāvam religās comam

simplex munditiīs? heu quotiēns fidem
mūtātōsque deōs flēbit et aspera
nigrīs aequora ventīs
ēmīrābitur īnsolēns,

quī nunc tē fruitur crēdulus aureā,
quī semper vacuam, semper amābilem
spērat, nescius aurae
fallācis. miserī, quibus

intemptāta nitēs: mē tabulā sacer
vōtīvā pariēs indicat ūvida
suspendisse potentī
vestīmenta maris deō.

†**quis**, *here, interrog. pron. used adjectivally,* what, which
gracilis, **gracile** slender, thin, fine
rosa, **rosae** *f.* rose
perfundō, **perfundere**, **perfūdī**, **perfūsus** pour over, spray, drench
liquidus, **-a**, **-um** liquid, clear
urgeō, **urgēre**, **ursī**, —— weigh down; press hard; urge, pursue
odor, **odōris** *m.* odor, scent
grātus, **-a**, **-um** grateful, pleased; charming, pleasing
Pyrrha, **Pyrrhae** *f.* Pyrrha
antrum, **antrī** *n.* cave, cavern, grotto
flāvus, **-a**, **-um** golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
religō (1-tr.) bind back, bind up; unbind
coma, **comae** *f.* hair
simplex, **simplicis** simple, plain
munditia, **munditiae** *f.* elegance, refinement
quotiēns (adv.) how many times
mūtō (1-tr.) change
fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētus** weep (for)
asper, **aspera**, **asperum** harsh, rough; severe
niger, **nigra**, **nigrum** dark, black
aequor, **aequoris** *n.* level surface; sea, water
ventus, **ventī** *m.* wind
ēmīror (1-tr.) (thoroughly) admire, marvel at, be astonished at
īnsolēns, **īnsolentis** unaccustomed, unfamiliar
fruor, **fruī**, **frūctus sum** enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
crēdulus, **-a**, **-um** trusting, credulous
aureus, **-a**, **-um** golden
vacuus, **-a**, **-um** empty; idle; free, available; carefree
amābilis, **amābile** lovable
spērō (1-tr.) hope (for)
nescius, **-a**, **-um** not knowing, unaware (+ gen.)
aura, **aurae** *f.* breeze
fallāx, **fallācis** deceptive, treacherous
intemptātus, **-a**, **-um** untried
niteō, **nitēre**, **nituī**, —— be radiant, shine
tabula, **tabulae** *f.* plank, tablet
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum** sacred
vōtīvus, **-a**, **-um** votive, offered in fulfillment of a vow
pariēs, **parietis** *m.* wall (of a building)
indicō (1-tr.) declare, indicate
ūvidus, **-a**, **-um** moist, wet, damp
suspendō, **suspendere**, **suspendī**, **suspēnsus** hang, suspend, hang up
potēns, **potentis** powerful, having power over (+ gen.)
vestīmentum, **vestīmentī** *n.* garment; *pl.*, clothing

16. Horace, *Carmina* II.9 (Alcaic strophe; see §113)

The poet advises a lugubrious friend, Valgius.

Nōn semper imbrēs nūbibus hispidōs
mānant in agrōs aut mare Caspium
vexant inaequālēs procellae
ūsque nec Armeniīs in ōrīs,

amīce Valgī, stat glaciēs iners
mēnsīs per omnīs aut Aquilōnibus
querquēta Gargānī labōrant
et foliīs viduantur ornī:

tū semper urgēs flēbilibus modīs
Mystēn adēmptum nec tibi vesperō
surgente dēcēdunt amōrēs
nec rapidum fugiente sōlem.

imber, imbris, -ium *m.* rain, shower
nūbēs, nūbis, -ium *f.* cloud
hispidus, -a, -um hairy; rough, bristly
mānō (1-intr.) trickle, drip, stream, flow
Caspius, -a, -um Caspian
vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass
inaequālis, inaequāle uneven, unlike; that roughens the sea
procella, procellae *f.* blast (of wind), windstorm
ūsque (adv.) continuously
Armenius, -a, -um Armenian
ōra, ōrae *f.* shore
Valgius, Valgiī *m.* (C.) Valgius (Rufus) (an Augustan elegiac poet)
glaciēs, glaciēī *f.* ice
iners, inertis inactive, idle, inert
mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium *m.* month
Aquilō, Aquilōnis *m.* Aquilo (the north wind)
querquētum, querquētī *n.* oak forest, oak grove
Gargānus, Gargānī *m.* Garganus (a mountain in Horace's home district of Apulia)
folium, foliī *n.* leaf
viduō (1-intr.) deprive of (+ abl.)
ornus, ornī *f.* ash tree
urgeō, urgēre, ursī, —— weigh down; press hard
flēbilis, flēbile plaintive; tearful
Mystēs, Mystae *m.* Mystes; **Mystēn** = *acc. sing.*
adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēmptus remove, take away
vesper, vesperī *m.* Vesper, the evening star; evening
surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctus rise, rise up
dēcēdō (**dē-** + **cēdō**) go down, depart
rapidus, -a, -um tearing away, consuming; rushing, rapid
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun

at nōn ter aevō fūnctus amābilem
plōrāvit omnīs Antilochum senex
annōs nec inpūbem parentēs
Trōilon aut Phrygiae sorōrēs
flēvēre semper. dēsine mollium
tandem querellārum et potius nova
cantēmus Augustī tropaea
Caesaris et rigidum Niphātēn,
Mēdumque flūmen gentibus additum
victīs minōrēs volvere verticēs
intrāque praescrīptum Gelōnōs
exiguīs equitāre campīs.

at (conj.) but
ter (adv.) three times, thrice
aevum, **aevī** *n.* age, lifetime; period of time, generation
fungor, **fungī**, **fūnctus sum** perform, execute; complete (+ abl.)
amābilis, **amābile** lovable
plōrō (1-tr.) weep for, mourn
Antilochus, **Antilochī** *m.* Antilochus (son of Nestor, slain by Memnon)
senex, **senis** old; *masc. subst.*, old man
inpūbēs, **inpūbis** underage, youthful, beardless
parēns, **parentis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* parent
Trōilus, **Trōilī** *m.* Troilus (youngest son of Priam and Hecuba, killed by Achilles); **Trōilon** = *acc. sing.*
Phrygius, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to Phrygia (the region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan
fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētus** weep (for)
dēsinō, **dēsinere**, **dēsiī/dēsīvī**, **dēsitum** stop, cease; cease (from) (+ gen.)
mollis, **molle** gentle, mild, soft
querella, **querellae** *f.* complaint, lament
potius (adv.) rather
cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
tropaeum, **tropaeī** *n.* trophy; victory
rigidus, **-a**, **-um** rigid, stiff; inflexible; frozen
Niphātēs, **Niphātae** *m.* the Niphates (a mountain range in Armenia); **Niphātēn** = *acc. sing.*
Mēdus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to the Medes, Median, Persian; **Mēdum flūmen** = the Euphrates (by which the Parthians dwelled)
flūmen, **flūminis** *n.* river, stream
gēns, **gentis**, **-ium** *f.* nation, people; clan, family
addō (**ad-** + **dō**) add
volvō, **volvere**, **volvī**, **volūtus** turn, turn over, roll
vertex, **verticis** *m.* swirling water, whirlpool, eddy
intrā (prep. + acc.) within
praescrīptum, **praescrīptī** *n.* boundary line, limit
Gelōnī, **Gelōnōrum** *m. pl.* the Geloni (a nomadic tribe of Scythians who often made raids on horseback into Roman territory)
exiguus, **-a**, **-um** small, slight
equitō (1-intr.) ride (on horseback)

17. Horace, *Ars Poētica* 323–26

The poet compares Greeks and Romans.

Graīs ingenium, Graīs dedit ōre rotundō
Mūsa loquī, praeter laudem nūllīus avārīs.
Rōmānī puerī longīs ratiōnibus assem
discunt in partīs centum dīdūcere . . .

Graius, **-a**, **-um** Greek; **Graīs** = *dat. pl.*;
Graīs scans as if it were spelled *Graiīs.
ōs, **ōris** *n.* mouth
rotundus, **-a**, **-um** rounded
Mūsa, **Mūsae** *f.* Muse
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond, except
laus, **laudis** *f.* praise
avārus, **-a**, **-um** greedy, rapacious; hungry (for) (+ gen.)
ratiō, **ratiōnis** *f.* account, reason; calculation
as, **assis**, **-ium** *m. as* (a small denomination of Roman money)
discō, **discere**, **didicī**, —— learn (how) (+ infin.)
dīdūcō (**dis-** + **dūcō**) divide, split

The *Ars Poētica* is one of Horace's *Epistulae,* a collection of long hexameter didactic poems on a variety of subjects. The poet of the *Ars Poētica* offers observations and guidance on poetry generally and drama in particular. This playful, imaginative, and insightful 476-line poem speaks with authority on both style and content, but its overall structure and prescription for poetry are elusive.

18. Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* I.61–66

The poet reassures a whole variety of future lovers.

seu caperis prīmīs et adhūc crēscentibus annīs,
ante oculōs veniet vēra puella tuōs;
sīve cupis iuvenem, iuvenēs tibi mīlle placēbunt.
cōgēris vōtī nescius esse tuī;
seu tē forte† iuvat sēra et sapientior aetās,
hoc quoque, crēde mihī,† plēnius agmen erit.

adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still
crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** grow, increase
sīve/seu (conj.) or if; **sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu) . . .** whether . . . or if . . .
iuvenis, **iuvenis** *m.* or *f.* young man, young woman
cōgō (**co-** + **agō**), **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctus** drive together, force, compel
vōtum, **vōtī** *n.* vow, prayer; desire
nescius, **-a**, **-um** not knowing, unaware (+ gen.)
†**fors**, **fortis**, **-ium** *f.* chance, luck
iuvō, **iuvāre**, **iūvī**, **iūtus** help, assist, aid; give pleasure, delight
sērus, **-a**, **-um** late; advanced
aetās, **aetātis** *f.* age, time of life
†The final **-i** of **mihi** here scans *long.*
plēnus, **-a** **-um** full
agmen, **agminis** *n.* line (of march); throng; train

19. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* VII.17–23

After the Colchian king Aeëtes explains the impossible labors that Jason and the Argonauts must perform in order to win the Golden Fleece, the king's daughter Medea scolds herself for the feelings aroused in her by the handsome stranger Jason.

excute virgineō conceptās pectore flammās,
sī potes, īnfēlīx! sī possem, sānior essem!
sed trahit invītam nova vīs, aliudque cupīdō,
mēns aliud suādet: videō meliōra probōque,
dēteriōra sequor! quid† in† hospite, rēgia virgō,
ūreris et thalamōs aliēnī concipis orbis?
haec quoque terra potest quod amēs dare . . .

excutiō, **excutere**, **excussī**, **excussus** throw out, shake off, drive away
virgineus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to a maiden, maidenly
concipiō (**con-** + **capiō**) conceive, produce; imagine
flamma, **flammae** *f.* flame
sānus, **-a**, **-um** healthy, sane
trahō, **trahere**, **trāxī**, **tractus** draw, drag
invītus, **-a**, **-um** unwilling
cupīdō, **cupīdinis** *f.* desire
suādeō, **suādēre**, **suāsī**, **suāsus** recommend, urge, advise
probō (1-tr.) approve of
dēterior, **dēterius** worse
†**quid**, *here* (adv.) why
†**in**, *here,* in the case of
hospes, **hospitis** *m.* guest, visitor, stranger; host
rēgius, **-a**, **-um** royal
virgō, **virginis** *f.* maiden, virgin
ūrō, **ūrere**, **ussī**, **ustus** burn, scorch, inflame, consume
thalamus, **thalamī** *m. sing. or pl.*, inner room, wedding chamber; marriage
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um** belonging to another; alien, strange; foreign
orbis, **orbis**, **-ium** *m.* ring, circle; world, region

20. Ovid, *Trīstia* II.421–30

After defending his poetic license by reference to Greek writers, the poet turns to Roman writers for support as well.

nēve peregrīnīs tantum dēfendar ab armīs,
et Rōmānus habet multa iocōsa liber.
utque suō Martem cecinit gravis Ennius ōre—
Ennius ingeniō maximus, arte rudis—
explicat ut causās rapidī Lucrētius ignis,
cāsūrumque triplex vāticinātur opus,
sīc sua† lascīvō cantāta est saepe Catullō†
fēmina, cui falsum Lesbia nōmen erat;
nec contentus eā, multōs vulgāvit amōrēs,
in quibus ipse suum fassus adulterium est.

nēve (conj.) = **nē** + **-ve** (enclitic conj.) or
peregrīnus, **-a**, **-um** foreign
tantum (adv.) only
dēfendō, **dēfendere**, **dēfendī**, **dēfēnsus** protect, defend
iocōsus, **-a**, **-um** full of jokes; laughable, funny
Ennius, **Enniī** *m.* Ennius
ōs, **ōris** *n.* mouth; voice; eloquence
rudis, **rude** rough; crude, unrefined
explicō (1-tr.) unfold, reveal, explain
rapidus, **-a**, **-um** tearing away, consuming; rushing, rapid
Lucrētius, **Lucrētiī** *m.* Lucretius
triplex, **triplicis** threefold; tripartite; **triplex . . . opus** refers to Lucretius's division of the universe into sea, land, and sky.
vāticinor (1-tr.) warn of, predict, prophesy
†**sua** refers to **Catullō**, "his own."
lascīvus, **-a**, **-um** playful, naughty, free from restraint
cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
†**Catullō** = *Dative of Agent*
nōmen, **nōminis** *n.* name
contentus, **-a**, **-um** content, satisfied; contained
vulgō (1-tr.) make (something) public; make famous
adulterium, **adulteriī** *n.* adultery

The *Trīstia* is one of two works composed by Ovid after he was forced to leave Rome by Augustus in 8 C.E. In five books of elegiac verse the poet interweaves appeals to Augustus for his recall with accounts of life and weather in an uncivilized land far from Rome.

21. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* V.49.6

After the long, painful siege of Rome by the Gauls that nearly ends in surrender, the Romans, led by the dictator Camillus, rout the Gauls first in Rome and then outside it. The historian describes the second battle.

ibi caedēs omnia obtinuit; castra capiuntur et nē nuntius quidem clādis relictus. dictātor reciperātā ex hostibus patriā triumphāns in urbem redit, interque iocōs mīlitārēs quōs inconditōs iaciunt, Rōmulus ac parēns patriae conditorque alter urbis haud vānīs laudibus appellābātur.

ibi (adv.) there; then
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter
obtineō (ob- + teneō), obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentus persist in; extend over, have a hold on
nuntius, nuntiī *m.* messenger
clādēs, clādis *f.* slaughter, destruction
dictātor, dictātōris *m.* dictator (an emergency officer with unlimited powers)
reciperō (1-tr.) get back, recover, regain
triumphō (1-intr.) celebrate a triumph, triumph
iocus, iocī *m.* joke, jest
mīlitāris, mīlitāre military
inconditus, -a, -um unpolished, rough, crude
parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
conditor, conditōris *m.* founder
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
vānus, -a, -um empty, illusory; groundless, false
laus, laudis *f.* praise
appellō (1-tr.) name, call

22. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.49.10

Aemilius Paulus responds to Cn. Lentulus's request that he, Paulus, save himself and leave the ravaged battlefield.

"abī, nuntiā pūblicē patribus: urbem Rōmānam mūniant ac priusquam victor hostis adveniat praesidiīs firment; prīvātim Q. Fabiō L. Aemilium praeceptōrum eius memorem et vīxisse adhūc et morī. mē in hāc strāge mīlitum meōrum patere exspīrāre, nē aut reus iterum ē cōnsulātū sim <aut>† accūsātor collēgae exsistam ut aliēnō crīmine innocentiam meam prōtegam." haec eōs agentēs† prius turba fugientium cīvium, deinde hostēs oppressēre.

nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report
mūniō, mūnīre, mūniī/mūnīvī, mūnītus fortify
priusquam (conj. + subjunc.) before
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor
adveniō (**ad-** + **veniō**) arrive; **adveniat**, *subjunc. expressing anticipation,* can arrive
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard, garrison
firmō (1-tr.) strengthen
prīvātim (adv.) in private, privately
Q. Fabius, Q. Fabiī *m.* Q. Fabius (Maximus) (consul 233, 228, 215, 214, 209 B.C.E.; censor 230; dictator 217; one of the heroes of the second Punic war)
L. Aemilius, L. Aemiliī *m.* L. Aemilius (Paulus) (consul 216 B.C.E.; one of the Roman leaders at the battle of Cannae)
praeceptum, praeceptī *n.* (piece of) advice, instruction
memor, memoris mindful, remembering (+ gen.)
adhūc (adv.) up to this time
strāgēs, strāgis *f.* destruction, slaughter
ex(s)pīrō (1-intr.) breathe out, expire; die
reus, reī *m.* defendant (when Paulus was first consul in 219, he was accused of embezzlement)
iterum (adv.) again, a second time
†Pointed brackets mark an element added by scholars.
accūsātor, accūsātōris *m.* accuser, prosecutor
collēga, collēgae *m.* colleague (in office)
ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)titī, —— stand out, appear; prove to be
aliēnus, -a, -um belonging to another; done by another
crīmen, crīminis *n.* charge, accusation; crime
innocentia, innocentiae *f.* innocence
prōtegō, prōtegere, prōtēxī, prōtēctus protect, defend
†**agō**, *here,* speak about, discuss
turba, turbae *f.* crowd
deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down; suppress; overwhelm, crush

23. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXX.30.18

In 202 B.C.E. a besieged Hannibal attempted to negotiate terms of peace with his respected Roman counterpart, the great general Scipio Africanus. Scipio rejected Hannibal's pleas and then decisively defeated the Carthaginians in the last battle of the second Punic war. The following passage is a portion of Hannibal's speech to Scipio, as reported by the historian. Hannibal tries to convince Scipio to avoid a pitched battle.

maximae cuique† fortūnae minimē crēdendum est. in bonīs tuīs rēbus, nostrīs dubiīs, tibi ampla ac speciōsa dantī est pāx, nōbīs petentibus magis necessāria quam honesta. melior tūtiorque est certa pāx quam spērāta victōria; haec in tuā, illa in deōrum manū est. nē tot annōrum fēlīcitātem in† ūnīus hōrae dederis† discrīmen.

†**cuique** = *fem. sing. dat. of indef. adj.*, each
dubius, **-a**, **-um** uncertain, doubtful
amplus, **-a**, **-um** great, distinguished
speciōsus, **-a**, **-um** attractive, splendid
necessārius, **-a**, **-um** necessary
tūtus, **-a**, **-um** safe
spērō (1-tr.) hope (for), expect
victōria, **victōriae** *f.* victory
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
fēlīcitās, **fēlīcitātis** *f.* good fortune, luck; prosperity
†**dare** . . . **in** . . . , to consign . . . to . . .
hōra, **hōrae** *f.* hour
discrīmen, **discrīminis** *n.* decisive point, determination

24. Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* IV.31.4

The philosopher advises Novatus on what kind of behavior he may expect from human beings.

quid enim mīrum est malōs mala facinora ēdere? quid novī est sī inimīcus nocet, amīcus offendit, fīlius lābitur, servus peccat? turpissimam aiēbat Fabius imperātōrī excūsātiōnem esse "nōn putāvī." ego turpissimam hominī putō. omnia putā, expectā: etiam in bonīs mōribus aliquid existet asperius. fert† hūmāna nātūra īnsidiōsōs animōs, fert ingrātōs, fert cupidōs, fert impiōs. cum† dē ūnīus mōribus iūdicābis, dē pūblicīs cōgitā. ubi maximē gaudēbis, maximē metuēs; ubi tranquilla tibi omnia videntur, ibi nocitūra nōn dēsunt sed quiēscunt. semper futūrum aliquid quod tē offendat exīstimā.

mīrus, **-a**, **-um** marvelous, astonishing
facinus, **facinoris** *n.* deed; crime
ēdō (**ē-** + **dō**) emit; produce, perform; commit
noceō, **nocēre**, **nocuī**, **nocitūrus** be harmful, do harm
offendō, **offendere**, **offendī**, **offēnsus** trouble, upset, give offense to, annoy
lābor, **lābī**, **lāpsus sum** slip, glide; fall; fall into error
peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake; do wrong
turpis, **turpe** foul, ugly; base, shameful
aiō (defective verb) say; **aiēbat** = *3rd sing. imperf. act. indic.*
Fabius, **Fabiī** *m.* (Q.) Fabius (Maximus) (hero of the second Punic war)
excūsātiō, **excūsātiōnis** *f.* excuse
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect
aliquid = *neut. sing. nom. or acc. of indef. pron.*, something
ex(s)istō, **ex(s)istere**, **ex(s)titī**, —— stand out, appear
asper, **aspera**, **asperum** harsh, fierce, pitiless; severe
†**ferō**, *here,* produce
hūmānus, **-a**, **-um** human
īnsidiōsus, **-a**, **-um** treacherous, deceitful
ingrātus, **-a**, **-um** ungrateful; unpleasant, displeasing
†**cum**, *here* (conj.) when
iūdicō (1-tr.) form an opinion, judge, determine
gaudeō, **gaudēre**, **gāvīsus sum** rejoice (in), be glad, be pleased
metuō, **metuere**, **metuī**, —— fear, dread
tranquillus, **-a**, **-um** calm, quiet, still
ibi (adv.) there; then
dēsum (**dē-** + **sum**), **dēesse**, **dēfuī**, **dēfutūrus** be absent, be lacking
quiēscō, **quiēscere**, **quiēvī**, **quiētum** be asleep, be dormant, lie quiet
exīstimō (1-tr.) reckon, suppose, think

In twelve books together given the title *Dialogī* (Dialogues), although they are not written in dialogue form, Seneca discusses a number of moral and philosophical ideas. For the most part each book is addressed to a different person and treats a single question. Three books of the *Dialogī* (III–V) discuss fully the question of how anger may be restrained. Taken together they are often entitled *Dē Irā*.

25. Florus, *Epitoma Bellōrum Omnium* I.31

Florus summarizes the opinions of two famous Romans about how best to deal with Carthage after that city rearmed itself for the first time in fifty years (ca. 152 B.C.E.).

Catō inexpiābilī odiō dēlendam esse Carthāginem, et cum† dē aliō cōnsulerētur, prōnuntiābat, Scīpiō Nāsīca servandam nē, metū ablātō aemulae, luxuriārī fēlīcitās urbis inciperet; medium senātus ēlēgit ut urbs tantum locō movērētur.† nihil enim speciōsius vidēbātur quam esse Carthāginem quae nōn timērētur.

inexpiābilis, **inexpiābile** implacable
†**cum**, *here* (conj. + subjunc.), (under the circumstances) when
cōnsulō, **cōnsulere**, **cōnsuluī**, **cōnsultus** take counsel, consult
prōnuntiō (1-tr.) proclaim, pronounce, declare
Scīpiō Nāsīca, **Scīpiōnis Nāsīcae** *m.* (P. Cornelius) Scipio Nasica (consul 162 B.C.E., censor 159, political opponent of Cato the Elder)
aemulus, **-a**, **-um** emulous, rival; **aemulae**, *supply* **urbis**
luxurior (1-tr.) indulge to excess, revel immoderately
fēlīcitās, **fēlīcitātis** *f.* good fortune, luck; prosperity
incipiō (**in-** + **capiō**) take on, begin
ēligō (**ē-** + **legō**), **ēligere**, **ēlēgī**, **ēlēctus** select, choose
tantum (adv.) only
†**ut . . . movērētur** is a substantive clause explaining **medium**; translate "that . . . be moved."
speciōsus, **-a**, **-um** attractive, splendid

Nothing certain is known about the writer Florus—not even his first name. One of the works that is attributed to a writer named Florus is entitled *Epitoma dē Tītō Līviō Bellōrum Omnium Annōrum DCC* (An Abridgement from Titus Livius of All the Wars of Seven Hundred Years). The work is a concise summary and reconstruction of the history of Roman military encounters and the rise of the Roman people to prominence in the Mediterranean. Although the title suggests that the author is summarizing the historian Livy, Florus's *Epitoma* makes reference to that historian among many other historians and writers. Internal evidence, as well as the association of the Florus of the *Epitoma* with other writers of the same name, suggests that the work was written in the second century C.E.

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 11

Having revealed Catiline's dangerous plans, Cicero boasts of his own survival.

magna dīs immortālibus habenda est atque huic ipsī Iovī Statōrī, antīquissimō custōdī huius urbis, grātia, quod† hanc tam taetram, tam horribilem tamque īnfestam reī pūblicae pestem totiēns iam effūgimus. nōn est saepius in† ūnō homine summa salūs perīclitanda reī pūblicae. quam diū† mihi cōnsulī dēsignātō, Catilīna, īnsidiātus es, nōn pūblicō mē praesidiō, sed prīvātā dīligentiā dēfendī. cum† proximīs comitiīs cōnsulāribus mē cōnsulem in campō† et competītōrēs tuōs interficere voluistī, compressī cōnātūs tuōs nefāriōs amīcōrum praesidiō et cōpiīs nūllō tumultū pūblicē concitātō; dēnique, quotiēnscumque mē petīstī, per mē tibi obstitī, quamquam vidēbam perniciem meam cum magnā calamitāte reī pūblicae esse coniūnctam.

Stator, **Statōris** *m.* (the) Stayer *or* Protector
custōs, **custōdis** *m.* or *f.* guardian, protector, sentry
grātia, **grātiae** *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks
†**quod**, *here* (conj.) because
tam (adv.) so
taeter, **taetra**, **taetrum** repulsive, foul
horribilis, **horribile** terrifying, dreadful
īnfestus, **-a**, **-um** hostile, harmful
pestis, **pestis**, **-ium** *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
totiēns (adv.) so many times
effugiō (**ex-** + **fugiō**) flee from, escape
†**in**, *here,* in the case of
perīclitor (1-tr.) put in peril, endanger
†**quam diū**, *here,* as long as
dēsignātus, **-a**, **-um** elect, appointed (but not yet installed)
īnsidior (1-intr.) lie in wait for; plot against (+ dat.)
praesidium, **praesidiī** *n.* guard, garrison
prīvātus, **-a**, **-um** private
dēfendō, **dēfendere**, **dēfendī**, **dēfēnsus** protect, defend
†**cum**, *here* (conj.) when
proximus, **-a**, **-um** nearest; most recent, last
comitia cōnsulāria, **comitiōrum cōnsulārium** *n. pl.* consular elections
†**campō**, *supply* **Martiō** (the Campus Martius, where elections were held)
competītor, **competītōris** *m.* competitor, rival
volō, **velle**, **voluī**, —— be willing, want, wish
comprimō, **comprimere**, **compressī**, **compressus** crush; subdue, suppress
cōnātus, **cōnātūs** *m.* attempt
nefārius, **-a**, **-um** unspeakable, wicked
tumultus, **tumultūs** *m.* commotion, uproar
concitō (1-tr.) stir up, rouse
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
quotiēnscumque (conj.) however often, as often as
obstō (**ob-** + **stō**), **obstāre**, **obstitī**, **obstātūrus** stand in the way; hinder, block (+ dat.)
perniciēs, **perniciēī** *f.* destruction, ruin, disaster
calamitās, **calamitātis** *f.* disaster, misfortune, injury
coniungō, **coniungere**, **coniūnxī**, **coniūnctus** join together

Cicero's first speech, *In Catilīnam I,* was delivered before the members of the senate (including Catiline himself) in 63 B.C.E. Having learned that Catiline had recruited an army and was planning the murders of all the leading men of the state, the consul Cicero sought to inform the senate and win their approval for action against the conspirators. Despite some strong support, even among the senators, Catiline and his forces were ultimately defeated, and Catiline was killed in a battle north of Rome.

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 1

Sallust begins his account of the Catilinarian conspiracy with a broad discussion of the human condition.

Omnīs hominēs quī sēsē student praestāre cēterīs animālibus summā ope nītī decet nē vītam silentiō trānseant, velutī pecora quae nātūra prōna atque ventrī oboedientia fīnxit. sed nostra omnis vīs in animō et corpore sita est: animī imperiō, corporis servitiō magis ūtimur; alterum nōbīs cum dīs, alterum cum bēluīs commūne est. quō mihi rēctius vidētur ingenī quam vīrium opibus glōriam quaerere, et, quoniam vīta ipsa quā fruimur brevis est, memoriam nostrī quam maxumē longam efficere; nam dīvitiārum et formae glōria fluxa atque fragilis est, virtūs clāra aeternaque habētur.

studeō, studēre, studuī, —— be eager, desire
praestō (prae- + stō), praestāre, praestitī, praestātūrus stand before, be superior, excel (+ dat.)
cēterus, -a, -um rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other
ops, opis *f.* power, ability, might, effort; *pl.*, power, resources, wealth
nītor, nītī, nīxus/nīsus sum rest upon, rely on (+ abl.); make an effort, strive
decet, decēre, decuit, —— (impersonal verb) it is becoming, it is proper (+ acc. + infin.)
silentium, silentiī *n.* silence; **silentiō**, *Ablative of Manner*, in silence
trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsīre, trānsiī/trānsīvī, trānsitus go across, pass through
velutī (conj.) even as, just as
pecus, pecoris *n.* (herd) animal, livestock; *pl.*, farm animals
prōnus, -a, -um leaning *or* bending forward
venter, ventris *m.* belly, stomach
oboediēns, oboedientis obedient, compliant, subject
fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make; imagine
situs, -a, -um placed, set, situated
servitium, servitiī *n.* slavery
bēlua, bēluae *f.* wild beast
commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in common
rēctus, -a, -um straight; right, correct
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
memoria, memoriae *f.* memory, remembrance
maxumē = maximē; quam maxumē longam = quam longissimam
efficiō (ex- + faciō) bring about
dīvitiae, dīvitiārum *f. pl.* wealth, riches
forma, formae *f.* shape, form; beauty
fluxus, -a, -um flowing, loose; weak, fleeting, perishable
fragilis, fragile easily broken, frail
aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.491–505

īnstat vī patriā† Pyrrhus; nec claustra nec ipsī
custōdēs sufferre valent; labat ariete crēbrō
iānua, et ēmōtī prōcumbunt cardine postēs.
fit via vī; rumpunt aditūs prīmōsque trucīdant
immissī Danaī et lātē loca mīlite complent.
nōn sīc, aggeribus ruptīs cum† spūmeus amnis
exiit oppositāsque ēvīcit gurgite mōlēs,
fertur in arva furēns cumulō campōsque per omnīs
cum stabulīs armenta trahit. vīdī ipse furentem
caede Neoptolemum geminōsque in līmine Atrīdās,
vīdī Hecubam centumque nurūs Priamumque per ārās
sanguine foedantem quōs ipse sacrāverat ignīs.

īnstō (**in-** + **stō**), **īnstāre**, **īnstitī**, **īnstātūrus** press (hostilely), press on
†**patrius**, **-a**, **-um**, of *or* belonging to a father, paternal; ancestral
Pyrrhus, **Pyrrhī** *m.* Pyrrhus (son of Achilles) (= Neoptolemus)
claustrum, **claustrī** *n.* bolt, bar
custōs, **custōdis** *m.* or *f.* guard(ian), protector, sentry
sufferō (**sub-** + **ferō**), **sufferre**, **sustulī**, **sublātus** endure, withstand
labō, **labāre**, **labāvī**, —— be shaky, totter, give way
ariēs, **arietis** *m.* (battering) ram; the **-i-** of **ariete** is here consonantal for purposes of scansion.
crēber, **crēbra**, **crēbrum** frequent, repeated
iānua, **iānuae** *f.* door
ēmoveō (**ē-** + **moveō**) remove, dislodge
prōcumbō, **prōcumbere**, **prōcubuī**, **prōcubitum** bend forward; fall down, crash
cardō, **cardinis** *m.* pivot; hinge
postis, **postis**, **-ium** *m.* doorpost, jamb
fīō, **fierī**, **factus sum** be made; **fit** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
rumpō, **rumpere**, **rūpī**, **ruptus** split, burst, break
aditus, **aditūs** *m.* approach, entrance, doorway
trucīdō (1-tr.) slaughter, butcher
immittō (**in-** + **mittō**) send in, send against
Danaī, **Danaōrum** *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks
lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
compleō, **complēre**, **complēvī**, **complētus** fill completely
agger, **aggeris** *m.* mound; bank (of a river)
†**cum**, *here* (conj. + perf. indic.) whenever; translate **exiit** and **ēvīcit** as pres. indic.
spūmeus, **-a**, **-um** foamy, frothy
amnis, **amnis**, **-ium** *m.* stream, torrent
exeō (**ex-** + **eō**), **exīre**, **exiī/exīvī**, **exitum** go out
oppōnō (**ob-** + **pōnō**) place in the way, place against
ēvincō (**ē-** + **vincō**) defeat utterly, overcome
gurges, **gurgitis** *m.* swirling water, eddy, whirlpool
mōlēs, **mōlis**, **-ium** *f.* mass; dam
arvum, **arvī** *n.* (ploughed) field
furō, **furere**, ——, —— be crazy; rage, rave
cumulus, **cumulī** *m.* heap, pile; mass, wave
stabulum, **stabulī** *n.* stable, shed, stall
armentum, **armentī** *n.* herd; bull, head of cattle; *pl.*, cattle
trahō, **trahere**, **trāxī**, **tractus** draw, drag
caedēs, **caedis**, **-ium** *f.* slaughter
Neoptolemus, **Neoptolemī** *m.* Neoptolemus (son of Achilles) (= Pyrrhus)
geminus, **-a**, **-um** twin-born, twin
līmen, **līminis** *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold
Atrīdēs, **Atrīdae** *m.* son of Atreus (either Agamemnon or Menelaus)
Hecuba, **Hecubae** *f.* Hecuba (wife of Priam)
nurus, **nurūs** *f.* daughter-in-law
Priamus, **Priamī** *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
sanguis, **sanguinis** *m.* blood
foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile
sacrō (1-tr.) make sacred, consecrate

quīnquāgintā īllī thalamī, spēs tanta nepōtum,
barbaricō postēs aurō spoliīsque superbī
prōcubuēre; tenent Danaī quā† dēficit ignis. 505

thalamus, **thalamī** *m. sing. or pl.*, inner room, wedding chamber; marriage
tantus, **-a**, **-um** so great
nepōs, **nepōtis** *m.* grandson
barbaricus, **-a**, **-um** barbarian
postis, **postis**, **-ium** *m.* doorpost, jamb
spolium, **spoliī** *n.* booty, spoil
superbus, **-a**, **-um** proud; haughty
prōcumbō, **prōcumbere**, **prōcubuī**, **prōcubitum** bend forward; fall down, crash
Danaī, **Danaōrum** *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks
†**quā**, *here* (adv.) where
dēficiō (**dē-** + **faciō**) let down, fail

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.463–77

fīlius huic Veneris "fīgat tuus omnia, Phoebe,
tē meus arcus," ait: "quantōque animālia cēdunt
cūncta deō, tantō minor est tua glōria nostrā."
dīxit et ēlīsō percussīs āere pennīs
inpiger umbrōsā Parnāsī cōnstitit arce
ēque sagittiferā prōmpsit duo tēla pharetrā
dīversōrum operum: fugat hoc, facit illud amōrem.
quod facit aurātum est et cuspide fulget acūtā;
quod fugat obtūsum est et habet sub harundine plumbum.
hoc deus in nymphā Pēnēide fīxit, at illō
laesit Apollineās trāiecta per ossa medullās.
prōtinus alter amat, fugit altera nōmen amantis,
silvārum latebrīs captīvārumque ferārum
exuviīs gaudēns innuptaeque aemula Phoebēs.
vitta coërcēbat positōs sine lēge capillōs.

fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxus fix, pierce
Phoebus, Phoebī *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
arcus, arcūs *m.* bow (for shooting arrows)
aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
quantus, -a, -um how much
cūnctus, -a, -um all
tantus, -a, -um so much
ēlīdō, ēlīdere, ēlīsī, ēlīsus break thoroughly, batter, cut
percutiō, percutere, percussī, percussus strike, beat; **percussīs . . . pennīs**, by the beating of wings
āēr, āeris *m.* air
penna, pennae *f.* wing
inpiger, inpigra, inpigrum not slow, energetic, brisk
umbrōsus, -a, -um shady
Parnāsus, Parnāsī *m.* Parnassus (a mountain in Greece)
cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, —— make a stand, halt
arx, arcis *f.* citadel; height, peak
sagittifer, sagittifera, sagittiferum arrow-bearing
prōmō, prōmere, prōmpsī, prōmptus bring forth, draw
pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver
dīversus, -a, -um different
fugō (1-tr.) cause to flee, put to flight
aurātus, -a, -um made of gold, golden
cuspis, cuspidis *f.* sharp point, tip
fulgeō, fulgēre, fulsī, —— shine, gleam
acūtus, -a, -um sharp, pointed
obtūsus, -a, -um blunt, dull
harundō, harundinis *f.* reed; (arrow) shaft
plumbum, plumbī *n.* lead
nympha, nymphae *f.* nymph (a semidivine spirit)
Pēnēis, Pēnēidos descended from (the river god) Peneus; **Pēnēide** = *abl. sing.*
at (conj.) but
laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus injure, harm, wound
Apollineus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Apollo
trāiciō (trāns- + iaciō) pierce, transfix
os, ossis *n.* bone
medulla, medullae *f.* marrow; *pl.*, vitals, innards
prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
silva, silvae *f.* forest
latebra, latebrae *f.* hiding place, lair, recess
captīvus, -a, -um captive, captured (in hunting or fishing)
fera, ferae *f.* wild animal, beast
exuviae, exuviārum *f. pl.* (stripped) armor; skin(s)
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in), be glad, be pleased
innuptus, -a, -um unmarried, maiden
aemulus, -a, -um emulous, rivaling (+ gen.)
Phoebē, Phoebēs *f.* Phoebe (Diana); **Phoebēs** = *gen. sing.*
vitta, vittae *f.* headband
coërceō, coërcēre, coërcuī, coërcitus restrain, keep back
capillus, capillī *m. sing. or pl.*, hair

§113. About Meter II

The Roman poets learned from Greek models the dactylic hexameter, the meter of epic, and the elegiac couplet, the meter of love poetry (§83). Some also chose to imitate meters of such Greek lyric poets as Archilochus, Sappho, and Alcaeus.[1]

Lyric poetry (originally so called because it was recited with the accompaniment of music played on a lyre) most often found its subject matter in the events and concerns of personal, private life: friendship, humor, love, wine, mortality. Both Catullus and Horace brought lyric meters into Latin poetry, but in his four books of *Odes,* Horace demonstrated mastery of a far greater variety of these meters.

Since all Latin poetry is quantitative, the basic rules for scanning lyric meters (for determining long and short syllables and marking elisions) are the same as those used for scanning dactylic hexameters and elegiac couplets. Some lyric poems use dactylic lines or sequences of dactylic feet, but many lyric meters have lines that are not divided into feet.

Certain lyric units may be learned and identified, but one generally learns the metrical scheme for each complete lyric line. Some lyric poems have only one metrical scheme that is repeated in every line (**stichic verse**), some have two metrical schemes in alternation (**couplets**), and others have four lines that repeat (**strophic** or **stanzaic verse**).

Stichic verse is indicated when each line begins at the left-hand margin. (For example, dactylic hexameter is stichic verse.) Each indented line indicates a metrically different line.

Common Terms and Metrical Units of Latin Lyric Poetry

acephalous (< Greek *akephalos,* headless) missing the first element
metron (< Greek *metron,* measure) the smallest metrical unit allowed in a given scheme

dimeter consisting of two metra
trimeter consisting of three metra
tetrameter consisting of four metra
pentameter consisting of five metra
hexameter consisting of six metra

NOTE: FOR DACTYLS *ONE* DACTYLIC FOOT = *ONE* METRON
FOR IAMBS, TROCHEES, AND ANAPESTS *TWO* FEET = *ONE* METRON

iamb ⏑ –
iambic metron x – ⏑ –
bacchiac ⏑ – –
dactyl – ⏑ ⏑

1. Other Roman poets wrote tragedies and imitated the meters found in Greek tragic poetry. The Roman adaptations of these meters are not presented in this book.

spondee – –
adonic – ⏑ ⏑ – x
hemiepes – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ x
anapest ⏑ ⏑ –
trochee – ⏑
trochaic metron – ⏑ – x
cretic – ⏑ –
choriamb – ⏑ ⏑ –
glyconic x x – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ x
hipponactean x x – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – x
pherecratean x x – ⏑ ⏑ – x

Hendecasyllable

Many of the short poems of Catullus employ a repeating eleven-syllable line with this scheme:

x x – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – ⏑ – x

– – – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – ⏑ – –
Iam vēr ēgelidōs refert tepōrēs
– – – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – ⏑– ⏑
iam caelī furor aequinoctiālis

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first two syllables and the last syllable are anceps (§83).
2. The hendecasyllabic line is basically iambic in rhythm. An **iamb** is a metrical unit composed of one short syllable followed by one long syllable (⏑ –). The unit – ⏑ ⏑ –, called a **choriamb**, is characteristic of this meter and several other lyric meters. Meters constructed around the choriamb are called **Aeolic** meters.
3. A word usually ends after the fifth or sixth syllable, and this word end may be considered the line's caesural pause.

Choliambic (Limping Iambic)

Several of Catullus's short poems employ a repeating iambic line with this scheme:

x – ⏑ – | x – ⏑ – | x – – x

⏑ – ⏑ – | ⏑ – ⏑ – | ⏑ – – ⏑
Miser Catul|le, dēsinās | ineptīre
⏑ – ⏑ – | ⏑ – ⏑ – | ⏑ – – –
et quod vidēs | perīsse per|ditum dūcās.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The sequence x – ⏑ – is called an **iambic metron** (< Greek *metron,* measure) and is composed of two iambs (⏑ – ⏑ –), although the first syllable is *anceps*. When scanning, one regularly marks off each iambic metron.

2. Because a long is substituted for a short in the second iamb of the last metron of the line, this meter is said to "limp" or slow down.

3. A word usually ends after the fifth syllable, and this word end may be considered the line's caesural pause.

Sapphic Strophe

Two of Catullus's and many of Horace's poems employ a stanzaic form possibly created by the Greek poet Sappho and bearing her name:

– ⏑ – x –// ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – x (cretic and acephalous hipponactean)

– ⏑ – x –// ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – x

– ⏑ – x –// ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – x

– ⏑ ⏑ – x (adonic)

– ⏑ – – – // ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – ⏑
Integer vītae // scelerisque pūrus
– ⏑ – – – // ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – –
nōn eget Maurīs // iaculīs neque arcū
– ⏑ – – – // ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – –
nec venēnātīs // gravidā sagittīs
– ⏑ ⏑ – –
Fusce, pharetrā . . .

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first three lines of the Sapphic strophe have the same metrical scheme, a line composed of two lyric units, the **cretic** (– ⏑ –) and the **hipponactean** (x x – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ – x). Because the hipponactean is missing the first element, it is called "headless" or **acephalous**. Note that the choriamb (– ⏑ ⏑ –) is present in the hipponactean. There is a regular caesura after the fifth syllable.

2. The last line of the Sapphic strophe resembles the last two feet of a dactylic hexameter line. This short line is called an **adonic**.

Asclepiadean Meters

Lyric meters that feature a unit known as a **glyconic** (x x – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ x) are called **Asclepiadean** meters after an Alexandrian love poet, Asclepiades, who lived in the third century B.C.E. Horace employs several Asclepiadean meters, some of which are presented below.

One Asclepiadean meter employs a repeating glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is doubled:

x x – ⏑ ⏑ – // – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ x

– – – ⏑ ⏑ – – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑⏑
Exēgī monumentum aere perennius
– – – ⏑ ⏑ – // – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑⏑
rēgālīque sitū // pyramidum altius

Another Asclepiadean meter employs a repeating glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is tripled:

x x – ◡ ◡ – // – ◡ ◡ – // – ◡ ◡ – ◡ x

Tū nē quaesieris // scīre nefās // quem mihi, quem tibi
fīnem dī dederint, // Leuconoē, // nec Babylōniōs

A third Asclepiadean meter employs a glyconic line alternating with a glyconic line in which the choriamb within the glyconic is doubled:

x x – ◡ ◡ – ◡ x
x x – ◡ ◡ – // – ◡ ◡ – ◡ x

Dōnec grātus eram tibi
nec quisquam potior bracchia candidae

A stanzaic meter features the glyconic and variations:

x x – ◡ ◡ – // – ◡ ◡ – ◡ x (glyconic with doubled choriamb)
x x – ◡ ◡ – // – ◡ ◡ – ◡ x

x x – ◡ ◡ – x (pherecratean)

x x – ◡ ◡ – ◡ x (glyconic)

Quis multā gracilis // tē puer in rosā
perfūsus liquidīs // urget odōribus
grātō, Pyrrha, sub antrō?
cui flāvam religās comam

Archilochian Meter

Horace borrowed several meters from the Greek poet Archilochus. One of them employs a couplet form, the first line of which is dactylic hexameter, the second line of which is a hemiepes.

– ◡◡ | – ◡◡ | – ◡◡ | – ◡◡ | – ◡ ◡ | – x
– ◡ ◡ | – ◡ ◡ | x

Diffū|gēre ni|vēs, // rede|unt iam |grāmina |campīs
arbori|busque co|mae

Alcaic Strophe

Horace's most intricate metrical form was borrowed from the Greek poet Alcaeus:

x – ⏑ – | x || – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ x (iambic metron and acephalous glyconic)

x – ⏑ – | x || – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ x

x – ⏑ – | – – ⏑ – | – (iambic dimeter and one syllable)[2]

– ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑ – | ⏑ – x (hemiepes and bacchiac)

– – ⏑ – | – || – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ –
Nōn semper im|brēs || nūbibus hispidōs

– – ⏑ – | – || – ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑⏑
mānant in a|grōs || aut mare Caspium

– – ⏑ – | – – ⏑ – | –
vexant inae|quālēs procel|lae

– ⏑ ⏑ – ⏑ ⏑– ⏑ – –
ūsque nec Armeniīs in ōrīs

2. In the second iambic metron, the first syllable is always long.

CHAPTER XII

Vocabulary

➤ **grātia**, **grātiae** *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks
➤ **littera**, **litterae** *f.* letter (of the alphabet); *pl.*, letter, epistle
memoria, **memoriae** *f.* memory

➤ **dubium**, **dubiī** *n.* doubt, hesitation (§117)

➤ **gēns**, **gentis**, **-ium** *f.* nation, people; family
fors, **fortis**, **-ium** *f.* chance, luck
mōns, **montis**, **-ium** *m.* mountain
➤ **rūmor**, **rūmōris** *m.* rumor

➤ **fās** (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) right; (what is) permitted
➤ **nefās** (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) forbidden; sacrilege

➤ **dubitō** (1-tr.) hesitate; doubt (§117)
➤ **ōrō** (1-tr.) beg (for)
➤ **rogō** (1-tr.) ask (for)
➤ **spērō** (1-tr.) hope (for)

➤ **cōnficiō**, **cōnficere**, **cōnfēcī**, **cōnfectus** accomplish, complete
➤ **oblīvīscor**, **oblīvīscī**, **oblītus sum** forget (+ gen.)
➤ **praeficiō**, **praeficere**, **praefēcī**, **praefectus** put in charge (of)

➤ **īnferō**, **īnferre**, **intulī**, **illātus** carry (into); inflict (on)
➤ **praeferō**, **praeferre**, **praetulī**, **praelātus** prefer
➤ **praesum**, **praeesse**, **praefuī**, **praefutūrus** be in charge (of), be in command (of)

➤ **volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, —— be willing, want, wish (§119)
➤ **mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī**, —— want more, prefer (§119)
➤ **nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —— be unwilling, not want, not wish (§119)

➤ **dignus**, **-a**, **-um** worthy (of) (+ abl.)
➤ **indignus**, **-a**, **-um** unworthy (of) (+ abl.)
➤ **dubius**, **-a**, **-um** doubtful (§117)
an (conj.) *introduces an alternative question,* or (§114); *introduces an Indirect Question,* whether (§116)
➤ **cum** (conj.) when; since; although (§118)
➤ **modo** (adv.) only, just; now, just now
necne (conj.) *in Indirect Question,* or not (§116)
nōnne (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer "yes"* (§114)
num (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer "no"* (§114); *introduces an Indirect Question,* whether (§116)
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond; except
quīn (conj.) *introduces Doubting clause,* that (§117)
quō (interrog. adv.) to where, whither
➤ **tum** or **tunc** (adv.) then, at that time
unde (interrog. adv.) from where, whence
utrum (interrog. particle) *introduces the first question of a double direct question or Indirect Question* (§114, §116)

utrum . . . an . . .	whether . . . or . . .
-ne . . . an . . .	
—— **. . . an . . .**	(§114, §116)

Vocabulary Notes

➤ **grātia**, **grātiae** *f.* may mean the "favor" or "kindness" that one shows to another or the "gratitude" one feels in return for a favor or kindness. Both the singular and the plural may be used in a variety of idioms: **grātiās agere**, "to give thanks"; **grātiam** or **grātiās habēre**, "to have gratitude."

➤ In the singular **littera**, **litterae** *f.* refers to a "letter" of the alphabet. In the plural it most often means a single "epistle" or "letter." An adjective of quantity or number may be added to indicate more than one letter.

Fīliō litterās mīsī.	I sent a letter to (my) son.
Fīliō multās litterās mīsī.	I sent many letters to (my) son.

The plural of **littera** may also mean, more abstractly, "(humane) letters," "literature."

➤ **dubium**, **dubiī** *n.* is a substantive of the adjective **dubius**, **-a**, **-um**. It regularly appears with an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (§117).

➤ **gēns**, **gentis**, **-ium** *f.* may refer to a collective "people" or "nation." Among Roman citizens, a **gēns** was a group of families that shared the same **nōmen** (name) (§16). **gēns** may also refer to an individual family. In the plural, **gentēs** may mean "nations of the world" or "the human race" as a whole.

➤ **rūmor**, **rūmōris** *m.* may mean "rumor" or "gossip." The phrase **rūmor est** introduces an Indirect Statement (§107).

Rūmor est Caesarem venīre.	There is a rumor that Caesar is coming.

➤ **fās** is an indeclinable neuter noun. Its strict meaning is what is "right" according to divine law, as opposed to **iūs**, which indicates "right" according to human law. It may also be used of "(what is) permitted" or "(what is) lawful" in a more general sense. It commonly occurs in parenthetical remarks, such as **sī fās (est)** (if it is right). It is also often used as a Predicate Nominative or Predicate Accusative.

Fās est hoc facere.	To do this thing is right.

➤ **nefās** is an indeclinable neuter noun formed by the addition of the negative prefix **ne-** to **fās**. Thus its strict meaning is what is an "offense" according to divine law (sacrilege).

➤ When the verb **dubitō**, **dubitāre**, **dubitāvī**, **dubitātus** means "hesitate," it is often followed by a Complementary Infinitive. When it means "doubt," it regularly introduces an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (§117).

➤ **ōrō**, **ōrāre**, **ōrāvī**, **ōrātus** takes a **double accusative**; that is, it may have *two* Accusative, Direct Objects, the *person begged* and *the thing begged for*. It may also introduce an Indirect Command.

Cīvēs deōs pācem ōrant.	The citizens beg the gods for peace.
Mīlitēs ōrēmus nē discēdant.	Let us beg the soldiers that they not depart.

➤ **rogō**, **rogāre**, **rogāvī**, **rogātus** may introduce an Indirect Question (§116) or an Indirect Command. It may take an Accusative, Direct Object expressing the *person asked* or *the thing asked for*. Like **ōrō**, **rogō** may take a double accusative.

Mīlitēs auxilium rogēmus.	Let us ask the soldiers for aid.

➤ **spērō**, **spērāre**, **spērāvī**, **spērātus** is a *denominative* verb formed from the noun **spēs**. **spērō** may be followed by an Accusative, Direct Object, or it may introduce an Indirect Statement.

➤ **cōnficiō**, **cōnficere**, **cōnfēcī**, **cōnfectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **con-** to **faciō**. It may mean "accomplish" or "complete" (tasks, duties, written works, periods of time). It is a synonym of **perficiō**. **cōnficiō** may also mean "wear out" or "kill."

➤ **oblīvīscor**, **oblīvīscī**, **oblītus sum** may introduce an Indirect Statement. It often takes a Genitive with Expressions of Remembering and Forgetting (Objective Genitive) (cf. **meminī**). **oblīvīscor** may also take an Accusative, Direct Object, particularly when the object is a neuter pronoun. When it takes an Object Infinitive, **oblīvīscor** may mean "forget" or "forget how."

Numquam oblīvīscar illīus noctis.	I shall never forget that night. (Objective Genitive)
Omnia oblīvīscēbar.	I was forgetting all things. (Accusative, Direct Object)
Miser poēta scrībere oblītus est.	The wretched poet forgot how to write. (Object Infinitive)

➤ **praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prae-** to **faciō**. **praeficiō** is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121).

Senātus Caesarem cōpiīs in Italiā praeficiet.
The senate will put Caesar in charge of the troops in Italy.

➤ **īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** to **ferō**. **īnferō** is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121). It may mean "carry in" or "inflict" (war, injury, disgrace).

Bellum incolīs intulimus. We inflicted war on the inhabitants.

➤ **praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prae-** to **ferō**. **praeferō** is a transitive verb and also takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121).

Mortemne servitūtī praefers? Do you prefer death to slavery?

➤ **praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prae-** to **sum**. **praesum** is an intransitive verb that takes a Dative with a Compound Verb (§121).

Cōpiīs praeerat. He was in command of the troops.

➤ **volō, velle, voluī, ——** is an irregular verb. For its forms see §119. **volō** may be transitive (want, wish) or may be used absolutely (be willing). While **optō**, **cupiō**, and **volō** all express desire, **volō** suggests a stronger sense of will or purpose on the part of the subject. **volō** appears in two common idioms: **bene velle**, "to wish well," and **male velle**, "to wish ill." Both are followed by a Dative of Reference.

➤ **mālō, mālle, māluī, ——** is an irregular compound verb formed by the addition of the comparative adverb **magis** to **volō**. For its forms and the constructions that accompany it, see §119.

➤ **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——** is an irregular compound verb formed by the addition of the adverb **nōn** to **volō**. For its forms see §119. It has meanings that are parallel to **volō** (not want, not wish, be unwilling), and it may mean "refuse."

➤ **dignus, -a, -um** is an adjective that takes an Ablative of Respect to indicate that which someone is worthy of. Such an Ablative of Respect is regularly translated with the English preposition "of." **dignus** may also be used absolutely (deserving, worthwhile).

Hoc opus vestrā cūrā dignum est. This work is worthy of your (pl.) concern.
Dignum est multa scīre. To know many things is worthwhile.

➤ **indignus, -a, -um** is an adjective that takes an Ablative of Respect to indicate that which someone is *un-*worthy of. Such an Ablative of Respect is regularly translated with the English preposition "of."

➤ **dubius, -a, -um** regularly appears with an Indirect Question or a Doubting clause (§117).

➤ The conjunction **cum** was developed from an old accusative form of the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod**, and the archaic form **quom** is common in Roman writers prior to Cicero. This conjunction is not linguistically related to the preposition that is spelled identically. For its use see §118.

➤ **modo** is an adverb that was in origin the ablative singular of **modus**, but note that the final **-o** is short. **modo** is often used to strengthen an imperative (only, just). It may be used as a temporal adverb (now, just now) and may appear in place of **sōlum** in the expression **nōn modo . . . sed/vērum etiam . . .**

➤ **tum** (adv.) and **tunc** (adv.) are synonymous. **tunc** is formed by the addition of the emphatic suffix **-ce** to **tum**. In early Latin **tunc** was more emphatic than **tum**. By the Augustan period this emphasis was less pronounced. **tum** may be used with **cum** with a variety of emphases. The correlatives **cum . . . tum . . .** may be translated "when . . . then/at the same time . . . ," "both . . . and (especially) . . . ," or "not only . . . but also . . ."

Cum illud faciēbat, tum discēdēbam.
When he was doing that thing, then/at the same time I was departing.
Cōnsilium cum patriae tum sibi inimīcum capiēbat.
He was forming a plan hostile both to his country and (especially) to himself.
Dīcere vīsa est cum honestam sententiam, tum vēram.
She seemed to speak not only an honorable opinion, but also a true (one).

	Derivatives	Cognates
dignus	**dign**ity; in**dign**ant; dis**dain**; **dain**ty	**dec**ent; **doc**tor; **dog**ma
gēns	**gent**le; **gent**ile	kin; **king**; **gen**der; **gen**ealogy; **gen**e
mōns	**mount**ain; a**mount**	**mou**th; im**min**ent; **men**ace
oblīvīscor	**obliv**ious; **oubl**iette	**slim**e; **slip**
rogō	inter**rog**ate; ab**rog**ate	rich; **reck**less
volō	**vol**untary; **vell**eity; **vol**ition; male**vol**ence	**vol**uptuous; will; **weal**th; well

§114. Direct Questions

A **direct question** is a question written or uttered directly. In Latin a direct question may be introduced by the enclitic **-ne** attached to the first word of the question or by nothing at all. For example:

Lēgistīne illud carmen?	Did you read that poem?
Illud carmen lēgistī?	Did you read that poem?

Direct questions may also be introduced by the interrogative particles **nōnne** and **num**. **Nōnne** introduces a question to which the expected answer is *yes*. **Num** introduces a question to which the expected answer is *no*. For example:

Nōnne illud carmen lēgistī?	You read that poem, didn't you? (Yes)
Num illud carmen lēgistī?	You didn't read that poem, did you? (No)

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Nōnne** is formed from the combination of **nōn** and **-ne**. In translating Latin direct questions introduced by **nōnne**, a phrase such as "didn't you?" is added to make clear that the expected answer is *yes*.

2. In translating Latin direct questions introduced by **num**, a negative adverb *and* a phrase such as "did you?" are added to make clear that the expected answer is *no*.

Direct questions may also be introduced by a variety of interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs. The following is a list of all the words presented in Chapters I–XII that may introduce questions.

quis, quid	who, what
quī, quae, quod	what _____, which
cūr **quam ob rem** **quārē**	why
ubi	when
ubi	where
unde	from where, whence
quō	to where, whither
quemadmodum	how
quō modō	in what way, how
uter, utra, utrum	which one (of two)

A question such as "Will you come to Rome or will you stay in the country?" is called a **double direct question**. A double direct question in Latin may be introduced by the interrogative particle **utrum**, by **-ne**, or by nothing at all. The conjunction **an** (or) introduces the second question. For example:

***Utrum* Rōmam veniēs *an* rūrī manēbis?**
Rōmam*ne* veniēs *an* rūrī manēbis?
Rōmam veniēs *an* rūrī manēbis?
To Rome will you come *or* in the country will you stay?
Will you come to Rome *or* will you stay in the country?
***Utrum* Rōmam veniēs *an* nōn?**
Will you come to Rome *or* (will you) not (come to Rome)?

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are no differences in meaning among the first three double direct questions. Double direct questions introduced by **utrum** or **-ne** are more common in classical Latin than those introduced by nothing at all.

2. **Utrum** is in origin the neuter singular accusative of the interrogative adjective **uter**, **utra**, **utrum** used adverbially (whether). In double direct questions it may introduce the first question, but it should not be translated.

3. The ellipsis of certain words from one or both questions is a regular feature of double direct questions. Although in the last sentence only **nōn** appears after **an**, the rest of the second question may easily be supplied from the first question.

4. Additional questions may be added to double direct questions using the conjunction **an**.

§115. Deliberative Subjunctive

A verb in the present subjunctive in a direct question may be used to indicate that the subject is deliberating about or weighing courses of action for the present or the future. A verb in the imperfect subjunctive in a direct question may be used to indicate that the subject is deliberating about an action in the past. The adverb **nōn** is used for negation. This independent use of the subjunctive is called **Deliberative** (< **dēlīberō**, "weigh"). For example:

Quid nunc *agam*?	What *should I do* now? What *am I to do* now?
Quid illō tempore *agerem*?	What *should I have done* at that time? What *was I to do* at that time?
Nōn *venīrem* Rōmam?	*Should I not have come* to Rome? *Was I not to have come* to Rome?

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Deliberative subjunctive is a variety of the Hortatory subjunctive. Unlike the Hortatory subjunctive, which expresses the will of the subject, the Deliberative subjunctive asks about the will of the person addressed. The Deliberative subjunctive most commonly occurs in the first person.

2. The English words "am/are/is . . . to" or "should" are regularly used to translate a Deliberative subjunctive in present or future time.

3. The English words "was/were . . . to" or "should have" are regularly used to translate a Deliberative subjunctive in past time.

4. The syntax of, for example, **agerem** is **imperfect subjunctive, Deliberative, past time.**

5. Sometimes an independent subjunctive appearing in a question is *Potential* rather than *Deliberative*. For example:

Quis rem pūblicam perīre *cupiat*? Who *would desire* the republic to perish?

☛ DRILL 114–115, PAGE 499, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§116. Indirect Questions

When a question is *reported indirectly* as part of a complex sentence, the question is subordinated to a main verb, and the resulting subordinate clause is called an **Indirect Question**. For example:

What do those poets think about the nature of the gods? (Direct Question)
I do not know *what those poets think about the nature of the gods.* (Indirect Question)

When a direct question is reported indirectly in English, the subject and the verb of the direct question may have to be changed (for example, "do . . . think" becomes "think"). In Latin, *the verb of the indirect question is in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence*. For example:

Nesciō quid illī poētae dē nātūrā deōrum *cōgitent*.
I do not know what those poets about the nature of the gods *think*.
I do not know what those poets *think* about the nature of the gods.
Nesciō quid illī poētae dē nātūrā deōrum *cōgitāverint*.
I do not know what those poets *thought* about the nature of the gods.
Nesciō quid dē nātūrā deōrum *dictūrus sīs*.
I do not know what *you will* (*are going to*) *say* about the nature of the gods.

OBSERVATIONS

1. An Indirect Question is a noun clause. It functions as either the direct object or (less frequently) the subject of the verb that introduces it.

2. Many Indirect Questions in early Latin appear with their verbs in the indicative. The use of the subjunctive mood in Indirect Questions may have its origin in Deliberative subjunctives that were then made indirect. Regardless of the origin, the use of the subjunctive mood in Indirect Questions reflects the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.

3. Future time in Indirect Questions is frequently indicated by the active periphrastic.

4. The syntax of, for example, **cōgitāverint** is **perfect subjunctive, Indirect Question, primary sequence, prior time**.

5. Most often the subjunctive verb in an Indirect Question should be translated into English as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

An Indirect Question may be introduced by any of the interrogative words used to introduce direct questions. When an original direct question has no interrogative

word or is introduced by the enclitic **-ne**, the indirect form may be introduced by the interrogative particle **num** or **an**, "whether." For example:

Rōmam īre optat?	Is she desiring to go to Rome?
Quaesīvērunt *num* Rōmam īre optāret.	They asked *whether* she was desiring to go to Rome.

Double Indirect Questions may be introduced by **utrum**, **-ne**, or nothing at all. The conjunction **an** (or) introduces the second question. Double Indirect Questions use the negative conjunction **necne**, "or not," instead of **an nōn** (as in double direct questions). For example:

Utrum Rōmam īre optat an rūrī manēre?
Is she desiring to go to Rome or to remain in the country?
Quaesiī *utrum* Rōmam īre optāret *an* rūrī manēre.
I asked *whether* she was desiring to go to Rome *or* to stay in the country.

Utrum Rōmam īre optat an nōn?
Is she desiring to go to Rome or not?
Quaesiī *utrum* Rōmam īre optāret *necne*.
I asked *whether* she was desiring to go to Rome *or not*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Double Indirect Questions introduced by **utrum** or **-ne** are more common in classical Latin than those introduced by nothing at all.
2. In double Indirect Questions, the English word "whether" is used to translate **utrum** or **-ne**. "Whether" must be added to the English translation when the beginning of a double Indirect Question is not indicated in Latin.

Occasionally the verb in the subjunctive mood in an Indirect Question represents an *original* independent use of the subjunctive. For example:

Nesciō *quid faciam*.	I do not know *what I should do*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In this sentence, although **faciam** could represent a direct question with a verb in the indicative mood (**Quid faciō?** What am I doing?), the translation indicates that the original question had a verb in the subjunctive mood (**Quid faciam?** What should I do? [Deliberative subjunctive]).
2. The Deliberative subjunctive is the most common kind of independent subjunctive to appear in an Indirect Question. Occasionally a Potential subjunctive may also appear in an Indirect Question.

§117. Doubting Clauses

When an Indirect Question introduced by **num**, **an** (whether), or another interrogative word is preceded by a verb or other expression of doubting, the Indirect Question is sometimes called a **Doubting clause**. For example:

Omnēs dubitābant *num* Cicerō locūtūrus esset. (**dubitō** [1-tr.] doubt)
All men were doubting *whether* Cicero was going to speak.
Dubium est *an* nostrī vincant. (**dubium, dubiī** *n.* doubt)
There is a doubt *whether* our men are conquering.

When the expression of doubting is negated, or when negation is implied, the Doubting clause is introduced by the conjunction **quīn** (that). For example:

Nōn dubitāvī *quīn* Cicerō locūtūrus esset.
I did not doubt *that* Cicero was going to speak.
Nūllum dubium est *quīn* nostrī vincant.
There is no doubt *that* our men are conquering.
Quis dubitet *quīn* nostrī vincant?
Who would doubt *that* our men are conquering?

OBSERVATIONS

1. Because they are essentially Indirect Questions, Doubting clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

2. In the third sentence negation is implied because the answer to this rhetorical question would be "no one."

☛ DRILL 116–117, PAGE 505, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§118. Subordinate Clauses II: The Conjunction *cum*

The subordinating conjunction **cum** has a variety of meanings. The verb in a **cum** clause may be in the indicative or the subjunctive mood, depending on what particular type of clause **cum** introduces.

Type of Clause	*Mood of Verb*	*Translation of* ***cum***
Temporal	Indicative	"(at the time) when"[1]
Circumstantial	Indicative (primary) (rare) Subjunctive (secondary)	"(under the circumstances) when"
Causal	Subjunctive	"since/because"
Concessive	Subjunctive	"although"

1. When **cum** is followed by a *perfect* indicative and the verb in the main clause is *present* indicative, **cum** should be translated "whenever," and the perfect indicative should be translated as a *present*. When **cum** is followed by the *pluperfect* indicative and the verb in the main clause is *imperfect* indicative, **cum** should be translated "whenever," and the *pluperfect* indicative should be translated as an *imperfect*.

Like other subordinate clauses, **cum** clauses may *precede or follow* main clauses. When the subjunctive mood is used for the verb in a **cum** clause, the rules of sequence are followed. For example:

Temporal

Mīlitēs ad campum accessērunt *cum signum datum est*.
The soldiers toward the plain approached *(at the time) when the signal was given.*
The soldiers approached the plain *when the signal was given.*
***Cum mīlitēs in campō vīdī*, magnopere timeō.**
Whenever soldiers (d.o.) on the plain I see, greatly I am afraid.
Whenever I see soldiers on the plain, I am greatly afraid.
***Cum mīlitēs in campō vīderam*, magnopere timēbam.**
Whenever I saw (repeatedly) soldiers on the plain, I used to be greatly afraid.

Circumstantial

Hoc, *cum dīcunt*, intellegere mihi nōn videntur.
This thing, *(under the circumstances) when they say,* to understand to me they do not seem.
When they say this thing, they do not seem to me to understand (it).
Caesar, *cum loquerētur*, ab inimīcīs interfectus est.
Caesar, *(under the circumstances) when he was speaking,* by (his) enemies was killed.
When Caesar was speaking, he was killed by (his) enemies.

Causal

Pugnāre nōn possum *cum gladiō caream*.
To fight I am not able *because a sword I am lacking.*
I am not able to fight *because I am lacking a sword.*

Concessive

Cicerō, *cum in oppidō parvō nātus esset*, Rōmae tamen vīvēbat.
Cicero, *although in a small town he had been born,* in Rome nevertheless he used to live.
Although Cicero had been born in a small town, nevertheless he used to live in Rome.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The use of the subjunctive mood in circumstantial, causal, and concessive **cum** clauses reflects the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.

2. A **cum** clause followed by a verb in the subjunctive mood may introduce a circumstantial, causal, or concessive clause. Context usually makes clear which sense is appropriate. For example, in the last sentence above the presence of **tamen** in the main clause indicates that the preceding subordinate clause is *concessive.*

3. The subjunctive verb in a **cum** clause should be translated into English as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

☛ Drill 118, page 509, may now be done.

§119. The Irregular Verbs *volō, nōlō,* and *mālō*

The irregular verbs **volō**, **velle**, **voluī**, ——, "be willing, want, wish"; **nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, ——, "be unwilling, not want, not wish"; and **mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī**, ——, "want more, prefer" have active forms only. They have a number of irregular forms in the present system. All the forms of the perfect active system are regular. MEMORIZE THE FOLLOWING IRREGULAR CONJUGATIONS AND FORMS:

	Present Active Indicative			Present Active Subjunctive		
Singular						
1	**volō**	**nōlō**	**mālō**	**velim**	**nōlim**	**mālim**
2	**vīs**	**nōn vīs**	**māvīs**	**velīs**	**nōlīs**	**mālīs**
3	**vult**	**nōn vult**	**māvult**	**velit**	**nōlit**	**mālit**
Plural						
1	**volumus**	**nōlumus**	**mālumus**	**velīmus**	**nōlīmus**	**mālīmus**
2	**vultis**	**nōn vultis**	**māvultis**	**velītis**	**nōlītis**	**mālītis**
3	**volunt**	**nōlunt**	**mālunt**	**velint**	**nōlint**	**mālint**

Present Active Infinitive: **velle**, **nōlle**, **mālle**

Present Active Participle: **volēns, volentis**; **nōlēns, nōlentis**

Present Active Imperative: **nōlī** (singular); **nōlīte** (plural)

OBSERVATIONS

1. There are two common, older forms of **vult** and **vultis**: **volt** and **voltis**. The forms given above replaced these older forms during the first century B.C.E., but the older forms occur frequently in many classical authors, including Cicero. BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THESE ARCHAIC FORMS.

2. **Nōlō** was formed by the addition of **nōn** to **volō**. In the present active indicative conjugation of **nōlō**, three forms (the second and third person singular and the second person plural) are simply **nōn** and the corresponding form of **volō**.

3. **Mālō** was formed by the addition of **magis** to **volō**, and it therefore may take structures that regularly accompany the comparative degree. For example:

> **Sapiēns amīcitiam omnibus rēbus mālit**. (Ablative of Comparison)
> A wise man friendship (d.o.) than all things would want more.
> A wise man would want friendship more than all things.
> **Nostrī pugnāre quam fugere māluērunt**. (comparison with **quam**)
> Our men to fight than to flee preferred.
> Our men preferred to fight (rather) than to flee.

4. In the imperfect and future active indicative, **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō** are conjugated as if they were regular third-conjugation verbs with the stems **vole-**, **nōle-**, and **māle-**, respectively. The first person singular future active indicative forms of **nōlō** (*nōlam) and **mālō** (*mālam) do not occur in the Latin literature that survives.

5. The present active subjunctive of **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō** may be compared to the present active subjunctive of **sum** (**sim**, **sīs**, **sit**, etc.). The imperfect active subjunctive is formed regularly from the irregular present active infinitives **velle**, **nōlle**, and **mālle**.

6. **Mālō** does not have a present active participle.

7. **Volō** and **mālō** do *not* have imperative forms. For the use of the imperative forms of **nōlō** (**nōlī** and **nōlīte**) see §120.

§120. Negative Commands with *nōlī* or *nōlīte* and an Infinitive

Nōlī and **nōlīte** are used *with infinitives to express negative commands.* For example:

***Nōlī*, amīce, mē *ōdisse*.**	*Be unwilling*, friend, me (d.o.) *to hate.* *Do not hate* me, friend.
***Nōlīte* ex prōvinciā *discēdere*.**	*Be unwilling (pl.)* from the province *to depart.* *Do not (pl.) depart* from the province.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Although a Jussive subjunctive may be used to express a negative command, **nōlī** or **nōlīte** is a more common way of expressing this idea in classical Latin prose.

2. The second translations given above are to be preferred.

☛ Drill 119–120, page 515, may now be done.

§121. Dative with a Compound Verb

Many compound verbs, which have been formed by the addition of certain prepositions as prefixes to simple verbs, regularly appear with a dative that is connected in sense with the meaning of the preposition. Such a dative is called a **Dative with a Compound Verb**. For example:

Ille *cōpiīs* praeest. (**praesum** [**prae-** + **sum**] be in charge [of])
That man *(with reference) to the troops* is in charge.
That man is in charge *of the troops.*

Iste *patriae* bellum īnferet. (**īnferō** [**in-** + **ferō**] carry [in], inflict [on])
That (contemptible) man *(with reference) to the country* war (d.o.) will inflict.
That contemptible man will inflict war *on the country.*

The syntax of each italicized word (**cōpiīs**, **patriae**) is **Dative with a Compound Verb.**

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a preposition is compounded with a transitive verb, the resulting compound verb may take both an Accusative, Direct Object and a Dative with a Compound Verb.

2. A Dative with a Compound Verb replaces a prepositional phrase that has an equivalent meaning. For example, the idea expressed by the dative **patriae** in the second sentence above might also have been conveyed by **in patriam**, "against the country." Many compound verbs that take a Dative with a Compound Verb are also found with corresponding prepositional phrases.

3. When prefixes related to the following prepositions are used to form compound verbs, the resulting compound verbs *may* take a Dative with a Compound Verb:

ad	**ob** (prep. + acc.) in front of[2]
ante	**post**
circum (prep. + acc.) around	**prae** (prep. + abl.) in front of, before
cum	**sub**
in	**super** (prep. + acc. *or* abl.) above
inter	

4. A Dative with a Compound Verb is seldom translated with the English prepositions "to" or "for." The second English translations of the two sentences above are to be preferred because they best represent the meanings of the compounds that result from the addition of the prepositions to the simple verbs.

2. Although the preposition **ob** regularly means "on account of," "because of," its original meaning was spatial (in front of, in the way of).

Short Readings

1. A frustrated wife responds to her husband.

   vēra dīcō, sed nēquīquam, quoniam nōn vīs crēdere. (Plautus, *Amphitruō* 835)

nēquīquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain

2. A truism from Plautus

   tum dēnique hominēs nostra intellegimus bona,
   quom, quae in potestāte habuimus, ea āmīsimus. (Plautus, *Captīvī* 142–43)

dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
quom = **cum**
potestās, potestātis *f.* (legitimate) power; possession
āmittō (**ā-** + **mittō**) send away; lose

3. A comic character states his dilemma.

   nunc ego inter sacrum saxumque stō, nec quid faciam sciō. (Plautus, *Captīvī* 617)

sacrum, sacrī *n.* sacred place
saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone

4. The slave Tranio responds understandingly to an obnoxious remark of his friend Grumio.

   quasi invidēre mī hōc vidēre, Grumiō,
   quia mihi bene est et tibi male est; dignissumumst. (Plautus, *Mostellāria* 51–52)

quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
invideō (**in-** + **videō**) envy, be jealous of
mī = **mihi**
Grumiō, *Grumiōnis *m.* Grumio
quia (conj.) because
dignissumumst = **dignissimumst**

5. A slave answers a question about his future.

   ūnum hoc sciō: quod fors feret ferēmus aequō animō. (Terence, *Phormiō* 138)

   Two Roman proverbs

6. Nescit quō tendat quī multās sequitur sēmitās. ([Varro], *Sententiae* 88)

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus/tēnsus aim, direct oneself, travel
sēmita, sēmitae *f.* path

7. Nescīre quid sit paupertās optimus est ad summās dīvitiās prōgressus.

   ([Varro], *Sententiae* 95)

paupertās, paupertātis *f.* poverty
dīvitiae, dīvitiārum *f. pl.* wealth
prōgressus, prōgressūs *m.* progress; course

8. A definition of a rhetorical term

frequentātiō est cum rēs tōtā causā dispersae cōguntur in ūnum locum quō gravior aut ācrior aut crīminōsior ōrātiō sit. (*Rhētorica Ad Herennium* IV.52.22)

frequentātiō, **frequentātiōnis** *f.* concentration; assembling
dispergō, **dispergere**, **dispersī**, **dispersus** spread about, scatter, disperse
cōgō (**co-** + **agō**), **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctus** drive together; bring together, collect
crīminōsus, **-a**, **-um** accusatory, damning

9. Cicero gives this as an example of a rhetorical statement that is obviously false.

nēmō est quīn pecūniam quam sapientiam mālit. (Cicero, *Dē Inventiōne* I.80)

10. The orator exhorts Catiline directly.

mūtā iam istam mentem, mihi crēde, oblīvīscere caedis atque incendiōrum. (Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 6)

mūtō (1-tr.) change
caedēs, **caedis**, **-ium** *f.* slaughter
incendium, **incendiī** *n.* fire; arson

11. The orator utters some dramatic rhetorical questions.

ō dī immortālēs! ubinam gentium sumus? in quā urbe vīvimus? quam rem pūblicam habēmus? (Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 9)

ubinam (interrog. adv.) where ever, where indeed

12. After yet another attack on Catiline, Cicero asks a rhetorical question.

sed cūr iam diū dē ūnō hoste loquimur et dē eō hoste quī iam fatētur sē esse hostem, et quem, quia, quod semper voluī, mūrus interest, nōn timeō; dē hīs quī dissimulant, quī Rōmae remanent, quī nōbīscum sunt nihil dīcimus?

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam II* 17)

quia (conj. + indic.) because
intersum (**inter-** + **sum**), **interesse**, **interfuī**, —— be between
dissimulō (1-tr.) conceal, pretend
remaneō (**re-** + **maneō**) remain

13. While speaking about fellow citizens who have joined Catiline's conspiracy, Cicero sums up his patriotic feelings.

. . . iam nōn possum oblīvīscī meam hanc esse patriam, mē hōrum esse cōnsulem, mihi aut cum hīs vīvendum aut prō hīs esse moriendum.

(Cicero, *In Catilīnam II* 27)

14. Cicero recounts what a leading man said about Cicero's exile.

. . . L. Cotta dīxit id quod dignissimum rē pūblicā fuit, nihil dē mē āctum esse iūre, nihil mōre maiōrum, nihil lēgibus; . . . (Cicero, *Prō Sestiō* 73)

L. Cotta, L. Cottae *m.* L. (Aurelius) Cotta (consul 65 B.C.E.)

15. Forced to concede that those who are dead cannot be said to be miserable, a character in a philosophical dialogue raises another objection.

quid? quī vīvimus, cum moriendum sit, nōnne miserī sumus? quae enim potest in vītā esse iūcunditās cum diēs et noctēs cōgitandum sit iam iamque† esse moriendum? (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.14)

iūcunditās, iūcunditātis *f.* delight, enjoyment
†**iam iamque**, at any time now

16. After a short interruption, a philosophical speaker returns to his argument.

mors igitur† ipsa, quae vidētur nōtissima rēs esse, quid sit prīmum est videndum. (Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.18)

†**igitur**, *here*, as I was saying

17. In a fictional dialogue with his brother, Cicero derides the *haruspex*, the soothsayer who uses the entrails of sacrificial victims to foretell the future.

quid? dē officiō num quis† haruspicem cōnsulit quem ad modum sit cum parentibus, cum frātribus, cum amīcīs vīvendum, quem ad modum ūtendum pecūniā, quem ad modum honōre, quem ad modum imperiō? ad sapientēs haec, nōn ad dīvīnōs† referrī† solent. (Cicero, *Dē Dīvinātiōne* II.11)

officium, officiī *n.* duty, obligation, function
†**quis**, *here, masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, anyone
haruspex, haruspicis *m.* soothsayer, diviner
cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus consult; ask the advice of (someone) about
parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
honor, honōris *m.* (elective) office
†**dīvīnus, dīvīnī** *m.* soothsayer, prophet
†**referō**, *here*, refer

18. Cicero discusses the competing loyalties affecting many Romans.

ego mehercule et illī† et omnibus mūnicipibus duās esse cēnseō patriās, ūnam nātūrae, alteram cīvitātis: ut ille Catō, quom esset Tusculī nātus, in populī Rōmānī cīvitātem susceptus est, ita, quom ortū Tusculānus esset, cīvitāte Rōmānus, habuit alteram locī patriam, alteram iūris; . . . (Cicero, *Dē Lēgibus* II.5)

†**illī** refers to Cato.
mūniceps, mūnicipis *m.* citizen *or* native of a **mūnicipium** (a self-governing community in Italy)
cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus hold as one's opinion, think
quom = **cum**
Tusculum, Tusculī *n.* Tusculum (a town in Latium)
suscipiō (**sub-** + **capiō**) receive, adopt
ortus, ortūs *m.* origin, birth, ancestry
Tusculānus, -a, -um Tusculan

19. Cicero explains why he attaches such importance to officeholders.

ut enim magistrātibus lēgēs, sīc populō praesunt magistrātūs vērēque dīcī potest magistrātum lēgem esse loquentem, lēgem autem mūtum magistrātum. (CICERO, *DĒ LĒGIBUS* III.2)

magistrātus, magistrātūs *m.* officeholder, magistrate
mūtus, -a, -um mute, incapable of speaking; silent

20. Cicero gives his opinion about the destiny of the Roman people.

populum Rōmānum servīre fās nōn est, quem dī immortālēs omnibus gentibus imperāre voluērunt. (CICERO, *PHILIPPICS VI* 19)

serviō, servīre, serviī/servīvī, servītum be a slave; serve

21. An excerpt from Cicero's translation of Plato's *Timaeus*

deus autem et ortū et virtūte antīquiōrem genuit animum eumque ut dominum atque imperantem oboedientī praefēcit corporī . . . (CICERO, *TIMAEUS* 21)

ortus, ortūs *m.* rising; origin, ancestry
gignō, gignere, genuī, genitus create, beget (of a father)
oboediēns, oboedientis obedient, compliant, subject

22. Cicero explains to his friend Atticus why he is determined to erect a shrine in honor of his recently deceased daughter, Tullia.

sed iam quasi vōtō quōdam et prōmissō mē tenērī putō, longumque illud tempus cum nōn erō magis mē movet quam hoc exiguum, quod mihi tamen nimium longum vidētur. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XII.18.1)

quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer
prōmissum, prōmissī *n.* promise
exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief
nimium (adv.) too much, excessively

23. Cicero describes the effects of receiving his friend Atticus's letters.

tamen adlevor cum loquor tēcum absēns, multō etiam magis cum tuās litterās legō. (CICERO, *AD ATTICUM* XII.39.2)

adlevō (1-tr.) lift up, raise; comfort, console
absēns, absentis not present, absent

24. A disparaging remark of Caesar

oppidum autem Britannī vocant cum silvās impedītās vallō atque fossā mūniērunt . . . (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* V.21)

Britannī, Britannōrum *m. pl.* (the) Britanni
silva, silvae *f. sing. or pl.*, forest
impedītus, -a, -um obstructed
vallum, vallī *n.* rampart, palisades
fossa, fossae *f.* ditch
mūniō, mūnīre, mūniī/mūnīvī, mūnītus fortify

25. Caesar finds a convenient point in his narrative to begin a digression.

quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.11)

perveniō (**per-** + **veniō**) arrive at (+ **ad** + acc.)
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um** belonging to another; alien, strange; out of place
Gallia, **Galliae** *f.* Gaul
Germānia, **Germāniae** *f.* Germany
nātiō, **nātiōnis** *f.* nation
prōpōnō (**prō-** + **pōnō**) put forward; state

26. Roman veterans, cornered and faced with difficult odds, refuse to panic.

itaque inter sē cohortātī duce C. Trebōniō equite Rōmānō, quī iīs erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.40)

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
cohortor (1-tr.) exhort, encourage
C. Trebōnius, **C. Trebōniī** *m.* C. Trebonius
eques, **equitis** *m.* horseman, cavalryman
praepōnō (**prae-** + **pōnō**) put in front (of), put in charge (of)
perrumpō, **perrumpere**, **perrūpī**, **perruptus** burst through
incolumis, **incolume** unharmed, safe
perveniō (**per-** + **veniō**) arrive at; get through (to)

27. Caesar recalls the endurance of his men when faced with starvation.

nūlla tamen ex iīs vōx est audīta populī Rōmānī maiestāte et superiōribus victōriīs indigna. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VII.17)

maiestās, **maiestātis** *f.* dignity, majesty
superior, **superius** upper, higher; earlier, previous
victōria, **victōriae** *f.* victory

28. Caesar explains why a certain Varus may have believed a false report.

. . . nam quae volumus, ea crēdimus libenter, et quae sentīmus ipsī reliquōs sentīre spērāmus . . . (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Cīvīlī* II.27)

libenter (adv.) gladly, willingly
reliquus, **-a**, **-um** remaining, rest (of)

29. Catiline speaks of the strong bond between himself and his fellow conspirators.

idem velle atque idem nōlle, ea dēmum firma amīcitia est. (Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 20)

dēmum (adv.) precisely, only
firmus, **-a**, **-um** strong, durable, steadfast

30. An observation about Cicero's closest friend, T. Pomponius Atticus

honōrēs nōn petiit, cum eī patērent propter vel grātiam vel dignitātem.

(Cornelius Nepos, *Vīta Atticī* 6)

honor, **honōris** *m.* public *or* political office
pateō, **patēre**, **patuī**, —— lie open
vel (adv.) or; **vel . . . vel . . .** either . . . or . . .
dignitās, **dignitātis** *f.* dignity, rank, status

Some Roman proverbs

31. Malus bonum ubi sē simulat tunc est pessimus. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* M9)

simulō (1-tr.) pretend, simulate

32. Male facere quī vult numquam nōn causam invenit.
(Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* M28)

33. Omnēs aequō animō pārent ubi dignī imperant.

(Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* O6)

34. Peccāre paucī nōlunt, nūllī nesciunt. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* P35)

peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake; do wrong

35. Stultum facit Fortūna quem vult perdere. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* S29)

stultus, **-a**, **-um** stupid, foolish
perdō (**per-** + **dō**) lose; destroy

36. The shepherd Tityrus describes the signs of evening's approach.

et iam summa procul vīllārum culmina fūmant
maiōrēsque cadunt altīs dē montibus umbrae. (Vergil, *Eclogues* I.83)

procul (adv.) at a distance
vīlla, **vīllae** *f.* country house, farmhouse
culmen, **culminis** *n.* summit, roof
fūmō, **fūmāre**, **fūmāvī**, —— emit smoke, smoke

37. Charon objects to ferrying Aeneas to the underworld.

corpora vīva nefās Stygiā vectāre carīnā. (Vergil, *Aeneid* VI.391)

vīvus, **-a**, **-um** living
Stygius, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to the river Styx, Stygian
vectō (1-tr.) carry, convey
carīna, **carīnae** *f.* keel; ship

38. Horace describes the influence of Greek culture on the Romans.

Graecia capta ferum victōrem cēpit et artīs
intulit agrestī Latiō . . . (Horace, *Epistulae* II.1.156–57)

ferus, -a, -um wild, uncultivated; fierce, ferocious
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor
agrestis, agreste of *or* living in the fields, rustic; uncivilized
Latium, Latiī *n.* Latium (an area in central Italy)

39. The poet explains his poetic mission.

mē Venus artificem tenerō praefēcit amōrī . . . (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* I.7)

artifex, artificis skilled, artistic
tener, tenera, tenerum tender, soft, delicate, young

40. Juno reflects on her rivalry with Bacchus.

ipse† docet quid agam (fās est ab hoste docērī) . . . (Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* IV.428)

†**ipse** refers to Bacchus.
doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus teach

41. In a mock legal case an advocate explains to the jury the difficulty of a woman torn between the wishes of her father and her husband.

scītis quemadmodum suōs amet: nōn magis sine patre vīvere potest quam sine virō.

(Seneca the Elder, *Contrōversiae* II.2.2)

42. Arguing that doing good can never be harmful and is often profitable, the philosopher offers some pithy advice.

alium rē, alium fidē, alium grātiā, alium cōnsiliō, alium praeceptīs salūbribus adiūvā. (Seneca the Younger, *Dē Beneficiīs* I.2.4)

praeceptum, praeceptī *n.* rule, precept
salūbris, salūbre beneficial, helpful
adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtus help, assist

43. The philosopher gives his opinion about how the performance of good deeds is repaid by good men.

aequissima vōx est et iūs gentium prae sē ferēns: "redde quod dēbēs."

(Seneca the Younger, *Dē Beneficiīs* III.14.3)

prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before; **prae sē ferre**, to exhibit in one's demeanor, display; declare
reddō (**red-** + **dō**) give back, return

44. A quotation from the Greek philosopher Hekaton

sī vīs amārī, amā. (Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Morālēs* IX.6)

45. The philosopher concludes a letter encouraging his friend Lucilius to learn to accept life's unpredicatibility. The first line is a translation from the Greek philosopher Cleanthes.

dūcunt volentem fāta, nōlentem trahunt.

sīc vīvāmus, sīc loquāmur; parātōs nōs inveniat atque inpigrōs fātum. hic est magnus animus quī sē eī trādidit; at contrā ille pusillus et dēgener quī obluctātur et dē ordine mundī male exīstimat et ēmendāre māvult deōs quam sē. valē.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLĒS* CVII.11–12)

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; pull
inpiger, inpigra, inpigrum not slothful; active, energetic
at (conj.) but
pusillus, -a, -um very small, petty, mean
dēgener, dēgeneris lowborn; degenerate, ignoble
obluctor (1-intr.) struggle, resist
ordō, ordinis *m.* order
mundus, mundī *m.* universe, world
exīstimō (1-tr.) reckon, suppose, think
ēmendō (1-tr.) correct, reform

46. A comparison of the workings of reason and anger

ratiō id iūdicāre vult quod aequum est: īra id aequum vidērī vult quod iūdicāvit.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *DIALOGĪ* III.18.1)

ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason
iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine

47. Quintilian assesses the Roman elegists.

elegīā quoque Graecōs prōvocāmus, cuius mihi tersus atque ēlegāns maximē videtur auctor Tibullus. sunt quī Propertium mālint. Ovidius utrōque† lascīvior, sīcut dūrior Gallus. (QUINTILIAN, *ĪNSTITŪTIŌ ŌRĀTŌRIA* X.1.93)

elegīa, elegīae *f.* elegiac poetry, elegy
Graecī, Graecōrum *m.* (the) Greeks
prōvocō (**prō-** + **vocō**) (1-tr.) challenge, rival
tersus, -a, -um polished, refined, neat
ēlegāns, ēlegantis refined, cultivated; graceful; apt (in choosing words)
auctor, auctōris *m.* source; author
Tibullus, Tibullī *m.* (Albius) Tibullus (elegiac poet [55?–19 B.C.E.])
†**utrōque** = *masc. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, each
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
sīcut (conj.) just as
Gallus, Gallī *m.* (C. Cornelius) Gallus (elegiac poet [69?–26 B.C.E.])

48. A piece of Quintilian's wit

. . . quī stultīs vidērī ērudītī volunt stultī ērudītīs videntur.

(QUINTILIAN, *ĪNSTITŪTIŌ ŌRĀTŌRIA* X.7.21)

stultus, -a, -um stupid, foolish
ērudītus, -a, -um learned, accomplished

49. The satirist derides life in Rome.

quid Rōmae faciam? mentīrī nescio;† . . . (Juvenal, *Saturae* III.41)

mentior, **mentīrī**, **mentītus sum** tell a falsehood, lie
†The final **-ō** of **nesciō** here scans *short*.

50. The satirist advocates telling the truth in court.

summum crēde nefās animam praeferre pudōrī . . . (Juvenal, *Saturae* VIII.83)

pudor, **pudōris** *m.* shame, decency, modesty

51. What should men ask from the gods?

ōrandum est ut sit mēns sāna in corpore sānō. (Juvenal, *Saturae* X.356)

sānus, **-a**, **-um** healthy, sane, sound

52. After a catalogue of men's crimes the satirist appends a tart remark.

hūmānī generis mōrēs tibi nōsse volentī
sufficit ūna domus;† . . . (Juvenal, *Saturae* XIII.159–60)

hūmānus, **-a**, **-um** human
nōsse = **nōvisse**
sufficiō (**sub-** + **faciō**) be sufficient, be adequate
†**domus**, *here,* courthouse

53. Religious practices of the Germans

deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt, cui certīs diēbus hūmānīs quoque hostiīs litāre fās habent. Herculem ac Martem concessīs animālibus plācant.

(Tacitus, *Germānia* 9.2)

colō, **colere**, **coluī**, **cultus** cultivate; worship
hūmānus, **-a**, **-um** human
hostia, **hostiae** *f.* (sacrificial) victim
litō (1-tr.) sacrifice
Herculēs, **Herculis** *m.* Hercules
concēdō (**con-** + **cēdō**), **concēdere**, **concessī**, **concessus** grant, yield, give
plācō (1-tr.) appease, propitiate

54. The historian comments on the superstitious responses of Roman soldiers to a strange drought.

quod in pāce fors seu nātūra, tunc fātum et īra deī vocābātur.

(Tacitus, *Historiae* IV.26)

seu (conj.) or if; or

55. Gellius comments on the importance of usage to common speech.

sed nīmīrum cōnsuētūdō vīcit, quae cum omnium domina rērum, tum maximē verbōrum est. (Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* XII.13.16)

nīmīrum (adv.) without doubt, of course
cōnsuētūdō, **cōnsuētūdinis** *f.* custom, usage
domina, **dominae** *f.* mistress, ruler

Longer Readings

1. Naevius, *alia carmina epica* frag. 64.1-4

The epitaph of the early Roman poet Naevius

Inmortālēs mortālēs sī foret fās flēre,
flērent dīvae Camēnae Naevium poētam.
itaque postquam est Orchī trāditus thēsaurō,
oblītī sunt Rōmae loquier linguā Latīnā.

inmortālis = immortālis
foret = esset
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus weep (for)
Camēna, Camēnae *f.* Camena (any one of the Italic divinities connected with springs and waters and identified with the Greek Muses)
Naevius, Naeviī *m.* Naevius
itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
Orchī = Orcī
thēsaurus, thēsaurī *m.* treasure-chamber, vault; storehouse
loquier = loquī
lingua, linguae *f.* tongue; language
Latīnus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Latium (an area in central Italy), Latin

Gnaeus Naevius (270–201 B.C.E.) wrote tragedies, comedies, and an epic poem about the first war with Carthage entitled *Bellum Pūnicum,* approximately eighty lines of which survive. Naevius wrote in the accentual Saturnian rhythm native to Italy rather than in the quantitative dactylic hexameter adapted from Greek models by later Latin epic poets.

2. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 19

Cicero concludes his account of the special position and value of poets.

sit igitur, iūdicēs, sānctum apud vōs, hūmānissimōs hominēs, hoc poētae nōmen, quod nūlla umquam barbaria violāvit. saxa atque sōlitūdinēs vōcī respondent, bestiae saepe immānēs cantū flectuntur atque cōnsistunt; nōs īnstitūtī rēbus optimīs nōn poētārum vōce moveāmur?

iūdex, iūdicis *m.* judge, juror
sānctus, -a, -um inviolate, blameless
hūmānus, -a, -um human; humane, cultured
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
barbaria, barbariae *f.* foreign or barbarian world; barbarity, barbarousness
violō (1-tr.) treat without respect, dishonor, outrage, violate
saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone
sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis *f.* solitude, wasteland, uninhabited country
bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal, creature
immānis, immāne savage, brutal; tremendous, immense
cantus, cantūs *m.* singing, song
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend; soften, influence
cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, —— halt, stop, stand (still)
īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus set up, establish; train, instruct

In 62 B.C.E. Cicero successfully defended with his *Prō Archiā* (On Behalf of Archias) the citizenship of A. Licinius Archias, a Greek poet and teacher who had been granted citizenship many years earlier. Cicero took the opportunity presented by the case to make an impassioned plea on behalf of the importance of poetry and the liberal arts in general.

3. Cicero, *Dē Ōrātōre* II.24

L. Licinius Crassus, a famous orator of his day, speaks to his friend Catulus in defense of relaxation. He recalls an earlier conversation with the orator and lawyer Scaevola.

itaque illud ego, quod in causā Curiānā Scaevolae dīxī, nōn dīxī secus ac sentiēbam: nam "sī," inquam, "Scaevola, nūllum erit testāmentum rēctē factum, nisi quod tū scrīpseris, omnēs ad tē cīvēs cum tabulīs veniēmus, omnium testāmenta tū scrībēs ūnus. quid igitur?" inquam. "quandō agēs negōtium pūblicum? quandō amīcōrum? quandō tuum? quandō dēnique nihil agēs?" tum illud addidī: "mihi enim līber esse nōn vidētur, quī nōn aliquandō nihil agit." in quā permaneō, Catule, sententiā mēque, cum hūc vēnī, hoc ipsum, nihil agere et plānē cessāre, dēlectat.

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
Curiānus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Curius
Scaevola, Scaevolae *m.* (Q. Mucius) Scaevola (consul 117 B.C.E.)
secus (adv.) otherwise, differently; **secus ac**, other(wise) than
testāmentum, testāmentī *n.* will, testament
rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly
tabula, tabulae *f.* (writing) tablet; *pl.*, document, deed, record
quandō (interrog. adv.) when
negōtium, negōtiī *n.* business
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up
addō (ad- + dō) add
aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally
permaneō (per- + maneō) remain; persist (in), remain steady
Catulus, Catulī *m.* (Q. Lutatius) Catulus (consul 102 B.C.E.)
hūc (adv.) to this place, hither
plānē (adv.) plainly, clearly; utterly, absolutely
cessō (1-intr.) stop, desist; do nothing, rest
dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm

4. Cicero, *Prō Scaurō* 4

In order to cast doubt on a foreign witness, Cicero recalls a famously incredible story.

at Graeculī quidem multa fingunt, apud quōs etiam Theombrotum Ambraciōtam ferunt sē ex altissimō praecipitāsse mūrō, nōn quō† acerbitātis accēpisset† aliquid, sed, ut videō scrīptum apud Graecōs, cum summī philosophī Platōnis graviter et ornātē scrīptum librum dē morte lēgisset,† in quō, ut opīnor, Sōcratēs illō ipsō diē quō erat eī moriendum permulta disputat: hanc esse mortem quam nōs vītam putārēmus, quom corpore animus tamquam carcere saeptus tenērētur, vītam autem esse eam, quom īdem animus vinclīs corporis līberātus in eum sē locum unde esset ortus rettulisset.†

at (conj.) but
Graeculī, **Graeculōrum** *m. pl.* (the) (contemptible) Greeks
fingō, **fingere**, **fīnxī**, **fictus** fashion, contrive; imagine
Theombrotus, **Theombrotī** *m.* Theombrotus
Ambraciōtēs, **Ambraciōtae** *m.* a man of Ambracia (a Greek town in Epirus), (an) Ambracian
praecipitō (1-tr.) throw, hurl; **praecipitāsse** = **praecipitāvisse**
†**quō**, *here* (conj. + subjunc.) because
acerbitās, **acerbitātis** *f.* bitterness; grief, sorrow
†**accēpisset**, *sequence determined by* **praecipitāsse**
aliquid = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, something, anything
Graecī, **Graecōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Greeks
philosophus, **philosophī** *m.* philosopher
Plato, **Platōnis** *m.* Plato
ornātē (adv.) elegantly
†**lēgisset**, *sequence determined by* **praecipitāsse**
opīnor (1-tr.) think, suppose
Sōcratēs, **Sōcratis** *m.* Socrates
permultus, **-a**, **-um** very much, very many
disputō (**dis-** + **putō**) examine, investigate; discuss; **disputat**, *historical present tense, used here to add vividness; translate as past*
quom = **cum**
tamquam (conj.) as if
carcer, **carceris** *m.* prison
saepiō, **saepīre**, **saepsī**, **saeptus** fence in, enclose
vinc(u)lum, **vinc(u)lī** *n.* chain
orior, **orīrī**, **ortus sum** rise, arise
†**rettulisset**, *represents perfect indicative in a* **cum-***whenever clause subordinated in indirect statement;* **sē referre**, to return

The *Pro Scaurō* (54 B.C.E.) is a speech delivered by Cicero in defense of Marcus Aemilius Scaurus, who had been charged with extortion while acting as praetor and propraetor in Sardinia. Scaurus was acquitted.

5. Catullus XLV (hendecasyllable)

The poet paints a picture of mutual love.

Acmēn Septimius, suōs amōrēs,
tenēns in gremiō "mea" inquit "Acmē,
nī tē perditē amō atque amāre porrō
omnēs sum assiduē parātus annōs,
quantum quī pote plūrimum perīre,
sōlus in Libyā Indiāque tostā
caesiō veniam obvius leōnī."
hoc ut dīxit, Amor sinistrā ut ante
dextrā sternuit approbātiōnem.
at Acmē leviter caput reflectēns
et dulcis puerī ēbriōs ocellōs
illō purpureō ōre suāviāta,
"sīc," inquit "mea vīta, Septimille,
huic ūnī dominō ūsque serviāmus,
ut multō mihi maior ācriorque
ignis mollibus ardet in medullīs."
hoc ut dīxit, Amor sinistrā ut ante
dextrā sternuit approbātiōnem.

Acmē, **Acmēs** *f.* Acme; **Acmēn** = *acc. sing.*
Septimius, **Septimiī** *m.* Septimius
gremium, **gremiī** *n.* bosom, lap
nī = **nisi**
perditē (adv.) ruinously, recklessly, desperately
porrō (adv.) forward; hereafter; in turn, furthermore
assiduē (adv.) continually, constantly
quantum (adv.) as much as
pote (indeclinable adj.) having the power, able; **quī pote** = **is quī potest**
Libya, **Libyae** *f.* Libya (a province in North Africa)
India, **Indiae** *f.* India, the Far East
torreō, **torrēre**, **torruī**, **tostus** parch, roast, scorch, burn
caesius, **-a**, **-um** (of eyes only) cutting, sharp; cat-eyed, gray-eyed
obvius, **-a**, **-um** in the way, so as to meet, face to face with (+ dat.)
leō, **leōnis** *m.* lion
sinister, **sinistra**, **sinistrum** left; *fem. subst.*, left side
dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum** right; *fem. subst.*, right side
sternuō, **sternuere**, **sternuī**, —— sneeze
approbātiō, **approbātiōnis** *f.* approval
at (conj.) but
caput, **capitis** *n.* head
reflectō, **reflectere**, **reflexī**, **reflexus** bend back
dulcis, **dulce** sweet; pleasant
ēbrius, **-a**, **-um** drunk, intoxicated
ocellus, **ocellī** *m.* (little) eye
purpureus, **-a**, **-um** dark red, crimson, purple
ōs, **ōris** *n.* mouth
suāvior (1-tr.) kiss
Septimillus, **Septimillī** *m.* (little) Septimius
ūsque (adv.) continuously
serviō, **servīre**, **servīī/servīvī**, **servītum** be a slave; serve (+ dat.)
mollis, **molle** gentle, mild, soft
ardeō, **ardēre**, **arsī**, **arsūrus** burn, be on fire (with passion)
medulla, **medullae** *f.* marrow; *pl.*, vitals, innards

nunc ab auspiciō bonō profectī
mūtuīs animīs amant amantur:
ūnam Septimius misellus Acmēn
māvult quam Syriās Britanniāsque;
ūnō in Septimiō fidēlis Acmē
facit dēliciās libīdinēsque.
quis ūllōs hominēs beātiōrēs
vīdit, quis Venerem auspicātiōrem?

auspicium, **auspiciī** *n.* augury, omen, divine sign
mūtuus, **-a**, **-um** shared, reciprocal, mutual
Septimius, **Septimiī** *m.* Septimius
misellus, **-a**, **-um** poor (little), wretched, pitiable
Acmē, **Acmēs** *f.* Acme; **Acmēn** = *acc. sing.*
Syria, **Syriae** *f.* Syria
Britannia, **Britanniae** *f.* Britain
fidēlis, **fidēle** faithful
dēliciae, **dēliciārum** *f. pl.* delight
libīdō, **libīdinis** *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
beātus, **-a**, **-um** happy, blessed, fortunate
auspicātus, **-a**, **-um** favorable, auspicious

6. Catullus LXIX

Why does Rufus repel women?

Nōlī admīrārī quārē tibi fēmina nūlla,
Rūfe, velit tenerum supposuisse femur,
nōn sī illam rārae labefactēs mūnere vestis
aut perlūcidulī dēliciīs lapidis.
laedit tē quaedam mala fābula, quā tibi fertur
valle sub ālārum trux habitāre caper.
hunc metuunt omnēs; neque mīrum: nam mala valdē† est
bestia, nec quīcum bella† puella cubet.
quārē aut crūdēlem nāsōrum interfice pestem
aut admīrārī dēsine cūr fugiunt.

admīror (1-tr.) be astonished (at), wonder (at)
Rūfus, **Rūfī** *m.* Rufus
tener, **tenera**, **tenerum** tender, soft, delicate, young
suppōnō (**sub-** + **pōnō**) put under; join
femur, **femoris** *n.* thigh
rārus, **-a**, **-um** loose-knit; exquisite, rare
labefactō (1-tr.) cause to totter, weaken
vestis, **vestis**, **-ium** *f.* clothing, garment
perlūcidulus, **-a**, **-um** transparent, translucent
dēliciae, **dēliciārum** *f. pl.* delight
lapis, **lapidis** *m.* stone
laedō, **laedere**, **laesī**, **laesus** injure, harm
fābula, **fābulae** *f.* story, tale
vallēs, **vallis**, **-ium** *f.* valley, vale
āla, **ālae** *f.* wing; *here,* armpit
trux, **trucis** wild, rough, fierce, ferocious
habitō (1-intr.) live
caper, **caprī** *m.* billy goat
metuō, **metuere**, **metuī**, —— fear, dread
mīrus, **-a**, **-um** marvelous, astonishing
†**valdē**, *here,* very
bestia, **bestiae** *f.* beast, animal, creature
quīcum = **quācum**
†**bellus**, **-a**, **-m** pretty, charming, lovely
cubō, **cubāre**, **cubuī**, **cubitum** lie down, sleep
crūdēlis, **crūdēle** cruel
nāsus, **nāsī** *m.* nose
pestis, **pestis**, **-ium** *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
dēsinō, **dēsinere**, **dēsiī/dēsīvī**, **dēsitum** stop, cease (+ infin.)

7. Catullus LXXII

The poet explains to Lesbia his conflicting feelings.

Dīcēbās quondam sōlum tē nōsse Catullum,
  Lesbia, nec prae mē velle tenēre Iovem.
dīlēxī tum tē nōn tantum ut vulgus amīcam,
  sed pater ut nātōs dīligit et generōs.
nunc tē cognōvī: quārē etsī impēnsius ūror,
  multō mī tamen es vīlior et levior.
"quī† potis est?" inquis. quod† amantem iniūria tālis
  cōgit amāre magis, sed bene velle minus.

quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly
nōsse = **nōvisse**
prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before
dīligō, **dīligere**, **dīlēxī**, **dīlēctus** value, esteem, love
tantum (adv.) so much
vulgus, **vulgī** *n.* common people, (the) multitude, crowd
amīca, **amīcae** *f.* (female) friend; mistress
gener, **generī** *m.* son-in-law
impēnsus, **-a**, **-um** heavy; costly
ūrō, **ūrere**, **ussī**, **ustus** burn, scorch, inflame
mī = **mihi**
vīlis, **vīle** worthless, cheap
†**quī**, *here* (adv.) how
potis (indeclinable adj.) having the power, able; possible
†**quod**, *here* (conj.) because
iniūria, **iniūriae** *f.* injury, injustice
tālis, **tāle** such, of such a sort
cōgō (**co-** + **agō**), **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctus** drive together; force, compel

8. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.15

Caesar describes the end of a battle against a German tribe.

Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs signīsque mīlitāribus relictīs, sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt,† et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, relicuā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, relicuī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum quadrīngentōrum trīgintā mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt.

Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
tergum, tergī *n.* back
clāmor, clāmōris *m.* shout, shouting
abiciō (**ab-** + **iaciō**) throw away
mīlitāris, mīlitāre military
†**sē ēicere** to rush forth
cōnfluēns, cōnfluentis, -ium *m.* meeting place (of rivers), confluence
Mosa, Mosae *f.* (the) Meuse (a river in northern Gaul)
Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine (a river in north-eastern Gaul)
perveniō (**per-** + **veniō**) arrive at (+ **ad** + acc.)
relicuus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of)
dēspērō (1-tr.) give up as hopeless, despair of
numerus, numerī *m.* number
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream
praecipitō (1-tr.) throw *or* hurl headlong
ibi (adv.) there
lassitūdō, lassitūdinis *f.* weariness, fatigue
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus press down; suppress, overwhelm, crush
incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe
perpaucī, perpaucae, perpauca very few
vulnerō (1-tr.) wound
tantus, -a, -um so great
caput, capitis *n.* head
recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) take back; **sē recipere**, to withdraw

9. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.25

From their ships anchored a short distance away in sufficiently deep water, Caesar's men attempted to come ashore in Britain. Frightened by the Celts on shore and by the deep water, they hesitated.

quod† ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad† ūsum expedītior, paulum† removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad† latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī iussit. quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt. at nostrīs mīlitibus cūnctantibus maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt.

†**quod** refers to the hesitation of Caesar's men.
animadvertō, **animadvertere**, **animadvertī**, **animadversus** turn (one's) attention to, notice
nāvis, **nāvis**, **-ium** *f.* ship; **nāvī** = *abl. sing.*
barbarus, **barbarī** *m.* foreigner
inūsitātus, **-a**, **-um** unusual, extraordinary
†**ad**, *here,* for (the purpose of)
ūsus, **ūsūs** *m.* use; benefit, advantage
expedītus, **-a**, **-um** unimpeded, light-armed, free
†**paulum** (adv.) a little
removeō (**re-** + **moveō**) remove; move back
onerārius, **-a**, **-um** for transport, cargo-
rēmus, **rēmī** *m.* oar
incitō (1-tr.) set in motion
†**ad**, *here,* at, near
latus, **lateris** *n.* side, flank
apertus, **-a**, **-um** open; exposed
cōnstituō, **cōnstituere**, **cōnstituī**, **cōnstitūtus** set up, establish; draw up, station
inde (adv.) from there, thence
funda, **fundae** *f.* sling
sagitta, **sagittae** *f.* arrow
tormentum, **tormentī** *n.* engine of war, missile-shooting machine, catapult
prōpellō (**prō-** + **pellō**), **prōpellere**, **prōpulī**, **prōpulsus** push forward; repel
submoveō (**sub-** + **moveō**) drive off
figūra, **figūrae** *f.* shape
permoveō (**per-** + **moveō**) disturb; frighten
cōnsistō, **cōnsistere**, **cōnstitī**, —— stop, stand still, halt
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot; **pedem referre**, to retreat
at (conj.) but
cūnctor (1-intr.) delay, hesitate
altitūdō, **altitūdinis** *f.* height; depth
aquila, **aquilae** *f.* eagle; standard (of a legion)
obtestor (1-tr.) call to witness; swear by; beseech, implore
ēveniō (**ē-** + **veniō**) come out, turn out
dēsiliō, **dēsilīre**, **dēsiluī**, **dēsultus** jump *or* leap down
commīlitō, **commīlitōnis** *m.* fellow soldier
prōdō (**prō-** + **dō**) hand over
officium, **officiī** *n.* obligation; duty
praestō, **praestāre**, **praestitī**, **praestātūrus** perform, carry out
prōiciō (**prō-** + **iaciō**) hurl forward *or* forth
——, ——, **coepī**, **coeptus** (defective verb) began, have begun
cohortor (**co-** + **hortor**) exhort, encourage; speak encouragingly
tantus, **-a**, **-um** so much, so great
dēdecus, **dēdecoris** *n.* disgrace, dishonor
admittō (**ad-** + **mittō**) allow, permit
ūniversus, **-a**, **-um** all together

10. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* V.8

After making various preliminary arrangements (**hīs rēbus**), Caesar prepared to cross over from Gaul to Britain, but all did not go as planned.

hīs rēbus gestīs, Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō ut portūs tuērētur et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret quaeque in Galliā gererentur cognōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relinquēbat, sōlis occāsū nāvēs solvit et lēnī Africō prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam cōnspexit. tum rursus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit ut eam partem īnsulae caperet quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cognōverat. quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus.

Labiēnus, Labiēnī, *m.* (Titus) Labienus (one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul)
continēns, continentis, -ium *n.* mainland; **continentī** = *abl. sing.*
eques, equitis *m.* horseman, cavalryman
portus, portūs *m.* port, harbor
tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum defend, protect
frūmentarius, -a, -um of *or* concerned with corn *or* grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, corn *or* grain supply
prōvideō (prō- + videō) provide for, see to
Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
pār, paris equal
numerus, numerī *m.* number
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun
occāsus, occāsūs *m.* setting
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen, release; **nāvem solvere**, to set sail
lēnis, lēne gentle, light
Africus, Africī *m.* Africus (southwest wind)
prōveho, prōvehere, prōvexī, prōvectus carry forward, convey
circiter (adv.) about
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
intermittō (inter- + mittō) interrupt; **ventō intermissō**, with the wind having died down
cursus, cursūs *m.* course; progress, speed
dēferō (dē- + ferō) bring down
aestus, aestūs *m.* tide; current
orior, orīrī, ortus sum rise
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum left; **sub sinistrā**, on the left-hand side, to his left
Britannia, Britanniae *f.* Britain
cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexī, cōnspectus catch sight of, see
rursus (adv.) again
commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis *f.* changing, change
rēmus, rēmī *m.* oar
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentus strive, direct one's course
ēgressus, ēgressūs *m.* disembarking, landing
superior, superius earlier
aestās, aestātis *f.* summer
admodum (adv.) to a great degree, much
vectōrius, -a, -um of *or* for carrying
nāvigium, nāvigiī *n.* vessel, ship; **vectōrium nāvigium**, transport ship
rēmigō (1-intr.) row; **rēmigandī**, *neut. sing. gen. of verbal noun*, of rowing
adaequō (1-tr.) make equal; reach; **adaequārunt** = **adaequāvērunt**
merīdiānus, -a, -um of midday, noon-
ferē (adv.) nearly

11. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 110

Bocchus, the king of Mauretania (in northern Africa) and the former ally of Jugurtha in his war against the Romans, speaks to Sulla, a lieutenant of the Roman general Marius. Bocchus informs Sulla about his own future plans.

cēterum dē rē pūblicā vostrā, quoius cūrātor hūc missus es, paucīs† accipe. bellum ego populō Rōmānō neque fēcī neque factum umquam voluī; at fīnīs meōs advorsum armātōs armīs tūtātus sum. id omittō, quandō vōbīs ita placet. gerite quod voltis cum Iugurthā bellum.

cēterum (adv.) moreover; however that may be, but
vostrā = **vestrā**
quoius = **cuius**
cūrātor, **cūrātōris** *m.* curator; guardian
hūc (adv.) to this place, hither
†**paucīs**, *supply* **verbīs**
at (conj.) but
advorsum (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against, in the face of
armātus, **armātī** *m.* armed man, soldier
tūtor (1-tr.) protect, guard
omittō (**ob-** + **mittō**) disregard, pass over; discontinue, leave off
quandō (conj.) since, as
Iugurtha, **Iugurthae** *m.* Jugurtha (a Numidian king)

12. Vergil, *Eclogues* IX.32–36

A young shepherd makes a modest boast.

. . . et mē fēcēre poētam
Pīerides, sunt et mihi carmina, mē quoque dīcunt†
vātem pāstōrēs; sed nōn ego crēdulus illīs.
nam neque adhūc Variō videor nec dīcere Cinnā
digna, sed argūtōs inter strepere ānser olōrēs.

Pīeris, **Pīeridos** *f.* daughter of Pierus, Muse; **Pīerides** = *nom. pl.*
†**dīcō**, *here*, call
vātēs, **vātis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* prophet; bard, poet
pāstor, **pāstōris** *m.* herdsman, shepherd
crēdulus, **-a**, **-um** trusting (in) (+ dat.)
adhūc (adv.) up to the present time
Varius, **Variī** *m.* (L.) Varius (Rufus) (poet and friend of Horace and Vergil)
Cinna, **Cinnae** *m.* (Helvius) Cinna (poet and friend of Catullus)
argūtus, **-a**, **-um** sharp; clear-voiced; melodious, tuneful
strepō, **strepere**, **strepuī**, **strepitum** make a loud noise, screech
ānser, **ānseris** *m.* goose
olor, **olōris** *m.* swan

13. Vergil, *Aeneid* VI.847–53

In the underworld Aeneas learns of the Roman mission from the soul of his father, Anchises.

excūdent aliī spīrantia mollius aera
(crēdō equidem), vīvōs dūcent† dē marmore vultūs,
ōrābunt† causās melius, caelīque meātūs
dēscrībent radiō et surgentia sīdera dīcent:† 850
tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō
(hae tibi erunt artēs), pācīque impōnere mōrem,
parcere subiectīs et dēbellāre superbōs.

excūdō, **excūdere**, **excūdī**, **excūsus** hammer out, forge, fashion
spīrō (1-intr.) breathe; live
mollis, **molle** gentle, mild, soft
aes, **aeris** *n.* copper, bronze
vīvus, **-a**, **-um** living
†**dūcō**, *here,* produce, form
marmor, **marmoris** *n.* marble
vultus, **vultūs** *m.* expression, countenance; face
†**ōrō**, *here,* plead
meātus, **meātūs** *m.* movement, progress
dēscrībō (**dē-** + **scrībō**) draw, mark out
radius, **radiī** *m.* ray; rod; compass
surgō, **surgere**, **surrexī**, **surrēctus** rise
sīdus, **sīderis** *n.* star
†**dīcō**, *here,* name
impōnō (**in-** + **pōnō**) place on, impose on
parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī**, **parsūrus** be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)
subiectus, **-a**, **-um** subordinate, subject
dēbellō (1-tr.) fight (someone, acc.) to the finish, subdue
superbus, **-a**, **-um** proud; haughty

14. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.657–71

As Aeneas and the Trojans make a strong attack, a comrade of Turnus describes the perilous situation.

". . . mussat rēx ipse Latīnus
quōs generōs vocet aut quae sēsē ad foedera flectat.
praetereā rēgīna, tuī fīdissima, dextrā
occidit ipsa suā lūcemque exterrita fūgit.
sōlī prō portīs Messāpus et ācer Atīnās
sustentant aciēs. circum hōs utrimque phalangēs
stant dēnsae strictīsque seges mucrōnibus horret
ferrea; tū currum dēsertō in grāmine versās."

mussō (1-intr.) mutter (in uncertainty)
Latīnus, **Latīnī** *m.* Latinus (king of Latium)
gener, **generī** *m.* son-in-law
foedus, **foederis** *n.* agreement, treaty, pact
flectō, **flectere**, **flexī**, **flexus** bend
praetereā (adv.) besides, furthermore, in addition
fīdus, **-a**, **-um** faithful, loyal, devoted; trusting
dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum** right; *fem. subst.*, right hand
occidō (**ob-** + **cadō**), **occidere**, **occidī**, **occāsūrus** fall; perish, die
exterreō (**ex-** + **terreō**) terrify
porta, **portae** *f.* gate
Messāpus, **Messāpī** *m.* Messapus (an Italian leader and ally of Latinus and Turnus)
Atīnās (nom. sing. only) Atinas (an Italian warrior)
sustentō (1-tr.) support, uphold, sustain
circum (prep. + acc.) around
utrimque (adv.) on both sides
phalanx, **phalangis** *f.* phalanx (a close formation of troops)
dēnsus, **-a**, **-um** thick, dense; crowded together
stringō, **stringere**, **strīnxī**, **strictus** bare, unsheathe
seges, **segetis** *f.* field *or* crop (of standing corn)
mucrō, **mucrōnis** *m.* point (of a sword); sword
horreō, **horrēre**, **horruī**, —— stand up, bristle; tremble, shudder
ferreus, **-a**, **-um** made of iron
currus, **currūs** *m.* chariot
dēserō, **dēserere**, **dēseruī**, **dēsertus** forsake, abandon, desert
grāmen, **grāminis** *n.* grass; pasture
versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning around

obstipuit variā cōnfūsus imāgine rērum
Turnus et obtūtū tacitō stetit; aestuat ingēns
ūnō in corde pudor mixtōque īnsānia lūctū
et furiīs agitātus amor et cōnscia virtūs.
ut prīmum† discussae umbrae et lūx reddita mentī,
ardentīs oculōrum orbīs ad moenia torsit
turbidus ēque rotīs magnam respexit ad urbem.

obstipēscō, obstipēscere, obstipuī, —— be dumbstruck, be stunned, be dazed
varius, -a, -um varied; changeable; conflicting
cōnfundō, cōnfundere, cōnfūdī, cōnfūsus pour together; confuse, trouble
imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness; appearance
Turnus, Turnī *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)
obtūtus, obtūtūs *m.* gaze, stare
tacitus, -a, -um silent
aestuō (1-intr.) burn, blaze, seethe
cor, cordis *n.* heart
pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty
misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up, produce
īnsānia, īnsāniae *f.* madness, insanity
lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning
furiae, furiārum *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass
cōnscius, -a, -um conscious, aware
†**ut prīmum**, as soon as
discutiō, discutere, discussī, discussus shatter; scatter, disperse, break up
reddō (red- + dō) give back, return; restore
ardeō, ardēre, arsī, arsūrus burn, be on fire
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle, orb
torqueō, torquēre, torsī, tortus twist, turn
turbidus, -a, -um agitated, wild, frantic
rota, rotae *f.* wheel; *pl.*, chariot
respiciō, respicere, respexī, respectus look back (at)

15. Horace, *Carmina* I.11 (Asclepiadean)

Leuconoë longs to know the future.

Tū nē quaesieris, scīre nefās, quem mihi, quem tibi
fīnem dī dederint, Leuconoē, nec Babylōniōs
temptāris numerōs. ut† melius quidquid erit patī.
seu plūrīs hiemēs seu tribuit Iuppiter ultimam,
quae nunc oppositīs dēbilitat pūmicibus mare
Tyrrhēnum: sapiās, vīna liquēs, et spatiō brevī
spem longam resecēs. dum loquimur, fūgerit invida
aetās: carpe diem quam minimum† crēdula posterō.

Leuconoē, **Leuconoēs** *f.* Leuconoë
Babylōnius, **-a**, **-um** of Babylonia, Babylonian
temptō (1-tr.) test, try; **temptāris** = **temptāveris**
numerus, **numerī** *m.* number; numerical symbol
†**ut**, *here* (adv.) how
quidquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. pron.*, whatever
seu (conj.) or if; **seu . . . seu . . .**, whether . . . or if . . .
hiem(p)s, **hiemis** *f.* winter; storm
tribuō, **tribuere**, **tribuī**, **tribūtus** grant, bestow, assign
ultimus, **-a**, **-um** farthest, most remote; last, final
oppōnō (**ob-** + **pōnō**) place in the way, expose
dēbilitō (1-tr.) weaken
pūmex, **pūmicis** *f.* pumice stone, volcanic rock
Tyrrhēnus, **-a**, **-um** Tyrrhenian, Tuscan, Etruscan; **mare Tyrrhēnum**, Tyrrhenian Sea (the sea along the west coast of Italy)
sapiō, **sapere**, **sapiī/sapīvī**, —— be intelligent, show good sense
vīnum, **vīnī** *n.* wine
liquō (1-tr.) make liquid; strain, purify
spatium, **spatiī** *n.* course, track; space, (interval of) time
resecō, **resecāre**, ——, **resectum** cut short, restrain, cut back
dum (conj.) while
invidus, **-a**, **-um** bearing ill-will, envious
aetās, **aetātis** *f.* age, time
carpō, **carpere**, **carpsī**, **carptus** pluck, gather; seize; criticize, carp at
†**minimum** = **minimē**
crēdulus, **-a**, **-um** trusting (in) (+ dat.)
posterus, **-a**, **-um** next, following

16. Horace, *Carmina* IV.7 (Archilochean)

Spring brings thoughts of death for mortals.

Diffūgēre nivēs, redeunt iam grāmina campīs
arboribusque comae;
mūtat terra vicēs, et dēcrēscentia rīpās
flūmina praetereunt.
Grātia† cum nymphīs geminīsque sorōribus audet
dūcere nūda chorōs.
inmortālia nē spērēs, monet annus et almum
quae rapit hōra diem.
frīgora mītēscunt Zephyrīs, vēr prōterit aestās,
interitūra simul
pōmifer autumnus frūgēs effūderit, et mox
brūma recurrit iners.
damna tamen celerēs reparant caelestia lūnae:
nōs ubi dēcidimus
quō pater Aenēās, quō dīves Tullus et Ancus,
pulvis et umbra sumus.

diffugiō (**dis-** + **fugiō**) scatter
nix, **nivis** *f.* snow
grāmen, **grāminis** *n.* grass; pasture
arbor, **arboris** *f.* tree
coma, **comae** *f. sing. or pl.*, hair
mūtō (1-tr.) change
——, **vicis** *f.* turning, turn; succession, alternation
dēcrēscō, **dēcrēscere**, **dēcrēvī**, **dēcrētus** diminish, decrease
rīpa, **rīpae** *f.* (river) bank
flūmen, **flūminis** *n.* river, stream
praetereō (**praeter-** + **eō**), **praeterīre**, **praeteriī**/**praeterīvī**, **praeteritus** go by, pass by; pass over
†**Grātia**, *here,* a Grace (goddess of charm and beauty, attendant of Venus)
nympha, **nymphae** *f.* nymph (a semidivine spirit)
geminus, **-a**, **-um** twin-born, twin
nūdus, **-a**, **-um** naked, nude
chorus, **chorī** *m.* dance; chorus, troop of dancers
inmortālis = **immortālis**
almus, **-a**, **-um** nourishing; gracious, kindly
rapiō, **rapere**, **rapuī**, **raptus** tear away, carry off; consume
hōra, **hōrae** *f.* hour
frīgus, **frīgoris** *n.* cold; *pl.*, cold weather
mītēscō, **mītēscere**, ——, —— grow mild, become gentle
Zephyrus, **Zephyrī** *m.* Zephyr (the west wind)
vēr, **vēris** *n.* spring
prōterō, **prōterere**, **prōtrīvī**, **prōtrītus** tread under foot, tramp down
aestās, **aestātis** *f.* summer
intereō (**inter-** + **eō**), **interīre**, **interiī**, **interitūrus** perish, be destroyed, disappear
simul (conj.) at the same time as, as soon as
pōmifer, **pōmifera**, **pōmiferum** fruit-bearing
autumnus, **autumnī** *m.* autumn, fall
frūx, **frūgis** *f.* fruit
effundō, **effundere**, **effūdī**, **effūsus** pour out; send forth
brūma, **brūmae** *f.* winter
recurrō, **recurrere**, **recurrī**, **recursum** run *or* hurry back
iners, **inertis** inactive, idle, inert; motionless
damnum, **damnī** *n.* loss; waning
celer, **celeris**, **celere** swift, fast
reparō (1-tr.) recover, restore, repair
caelestis, **caeleste** heavenly, celestial
lūna, **lūnae** *f.* moon
dēcidō (**dē-** + **cadō**), **dēcidere**, **dēcidī**, —— fall down
dīves, **dīvitis** rich, wealthy
Tullus, **Tullī** *m.* Tullus (Hostilius) (third of the legendary kings of Rome)
Ancus, **Ancī** *m.* Ancus (Martius) (fourth of the legendary kings of Rome)
pulvis, **pulveris** *m.* dust

quis scit an adiciant hodiernae crāstina summae†
tempora dī superī?
cūncta manūs avidās fugient hērēdis, amīcō†
quae dederīs† animō.
cum semel occiderīs et dē tē splendida Mīnōs
fēcerit arbitria,
nōn, Torquāte, genus, nōn tē fācundia, nōn tē
restituet pietās.
īnfernīs neque enim tenebrīs Dīāna† pudīcum
līberat Hippolytum
nec Lēthaea valet Thēseus abrumpere cārō
vincula Pīrithoō.

adiciō (**ad-** + **iaciō**) add to; **adiciant** scans as **adiiciant* with the first **-i-** being consonantal.
hodiernus, **-a**, **-um** of today
crāstinus, **-a**, **-um** of tomorrow
†**summa**, **summae** *f.* sum, whole, total
superus, **-a**, **-um** upper; **dī superī**, gods above
cūnctus, **-a**, **-um** all
avidus, **-a**, **-um** desirous, eager, greedy
hērēs, **hērēdis** *m.* or *f.* heir; heiress
†**amīcus**, *here,* (your) own
†The **-i-** of **dederis** here scans *long.*
semel (adv.) once; once and for all
occidō (**ob-** + **cadō**), **occidere**, **occidī**, **occāsūrus** fall, perish, die; the **-i-** of **occideris** here scans *long.*
splendidus, **-a**, **-um** brilliant, glittering; magnificent
Mīnōs, **Mīnōis** *m.* Minos (judge in the underworld)
arbitrium, **arbitriī** *n.* judgment
Torquātus, **Torquātī** *m.* Torquatus
fācundia, **fācundiae** *f.* eloquence
restituō, **restituere**, **restituī**, **restitūtus** set up again, restore, revive
pietās, **pietātis** *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety
īnfernus, **-a**, **-um** lower, infernal
tenebrae, **tenebrārum** *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
†The **-i-** of **Diāna** here scans *long.*
pudīcus, **-a**, **-um** chaste, pure, honorable
Hippolytus, **Hippolytī** *m.* Hippolytus (son of Theseus)
Lēthaeus, **-a**, **-um** of Lethe (the river of forgetfulness in the underworld)
Thēseus, **Thēseī** *m.* Theseus (hero from Athenian myth and close friend of Pirithoüs)
abrumpō, **abrumpere**, **abrūpī**, **abruptus** break off, sever
vinculum, **vinculī** *n.* bond, chain
Pīrithoüs, **Pīrithoī** *m.* Pirithoüs (friend of Theseus)

17. Horace, *Ars Poētica* 361–65

The poet compares poetry to painting.

ut pictūra poēsis: erit quae, sī propius stēs,
tē capiat magis, et quaedam, sī longius abstēs;
haec amat obscūrum, volet haec sub lūce vidērī,
iūdicis argūtum quae nōn formīdat acūmen;
haec placuit semel, haec deciēns repetīta placēbit. 365

pictūra, **pictūrae** *f.* picture, painting
poēsis, **poēsis** *f.* poetry; poem
propius (comparative adv.) nearer, more closely
abstō (**ab-** + **stō**), **abstāre**, ——, —— stand away, stand at a distance
obscūrus, **-a**, **-um** dark, dim, obscure
iūdex, **iūdicis** *m.* juror, judge
argūtus, **-a**, **-um** sharp; shrewd, clever
formīdō (1-tr.) fear, dread
acūmen, **acūminis** *n.* sharpness; mental acuteness, judgment
semel (adv.) once, one time
deciē(n)s (adv.) ten times
repetō (**re-** + **petō**) seek again; return to

18. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* V.190–94

Just as the hero Perseus resolves to use the Gorgon's head to rout his enemies, one of them, Nileus—who falsely claims to be descended from the river Nile—begins to taunt Perseus.

"adspice," ait, "Perseu, nostrae prīmordia gentis: 190
magna ferēs tacitās sōlācia mortis ad umbrās,
ā tantō cecidisse† virō"; pars ultima vōcis
in mediō suppressa sonō est, adapertaque velle
ōra loquī crēdās, nec sunt ea pervia verbīs.

adspiciō, **adspicere**, **adspexī**, **adspectus** look toward, look at; behold
aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
Perseus, **Perseī** *m.* Perseus (son of Zeus and Danaë, who killed the Gorgon and rescued Andromeda); **Perseu** = *voc. sing.*
prīmordia, ***prīmordiōrum** *n. pl.* beginnings, origin; source
tacitus, **-a**, **-um** silent
sōlācium, **sōlāciī** *n.* comfort, solace, relief
tantus, **-a**, **-um** so great
†**cecidisse**, *supply* **tē** *as Subject Accusative*
ultimus, **-a**, **-um** farthest, most remote; last, final
supprimō, **supprimere**, **suppressī**, **suppressus** press down, crush; check, block
sonus, **sonī** *m.* sound, noise; utterance
adaperiō, **adaperīre**, **adaperīvī**, **adapertus** open wide
ōs, **ōris** *n. sing. or pl.*, mouth
pervius, **-a**, **-um** that makes a passage for, passable

19. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.50.6

After the disastrous battle of Cannae, the remaining Roman soldiers were divided into two camps. In the smaller camp, the tribune urges his men to action.

P. Semprōnius Tuditānus tribūnus mīlitum "capī ergō māvoltis," inquit, "ab avārissimō et crūdēlissimō hoste aestimārīque capita vestra et exquīrī pretia ab interrogantibus Rōmānus cīvis sīs an Latīnus socius, ut ex tuā contumēliā et miseriā alterī honōs quaerātur? nōn tū† sī quidem L. Aemilī cōnsulis, quī sē bene morī quam turpiter vīvere māluit, et tot fortissimōrum virōrum quī circā eum cumulātī iacent cīvēs estis. sed antequam opprimit lūx maiōraque hostium agmina obsaepiunt iter, per hōs, quī inordinātī atque incompositī obstrepunt portīs, ērumpāmus. ferrō atque audāciā via fit quamvīs per cōnfertōs hostēs . . ."

P. Semprōnius Tuditānus, **P. Semprōniī Tuditānī** *m.* P. Sempronius Tuditanus (consul 204 B.C.E., a military tribune at the battle of Cannae)
tribūnus, **tribūnī** *m.* tribune, military commander
ergō (adv.) therefore
avārus, **-a**, **-um** greedy, rapacious
crūdēlis, **crūdēle** cruel
aestimō (1-tr.) price, value, assess
caput, **capitis** *n.* head
exquīrō (**ex-** + **quaerō**), **exquīrere**, **exquīsīvī**, **exquīsītus** ask (about), inquire
pretium, **pretiī** *n.* price
interrogō (1-tr.) ask, examine, interrogate
Latīnus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to Latium (an area in central Italy); Latin
contumēlia, **contumēliae** *f.* abuse
miseria, **miseriae** *f.* misery
honōs, **honōris** *m.* office; honor, respect
†**nōn tū**, *supply* **capī mālēs**; **tū** refers to each individual soldier in the group being addressed.
L. Aemilius, **L. Aemiliī** *m.* L. Aemilius (Paulus) (consul 216 B.C.E., one of the Roman leaders at the battle of Cannae)
turpiter (adv.) foully; basely, shamefully
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many
circā (prep. + acc.) around, near
cumulō (1-tr.) pile up, heap up
iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —— lie, rest; lie dead
antequam (conj.) before
opprimō, **opprimere**, **oppressī**, **oppressus** press down; suppress, overwhelm
agmen, **agminis** *n.* line (of march); throng
obsaepiō, **obsaepīre**, **obsaepsī**, **obsaeptus** block, obstruct, shut off
iter, **itineris** *n.* passage; road, route
inordinātus, **-a**, **-um** not regularly arranged, disordered
incompositus, **-a**, **-um** not in proper formation, disorganized
obstrepō, **obstrepere**, **obstrepuī**, **obstrepitum** make a loud noise in front of (+ dat.)
porta, **portae** *f.* gate
ērumpō, **ērumpere**, **ērūpī**, **ēruptus** break out, burst forth
fīō, **fierī**, **factus sum**, be made; **fit** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
quamvīs (adv.) even though
cōnfertus, **-a**, **-um** crowded, dense, packed close together

20. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* XCI.17

The philosopher recalls a moment in Alexander the Great's education.

Alexander Macedonum rēx discere geōmetriam coeperat, īnfēlīx, scītūrus quam† pusilla terra esset ex quā minimum occupāverat. ita dīcō: īnfēlīx ob hoc, quod† intellegere dēbēbat falsum sē gerere cognōmen. quis enim esse magnus in pusillō potest? erant illa quae trādēbantur† subtīlia et dīligentī intentiōne discenda, nōn quae perciperet vēsānus homō et trāns Ōceanum cōgitātiōnēs suās mittēns. "Facilia," inquit, "mē docē." cui praeceptor "ista," inquit, "omnibus eadem sunt, aequē difficilia."

Alexander, **Alexandrī** *m.* Alexander
Macedones, **Macedonum** *m. pl.* (the) Macedonians
discō, **discere**, **didicī**, —— learn
geōmetria, **geōmetriae** *f.* geometry
——, ——, **coepī**, **coeptus** (defective verb) began
†**quam**, *here* (interrog. adv.) how
pusillus, **-a**, **-um** very small, petty, insignificant
occupō (1-tr.) take possession of, seize
†**quod** (conj.) because
cognōmen, **cognōminis** *n.* cognomen
†**trādō**, *here*, propound, teach
subtīlis, **subtīle** fine, subtle
dīligēns, **dīligentis** diligent
intentiō, **intentiōnis** *f.* exertion, effort; attention
percipiō (**per-** + **capiō**) perceive; understand
vēsānus, **-a**, **-um** insane; impetuous
trāns (prep. + acc.) across
Ōceanus, **Ōceanī** *m.* ocean
cōgitātiō, **cōgitātiōnis** *f.* reflection, thought
doceō, **docēre**, **docuī**, **doctus** teach
praeceptor, **praeceptōris** *m.* teacher

Seneca's *Epistulae Mōrālēs* (*Letters Concerned with Ethics*) is a collection of 124 letters in which he attempts to answer questions concerning moral conduct and moral improvement. Written in a plain style, the *Epistulae* often end with pointed, epigrammatic **sententiae**.

21. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* CVII.8

The philosopher muses on man's response to the ever-changing nature of things.

hanc rērum condiciōnem mūtāre nōn possumus; illud possumus, magnum sūmere animum et virō bonō dignum, quō fortiter fortuīta patiāmur et nātūrae cōnsentiāmus. nātūra autem hoc quod vidēs rēgnum mūtātiōnibus temperat; turbantur maria cum quiēvērunt; flant in vicem ventī; noctem diēs sequitur; pars caelī cōnsurgit, pars mergitur. contrāriīs rērum aeternitās cōnstat.

condiciō, **condiciōnis** *f.* contract, agreement; condition
mūtō (1-tr.) change
sūmō, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus** take up, seize; take on, assume
fortuītus, **-a**, **-um** determined by chance, accidental, fortuitous
cōnsentiō (**con-** + **sentiō**) be in harmony (with); assent (to)
rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* kingdom, realm
mūtātiō, **mūtātiōnis** *f.* change, alteration
temperō (1-tr.) restrain; moderate, temper
turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into confusion
quiēscō, **quiēscere**, **quiēvī**, —— fall asleep; be at rest; subside
flō (1-intr.) blow
——, **vicis** *f.* turn; succession; **in vicem**, in turn; against one another
ventus, **ventī** *m.* wind
cōnsurgō, **cōnsurgere**, **cōnsurrēxī**, **cōnsurrēctus** stand up, rise
mergō, **mergere**, **mersī**, **mersus** plunge, dip; *pass.*, sink (below the horizon), go down
contrārius, **-a**, **-um** opposite, contrary
aeternitās, **aeternitātis** *f.* eternity
cōnstō, **cōnstāre**, **cōnstitī**, **cōnstātūrus** stand still; be composed (of); depend (upon), consist (in) (+ abl.)

22. Seneca the Younger, *Agamemnōn* 466–76

Eurybates describes the beginning of a storm that overwhelms the Greek fleet as it returns from Troy.

nox prīma caelum sparserat stellīs, iacent
dēserta ventō vēla. tum murmur grave,
maiōra minitāns, collibus summīs cadit
tractūque longō lītus ac petrae gemunt;
agitāta ventīs unda ventūrīs tumet
cum subitō lūna conditur, stellae latent;
nec ūna nox est: dēnsa tenebrās obruit
calīgō et omnī lūce subductā fretum
caelumque miscet. undique incumbunt simul
rapiuntque pelagus īnfimō ēversum solō
adversus Eurō Zephyrus et Boreae Notus.

spargō, **spargere**, **sparsī**, **sparsus** scatter, sprinkle
stella, **stellae** *f.* star
iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —— lie, rest, lie still
dēserō, **dēserere**, **dēseruī**, **dēsertus** forsake, abandon, desert
ventus, **ventī** *m.* wind
murmur, **murmuris** *n.* rumble, roar
minitor (1-tr.) threaten
collis, **collis**, **-ium** *m.* hill
tractus, **tractūs** *m.* dragging; trail; extent, expanse
lītus, **lītoris** *n.* shore, beach
petra, **petrae** *f.* rock, boulder
gemō, **gemere**, **gemuī**, **gemitum** groan, moan
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass
unda, **undae** *f.* wave, water
tumeō, **tumēre**, **tumuī**, —— swell
subitō (adv.) suddenly
lūna, **lūnae** *f.* moon
condō, **condere**, **condidī**, **conditus** found, build; conceal; bury
lateō, **latēre**, **latuī**, —— (intr.) hide, lie hidden, be concealed
dēnsus, **-a**, **-um** thick, dense
tenebrae, **tenebrārum** *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
obruō, **obruere**, **obruī**, **obrutus** cover up, overwhelm
calīgō, **calīginis** *f.* dimness; fog, mist; darkness
subdūcō (**sub-** + **dūcō**) lead up (from below); remove, take away
fretum, **fretī** *n.* strait; sea, (the) deep
misceō, **miscēre**, **miscuī**, **mixtus** mix, stir up
undique (adv.) from all sides, on all sides
incumbō, **incumbere**, **incubuī**, —— fall (on), throw oneself (on), bear down (on)
simul (adv.) at the same time; together
rapiō, **rapere**, **rapuī**, **raptus** tear away, carry off; consume
pelagus, **pelagī** *n.* (deep) sea
īnfimus, **-a**, **-um** lowest, bottom (of), depths (of)
ēvertō, **ēvertere**, **ēvertī**, **ēversus** turn upside down, churn up
solum, **solī** *n.* soil; base, foundation
adversus, **-a**, **-um** turned toward; opposite, hostile, adverse (+ dat.)
Eurus, **Eurī** *m.* Eurus (the east wind)
Zephyrus, **Zephyrī** *m.* Zephyrus (the west wind)
Boreās, **Boreae** *m.* Boreas (the north wind)
Notus, **Notī** *m.* Notus (the south wind)

23. Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* VII.26.6

The philosopher imagines what the wise man would say to the mass of humanity, who do not know what is important.

sīc vestrās hālūcinātiōnēs ferō quemadmodum Iuppiter optimus maximus ineptiās poētārum, quōrum alius illī ālās inposuit, alius cornua, alius adulterum illum indūxit et abnoctantem, alius saevum in deōs, alius inīquum in hominēs, alius raptōrem ingenuōrum et cognātōrum quidem, alius parricīdam et rēgnī aliēnī paternīque expugnātōrem: . . .

hālūcinātiō, **hālūcinātiōnis** *f.* hallucination
ineptiae, **ineptiārum** *f. pl.* trifles, absurdities
āla, **ālae** *f.* wing
inpōnō (**in-** + **pōnō**) put upon
cornu, **cornūs** *n.* horn; **cornua** = *acc. pl.*
adulter, **adulterī** *m.* adulterer
indūcō (**in-** + **dūcō**) lead in; represent
abnoctō (1-intr.) stay out all night
saevus, **-a**, **-um** cruel, savage
raptor, **raptōris** *m.* abductor
ingenuus, **-a**, **-um** free-born; noble
cognātus, **-a**, **-um** kindred
parricīda, **parricīdae** *m.* parricide
rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* kingdom, realm
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um** belonging to another
paternus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to a father
expugnātor, **expugnātōris** *m.* taker, conqueror

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 12–13

nunc iam† apertē rem pūblicam ūniversam petis, templa deōrum immortālium, tēcta urbis, vītam omnium cīvium, Italiam tōtam ad exitium et vāstitātem vocās. quā rē, quoniam id quod est prīmum, et quod huius imperī disciplīnaeque maiōrum proprium est, facere nōndum audeō, faciam id quod est ad† sevēritātem lēnius, ad† commūnem salūtem ūtilius. nam sī tē interficī iusserō, residēbit in rē pūblicā reliqua coniūrātōrum manus; sīn tū, quod tē iam dūdum hortor, exieris, exhauriētur ex urbe tuōrum comitum magna et perniciōsa sentīna reī pūblicae. quid est, Catilīna? num dubitās id mē imperante facere quod iam tuā sponte faciēbās? exīre ex urbe iubet cōnsul hostem. interrogās mē num in exsilium? nōn iubeō, sed sī mē cōnsulis, suādeō.

†**nunc iam**, now at last
apertē (adv.) openly
ūniversus, **-a**, **-um** all together, entire, whole
tēctum, **tēctī** *n.* roof; house
exitium, **exitiī** *n.* destruction, ruin
vāstitās, **vāstitātis** *f.* devastation
disciplīna, **disciplīnae** *f.* training
proprius, **-a**, **-um** one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (of) (+ gen.)
nōndum (adv.) not yet
†**ad**, *here,* with regard to, with a view to
sevēritās, **sevēritātis** *f.* gravity, seriousness, severity
lēnis, **lēne** mild, gentle
commūnis, **commūne** common
ūtilis, **ūtile** useful
resideō, **residēre**, **resēdī**, —— be left, remain
reliquus, **-a**, **-um** remaining, rest (of)
coniūrātor, **coniūrātōris** *m.* conspirator
sīn (conj.) but if
dūdum (adv.) some time ago, before; **iam dūdum**, for a long time now, long since
exeō (**ex-** + **eō**) go out, depart
exhauriō, **exhaurīre**, **exhausī**, **exhaustus** drain dry
comes, **comitis** *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade
perniciōsus, **-a**, **-um** destructive, ruinous
sentīna, **sentīnae** *f.* bilgewater; cesspool; dregs, scum
***spōns**, ***spontis** *f.* (one's own) will
interrogō (**inter-** + **rogō**) (1-tr.) ask, examine, interrogate
cōnsulō, **cōnsulere**, **cōnsuluī**, **cōnsultus** consult
suādeō, **suādēre**, **suāsī**, **suāsus** recommend, urge, advise

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 1–2

sed diū magnum inter mortālīs certāmen fuit vīne corporis an virtūte animī rēs mīlitāris magis prōcēderet. nam et priusquam incipiās, cōnsultō et, ubi cōnsulueris, mātūrē factō opus est. ita utrumque† per sē indigēns; alterum alterīus auxiliō eget.

2. Igitur initiō rēgēs—nam in terrīs nōmen imperī id prīmum fuit—dīvorsī pars ingenium, aliī corpus exercēbant: etiam tum vīta hominum sine cupiditāte agitābātur; sua† quoique satis placēbant. posteā vērō quam in Asiā Cȳrus, in Graeciā Lacedaemoniī et Athēniēnsēs coepēre urbīs atque nātiōnēs subigere, lubīdinem dominandī† causam bellī habēre, maxumam glōriam in maxumō imperiō putāre, tum dēmum perīculō atque negōtiīs conpertum est in bellō plūrumum ingenium posse. quod sī† rēgum atque imperātōrum animī virtūs in pāce ita ut in bellō valēret, aequābilius atque cōnstantius sēsē rēs hūmānae habērent, neque aliud aliō† ferrī neque mūtārī ac miscērī omnia cernerēs. nam imperium facile iīs artibus retinētur quibus

certāmen, certāminis *n.* competition; dispute, quarrel
mīlitāris, mīlitāre military; **rēs mīlitāris**, military practice
prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) go forward, progress, succeed
priusquam (conj. + subjunc.) before
incipiō (in- + capiō) take on, begin; **incipiās**, *subjunc. expressing anticipation,* you can begin
cōnsultum, cōnsultī *n.* resolution, plan
cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultus take counsel, consult, consider, plan; **cōnsulueris**, *perfect subjunctive with an idealized second person; translate as indicative*
mātūrē (adv.) quickly, in good time
†**utrumque** = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.,* each thing (of two)
indigēns, indigentis needy, not self-sufficient
egeō, egēre, eguī, —— lack, want, need (+ abl.)
initium, initiī *n.* beginning
nōmen, nōminis *n.* name
dīvorsus, -a, -um opposite, separate, different
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy, occupy; train, exercise
cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; spend, pass
†**sua** refers to **quoique**, his/her own things.
quoique = *masc./fem. sing. dat. of indef. pron.,* each *or* every man *or* woman
posteā . . . quam = **postquam**
Asia, Asiae *f.* Asia (modern Asia Minor)
Cȳrus, Cȳrī *m.* Cyrus (a Persian king)
Lacedaemonius, -a, -um Lacedaemonian, Spartan; *subst.,* (a) Spartan
Athēniēnsis, Athēniēnse Athenian; *subst.,* (an) Athenian
——, ——, **coepī, coeptus** (defective verb) began
nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation
subigō (sub- + agō), subigere, subēgī, subāctus drive under, force; subdue, conquer
lubīdō, lubīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
†**dominandī** = *neut. sing. gen. of verbal noun of* **dominor** (1-intr.), of being master, of ruling
maxumam = **maximam**
maxumō = **maximō**
dēmum (adv.) at length, at last; precisely, only; **tum dēmum**, only then
negōtium, negōtiī *n.* business, (business) activity
conperiō, conperīre, conperī, conpertus find out, learn
plūrumum = **plūrimum**
†**quod sī** (conj.) but if
aequābilis, aequābile consistent, equitable; **aequābilius . . . sēsē habērent . . .**, would be more equitable . . .
cōnstāns, cōnstantis firm, steady, invariable, constant
hūmānus, -a, -um human
†**aliō**, *here* (adv.) to another place
mūtō (1-tr.) change
misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix, stir up
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish, determine, perceive
retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus keep hold of, retain, grasp

initiō partum est. vērum ubi prō labōre dēsidia, prō continentiā et aequitāte lubīdō atque superbia invāsēre, fortūna simul cum mōribus inmūtātur. ita imperium semper ad optumum quemque† ā minus bonō trānsfertur. Quae hominēs arant, nāvigant, aedificant, virtūtī omnia pārent. sed multī mortālēs, dēditī ventrī atque somnō, indoctī incultīque vītam sīcutī peregrīnantēs trānsiēre; quibus profectō contrā nātūram corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit. eōrum ego vītam mortemque iuxtā aestumō, quoniam dē utrāque† silētur. vērum enim vērō† is dēmum mihi vīvere atque fruī animā vidētur quī aliquō negōtiō intentus praeclārī facinoris aut artis bonae fāmam quaerit. sed in magnā cōpiā rērum aliud aliī nātūra iter ostendit.

initium, **initiī** *n.* beginning
pariō, **parere**, **peperī**, **partus** give birth to, bear (of a mother); create
dēsidia, **dēsidiae** *f.* idleness, inactivity, sloth
continentia, **continentiae** *f.* restraint, temperance, moderation
aequitās, **aequitātis** *f.* evenness, calmness; equity, fairness
lubīdō, **lubīdinis** *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
superbia, **superbiae** *f.* pride; arrogance, haughtiness
invādō, **invādere**, **invāsī**, **invāsus** enter (hostilely), invade, attack
simul (adv.) at the same time
inmūtō (1-tr.) alter, change
optumum = **optimum**
†**quemque** = *masc. sing. acc. of indef. pron.*, each man
trānsferō (**trāns-** + **ferō**), **trānsferre**, **trānstulī**, **trānslātus** carry across, shift
arō (1-tr.) plough, till, cultivate
nāvigō (1-tr.) sail
aedificō (1-tr.) build
dēdō (**dē-** + **dō**) give up, surrender, deliver; dedicate
venter, **ventris** *m.* belly, stomach
somnus, **somnī** *m.* sleep
indoctus, **-a**, **-um** not learned, ignorant
incultus, **-a**, **-um** uncouth, rough, uncultivated
sīcutī (conj.) just as
peregrīnor (1-intr.) dwell abroad; be an alien; travel abroad
trānseō (**trāns-** + **eō**), **trānsīre**, **trānsiī/trānsīvī**, **trānsitus** go across, pass through
profectō (adv.) in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly
voluptās, **voluptātis** *f.* pleasure, joy
onus, **oneris** *n.* load, burden; trouble, difficulty
iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally
aestumō (1-tr.) estimate, value, reckon
†**utrāque** = *fem. sing. abl. of indef. pron.*, each (of two)
sileō, **silēre**, **siluī**, —— be silent; pass over in silence
†**vērum enim vērō** but at the same time
dēmum (adv.) at length, at last; precisely, only
fruor, **fruī**, **frūctus sum** enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
aliquō = *neut. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, some, any
negōtium, **negōtiī** *n.* business
intentus, **-a**, **-um** stretched, attentive, intent, occupied
praeclārus, **-a**, **-um** very famous
facinus, **facinoris** *n.* deed; crime
iter, **itineris** *n.* passage; road, route
ostendō, **ostendere**, **ostendī**, **ostentus/ostēnsus** present, show; offer

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.506–17

forsitan et Priamī fuerint quae fāta requīrās.
urbis utī captae cāsum convulsaque vīdit
līmina tēctōrum et medium in penetrālibus hostem,
arma diū senior dēsuēta trementibus aevō
circumdat nēquīquam umerīs et inūtile ferrum
cingitur, ac dēnsōs fertur moritūrus in hostīs.
aedibus in mediīs nūdōque sub aetheris axe
ingēns āra fuit iuxtāque veterrima laurus
incumbēns ārae atque umbrā complexa Penātīs.
hīc Hecuba et nātae nēquīquam altāria circum,
praecipitēs ātrā ceu tempestāte columbae,
condēnsae et dīvum† amplexae simulācra sedēbant.

forsitan (adv.) perhaps
Priamus, Priamī *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
requīrō (re- + quaerō), requīrere, requīsiī/requīsīvī, requīsītus seek again; ask *or* inquire about
utī = ut
convellō, convellere, convellī, convulsus pull up (violently), tear up, wrench
līmen, līminis *n.* entrance, doorway, threshold
tēctum, tēctī *n.* roof; house
penetrāle, penetrālis, -ium *n.* inner part, inmost recess
senex, senis old
dēsuētus, -a, -um unfamiliar (from lack of use)
tremō, tremere, tremuī, —— tremble, quiver, quake
aevum, aevī *n.* age, lifetime
circumdō (circum- + dō) place (something) around, put (something) on
nēquīquam (adv.) to no avail
umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder
inūtilis, inūtile unfit for use; useless
cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus gird, equip, put on; **cingitur**, *translate with active meaning*
dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense; crowded together, closely packed
aedēs, aedis, -ium *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *pl.*, house, abode
nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude; bare, deserted
aethēr, aetheris *m.* ether (the upper region of the sky), heaven
axis, axis *m.* axis
iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally
vetus, veteris old, ancient; **veterrima** = *fem. sing. nom. of superlative adj.*
laurus, laurī *f.* laurel tree
incumbō, incumbere, incubuī, —— fall (on), throw oneself (on); lean (on)
complector, complectī, complexus sum embrace; encircle, enclose
Penātēs, Penātium *m. pl.* Penates (guardian deities of a household or country)
hīc (adv.) here
Hecuba, Hecubae *f.* Hecuba (wife of Priam)
nāta, nātae *f.* daughter
altāria, altārium *n. pl.* (high) altar (for sacrifice)
circum (prep. + acc.) around; **altāria circum = circum altāria**
praeceps, praecipitis rushing forward, headlong
āter, ātra, ātrum black, dark
ceu (conj.) (in the same way) as, like
tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm
columba, columbae *f.* dove
condēnsus, -a, -um close together, tightly packed
†**dīvum = dīvōrum**
amplector, amplectī, amplexus sum embrace; clasp (for protection)
simulācrum, simulācrī *n.* image, statue
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit, be seated

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.478–89

multī illam petiēre, illa āversāta petentēs
inpatiēns expersque virī nemora āvia lūstrat
nec quid Hymēn, quid Amor, quid sint cōnūbia cūrat.
saepe pater dīxit: "generum† mihi, fīlia, dēbēs,"
saepe pater dīxit: "dēbēs mihi, nāta, nepōtēs";
illa velut crīmen taedās exōsa iugālēs
pulchra verēcundō suffūderat ōra rubōre
inque patris blandīs haerēns cervīce lacertīs
"dā mihi perpetuā, genitor cārissime," dīxit
"virginitāte fruī! dedit hoc pater ante Diānae."
ille quidem obsequitur, sed tē decor iste quod optās
esse vetat, vōtōque tuō tua forma repugnat.

āversor (1-tr.) turn away from; reject
inpatiēns, **inpatientis** not enduring, intolerant
expers, **expertis** having no part, lacking experience
nemus, **nemoris** *n.* wood, forest
āvius, **-a**, **-um** pathless, trackless
lūstrō (1-tr.) move through, roam
Hymēn (nom. only) Hymen (god of marriage); marriage
cōnūbium, **cōnūbiī** *n. sing. or pl.*, marriage, marriage rites
cūrō (1-tr.) watch over; care
†**gener**, **generī** *m.* son-in-law
nāta, **-ae** *f.* daughter
nepōs, **nepōtis** *m.* or *f.* grandchild
velut (conj.) even as, just as
crīmen, **crīminis** *n.* charge, accusation; crime
taeda, **taedae** *f.* torch
exōsus, **-a**, **-um** hating, detesting (+ acc.)
iugālis, **iugāle** of *or* belonging to marriage, matrimonial, nuptial
verēcundus, **-a**, **-um** modest, restrained
suffundō, **suffundere**, **suffūdī**, **suffūsus** cover, fill, suffuse
ōs, **ōris** *n. sing. or pl.*, mouth; face
rubor, **rubōris** *m.* redness; blush
blandus, **-a**, **-um** charming, ingratiating, seductive
haereō, **haerēre**, **haesī**, **haesūrus** cling, stick
cervīx, **cervīcis** *f.* neck
lacertus, **lacertī** *m.* (upper) arm
perpetuus, **-a**, **-um** continual, without interruption; perpetual, everlasting
genitor, **genitōris** *m.* father
virginitās, **virginitātis** *f.* virginity; celibate life
fruor, **fruī**, **frūctus sum** enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
obsequor (**ob-** + **sequor**) comply (with), submit
decor, **decōris** *m.* good looks, beauty, grace
vetō, **vetāre**, **vetuī**, **vetitus** forbid
vōtum, **vōtī** *n.* vow, prayer
forma, **formae** *f.* shape, form; beauty
repugnō (1-intr.) fight against, resist (+ dat.)

§122. Unassimilated Forms, Archaic Forms, and Syncopation

Unassimilated Forms and Archaic Spellings

Although classical Latin writers established strict rules of spelling and morphology for Latin words, many works that have survived indicate that these writers also allowed certain exceptions to the rules. Writers of both prose and poetry sometimes sought special effects of style by including certain words with **archaic spellings**. These forms had existed in the Latin of an earlier time, but they had gradually fallen out of use and been replaced by later spellings. In epic poetry these archaisms were felt to contribute to an appropriately august and elevated diction. In the works of the historian Sallust archaisms represented a deliberate rebellion against the Ciceronian standard and became a hallmark of his unique style. Even Cicero made use of such forms when their archaic feeling contributed to a desired stylistic effect.

One common type of archaism is the *unassimilated form* of a compound word.[1] An **unassimilated form** is a form in which the ordinary assimilation of two consonants does not occur or is not written.[2] For example:

adcēdō = accēdō **inpius = impius**

Other archaic spellings give evidence of how the pronunciation of *vowels* changed as Latin developed.

maxumus = maximus (**-u- > -i-**) **antīquos = antīquus** (**-os > -us**)
vostra = vestra (**-o- > -e-**) **suom = suum** (**-om > -um**)

Be prepared to recognize unassimilated forms and other archaic spellings. In addition, learn to recognize the following forms:

quoius = cuius **ollī = illī** (dative singular)
quoi = cui **-āī = -ae** (genitive singular)
quom = cum (conjunction)[3]

Syncopation of Forms in the Perfect Active System

Forms of the perfect active system of first- and second-conjugation verbs may be shortened by removing *the* **-v-** *and the following vowel from the regular forms.* This shortening is sometimes called **syncopation** (< Greek *synkopē,* "cutting short"), and forms that have been shortened are called **syncopated forms**. For example:

1. For an explanation of assimilation see the vocabulary notes of Chapter V.

2. With few exceptions, the earliest surviving copies of ancient works were written at least eight hundred years after they were originally produced. Therefore, while the existence of both unassimilated and assimilated forms suggests that words continued to be pronounced in *both* ways, nothing can be said with complete certainty.

3. Cf. the vocabulary note on the conjunction **cum**, p. 355.

amāstī (< amā[vi]stī)
dēlērunt (< dēlē[vē]runt)

cōgitāram (< cōgitā[ve]ram)

laudārō (< laudā[ve]rō)

optārim (< optā[ve]rim)

imperāssēmus (< imperā[vi]ssēmus)

dēlēsse (< dēlē[vi]sse)

OBSERVATION

Any form of the perfect active system may be syncopated except the first person singular, third person singular, and first person plural perfect active indicative. Third person plural perfect active indicative forms made with the ending **-ēre** also cannot be syncopated.

Verbs of the third and fourth conjugations may also appear in shortened forms in the perfect active system, but these shortened forms do not always result from syncopation. For example:

audīstī (< audī[vi]stī)
audīssem (< audī[vi]ssem)
audīsse (< audī[vi]sse)
nōrās (< nō[ve]rās)
nōrint (< nō[ve]rint)

audieris (= audīveris)
audiit (= audīvit)
audieram (= audīveram)
audierit (= audīverit)

OBSERVATION

Some shortened perfect active system forms of the third and fourth conjugations are generally believed to be the result of syncopation (e.g., **audīstī**, **audīssem**, **audīsse**, **nōrās**, **nōrint**). Others are thought to be formed from alternate (and earlier) third principal parts (e.g., **audieris** < **audiī**). In such cases the short **-i-** that appears is part of the perfect active stem (e.g., **audi-** < **audiī**).[4]

BE PREPARED TO RECOGNIZE THESE SHORTENED AND SYNCOPATED FORMS.

Common Archaic Verb Forms

In the perfect passive system, perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect forms of **sum** sometimes appear in place of the expected present, imperfect, and future forms. For example:

oblītus fuī = oblītus sum
relictus fuerat = relictus erat
servātus fuerō = servātus erō
passa fuisset = passa esset

The future active infinitive **fore** was in origin a present infinitive with the meaning "to become." From this infinitive a regularly formed imperfect subjunctive, common in early Latin, continued to be used in classical Latin, and its forms

4. In third-conjugation verbs, the familiar third principal parts with a **-v-** are thought to have developed by analogy with the principal parts of other verbs. (Cf., for example, **petiī** *or* **petīvī**; **quaesiī** *or* **quaesīvī**). By the classical period, forms derived from either principal part are common.

were alternates of the imperfect subjunctive of **sum** (**essem**, **essēs**, etc.). These alternate forms may also be used in compound or periphrastic forms. For example:

foret = esset
missūrus foret = missūrus esset
timendī forent = timendī essent

Be prepared to recognize these archaic forms.

CHAPTER XIII

Vocabulary

➤ **nihilum**, **nihilī** or ***nīlum**, **nīlī** *n.* nothing
➤ **pretium**, **pretiī** *n.* price, value

➤ **honor**, **honōris** *m.* honor, respect; (political) office
➤ **lūmen**, **lūminis** *n.* light, radiance; *pl.*, eyes
➤ **scelus**, **sceleris** *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy
vulnus, **vulneris** *n.* wound

➤ **aestimō** (1-tr.) estimate, value
➤ **ex(s)pectō** (1-tr.) wait (for), await, expect
➤ **moror** (1-tr.) hinder, delay, wait
➤ **mūtō** (1-tr.) change; take in exchange, give in exchange

emō, **emere**, **ēmī**, **ēmptus** buy
➤ **faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus** reckon (§129)
gradior, **gradī**, **gressus sum** proceed, walk, step
➤ **ēgredior**, **ēgredī**, **ēgressus sum** go out, come out
➤ **incipiō**, **incipere**, **incēpī**, **inceptus** take on, begin
➤ **perdō**, **perdere**, **perdidī**, **perditus** destroy; lose
vendō, **vendere**, **vendidī**, **venditus** sell

➤ ——, ——, **coepī**, **coeptus** (defective verb) began, have begun
fīō, **fierī**, **factus sum** become, happen; be made, be done (§126)

cēterus, **-a**, **-um** rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other

➤ **grātus**, **-a**, **-um** charming, pleasing; grateful, pleased
➤ **ingrātus**, **-a**, **-um** unpleasant, displeasing; ungrateful, displeased
saevus, **-a**, **-um** cruel, savage
tantus, **-a**, **-um** so much, so great (§125)
quantus, **-a**, **-um** how much, how great; as much, as great (§125)

tālis, **tāle** such, of such a sort (§125)
quālis, **quāle** what sort of; of which sort, as (§125)

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many (§125)
quot (indeclinable adj.) how many; as many (§125)

➤ **ad** (prep. + acc.) for (the purpose of) (§123)
antequam (conj.) before (§124)
➤ **causā** (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (§123)
dōnec (conj.) while, as long as; until (§124)
dum (conj.) while, as long as; until; provided that (§124)
➤ **dummodo** (conj.) provided that (§124)
➤ **grātiā** (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (§123)
modo (conj.) provided that (§124)
priusquam (conj.) before (§124)
quia (conj.) because (§124)
quod (conj.) because (§124)
tam (adv.) so (§125)

Vocabulary Notes

- ***nīlum**, **nīlī** *n.* is a contracted form of **nihilum**, **nihilī** *n.* Both words are commonly used as Genitives of Indefinite Value (§129), Ablatives of Price (§130), and Ablatives of Degree of Difference (§112).
- **pretium**, **pretiī** *n.* is often used as a Genitive of Indefinite Value (§129) or an Ablative of Price (§130).
- **honor**, **honōris** *m.* may indicate the general notion of "respect" or "honor" or a more concrete mark of respect given to someone. It commonly refers to a political "office." The archaic nominative singular form **honōs** remains common throughout the classical period.
- **lūmen**, **lūminis** *n.* is formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb **lūceō**, **lūcēre**, **lūxī**, —— (shine, emit light). In addition to meaning "light" or "radiance" **lūmen** is often used metaphorically to mean the "light" of life or the "enlightenment" of literature, the arts, etc. It is also used in the plural, particularly in poetry, to mean "eyes," either because the eye is an opening that admits light or from the idea that glancing at something casts light upon the object.
- **scelus**, **sceleris** *n.* is used to refer to a specific "wicked deed" or "crime," or it may refer more generally to the abstract idea of "villainy" or "wickedness."
- **aestimō**, **aestimāre**, **aestimāvī**, **aestimātus** often appears with either a Genitive of Indefinite Value (§129) or an Ablative of Price (§130).
- **ex(s)pectō**, **ex(s)pectāre**, **ex(s)pectāvī**, **ex(s)pectātus** is a transitive verb that may be used absolutely with the meaning "wait." It may also be followed by a temporal clause introduced by **dum** or **dōnec** (§124). The **s** placed in parentheses in the vocabulary entry indicates that the word may be spelled either with or without an **s**.
- **moror**, **morārī**, **morātus sum** may be used transitively (hinder, delay) or intransitively (delay, wait). It may also be followed by a temporal clause introduced by **dum** or **dōnec** (§124).
- **mūtō**, **mūtāre**, **mūtāvī**, **mūtātus** may mean "take in exchange" or "give in exchange" with an Ablative of Price (§130). When it is used absolutely, **mūtō** means "change" in the sense of "undergo a change" or "become different."

Quis servitūtem lībertāte mūtet?	Who would take slavery in exchange for freedom?
Quis lībertātem servitūte mūtet?	Who would give freedom in exchange for slavery?

- When the verb **faciō** is used with a Genitive of Indefinite Value (§129), it is best translated as "reckon."
- **ēgredior**, **ēgredī**, **ēgressus sum** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ē-** to **gradior**. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ALL* COMPOUNDS OF **GRADIOR** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ĒGREDIOR**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **GRADIOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **incipiō**, **incipere**, **incēpī**, **inceptus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **in-** to **capiō**. **incipiō** is a transitive verb that most frequently appears with an Object Infinitive. In classical Latin the perfect active and perfect passive forms of **incipiō** are rare. The forms of the defective verb ——, ——, **coepī**, **coeptus** are used instead. However, the perfect passive participle **inceptus**, **-a**, **-um** is commonly used.
- **perdō**, **perdere**, **perdidī**, **perditus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **per-** to **dō**. **perdō** may mean "destroy" or "cause ruin to" (people, things) or "lose" (people, troops, citizenship, beauty). It may also mean "waste" (resources, opportunities). The perfect passive participle **perditus**, **-a**, **-um** is frequently used as an adjective meaning "(morally) lost," "ruined," or "depraved." The adverb **perditē** means "recklessly," "desperately," or "ruinously."
- ——, ——, **coepī**, **coeptus** is a defective verb. It has forms in the perfect active and perfect passive systems only. In classical Latin, forms of **coepī** are regularly used instead of the perfect active and passive forms of **incipiō**.
- **grātus**, **-a**, **-um** and the compound adjective **ingrātus**, **-a**, **-um** (< **in-** + **grātus**, **-a**, **-um**) have both active and passive senses. The meanings given for these words in the vocabulary list reflect first their active senses and then their passive ones.
- The preposition **ad** is regularly used with gerunds and gerundives to mean "for (the purpose of)" (§123), but it may also have this sense with nouns or pronouns standing alone, particularly demonstratives.

Dux multa ad hoc fēcerat.	The leader had done many things for this purpose.

- The words **causā** and **grātiā** are Ablatives of Cause used as prepositions that take the *genitive* case. The word in the genitive case *precedes* either **causā** or **grātiā**. These words most commonly appear with gerunds or gerundives (§123), but they may also appear with nouns standing alone, particularly abstract nouns.

➤ **dummodo** is a conjunction formed by the addition of the adverb **modo** to the conjunction **dum** and may be written as one or two words (**dummodo** or **dum modo**). It may introduce a Proviso clause (§124), and, because of this combination, **modo** alone may also introduce a Proviso clause.

	Derivatives	**Cognates**
cēterus	etc. (et cetera)	**he**, **him**, **her**, **it**
gradior	di**gress**, pro**gress**, con**gress**	grade; de**gree**
grātus	grace; **grate**ful; **grati**fy; **grati**s; in**grate**; a**gree**; con**grat**ulate	
mūtō	mutate; com**mute**; per**mutation**	im**mune**; **mis**take
pretium	praise; price; **prec**ious	inter**pret**
vulnus	**vulner**able	**Val**halla; **Val**kyrie

§123. Gerunds and Gerundives

In English there are two verbal nouns, the infinitive (to _____) and the **gerund** (_____ing). For example:

> I like *to read*. (infinitive functioning as d.o. of the verb "like")
> *Reading* is enjoyable. (gerund functioning as subject of the verb "is")
> I exercise my mind by *reading*. (gerund functioning as object of the preposition "by")

In Latin there are the same two verbal nouns, the *infinitive* and the *gerund*. There is in addition a verbal adjective, the **gerundive**, which has no exact counterpart in English. The features of the gerund and the gerundive are listed and compared below.

GERUND (Verbal *Noun*)	**GERUNDIVE** (Verbal *Adjective*)
1. is a **neuter singular** noun appearing in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases. (The nominative is supplied by the *Subject Infinitive*.)	1. is **never a substantive** but *must* agree with a noun in gender, number, and case.
2. is formed with the present stem + **-ndī**, **-ndō**, **-ndum**, **-ndō** *(3rd i-stem- and 4th-conjugation verbs change stem vowel to **-ie-**)*: [Nom. **vidēre** to see/seeing] Gen. **videndī** of seeing Dat. **videndō** to/for seeing Acc. **videndum** seeing (d.o.) Abl. **videndō** by (etc.) seeing	2. is identical in all forms with the *future passive participle* (e.g., **amandus**, **-a**, **-um**, **audiendus**, **-a**, **-um**), but contains no idea of obligation or necessity.
3. can have any noun syntax (Objective Genitive, Ablative of Means, etc.) and is translated accordingly by the English gerund: **cupidus regendī** desirous of ruling (Objective Gen.)	3. is lacking in English and so must be changed into a *gerund with a direct object* when translating into English: **dōnīs mittendīs** by sending gifts
4. is used to express *purpose* in the *genitive* with **causā** or **grātiā** (placed after) and in the *accusative* with **ad**: **videndī causā** for the sake of seeing **ad videndum** for the purpose of seeing	4. is used to express *purpose* in the *genitive* with **causā** or **grātiā** (placed after) and in the *accusative* with **ad**: **rēgis videndī causā** for the sake of seeing the king **ad rēgem videndum** for the purpose of seeing the king

The following sentences illustrate the uses of the gerund and the gerundive.

Mihi est amor *scrībendī*. (gerund, Objective Gen.)
I have a love *of writing*.
Mihi est amor *carminum scrībendōrum*. (gerundive, modifies **carminum**,
I have a love *of writing poems*. Objective Gen.)

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a Latin gerund would take a direct object, the gerundive construction is usually preferred, as in the second sentence.

2. The Latin gerundive, an *adjective* modifying a noun, is translated into English as a gerund, a verbal *noun*, with a direct object.

Arma cēpit *ad pugnandum*. (gerund expressing purpose with **ad**, for the purpose of)
He took up arms *for the purpose of fighting*.
Rōmam vēnī *ad mātrem videndam*. (gerundive expressing purpose with **ad**)
I came to Rome *for the purpose of seeing (my) mother*.
Rōmam vēnī multa *videndī causā*. (gerund expressing purpose with **causā**, for the sake of)
I came to Rome *for the sake of seeing* many things.

OBSERVATION

In the third sentence a gerund with a neuter plural substantive as direct object is preferred to the gerundive construction to avoid ambiguity:

multōrum videndōrum causā "for the sake of seeing many *things*"
or "for the sake of seeing many *men*"

Occasionally the gerundive construction is used to express purpose in the accusative case without **ad**. For example:

Caesar Quintō lēgātō *sociōs dūcendōs* trādidit.
Caesar to Quintus (his) lieutenant *the allies to be led* handed over.
Caesar handed over to (his) lieutenant Quintus *the allies to be led*.
Caesar handed over *the allies* to (his) lieutenant Quintus *for leading*.

OBSERVATION

In such a construction the gerundive still expresses purpose, but it must be translated differently: "to be _____ed" *or* "for _____ing."

☛DRILL 123, PAGE 533, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§124. Subordinate Clauses III

Certain subordinating conjunctions are followed by verbs sometimes in the indicative and sometimes in the subjunctive with a difference in meaning.[1] When any of these conjunctions is followed by an indicative verb, the action of the verb is represented by the writer or speaker as actual or factual. When the same conjunction is followed by a subjunctive verb, the verbal action is represented as alleged, apparent, or anticipated—that is, *nonfactual*.

Conjunction	*With Indicative*	*With Subjunctive*
dum/dōnec	"while/as long as/until" (action accomplished)	"until . . . should" (action anticipated)
antequam/ priusquam	"before" (action accomplished)	"before . . . can/could" (action anticipated)
quod/quia	"because" (cause represented as true)	"allegedly because," "apparently because"

Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Indicative Mood

***Dum/Dōnec* mē *amābās*, fēlīx eram.**
While (As long as) me (d.o.) *you were loving*, happy I was.
As long as you were loving me, I was happy.

In illō locō manēbant *dum/dōnec* verba Cicerōnis *audīvērunt*.
In that place they were remaining *until* the words (d.o.) of Cicero *they heard*.
They were remaining in that place *until they heard* the words of Cicero.

Discessimus ē forō *antequam/priusquam* Cicerō ōrātiōnem *cōnfēcit*.
We departed from the forum *before* Cicero (his) speech (d.o.) *completed*.
We departed from the forum *before* Cicero *completed* his speech.

Caesar suōs laudābit *quod/quia* fortiter *pugnāvērunt*.
Caesar his own men (d.o.) will praise *because* bravely *they fought*.
Caesar will praise his own men *because they fought* bravely.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first three sentences the actions in the subordinate clauses are presented as actually having occurred: you *did* use to love me, they *did* hear Cicero's words, and Cicero *did* complete his speech.

2. In the last sentence the reason given for Caesar's praise of his men is vouched for (by the writer of the sentence) as the true reason: his men *did* fight bravely, and this is why Caesar will praise them.

***Dum* haec ā mīlitibus *geruntur*, lēgātī ab hostibus vēnērunt.**
While these things by the soldiers *were being managed*, legates from the enemies came.
While these things *were being managed* by the soldiers, legates came from the enemies.

1. For subordinating conjunctions followed by verbs in the indicative mood, see §48. For **cum** clauses see §118.

OBSERVATION

When the verb in the main clause is a past tense, the *present indicative,* the so-called "historical present," is regularly used with the conjunction **dum**, "while." This special use of the present indicative should be translated as an imperfect indicative.

Subordinate Clauses with Verbs in the Subjunctive Mood

When verbs in such subordinate clauses appear in the *subjunctive* mood, the writers or speakers represent the verbal actions as *nonfactual.*

In illō locō manēbant *dum/dōnec* verba Cicerōnis *audīrent*.
They were remaining in that place *until they should hear* the words of Cicero.
Discessimus ē forō *antequam/priusquam* Cicerō ōrātiōnem *habēret*.
We departed from the forum *before* Cicero *could make* a speech.
Caesar suōs laudābit *quod/quia* fortiter *pugnāverint*.
Caesar will praise his own men *apparently because they fought* bravely.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The tenses of the subjunctive verbs in these subordinate clauses follow the rules of sequence.

2. In the first two sentences the actions of the verbs in the subordinate clauses are presented as merely *anticipated* and not as having actually occurred. In a temporal clause expressing anticipation with **dum** or **dōnec**, the English word "should" is used to translate a subjunctive verb in either primary or secondary sequence. In a temporal clause expressing anticipation with **antequam** or **priusquam**, the English word "can" is used to translate a subjunctive verb in primary sequence, and "could" is used to translate a subjunctive verb in secondary sequence.

3. In the last sentence the reason given is not vouched for but is merely surmised by the writer or speaker or alleged by someone else. In such a causal clause, the English adverb "apparently" or "allegedly" is added to the translation.

4. The syntax, for example, of **audīrent** in the first sentence is **imperfect subjunctive, secondary sequence, temporal clause expressing anticipation, subsequent time**. The syntax of **pugnāverint** in the third sentence is **perfect subjunctive, primary sequence, clause of apparent or alleged cause, prior time**.

Sometimes **antequam** and **priusquam** are divided. For example:

Multa *ante/prius* experīēris *quam* tuum inimīcum *vincās*.
Many things (d.o.) *sooner* you will try *than* your enemy (d.o.) *you can overcome.*
Sooner will you try many things *than you can overcome* your enemy.
You will try many things *before you can overcome* your enemy.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The conjunctions **antequam** and **priusquam** are made of the comparative adverbs **ante** and **prius** (sooner) and the conjunction **quam** (than). When **antequam** or **priusquam** is divided, each element *may* be translated separately, but the last translation given above, in which the conjunction is translated "before" where the **quam** appears, is to be preferred.

2. **Antequam** and **priusquam** may be split when followed by either the indicative or the subjunctive mood.

Proviso Clauses

The conjunction **dum**, sometimes strengthened by the adverb **modo**, "only," may introduce a subordinate clause stating a *provision under which* the event of the main clause can occur. Such a clause is called a **Proviso clause**. **modo** *alone* may also introduce such a clause. The verb in a Proviso clause is always in the *subjunctive* mood. The particle **nē** is used for negation. For example:

Magnō mē metū līberābis *dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus sit*.
From great fear me (d.o.) you will free *provided that between me and you a wall be.*
You will free me from great fear *provided that a wall be between me and you.*

Omnia prō dominō facere volō *dum nē peream*.
All things for (my) master to do I am willing *provided that I not perish.*
I am willing to do all things for my master *provided that I not perish.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. Subjunctive verbs in Proviso clauses follow the rules of sequence. The syntax, for example, of **sit** in the first sentence is **present subjunctive, primary sequence, Proviso clause**.

2. A Proviso clause is regularly translated with an English present subjunctive (e.g., "be" and "perish" in the sentences above).[2]

☛ Drill 124, page 539, may now be done.

§125. Correlatives

Certain Latin adverbs and adjectives appear in two closely related forms.

Demonstrative	*Exclamatory/Interrogative/Relative*
tam (adv.) so	**quam** (adv.) how; as
tālis, **tāle** such, of such a sort	**quālis**, **quāle** what sort of; of which sort, as
tantus, **-a**, **-um** so much, so great	**quantus**, **-a**, **-um** how much, how great; as much, as great
tot (indeclinable adj.) so many	**quot** (indeclinable adj.) how many; as many

The words in the column on the left are demonstrative because they *point out* a certain degree, amount, or quality, often referring to a preceding sentence or answering a question. The words in the column on the right function in three distinct ways. They may be used to make exclamations (exclamatory), to ask questions (interrogative), and to correlate with corresponding demonstrative words (relative). The following sentences illustrate these various functions.

***Quam* altus est!**	*How* tall he is! (exclamatory)
***Quam* altus est?**	*How* tall is he? (interrogative)
***Tam* altus est.**	He is *so* tall (i.e., this tall). (demonstrative)
***Tam* altus est *quam* pater.**	He is *so* tall *as* (his) father. (demonstrative/relative)

2. The English present subjunctive is the infinitive form of the verb with the word "to" omitted ("work," "complete," "do," etc.).

OBSERVATIONS

1. The only difference in Latin between the exclamatory and interrogative sentences is the punctuation.

2. In the last sentence **quam** is *correlative* with **tam**. A **correlative** is an adjective, adverb, or pronoun that *corresponds with* a parallel adjective, adverb, or pronoun in the same sentence. In this sentence **tam**, a *demonstrative* adverb, and **quam**, a *relative* adverb, are correlatives, and the whole complex sentence is a **correlative sentence**. **Quam** introduces a *relative clause* in which certain grammatical elements are omitted. With no ellipsis the last example above would be written as follows:

Tam altus est quam altus est pater. He is so tall as tall (his) father is.

3. When **quam** is correlative with **tam**, an idiomatic English translation uses "as" to translate *both* **quam** and **tam**: He is ***as*** tall ***as*** (his) father.

***Quantam* pecūniam habuit!** *How much* money he had! (exclamatory)
***Quantam* pecūniam habuit?** *How much* money did he have? (interrogative)
***Tantam* pecūniam habuit.**
He had *so much* money (i.e., this much money). (demonstrative)
***Tantam* pecūniam habuit *quanta* erat satis.**
He had *so much* money *as (much)* was enough. (demonstrative/relative)
He had *as much* money *as* was enough.

OBSERVATION

In correlative sentences such as the last sentence, the relative adjective must agree in *gender* and *number* with its antecedent, but its *case* is determined by its syntax *within* the relative clause. Thus, **quanta** is *feminine* and *singular* to agree with **pecūniam**, but it is *nominative* because it modifies the ellipsed subject (**pecūnia**) of **erat**.

With adjectives or adverbs in the comparative degree,[3] a correlative sentence may appear, usually with the relative clause preceding the main clause. For example:

***Quō* maius est perīculum, *eō* magis timēmus.**
By (the degree to) *which* greater is the danger, *by this* (degree) more greatly we fear.
The greater the danger is, *the* more greatly we fear.
***Quantō* fortius pugnābis, *tantō* plūs glōriae capiēs.**
By how much more bravely you will fight, *by so much* more of glory you will win.
The more bravely you will fight, *the* more (of) glory you will win.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first example above **quō**, a *relative* pronoun, and **eō**, a *demonstrative* pronoun, are correlatives. The demonstrative **eō** is commonly used in this construction, but occasionally **hōc** appears instead.

2. The syntax of each italicized word (**quō**, **eō**, **quantō**, **tantō**) in the sentences above is Ablative of Degree of Difference.

3. The second translations given above are to be preferred.

Correlatives in correlative sentences are often best translated idiomatically. Here is a list of the correlatives included in this chapter and their respective idiomatic translations:

3. This construction also appears (less frequently) with superlative adjectives or adverbs.

tam . . . quam . . .	as . . . as . . .
tālis . . . quālis . . .	such . . . as . . . *or* of such a sort . . . as . . .
tantus . . . quantus . . .	as great . . . as . . . *or* as much . . . as . . .
tot . . . quot . . .	as many . . . as . . .
quō . . . eō (hōc) . . .	the (more) . . . the (more) . . .
quantō . . . tantō . . .	the (more) . . . the (more) . . .

☛Drill 125, page 543, may now be done.

§126. The Irregular Verb *fīō*

Fīō, **fierī**, **factus sum**, "become, happen; be made, be done," is an irregular verb. The present system of **fīō** has *active forms with passive meanings,* and these forms supply the passive of the present system of **faciō**. The perfect system of **fīō** is supplied by the perfect passive system of **faciō**. Memorize the following irregular conjugations:

	INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
	Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
Sing.					
1	**fīō**	**fīēbam**	**fiam**	**fiam**	**fierem**
2	**fis**	**fīēbās**	**fiēs**	**fiās**	**fierēs**
3	**fit**	**fīēbat**	**fiet**	**fiat**	**fieret**
Pl.					
1	**fimus**	**fīēbāmus**	**fiēmus**	**fiāmus**	**fierēmus**
2	**fitis**	**fīēbātis**	**fiētis**	**fiātis**	**fierētis**
3	**fiunt**	**fīēbant**	**fient**	**fiant**	**fierent**
Imperative:	Sing.	**fī**			
	Pl.	**fīte**			

OBSERVATIONS

1. The present, imperfect, and future indicative and present subjunctive conjugations of **fīō** are all formed with the stem **fī-**. By contrast, the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive have a *short* **-i-**. The imperfect subjunctive is formed with an imaginary present active infinitive form (*fiere), the final **-e** of which is lengthened to form the stem (**fierē-**).

2. The imperative forms **fī** and **fīte** are rare in the Latin literature that survives.

3. **Fīō** has no participles, but **faciō** supplies both the perfect passsive participle (**factus**, **-a**, **-um**) and the future passive participle (**faciendus**, **-a**, **-um**).

4. When **fīō** means "become" or "be made," it may be accompanied by a Predicate Nominative or Predicate Adjective in the Nominative case. For example:

Rēx fiat.	Let him become/Let him be made king. (predicate nom.)
Misera puella fiet.	The girl will become miserable. (predicate adj.)

☛ Drill 126, page 547, may now be done.

§127. Adverbial Accusative

When a noun, pronoun, or adjective in the accusative case is used adverbially to express the *extent* to which the action of a verb is performed, it is called an **Adverbial Accusative**. For example:

> ***Nihil* hās litterās intellegimus.**
> *To the extent (of) nothing* this letter (d.o.) we understand.
> *Not at all* do we understand this letter.
> ***Tantum* mē nōn amās *quantum* tē amō.**
> *For so great an extent* me (d.o.) you do not love *as great an extent* you (d.o.) I love.
> You do not love me *as much as* I love you.

The syntax of each italicized word (**nihil**, **tantum**, **quantum**) is **Adverbial Accusative**.

Several nouns, pronouns, and adjectives in the singular accusative form are commonly used as Adverbial Accusatives. MEMORIZE THESE COMMON ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVES:

> **magnam partem** for a great part
> **maximam partem** for the greatest part, for the most part
> **multum** much, a lot
> **nihil** not at all
> **plūrimum** very much
> **quantum** how much, as much
> **quid** to what extent, why
> **sōlum** only
> **tantum** so much, only (so much)

OBSERVATIONS

1. When a substantive adjective is used as an Adverbial Accusative, it is always neuter singular.
2. In PIE and in early Latin the accusative case originally expressed an idea of *extent* that *limited* the action of the verb. The Adverbial Accusative is developed from this original idea of the accusative (cf. the Accusative of Duration of Time).

§128. Accusative of Exclamation

When a noun in the accusative case is used to express an exclamation, it is called an **Accusative of Exclamation**. Such an accusative is often accompanied by an exclamatory adjective or adverb or by an interjection. For example:

Quem *virum*!	What *a man*!
***Mē* miserum!**	Miserable *me*!

The syntax of each italicized word (**virum**, **mē**) is **Accusative of Exclamation**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Accusative of Exclamation developed from the Accusative, Direct Object. It is understood as the direct object of an unexpressed thought or perception (e.g., What a man [I am thinking of]!).
2. The interrogative adjective **quī**, **quae**, **quod** may also be used to make exclamations, as in the first example.

§129. Genitive of Indefinite Value

With verbs of *considering, reckoning,* and *valuing,* certain words in the genitive case may express the *approximate worth or value* of something. This use of the genitive case is called a **Genitive of Indefinite Value**. For example:

Tuum cōnsilium *magnī (pretiī)* habeō. (**pretium, pretiī** *n.* price, value)
Your advice (d.o.) *of great (value)* I consider.
I consider your advice *of great value.*
Quis pecūniam *plūris* quam amōrem faciat? (**faciō**, reckon)
Who money (d.o.) *of more (value)* than love would reckon?
Who would reckon money *of more value* than love?

The syntax of each italicized word (**magnī, plūris**) is **Genitive of Indefinite Value.**

OBSERVATIONS

1. Each adjective in the sentences above is neuter singular genitive, either functioning as a substantive or modifying a usually unexpressed neuter singular noun meaning "value," **pretiī**. The Genitive of Indefinite Value is closely related to the Genitive of Description (§101).

2. Although the Latin word for "value" may be unexpressed, such a word should be added to the English translation of the Genitive of Indefinite Value.

3. Certain nouns appear as Genitives of Indefinite Value to express ideas of worthlessness. For example:

Eum *nihilī* dūcō. I consider him *of no value.* (**nihilum, nihilī** *n.* nothing)

§130. Ablative of Price

With verbs of *buying, selling, valuing,* and *exchanging,* certain words in the ablative case may express *the price at which* something is bought or sold. This use of the ablative case is called an **Ablative of Price**. For example:

Ista fēmina virī vītam *aurō* vendidit. (**vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus** sell)
That contemptible woman of (her) husband the life (d.o.) *for gold* sold.
That contemptible woman sold the life of her husband *for gold.*
***Magnō (pretiō)* ab omnibus virtūs aestimātur.** (**aestimō** [1-tr.] estimate, value)
At a great (price) by all (people) excellence is valued.
Excellence is valued *at a great price* by all people.

The syntax of each italicized word (**aurō, magnō**) is **Ablative of Price.**

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Ablative of Price was originally used instead of the Genitive of Indefinite Value to express the *exact amount of money* for which something was bought or sold. Its uses were later extended to less precise ideas of cost or value.

2. Although the Ablative of Price is essentially an Ablative of Means, it is often better translated with the English prepositions "for" or "at (the price of)."

3. A wide variety of words may be conceived as the price or cost of something (e.g., **vītā**, **patriā**). An adjective (e.g., **magnō**, **parvō**) used as an Ablative of Price either functions as a substantive or modifies a usually unexpressed neuter singular noun meaning "price," **pretiō**. However, four adjectives always appear in the Genitive of Indefinite Value rather than the expected Ablative of Price: **tantī**, **quantī**, **plūris**, and **minōris**.

☛ Drill 127–130, page 551, may now be done.

Short Readings

1. A fragment from the tragic poet Naevius

. . . ego semper plūris fēcī
potiōremque habuī lībertātem multō quam pecūniam.
(NAEVIUS, *PALLIĀTAE* FRAG. 9–10)

potior, **potius** more powerful; more desirable, more precious

2. Amphitruo and his slave Sosia enter the stage, and Amphitruo accuses Sosia of lying.

Amphitruō. Age ī tū secundum. *Sōsia*. Sequor, subsequor tē.
Amph. Scelestissimum tē arbitror. *Sōs*. Nam quam ob rem?
Amph. Quia id quod neque est neque fuit neque futūrum est
mihi praedicās. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUŌ* 551–54)

secundum (adv.) following, behind
subsequor (**sub-** + **sequor**) follow close behind
scelestus, **-a**, **-um** wicked
praedicō (1-tr.) proclaim, declare

3. A slave recalls a Greek proverb.

. . . quem dī dīligunt
adulēscēns moritur, dum valet, sentit, sapit. (PLAUTUS, *BACCHIDĒS* 816–17)

dīligō, **dīligere**, **dīlēxī**, **dīlēctus** value, esteem, love
adulēscēns, **adulēscentis** young, youthful
sapiō, **sapere**, **sapiī/sapīvī**, —— be intelligent, show good sense

4. Mistaken for his twin brother, Menaechmus is reviled by his brother's parasite, Peniculus.

Menaechmus. Quis hic est quī adversus it mihī?† *Pēniculus*. Quid ais, homō
levior quam plūma, pessime et nēquissime,
flāgitium hominis, subdole ac minimī pretī? (PLAUTUS, *MENAECHMĪ* 487–89)

adversus (adv.) opposite; **adversus īre**, to go to meet (+ dat.)
†The final **-i** of **mihi** here scans *long*.
aiō (defective verb) say; **ais** = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic.*
plūma, **plūmae** *f.* feather
nēquissimus, **-a**, **-um** most worthless, worst
flāgitium, **flāgitiī** *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace
subdolus, **-a**, **-um** deceitful, treacherous, sly

5. In explaining why he will not boast of his victories, Stratophanes, a soldier and buffoon, speaks about the trustworthiness of different kinds of witnesses.

plūris est oculātus testis ūnus quam aurītī decem;
quī audiunt audīta dīcunt, quī vident plānē sciunt. (PLAUTUS, *TRUCULENTUS* 489–90)

oculātus, **-a**, **-um** having eyes
testis, **testis**, **-ium** *m.* witness
aurītus, **-a**, **-um** having ears
plānē (adv.) plainly, clearly; obviously

6. The character Geta despairs.

hoccin saeclum! ō scelera, ō genera sacrilega, ō hominem inpium!

(TERENCE, *ADELPHOE* 304)

hoccin = **hocne**; **-ne**, *here, indicates an indignant statement*
saec(u)lum, **saec(u)lī** *n.* age, generation
sacrilegus, **-a**, **-um** temple-robbing; sacrilegious

7. A fragment from the satirist Lucilius

ō cūrās hominum! ō quantum est in rēbus ināne! (LUCILIUS, *SATURAE* FRAG. 9)

ināne, **inānis**, **-ium** *n.* empty space, void

8. Cicero comments on Athens and its great lawgiver, Solon.

prūdentissima cīvitās Athēniēnsium, dum ea rērum potīta est, fuisse trāditur; eius porrō cīvitātis sapientissimum Solōnem dīcunt fuisse, eum quī lēgēs quibus hodiē quoque ūtuntur scrīpserit. (CICERO, *PRŌ S. ROSCIŌ AMERĪNŌ* 70)

prūdēns, **prūdentis** showing foresight, prudent, sagacious
Athēniēnsis, **Athēniēnse** Athenian
potior, **potīrī**, **potītus sum** be master (of), control (+ gen.)
porrō (adv.) forward; hereafter; in turn, furthermore
Solō(n), **Solōnis** *m.* Solon (sixth-century B.C.E. lawgiver)
hodiē (adv.) today

9. Cicero describes his reception when he arrived in Sicily to collect evidence against Verres.

nēminī meus adventus labōrī aut sūmptuī neque† pūblicē neque† prīvātim fuit: vim in inquīrendō tantam habuī quantam mihi lēx dabat, nōn quantam habēre poteram istōrum studiō quōs iste† vexārat. (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 1.16)

adventus, **adventūs** *m.* arrival
sūmptus, **sūmptūs** *m.* expense, cost
†The redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.
prīvātim (adv.) in private, privately
inquīrō (**in-** + **quaerō**), **inquīrere**, **inquīsiī**/**inquīsīvī**, **inquīsītus** inquire into, investigate
†**iste** refers to Verres.
vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

10. Cicero attacks Verres for one of his many illegal acts.

ēripis hērēditātem quae vēnerat ā propinquō, vēnerat testāmentō, vēnerat lēgibus; quae bona is quī testāmentum fēcerat huic Hēraclīō, aliquantō antequam est mortuus, omnia ūtenda ac possidenda trādiderat . . . (CICERO, *IN VERREM II* 2.46)

ēripiō, **ēripere**, **ēripuī**, **ēreptus** tear away, snatch away
hērēditās, **hērēditātis** *f.* inheritance
propinquus, **-a**, **-um** near, close; *subst.*, relative
testāmentum, **testāmentī** *n.* will
Hēraclīus, **Hēraclīī** *m.* Heraclius
aliquantum, **aliquantī** *n.* a little, a small amount
possideō, **possidēre**, **possēdī**, **possessus** occupy; take control of, possess

11. Cicero expresses his willingness to endure unpopularity now that Catiline has left the city.

est mihi tantī, Quirītēs, huius invidiae falsae atque inīquae tempestātem subīre, dum modo ā vōbīs huius horribilis bellī ac nefāriī perīculum dēpellātur. dīcātur sānē ēiectus esse ā mē, dum modo eat in exsilium. sed mihi crēdite, nōn est itūrus. (Cicero, *In Catilīnam II* 15)

Quirītēs, **Quirītium** *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
tempestās, **tempestātis** *f.* storm
subeō (**sub-** + **eō**), **subīre**, **subiī/subīvī**, **subitūrus** undergo, endure
horribilis, **horribile** terrifying, dreadful
nefārius, **-a**, **-um** unspeakable, wicked
dēpellō (**dē-** + **pellō**), **dēpellere**, **dēpulī**, **dēpulsus** drive away
sānē (adv.) by all means

12. After his return from exile Cicero describes the debt he owes to Pompey the Great.

huic ego hominī, Quirītēs, tantum dēbeō quantum hominem hominī dēbēre vix fās est. (Cicero, *Post Reditum Ad Populum* 17)

Quirītēs, **Quirītium** *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

13. A character in Cicero's dialogue about law explains the importance of **imperium**.

nihil porrō tam aptum est ad iūs condiciōnemque nātūrae—quod quom dīcō, lēgem ā mē dīcī intellegī volō—quam imperium, sine quō nec domus ūlla nec cīvitās nec gēns nec hominum ūniversum genus stāre, nec rērum nātūra omnis nec ipse mundus potest. (Cicero, *Dē Lēgibus* III.2)

porrō (adv.) forward; hereafter; in turn, furthermore
aptus, **-a**, **-um** suitable, fit
condiciō, **condiciōnis** *f.* contract; condition, situation
ūniversus, **-a**, **-um** entire, (taken as a) whole
mundus, **mundī** *m.* universe, world

14. Pleading before Caesar on behalf of one of Pompey's followers, Cicero appeals to Caesar's merciful side.

nihil est tam populāre quam bonitās, nūlla dē virtūtibus tuīs plūrimīs nec† admīrābilior nec† grātior misericordiā est. hominēs enim ad deōs nūllā rē propius accēdunt quam salūtem hominibus dandō. (Cicero, *Prō Ligāriō* 37–38)

populāris, **populāre** of the **populus**; popular; admired
bonitās, **bonitātis** *f.* (moral) goodness; kindness, generosity
†The redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.
admīrābilis, **admīrābile** astonishing; admirable, wonderful
misericordia, **misericordiae** *f.* pity
propius (comparative adv.) nearer

15. Cicero explains the importance of knowing Latin.

nōn enim tam praeclārum est scīre Latīnē quam turpe nescīre, neque tam† id mihi ōrātōris bonī quam† cīvis Rōmānī proprium vidētur. (Cicero, *Brūtus* 140)

praeclārus, **-a**, **-um** very famous; excellent, outstanding
Latīnē (adv.) (in) Latin
turpis, **turpe** foul, ugly; base, shameful
†**tam . . . quam . . .** , *here,* so much . . . as . . .
proprius, **-a**, **-um** one's own; peculiar (to), characteristic (+ gen.)

16. Cicero's translation of Simonides' epitaph for the Spartan dead at Thermopylae

Dīc, hospes, Spartae nōs tē hīc vīdisse iacentēs,
dum sānctīs patriae lēgibus obsequimur.
(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.101)

hospes, **hospitis** *m.* guest, visitor, stranger
Sparta, **Spartae** *f.* Sparta
hīc (adv.) here
iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —— lie, rest; lie dead
sānctus, **-a**, **-um** inviolate, blameless
obsequor (**ob-** + **sequor**) comply with, submit to

17. A famous anecdote about the Athenian statesman Themistocles

noctū ambulābat in pūblicō† Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset, quaerentibusque respondēbat Miltiadis tropaeīs sē ē somnō suscitārī.
(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* IV.44)

noctū = **nocte**
†**in pūblicō**, in (a) public (place)
Themistoclēs, **Themistoclis** *m.* Themistocles
somnus, **somnī** *m.* sleep
Miltiadēs, **Miltiadis** *m.* Miltiades (an Athenian commander at Marathon)
tropaeum, **tropaeī** *n.* trophy (set up to mark the defeat of an enemy)
suscitō (1-tr.) cause to rise, rouse

18. Meditating on how often philosophers have easily endured exile from their homelands, a character suggests a reevaluation of the importance of the state.

quantī vērō ista cīvitās aestimanda est ex quā bonī sapientēsque pelluntur?
(Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* V.109)

19. The character Cotta utters a wish while speaking against the tenets of Epicureanism.

utinam tam facile vēra invenīre possem quam falsa convincere!
(Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* I.91)

convincō (**con-** + **vincō**) overcome; prove wrong, refute

20. The character Balbus closes his presentation of the Stoic view of the gods.

mala enim et impia cōnsuētūdō est contrā deōs disputandī, sīve ex animō id fit sīve simulātē. (Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* II.168)

cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* practice, custom, habit
disputō (**dis-** + **putō**) (1-tr.) argue one's case, debate
sīve (conj.) or if, whether; **sīve . . . sīve . . .** , whether . . . or (if) . . .
simulātē (adv.) in pretense

21. Although Cicero has been sleeping more since retiring from politics, he claims that his own dreams have remained pretty much the same.

. . . nec tam multum dormiēns ūllō somniō sum admonitus, tantīs praesertim dē rēbus, nec mihi magis umquam videor quam cum aut in forō magistrātūs aut in cūriā senātum videō, somniāre. (Cicero, *Dē Dīvinātiōne* II.142)

dormiō, dormīre, dormiī/dormīvī, dormītum sleep, be asleep
somnium, somniī *n.* dream
admoneō (**ad-** + **moneō**) remind, advise
praesertim (adv.) especially, above all
magistrātus, magistrātūs *m.* officeholder, magistrate
cūria, cūriae *f.* (the) Curia, (the) senate house
somniō (1-intr.) dream

22. Cicero adduces a famous Roman family as an example of how real glory endures.

Tiberius enim Gracchus, P. f.,† tam diū laudābitur dum memoria rērum Rōmānārum manēbit . . . (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* II.43)

†**P. f. = Publiī fīlius**

23. Cicero claims that Caesar often cited two lines of a Greek tragedy, which Cicero here translates.

nam sī violandum est iūs, rēgnandī grātiā
violandum est; aliīs rēbus pietātem colās. (Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* III.12)

violō (1-tr.) violate, transgress against
rēgnō (1-tr.) rule as king, reign
pietās, pietātis *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate

24. Cicero closes a letter to his friend Atticus with a word about the letter's deliverer.

Cossinius hic, cui dedī litterās, valdē† mihi bonus homō et nōn levis et amāns tuī vīsus est et tālis quālem esse eum tuae mihi litterae nuntiārant.

(Cicero, *Ad Atticum* I.19.11)

Cossinius, Cossiniī *m.* Cossinius
†**valdē**, *here,* very
nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report

25. Cicero pays his friend Atticus a compliment.

Rōmae enim videor esse cum tuās litterās legō et, ut fit in tantīs rēbus, modo hoc modo illud audīre. (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* II.15.1)

26. Cicero writes to Brutus about his opinion of the consuls for 43 B.C.E. and the young Octavian.

quālīs tibi saepe scrīpsī cōnsulēs, tālēs exstitērunt. Caesaris vērō puerī mīrifica indolēs virtūtis. utinam tam facile eum flōrentem et honōribus et grātiā regere ac tenēre possīmus quam facile adhūc tenuimus! (Cicero, *Ad Brūtum* 9.1)

ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)titī, —— stand out, appear; prove to be
mīrificus, -a, -um causing wonder, amazing
indolēs, indolis *f.* innate quality, nature; (natural) tendency (for) (+ gen.)
flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, —— blossom; prosper; be at the height of one's power
adhūc (adv.) up to the present time

27. While writing his autobiography, Cicero contemplates insulting two consuls, A. Gabinius and L. Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus, both of whom supported Clodius's prosecution of Cicero, which led to the latter's exile.

itaque mīrificum embolium cōgitō† in secundum librum meōrum temporum inclūdere dīcentem Apollinem in conciliō deōrum quālis reditus duōrum imperātōrum futūrus esset, quōrum alter exercitum perdidisset, alter vendidisset. (Cicero, *Ad Quintum frātrem* III.1.24)

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
mīrificus, -a, -um causing wonder, wonderful, marvelous
embolium, emboliī *n.* interlude; insertion
†**cōgitō**, *here,* have in mind, plan (+ infin.)
inclūdō, inclūdere, inclūsī, inclūsus enclose, include
concilium, conciliī *n.* (popular) assembly, council
reditus, reditūs *m.* return

28. The poet laments man's irrational fear of death.

ō miserās hominum mentēs, ō pectora caeca!
quālibus in tenebrīs vītae quantīsque perīclīs
dēgitur hoc aevī quodcumquest! . . . (Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* I.14–16)

tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
perīclīs = perīculīs
dēgō (dē- + agō), dēgere, ——, —— spend, pass
aevum, aevī *n.* age, life(time)
quodcumque = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. rel. adj.,* whatever

29. Imitation is the sincerest form of flattery. (hendecasyllable)

Disertissime Rōmulī nepōtum,
quot sunt quotque fuēre, Marce Tullī,
quotque post aliīs erunt in annīs,
grātiās tibi maximās Catullus
agit pessimus omnium poēta,
tantō pessimus omnium poēta
quantō tū optimus omnium patrōnus. (Catullus XLIX)

disertus, **-a**, **-um** well-spoken, eloquent
nepōs, **nepōtis** *m.* grandson; descendant
patrōnus, **patrōnī** *m.* patron; defender

30. The poet states a paradox.

Ōdī et amō. quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
nescio,† sed fierī sentiō et excrucior. (Catullus LXXXV)

fortasse (adv.) perhaps
requīrō (**re-** + **quaerō**), **requīrere**, **requīsiī/requīsīvī**, **requīsītus** seek again, ask, inquire
†The final **-ō** of **nesciō** here scans *short*.
excruciō (1-tr.) torture

31. The poet strives to express how much he loved Lesbia.

Nūlla potest mulier tantum sē dīcere amātam
vērē quantum ā mē Lesbia amāta mea est.
nūlla fidēs ūllō fuit umquam foedere tanta
quanta in amōre tuō ex parte reperta meā est. (Catullus LXXXVII)

mulier, **mulieris** *f.* woman
foedus, **foederis** *n.* agreement, treaty, pact
reperiō, **reperīre**, **repperī**, **repertus** find, discover

32. The soldiers of the enemy break ranks to the benefit of Caesar's men.

ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit diēī spatium, . . . (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* II.11)

multitūdō, **multitūdinis** *f.* multitude
spatium, **spatiī** *n.* course, track; space, interval

33. Caesar explains why he thinks certain Gallic tribes surrendered so quickly.

nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs ferendās mēns eōrum est.
(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* III.19)

suscipiō (**sub-** + **capiō**) undertake, venture upon
Gallī, **Gallōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
alacer, **alacris**, **alacre** quick, swift; keen, eager
prōmptus, **-a**, **-um** quick to respond, ready
mollis, **molle** gentle, soft, mild
resistēns, **resistentis** enduring, firm
calamitās, **calamitātis** *f.* disaster, misfortune, injury

34. In the territory of the Morini, Caesar is about to launch an expedition to Britain.

dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morīnōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūrōs pollicērentur.

(CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* IV.22)

nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
Morīnī, Morīnōrum *m. pl.* (the) Morini (a Belgic tribe)
superior, superius upper, higher; earlier
excūsō (1-tr.) excuse
barbarus, -a, -um foreign; barbarous, uncivilized
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage
imperītus, -a, -um inexperienced (in), unacquainted (with) (+ gen.)
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum promise

35. Several of Caesar's soldiers, against orders, leave their positions in the middle of a battle on land and sea and attempt to reach land on their own.

pars eōrum studiō spectandī ferēbātur, pars etiam cupiditāte pugnandī.

([CAESAR], *DĒ BELLŌ ALEXANDRĪNŌ* 20)

spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe
cupiditās, cupiditātis *f.* desire

36. When he is recommending a harsh penalty against Catiline, Cato recalls an outstanding example of Roman austerity.

apud maiōrēs nostrōs T. Manlius Torquātus bellō Gallicō fīlium suom, quod is contrā imperium in hostem pugnāverat, necārī iussit atque ille ēgregius adulēscēns inmoderātae fortitūdinis morte poenās dedit.

(SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 52)

T. Manlius Torquātus, T. Manliī Torquātī *m.* T. Manlius Torquatus (dictator 353 B.C.E.)
Gallicus, -a, -um Gallic
necō (1-tr.) put to death, kill
ēgregius, -a, -um outstanding, extraordinary
adulēscēns, adulēscentis, -ium *m.* young man
immoderātus, -a, -um unrestrained, immoderate; **inmoderātae fortitūdinis,** *genitive expresses the charge,* for (his) unrestrained bravery
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis *f.* bravery, fortitude

37. The historian summarizes Cato's character.

esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat; ita, quō minus petēbat glōriam, eō magis illum adsequēbātur. (SALLUST, *BELLUM CATILĪNAE* 54)

assequor (ad- + sequor) go after, pursue

38. The historian compares Caesar and Cato.

Caesar dandō, sublevandō, ignōscundō, Catō nihil largiundō glōriam adeptus est. in alterō miserīs perfugium erat, in alterō malīs perniciēs. illīus facilitās, huius cōnstantia laudābātur. (Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 54)

sublevō (1-tr.) raise; assist
ignōscō (**in-** + **nōscō**), **ignōscere**, **ignōvī**, **ignōtus** forgive, pardon; **ignōscundō** = *archaic form of* **ignōscendō**
largior, **largīrī**, **largītus sum** give (generously), bestow; **largiundō** = *archaic form of* **largiendō**
adipīscor, **adipīscī**, **adeptus sum** reach, obtain, gain, get
perfugium, **perfugiī** *n.* place of refuge, shelter, sanctuary
perniciēs, **perniciēī** *f.* destruction, ruin, disaster
facilitās, **facilitātis** *f.* facility, ease; indulgence
cōnstantia, **cōnstantiae** *f.* firmness, steadfastness, resolution

39. A writer expresses indignation at a line in Cicero's poem about his consulship.

tamen audet dīcere: "Ō fortūnātam nātam, mē cōnsule, Rōmam!" tē cōnsule fortūnātam, Cicerō? immō vērō īnfēlīcem et miseram . . .

([Sallust], *In M. Tullium Cicerōnem* 5)

fortūnātus, **-a**, **-um** fortunate
immō vērō (adv.) no, even

Two Roman proverbs

40. Beneficium accipere lībertātem est vendere. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* B5)

beneficium, **beneficiī** *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit

41. Brevis ipsa vīta est, sed malīs fit longior. (Publilius Syrus, *Sententiae* B36)

42. After a refrain in a funeral song for the shepherd Daphnis, the poet gives evidence for the power of poetry.

dūcite ab urbe domum, mea carmina, dūcite Daphnin.

carmina vel caelō possunt dēdūcere lūnam,

carminibus Circē sociōs mūtāvit Ulīxī, . . . (Vergil, *Eclogues* VIII.68–70)

Daphnis, **Daphnidis** *f.* Daphnis; **Daphnin** = *acc. sing.*
vel (adv.) even
dēdūcō (**dē-** + **dūcō**) lead down; bring down
lūna, **lūnae** *f.* moon
Circē, **Circēs** *f.* Circe (a witch from Colchis who detained Odysseus and his men)
Ulīxēs, **Ulīxis**/**Ulīxī** *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)

43. The poet concludes an enumeration of Aeneas's many trials.

tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem. (Vergil, *Aeneid* I.33)

mōlēs, **mōlis**, **-ium** *f.* mass, weight, burden; enterprise, responsibility
condō, **condere**, **condidī**, **conditus** found

44. Aeneas describes a grim scene in a wall painting he discovers in Carthage.

ter circum Īliacōs raptāverat Hectora mūrōs
exanimumque aurō corpus vendēbat Achillēs. (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.483–84)

ter (adv.) three times
circum (prep. + acc.) around
Īliacus, -a, -um Ilian, Trojan
raptō (1-tr.) carry away by force; seize; drag
Hector, Hectoris *m.* Hector; **Hectora** = *acc. sing.*
exanimus, -a, -um lifeless
Achillēs, Achillis *m.* Achilles

45. Angry Dido feels that further appeals to Aeneas will be useless.

nam quid dissimulō aut quae mē ad maiōra reservō?
num flētū ingemuit nostrō? num lūmina flexit?
num lacrimās victus dedit aut miserātus amantem est? (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.368–70)

dissimulō (1-tr.) conceal, pretend, dissemble
reservō (1-tr.) save, hold back
flētus, flētūs *m.* weeping, tears
ingemō, ingemere, ingemuī, —— groan, lament
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus bend, turn
lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear
miseror (1-tr.) pity

46. The poet comments on the lives of words.

multa renāscentur quae iam cecidēre cadentque
quae nunc sunt in honōre vocābula, sī volet ūsus,†
quem penes arbitrium est et iūs et norma loquendī. (HORACE, *ARS POĒTICA* 70–72)

renāscor (**re-** + **nāscor**) be reborn; be revived
vocābulum, vocābulī *n.* word; term
†**ūsus, ūsūs** *m.* use; usage
penes (prep. + acc.) in the power of; **quem penes = penes quem**
arbitrium, arbitriī *n.* power of decision, determination; supervision, control
norma, normae *f.* standard

47. The poet has been away from Rome and away from Cynthia.

nōn sum ego quī fueram: mūtat via longa puellās.
quantus in exiguō tempore fūgit amor!
nunc prīmum longās sōlus cognōscere noctēs
cōgor et ipse meīs auribus esse gravis. (PROPERTIUS I.12.11–14)

exiguus, -a, -um small, slight, brief
cōgō (**co-** + **agō**), **cōgere, coēgī, coāctus** drive together, force, compel
auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear

48. Addressing his beloved Cynthia, the poet links love and mortality.

dum nōs fāta sinunt, oculōs satiēmus amōre:
nox tibi longa venit, nec reditūra diēs. (PROPERTIUS II.15.23–24)

sinō, sinere, siī/sīvī, situm allow, permit
satiō (1-tr.) sate, satisfy

49. What is most effective in wooing?

quid tibi praecipiam tenerōs quoque mittere versūs?
ei mihi! nōn multum carmen honōris habet.
carmina laudantur, sed mūnera magna petuntur:
dummodo sit dīves, barbarus ipse placet.
aurea sunt vērē nunc saecula: plūrimus aurō
vēnit honōs, aurō conciliātur amor. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* II.271–76)

praecipiō (**prae-** + **capiō**) advise
tener, **tenera**, **tenerum** tender; delicate, soft
versus, **versūs** *m.* verse
ei (interj.) alas!; **ei mihi**, woe is me
dīves, **dīvitis** rich, wealthy
barbarus, **-a**, **-um** foreign; barbarous, savage
aureus, **-a**, **-um** golden
saeculum, **saeculī** *n.* generation, lifetime; *sing. or pl.*, age
conciliō (1-tr.) unite; acquire, win

50. The poet looks at the darker side of love.

līore quot conchae, tot sunt in amōre dolōrēs;
quae patimur, multō spīcula felle madent. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* II.519–20)

lītus, **līloris** *n.* shore, beach
concha, **conchae** *f.* shellfish; seashell
dolor, **dolōris** *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
spīculum, **spīculī** *n.* sharp point (of a weapon), arrow; sting
fel, **fellis** *n.* liver, (black) bile (the source of rage); venom
madeō, **madēre**, ——, —— be wet, drip

51. The poet in exile comments with emotion on the death of his parents.

fēlīcēs ambō tempestīvēque sepultī,
ante diem poenae quod periēre meae!
mē quoque fēlīcem, quod nōn vīventibus illīs
sum miser, et dē mē quod doluēre nihil! (Ovid, *Trīstia* IV.10.81–84)

ambō, **ambae**, **ambō** (pl. adj. and pron.) both; **ambō** = *masc. nom. pl.*
tempestīvē (adv.) opportunely, at the right time
sepeliō, **sepelīre**, **sepeliī/sepelīvī**, **sepultus** bury
doleō, **dolēre**, **doluī**, —— suffer, grieve, feel pain

52. A tribune of the people, A. Verginius, concludes a speech intended to warn the people about Caeso Quinctius, a champion of the patricians.

exspectāte dum cōnsul aut dictātor fīat quem prīvātum vīribus et audāciā rēgnantem vidētis. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* III.11.13)

dictātor, **dictātōris** *m.* dictator (an emergency officer with unlimited powers)
prīvātus, **-a**, **-um** private; *subst.*, private citizen
rēgnō (1-tr.) rule; act in a kingly way, tyrannize

53. After stating that the law of nature is a continuous alternation of good and bad things, the philosopher suggests the proper human response.

ad hanc lēgem animus noster aptandus est; hanc sequātur. huic pāreat. et quaecumque fīunt, dēbuisse fierī putet nec velit obiurgāre nātūram. optimum est patī quod ēmendāre nōn possīs, et deum, quō auctōre cūncta prōveniunt, sine murmurātiōne comitārī; malus mīles est quī imperātōrem gemēns sequitur.

(SENECA THE YOUNGER, *EPISTULAE MŌRĀLĒS* CVII.9)

aptō (1-tr.) fit, adapt, attune
quaecumque = *neut. pl. nom. of indef. pron.*, whatever things
obiurgō (1-tr.) find fault with, reprimand
ēmendō (1-tr.) correct; remedy, cure
auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author
cūnctus, -a, -um all
prōveniō (prō- + veniō) come forth, emerge, arise
murmurātiō, murmurātiōnis *f.* grumbling, muttering
comitor (1-tr.) accompany, attend
gemō, gemere, gemuī, gemitum groan, moan

54. Clytaemnestra laments both the horrors of the house of Atreus and the beginning of the Trojan war.

ō scelera semper sceleribus vincēns domus:
cruōre ventōs ēmimus, bellum nece! (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *AGAMEMNŌN* 169–70)

cruor, cruōris *m.* (fresh) blood, gore
ventus, ventī *m.* wind
nex, necis *f.* murder

55. While plotting revenge against his brother, Thyestes, Atreus speaks to himself.

haec ipsa pollēns inclitī Pelopis domus
ruat vel in mē dummodo in frātrem ruat. (SENECA THE YOUNGER, *THYESTĒS* 190–91)

polleō, pollēre, ——, —— be powerful
inclitus, -a, -um famous, renowned
Pelops, Pelopis *m.* Pelops (son of Tantalus and father of Atreus and Thyestes)
ruō, ruere, ruī, —— rush; fall (with violence)
vel (adv.) even

56. Part of the historian's account of the late-night encounter between Alexander the Great and Clitus, one of his senior generals—the two had just quarreled drunkenly and bitterly at a banquet. Alexander had left earlier and armed himself.

abierant cēterī, Clītus ultimus sine lūmine exībat. quem rēx quisnam esset interrogat. ēminēbat etiam in vōce sceleris quod parābat atrōcitās.

(CURTIUS RUFUS, *HISTORIAE ALEXANDRĪ MAGNĪ* VIII.1.50)

Clītus, Clītī *m.* Clitus
ultimus, -a, -um last
exeō (ex- + eō) go out, leave
quisnam, quidnam (interrog. pron.) just who, just what
interrogō (inter- + rogō) ask, inquire; **interrogat**, *historical present tense, used here to add vividness; translate as past*
ēmineō, ēminēre, ēminuī, —— stand out, be conspicuous
atrōcitās, atrōcitātis *f.* hideousness, atrocity, cruelty

57. The poet remarks on the curious fate of one of his little books.

Quem recitās meus est, ō Fīdentīne, libellus;
sed male cum recitās, incipit esse tuus. (Martial I.38)

recitō (1-tr.) read aloud (in public), recite
Fīdentīnus, Fīdentīnī *m.* Fidentinus
libellus, libellī *m.* (little) book

58. Unlike Romans of old, who were able to exercise the rights of free citizens all their lives, those of Pliny's generation have had this experience for a short time only.

breve tempus (nam tantō brevius omne quantō fēlīcius tempus) quō libet scīre quid sīmus, libet exercēre quod scīmus. (Pliny the Younger, *Epistulae* VIII.14.10)

libet, libēre, libuit or **libitum est** it is pleasing, there is a desire
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy; exercise, perform

59. The historian describes the experience of repression under Domitian.

memoriam quoque ipsam cum vōce perdidissēmus sī tam† in nostrā potestāte esset oblīvīscī quam† tacēre. (Tacitus, *Dē Vītā Agricolae* 2)

†tam . . . quam . . ., *here,* as much . . . as . . .
potestās, potestātis *f.* (legitimate) power
taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitūrus be silent, keep silent

60. The historian quotes this tortured sentence from a letter written by Tiberius to the senate as proof of the emperor's inner torment.

quid scrībam vōbīs, patrēs cōnscrīptī, aut quō modō scrībam, aut quid omnīnō nōn scrībam hōc tempore, dī mē deaeque peius perdant quam perīre mē cōtīdiē sentiō sī sciō. (Tacitus, *Annālēs* VI.6)

cōtīdiē (adv.) daily, every day

61. The historian comments on Tiberius's habit of consulting an astrologer.

sed mihi haec ac tālia audientī in incertō iūdicium est fātōne rēs mortālium et necessitāte immūtābilī an forte volvantur. (Tacitus, *Annālēs* VI.22)

iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion
necessitās, necessitātis *f.* necessity
immūtābilis, immūtābile unchangeable, unalterable
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn; determine

62. The historian reports one way Caesar found to keep up the population of the city.

omnīsque medicīnam Rōmae professōs et līberālium artium doctōrēs, quō libentius et ipsī urbem incolerent et cēterī adpeterent, cīvitāte dōnāvit.

(Suetonius, *Vīta Iūlī* 42)

medicīna, **medicīnae** *f.* medicine
profiteor, **profitērī**, **professus sum** profess; follow as a pursuit, practice
līberālis, **līberāle** characteristic of a free man, liberal
doctor, **doctōris** *m.* teacher
libenter (adv.) gladly
incolō, **incolere**, **incoluī**, —— inhabit
appetō (**ad-** + **petō**) strive after, seek; make for

63. The historian quotes from a letter of Augustus to Tiberius.

attenuātum tē esse continuātiōne labōrum cum audiō et legō, dī mē perdant nisi cohorrēscit corpus meum; tēque ōrō ut parcās tibi, . . . (Suetonius, *Vīta Tiberiī* 21)

attenuō (1-tr.) make thin, impair, weaken
continuātiō, **continuātiōnis** *f.* continuance, prolongation
cohorrēscō, **cohorrēscere**, **cohorruī**, —— shudder, shiver
parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī**, **parsūrus** be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

64. According to the historian, these were Nero's last words.

quālis artifex pereō! (Suetonius, *Vīta Nērōnis* 49)

artifex, **artificis** *m.* artist

65. A young man's epitaph

Decem et octō annōrum nātus vīxī ut potuī bene, grātus parentī atque amīcīs omnibus. iocēris, lūdās, hortor: hīc summa est sevēritās. (*CIL* VI.16169)

parēns, **parentis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* parent
iocor (1-intr.) joke, jest
lūdō, **lūdere**, **lūsī**, **lūsus** play
hīc (adv.) here, in this place
sevēritās, **sevēritātis** *f.* gravity, seriousness, severity

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 13

Cicero concludes his defense of the time he has spent on literary pursuits.

quā rē quis tandem mē reprehendat, aut quis mihi iūre suscēnseat, sī, quantum cēterīs ad suās† rēs obeundās, quantum ad fēstōs diēs lūdōrum celebrandōs, quantum ad aliās voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiem animī et corporis concēditur temporum, quantum aliī tribuunt tempestīvīs convīviīs, quantum dēnique alveolō, quantum pilae, tantum mihi egomet ad haec studia recolenda sūmpserō?

reprehendō, **reprehendere**, **reprehendī**, **reprehēnsus** seize, catch; blame, censure
suscēnseō, **suscēnsēre**, **suscēnsuī**, —— be angry with (+ dat.)
†**suās** refers to **cēterīs**, their own
obeō (**ob-** + **eō**), **obīre**, **obiī/obīvī**, **obitus** go to meet; enter into, take on
fēstus, **-a**, **-um** festal; **fēstus diēs**, festival day, holiday
lūdus, **lūdī** *m.* game, play, sport; *pl.*, (public) games
celebrō (1-tr.) celebrate
voluptās, **voluptātis** *f.* pleasure, joy
requiēs, **requiētis** *f.* rest, relaxation; **requiem** = *acc. sing.*
concēdō (**con-** + **cēdō**) (tr.) concede, grant
tribuō, **tribuere**, **tribuī**, **tribūtus** grant, bestow, assign
tempestīvus, **-a**, **-um** timely, ripe, ready; **tempestīvum convīvium**, sumptuous *or* elaborate dinner party (that starts early)
convīvium, **convīviī** *n.* dinner party, banquet, feast
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up
alveolus, **alveolī** *m.* gaming board
pila, **pilae** *f.* ball
egomet = emphatic form of **ego**
recolō, **recolere**, **recoluī**, **recultus** cultivate again; resume, practice again
sūmō, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus** take up, seize; take (and use)

2. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 14

The study of literature stands in an important relation to public and political life.

nam nisi multōrum praeceptīs multīsque litterīs mihi ab adulēscentiā suāsissem nihil esse in vītā magnō opere† expetendum nisi laudem atque honestātem, in eā autem persequendā omnīs cruciātūs corporis, omnia perīcula mortis atque exsilī parvī esse dūcenda, numquam mē prō salūte vestrā in tot ac tantās dīmicātiōnēs atque in hōs prōflīgātōrum hominum cōtīdiānōs impetūs obiēcissem. sed plēnī omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs, plēna exemplōrum vetustās; quae iacērent in tenebrīs omnia nisi litterārum lūmen accēderet.† quam multās nōbīs imāginēs nōn sōlum ad intuendum vērum etiam ad imitandum fortissimōrum virōrum expressās scrīptōrēs et Graecī et Latīnī relīquērunt! quās ego mihi semper in administrandā rē pūblicā prōpōnēns animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitātiōnē hominum excellentium cōnformābam.

praeceptum, **praeceptī** *n.* advice, instruction, precept
adulēscentia, **adulēscentiae** *f.* youth, adolescence
suādeō, **suādēre**, **suāsī**, **suāsus** recommend, urge, advise; persuade (+ dat.)
†**magnō opere** = **magnopere**
expetō (**ex-** + **petō**) ask for, seek (after)
laus, **laudis** *f.* praise
honestās, **honestātis** *f.* honor, integrity
persequor (**per-** + **sequor**) follow earnestly, pursue
cruciātus, **cruciātūs** *m.* torture, torment
dīmicātiō, **dīmicātiōnis** *f.* battle, fight, struggle
prōflīgātus, **-a**, **-um** dissolute, depraved
cōtīdiānus, **-a**, **-um** daily
impetus, **impetūs** *m.* attack, assault
obiciō (**ob-** + **iaciō**) throw (in front of), throw (in the way of), interpose
plēnus, **-a**, **-um** full
exemplum, **exemplī** *n.* example
vetustās, **vetustātis** *f.* (old) age, antiquity
iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —— lie, rest; lie dead
tenebrae, **tenebrārum** *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
†**accēdō**, *here,* be added
imāgō, **imāginis** *f.* image, likeness
intueor, **intuērī**, **intuitus sum** look upon, gaze at; reflect upon, consider
imitor (1-tr.) practice, copy, imitate
exprimō, **exprimere**, **expressī**, **expressus** squeeze out; portray, depict
scrīptor, **scrīptōris** *m.* writer
Graecus, **-a**, **-um** Greek
Latīnus, **-a**, **-um** Latin
administrō (1-tr.) assist; manage, administer
prōpōnō (**prō-** + **pōnō**) exhibit; keep (before one), bear in mind, hold up (as an example)
cōgitātiō, **cōgitātiōnis** *f.* thinking, contemplation, thought
excellēns, **excellentis** outstanding
cōnformō (1-tr.) shape, fashion

3. Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 18–19

Cicero muses on the divine endowment of all poets.

atque sīc ā summīs hominibus ērudītissimīsque accēpimus cēterārum rērum studia ex doctrīnā et praeceptīs et arte cōnstāre, poētam nātūrā ipsā valēre et mentis vīribus excitārī et quasi dīvīnō quōdam spīritū īnflārī. quā rē suō iūre noster ille Ennius sānctōs appellat poētās, quod quasi deōrum aliquō dōnō atque mūnere commendātī nōbīs esse videantur.

ērudītus, **-a**, **-um** learned, accomplished
doctrīna, **doctrīnae** *f.* teaching, instruction, training
praeceptum, **praeceptī** *n.* advice, instruction, precept
cōnstō (**con-** + **stō**), **cōnstāre**, **cōnstitī**, **cōnstātūrus** stand, be established; consist in, rest on, be composed of (+ **ex** + abl.)
excitō (1-tr.) arouse
quasi (adv.) as if, as it were
spīritus, **spīritūs** *m.* spirit
īnflō (1-tr.) blow on, inspire
Ennius, **Enniī** *m.* Ennius
sānctus, **-a**, **-um** sacred, holy
appellō (1-tr.) name, call
aliquō = *neut. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, some, any
commendō (1-tr.) entrust

4. Cicero, *Post Reditum Ad Populum* 16

Cicero describes to the people the groundswell of support for him while he was in exile. He singles out one man's aid in particular.

ita mē nūdum ā propinquīs, nūllā cognātiōne mūnītum, cōnsulēs, praetōrēs, tribūnī plēbis, senātus, Italia cūncta semper ā vōbīs dēprecāta est, dēnique omnēs quī vestrīs maximīs beneficiīs honōribusque sunt ornātī, prōductī ad vōs ab eōdem, nōn sōlum ad mē cōnservandum vōs cohortātī sunt, sed etiam rērum meārum gestārum auctōrēs, testēs, laudātōrēs fuērunt. quōrum prīnceps ad cohortandōs vōs et ad rogandōs fuit Cn. Pompeius, vir omnium quī sunt, fuērunt, erunt, virtūte, sapientiā, glōriā prīnceps: quī mihi ūnus ūnī prīvātō amīcō eadem omnia dedit quae ūniversae reī pūblicae, salūtem, ōtium, dignitātem.

nūdus, **-a**, **-um** naked, nude; bare; lacking the protection of (+ **ā** + abl.)
propinquus, **-a**, **-um** near, close; *subst.*, relative
cognātiō, **cognātiōnis** *f.* kinship
mūniō, **mūnīre**, **mūniī/mūnīvī**, **mūnītus** fortify; defend, protect
praetor, **praetōris** *m.* praetor (a judicial official both in and outside of Rome)
tribūnus, **tribūnī** *m.* tribune (military commander); (plebeian) magistrate
plēbs, **plēbis** *f.* (the) plebs (the general body of Roman citizens)
cūnctus, **-a**, **-um** all
dēprecor (1-tr.) beg mercy for, intercede for
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last; in short, to sum up
beneficium, **beneficiī** *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit
ornō (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate; show respect (to)
prōdūcō (**prō-** + **dūcō**) bring forth, present
cōnservō (**con-** + **servō**) (1-tr.) keep from danger, save, preserve
cohortor (**co-** + **hortor**) (1-tr.) exhort, encourage
auctor, **auctōris** *m.* source, author
testis, **testis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* witness
laudātor, **laudātōris** *m.* praiser; character witness
prīnceps, **prīncipis** first, foremost, chief; *subst.*, leading man
prīvātus, **-a**, **-um** private
ūniversus, **-a**, **-um** all together, entire, whole
ōtium, **ōtiī** *n.* leisure
dignitās, **dignitātis** *f.* dignity, rank, status

The *Post Reditum Ad Populum* was delivered by Cicero after his return from exile in 57 B.C.E. Cicero gives thanks to the people for their part in his recall, while at the same time recounting his role in important events of the past (notably, of course, the suppression of the Catilinarian conspiracy).

5. Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* I.29

Cotta begins his refutation of Epicurean philosophy with a show of modesty and an old story.

ut enim modo dīxī, omnibus ferē in rēbus sed maximē in physicīs quid nōn sit citius quam quid sit dīxerim. rogēs mē quid aut quāle sit deus; auctōre ūtar Simōnide, dē quō cum quaesīvisset hoc īdem tyrannus Hierō, dēlīberandī sibi ūnum diem postulāvit; cum īdem ex eō postrīdiē quaereret, bīduum petīvit; cum saepius duplicāret numerum diērum admīrānsque Hierō requīreret cūr ita faceret, "quia quantō diūtius cōnsīderō," inquit, "tantō mihi spēs vidētur obscūrior." sed Simōnidēn arbitror (nōn enim poēta solum suāvis vērum etiam cēterōquī doctus sapiēnsque trāditur), quia multa venīrent in mentem acūta atque subtīlia, dubitantem quid eōrum esset vērissimum dēspērāsse omnem vēritātem.

ferē (adv.) nearly, almost
physica, physicōrum *n. pl.* physics, natural philosophy
citius (comparative adv.) more swiftly, more quickly
auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author
Simōnidēs, Simōnidis *m.* Simonides (Greek poet); **Simōnidēn** = *acc. sing.*
tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* tyrant, ruler
Hierō, Hierōnis *m.* Hiero (ruler of Syracuse)
dēlīberō (1-tr.) consider, deliberate
postulō (1-tr.) ask for, request
postrīdiē (adv.) on the following day
bīduum, bīduī *n.* (period of) two days
duplicō (1-tr.) double
admīror (1-tr.) wonder (at), be astonished (at)
requīrō (re- + quaerō), requīrere, requīsiī/requīsīvī, requīsītus seek (again), ask (again)
cōnsīderō (1-tr.) reflect (upon), contemplate, consider
obscūrus, -a, -um obscure, shadowy, indistinct
suāvis, suāve delightful, agreeable
cēterōquī (adv.) in other respects
doctus, -a, -um learned, erudite
acūtus, -a, -um acute, sagacious, intelligent
subtīlis, subtīle fine, subtle
dēspērō (dē- + spērō) (1-tr.) despair of
vēritās, vēritātis *f.* truth

6. Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 74–75

Cato on death

moriendum enim certē est et incertum an hōc ipsō diē. mortem igitur omnibus hōrīs inpendentem timēns quī poterit animō cōnsistere? dē quā nōn ita longā disputātiōne opus esse vidētur, cum recorder nōn L. Brūtum quī in līberandā patriā est interfectus, nōn duōs Deciōs quī ad voluntāriam mortem cursum equōrum incitāvērunt, nōn M. Atilium quī ad supplicium est profectus ut fīdem hostī datam cōnservāret, nōn duōs Scīpiōnēs quī iter Poenīs vel corporibus suīs obstruere voluērunt, nōn avum tuum L. Paulum quī morte luit collēgae in Cannēnsī ignōminiā temeritātem, nōn M. Marcellum cuius interitum nē crūdēlissimus quidem hostis honōre sepultūrae carēre passus est, sed legiōnēs nostrās, quod scrīpsī in Orīginibus, in eum locum saepe profectas alacrī animō et ērēctō unde sē reditūras numquam arbitrārentur. quod igitur adulēscentēs et iī quidem nōn sōlum indoctī, sed etiam rūsticī contemnunt, id doctī senēs extimēscent?

hōra, **hōrae** *f.* hour
impendeō, **impendēre**, ——, —— hang over, threaten
cōnsistō, **cōnsistere**, **cōnstitī**, —— remain firm, be unshaken
disputātiō, **disputātiōnis** *f.* reasoning; argument, dispute
recordor (1-tr.) recall
L. Brūtus, **L. Brūtī** *m.* Lucius (Junius) Brutus
Decius, **Deciī** *m.* Decius (name of two self-sacrificing Roman commanders)
voluntārius, **-a**, **-um** willing, voluntary
cursus, **cursūs** *m.* course, direction
equus, **equī** *m.* horse
incitō (1-tr.) rouse; hasten
M. Atilius, **M. Atiliī** *m.* Marcus Atilius (Regulus)
supplicium, **suppliciī** *n.* punishment
cōnservō (**con-** + **servō**) preserve, maintain
Scīpiō, **Scīpiōnis** *m.* Scipio (name of many prominent Roman generals and statesmen)
iter, **itineris** *n.* road, path
Poenī, **Poenōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Phoenicians, (the) Carthaginians
vel (adv.) even
obstruō, **obstruere**, **obstrūxī**, **obstructus** block, barricade
avus, **avī** *m.* grandfather
L. Paulus, **L. Paulī** *m.* Lucius Paulus
luō, **luere**, **luī**, —— pay for, atone for
collēga, **collēgae** *m.* colleague, partner in office
Cannēnsis, **Cannēnse** of Cannae
ignōminia, **ignōminiae** *f.* disgrace, dishonor
temeritās, **temeritātis** *f.* rashness, foolhardiness,
M. Marcellus, **M. Marcellī** *m.* Marcus Marcellus
interitus, **interitūs** *m.* death
crūdēlis, **crūdēle** cruel
sepultūra, **sepultūrae** *f.* burial
Orīginēs, **Orīginum** *f. pl.* Beginnings
alacer, **alacris**, **alacre** eager; cheerful
ērēctus, **-a**, **-um** attentive; resolute
adulēscēns, **adulēscentis**, **-ium** *m.* young man
indoctus, **-a**, **-um** not learned, uneducated, ignorant
rūsticus, **-a**, **-um** rustic, simple, coarse
contemnō, **contemnere**, **contempsī**, **contemptus** despise, disdain, defy
doctus, **-a**, **-um** learned, erudite
senex, **senis** *m.* old man
extimēscō, **extimēscere**, **extimuī**, —— fear greatly, dread

7. Catullus VIII (choliambic)

The poet has a heart-to-heart talk with himself.

Miser Catulle, dēsinās ineptīre,
et quod vidēs perīsse perditum dūcās.
fulsēre quondam candidī tibī† sōlēs
cum ventitābās quō puella dūcēbat
amāta nōbīs† quantum amābitur nūlla.
ibi illa multa cum iocōsa fīēbant,
quae tū volēbās nec puella nōlēbat,
fulsēre vērē candidī tibī† sōlēs.
nunc iam† illa nōn volt: tū quoque inpotēns nōlī,
nec quae fugit sectāre, nec miser vīve,
sed obstinātā mente perfer, obdūrā.
valē, puella. iam Catullus obdūrat,
nec tē requīret nec rogābit invītam.
at tū dolēbis, cum rogāberis nūlla.
scelesta, vae tē, quae tibī† manet vīta?
quis nunc tē adībit? cui vidēberis bella?†
quem nunc amābis? cuius esse dīcēris?
quem bāsiābis? cui labella mordēbis?
at tū, Catulle, dēstinātus obdūrā.

dēsinō, **dēsinere**, **dēsiī/dēsīvī**, **dēsitum** stop, cease (+ infin.)
ineptiō, **ineptīre**, ——, —— be silly, play the fool
fulgeō, **fulgēre**, **fulsī**, —— shine, gleam
quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly
candidus, **-a**, **-um** white, clear, bright, radiant
†The final **-i** of **tibi** here scans *long*.
sōl, **sōlis** *m.* sun
ventitō (1-intr.) come often, keep coming
†**nōbīs**, Dative of Agent
ibi (adv.) there; then
iocōsus, **-a**, **-um** full of jokes; laughable, funny
†**nunc iam**, *here,* now, at last
impotēns, **impotentis** powerless
sector (1-tr.) keep following, chase
obstinātus, **-a**, **-um** firmly set, determined, resolute
obdūrō (1-tr.) be hardened, hold out, persist, endure
requīrō (**re-** + **quaerō**), **requīrere**, **requīsiī/requīsīvī**, **requīsītus** seek again
invītus, **-a**, **-um** unwilling
at (conj.) but
doleō, **dolēre**, **doluī**, —— suffer, grieve, feel pain
scelestus, **-a**, **-um** criminal, wicked, accursed
vae (interj.) alas! woe!; **vae tē**, woe to you
†The final **-i** of **tibi** here scans *long*.
adeō (**ad-** + **eō**), **adīre**, **adiī**, **aditum** approach
†**bellus**, **-a**, **-um** pretty, charming, lovely
bāsiō (1-tr.) kiss
labellum, **labellī** *n.* (little) lip
mordeō, **mordēre**, **momordī**, **morsus** bite, nibble
dēstinō (1-tr.) determine, resolve

8. Catullus LXXXIV

The poet comments on the pronunciation of a certain Arrius.

"Chommoda" dīcēbat, sī quandō "commoda" vellet†
  dīcere, et "īnsidiās" Arrius "hīnsidiās."
et tum mīrificē spērābat sē esse locūtum,
  cum quantum poterat dīxerat "hīnsidiās."
crēdō, sīc māter, sīc līber avunculus eius,
  sīc māternus avus dīxerat atque avia.
hōc missō in Syriam requiērant omnibus aurēs:
  audībant† eadem haec lēniter et leviter,
nec sibi postillā metuēbant tālia verba,
  cum subitō affertur nuntius horribilis:
Īoniōs flūctūs, postquam illūc Arrius īsset,
  iam nōn Īoniōs esse sed Hīoniōs.

quandō (adv.) at any time, ever
commodum, **commodī** *n.* convenience, advantage
†**vellet**, *iterative subjunctive (indicating repeated action)*, used to want
Arrius, **Arriī** *m.* Arrius
mīrificē (adv.) wonderfully
avunculus, **avunculī** *m.* (maternal) uncle
māternus, **-a**, **-um** maternal
avus, **avī** *m.* grandfather
avia, **aviae** *f.* grandmother
Syria, **Syriae** *f.* Syria
requiēscō, **requiēscere**, **requiēvī**, **requiētum** rest, find relief
auris, **auris**, **-ium** *f.* ear
†**audībant** = **audiēbant**
lēniter (adv.) gently
postillā (adv.) afterward
metuō, **metuere**, **metuī**, —— fear, dread
subitō (adv.) suddenly
afferō (**ad-** + **ferō**), **afferre**, **attulī**, **allātus** bring toward, bring forth; report; **affertur**, *historical use of present tense; translate as perfect*
nuntius, **nuntiī** *m.* messenger; message
horribilis, **horribile** horrible, terrible
Īonius, **-a**, **-um** Ionian
flūctus, **flūctūs** *m.* wave, billow
illūc (adv.) to that place, thither

9. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.1

Caesar begins his commentary on the Gallic war.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit. hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cōtīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Gallia, **Galliae** *f.* Gaul
dīvidō, **dīvidere**, **dīvīsī**, **dīvīsus** separate, divide
incolō, **incolere**, **incoluī**, —— inhabit; dwell, live
Belgae, **Belgārum** *m. pl.* (the) Belgae
Aquītānī, **Aquītānōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Aquitani
lingua, **linguae** *f.* tongue; language
Celtae, **Celtārum** *m. pl.* (the) Celts
Gallī, **Gallōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
appellō (1-tr.) name, call
īnstitūtum, **īnstitūtī** *n.* custom, institution
Garumna, **Garumnae** *f.* (the) Garonne (a river in southwestern Gaul)
flūmen, **flūminis** *n.* river, stream
Matrona, **Matronae** *f.* (the) Marne (a river in north-central Gaul)
Sēquana, **Sēquanae** *f.* (the) Seine (a river in northern Gaul)
proptereā (adv.) because of this; **proptereā quod**, because
cultus, **cultūs** *m.* cultivation; sophistication; luxury
hūmānitās, **hūmānitātis** *f.* (civilized) humanity; humaneness, kindness
absum (**ab-** + **sum**), **abesse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus** be away from
mercātor, **mercātōris** *m.* trader, merchant
commeō (1-intr.) go back and forth, travel
effēminō (1-tr.) emasculate, weaken
pertineō (**per-** + **teneō**), **pertinēre**, **pertinuī**, **pertentus** be aimed at, pertain; **pertinēre** + **ad** + acc., to pertain to
importō (1-tr.) carry in, import
proximus, **-a**, **-um** nearest
Germānī, **Germānōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Germans
trāns (prep. + acc.) across
Rhēnus, **Rhēnī** *m.* (the) Rhine (a river in north-eastern Gaul)
continenter (adv.) continuously
Helvētiī, **Helvētiōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Helvetians
reliquus, **-a**, **-um** remaining, rest (of)
praecēdō (**prae-** + **cēdō**) (tr.) excel, surpass
ferē (adv.) almost, nearly
cōtīdiānus, **-a**, **-um** daily
contendō, **contendere**, **contendī**, **contentum** struggle, strive
prohibeō (**prō-** + **habeō**), **prohibēre**, **prohibuī**, **prohibitus** prevent, keep off, exclude

10. Vergil, *Aeneid* I.1–11

The opening lines of the *Aeneid*

Arma virumque canō, Troiae quī prīmus ab ōrīs
Ītaliam, fātō profugus, Lāvīnaque vēnit
lītora, multum ille et terrīs iactātus et altō
vī superum, saevae memorem Iūnōnis ob īram.
multa quoque et bellō passus, dum conderet urbem
īnferretque deōs Latiō; genus unde Latīnum
Albānīque patrēs atque altae moenia Rōmae.
Mūsa, mihī† causās memorā, quō nūmine laesō
quidve dolēns rēgīna deum tot volvere cāsūs
īnsignem pietāte virum, tot adīre labōrēs
impulerit. tantaene animīs caelestibus īrae?

ōra, **ōrae** *f.* shore, coast
profugus, **-a**, **-um** fugitive, fleeing; *subst.*, exile; refugee
Lāvīnus, **-a**, **-um** Lavinian, of Lavinium (a town in central Italy)
lītus, **lītoris** *n.* shore, beach
iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment
superī, **superōrum** *m. pl.* gods above; **superum** = **superōrum**
memor, **memoris** mindful, remembering
condō, **condere**, **condidī**, **conditus** found
Latium, **Latiī** *n.* Latium (an area in central Italy)
Latīnus, **-a**, **-um** Latin, of Latium
Albānus, **-a**, **-um** Alban, of Alba Longa (a town in central Italy)
Mūsa, **Mūsae** *f.* Muse
†The final **-i** of **mihi** here scans *long*.
memorō (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell
nūmen, **nūminis** *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen
laedō, **laedere**, **laesī**, **laesus** injure, harm; offend
-ve (enclitic conj.) or
doleō, **dolēre**, **doluī**, —— suffer; grieve (over), feel pain (at)
volvō, **volvere**, **volvī**, **volūtus** turn, turn over, roll; undergo
īnsignis, **īnsigne** distinguished, remarkable
pietās, **pietātis** *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety
adeō (**ad-** + **eō**), **adīre**, **adiī**, **aditum** approach; encounter; undertake
impellō (**in-** + **pellō**), **impellere**, **impulī**, **impulsus** strike against, beat; impel, drive
caelestis, **caeleste**, heavenly, divine

11. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.3–13

Addressing Dido, queen of Carthage, Aeneas begins his narrative of the fall of Troy.

īnfandum, rēgīna, iubēs renovāre dolōrem,
Troiānās ut† opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum
ēruerint Danaī, quaeque ipse miserrima vīdī
et quōrum pars magna fuī. quis tālia fandō
Myrmidonum Dolopumve aut dūrī mīles Ulīxī
temperet ā lacrimīs? et iam nox ūmida caelō
praecipitat suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs.
sed sī tantus amor cāsūs cognōscere nostrōs
et breviter Troiae suprēmum audīre labōrem,
quamquam animus meminisse horret lūctūque refūgit,
incipiam. . . .

īnfandus, -a, -um unspeakable
renovō (1-tr.) restore, renew, refresh, revive
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
Troiānus, -a, -um Trojan
†**ut**, *here* (interrog adv.), how
ops, opis *f.* power; *pl.,* power, resources, wealth
lāmentābilis, lāmentābile lamentable, arousing lamentation
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
ēruō, ēruere, ēruī, ērutus uproot; destroy utterly
Danaī, Danaōrum *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks
for (1-tr.) speak, utter
Myrmidones, Mymidonum *m. pl.* (the) Myrmidons (a people of Thessaly, followers of Achilles)
Dolopes, Dolopum *m. pl.* (the) Dolopes (a Greek people from Thessaly)
-ve (enclitic conj.) or
Ulīxēs, Ulīxī *m.* Ulysses (Odysseus)
temperō (1-tr.) restrain, hold back, refrain
lacrima, lacrimae *f.* tear
ūmidus, -a, -um wet, moist; rainy
praecipitō (1-tr.) throw *or* hurl headlong; *intr.,* fall headlong, plunge
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus recommend, urge, advise
sīdus, sīderis *n.* star
somnus, somnī *m. sing. or pl.,* sleep
suprēmus, -a, -um final, last
horreō, horrēre, horruī, —— stand up, bristle; tremble, shudder
lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning
refugiō (**re-** + **fugiō**) (turn and) flee, run away; recoil

12. Horace, *Carmina* I.22 (Sapphic strophe)

The poet has special protection from dangers.

Integer vītae scelerisque pūrus
nōn eget Maurīs iaculīs neque arcū
nec venēnātīs gravidā sagittīs,
  Fusce, pharetrā,

sīve per Syrtīs iter aestuōsās
sīve factūrus per inhospitālem
Caucasum vel quae loca fābulōsus
  lambit Hydaspēs.

namque mē silvā lupus in Sabīnā,
dum meam cantō Lalagēn et ultrā
terminum cūrīs vagor expedītīs,
  fūgit inermem,

integer, **integra**, **integrum** untouched, whole; sound; blameless, virtuous
pūrus, **-a**, **-um** clean, pure, unstained
egeō, **egēre**, **eguī**, —— lack, want, need (+ abl.)
Maurus, **-a**, **-um** Moorish, Moroccan
iaculum, **iaculī** *n.* javelin
arcus, **arcūs** *m.* bow
venēnātus, **-a**, **-um** filled with poison, poisonous
gravidus, **-a**, **-um** heavy, laden
sagitta, **sagittae** *f.* arrow
Fuscus, **Fuscī** *m.* Fuscus
pharetra, **pharetrae** *f.* quiver
sīve (conj.) or if; **sīve . . . sīve . . . ,** whether . . . or if . . .
Syrtis, **Syrtis**, **-ium** *f. sing. or pl.,* Syrtis (the name of a sandbar on the coast between Carthage and Cyrene)
iter, **itineris** *n.* journey
aestuōsus, **-a**, **-um** full of heat, burning, very hot
inhospitālis, **inhospitāle** inhospitable
Caucasus, **Caucasī** *m.* (the) Caucasus mountains
vel (conj.) or
fābulōsus, **-a**, **-um** full of fables; celebrated in fable
lambō, **lambere**, ——, —— lick, lap
Hydaspēs, **Hydaspis** *m.* (the) Hydaspes (a tributary of the Indus River)
silva, **silvae** *f.* forest
lupus, **lupī** *m.* wolf
Sabīnus, **-a**, **-um** Sabine (of a territory and people northeast of Rome)
cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
Lalagē, **Lalagēs** *f.* Lalage; **Lalagēn** = *acc. sing.*
ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond, past, over, across
terminus, **terminī** *m.* boundary line, boundary, limit
vagor (1-intr.) wander
expediō, **expedīre**, **expediī/expedīvī**, **expedītus** let loose, set free; fetch out, unpack
inermis, **inerme** unarmed, defenseless

quāle portentum neque mīlitāris
Dauniās lātīs alit aesculētīs
nec Iubae tellūs generat, leōnum
ārida nūtrīx.

pōne mē pigrīs ubi nūlla campīs
arbor aestīvā recreātur aurā,
quod latus mundī nebulae malusque
Iuppiter urget,

pōne sub currū nimium propinquī
sōlis, in terrā domibus negātā:
dulce rīdentem Lalagēn amābō,
dulce loquentem.

portentum, **portentī** *n.* sign, omen, portent
mīlitāris, **mīlitāre** military; warlike
Dauniās *fem. sing. nom. of adj. used substantively,* Daunia, Apulia (a province of southeast Italy)
lātus, **-a**, **-um** broad, wide
alō, **alere**, **aluī**, **al(i)tus** feed, nourish, support
aesculētum, **aesculētī** *n.* oak forest
Iuba, **Iubae** *m.* Juba (a Numidian king)
tellūs, **tellūris** *f.* earth, land
generō (1-tr.) beget, create, produce
leō, **leōnis** *m.* lion
āridus, **-a**, **-um** dry; parched
nūtrīx, **nūtrīcis** *f.* nurse
piger, **pigra**, **pigrum** sluggish, inactive; unfruitful
arbor, **arboris** *f.* tree
aestīvus, **-a**, **-um** of summer
recreō (1-tr.) revive, refresh
aura, **aurae** *f.* breeze
latus, **lateris** *n.* side, flank
mundus, **mundī** *m.* universe, world
nebula, **nebulae** *f.* mist, fog, cloud
urgeō, **urgēre**, **ursī**, —— weigh down; press hard; threaten
currus, **currūs** *m.* chariot
nimium (adv.) too much, excessively
propinquus, **-a**, **-um** near, close
sōl, **sōlis** *m.* sun
negō (1-tr.) deny
dulce (adv.) sweetly, pleasantly
rīdeō, **rīdēre**, **rīsī**, **rīsus** smile, laugh
Lalagē, ***Lalagēs** *f.* Lalage; **Lalagēn** = *acc. sing.*

13. Horace, *Ars Poētica* 136–55

The poet gives advice about poetic beginnings to the potential writer.

nec sīc incipiēs, ut scrīptor cyclicus ōlim:
"Fortūnam Priamī cantābō et nōbile bellum."
quid dignum tantō feret hic prōmissor hiātū?
parturient montēs, nāscētur rīdiculus mūs.
quantō rēctius hic, quī nīl mōlītur ineptē:
"Dīc mihi, Mūsa, virum, captae post tempora Troiae
quī mōrēs hominum multōrum vīdit et urbēs."
nōn fūmum ex fulgōre, sed ex fūmō dare† lūcem
cōgitat† ut speciōsa dehinc mīrācula prōmat,
Antiphatēn Scyllamque et cum Cyclōpe Charybdim;
nec reditum Diomēdis ab interitū Meleagrī
nec geminō bellum Troiānum ordītur ab ōvō:
semper ad ēventum festīnat et in mediās rēs
nōn secus ac nōtās audītōrem rapit et quae

scrīptor, **scrīptōris** *m.* writer
cyclicus, **-a**, **-um** of the epic cycle of poems, cyclic
ōlim (adv.) once, formerly
Priamus, **Priamī** *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
nōbilis, **nōbile** noble; remarkable; famous
prōmissor, **prōmissōris** *m.* promiser, guarantor
hiātus, **hiātūs** *m.* gaping, (wide) opening, chasm
parturiō, **parturīre**, ——, —— be pregnant with, be in labor
rīdiculus, **-a**, **-um** laughable, silly, ridiculous
mūs, **mūris** *m.* mouse
rēctē rightly, correctly
mōlior, **mōlīrī**, **mōlītus sum** plan, set in motion, begin
ineptē (adv.) improperly, inappropriately
Mūsa, **Mūsae** *f.* Muse
fūmus, **fūmī** *m.* smoke, fumes
fulgor, **fulgōris** *m.* brightness, radiance, splendor
†**dō**, *here,* bring forward, produce
†**cōgitō**, *here,* have in mind, plan (+ infin.)
speciōsus, **-a**, **-um** attractive; spectacular, splendid
dehinc (adv.) after this, later, at a later stage
mīrāculum, **mīrāculī** *n.* amazing object, marvel, wonder
prōmō, **prōmere**, **prōmpsī**, **prōmptus** bring forth, bring into view
Antiphatēs, **Antiphatae** *m.* Antiphates (king of the Laestrygones, who tried to kill Odysseus)
Scylla, **Scyllae** *f.* Scylla (a sea monster)
Cyclōps, **Cyclōpos/Cyclōpis** *m.* (the) Cyclops (Polyphemus)
Charybdis, **Charybdis** *f.* Charybdis (a whirlpool); **Charybdim** = *acc. sing.*
reditus, **reditūs** *m.* return; homecoming
Diomēdēs, **Diomēdis** *m.* Diomedes (one of the Greek heroes at Troy)
interitus, **interitūs** *m.* death, demise
Meleager, **Meleagrī** *m.* Meleager (whose story is told by Phoenix in the *Iliad*)
geminus, **-a**, **-um** twin-born, twin
Troiānus, **-a**, **-um** Trojan
ordior, **ordīrī**, **orsus sum** embark on, begin (to speak or write of)
ōvum, **ōvī** *n.* egg
ēventus, **ēventūs** *m.* outcome, denouement
festīnō (1-intr.) hasten, proceed swiftly
secus (adv.) otherwise, differently; **nōn secus ac**, not differently than, exactly as if
audītor, **audītōris** *m.* hearer, listener
rapiō, **rapere**, **rapuī**, **raptus** tear away, carry off; snatch up

dēspērat tractāta nitēscere posse relinquit
atque ita mentītur, sīc vērīs falsa remiscet,
prīmō nē medium, mediō nē discrepet īmum.
tū, quid ego et populus mēcum dēsīderet audī
sī plausōris egēs aulaea manentis et ūsque
sessūrī dōnec cantor "vōs plaudite" dīcat.

dēspērō (**dē-** + **spērō**) (1-tr.) despair (of)
tractō (1-tr.) keep on dragging; deal with, discuss, treat
nitēscō, **nitēscere**, ——, —— begin to shine, become bright
mentior, **mentīrī**, **mentītus sum** lie, tell a lie
remisceō, **remiscēre**, ——, **remixtus** mix
discrepō, **discrepāre**, **discrepuī/discrepāvī**, —— be out of harmony (with)
īmus, **-a**, **-um** lowest, bottom (of); last, final
dēsīderō (1-tr.) long for, desire
plausor, **plausōris** *m.* one who applauds
egeō, **egēre**, **eguī**, —— be needy, lack, need (+ gen.)
aulaeum, **aulaeī** *n.* curtain (of a theater)
ūsque (adv.) continuously
sedeō, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessūrus** sit, be seated
cantor, **cantōris** *m.* singer (the person playing and singing the musical parts of a play)
plaudō, **plaudere**, **plausī**, **plausus** clap the hands, applaud

14. Propertius I.1–8

The poet describes how he came to be in love with Cynthia.

Cynthia prīma suīs miserum mē cēpit ocellīs,
contāctum nūllīs ante cupīdinibus.
tum mihi cōnstantis dēiēcit lūmina fastūs
et caput impositīs pressit Amor pedibus,
dōnec mē docuit castās ōdisse puellās
improbus et nūllō vīvere cōnsiliō.
ei mihi, iam tōtō furor hic nōn dēficit annō,
cum tamen adversōs cōgor habēre deōs.

ocellus, **ocellī** *m.* (little) eye
contingō, **contingere**, **contigī**, **contāctus** touch
cupīdō, **cupīdinis** *f.* desire
cōnstāns, **cōnstantis** firm, constant
dēiciō (**dē-** + **iaciō**) throw down, cast down
fastus, **fastūs** *m.* pride, haughtiness, arrogance
caput, **capitis** *n.* head
impōnō (**in-** + **pōnō**) place *or* impose (on)
premō, **premere**, **pressī**, **pressus** press (hard); overpower
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
doceō, **docēre**, **docuī**, **doctus** teach
castus, **-a**, **-um** chaste
improbus, **-a**, **-um** wicked, shameless; relentless
ei (interj.) alas!; **ei mihi**, woe is me
furor, **furōris** *m.* madness; passion
dēficiō (**dē-** + **faciō**) let down, fail; subside
adversus, **-a**, **-um** opposite, hostile, adverse
cōgō (**co-** + **agō**), **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctus** drive together, force, compel

15. Propertius II.12

The poet ponders the artistic depiction of Love.

Quīcumque ille fuit puerum quī pīnxit Amōrem,
  nōnne putās mīrās hunc habuisse manūs?
is prīmum vīdit sine sēnsū vīvere amantēs,
  et levibus cūrīs magna perīre bona.
īdem nōn frūstrā ventōsās addidit ālās,
  fēcit et† hūmānō corde volāre deum:
scīlicet alternā quoniam iactāmur in undā,
  nostraque nōn ūllīs permanet aura locīs.
et meritō hāmātīs manus est armāta sagittīs,
  et pharetra ex umerō Cnōsia utrōque† iacet:
ante ferit quoniam tūtī quam cernimus hostem,
  nec quisquam ex illō vulnere sānus abit.
in mē tēla manent, manet et puerīlis imāgō:
  sed certē pennās perdidit ille suās;
ēvolat heu nostrō quoniam dē pectore nusquam,
  assiduusque meō sanguine bella gerit.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever
pingō, pingere, pīnxī, pictus paint, represent, depict
mīrus, -a, -um marvelous
frūstrā (adv.) in vain
ventōsus, -a, -um windy, full of wind; light, nimble
addō (**ad-** + **dō**) add
āla, ālae *f.* wing
†**et** in poetry is frequently placed in the position of **-que**.
hūmānus, -a, -um human
cor, cordis *n.* heart
volō (1-intr.) fly
scīlicet (adv.) of course, no doubt, obviously
alternus, -a, -um alternating
iactō (1-tr.) throw, toss; harass, torment
unda, undae *f.* wave
permaneō (**per-** + **maneō**) stay, remain; last long, endure
aura, aurae *f.* breeze
meritō (adv.) deservedly, with good reason
hāmātus, -a, -um hooked, barbed
armō (1-tr.) equip (with arms), arm
sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow
pharetra, pharetrae *f.* quiver
umerus, umerī *m.* shoulder
Cnōsius, -a, -um of Cnossos (the ancient capital of Crete); Cretan
†**utrōque** = *masc. sing. abl. of indef. adj.*, each (of two)
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; hang
feriō, ferīre, ——, —— strike, hit
tūtus, -a, -um safe
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus distinguish; perceive
quisquam = *masc./fem. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, anyone
sānus, -a, -um healthy, sane, sound
puerīlis, puerīle boyish, youthful
imāgō, imāginis *f.* image, likeness
penna, pennae *f.* wing
ēvolō (1-intr.) fly out
nusquam (adv.) nowhere; on no occasion
assiduus, -a, -um continually present, busy; diligent, persistent
sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood

quid tibi iūcundumst siccīs habitāre medullīs?
sī pudor est, aliō† trāice tēla, puer!
intāctōs istō satius temptāre venēnō:
nōn ego, sed tenuis vāpulat umbra mea.
quam sī perdideris, quis erit quī tālia cantet,
(haec mea Mūsa levis glōria magna tuast),
quī caput et digitōs et lūmina nigra puellae
et canat ut† soleant molliter īre pedēs?

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
siccus, -a, -um dry
habitō (1-intr.) dwell, live; stay, remain
medulla, medullae *f.* bone marrow; *pl.*, vitals, innards
pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty
†**aliō**, *here* (adv.) to another place, elsewhere
trāiciō (trāns- + iaciō) pierce; shoot
intāctus, -a, -um untouched, uninjured; untried
satius (comparative adj.) more satisfying, better; **satius** = *neut. sing. nom.*
temptō (1-tr.) touch; try, test; attack, assail
venēnum, venēnī *n.* poison
tenuis, tenue thin, meager, slight; poor
vāpulō, vāpulāre, vāpulāvī, —— be beaten, be flogged
cantō (1-tr.) sing (of)
Mūsa, Mūsae *f.* Muse
caput, capitis *n.* head
digitus, digitī *m.* finger
niger, nigra, nigrum dark, black
†**ut**, *here* (interrog. adv.) how
molliter (adv.) gently, softly, mildly
pēs, pedis *m.* foot

16. Propertius II.15.31–40

After a night of passion, the poet declares that he will love Cynthia come what may.

terra prius falsō partū dēlūdet arantīs,
et citius nigrōs Sōl agitābit equōs,
flūminaque ad caput incipient revocāre liquōrēs,
āridus et† siccō gurgite piscis erit,
quam possim nostrōs aliō† trānsferre dolōrēs:
huius erō vīvus, mortuus huius erō.
quod† mihi sī† interdum tālīs concēdere noctēs
illa velit, vītae longus et annus erit.
sī dabit et multās, fīam immortālis in illīs:
nocte ūnā quīvīs vel deus esse potest.

partus, partūs *m.* birth; offspring; crop
dēlūdō, dēlūdere, dēlūsī, dēlūsus play false, mock, deceive
arō (1-tr.) plough, till
citius (comparative adv.) more quickly
niger, nigra, nigrum dark, black
Sōl, Sōlis *m.* Sun
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; drive
equus, equī *m.* horse
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream
caput, capitis *n.* head; source
revocō (1-tr.) call back
liquor, liquōris *m.* fluid, liquid; water
āridus, -a, -um dry; parched
†**et** in poetry is frequently placed in the position of **-que**.
siccus, -a, -um dry
gurges, gurgitis *m.* swirling water, eddy, whirlpool
piscis, piscis, -ium *m.* fish
†**aliō**, *here* (adv.) to another place, elsewhere
trānsferō (trāns- + **ferō), trānsferre, trānstulī, trānslātus** carry across, transfer
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
vīvus, -a, -um living, alive
†**quod . . . sī** but if
interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally
concēdō (con- + **cēdō)** (tr.) concede, grant
quīvīs = *masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, anyone you wish, anyone at all
vel (adv.) even

17. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* XIII.361–69

Odysseus boasts to Ajax, his rival for Achilles' armor, about the differences between them.

. . . tibi dextera bellō
ūtilis, ingenium est quod eget moderāmine nostrō;
tū vīrēs sine mente geris, mihi cūra futūrī;
tū pugnāre potes, pugnandī tempora mēcum
ēligit Atrīdēs; tū tantum corpore prōdes, 365
nōs animō; quantōque ratem quī temperat anteit[4]
rēmigis officium, quantō dux mīlite maior,
tantum ego tē superō. nec nōn† in corpore nostrō
pectora† sunt potiōra manū: vigor omnis in illīs.

dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum** right; *fem. subst.*, right hand; **dextera** = **dextra**
ūtilis, **ūtile** useful
egeō, **egēre**, **eguī**, —— need, lack (+ abl.)
moderāmen, **moderāminis** *n.* control, guidance
ēligō (**ē-** + **legō**), **ēligere**, **ēlēgī**, **ēlēctus** select, choose
Atrīdēs, **Atrīdae** *m.* son of Atreus (either Agamemnon or Menelaus)
prōsum (**prō-** + **sum**), **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, **prōfutūrus** be helpful, be of use, be good (for); **prōdes** = *2nd sing. pres. act. indic.*
ratis, **ratis**, **-ium** *f.* boat, ship
temperō (1-tr.) restrain, hold back; control
anteeō (**ante-** + **eō**), **anteīre**, **anteiī/anteīvī**, —— go before; be better than, surpass
rēmex, **rēmigis** *m.* oarsman, rower
officium, **officiī** *n.* obligation; duty, task
†**nec nōn**, *here,* likewise
†**pectora**, *here,* intellectual faculties
potior, **potius** more powerful; more precious
vigor, **vigōris** *m.* liveliness, activity, vigor

4. The short vowels **-e-** and **-i-** of **anteit** are pronounced as the diphthong **-ei-**.

18. Ovid, *Trīstia* III.7.45–52

The poet in exile predicts his own fate.

ēn ego, cum patriā caream vōbīsque† domōque,
  raptaque sint adimī quae potuēre mihi,
ingeniō tamen ipse meō comitorque fruorque:
  Caesar in† hoc potuit iūris habēre nihil.
quīlibet hanc saevō vītam mihi fīniat ēnse,
  mē tamen extīnctō fāma superstes erit,
dumque suīs victrīx septem dē montibus orbem
  prōspiciet domitum Martia Rōma, legar.

ēn (interj.) behold! look!
†**vōbīs** refers to all Ovid's friends and acquaintances in Rome.
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus tear away, carry off
adimō, adimere, adēmī, adēmptus remove, take away
comitō (1-tr.) accompany, attend
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
†**in**, *here*, over
quīlibet = *masc. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, anyone (it pleases)
fīniō, fīnīre, fīniī/fīnīvī, fīnītus define; end, finish
ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword
ex(s)tinguō, ex(s)tinguere, ex(s)tīnxī, ex(s)tīnctus extinguish; annihilate, kill
superstes, superstitis remaining alive, surviving
victrīx, victrīcis *f.* conqueror, victor
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; world
prōspiciō, prōspicere, prōspexī, prōspectus survey, watch over, look out over
domō, domāre, domuī, domitus subdue, tame
Martius, -a, -am of *or* belonging to Mars, Martial

19. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* I.56.9

The last princes of the Tarquins went to Delphi, the seat of Apollo's oracle, in order to ask a question on behalf of their father. They took with them a lowly Roman, M. Brutus. The historian describes a surprising turn of events.

is† tum ab Tarquiniīs ductus Delphōs, lūdibrium vērius quam comes, aureum baculum inclūsum corneō cavātō ad id baculō tulisse dōnum Apollinī dīcitur, per ambāgēs effigiem ingeniī suī. quō postquam ventum est, perfectīs patris mandātīs cupīdō incessit animōs iuvenum scīscitandī ad quem eōrum rēgnum Rōmānum esset ventūrum. ex īnfimō specū vōcem redditam ferunt: imperium summum Rōmae habēbit quī vestrum prīmus, ō iuvenēs, ōsculum mātrī tulerit. Tarquiniī, ut Sextus, quī Rōmae relictus fuerat, ignārus respōnsī† expersque imperiī esset, rem summā ope tacērī iubent;† ipsī inter sē uter prior, cum Rōmam redīsset, mātrī ōsculum daret, sortī permittunt.† Brūtus aliō† ratus spectāre Pȳthicam vōcem, velut sī prōlāpsus cecidisset, terram ōsculō contigit, scīlicet quod ea commūnis māter omnium mortālium esset.

†**is** refers to M. Brutus.
Tarquinius, **Tarquiniī** *m.* Tarquinius (any male member of the Tarquin family)
Delphī, **Delphōrum** *m. pl.* Delphi
lūdibrium, **lūdibriī** *n.* plaything, toy; laughingstock
comes, **comitis** *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade
aureus, **-a**, **-um** golden, made of gold
baculum, **baculī** *n.* staff, walking stick
inclūdō, **inclūdere**, **inclūsī**, **inclūsus** enclose, seal
corneus, **-a**, **-um** made of cornel wood
cavō (1-tr.) hollow out, make hollow
ambāgēs, **ambāgum** *f. pl.* roundabout path
effigiēs, **effigiēī** *f.* representation, statue; symbol
mandātum, **mandātī** *n.* order, instruction
cupīdō, **cupīdinis** *f.* desire
incēdō (**in-** + **cēdō**) (tr.) go in, enter; come over
iuvenis, **iuvenis** *m.* young man
scīscitor (1-tr.) try to get to know by asking, inquire
rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* kingdom, realm; kingship, rule
īnfimus, **-a**, **-um** lowest, deepest, lowest part (of), depths (of)
specus, **specūs** *m.* cave, grotto, abyss, hollow
reddō (**red-** + **dō**) give back, return
ōsculum, **ōsculī** *n.* kiss
Sextus, **Sextī** *m.* Sextus (Tarquinius) (one of the sons of Tarquinius Superbus, last king of Rome)
ignārus, **-a**, **-um** not knowing, unaware
†**respōnsum**, **respōnsī** *n.* answer, response
expers, **expertis** having no part (of)
ops, **opis** *f.* power, ability, might, effort
taceō, **tacēre**, **tacuī**, **tacitūrus** be silent, keep silent; leave unmentioned
†**iubent**, **permittunt**, *historical use of present tense; translate as perfect*
sors, **sortis**, **-ium** *f.* lot, portion; destiny
permittō (**per-** + **mittō**) entrust, commit
Brūtus, **Brūtī** *m.* (M.) Brutus (legendary hero of early Rome)
†**aliō**, *here* (adv.) elsewhere, to another place, in another direction
reor, **rērī**, **ratus sum** believe, think, imagine
spectō (1-tr.) look (at), observe; face, point
Pȳthicus, **-a**, **-um** of Pytho (the oracle at Delphi), Pythian, Delphic
velut (conj.) even as, just as
prōlābor, **prōlābī**, **prōlāpsus sum** slide *or* slip forward, slip down
contingō, **contingere**, **contigī**, **contāctus** touch
scīlicet (adv.) of course, no doubt, obviously
commūnis, **commūne** common, shared; held in common

20. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* V.23.1

The aftermath of Camillus's great victory over one of Rome's earliest enemies

Rōmam† ut nuntiātum est Veiōs captōs, quamquam et prōdigia prōcūrāta fuerant et vātum respōnsa† et Pȳthicae sortēs nōtae et, quantum hūmānīs adiuvārī cōnsiliīs potuerat rēs, ducem M. Fūrium maximum imperātōrum omnium lēgerant, tamen, quia tot annīs variē ibi bellātum erat multaeque clādēs acceptae, velut ex īnspērātō inmēnsum gaudium fuit et, priusquam senātus dēcerneret, plēna omnia templa Rōmānārum mātrum grātēs dīs agentium erant.

†**Rōmam** = **Rōmae**
nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report
Veiī, **Veiōrum** *m. pl.* Veii (an ancient town in Etruria)
prōdigium, **prōdigiī** *n.* prophetic sign, omen, portent
prōcūrō (1-tr.) attend to, take care of
vātēs, **vātis**, **-ium** *m.* prophet
†**respōnsum**, **respōnsī** *n.* answer, response
Pȳthicus, **-a**, **-um** of Pytho (oracle at Delphi), Pythian, Delphic
sors, **sortis**, **-ium** *f.* oracular response
hūmānus, **-a**, **-um** human
adiuvō, **adiuvāre**, **adiūvī**, **adiūtus** help, aid
M. Fūrius, **M. Fūriī** *m.* Marcus Furius
variē (adv.) in different ways, in various ways
ibi (adv.) there
bellō (1-intr.) wage war
clādēs, **clādis**, **-ium** *f.* disaster, calamity, loss
velut (conj.) just as, as if
īnspērātus, **-a**, **-um** unhoped for, unexpected; **ex īnspērātō**, unexpectedly
immēnsus, **-a**, **-um** vast, boundless
dēcernō, **dēcernere**, **dēcrēvī**, **dēcrētus** decree
plēnus, **-a**, **-um** full
grātēs, ***grātum** *f. pl.* thanks

21. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXII.49.5

In 216 B.C.E. at Cannae in southern Italy, the Romans suffered one of their greatest military defeats in a battle against Hannibal and his Carthaginian army. In a single day most of the fifty thousand Romans who fought were killed. In the following passage Livy describes a meeting between L. Aemilius Paulus, one of the consuls in charge, and Cn. Lentulus, a military tribune. The final vestiges of the Roman army are being routed.

pepulērunt† tamen iam paucōs superantēs† et labōre ac volneribus fessōs. inde dissipātī omnēs sunt, equōsque ad fugam quī poterant repetēbant. Cn. Lentulus tribūnus mīlitum cum praetervehēns equō sedentem in saxō, cruōre opplētum, cōnsulem vīdisset, "L. Aemilī," inquit, "quem ūnum īnsontem culpae clādis hodiernae deī respicere dēbent, cape hunc equum, dum et tibi vīrium aliquid superest et comes ego tē tollere possum ac prōtegere. nē fūnestam hanc pugnam morte cōnsulis fēceris; etiam sine hōc lacrimārum satis lūctūsque est."

†**pepulērunt**, *subject is the Carthaginians*
†**superō**, *here,* survive; **superantēs**, *supply* **Rōmānōs**
fessus, **-a**, **-um** weary, exhausted, worn out
inde (adv.) from there; thereupon, then
dissipō (1-tr.) disperse, scatter
equus, **equī** *m.* horse
repetō (**re-** + **petō**) seek again, get back
Cn. Lentulus, **Cn. Lentulī** *m.* Cn. (Cornelius) Lentulus
tribūnus, **tribūnī** *m.* tribune, military commander
praetervehō, **praetervehere**, **praetervexī**, **praetervectus** travel past, pass by
sedeō, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessūrus** sit, be seated
saxum, **saxī** *n.* rock, stone
cruor, **cruōris** *m.* (fresh) blood, gore
oppleō, **opplēre**, **opplēvī**, **opplētus** fill completely, fill up; cover completely
L. Aemilius, **L. Aemiliī** *m.* L. Aemilius (Paulus) (consul 216 B.C.E.), one of the Roman leaders at the battle of Cannae
īnsōns, **īnsontis** innocent, not guilty
culpa, **culpae** *f.* guilt, blame
clādēs, **clādis**, **-ium** *f.* disaster, calamity
hodiernus, **-a**, **-um** of this day, today's
respiciō, **respicere**, **respexī**, **respectus** look back at; show concern for; regard
aliquid = *neut. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, something
supersum (**super-** + **sum**), **superesse**, **superfuī**, —— remain, be left, survive
comes, **comitis** *m.* or *f.* companion, comrade
tollō, **tollere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus** lift, raise; take away, carry off
prōtegō, **prōtegere**, **prōtēxī**, **prōtēctus** cover, protect
fūnestus, **-a**, **-um** lamentable, grievous; polluted
pugna, **pugnae** *f.* fight, battle
lacrima, **lacrimae** *f.* tear
lūctus, **lūctūs** *m.* mourning

22. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXXVIII.23.1

In 278 B.C.E. many Gauls had migrated to Asia Minor. Livy reports the terror of the Gauls after the Romans break into their camp during the Macedonian wars in 189.

patentibus iam portīs, priusquam irrumperent victōrēs, fuga ē castrīs Gallōrum in omnēs partēs facta est. ruunt caecī per viās, per invia; nūlla praecipitia saxa, nūllae rūpēs obstant; nihil praeter hostem metuunt; itaque plērīque praecipitēs per vāstam altitūdinem prōlāpsī aut dēbilitātī exanimantur. cōnsul captīs castrīs dīreptiōne praedāque abstinet mīlitem; . . .

pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open
porta, portae *f.* gate
irrumpō, irrumpere, irrūpī, irruptus break in, burst in
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror, victor
Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
ruō, ruere, ruī, —— rush
invius, -a, -um impassable; **invia**, *supply* **loca**
praeceps, praecipitis precipitous, steep; rushing forward, headlong
saxum, saxī *n.* rock, stone
rūpēs, rūpis, -ium *f.* cliff, crag
obstō (ob- + stō), obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus stand in the way
metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread
itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most
vāstus, -a, -um immense, vast
altitūdō, altitūdinis *f.* height; depth
prōlābor, prōlābī, prōlāpsus sum fall forward
dēbilitō (1-tr.) weaken
exanimō (1-tr.) deprive of life, kill
dīreptiō, dīreptiōnis *f.* plundering, pillaging
praeda, praedae *f.* booty, plunder
abstineō (abs- + teneō), abstinēre, abstinuī, abstentus hold back, restrain

23. Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* LXX.6

Part of the philosopher's profile of the wise man

citius morī aut tardius ad rem nōn pertinet, bene morī aut male ad rem pertinet; bene autem morī est effugere male vīvendī perīculum. itaque effēminātissimam vōcem illīus Rhōdiī exīstimō, quī cum in caveam coniectus esset ā tyrannō et tamquam ferum aliquod animal alerētur, suādentī cuidam ut abstinēret cibō, "omnia," inquit, "hominī, dum vīvit, spēranda sunt."

citō (adv.) quickly, soon
tardē (adv.) slowly; late
pertineō (per- + teneō), pertinēre, pertinuī, pertentus extend; pertain
effugiō (ex- + fugiō), effugere, effūgī, —— escape
itaque (adv.) and so, accordingly
effēminātus, -a, -um womanish, effeminate
Rhodius, -a, -um of (the island of) Rhodes, Rhodian
exīstimō (ex- + aestimō) (1-tr.) reckon, consider, think
cavea, caveae *f.* hollow cavity; cage
coniciō (con + iaciō) throw (together), cast
tyrannus, tyrannī *m.* tyrant
tamquam (adv.) just as, as if
ferus, -a, -um wild
aliquod = *neut. sing. acc. of indef. adj.*, some
alō, alere, aluī, al(i)tus feed
suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsus exhort, urge
abstineō (abs- + teneō), abstinēre, abstinuī, abstentus hold back, abstain
cibus, cibī *m.* food

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 13–14

quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit, in quā nēmō est, extrā istam coniūrātiōnem perditōrum hominum, quī tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī nōn ōderit. quae nota domesticae turpitūdinis nōn inusta vītae tuae est? quod prīvātārum rērum dēdecus nōn haeret in fāmā? quae libīdō ab oculīs, quod facinus ā manibus umquam tuīs, quod flāgitium ā tōtō corpore āfuit? cui tū adulēscentulō quem corruptēlārum inlecebrīs inrētissēs nōn aut ad audāciam ferrum aut ad libīdinem facem praetulistī?† quid vērō? nūper cum morte superiōris uxōris novīs nuptiīs domum vacuēfēcissēs, nōnne etiam aliō incrēdibilī scelere hoc scelus cumulāvistī? quod ego praetermittō et facile patior silērī nē in hāc cīvitāte tantī facinoris immānitās aut exstitisse aut nōn vindicāta esse videātur. praetermittō ruīnās fortūnārum tuārum quās omnīs proximīs Īdibus tibi impendēre sentiēs; ad illa veniō quae nōn ad prīvātam ignōminiam vitiōrum tuōrum, nōn ad domesticam tuam difficultātem ac turpitūdinem, sed ad summam rem pūblicam atque ad omnium nostrum vītam salūtemque pertinent.

dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
extrā (prep. + acc.) outside
coniūrātiō, **coniūrātiōnis** *f.* conspiracy
metuō, **metuere**, **metuī**, —— fear, dread
nota, **notae** *f.* mark, sign
domesticus, **-a**, **-um** personal, domestic
turpitūdō, **turpitūdinis** *f.* ugliness; shamefulness
inūrō, **inūrere**, **inussī**, **inustus** burn upon, brand upon (+ dat.)
prīvātus, **-a**, **-um** private
dēdecus, **dēdecoris** *n.* shame, disgrace
haereō, **haerēre**, **haesī**, **haesūrus** cling, stick
libīdō, **libīdinis** *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
facinus, **facinoris** *n.* deed; crime
flāgitium, **flāgitiī** *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace
absum (**ab-** + **sum**), **abesse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus** be absent, be distant
adulēscentulus, **adulēscentulī** *m.* (little) young man
corruptēla, **corruptēlae** *f.* corruption, seduction
illecebra, **illecebrae** *f.* attraction, allurement
irrētiō, **irrētīre**, **irrētiī/irrētīvī**, **irrētītus** trap
fax, **facis** *f.* firebrand, torch
†**praeferō**, *here, means both* "offer" (**ferrum**) *and* "carry in front" (**facem**)
nūper (adv.) recently
superior, **superius** upper, higher; previous
uxor, **uxōris** *f.* wife
nuptiae, **nuptiārum** *f. pl.* marriage, wedding
vacuēfaciō, **vacuēfacere**, **vacuēfēcī**, **vacuēfactus** make empty
incrēdibilis, **incrēdibile** unbelievable
cumulō (1-tr.) pile up, heap
praetermittō (**praeter-** + **mittō**) pass over, omit
sileō, **silēre**, **siluī**, —— be silent; pass over in silence, leave unmentioned
immānitās, **immānitātis** *f.* enormity
ex(s)istō, **ex(s)istere**, **ex(s)titī**, —— exist, arise, appear
vindicō (1-tr.) avenge, punish
ruīna, **ruīnae** *f.* downfall, ruin, destruction
proximus, **-a**, **-um** nearest; most recent, last, next
Īdūs, **Īduum** *m. pl.* (the) Ides (fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth of every other month)
impendeō, **impendēre**, ——, —— hang over, threaten (+ dat.)
ignōminia, **ignōminiae** *f.* dishonor, disgrace
vitium, **vitiī** *n.* vice, fault
difficultās, **difficultātis** *f.* difficulty
pertineō (**per-** + **teneō**), **pertinēre**, **pertinuī**, **pertentus** be aimed at, pertain

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 3

pulchrum est bene facere reī pūblicae, etiam bene dīcere haud absurdum est; vel pāce vel bellō clārum fierī licet; et quī fēcēre et quī facta aliōrum scrīpsēre, multī laudantur. ac mihi quidem, tametsī haudquāquam pār glōria sequitur scrīptōrem et auctōrem rērum, tamen in prīmīs† arduom vidētur rēs gestās scrībere: prīmum quod facta dictīs exaequanda sunt; dein quia plērīque quae dēlicta reprehenderis malevolentiā et invidiā dicta putant, ubi dē magnā virtūte atque glōriā bonōrum memorēs, quae sibi quisque† facilia factū† putat, aequō animō accipit, suprā ea velutī ficta prō falsīs dūcit. Sed ego adulēscentulus initiō, sīcutī plērīque, studiō ad rem pūblicam lātus sum, ibique mihi multa advorsa fuēre. nam prō pudōre, prō abstinentiā, prō virtūte audācia, largītiō, avāritia vigēbant. quae tametsī animus aspernābātur īnsolēns malārum artium, tamen inter tanta vitia inbēcilla aetās ambitiōne conrupta tenēbātur; ac mē, quom ab relicuōrum malīs mōribus dissentīrem, nihilō minus† honōris cupīdō eadem quae cēterōs fāmā atque invidiā vexābat.

haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
absurdus, **-a**, **-um** discordant; inappropriate
vel (conj.) or; **vel . . . vel . . .** , either . . . or . . .
licet, **licēre**, **licuit** or **licitum est** (impersonal verb) it is permitted
tametsī (conj.) notwithstanding that, although
haudquāquam (adv.) by no means whatever, not at all
pār, **paris** equal
scrīptor, **scrīptōris** *m.* writer
auctor, **auctōris** *m.* source, author, producer
†**in prīmīs**, especially, above all; first
arduus, **-a**, **-um** steep; difficult, arduous
exaequō (1-tr.) make equal, equal
dein (adv.) thereupon, then, next
plērīque, **plēraeque**, **plēraque** very many, most
dēlictum, **dēlictī** *n.* offense, crime
reprehendō, **reprehendere**, **reprehendī**, **reprehēnsus** seize, catch; blame, censure; **reprehenderis**, *Potential subjunctive with a generalized second person subject*
malevolentia, **malevolentiae** *f.* ill will, dislike, malevolence
memorō (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell; **memorēs**, *Potential subjunctive with a generalized second person subject*
†**quisque** = *masc./fem. sing. nom. of indef. pron.*, each person
†**factū** = *neut. sing. abl. of verbal noun of* **faciō**, in (respect to) the doing, to do
suprā (prep. + acc.) over, above, beyond
velutī (conj.) even as, just as
fingō, **fingere**, **fīnxī**, **fictus** form, fashion, make; imagine
adulēscentulus, **adulēscentulī** *m.* (little) young man
initium, **initiī** *n.* beginning
sīcutī (conj.) just as
ibi (adv.) there; then
adversus, **-a**, **-um** opposite, hostile, adverse
pudor, **pudōris** *m.* shame, decency, modesty
abstinentia, **abstinentiae** *f.* abstinence; self-restraint, integrity
largītiō, **largītiōnis** *f.* generosity, largess; bribery
avāritia, **avāritiae** *f.* greed, avarice
vigeō, **vigēre**, **viguī**, —— be vigorous, thrive, flourish
aspernor (1-tr.) disdain, reject, despise
īnsolēns, **īnsolentis** unaccustomed, unfamiliar with (+ gen.)
vitium, **vitiī** *n.* fault, vice
imbēcillus, **-a**, **-um** weak, feeble
aetās, **aetātis** *f.* age, time of life
ambitiō, **ambitiōnis** *f.* flattery, adulation; desire for power, ambition
corrumpō, **corrumpere**, **corrūpī**, **corruptus** corrupt, bribe
relicuus, **-a**, **-um** remaining, rest (of)
dissentiō (**dis-** + **sentiō**) differ, disagree
†**nihilō minus** or **nihilōminus** (adv.) no less, just as much
cupīdō, **cupīdinis** *f.* desire
vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.518–32

ipsum autem sūmptīs Priamum iuvenālibus armīs
ut vīdit, "quae mēns tam dīra, miserrime coniūnx,
impulit hīs cingī tēlīs? aut quō ruis?" inquit.
"nōn tālī auxiliō nec dēfēnsōribus istīs
tempus eget; nōn, sī ipse meus nunc adforet Hectōr.
hūc tandem concēde; haec āra tuēbitur omnīs,
aut moriēre simul." sīc ōre effāta recēpit
ad sēsē et sacrā longaevum in sēde locāvit.
ecce autem ēlāpsus Pyrrhī dē caede Polītēs,
ūnus nātōrum Priamī, per tēla, per hostīs
porticibus longīs fugit et vacua ātria lūstrat
saucius. illum ardēns īnfestō vulnere Pyrrhus
īnsequitur, iam iamque† manū tenet et premit hastā.
ut tandem ante oculōs ēvāsit et ōra parentum,
concidit ac multō vītam cum sanguine fūdit.

sūmō, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus** take up, seize; take on, assume
Priamus, **Priamī** *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
iuvenālis, **iuvenāle** youthful
dīrus, **-a**, **-um** dire, dreadful, frightful
coniūnx, **coniugis** *m.* or *f.* spouse; husband; wife
impellō (**in-** + **pellō**), **impellere**, **impulī**, **impulsus** drive, impel
cingō, **cingere**, **cīnxī**, **cīnctus** gird, equip; **cingī**, to gird oneself
ruō, **ruere**, **ruī**, —— rush
dēfēnsor, **dēfēnsōris** *m.* defender, protector
egeō, **egēre**, **eguī**, —— lack, want, need (+ abl.)
adsum (**ad-** + **sum**), **adesse**, **adfuī**, **adfutūrus** be present
Hectōr, **Hectoris** *m.* Hector (son of Priam)
hūc (adv.) to this place, hither
concēdō (**con-** + **cēdō**) concede, grant; withdraw
tueor, **tuērī**, **tuitus/tūtus sum** look at; protect
simul (adv.) at the same time
***effor** (1-tr.) utter, say
recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) take back, receive
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum** sacred
longaevus, **-a**, **-um** of great age, ancient
sēdēs, **sēdis**, **-ium** *f.* seat
locō (1-tr.) place
ēlābor, **ēlābī**, **ēlāpsus sum** slip out, steal away, escape
Pyrrhus, **Pyrrhī** *m.* Pyrrhus (son of Achilles)
caedēs, **caedis**, **-ium** *f.* slaughter
Polītēs, **Polītis** *m.* Polites (a son of Priam)
porticus, **porticūs** *m.* covered walk, colonnade
vacuus, **-a**, **-um** empty
ātrium, **ātriī** *n.* atrium (the main room of a Roman house); *sing. or pl.*, house, palace
lūstrō (1-tr.) roam through, traverse
saucius, **-a**, **-um** wounded
ardeō, **ardēre**, **arsī**, **arsūrus** burn, be on fire
īnfestus, **-a**, **-um** hostile
īnsequor (**in-** + **sequor**) follow closely, pursue, chase
†**iam iamque** now all but
premō, **premere**, **pressī**, **pressus** press hard, overpower
hasta, **hastae** *f.* spear
ēvādō, **ēvādere**, **ēvāsī**, **ēvāsūrus** go out; emerge
ōs, **ōris** *n. sing. or pl.*, mouth; face
parēns, **parentis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* parent; **parentum** = **parentium**
concidō (**con-** + **cadō**), **concidere**, **concidī**, —— fall down (in dying), fall dead
sanguis, **sanguinis** *m.* blood
fundō, **fundere**, **fūdī**, **fūsus** pour out, pour forth, shed

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.490–503

Phoebus amat vīsaeque cupit cōnūbia Daphnēs,
quodque cupit spērat, suaque† illum ōrācula fallunt,
utque levēs stipulae dēmptīs adolentur aristīs,
ut facibus saepēs ardent, quās forte viātor
vel nimis admōvit vel iam sub lūce† relīquit,
sīc deus in flammās abiit, sīc pectore tōtō
ūritur et sterilem spērandō nūtrit amōrem.
spectat inornātōs collō pendēre capillōs
et "quid sī cōmantur?" ait. videt igne micantēs
sīderibus similēs oculōs, videt ōscula, quae nōn
est vīdisse satis; laudat digitōsque manūsque
bracchiaque et nūdōs mediā plūs parte lacertōs;
sī qua† latent, meliōra putat. fugit ōcior aurā
illa levī neque ad† haec revocantis verba resistit:

Phoebus, **Phoebī** *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
cōnūbium, **cōnūbiī** *n. sing. or pl.*, marriage, marriage rites
Daphnē, **Daphnēs** *f.* Daphne; **Daphnēs** = *gen. sing.*
†**sua** refers to **illum**, his own
ōrāculum, **ōrāculī** *n.* divine utterance, oracle
fallō, **fallere**, **fefellī**, **falsus** deceive, trick; fail
stipula, **stipulae** *f.* stalk (of a plant)
dēmō, **dēmere**, **dēmpsī**, **dēmptus** remove, take way; cut off
adoleō, **adolēre**, ——, **adultus** burn (ritually); destroy by fire, burn
arista, **aristae** *f.* beard of barley *or* corn; ear *or* spike (of a plant)
fax, **facis** *f.* firebrand, torch
saepēs, **saepis** *f.* (planted) hedge
ardeō, **ardēre**, **arsī**, **arsūrus** burn, be on fire
viātor, **viātōris** *m.* traveler, passerby
vel (conj.) or; **vel . . . vel . . .**, either . . . or . . .
nimis (adv.) excessively, too
admoveō (**ad-** + **moveō**) move near; **admōvit**, **relīquit**, *translate as present*
†**sub lūce** near daylight, near dawn
flamma, **flammae** *f.* flame
ūrō, **ūrere**, **ussī**, **ustus** burn, scorch, inflame, consume
sterilis, **sterile** producing nothing; futile
nūtriō, **nūtrīre**, **nūtriī/nūtrīvī**, **nūtrītus** feed, nourish; encourage, foster
spectō (1-tr.) look at, observe
inornātus, **-a**, **-um** unadorned, plain
collum, **collī** *n.* neck
pendeō, **pendēre**, **pependī**, —— hang, be suspended
capillus, **capillī** *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
cōmō, **cōmere**, **cōmpsī**, **cōmptus** make beautiful, adorn; do (hair)
aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
micō, **micāre**, **micuī**, —— dart, flicker, flash
sīdus, **sīderis** *n.* star
ōsculum, **ōsculī** *n.* kiss; *pl.*, lips
digitus, **digitī** *m.* finger
bracchium, **bracchiī** *n.* (lower) arm
nūdus, **-a**, **-um** naked, nude
lacertus, **lacertī** *m.* (upper) arm
†**qua** = *neut. nom. pl. of indef. pron.*, any things
lateō, **latēre**, **latuī**, —— hide, lie hidden, be concealed
ōcior, **ōcius** more swift
aura, **aurae** *f.* breeze
†**ad**, *here,* in response to, at
revocō (**re-** + **vocō**) (1-tr.) summon back, call back
resistō, **resistere**, **restitī**, —— halt, stop

§131. Adverbs of Place

Vocabulary

eō (adv.) to that place, thither
eōdem (adv.) to the same place
hīc (adv.) here, in this place; at this time
hinc (adv.) from here, hence; henceforth
hinc . . . hinc . . . on this side . . . on that side . . .
hūc (adv.) to here, hither
ibi (adv.) in that place, there; then, thereupon
illīc (adv.) there, in that place
illinc (adv.) from there, thence
hinc . . . illinc . . . on this side . . . on that side . . .
illūc (adv.) to there, thither
inde (adv.) from that place, from there, thence; from that time, thereupon

MEMORIZE THESE VOCABULARY WORDS. Their meanings will not be given when they appear in the remainder of this book.

Certain common adverbs of place appear in these closely related forms:

Demonstrative	*Interrogative/Relative*
ibi there	
hīc here, in this place	**ubi** where
illīc there, in that place	
inde from there	
hinc from here, hence	**unde** from where, whence
illinc from there, thence	
eō to there	
eōdem to the same place	**quō** to where, whither
hūc to here, hither	
illūc to there, thither	

The adverbs in the column on the left are demonstrative because they point out a place *where, from where,* or *to where,* often in the answer to a question. The adverbs in the column on the right may be used either to ask questions (interrogative) or to correlate with corresponding demonstratives (relative) (cf. §125). For example:

***Unde* vēnistī?**
Whence (*From where*) have you come? (interrogative)
***Illinc* vēnī *unde* pater quoque vēnit.** (demonstrative/relative)
From there I have come *from where* my father also came.
***Ubi* mē stāre iubēbis, *ibi* manēbō.** (relative/demonstrative)
Where me to stand you will order *there* I shall remain.
I shall remain *where* you will order me to stand.

OBSERVATION

Idiomatic English translations of sentences containing both a demonstrative and a relative adverb of place often omit the translation of the demonstrative adverb, as in the second translations above.

Short Readings

1. A slave describes the plans of his master.

   ille in balineās itūrust, inde hūc veniet posteā. (Plautus, *Asināria* 357)

balineae, **balineārum** *f. pl.* baths
itūrust = itūrus est
posteā (adv.) afterward

2. A freed prisoner of war agrees to help his present and former masters.

   prō rotā mē ūtī licet:
   vel ego hūc vel illūc vortor quō imperābitis. (Plautus, *Captīvī* 369–70)

rota, **rotae** *f.* wheel
licet, **licēre**, **licuit** or **licitum est** it is permitted
vel (conj.) or; **vel** . . . **vel** . . . , either . . . or . . .
vertō, **vertere**, **vertī**, **versus** turn

3. The poet addresses a collection of bad poetry that he is about to discard.

   vōs hinc intereā valēte abīte
   illūc unde malum pedem attulistis. (Catullus XIV.21–22)

intereā (adv.) meanwhile
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
afferō (**ad-** + **ferō**), **afferre**, **attulī**, **allātus** bring, convey

4. After a detour to tend to ships damaged in a storm, Caesar resumes his pursuit of the Britons.

   ipse eōdem unde redierat proficīscitur.† (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* V.11)

†**proficīscitur**, *historical use of present tense; translate as perfect*

5. The poet addresses Rome's founder.

   est locus, antīquī Caprae dīxēre† palūdem;
   forte tuīs illīc, Rōmule, iūra dabās. (Ovid, *Fastī* II.491–92)

Caprae palūs, **Caprae palūdis** *f.* the swamp of the She-goat (part of the Campus Martius)
†**dīcō**, *here*, call

6. The historian describes the end of a minor skirmish.

   multīs hinc atque illinc vulneribus acceptīs cum etiam, ut in proeliō iūstō, aliquot cecidissent, nox pugnae fīnem fēcit. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXXII.10.11)

vulnus, **vulneris** *n.* wound
iūstus, **-a**, **-um** just; complete
aliquot (indeclinable adj.) several
pugna, **pugnae** *f.* fight

7. Darius describes the place of the coming battle between himself and Alexander.

   ventum est eō unde pulsīs nē fugae quidem locus est.
   (Curtius Rufus, *Historiae Alexandrī Magnī* IV.14.11)

CHAPTER XIV

Vocabulary

lūna, **lūnae** *f.* moon

➤ **aetās**, **aetātis** *f.* age; lifetime; time
➤ **agmen**, **agminis** *n.* line (of march), column; multitude, throng
auctōritās, **auctōritātis** *f.* authority; influence
nōmen, **nōminis** *n.* name
ōs, **ōris** *n. sing. or pl.*, mouth; face
sōl, **sōlis** *m.* sun

aliquis, **aliquid** (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (§132)
aliquī, **aliqua**, **aliquod** (indef. adj.) some, any (§132)
quis, **quid** (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (§132)
quī, **qua**, **quod** (indef. adj.) some, any (§132)
quisquam, **quicquam** (indef. pron.) anyone, anything (§132)
quisque, **quidque** (**quicque**) (indef. pron.) each *or* every man *or* woman, each *or* every thing (§132)
quīque, **quaeque**, **quodque** (indef. adj.) each, every (§132)

spectō (1-tr.) look (at), observe

➤ **accidō**, **accidere**, **accidī**, —— happen
➤ **efficiō**, **efficere**, **effēcī**, **effectus** make; bring about
metuō, **metuere**, **metuī**, —— fear, dread
➤ **occidō**, **occidere**, **occidī**, **occāsūrus** fall, set; die
➤ **premō**, **premere**, **pressī**, **pressus** press (hard); overpower; check
➤ **opprimō**, **opprimere**, **oppressī**, **oppressus** press on; overwhelm, oppress

➤ **orior**, **orīrī**, **ortus sum** rise, arise

absum, **abesse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus** be absent, be distant
adsum, **adesse**, **adfuī**, **adfutūrus** be present, be near
➤ **cōnferō**, **cōnferre**, **contulī**, **collātus** bring together; compare; direct
➤ **licet**, **licēre**, **licuit** or **licitum est** it is permitted (§137)
➤ **oportet**, **oportēre**, **oportuit** it is proper, it is right (§137)

➤ **cūnctus**, **-a**, **-um** all
➤ **reliquus**, **-a**, **-um** remaining, rest (of)

absēns, **absentis** absent
➤ **vetus**, **veteris** old

➤ **necesse** (indecl. adj.) necessary (§137)

adeō (adv.) to such an extent, to so great an extent, (so) very
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means
➤ **quodsī** (conj.) but if
➤ **vel** (conj.) or;
vel . . . vel . . . , either . . . or . . .
(adv.) even
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly

Vocabulary Notes

- **aetās**, **aetātis** *f.* may mean "age" in the sense of the number of years one has lived or in the sense of the "age" or "period" in which one lives. It may also refer to the "lifetime" of a human being, a particular "time of life" (old age, youth), or "time."
- **agmen**, **agminis** *n.* is a noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb **agō**, and its most general meaning is "a thing being driven." **agmen** may be used of any "mass" of things (water, clouds, etc.) or of a "throng" or "body" of people moving or acting together. It may also carry a more specifically military sense, "(battle-)line" or "column" of troops, both on the march and drawn up for battle.
- **accidō**, **accidere**, **accidī**, —— is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ad-** to **cadō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. **accidō** is often used impersonally and may be accompanied by a Dative of Reference. For its use with Substantive **Ut** clauses see §135.
- **efficiō**, **efficere**, **effēcī**, **effectus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ex-** to **faciō**. For its use with Substantive **Ut** clauses see §135.
- **occidō**, **occidere**, **occidī**, **occāsūrus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **cadō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. While **occidō** may be used of any person or thing that falls, it is commonly used to mean "fall (into grief)," "be ruined," "die" (when the subject is a person), or "set" or "sink" (when the subject is a heavenly body). The present active participle of **occidō—occidēns**, **occidentis**, "setting"—may be used as a masculine substantive to refer to the "west" as a direction or as a part of the known world.
- **premō**, **premere**, **pressī**, **pressus** is used in a wide variety of contexts and may be translated by a number of English equivalents. **premō** may mean "press" in the sense of "exert pressure on" (inanimate objects, parts of the body). It may mean "press (hard)" in the sense of "propel," "drive," or "attack" (spears, people). It may also mean "overpower, overwhelm" (enemies, ships) or "overshadow," "cover" (often used of the sun or moon covered over by clouds or shadows). Finally, it may mean "check," "suppress," or "stop" (bodies of water, actions, voices).
- **opprimō**, **opprimere**, **oppressī**, **oppressus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **premō**, and it exhibits regular vowel weakening. Its meanings and uses are similar to those of the simple verb **premō**. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ALL* COMPOUNDS OF **PREMŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **OPPRIMŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **PREMŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **orior**, **orīrī**, **ortus sum** is a fourth-conjugation, intransitive deponent verb. It may be used of heavenly bodies and mean "rise," or it may mean more generally "arise" or "come into being." In the present indicative it is usually conjugated as a *third*-conjugation i-stem verb (e.g., **oritur**, *not* **orītur**). **orior** has a rare irregular future active participle: **oritūrus**, **-a**, **-um** (cf. **moritūrus**, **-a**, **-um**). The present active participle of **orior—oriēns**, **orientis**, "rising"—may be used as a masculine substantive to refer to the "east" as a direction or as a part of the known world. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **ORIOR** DO *NOT* EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.
- **cōnferō**, **cōnferre**, **contulī**, **collātus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **con-** to **ferō**. The idiom **sē cōnferre** means "to betake oneself," "to go."
- For the third person singular forms that appear in the principal parts of impersonal verbs, such as ***licet***, **licēre**, ***licuit*** or ***licitum est*** and ***oportet***, **oportēre**, ***oportuit***, see §137. Many impersonal verbs have alternate third principal parts formed as impersonal passives (§54).
- The verb **licet** indicates what is legal or permitted. The verb **oportet** indicates what is proper or necessary in accordance with one's duty. **necesse est** means "it is necessary" in the sense of "it is compulsory."
- **cūnctus**, **-a**, **-um** is a synonym of **omnis**, **omne**, but contains more of an idea of "all (joined) together." **cūnctus**, **-a**, **-um** is more commonly found in the plural.
- The adjective **reliquus**, **-a**, **-um** is related to the verb **relinquō**. It often refers to the remaining portion of things or people left over after certain things or people have been mentioned. It may often be translated "rest of."

Rēgīna reliquam vītam bene ēgit.	The queen conducted the rest of (her) life well.

- **vetus**, **veteris** means "old" as opposed to "young," and "old" or "experienced" as opposed to "new." Less commonly, **vetus** is synonymous with **antīquus**, **-a**, **-um** and means "old" in the sense of "of an earlier *or* ancient time." The ablative singular form is usually **vetere**. **vetus** has *no* i-stem features in the plural: its neuter nominative/accusative plural form is **vetera**, its genitive plural form is **veterum**, and its masculine/feminine accusative plural is **veterēs**. **vetus** has an irregular superlative form: **veterrimus**, **-a**, **-um**. MEMORIZE THESE IRREGULAR FORMS.

- The conjunction **quodsī** (sometimes written as two words, **quod sī**) is formed from the Adverbial Accusative of the relative pronoun **quod** (to the extent of which, as to which) and the conjunction **sī**. It nearly always has adversative force and is best translated "but if."
- The conjunction **vel** is used to mark an indifferent choice and thus should be distinguished from **aut**, which indicates mutually exclusive propositions.

Vel tēlō vel ferrō pugnābō.	I shall fight either with a spear or with a sword.

	Derivatives	Cognates
accidō	accident	
aetās	**a**ge; co**eta**neous	**et**ernal; **au**ght; **e**ver; aye; long**e**vity; medi**e**val; **e**on
licet	i**llicit**	
necesse	**neces**sary	
nōmen	**nomin**ate; noun; **nomen**clature	pseud**onym; onoma**topoeia; patr**onym**ic; syn**onym**ous
occidō	occident; **occa**sion	
orior	orient; **ori**gin; ab**ort**	**hor**mone; are; **ear**nest
ōs	**or**al; **os**cillate; **os**tiary; **or**ifice	
premō	re**prim**and; **press**ure; **print**	
sōl	**sol**ar; **sol**arium; para**sol**; **sol**stice	**su**n; **so**uth
spectō	a**spect; spec**ulum; **spec**trum	spy; **espi**onage; tele**scope;** epi**scop**al
vetus	**veter**an; in**veter**ate; **veter**inary	**et**esian

§132. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives

In the sentences "Someone is calling you" and "She is saying something new," "someone" and "something" are indefinite pronouns. An **indefinite pronoun** is a pronoun that does not define or specify the person or thing for which it stands. In the sentences "Some friends will help me" and "Do they have any weapons?" "some" and "any" are indefinite adjectives. An **indefinite adjective** is an adjective that does not define or specify the person or thing that it modifies. There are several indefinite pronouns and adjectives in Latin.

Aliquis, aliquid is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite prefix **ali-** to **quis, quid**. Its declension is identical with that of **quis, quid** except for the neuter plural nominative or accusative (**aliqua**). Its corresponding adjective is **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod**, whose declension is identical with that of **quī, quae, quod** except for the feminine singular nominative (**aliqua**) and the neuter plural nominative or accusative (**aliqua**).

***Aliquem* in forō vīdī.**	I saw *someone* in the forum. (indef. pron.)
Dōnō *aliquō* dōnāberis.	You will be presented with *some* gift. (indef. adj.)

The use of the indefinite pronoun **quis, quid** is limited to subordinate clauses in which this pronoun follows such conjunctions as **sī, nisi, num, nē, ut**, and **cum**. Its corresponding adjective is **quī, qua, quod**, whose declension is identical with that of **quī, quae, quod** except for the feminine singular nominative (**qua**) and the neuter plural nominative or accusative (**qua** or, less commonly, **quae**).

Sī *quis* mē vocet, veniam.	If *anyone* should call me, I would come. (indef. pron.)
Sī virum *quem* amās, dīc mihi.	If you love *any* man, tell me. (indef. adj.)

Quisquam, quicquam is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite suffix **-quam** to **quis, quid**. Its declension is identical with that of **quis, quid** except for the assimilated neuter singular nominative or accusative (**quicquam**). The unassimilated form **quidquam** also appears. The corresponding indefinite adjective for **quisquam, quicquam** is supplied by **ūllus, -a, -um**. **Quisquam, quicquam** is used primarily in sentences *containing or implying negation*.

Nōn *quicquam* tam miserum audīvī. (indef. pron.)
I have not heard *anything* so wretched.
Estne *quisquam* quī Catilīnae crēdat? (indef. pron.)
Is there *anyone* of the sort who trusts Catiline?

OBSERVATION

In the second sentence the use of **quisquam** implies that *no one* trusts Catiline.

Quisque, quidque (quicque) is an indefinite pronoun formed by the addition of the indefinite suffix **-que** to **quis, quid**. Its declension is identical with that of **quis, quid** except for the alternate assimilated neuter singular nominative or accusative (**quicque**). Its corresponding adjective is **quīque, quaeque, quodque**, whose declension is identical with that of **quī, quae, quod**. **quisque** is often used with and placed

immediately after the third-person reflexive pronoun ——, **suī** or the reflexive-possessive adjective **suus, -a, -um**.

***Sua cuique* satis placēbant.** *His own things* were pleasing enough *to each man.*

When **quisque** appears in such sentences, the reflexive pronoun or reflexive-possessive adjective refers to the indefinite pronoun.

When **quisque** appears in the singular or plural with a superlative adjective, the resulting phrase may be translated into English with the plural and the English word "all."

optimus quisque	each best man, all the best men (subj.)
antīquissima quaeque	all the oldest things (subj., d.o.)

Summary of Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives

Pronoun		*Adjective*	
aliquis, aliquid	someone, something; anyone, anything	**aliquī, aliqua, aliquod**	some, any
quis, quid	someone, something; anyone, anything	**quī, qua, quod**	some, any
After **sī, nisi, num, nē**, all the **ali**'s drop away (also after **ut** and **cum**).			
quisquam, quicquam	anyone, anything	**ūllus, -a, -um**	any
Used in negative and virtual negative contexts			
quisque, quidque/ quicque	each/every man/woman; each/every thing	**quīque, quaeque, quodque**	each, every

☛ Drill 132, page 565, may now be done.

§133. Result Clauses

In both English and Latin, the result of an action is reported in a subordinate clause called a **Result clause**. A result may be understood as an event *likely* to follow upon the action of the main verb or as an event *actually occurring* or *actually having occurred*. In English, a Result clause is introduced by the conjunction "that." In Latin, Result clauses are introduced by the conjunction **ut** and have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence. For example:

Tam honestus est *ut eī crēdās*. (likely result)
So honorable is he (*with the result*) *that him you would trust.*
He is so honorable (*with the result*) *that you would trust him.*
Ita dīxerat *ut sententiam intellegerem*. (actual result)
In such a way she had spoken *that (her) opinion (d.o.) I understood.*
She had spoken in such a way *(with the result) that I understood her opinion.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. Result clauses began as independent sentences whose verbs were Potential subjunctives. For example:

Eī crēdās. Tam honestus est. You would trust him. He is so honorable.

Such a paratactic arrangement of two thoughts easily became one sentence: **Tam honestus est ut eī crēdās** (He is so honorable that you would trust him). By the classical period, both likely and actual Result clauses had their verbs in the subjunctive mood, a reflection of the view of the subjunctive as simply the mood appropriate for certain subordinate clauses.

2. Result clauses are negated by **ut . . . nōn . . .**, **ut . . . nēmō . . .**, **ut . . . numquam . . .**, etc. They are not negated by **nē**.

3. The syntax of, for example, **intellegerem** is **imperfect subjunctive, Result clause, secondary sequence**.

4. For a Result clause that reports a *likely* result, as in the first sentence above, the subjunctive verb is translated with the English word "would." For a Result clause that reports an *actual* result, as in the second sentence, the subjunctive verb is translated as if it were indicative. The tense of the translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

Result clauses are usually signaled by an adverb or adjective of degree in the main clause. Such words include:

adeō (adv.) to such an extent	**tālis, tāle**
ita	**tantus, -a, -um**
sīc	**tot**
tam	

OBSERVATION

Occasionally a demonstrative such as **hic**, **iste**, **ille**, or **is** signals a Result clause and should be translated "such (a)." For example:

Hōrum virōrum ea virtūs est ut omnia patī possint.
Of these men such is the courage (with the result) that all things to endure they are able.
The courage of these men is such (with the result) that they are able to endure all things.

When an actual result is reported in past time, a *perfect subjunctive that breaks the rules of sequence* may be used, perhaps to emphasize the actual completion of the action. For example:

Ita dīxerat *ut sententiam intellēxerim*.
She had spoken in such a way *that I actually understood her opinion.*

§134. Relative Clauses of Result

A blend of the idea of a Result clause with the idea of a Relative Clause of Characteristic (§94) is called a **Relative Clause of Result**, in which *both ideas are present*. For example:

Quis est tam fortis *quī sine armīs pugnet?*
Who is of so brave a sort *who without arms fights?*
Who is so brave *that he would fight without arms?*
Nihil est tam difficile *quīn intellegī possit*.
Nothing is of so difficult a sort *that to be understood it is not able.*
Nothing is so difficult *that it is not able to be understood.*

OBSERVATIONS

1. In each sentence the word **tam** signals a Result clause, but the word **quī/quīn** instead of **ut** introduces a Relative Clause of Result. Each relative clause expresses an event that would *potentially or characteristically result* from the main clause.

2. In the second sentence, **quīn** is used to introduce a negative Relative Clause of Result. Compare this use of **quīn** to its use in Relative Clauses of Characteristic (§94).

3. The syntax of, for example, **pugnet** is **present subjunctive, Relative Clause of Result, primary sequence**.

4. The second translations given above, in which the relative pronoun is replaced in English by "that . . . he/it . . . ," are to be preferred for clarity. In addition, the English word "would" may be used in translating the subjunctive verb in a Relative Clause of Result, or the subjunctive verb may be translated as an indicative.

§135. Substantive *Ut* Clauses

A Result clause is an adverbial clause that modifies the action of the main verb as a whole (cf. Purpose clauses). Certain verbs and verb phrases appear with noun clauses called **Substantive Ut clauses**, which function as either subjects or direct objects (cf. Indirect Commands). Some common expressions that introduce Substantive **Ut** clauses are:

accidit	it happens . . . (**accidō, accidere, accidī,** —— happen)
fit	it happens . . .
fierī potest	it is able to happen . . . , it is possible . . .
efficere	to bring it about . . . (**efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus** bring about)
facere	to bring it about . . . , to see to it . . .

OBSERVATION

The first three verbal expressions introduce **subject clauses**. The latter two introduce **object clauses**.

Substantive **Ut** clauses are negated by **ut . . . nōn, ut . . . nēmō**, etc. **Nē** *may* be used when a command or exhortation is being expressed. For example:

Accidit *ut* Caesar cōpiās per prōvinciam *dūceret*.
It happened *that* Caesar (his) troops (d.o.) through the province *was leading*.
It happened *that* Caesar *was leading* his troops through the province.
Efficiam *ut* cīvēs inter sē *nōn pugnent*.
I shall bring it about *that* the citizens among themselves *not fight*.
I shall bring it about *that* the citizens *not fight* among themselves.
Facite *nē* sociōs *relinquātis*, ō mīlitēs.
See to it *that* the allies (d.o.) *you not abandon*, o soldiers.
See to it *that you not abandon* the allies, o soldiers.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Substantive **Ut** clauses always have their verbs in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence.

2. In the first sentence the clause **ut . . . dūceret** functions as the *subject* of the verb **accidit**. The entire subject clause is *what* "happened." The English pronoun "it" merely anticipates and refers to this subject clause.

3. In the second sentence the clause **ut . . . pugnent** functions as the *direct object* of the verb **efficiam**. The entire object clause is *what* "I shall bring about." The English pronoun "it" merely anticipates and refers to this object clause.

4. In the third sentence the Substantive **Ut** clause is introduced by **nē** because the clause is the equivalent of an Indirect Command.

5. The syntax of, for example, **dūceret** is **imperfect subjunctive, Substantive Ut clause, secondary sequence**.

A Substantive **Ut** clause may stand in apposition to a noun or pronoun in order to explain it. It may also be the subject of the verb **sum** with predicates such as **mōs**, **opus**, or **reliquum**. Such a clause may be called an **Explanatory Ut clause**. For example:

Illud ipsum habet cōnsul ut eī reliquī pāreant.
That very thing (d.o.) the consul has, that him the remaining men obey.
The consul has that very thing, that the remaining men obey him.
Est mōs hominum ut nōlint eundem plūribus rēbus esse optimum.
It is the custom of men that they do not want the same man in too many things to be best.
It is the custom of men that they do not want the same man to be best in too many things.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the Explanatory **Ut** clause (**ut . . . pāreant**) is in apposition to and explains the meaning of **illud**.

2. In the second sentence the Explanatory **Ut** clause (**ut . . . optimum**) is the subject of **est** and defines **mōs**, the Predicate Nominative.

☛ Drill 133–135, page 569, may now be done.

§136. *Fore ut* Construction

When a future passive verb is to be expressed in Indirect Statement, a periphrasis[1] is commonly used instead of the rare future passive infinitive.[2] This periphrasis employs the future active infinitive of the verb **sum** (**fore**, **futūrum esse**) and a Substantive **Ut** clause with a verb in the subjunctive according to the rules of sequence. The same construction is used when a future active verb that lacks a fourth principal part is expressed in Indirect Statement. For example:

Caesar dīcit *fore ut* bellum mox *cōnficiātur*.
Caesar says *that it will be that* the war soon *be completed*.
Caesar says *that* the war *will be completed* soon.
Spērābāmus *futūrum esse ut* Caesar bellum mox cōnficere *posset*.
We were hoping *that it would be that* Caesar the war (d.o.) soon to complete *be able*.
We were hoping *that* Caesar *would be able* to complete the war soon.

1. A **periphrasis** (< Greek *periphrazō*, speak around) is a roundabout way of saying something, a circumlocution (< **circumlocūtiō**, speaking around).

2. For the formation of the future passive infinitive see §144, n. 4.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The noun clause introduced by **ut** in each sentence functions as the *subject* of the infinitive **fore** or **futūrum esse** in Indirect Statement. The **-um** ending on **futūrum** is neuter singular accusative to agree with the subject clause. The English pronoun "it" merely anticipates and refers to this subject clause.

2. Substantive **Ut** clauses following **fore** and **futūrum esse** are negated by **ut . . . nōn**, **ut . . . nēmō**, etc.

3. The syntax of, for example, **posset** is **imperfect subjunctive**, **Substantive Ut clause in a fore ut construction**, **secondary sequence**.

4. The second translations given above are to be preferred because they combine the future tense expressed in the infinitives with the actions expressed in the subjunctive verbs. In primary sequence the word "will" and in secondary sequence the word "would" are used.

☛ DRILL 136, PAGE 573, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§137. Impersonal Constructions I: *licet, necesse est,* and *oportet*

An **impersonal verb** is a verb that does not have a personal subject (cf. §54). Certain impersonal verbs that express ideas of *permission, necessity,* or *propriety* have forms in the third person singular, the infinitive, and (less commonly) the perfect passive participle. Three such verbs are:

licet, **licēre**, **licuit** or **licitum est** it is allowed, it is permitted
necesse est it is necessary
oportet, **oportēre**, **oportuit** it is proper, it is right

OBSERVATIONS

1. The first and third principal parts of **licet** and **oportet** are given in the *third person singular* because impersonal verbs appear in that person and number only. **licet** has an alternate third principal part, **licitum est**, formed as an impersonal passive.

2. **necesse est** is actually a compound of the indeclinable neuter singular adjective **necesse** (functioning as a predicate adjective) and a form of the verb **sum**. The form of **sum** may be any third person singular form (**necesse erat**, **necesse sit**, etc.) or an infinitive (**necesse esse**).

These three impersonal verbs frequently appear with a Subject Infinitive (§28), which may have an expressed Subject Accusative (§108). For example:

Licet in urbe *manēre*. (Subject Infinitive)
It is permitted *to remain* in the city.
Necesse est *eōs* in urbe *manēre*. (Subject Accusative, Subject Infinitive)
It is necessary *for them to remain* in the city.
It is necessary *that they remain* in the city.
Oportēbat *eōs* in urbe *manēre*. (Subject Accusative, Subject Infinitive)
It was proper *for them to remain* in the city.
It was proper *that they remain* in the city.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences the syntax of **manēre** is Subject Infinitive. In the second and third sentences the syntax of **eōs** is Subject Accusative.

2. In each translation given above the English word "it" merely anticipates and refers to the Subject Infinitive. The first sentence, for example, may also be translated "To remain in the city is permitted."

Licet and **necesse est** may also appear with a Dative of Reference and a Subject Infinitive. For example:

Liceat *eīs* in urbe *manēre*.	Let it be permitted *to them to remain* in the city.
***Eīs* necesse erat in urbe *manēre*.**	It was necessary *for them to remain* in the city.

OBSERVATION

The Dative of Reference that may appear with **licet** or **necesse est** expresses the *person to whom* an action is permitted or *for whom* an action is necessary. When a Subject Accusative—rather than a Dative of Reference—appears with **licet** and **necesse est**, it expresses the *subject* of the infinitive.

Licet, **necesse est**, and **oportet** also frequently appear with a Jussive subjunctive in parataxis.[3] For example:

Iūs *valeat* necesse est.	*Let* right *be strong* it is necessary. It is necessary *that right be strong*.
Nōlī fugere: mēcum *moriāris* oportet.	Do not flee: with me *die* it is proper. Do not flee: it is proper *that you die* with me.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In these sentences two verbs stand paratactically with no subordination. The second English translations, which include the addition of the English conjunction "that" and make use of the English present subjunctive, are to be preferred for clarity.

2. The syntax of, for example, **moriāris** is **present subjunctive**, **Jussive (in parataxis)**.

☛ Drill 137, page 577, may now be done.

§138. Genitive of Characteristic

The Genitive of Possession is sometimes extended to express the person to whom a certain characteristic belongs. When this occurs, the genitive is called a **Genitive of Characteristic**.[4] For example:

***Sapientis* est pācem petere.**	*Of a wise person* it is peace (d.o.) to seek. It *belongs to a wise person* to seek peace. To seek peace is *characteristic of a wise person*.

The syntax of the italicized word (**sapientis**) is **Genitive of Characteristic**.

3. A Substantive **Ut** clause may rarely appear as the subject of these impersonal verbs.

4. The Genitive of Characteristic is also known as the Predicate Genitive.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Genitive of Characteristic is often well translated with the addition of the word "characteristic" before the "of."

2. Subject Infinitives frequently appear in combination with Genitives of Characteristic.

3. Because the genitives of personal pronouns can be Partitive or Objective Genitive only, the possessive adjectives (in the neuter singular nominative or accusative) are often used to express an idea similar to a Genitive of Characteristic. For example:

Nōn est fugere *meum*.	To flee is not *my thing.* To flee is not *characteristic of me.*

Short Readings

1. A fragment from the poet Naevius

   patī necesse est multa mortālēs mala. (NAEVIUS, *PALLIĀTAE* FRAG. 106)

2. Pseudolus, a crafty slave, criticizes Ballio, a pimp who worships only money.

   deōs quidem, quōs maxumē aequom est metuere, eōs minimī facit.†

   (PLAUTUS, *PSEUDOLUS* 269)

†**facit**, *subject is Ballio*

3. A fragment from the poet Ennius

   quem metuunt ōdērunt; quem quisque ōdit periisse expetit.

   (ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 348)

expetō (**ex-** + **petō**) ask for; desire

4. The character Hegio utters a truism.

   quot hominēs tot sententiae: suos quoique mōs. (TERENCE, *PHORMIŌ* 454)

5. Later writers often cite this fragment spoken by Atreus in a tragedy of the poet Accius. Suetonius reports that Caligula said it about his subjects.

   ōderint dum metuant. (ACCIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 204)

6. A fragment from the satirist

   hominī amīcō et familiārī nōn est mentīrī meum. (LUCILIUS, *SATURAE* FRAG. 953)

familiāris, **familiāre** of one's household; of one's family
mentior, **mentīrī**, **mentītus sum** lie, tell a lie

7. A witticism from Varro

   postrēmō nēmō aegrōtus quicquam somniat tam īnfandum quod nōn aliquis† dīcat philosophus. (VARRO, *MENIPPEAE* FRAG. 122)

postrēmō (adv.) finally
aegrōtus, **-a**, **-um** sick, diseased
somniō (1-tr.) dream (of)
īnfandus, **-a**, **-um** unspeakable
†**aliquis**, *here, indef. pron. used adjectivally,* some
philosophus, **philosophī** *m.* philosopher

8. An example of an effective use of hyperbole

   tantus erat in armīs splendor ut sōlis fulgor obscūrius vidērētur.

   (*RHĒTORICA AD HERENNIUM* IV.44.28)

splendor, **splendōris** *m.* brilliance, brightness
fulgor, **fulgōris** *m.* gleam, brightness, splendor
obscūrus, **-a**, **-um** dim, dark, obscure

9. The twenty-five-year-old Cicero explains why he believes he will win his case.

nōn enim, quem ad modum putātis, omnia sunt in ēloquentiā; est quaedam tamen ita perspicua vēritās ut eam īnfirmāre nūlla rēs possit.

(Cicero, *Prō Quīnctiō* 80)

ēloquentia, ēloquentiae *f.* eloquence; rhetoric
perspicuus, -a, -um clearly visible, plain, self-evident
vēritās, vēritātis *f.* truth
īnfirmō (1-tr.) weaken; lessen; refute

10. Cicero reflects on why men turn to crime.

L. Cassius ille, quem populus Rōmānus vērissimum et sapientissimum iūdicem putābat, identidem in causīs quaerere solēbat cui bonō fuisset.† sīc vīta hominum est ut ad maleficium nēmō cōnētur sine spē atque ēmolumentō accēdere.

(Cicero, *Prō S. Rosciō Amerīnō* 84)

L. Cassius, L. Cassiī *m.* L. Cassius
iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
identidem (adv.) again and again, repeatedly
†**fuisset**, *subject is "it" (any particular crime)*
maleficium, maleficiī *n.* misdeed, crime
ēmolumentum, ēmolumentī *n.* benefit, advantage

11. The orator expresses his confidence to the jury.

sī ūtar ad dīcendum meō lēgitimō tempore, meī lābōris industriae dīligentiaeque capiam frūctum, et hāc accūsātiōne perficiam† ut nēmō umquam post hominum memoriam† parātior, vigilantior, compositior ad iūdicium vēnisse videātur.

(Cicero, *In Verrem I* 1.31)

lēgitimus, -a, -um legal, legitimate
industria, industriae *f.* assiduity, industry
frūctus, frūctūs *m.* profit, return, reward
accūsātiō, accūsātiōnis *f.* accusation, indictment
†**perficiō**, *here*, bring about
†**post . . . memoriam**, since the memory
vigilāns, vigilantis careful, watchful, vigilant
compositus, -a, -um prepared, ready
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment; court

12. After describing another incident in which Verres degraded the local nobility of Sicily, Cicero asks Verres a rhetorical question.

quis tam fuit illō tempore ferreus, quis tam inhūmānus praeter ūnum tē, quī nōn illōrum aetāte, nōbilitāte, miseriā commovērētur? (Cicero, *In Verrem II* 5.121)

ferreus, -a, -um made of iron; hard-hearted, unfeeling
inhūmānus, -a, -um inhumane
nōbilitās, nōbilitātis *f.* renown, nobility, excellence
miseria, miseriae *f.* misery
commoveō (con- + moveō) move

13. After lamenting the dearth of great military leaders, the orator finds consolation.

nunc vērō cum sit ūnus Cn. Pompeius quī nōn modo eōrum hominum quī nunc sunt glōriam sed etiam antīquitātis memoriam virtūte superārit, quae rēs est quae cuiusquam animum in hāc causā dubium facere possit? ego enim sīc exīstimō in summō imperātōre quattuor hās rēs inesse oportēre: scientiam reī mīlitāris, virtūtem, auctōritātem, fēlīcitātem. quis igitur hōc homine scientior umquam aut fuit aut esse dēbuit? (Cicero, *Prō Lēge Mānīliā* 27–28)

antīquitās, antīquitātis *f.* antiquity
exīstimō (ex- + aestimō) (1-tr.) reckon, consider, think
īnsum (in- + sum) be (in)
scientia, scientiae *f.* knowledge
mīlitāris, mīlitāre military; **rēs mīlitāris**, military practice
fēlīcitās, fēlīcitātis *f.* good fortune

14. Addressing the Roman people, Cicero summarizes the effects of the *Lēx Gabīnia* (67 B.C.E.), which gave Pompey plenary powers to wipe out piracy in the Mediterranean sea.

itaque ūna lēx, ūnus vir, ūnus annus nōn modo vōs illā miseriā ac turpitūdine līberāvit sed etiam effēcit ut aliquandō vērē vidērēminī omnibus gentibus ac nātiōnibus terrā marīque imperāre. (Cicero, *Prō Lēge Mānīliā* 56)

itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
miseria, miseriae *f.* misery
turpitūdō, turpitūdinis *f.* ugliness; shamefulness, baseness
aliquandō (adv.) sometimes, occasionally; at long last
nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation

15. Cicero pays Q. Catulus a great compliment—before proceeding to disagree with him strongly.

etenim tālis est vir ut nūlla rēs tanta sit ac tam difficilis quam ille nōn et cōnsiliō regere et integritāte tuērī et virtūte cōnficere possit. (Cicero, *Prō Lēge Mānīliā* 59)

integritās, integritātis *f.* moral uprightness, integrity
tueor, tuērī, tuitus/tūtus sum look at; protect, attend to

16. Cicero recalls an older, sterner morality.

fuit, fuit ista quondam in hāc rē pūblicā virtūs ut virī fortēs ācriōribus suppliciīs cīvem perniciōsum quam acerbissimum hostem coërcērent. (Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 3)

quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly
supplicium, suppliciī *n.* punishment
perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive
coërceō, coërcēre, coërcuī, coërcitus restrain, check, suppress

17. Cicero characterizes Catiline derisively.

neque enim is es, Catilīna, ut tē aut pudor umquam ā turpitūdine aut metus ā perīculō aut ratiō ā furōre revocārit. (Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 22)

pudor, pudōris *m.* shame, decency, modesty
turpitūdō, turpitūdinis *f.* ugliness; shamefulness, baseness
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; rationality
furor, furōris *m.* madness
revocō (1-tr.) call back

18. At the very time of the Catilinarian conspiracy, Cicero pleads directly to Cato, one of the most important men behind the accusation of election fraud against Murena.

hīs tantīs in rēbus tantīsque in perīculīs est tuum, M. Catō, quī mihi nōn tibi, sed patriae nātus esse vidēris, vidēre quid agātur, retinēre adiūtōrem, dēfēnsōrem, socium in rē pūblicā, cōnsulem nōn cupidum, cōnsulem—quod maximē tempus hoc postulat—fortūnā cōnstitūtum ad amplexandum ōtium, scientiā ad bellum gerendum, animō et ūsū ad quod velīs negōtium sustinendum. (Cicero, *Prō Murēnā* 83)

retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus keep hold of, retain; uphold, preserve
adiūtor, adiūtōris *m.* helper, supporter
dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris *m.* protector, defender
postulō (1-tr.) demand
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus set up, establish; prepare
amplexor (1-tr.) embrace; value, esteem
ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure; peace
scientia, scientiae *f.* knowledge
ūsus, ūsūs *m.* use, experience
negōtium, negōtiī *n.* business
sustineō (sub- + teneō), sustinēre, sustinuī, —— withstand; support, sustain

19. Cicero makes a clever observation to bolster his point about the importance of praise.

trahimur omnēs studiō laudis, et optimus quisque maximē glōriā dūcitur. ipsī illī philosophī etiam in eīs libellīs quōs dē contemnendā glōriā scrībunt nōmen suum īnscrībunt . . . (Cicero, *Prō Archiā* 26)

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag
laus, laudis *f.* praise
philosophus, philosophī *m.* philosopher
libellus, libellī *m.* (little) book
contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus regard with contempt, scorn, disregard
īnscrībō (in- + scrībō) inscribe

20. In the opening of his defense of Sestius, Cicero expresses to the jury his outrage at his opponents' strategy.

. . . per vōs nōbīs, per optimōs virōs optimīs cīvibus perīculum īnferre cōnantur, et quōs lapidibus, quōs ferrō, quōs facibus, quōs vī, manū, cōpiīs dēlēre nōn potuērunt, hōs vestrā auctōritāte, vestrā religiōne, vestrīs sententiīs sē oppressūrōs arbitrantur. (Cicero, *Prō Sestiō* 2)

lapis, lapidis *m.* stone
fax, facis *f.* firebrand, torch
religiō, religiōnis *f.* religious constraint *or* fear; religious observance; sanctity, scruple

21. Cicero praises Milo's belief that life and freedom must be defended—even with arms.

hoc† sentīre prūdentiae est, facere fortitūdinis; et sentīre vērō et facere perfectae† cumulātaeque virtūtis. (Cicero, *Prō Sestiō* 86)

†**hoc**, *refers to Milo's belief*
prūdentia, **prūdentiae** *f.* good sense, judgment, prudence
fortitūdō, **fortitūdinis** *f.* bravery, fortitude
†**perfectus**, **-a**, **-um** perfect
cumulātus, **-a**, **-um** heaped up; vast, abundant

22. Cicero distinguishes between what is proper and what is permitted.

est enim aliquid quod nōn oporteat etiam sī licet; quicquid vērō nōn licet certē nōn oportet. (Cicero, *Prō Balbō* 8)

quisquis, **quidquid/quicquid** (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

23. Marcus and Quintus conclude an exchange about the importance of law.

Marcus. Lēge autem carēns cīvitās estne ob id ipsum habenda nūllō locō?

Quintus. Dīcī aliter nōn potest.

Marcus. Necesse est igitur lēgem habērī in rēbus optimīs.

Quintus. Prorsus adsentior. (Cicero, *Dē Lēgibus* II.12)

prorsus (adv.) thoroughly, in every respect, altogether
adsentior, **adsentīrī**, **adsēnsus sum** agree

24. Cicero praises the power of rhetoric.

sed nihil est tam incrēdibile quod nōn dīcendō fīat probābile, nihil tam horridum, tam incultum, quod nōn splendēscat ōrātiōne et tamquam excolātur. (Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* Preface 3)

incrēdibilis, **incrēdibile** unbelievable
probābilis, **probābile** acceptable, plausible, credible
horridus, **-a**, **-um** rough; rude, uncouth
incultus, **-a**, **-um** not cultivated, unadorned, lacking in refinement
splendēscō, **splendēscere**, ——, —— become bright, begin to shine
tamquam (conj.) as it were, so to speak
excolō, **excolere**, **excoluī**, **excultus** cultivate, improve, develop, decorate

25. Cicero defines some important moral terms.

quicquid nōn oportet scelus esse, quicquid nōn licet nefās putāre dēbēmus. (Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 3.25)

quisquis, **quidquid/quicquid** (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

26. The philosopher imagines the consequences of only believing one's eyes.

quae† sunt tantae animī angustiae ut, sī Serīphī nātus essēs nec umquam ēgressus ex īnsulā, in quā lepusculōs vulpēculāsque saepe vīdissēs, nōn crēderēs leōnēs et panthērās esse cum tibi quālēs essent dīcerētur; sī vērō dē elephantō quis dīceret, etiam rīdērī tē putārēs. (Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* I.88)

†**quae**, *connective relative* (*refers to examples of narrow-mindedness*)
angustiae, angustiārum *f. pl.* narrowness
Serīphus, Serīphī *m.* Seriphos (modern Serfo, a small, rocky island in the Cyclades)
lepusculus, lepusculī *m.* little hare
vulpēcula, vulpēculae *f.* little fox
leō, leōnis *m.* lion
panthēra, panthērae *f.* panther
elephantus, elephantī *m.* elephant
rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus laugh at, ridicule, mock

27. What makes a man great?

nēmō† igitur vir magnus sine aliquō adflātū dīvīnō umquam fuit. (Cicero, *Dē Nātūrā Deōrum* II.167)

†**nēmō = nūllus**
afflātus, afflātūs *m.* breath; inspiration

28. Having observed the nearly universal belief in the art of divination, Cicero's brother asks whether there will ever be an end to doubt on the subject.

an† dum bestiae loquantur exspectāmus, hominum cōnsentiente auctōritāte contentī nōn sumus? (Cicero, *Dē Dīvinātiōne* I.84)

†**an**, *here, introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer,* can it really be that . . .
bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal
cōnsentiō (**con-** + **sentiō**) be in agreement, concur
contentus, -a, -um content, satisfied

29. The character Cato insists that the length of life is unimportant.

breve enim tempus aetātis satis longum est ad bene honestēque vīvendum. (Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 70)

30. A reflection on the human soul

atque etiam cum hominis nātūra morte dissolvitur, cēterārum rērum perspicuum est quō quaeque discēdat; abeunt enim illūc omnia unde orta sunt, animus autem sōlus nec cum adest nec cum discessit appāret. iam vērō vidētis nihil esse mortī tam simile quam somnum. (Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 80)

dissolvō, dissolvere, dissolvī, dissolūtus undo, dissolve; set free
perspicuus, -a, -um clearly visible, plain, self-evident
appāreō, appārēre, appāruī, appāritūrus become visible, be seen
somnus, somnī *m.* sleep

31. What value does Cicero place on farming?

omnium autem rērum ex quibus aliquid adquīritur nihil est agrī cultūrā melius, nihil ūberius, nihil dulcius, nihil homine, nihil līberō dignius.

(Cicero, *Dē Officiīs* I.151)

adquīrō (ad- + quaerō), **adquīrere**, **adquīsiī/adquīsīvī**, **adquīsītus** add to one's possessions, acquire
cultūra, **cultūrae** *f.* cultivation; **agrī cultūra**, farming
ūber, **ūberis** rich, fertile
dulcis, **dulce** sweet, pleasant

32. In the first of his *Philippics* Cicero declares his resolve to speak his mind no matter the danger.

quid? dē reliquīs reī pūblicae malīs licetne dīcere? mihi vērō licet et semper licēbit dignitātem tuērī, mortem contemnere. potestās modo veniendī in hunc locum† sit, dīcendī perīculum nōn recūsō. (Cicero, *Philippics I* 14)

dignitās, **dignitātis** *f.* rank, status, dignity
tueor, **tuērī**, **tuitus/tūtus sum** look at; protect
contemnō, **contemnere**, **contempsī**, **contemptus** regard with contempt; pay no heed to, disregard
potestās, **potestātis** *f.* (legitimate) power
†**hunc locum**, i.e., the senate house
recūsō (1-tr.) decline, reject, refuse to accept

33. Cicero speaks after a scheduled embassy to Antony has been canceled. In an imagined debate, Cicero explains why he approves of the decision to cancel it.

cuiusvīs hominis est errāre; nūllīus nisi īnsipientis persevērāre in errōre; posteriōrēs enim cōgitātiōnēs, ut aiunt, sapientiōrēs solent esse. (Cicero, *Philippics XII* 5)

quīvīs, **quaevīs**, **quodvīs** (indef. adj.) any . . . you wish, any . . . at all
īnsipiēns, **īnsipientis** unwise, foolish
persevērō (1-intr.) persist, persevere
error, **errōris** *m.* mistake, error
posterior, **posterius** later
cōgitātiō, **cōgitātiōnis** *f.* thought
aiō (defective verb) say; **aiunt** = *3rd pl. pres. act. indic.*

34. In the context of thinking about pernicious citizens and civil war, Cicero poses a theoretical question.

sed hoc prīmum videndum est, patrēs cōnscrīptī, cum omnibusne pāx esse possit an sit aliquod bellum inexpiābile, in quō pactiō pācis lēx sit servitūtis.

(Cicero, *Philippics XIII* 2)

inexpiābilis, **inexpiābile** that cannot be atoned for, that cannot be appeased
pactiō, **pactiōnis** *f.* agreement, arrangement

35. Cicero describes to Atticus his sense of alienation and despair once Pompey has fled to the East.

alia rēs nunc tōta est, alia mēns mea. sōl, ut est in tuā quādam epistulā, excidisse mihi ē mundō vidētur. ut aegrōtō, dum anima est, spēs esse dīcitur, sīc ego, quoad Pompeius in Italiā fuit, spērāre nōn dēstitī. (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* IX.10.3)

epistula, **epistulae** *f.* letter
excidō (**ex-** + **cadō**), **excidere**, **excidī**, —— fall (out)
mundus, **mundī** *m.* world; sky
aegrōtus, **-a**, **-um** ill, sick
quoad (conj.) as long as, while
dēsistō, **dēsistere**, **dēstitī**, —— cease

36. Cicero informs his friend M. Marcellus about the limits on speech and action in the present state of the republic.

at tibi ipsī dīcendum erit aliquid quod nōn sentiās aut faciendum quod nōn probēs. prīmum temporī† cēdere, id est necessitātī pārēre, semper sapientis est habitum. (Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* IV.9.2)

at (conj.) but
probō (1-tr.) approve of
†**tempus**, *here,* occasion, circumstance
necessitās, **necessitātis** *f.* necessity

37. The poet begins a reflection on the purpose and power of philosophy.

Suāve marī magnō turbantibus aequora ventīs
ē terrā magnum alterius† spectāre labōrem,
nōn quia vexārī quemquamst iūcunda voluptās,
sed quibus ipse malīs careās quia cernere suāvest.
(Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* II.1–4)

suāvis, **suāve** sweet, pleasant
turbō (1-tr.) stir up, confuse, throw into confusion
aequor, **aequoris** *n.* level surface
ventus, **ventī** *m.* wind
†The **-ī-** of **alterīus** here scans *short.*
vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass
iūcundus, **-a**, **-um** pleasing, delightful, agreeable
voluptās, **voluptātis** *f.* pleasure, joy
cernō, **cernere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** distinguish, determine; perceive, observe

38. The poet describes man's superstitious fear and its only medicine.

nam vel utī puerī trepidant atque omnia caecīs
in tenebrīs metuunt, sīc nōs in lūce timēmus
interdum nihilō quae sunt metuenda magis quam
quae puerī in tenebrīs pavitant finguntque futūra.
hunc igitur terrōrem animī tenebrāsque necessest
nōn radiī sōlis neque lūcida tēla diēī
discutiant, sed nātūrae speciēs ratiōque. (LUCRETIUS, *DĒ RĒRUM NĀTŪRĀ* II.55–61)

utī = ut
trepidō (1-intr.) tremble; panic
tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally
pavitō (1-tr.) be in dread of, tremble at
fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make; imagine
terror, terrōris *m.* (extreme) fear, terror
radius, radiī *m.* ray (of light)
lūcidus, -a, -um shining, bright, clear
discutiō, discutere, discussī, discussus shatter; dissipate, dispel
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; reasoning; rationale

39. The poet describes how the earth, like all living things, is subject to decay and diminution of her powers.

iamque adeō frācta est aetās effētaque tellūs
vix animālia parva creat, quae cūncta creāvit
saecla deditque ferārum ingentia corpora partū.
(LUCRETIUS, *DĒ RĒRUM NĀTŪRĀ* II.1150–52)

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus break, break down
effētus, -a, -um worn out
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth
creō (1-tr.) create
saec(u)lum, saec(u)lī *n.* age, generation
fera, ferae *f.* wild animal
partus, partūs *m.* birth

40. The poet reports an inner conflict.

Hūc est mēns dēducta tuā mea, Lesbia, culpā,
atque ita sē officiō perdidit ipsa suō,
ut iam nec bene velle queat tibi sī optima fīās,
nec dēsistere amāre omnia sī faciās. (CATULLUS LXXV)

dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead down; bring down
culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame; fault
officium, officiī *n.* obligation; sense of duty
queō, quīre, quiī/quīvī, —— be able
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, —— cease, stop

41. The poet responds to his beloved's declaration.

Iūcundum, mea vīta, mihi prōpōnis amōrem
hunc nostrum inter nōs perpetuumque fore.
dī magnī, facite ut vērē prōmittere possit,
atque id sincērē dīcat et ex animō,
ut liceat nōbīs tōtā perdūcere vītā
aeternum hoc sānctae foedus amīcitiae. (CATULLUS CIX)

iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
prōpōnō (prō- + pōnō) put forward; declare
perpetuus, -a, -um continuous; everlasting
prōmittō (prō- + mittō) promise
sincērē (adv.) faithfully, truly
perdūcō (per- + dūcō) extend, prolong
aeternus, -a, -um eternal, everlasting
sānctus, -a, -um inviolate, blameless
foedus, foederis *n.* agreement, treaty, pact

42. Having just described various geographical constraints (mountains, lakes, rivers), Caesar reports their effects on the actions and feelings of the Helvetians.

hīs rēbus fīēbat ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte† hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* I.2)

lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
vagor (1-intr.) wander
fīnitimus, -a, -um neighboring, nearby; *subst.*, neighbor
†**quā ex parte** and on this account
bellō (1-intr.) wage war, fight
dolor, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
afficiō (ad- + faciō) affect, stir, afflict

43. Caesar reports how a powerful German king began a response to Caesar's demands.

ad haec Ariovistus respondit: iūs esse bellī, ut quī vīcissent iīs quōs vīcissent quemadmodum vellent imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad† alterīus praescrīptum, sed ad† suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. (CAESAR, *DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ* I.36)

Ariovistus, Ariovistī *m.* Ariovistus
item (adv.) likewise, in like manner
†**ad**, *here*, according to
praescrīptum, praescrīptī *n.* order, rule
arbitrium, arbitriī *n.* judgment; authority
cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētum become accustomed

44. Caesar explains why the Veneti gave up the war against Caesar after a particular battle.

nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis in quibus aliquid cōnsiliī aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat ūnum in locum coēgerant. quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent neque quemadmodum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* III.16)

iuventūs, iuventūtis *f.* (the collective) youth
dignitās, dignitātis *f.* worthiness, merit
conveniō (con- + veniō) come together
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
ubīque (adv.) everywhere
cōgō (co- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus gather together
āmittō (ā- + mittō) lose
recipiō (re- + capiō) take back; **sē recipere,** to withdraw
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus defend

45. Caesar explains his decision to cross the Rhine.

Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum. quārum illa fuit iūstissima: quod cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs† quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre.

(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.16)

Germānicus, -a, -um German
statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus cause to stand; decide
Rhēnus, Rhēnī *m.* (the) Rhine (a river in northeastern Gaul)
trānseō (trāns- + eō), trānsīre, trānsiī/trānsīvī, trānsitus go across, cross
iūstus, -a, -um just, fair, right
Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
impellō (in- + pellō), impellere, impulī, impulsus push against; persuade
Gallia, Galliae *f.* Gaul
†**suīs** refers to **eōs**.

46. Caesar comments on a confused moment caused by a surprise attack of Germans.

nēmō est tam fortis quīn reī novitāte perturbētur. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.39)

novitās, novitātis *f.* newness, novelty; unfamiliarity, unexpectedness
perturbō (1-tr.) throw into confusion, upset, confound

47. The historian explains why the consul Metellus proceeded cautiously through Numidia despite no outward signs of resistance.

nam in Iugurthā tantus dolus tantaque perītia locōrum et mīlitiae erat ut absēns an praesēns, pācem an bellum gerēns, perniciōsior esset in incertō habērētur.

(Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 46)

Iugurtha, Iugurthae *m.* Jugurtha (king of Numidia)
dolus, dolī *m.* deceit, trick, cunning
perītia, perītiae *f.* knowledge (acquired through experience)
mīlitia, mīlitiae *f.* military service
praesēns, praesentis present
perniciōsus, -a, -um destructive, deadly

48. The poet describes the lovesick Dido after the end of the banquet honoring Aeneas.

post ubi dīgressī, lūmenque obscūra vicissim
lūna premit† suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs,
sōla domō maeret vacuā strātīsque relictīs
incubat. illum absēns absentem auditque videtque . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.80–83)

dīgredior (**dis-** + **gradior**) go off, depart; separate; **dīgrēssī**, *subject is Dido and Aeneas*
obscūrus, **-a**, **-um** dark, dim, obscure
vicissim (adv.) in turn
†**premō**, *here*, hide, suppress
suādeō, **suādēre**, **suāsī**, **suāsus** urge, advise; persuade
sīdus, **sīderis** *n.* star
somnus, **somnī** *m. sing. or pl.*, sleep
maereō, **maerēre**, ——, —— grieve, mourn
vacuus, **-a**, **-um** empty
strātum, **strātī** *n.* bedding; couch
incubō, **incubāre**, ——, **incubitum** lie on, recline on (+ dat.)

49. The poet sets a romantic scene.

Nox erat et caelō fulgēbat lūna serēnō
inter minōra sīdera . . . (HORACE, *EPODES* 15.1–2)

fulgeō, **fulgēre**, **fulsī**, —— gleam, shine
serēnus, **-a**, **-um** calm, serene
sīdus, **sīderis** *n.* star

50. The poet remarks on the advantages of delaying publication.

. . . dēlēre licēbit
quod nōn ēdideris; nescit vōx missa revertī. (HORACE, *ARS POĒTICA* 389–90)

ēdō (**ē-** + **dō**) emit; produce; publish
revertor, **revertī**, **reversus sum** turn back; return

51. Cynthia is about to run off after a praetor from Illyria.

Tūne igitur dēmēns, nec tē mea cūra morātur?
an† tibi sum gelidā vīlior Illyriā?
et tibi iam tantī, quīcumquest, iste vidētur,
ut sine mē ventō quōlibet īre velīs? (PROPERTIUS I.8A.1–4)

dēmēns, **dēmentis** insane, (raving) mad
†**an**, *here, introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer,* can it really be that . . .
gelidus, **-a**, **-um** very cold, icy cold
vīlis, **vīle** worthless, cheap
Illyria, **Illyriae** *f.* Illyria (the territory of the Illyrians east of the Adriatic Sea)
quīcumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque** (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever
ventus, **ventī** *m.* wind
quīlibet, **quaelibet**, **quodlibet** (indef. adj.) any . . . you wish, any . . . at all

52. The poet states his theme.

Sī quis in hōc artem populō nōn nōvit amandī,
hoc legat et lēctō carmine doctus amet.
arte citae vēlōque ratēs rēmōque moventur,
arte levēs currūs, arte regendus amor. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* I.1–4)

doceō, **docēre**, **docuī**, **doctus** teach
citus, **-a**, **-um** quick, swift
ratis, **ratis**, **-ium** *f.* ship
rēmus, **rēmī** *m.* oar
currus, **currūs** *m.* chariot

53. Exiled to Tomis on the Black Sea, the poet comments on the locale and the native population.

sīve locum spectō, locus est inamābilis, et quō
esse nihil tōtō trīstius orbe potest,
sīve hominēs, vix sunt hominēs hōc nōmine dignī,
quamque lupī saevae plūs feritātis habent.
nōn metuunt lēgēs, sed cēdit vīribus aequum,
victaque pugnācī iūra sub ēnse iacent. (Ovid, *Trīstia* V.7b.43–48)

sīve (conj.) or if; **sīve . . . sīve . . .** , if . . . or if . . .
inamābilis, **inamābile** unlovable, disagreeable, unattractive
trīstis, **trīste** sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim
orbis, **orbis**, **-ium** *m.* ring, circle; world
lupus, **lupī** *m.* wolf
feritās, **feritātis** *f.* wildness, fierceness; savagery, brutality
pugnāx, **pugnācis** fond of fighting, combative, warlike
ēnsis, **ēnsis** *m.* sword
iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —— lie

54. The poet describes the length of his banishment in epic terms.

at mihi iam videor patriā procul esse tot annīs,†
Dardana quot Graiō Troia sub hoste fuit.
stāre† putēs, adeō prōcēdunt tempora tardē . . . (Ovid, *Trīstia* V.10.3–5)

at (conj.) but
procul (adv.) at a distance, far
†**tot annīs**, *here,* for as many years
Dardanus, **-a**, **-um** Dardanian, Trojan
Graius, **-a**, **-um** Greek
†**stō**, *here,* stand still
prōcēdō (**prō-** + **cēdō**) go forward, progress
tardē (adv.) slowly

55. The historian reports that after the Romans retook certain towns in southern Italy from the Carthaginians, they distinguished themselves in a disgraceful way.

. . . tantum Pleminius Hamilcarem praesidiī praefectum,† tantum praesidiāriī mīlitēs Rōmānī Poenōs scelere atque avāritiā superāvērunt ut nōn armīs sed vitiīs vidērētur certārī. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXIX.8.7)

Pleminius, **Pleminiī** *m.* (Q.) Pleminius (Roman military officer)
Hamilcar, **Hamilcaris** *m.* Hamilcar (Carthaginian commander)
praesidium, **praesidiī** *n.* guard, garrison
†**praefectus**, **praefectī** *m.* commander, officer
praesidiārius, **-a**, **-um** forming a guard *or* garrison
Poenī, **Poenōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Phoenicians, (the) Carthaginians
avāritia, **avāritiae** *f.* greed, avarice
vitium, **vitiī** *n.* vice, fault
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive

56. Seneca quotes the second-century B.C.E. philosopher Posidonius, who explains why he objects to the inclusion of explanations and introductions in Plato's *Laws*.

lēgem enim brevem esse oportet quō facilius ab inperītīs teneātur.

(Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* XCIV.38)

imperītus, **-a**, **-um** inexperienced, unacquainted

57. Seneca quotes a line that is said to have made the audience look at Caesar. It was uttered by the writer and actor Decimus Laberius at the time of the civil war.

necesse est multōs timeat quem multī timent. (Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* IV.11.3)

58. Seneca reports how the Stoic philosopher Diogenes responded to being spit upon by one of his students during class.

tulit hoc ille lēniter et sapienter: "nōn quidem" inquit "īrāscor, sed dubitō† tamen an oporteat īrāscī." (Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* V.38.1)

lēniter (adv.) gently, mildly
sapienter (adv.) wisely
īrāscor, **īrāscī**, ——, become angry
†**dubitō**, *here,* wonder

59. A definition and contemplation of death

mors dolōrum omnium exsolūtiō est et fīnis ultrā quem mala nostra nōn exeunt, quae nōs in illam tranquillitātem in quā antequam nāscerēmur iacuimus repōnit. sī mortuōrum aliquis miserētur, et nōn nātōrum misereātur. mors nec bonum nec malum est; id enim potest aut bonum aut malum esse quod aliquid est; quod vērō ipsum nihil est et omnia in nihilum redigit, nūllī nōs fortūnae trādit.

(Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* VI.19.5)

dolor, **dolōris** *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
exsolūtiō, **exsolūtiōnis** *f.* dissolution
ultrā (prep. + acc.) beyond
exeō (**ex-** + **eō**), **exīre**, **exiī/exīvī**, **exitum** go out, exit
tranquillitās, **tranquillitātis** *f.* calm, tranquility
iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —— lie, rest; lie dead
repōnō (**re-** + **pōnō**) put *or* place back
misereor, **miserērī**, **miseritus sum** pity, take pity on (+ gen.)
redigō (**red-** + **agō**), **redigere**, **redēgī**, **redāctus** drive back; restore, convert

60. A character in a Senecan dialogue expresses his opinion on the nature of human life.

nihil est tam fallāx quam vīta hūmāna, nihil tam īnsidiōsum: nōn meherculēs quisquam illam accēpisset nisi darētur ignōrantibus.

(Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* VI.22.3)

fallāx, **fallācis** deceptive, treacherous
hūmānus, **-a**, **-um** human
īnsidiōsus, **-a**, **-um** treacherous, deceitful
ignōrō (1-tr.) be unaware (of), be ignorant (of)

61. The poet vividly characterizes Julius Caesar.

. . . sed Caesar in omnia praeceps,
nīl āctum crēdēns cum quid superesset agendum, . . .

(Lucan, *Bellum Cīvīle* II.656–57)

praeceps, **praecipitis** rushing forward, headlong
supersum (**super-** + **sum**), **superesse**, **superfuī**, **superfutūrus** remain, be left

62. Pliny reassures the senators about the emperor Trajan's concern for them.

vōs ille† praesentēs, vōs etiam absentēs in cōnsiliō habet.

(Pliny the Younger, *Panēgyricus* 62)

†**ille** refers to Trajan.
praesēns, **praesentis** present

63. The historian reports an eclipse that stops a nascent mutiny of Roman troops prone to superstition.

noctem minācem et in scelus ēruptūram fors lēnīvit; nam lūna clārō repente caelō vīsa languēscere. (TACITUS, *ANNĀLĒS* I.28)

mināx, **minācis** menacing, threatening
ērumpō, **ērumpere**, **ērūpī**, **ēruptus** break out, burst forth
lēniō, **lēnīre**, **lēniī/lēnīvī**, **lēnītus** moderate, calm, mitigate
repente (adv.) suddenly, without warning
languēscō, **languēscere**, **languī**, —— grow weak; fail; wane

64. A group of Roman soldiers battling the Britons meets with a reversal.

ubi ventum ad aggerem, dum missilibus certābātur, plūs vulnerum in nōs et plēraeque caedēs oriēbantur. (TACITUS, *ANNĀLĒS* XII.35)

agger, **aggeris** *m.* earthwork; fortification, rampart
missile, **missilis**, **-ium** *n.* projectile
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
plērīque, **plēraeque**, **plēraque** very many, most
caedēs, **caedis**, **-ium** *f.* slaughter

65. The biographer describes the changes made by Augustus to Rome.

urbem neque prō† maiestāte imperiī ornātam et inundātiōnibus incendiīsque obnoxiam excoluit adeō ut iūre sit glōriātus marmoream sē relinquere quam laterīciam accēpisset. (SUETONIUS, *VĪTA AUGUSTĪ* 28)

†**prō**, *here*, in accordance with
maiestās, **maiestātis** *f.* dignity, majesty
ornō (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate
inundātiō, **inundātiōnis** *f.* flood
incendium, **incendiī** *n.* fire
obnoxius, **-a**, **-um** exposed, vulnerable
excolō, **excolere**, **excoluī**, **excultus** cultivate, improve, develop, decorate
glōrior (1-tr.) boast
marmoreus, **-a**, **-um** made of marble, marble
laterīcius, **-a**, **-um** made of brick

66. Macrobius comments on an aspect of Vergilian style.

vīs audīre illum tantā brevitāte dīcentem ut artārī magis et contrahī brevitās ipsa nōn possit? "Et campōs ubi Troia fuit." ecce paucissimīs verbīs maximam cīvitātem hausit et absorpsit, nōn relīquit illī nec† ruīnam. (MACROBIUS, *SATURNĀLIA* V.1.8)

brevitās, **brevitātis** *f.* brevity
artō (1-tr.) restrict; reduce, compress
contrahō, **contrahere**, **contrāxī**, **contractus** contract, reduce
hauriō, **haurīre**, **hausī**, **haustus** drain, empty out, consume
absorbeō, **absorbēre**, **absorpsī**, **absorptus** engulf, devour
†**nec**, *here*, not even; the redundant negative strengthens the negative idea.
ruīna, **ruīnae** *f.* ruin(s)

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *In Verrem II* 2.162

Cicero paints a dramatic portrait of one of Verres' victims, who was barbarously and illegally punished.

caedēbātur virgīs in mediō forō Messānae cīvis Rōmānus, iūdicēs, cum intereā nūllus gemitus, nūlla vōx alia illīus miserī inter dolōrem crepitumque plāgārum audiēbātur nisi haec: "Cīvis Rōmānus sum." hāc sē commemorātiōne cīvitātis omnia verbera dēpulsūrum cruciātumque ā corpore dēiectūrum arbitrābātur; is nōn modo hoc nōn perfēcit, ut virgārum vim dēprecārētur, sed cum implōrāret saepius ūsurpāretque nōmen cīvitātis, crux—crux, inquam—īnfēlīcī et aerumnōsō, quī numquam istam pestem vīderat, comparābātur.

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus beat, strike
virga, virgae *f.* twig, shoot; rod, stick
Messāna, Messānae *f.* Messana (a town in Italy)
iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
intereā (adv.) meanwhile
gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
dolōr, dolōris *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
crepitus, crepitūs *m.* sharp sound, crashing, cracking
plāga, plāgae *f.* blow, stroke
commemorātiō, commemorātiōnis *f.* memory; reminder
verbera, verberum *n. pl.* instrument for flogging, switch; blows, floggings, lashes
dēpellō (dē- + pellō), dēpellere, dēpulī, dēpulsus drive away
cruciātus, cruciātūs *m.* torture, torment
dēiciō (dē- + iaciō) throw down, topple over; avert, divert
dēprecor (1-tr.) ward off by prayer
implōrō (1-tr.) ask for; entreat
ūsurpō (1-tr.) take possession of; utter *or* invoke (repeatedly)
crux, crucis *f.* wooden frame, cross
aerumnōsus, -a, -um wretched, suffering
pestis, pestis, -ium *f.* plague, destruction, ruin
comparō (1-tr.) prepare, get together; set up

In 70 B.C.E. Cicero had his first great legal success with his prosecution of C. Verres, who was found guilty of governing Sicily badly and corruptly. Cicero had been quaestor in Sicily some years earlier, and **clientēs** (dependents) acquired at the time asked Cicero to take the case. Cicero's preparation was so thorough and the evidence against Verres so damning that Cicero had delivered only the first of several speeches (*Āctiō Prīma in Verrem,* First Action Against Verres) when Verres admitted defeat. Cicero later published his remaining argument, the *Āctiō Secunda in Verrem,* which is divided into five books. The refined style of these speeches is evidence of the great rhetorical skill that Cicero had already achieved by the age of thirty-six.

2. Cicero, *In Verrem II* 2.163

Cicero attacks Verres directly for his barbarous treatment of a Roman citizen.

cum ignēs ardentēsque lāminae cēterīque cruciātūs admovēbantur, sī tē illīus† acerba implōrātiō et vōx miserābilis nōn inhibēbat, nē cīvium quidem Rōmānōrum quī tum aderant flētū et gemitū maximō commovēbāre? in crucem tū agere ausus es quemquam quī sē cīvem Rōmānum esse dīceret?

ardeō, **ardēre**, **arsī**, **arsūrus** burn, be on fire
lāmina, **lāminae** *f.* thin sheet of metal, blade
cruciātus, **cruciātūs** *m.* (instrument of) torture
admoveō (**ad-** + **moveō**) move toward; apply, inflict
†**illīus** refers to one of Verres's victims.
implōrātiō, **implōrātiōnis** *f.* appeal, entreaty
miserābilis, **miserābile** miserable, wretched
inhibeō (**in-** + **habeō**), **inhibēre**, **inhibuī**, **inhibitus** hold back, restrain, check
flētus, **flētūs** *m.* weeping, tears
gemitus, **gemitūs** *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
commoveō (**con-** + **moveō**) disturb, trouble
crux, **crucis** *f.* wooden frame, cross

3. Cicero, *Prō Lēge Mānīliā* 14–16

Cicero explains how even the threat of war affects the provinces, particularly Asia, one of the wealthiest.

itaque haec vōbīs prōvincia, Quirītēs, sī et bellī ūtilitātem et pācis dignitātem retinēre voltis, nōn modo ā calamitāte sed etiam ā metū calamitātis est dēfendenda. nam in cēterīs rēbus cum vēnit calamitās, tum dētrīmentum accipitur; at in vectīgālibus nōn sōlum adventus malī sed etiam metus ipse adfert calamitātem. nam cum hostium cōpiae nōn longē absunt, etiam sī inruptiō nūlla facta est, tamen pecua relinquuntur, agrī cultūra dēseritur, mercātōrum nāvigātiō conquiēscit. ita neque ex portū neque ex decumīs† neque ex scrīptūrā vectīgal cōnservārī potest; quārē saepe tōtīus annī frūctus ūnō rūmōre perīculī atque ūnō bellī terrōre āmittitur.

itaque (conj.) and so, and therefore
Quirītēs, **Quirītium** *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
ūtilitās, **ūtilitātis** *f.* usefulness, advantage
dignitās, **dignitātis** *f.* rank, status, dignity
retineō (**re-** + **teneō**), **retinēre**, **retinuī**, **retentus** keep hold of, retain
calamitās, **calamitātis** *f.* disaster, misfortune, injury
dēfendō, **dēfendere**, **dēfendī**, **dēfēnsus** protect, defend
dētrīmentum, **dētrīmentī** *n.* harm
at (conj.) but
vectīgal, **vectīgālis**, **-ium** *n.* (tax) revenue
adventus, **adventūs** *m.* arrival
afferō (**ad-** + **ferō**), **afferre**, **attulī**, **allātus** bring toward, bring forth
irruptiō, **irruptiōnis** *f.* assault, incursion
pecua, **pecuum** *n. pl.* farm animals
cultūra, **cultūrae** *f.* cultivation
dēserō, **dēserere**, **dēseruī**, **dēsertus** abandon, desert, forsake
mercātor, **mercātōris** *m.* merchant, trader
nāvigātiō, **nāvigātiōnis** *f.* sailing, voyaging
conquiēscō, **conquiēscere**, **conquiēvī**, —— rest; cease
portus, **portūs** *m.* harbor, port
†**decumus**, *here, subst.*, tenth; tax on grain production
scrīptūra, **scrīptūrae** *f.* writing; tax on renting grazing land
cōnservō (**con-** + **servō**) (1-tr.) preserve thoroughly, maintain
frūctus, **frūctūs** *m.* profit, benefit; revenue
terror, **terrōris** *m.* fear, terror
āmittō (**ā-** + **mittō**) send away; lose

In 66 B.C.E. Cicero delivered the *Prō Lēge Mānīliā* endorsing a bill that was meant to strengthen Pompey's hand in dealing with Rome's enemies in the East.

4. Cicero, *Prō Lēge Mānīliā* 24–25

The orator cites Mithridates, king of Pontus and longtime enemy of Rome in the East, as an example of the resilience of defeated kings.

itaque tantum victus efficere potuit† quantum incolumis numquam est ausus optāre. nam cum sē in rēgnum suum recēpisset, nōn fuit eō contentus quod eī praeter spem acciderat, ut illam posteā quam pulsus erat terram umquam attingeret, sed in exercitum nostrum clārum atque victōrem impetum fēcit. sinite hōc locō, Quirītēs, sīcut poētae solent quī rēs Rōmānās scrībunt, praeterīre mē nostram calamitātem, quae tanta fuit ut eam ad aurīs imperātōris nōn ex proeliō nuntius sed ex sermōne rūmor adferret.

itaque (adv.) and so, accordingly
†**potuit**, *subject is Mithridates*
incolumis, incolume unharmed, safe, sound
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* kingdom, realm
recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) take back; **sē recipere**, to withdraw
contentus, -a, -um content
posteā quam (conj.) after
attingō, attingere, attigī, attāctus touch
victor, victōris *m.* conqueror
impetus, impetūs *m.* assault, attack
sinō, sinere, siī/sīvī, situm allow, permit
Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
sīcut (conj.) just as
praetereō (**praeter-** + **eō**), **praeterīre, praeteriī/praeterīvī, praeteritus** pass by; leave unmentioned
calamitās, calamitātis *f.* misfortune; disaster
auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear
nuntius, nuntiī *m.* announcement; reporter
sermō, sermōnis *m.* conversation; common talk
afferō (**ad-** + **ferō**), **afferre, attulī, allātus** bring toward, report, announce

5. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 1–2

Cicero opens his first speech against Catiline with a barrage of hostile questions directed at Catiline himself, who was present.

Quō ūsque tandem abūtēre, Catilīna, patientiā nostrā? quam diū etiam furor iste tuus nōs ēlūdet? quem ad fīnem sēsē effrēnāta iactābit audācia? nihilne tē nocturnum praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populī, nihil concursus bonōrum omnium, nihil hic mūnītissimus habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra voltūsque mōvērunt? patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs? cōnstrictam iam hōrum omnium scientiā tenērī coniūrātiōnem tuam nōn vidēs? quid proximā, quid superiōre nocte ēgeris, ubi fueris, quōs convocāveris, quid cōnsilī cēperis quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris? ō tempora, ō mōrēs! senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit. vīvit? immō vērō etiam in senātum venit, fit pūblicī cōnsilī particeps, notat et dēsignat oculīs ad caedem unum quemque nostrum.

ūsque (adv.) continuously, all the way (to); **quō ūsque**, (up) to what point, how far
abūtor (**ab-** + **ūtor**) abuse (+ abl.)
patientia, **patientiae** *f.* endurance, patience
furor, **furōris** *m.* madness
ēlūdō, **ēlūdere**, **ēlūsī**, **ēlūsus** mock
effrēnātus, **-a**, **-um** unbridled, unrestrained
iactō (1-tr.) throw, hurl
nocturnus, **-a**, **-um** at night, nocturnal
praesidium, **praesidiī** *n.* guard, garrison
Palātium, **Palātiī** *n.* (the) Palatine (hill)
vigilia, **vigiliae** *f.* watch (divided into four segments to cover a night)
concursus, **concursūs** *m.* gathering
mūnītus, **-a**, **-um** well fortified, well defended
vultus, **vultūs** *m.* expression; face
pateō, **patēre**, **patuī**, —— lie open
cōnstringō, **cōnstringere**, **cōnstrīnxī**, **cōnstrictus** restrain
scientia, **scientiae** *f.* knowledge
coniūrātiō, **coniūrātiōnis** *f.* conspiracy
proximus, **-a**, **-um** nearest; most recent, last
superior, **superius** (comparative adj.) upper; previous, earlier
convocō (**con-** + **vocō**) (1-tr.) summon *or* call together
ignōrō (1-tr.) be unaware of, fail to recognize
immō vērō (adv.) no, even
particeps, **participis** *m.* participant, sharer
notō (1-tr.) mark
dēsignō (1-tr.) point out
caedēs, **caedis**, **-ium** *f.* slaughter

6. Cicero, *Paradoxa Stōicōrum* 5.34

Cicero reflects on the qualities of a truly free person.

quis igitur vīvit ut volt nisi quī rēctē vīvit? quī gaudet officiō, cui† vīvendī via cōnsīderāta atque prōvīsa est, quī nē lēgibus quidem propter metum pāret, sed eās sequitur et colit quia id salūtāre esse maximē iūdicat, quī nihil dīcit, nihil facit, nihil cōgitat dēnique nisi libenter ac līberē, cuius omnia cōnsilia rēsque omnēs quās gerit ab ipsō proficīscuntur eōdemque referuntur, nec est ūlla rēs quae plūs apud eum polleat quam ipsīus voluntās atque iūdicium; cui quidem etiam, quae vim habēre maximam dīcitur, Fortūna ipsa cēdit, sī, ut sapiēns poēta dīxit, "suīs ea cuique fingitur mōribus."

rēctē (adv.) rightly, correctly
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum rejoice (in), be glad, be pleased
officium, officiī *n.* obligation; duty, service
†**cui**, *here*, Dative of Agent
cōnsīderō (1-tr.) examine, contemplate
prōvideō (prō- + videō) foresee; provide for
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend, cherish
salūtāris, salūtāre that promotes health, salutary
iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine
dēnique (adv.) finally, at last
libenter (adv.) willingly, with pleasure
polleō, pollēre, ——, —— exert power, have importance
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, choice
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment
fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus form, fashion, make

7. Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* VII.1.3

Cicero writes to his friend Marius about the barbarity of the **vēnātiōnēs**, the hunting portion of Roman games.

sed quae potest hominī esse polītō dēlectātiō cum aut homō imbēcillus ā valentissimā bestiā laniātur aut praeclāra bestia vēnābulō trānsverberātur? quae tamen, sī videnda sunt, saepe vīdistī, neque nōs quī haec spectāvimus quicquam novī vīdimus. extrēmus elephantōrum diēs fuit. in quō admīrātiō magna vulgī atque turbae, dēlectātiō nūlla exstitit; quīn etiam† misericordia quaedam cōnsecūta est atque opīniō eius modī: esse quandam illī bēluae cum genere hūmānō societātem.

polītus, -a, -um polished; refined
dēlectātiō, dēlectātiōnis *f.* (source of) delight, amusement
imbēcillus, -a, -um weak, feeble
bestia, bestiae *f.* beast, animal, creature
laniō (1-tr.) tear savagely, mutilate
praeclārus, -a, -um very famous; splendid, magnificent
vēnābulum, vēnābulī *n.* hunting spear
trānsverberō (1-tr.) strike so as to pierce through, transfix
extrēmus, -a, -um last
elephantus, elephantī *m.* elephant
admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis *f.* wonder, astonishment
vulgus, vulgī *n.* common people, (the) multitude
turba, turbae *f.* crowd
ex(s)istō, ex(s)istere, ex(s)titī, —— appear, emerge
†**quīn etiam**, *introduces a correction of something just said,* no, even
misericordia, misericordiae *f.* pity
cōnsequor (**con-** + **sequor**) follow (as a consequence)
opīniō, opīniōnis *f.* opinion, belief
bēlua, bēluae *f.* beast
hūmānus, -a, -um human
societās, societātis *f.* fellowship, society; (close) relationship, connection

Cicero's letters *Ad Familiārēs* in sixteen books are addressed to a wide variety of friends and acquaintances and treat of many subjects. Also included in the collection are replies from many of the addressees. The *Ad Familiārēs* may have been edited for publication by Cicero's freedman and secretary, Tiro.

8. Catullus XII (hendecasyllable)

The poet addresses an acquaintance with an annoying habit.

Marrūcīne Asinī, manū sinistrā
nōn bellē ūteris: in iocō atque vīnō
tollis lintea neglegentiōrum.
hoc salsum esse putās? fugit tē,† inepte;
quamvīs sordida rēs et invenustast.
nōn crēdis mihi? crēde Polliōnī
frātrī, quī tua furta vel talentō
mūtārī velit; est enim lepōrum
differtus puer ac facētiārum.
quārē aut hendecasyllabōs trecentōs
exspectā, aut mihi linteum remitte,
quod mē nōn movet aestimātiōne,
vērumst mnēmosynum meī sodālis.
nam sūdāria Saetaba ex Hibērīs
mīsērunt mihi mūnerī Fabullus
et Vērānius: haec amem necessest
ut Vērāniolum meum et Fabullum.

Marrūcīnus Asinius, Marrūcīnī Asiniī *m.* Marrucinus Asinius
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum left
bellē (adv.) prettily, neatly, becomingly
iocus, iocī *m.* jest, joke
vīnum, vīnī *n.* wine
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus lift, raise; take away, carry off
linteum, linteī *n.* linen cloth, napkin
neglegēns, neglegentis careless, heedless
salsus, -a, -um salty; witty
†**fugit tē**, *supply* **ratiō, ratiōnis** *f.* reason
ineptus, -a, -um silly, inept, foolish
quamvīs (adv.) as you will, ever so
sordidus, -a, -um dirty; mean, vulgar
invenustus, -a, -um ungraceful, inelegant
Polliō, Polliōnis *m.* Pollio
furtum, furtī *n.* theft, robbery
talentum, talentī *n.* talent (a sum of money)
lepor, lepōris *m.* pleasantness, charm
differtus, -a, -um stuffed, filled full (+ gen.)
facētiae, facētiārum *f. pl.* wit, drollery, humor
hendecasyllabī, hendecasyllabōrum *m. pl.* hendecasyllables
remittō (**re-** + **mittō**) send back, return
aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis *f.* value, (monetary) worth
mnēmosynum, mnēmosynī *n.* remembrance, token
sodālis, sodālis, -ium *m.* comrade, companion
sūdārium, sūdāriī *n.* cloth; napkin
Saetabus, -a, -um of Saetabis (a town in Spain); Spanish
Hibērī, Hibērōrum *m. pl.* Iberians, Spaniards
Fabullus, Fabullī *m.* Fabullus
Vērānius, Vērāniī *m.* Veranius
Vērāniolus, Vērāniolī *m.* (dear) little Veranius

9. Lucretius, *Dē Rērum Nātūrā* I.199–207

The poet summarizes one of the most important principles of nature.

dēnique cūr hominēs tantōs nātūra parāre†
nōn potuit, pedibus quī pontum per vada possent
trānsīre et magnōs manibus dīvellere montīs
multaque vīvendō vītālia vincere saecla,
sī nōn māteriēs quia rēbus reddita certast
gignundīs, ē quā cōnstat quid possit orīrī?
nīl igitur fierī dē nīlō posse fatendumst,
sēmine quandō opus est rēbus, quō quaeque creātae
āeris in tenerās possint prōferrier aurās.

dēnique (adv.) finally
†**parō**, *here*, produce
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
pontus, **pontī** *m.* sea
vadum, **vadī** *n.* shallow, shoal
trānseō (**trāns-** + **eō**), **trānsīre**, **trānsiī/trānsīvī**, **trānsitus** go across, cross
dīvellō, **dīvellere**, **dīvellī**, **dīvulsus** tear apart, tear up
vītālis, **vītāle** living, vital; life-giving
saec(u)lum, **saec(u)lī** *n.* age, generation
māteriēs, **māteriēī** *f.* matter, material, primal substance
reddō (**red-** + **dō**) give back; render
gignō, **gignere**, **genuī**, **genitus** beget, produce; **gignundīs** = *archaic form of* **gignendīs**
cōnstō (**con-** + **stō**), **cōnstāre**, **cōnstitī**, **cōnstātūrus** stand still; be composed (of), consist (in); be fixed
sēmen, **sēminis** *n.* seed
quandō (conj.) since
creō (1-tr.) create, conceive
āēr, **āeris** *m.* air
tener, **tenera**, **tenerum** tender, soft, delicate
prōferō (**prō-** + **ferō**), **prōferre**, **prōtulī**, **prōlātus** bring forth; *passive,* come forth, emerge; **prōferrier** = *archaic form of* **prōferrī**
aura, **aurae** *f.* breeze

10. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.39

The effect on Caesar's men of rumors about the Germans

dum paucōs diēs ad† Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur,† ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant—saepe numerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse—tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. hic prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs† reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant. quōrum alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat ut eius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent remanēbant. hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre† poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam iī quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur.

†**ad**, *here,* at, near
Vesontiō, **Vesontiōnis** *f.* Vesontio (the chief town of the Sequani, a Gallic tribe)
frūmentārius, **-a**, **-um** of grain; **rēs frūmentāria**, grain supply
commeātus, **commeātūs** *m.* cargo; provisions
†**morātur**, *subject is Caesar*
percontātiō, **percontātiōnis** *f.* interrogation
Gallī, **Gallōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
mercātor, **mercātōris** *m.* merchant, trader
magnitūdō, **magnitūdinis** *f.* magnitude, size
Germānī, **Germānōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Germans
incrēdibilis, **incrēdibile** unbelievable
exercitātiō, **exercitātiōnis** *f.* training, exercise; skill, proficiency
praedicō (1-tr.) proclaim, declare
numerus, **numerī** *m.* number; **saepe numerō**, often (in respect to number)
congredior (**con-** + **gradior**) approach; join battle
vultus, **vultūs** *m.* expression, countenance; face
subitō (adv.) suddenly
occupō (1-tr.) seize
mediocriter (adv.) to a moderate degree
perturbō (1-tr.) upset, disturb, agitate
tribūnus, **tribūnī** *m.* tribune, military commander
†**praefectus**, **praefectī** *m.* commander, officer
mīlitāris, **mīlitāre** military; **rēs mīlitāris**, military affairs, military practice
ūsus, **ūsūs** *m.* use, experience
necessārius, **-a**, **-um** necessary
voluntās, **voluntātis** *f.* will; willingness, approval
nōnnūllī, **-ae**, **-a** a number, not a few, some
pudor, **pudōris** *m.* shame, decency, modesty
addūcō (**ad-** + **dūcō**) lead (toward); induce, influence
suspīciō, **suspīciōnis** *f.* suspicion; trace
vītō (1-tr.) avoid
remaneō (**re-** + **maneō**) remain
fingō, **fingere**, **fīnxī**, **fictus** form, fashion; make (up), simulate; compose
interdum (adv.) from time to time, occasionally
lacrima, **lacrimae** *f.* tear
†**teneō**, *here,* hold back
abditus, **-a**, **-um** hidden
tabernāculum, **tabernāculī** *n.* tent
queror, **querī**, **questus sum** complain, protest; lament
familiāris, **familiāre** belonging to one's household; well known, familiar; *subst.*, friend, intimate
commūnis, **commūne** common, shared
miseror (1-tr.) pity
vulgō (adv.) commonly; all together
testāmentum, **testāmentī** *n.* will
obsignō (1-tr.) affix a seal to, seal
paulātim (adv.) little by little
centuriō, **centuriōnis** *m.* centurion (an officer commanding a century)
equitātus, **equitātūs** *m.* cavalry

11. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.1

A profile of the Suebi, a German tribe

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā suīs ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. hī rursus invicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus† bellī intermittitur. sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus. quae rēs et cibī genere et cōtīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs† nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā adsuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum magnitūdine hominēs efficit. atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habeant quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et laventur in flūminibus.

Suēbī, Suēbōrum *m. pl.* (the) Suebi (a German tribe)
bellicōsus, -a, -um warlike, fond of war
Germānī, Germānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Germans
pāgus, pāgī *m.* district
quotannīs (adv.) yearly, every year
singulī, -ae, -a individual
armātus, armātī *m.* armed man, soldier
bellō (1-intr.) wage war
ēdūcō (ē- + dūcō) lead out
alō, alere, aluī, al(i)tus feed, nourish
rursus (adv.) again
——, **vicis** *f.* turn; succession; **invicem**, in turn
remaneō (re- + maneō) remain
cultūra, cultūrae *f.* cultivation
ratiō, ratiōnis *f.* account, reason; method, way
†**ūsus, ūsūs** *m.* use, experience, practice
intermittō (inter- + mittō) interrupt
prīvātus, -a, -um private
sēparātus, -a, -um separate
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; farm
frūmentum, frūmentī *n.* grain
lac, lactis *n.* milk
pecus, pecoris *n.* (herd) animal, livestock
vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis *f.* hunting (activity)
cibus, cibī *m.* food
cōtīdiānus, -a, -um daily
exercitātiō, exercitātiōnis *f.* physical exercise, practice
†**ā puerīs**, *here,* from boyhood
officium, officiī *n.* obligation; duty, task
disciplīna, disciplīnae *f.* training
assuēfaciō, assuēfacere, assuēfēcī, assuēfactus make accustomed, accustom
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention; choice
immānis, immāne enormous, tremendous
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis *f.* size, magnitude
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* practice, custom, habit
addūcō (ad- + dūcō) lead (toward)
frīgidus, -a, -um cold, icy
vestītus, vestītūs *m.* clothes, clothing
pellis, pellis, -ium *f.* (animal) skin, hide
exiguitās, exiguitātis *f.* smallness, scantiness
apertus, -a, -um open; exposed, uncovered
lavō, lavāre/lavere, lāvī, lautus/lōtus wash; *passive,* wash oneself
flūmen, flūminis *n.* river, stream

12. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* V.44

Caesar reports on a rivalry between two of his centurions.

erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī centuriōnēs quī iam prīmīs ordinibus adpropinquārent, Tītus Pullō et Lūcius Vorēnus. hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō† summīs simultātibus contendēbant. ex hīs Pullō, cum ācerrimē ad† mūnītiōnēs pugnārētur, "quid dubitās," inquit,† "Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? hic diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit." haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit† extrā mūnītiōnēs quāque† hostium pars cōnfertissima est vīsa, inrumpit. nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vallō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs inmittit atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit. quō percussō exanimātōque hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. āvertit hic cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labōrantī

centuriō, **centuriōnis** *m.* centurion
ordō, **ordinis** *m.* order, rank
appropinquō (1-intr.) approach; be close (to) (+ dat.)
Tītus Pullō, **Tītī Pullōnis** *m.* Titus Pullo
Lūcius Vorēnus, **Lūciī Vorēnī** *m.* Lucius Vorenus
perpetuus, **-a**, **-um** continual
contrōversia, **contrōversiae** *f.* dispute
anteferō (**ante-** + **ferō**), **anteferre**, **antetulī**, **antelātus** place *or* rank above, prefer
†**locus**, *here*, rank
simultās, **simultātis** *f.* quarrel, feud
contendō, **contendere**, **contendī**, **contentus** struggle
†**ad**, *here*, at, near
mūnītiō, **mūnītiōnis** *f.* fortification
†**inquit**, **prōcēdit**, *historical present tense, used here and in several subsequent verbs to add vividness; may be translated as present or past*
probō (1-tr.) prove, demonstrate
iūdicō (1-tr.) judge, determine
prōcēdō (**prō-** + **cēdō**) proceed, advance
extrā (prep. + acc.) outside
†**quā**, *here* (adv.), where
cōnfertus, **-a**, **-um** crowded, dense, packed close together
irrumpō, **irrumpere**, **irrūpī**, **irruptus** break in, burst into
vallum, **vallī** *n.* palisade (of stakes), fortification
contineō (**con-** + **teneō**), **continēre**, **continuī**, **contentus** hold in, contain
vereor, **verērī**, **veritus sum** be in awe of, show respect to; dread, fear
exīstimātiō, **exīstimātiōnis** *f.* opinion, judgment
subsequor (**sub-** + **sequor**) follow close behind
mediocris, **mediocre** moderate, fairly small
spatium, **spatiī** *n.* space, interval
pīlum, **pīlī** *n.* spear, javelin
immittō (**in-** + **mittō**) send in, send against
multitūdō, **multitūdinis** *f.* multitude
prōcurrō, **prōcurrere**, **prō(cu)currī**, **prōcursum** run forward, run out in front
trāiciō (**trāns-** + **iaciō**) pierce, transfix
percutiō, **percutere**, **percussī**, **percussus** strike
exanimō (1-tr.) deprive of life, kill
scūtum, **scūtī** *n.* shield
prōtegō, **prōtegere**, **prōtēxī**, **prōtēctus** protect, defend
ūniversus, **-a**, **-um** all together
coniciō (**con-** + **iaciō**) throw (together), cast
prōgredior (**prō-** + **gradior**) go forward, advance
facultās, **facultātis** *f.* ability, power; opportunity, possibility
trānsfīgō, **trānsfīgere**, **trānsfīxī**, **trānsfīxus** pierce through
verūtum, **verūtī** *n.* (short) throwing spear
balteus, **balteī** *m.* shoulder band, sword belt
dēfīgō, **dēfīgere**, **dēfīxī**, **dēfīxus** embed, bury, stick
āvertō, **āvertere**, **āvertī**, **āversus** turn (something) away
vāgīna, **vāgīnae** *f.* sheath
ēdūcō (**ē-** + **dūcō**) lead forth; draw
dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum** right
impediō, **impedīre**, **impediī/impedīvī**, **impedītus** obstruct, hinder, impede
circumsistō, **circumsistere**, ——, —— surround
succurrō, **succurrere**, **succurrī**, **succursum** run to aid, assist, help

subvenit. ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis multitūdō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitrantur. Vorēnus gladiō rem comminus gerit atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum īnferiōrem dēiectus concidit. huic rursus circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude intrā mūnītiōnēs sē recipiunt. sīc fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque† versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset neque dīiūdicārī posset uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

subveniō (**sub-** + **veniō**) come to the aid (of), assist
cōnfestim (adv.) immediately
Pullō, **Pullōnis** *m.* Titus Pullo
multitūdō, **multitūdinis** *f.* multitude
convertō, **convertere**, **convertī**, **conversus** reverse; change; **sē convertere**, to direct oneself
verūtum, **verūtī** *n.* (short) throwing spear
trānsfīgō, **trānsfīgere**, **trānsfīxī**, **trānsfīxus** pierce through
Vorēnus, **Vorēnī** *m.* Vorenus
comminus (adv.) in close contact, at close quarters, hand to hand
prōpellō (**prō-** + **pellō**), **prōpellere**, **prōpulī**, **prōpulsus** push forward, repel
īnstō (**in-** + **stō**), **īnstāre**, **īnstitī**, **īnstātūrus** press (hostilely), press on, pursue
īnferior, **īnferius** lower
dēiciō (**dē-** + **iaciō**) throw *or* push down
concidō (**con-** + **cadō**), **concidere**, **concidī**, —— fall down, collapse
rursus (adv.) again
circumveniō (**circum-** + **veniō**) (tr.) surround
subsidium, **subsidiī** *n.* aid, help
ambō, **ambae**, **ambō** (pl. adj. and pron.) both; **ambō** = *masc. pl. nom.*
incolumis, **incolume** unharmed; safe
complūrēs, **complūra**/**complūria** several, very many
laus, **laudis** *f.* praise
intrā (prep. + acc.) within
mūnītiō, **mūnītiōnis** *f.* fortification
recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) take back; **sē recipere**, to withdraw
contentiō, **contentiōnis** *f.* effort; rivalry; conflict
certāmen, **certāminis** *n.* contest; fight, battle
†**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque** (indef. pron.) each (of two)
versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning round
dīiūdicō (1-tr.) settle, decide
anteferō (**ante-** + **ferō**), **anteferre**, **antetulī**, **antelātus** place *or* rank above, prefer

13. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* VI.18

Part of Caesar's Gallic anthropology

Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsum et annōrum initia sīc observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. in reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod† suōs līberōs,† nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris adsistere turpe dīcunt.

Gallī, Gallōrum *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
prōgnātus, -a, -um born, descended
praedicō (1-tr.) declare, proclaim
druidēs, druidum *m. pl.* (the) druids (Gallic priests)
prōdō (**prō-** + **dō**) put forth; report
spatium, spatiī *n.* space, period (of time)
numerus, numerī *m.* number
fīnīo, fīnīre, fīniī/fīnīvī, fīnītus limit; determine, fix
nātālis, nātāle of *or* belonging to one's birth; **diēs nātālis**, birthday
mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium *m.* month
initium, initiī *n.* beginning
observō (1-tr.) observe, regard
subsequor (**sub-** + **sequor**) follow after, succeed
īnstitūtum, īnstitūtī *n.* practice, institution
ferē (adv.) nearly, almost
†**quod**, *here* (conj.) the fact that
†**līberōs**, *here*, children
adolēscō, adolēscere, adolēvī, adultum grow up, reach maturity
mīlitia, mīlitiae *f.* military service
sustineō (**sub-** + **teneō**) undergo, bear
palam (adv.) openly
adeō (**ad-** + **eō**) approach
puerīlis, puerīle of *or* belonging to a boy
cōnspectus, cōnspectūs *m.* sight, view
assistō, assistere, astitī, —— stand (near)
turpis, turpe base, shameful

14. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 8

The historian identifies an important difference between the Athenians and the Romans.

sed profectō fortūna in omnī rē dominātur; ea rēs cūnctās ex lubīdine magis quam ex vērō celebrat obscūratque. Athēniēnsium rēs gestae, sīcutī ego aestumō, satis amplae magnificaeque fuēre, vērum aliquantō minōrēs tamen quam fāmā feruntur. sed quia prōvēnēre ibi scrīptōrum magna ingenia, per terrārum orbem Athēniēnsium facta prō maxumīs celebrantur. ita eōrum quī fēcēre virtūs tanta habētur quantum eam verbīs potuēre extollere praeclāra ingenia. at populō Rōmānō numquam ea cōpia fuit, quia prūdentissumus quisque maxumē negōtiōsus erat, ingenium nēmō sine corpore exercēbat, optumus quisque facere quam dīcere, sua ab aliīs bene facta laudārī quam ipse aliōrum nārrāre mālēbat.

profectō (adv.) in fact, actually; indeed, assuredly
dominor (1-intr.) be master, hold sway, rule
libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
celebrō (1-tr.) make famous, celebrate
obscūrō (1-tr.) make obscure, cover up
Athēniēnsēs, Athēniēnsium *m. pl.* Athenians
sīcutī (conj.) just as
amplus, -a, -um great, distinguished
magnificus, -a, -um magnificent, splendid
aliquantō (adv.) somewhat, not a little
prōveniō (prō- + veniō) come forth, appear
scrīptor, scrīptōris *m.* writer
orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* ring, circle; **orbis terrārum**, circle of lands, world
extollō, extollere, ——, —— raise up, elevate; praise
praeclārus, -a, -um very famous
at (conj.) but
prūdēns, prūdentis wise, sensible, clever
negōtiōsus, -a, -um busy, occupied, devoted to business
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitus keep busy, occupy; train, exercise
nārrō (1-tr.) narrate, tell (of)

15. Vergil, *Eclogues* II.63–68

The lovesick shepherd Corydon speaks to his unattainable beloved, Alexis.

torva leaena lupum sequitur, lupus ipse capellam,
flōrentem cytisum sequitur lascīva capella,
tē Corydōn, o† Alexi: trahit sua quemque voluptās.
aspice, arātra iugō referunt suspēnsa iuvencī,
et sōl crēscentīs dēcēdēns duplicat umbrās:
mē tamen ūrit amor; quis† enim modus adsit amōrī?

torvus, -a, -um fierce
leaena, leaenae *f.* lioness
lupus, lupī *m.* wolf
capella, capellae *f.* she-goat
flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, —— bloom, blossom
cytisus, cytisī *m.* or *f.* clover
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
Corydōn, Corydōnis *m.* Corydon
†**ō** here scans *short* and is in hiatus (not elided)
Alexis, Alexis *m.* Alexis; **Alexi** = *voc. sing.*
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; attract
voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy
aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectus look (toward), behold
arātrum, arātrī *n.* plough
iugum, iugī *n.* yoke
suspendō, suspendere, suspendī, suspēnsus hang up, suspend
iuvencus, iuvencī *m.* bull; ox
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus grow, increase
dēcēdō (dē- + cēdō) go down
duplicō (1-tr.) double
ūrō, ūrere, ussī, ustus burn; inflame; consume
†**quis**, *interrog. pron. used adjectivally*

16. Vergil, *Eclogues* IV.18–25

The poet addresses a child whose birth will initiate a new golden age on earth.

at tibi prīma, puer, nūllō mūnuscula cultū
errantīs hederās passim cum baccare tellūs
mixtaque rīdentī colocāsia fundet acanthō.
ipsae lacte domum referent distenta capellae
ūbera, nec magnōs metuent armenta leōnēs;
ipsa tibi blandōs fundent cūnābula flōrēs.
occidet et serpēns, et fallāx herba venēnī
occidet; Assyrium vulgō nāscētur amōmum.

at (conj.) but
mūnusculum, mūnusculī *n.* small gift
cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation
hedera, hederae *f.* ivy
passim (adv.) everywhere
baccar, baccaris *n. baccar,* (the plant) cyclamen
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus mix
rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus smile
colocāsium, colocāsiī *n.* Egyptian bean
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth
acanthus, acanthī *m.* bear's-foot, acanthus
lac, lactis *n.* milk
distentus, -a, -um swollen, distended
capella, capellae *f.* she-goat
ūber, ūberis *n.* udder
armentum, armentī *n.* herd (of cattle)
leō, leōnis *m.* lion
blandus, -a, -um charming, soothing
cūnābula, cūnābulōrum *n. pl.* cradle
flōs, flōris *m.* flower
serpēns, serpentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* serpent, snake
fallāx, fallācis deceitful, treacherous
herba, herbae *f.* grass; plant; herb
venēnum, venēnī *n.* poison
Assyrius, -a, -um Assyrian
vulgō (adv.) commonly
amōmum, amōmī *n.* balsam

17. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.657–63

Aeneas reports what he said in response to his father's refusal to join the family in fleeing from Troy.

mēne efferre pedem, genitor, tē posse relictō
spērāstī tantumque nefās patriō excidit ōre?
sī nihil ex tantā superīs placet urbe relinquī,
et sedet hoc† animō peritūraeque addere Troiae
tēque tuōsque iuvat, patet istī iānua lētō,
iamque aderit multō Priamī dē sanguine Pyrrhus,
nātum ante ōra patris, patrem quī obtruncat ad† ārās.

efferō (**ex-** + **ferō**), **efferre**, **extulī**, **ēlātus** bear forth
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
genitor, **genitōris** *m.* father
patrius, **-a**, **-um** of a father, paternal
excidō (**ex-** + **cadō**), **excidere**, **excidī**, —— fall (from)
superī, **superōrum** *m. pl.* (the) gods above
sedeō, **sedēre**, **sēdī**, **sessūrus** sit, be seated; be fixed
†**hoc**, *here,* scans as if it were spelled **hocc**
addō (**ad-** + **dō**) add
iuvō, **iuvāre**, **iūvī**, **iūtus** help, assist; please
pateō, **patēre**, **patuī**, —— lie open
iānua, **iānuae** *f.* door; doorway, entrance
lētum, **lētī** *n.* death, destruction
Priamus, **Priamī** *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
sanguis, **sanguinis** *m.* blood
Pyrrhus, **Pyrrhī** *m.* Pyrrhus (son of Achilles)
obtruncō (1-tr.) slay, slaughter, butcher
†**ad**, *here,* at, near

18. Vergil, *Aeneid* IV.382–87

Enraged Dido concludes her speech to Aeneas after he has claimed that the gods have ordered him to leave her realm.

spērō equidem mediīs, sī quid pia nūmina possunt,
supplicia hausūrum scopulīs et nōmine Dīdō
saepe vocātūrum. sequar ātrīs ignibus absēns
et, cum frīgida mors animā sēdūxerit artūs,
omnibus umbra locīs aderō. dabis, improbe, poenās.
audiam et haec Mānīs veniet mihi fāma sub īmōs.

nūmen, **nūminis** *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen
supplicium, **suppliciī** *n.* punishment
hauriō, **haurīre**, **hausī**, **haustus**/***hausus** drink (in), absorb; **hausūrum**, *supply* **tē**
scopulus, **scopulī** *m.* projecting rock, boulder, crag
āter, **ātra**, **ātrum** black, dark
frīgidus, **-a**, **-um** cold, icy
sēdūcō (**sē-** + **dūcō**) lead away, separate
artus, **artūs** *m.* joint (of the body), limb
improbus, **-a**, **-um** wicked; shameless
Mānēs, **Mānium** *m. pl.* Manes (spirits of the dead); the underworld
īmus, **-a**, **-um** lowest, deepest

19. Horace, *Carmina* III.9 (Asclepiadean)

A dialogue between former lovers

Dōnec grātus eram tibi
  nec quisquam† potior bracchia candidae
cervīcī iuvenis dabat,
  Persārum viguī rēge beātior.

"dōnec nōn aliā magis
  arsistī neque erat Lydia post Chloēn,
multī Lydia nōminis
  Rōmānā viguī clārior Īliā."

mē nunc Thrēssa Chloē regit,
  dulcīs docta modōs† et citharae sciēns,
prō quā nōn metuam morī,
  sī parcent animae fāta superstitī.

"mē torret face mūtuā
  Thūrīnī Calais fīlius Ornytī,
prō quō bis patiar morī,
  sī parcent puerō fāta superstitī."

†**quisquam**, *indef. pron. used adjectivally*
potior, **potius** more powerful; preferable
bracchium, **bracchiī** *n.* (lower) arm
candidus, **-a**, **-um** white, clear, bright, radiant
cervīx, **cervīcis** *f.* neck
iuvenis, **iuvenis** *m.* young man
Persae, **Persārum** *f. pl.* (the) Persians
vigeō, **vigēre**, **viguī**, —— be vigorous, thrive, flourish, live
beātus, **-a**, **-um** happy, blessed, fortunate
ardeō, **ardēre**, **arsī**, **arsūrus** burn, be on fire
Lydia, **Lydiae** *f.* Lydia
Chloē, **Chloēs** *f.* Chloe; **Chloēn** = *acc. sing.*
Īlia, **Īliae** *f.* Ilia (mother of Romulus and Remus)
Thrēssa, **Thrēssae** *f.* (a) Thracian woman
dulcis, **dulce** sweet, pleasant
doctus, **-a**, **-um** learned, skilled, clever

†**modōs**, *here, Accusative of Respect,* in (respect to) measures *or* verses
cithara, **citharae** *f.* cithara; lute
parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī**, **parsūrus** be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)
superstes, **superstitis** standing by, present; surviving
torreō, **torrēre**, **torruī**, **tostus** parch, roast, scorch, burn
fax, **facis** *f.* firebrand, torch
mūtuus, **-a**, **-um** shared, reciprocal, mutual
Thūrīnus, **-a**, **-um** of Thurii (a city in southern Italy)
Calais, **Calais** *m.* Calais
Ornytus, **Ornytī** *m.* Ornytus
bis (adv.) two times, twice

quid sī prīsca redit Venus
dīductōsque iugō cōgit aēneō,
sī flāva excutitur Chloē
reiectaeque patet iānua Lydiae?

"quamquam sīdere pulchrior
ille est, tū levior cortice et inprobō
īrācundior Hadriā,
tēcum vīvere amem, tēcum obeam lubēns."

prīscus, -a, -um of former times, old, ancient
dīdūcō (dis- + dūcō) draw apart, separate
iugum, iugī *n.* yoke
cōgō (co- + agō), cōgere, coēgī, coāctus drive together, force, compel
aēneus, -a, -um of bronze, bronze
flāvus, -a, -um golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
excutiō, excutere, excussī, excussus shake off, cast out
Chloē, Chloēs *f.* Chloe
reiciō (re- + iaciō) throw back, reject
pateō, patēre, patuī, —— lie open
iānua, iānuae *f.* door
Lydia, Lydiae *f.* Lydia
sīdus, sīderis *n.* star
cortex, corticis *m.* or *f.* cork
improbus, -a, -um wicked; shameless; relentless
īrācundus, -a, -um irascible, angry, moody
Hadria, Hadriae *m.* or *f.* Adriatic sea
obeō (ob- + eō), obīre, obiī/obīvī, obitus go to meet; fall, perish, die
libēns, libentis willing, glad

20. Propertius II.19.1–8

The poet imagines that a stay in the country will keep Cynthia safe from romantic entanglements.

Etsī mē invītō discēdis, Cynthia, Rōmā,
laetor quod sine mē dēvia rūra colēs.
nūllus erit castīs iuvenis corruptor in agrīs,
quī tē blanditiīs nōn sinat esse probam;
nūlla neque† ante tuās oriētur rixa fenestrās,
nec† tibi clāmātae somnus amārus erit.
sōla eris et sōlōs spectābis, Cynthia, montēs
et pecus et fīnēs pauperis agricolae.

invītus, -a, -um unwilling
Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* Cynthia
laetor (1-intr.) rejoice, be glad, be delighted
dēvius, -a, -um out of the way, remote, secluded
colō, colere, coluī, cultus cultivate, tend; inhabit
castus, -a, -um free from vice, moral, chaste
iuvenis, iuvenis young
corruptor, corruptōris *m.* corrupter, seducer
blanditia, blanditiae *f.* ingratiating speech, blandishment; charm
sinō, sinere, siī/sīvī, situm allow, permit
probus, -a, -um excellent, upright, virtuous
†The redundant negatives strengthen the negative idea.
rixa, rixae *f.* altercation, brawl
fenestra, fenestrae *f.* window
clāmō (1-tr.) shout for, call by name
somnus, somnī *m.* sleep
amārus, -a, -um bitter, harsh
pecus, pecoris *n.* herd animal; livestock
pauper, pauperis poor

21. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* II.46.3–7

The historian describes a battle between the Romans and the Etruscans, particularly those from the city of Veii. Three members of the Fabii give evidence of Roman bravery.

vix explicandī ordinis spatium Etruscīs fuit cum, pīlīs inter prīmam trepidātiōnem abiectīs temere magis quam ēmissīs, pugna iam in manūs, iam ad gladiōs, ubi Mars est atrōcissimus, vēnerat. inter prīmōrēs genus Fabium īnsigne spectāculō exemplōque cīvibus erat. ex hīs Q. Fabium—tertiō hic annō ante cōnsul fuerat—prīncipem in cōnfertōs Veientēs euntem ferōx vīribus et armōrum arte Tuscus, incautum inter multās versantem hostium manūs, gladiō per pectus trānsfīgit; tēlō extractō praeceps Fabius in volnus abiit.† sēnsit utraque† aciēs ūnīus virī cāsum, cēdēbatque inde Rōmānus† cum M. Fabius cōnsul trānsiluit iacentis corpus obiectāque parmā, "hoc iūrāstis" inquit, "mīlitēs, fugientēs vōs in castra reditūrōs? adeō ignāvissimōs hostēs magis timētis quam Iovem Martemque per† quōs iūrāstis? at ego iniūrātus aut victor revertar aut prope tē hīc, Q. Fabī, dīmicāns cadam." cōnsulī tum Caesō Fabius, priōris annī cōnsul: "verbīsne istīs, frāter, ut pugnent, tē

explicō (1-tr.) unfold, unfurl; spread out, extend
ordō, ordinis *m.* order; row, line, arrangement; (battle) order
spatium, spatiī *n.* space; (space of) time, interval
Etruscī, Etruscōrum *m. pl.* (the) Etruscans
pīlum, pīlī *n.* (heavy) javelin
trepidātiō, trepidātiōnis *f.* alarm, agitation, confusion, consternation
abiciō (**ab-** + **iaciō**) cast away, throw away, cast down
temere (adv.) by chance, at random; rashly
ēmittō (**ē-** + **mittō**) send forth, hurl, cast
pugna, pugnae *f.* battle
atrōx, atrōcis dark, gloomy; cruel, fierce
prīmōrēs, prīmōrum *m. pl.* leading men, front ranks
Fabius, -a, -um of the Fabii, Fabian
īnsignis, īnsigne prominent, eminent, distinguished
spectāculum, spectāculī *n.* sight, spectacle
exemplum, exemplī *n.* example
Q. Fabius, Q. Fabiī *m.* Q. Fabius
prīnceps, prīncipis first, in front
cōnfertus, -a, -um crowded, dense, packed close together
Veientēs, Veientium *m. pl.* the people of Veii, (the) Veiians
ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
Tuscus, -a, -um Tuscan, Etruscan
incautus, -a, -um heedless, unaware
versō (1-intr.) turn, twist, whirl about
trānsfīgō, trānsfīgere, trānsfīxī, trānsfīxus pierce
extrahō, extrahere, extrāxī, extractus draw out, extract
praeceps, praecipitis headlong, head first
†**abeō**, *here,* fall over
†**uterque, utraque, utrumque** (indef. adj.) each (of two)
†**Rōmānus**, *here, collective singular,* the Romans
M. Fabius, M. Fabiī *m.* M. Fabius
trānsiliō, trānsilīre, trānsiluī, —— leap across, jump over
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie; lie dead
obiciō (**ob-** + **iaciō**) put in the way, interpose
parma, parmae *f.* (small, round) shield (carried by infantry)
iūrō (1-intr.) take an oath, swear
ignāvus, -a, -um lazy; cowardly, spiritless; ignoble
†**per**, *here* (in oaths), by
at (conj.) but
iniūrātus, -a, -um not having taken an oath, unsworn
victor, victōris *m.* victor, conqueror
revertor, revertī, reversus sum turn back; return
prope (prep. + acc.) near
dīmicō (1-intr.) contend, fight
Caesō Fabius, Caesōnis Fabiī *m.* Caeso Fabius

impetrātūrum crēdis? dī impetrābunt per† quōs iūrāvēre; et nōs, ut decet procerēs, ut Fabiō nōmine est dignum, pugnandō potius quam adhortandō accendāmus mīlitum animōs." sīc in prīmum† īnfēnsīs hastīs prōvolant duo Fabiī, tōtamque mōvērunt sēcum aciem.

impetrō (1-tr.) obtain by entreaty; persuade
†**per**, *here* (in oaths), by
iūrō (1-intr.) take an oath, swear
decet, **decēre**, **decuit** (impersonal verb) it becomes, it befits
procerēs, **procerum** *m. pl.* leading men, leaders
Fabius, **-a**, **-um** of the Fabiī, Fabian
potius (comparative adv.) rather
adhortor (1-tr.) encourage, urge on
accendō, **accendere**, **accendī**, **accēnsus** set on fire, kindle; stir up, arouse
†**prīmum**, **prīmī** *n.* front line
īnfēnsus, **-a**, **-um** hostile, threatening
hasta, **hastae** *f.* spear
prōvolō (1-intr.) fly out, fly forth; rush forward

22. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* VIII.7.2–8

After leading his men (against orders) far out in front of the main Roman armies and near the line of the opposing Latin forces from Tusculum, a young Titus Manlius encounters the enemy.

ibi Tusculānī erant equitēs; praeerat Geminus Maecius, vir cum genere inter suōs tum factīs clārus. is, ubi Rōmānōs equitēs īnsignemque inter eōs praecēdentem cōnsulis fīlium—nam omnēs inter sē, utīque illustrēs virī, nōtī erant—cognōvit, "ūnāne," ait, "turmā Rōmānī cum Latīnīs sociīsque bellum gestūrī estis? quid intereā cōnsulēs, quid duo exercitūs cōnsulārēs agent?" "aderunt in tempore," Manlius inquit, "et cum illīs aderit Iuppiter ipse, foederum ā vōbīs violātōrum testis, quī plūs potest polletque. sī ad† Rēgillum lacum ad satietātem vestram pugnāvimus, hīc quoque efficiēmus profectō nē nimis aciēs vōbīs et conlāta signa nōbīscum cordī sint." ad ea Geminus paulum ab suīs equō prōvectus: "vīsne igitur, dum diēs ista venit quā magnō cōnātū exercitūs moveātis, intereā tū ipse congredī mēcum ut nostrō duōrum† iam hinc ēventū cernātur quantum eques Latīnus Rōmānō praestet?" movet ferōcem animum iuvenis seu īra seu dētractandī certāminis pudor seu inexsuperābilis vīs fātī.

Tusculānus, -a, -um of Tusculum, Tusculan
eques, equitis *m.* horseman, cavalryman
Geminus Maecius, Geminī Maeciī *m.* Geminus Maecius
īnsignis, īnsigne distinguished, outstanding
praecēdō (**prae-** + **cēdō**) go before, lead the way
utīque (adv.) particularly, especially
illustris, illustre distinguished, respectable
aiō (defective verb) say; **ait** = *3rd sing. pres. act. indic.*
turma, turmae *f.* squadron
Latīnī, Latīnōrum *m. pl.* inhabitants of Latium, Latins
intereā (adv.) meanwhile
cōnsulāris, cōnsulāre consular
Manlius, Manliī *m.* Manlius
foedus, foederis *n.* pact, treaty
violō (1-tr.) violate
testis, testis, -ium *m.* witness
polleō, pollēre, ——, —— be strong, be powerful
†**ad**, *here*, near
Rēgillus lacus, Rēgillī lacūs *m.* Lake Regillus (site of an earlier Roman victory over the Latins)
satietās, satietātis *f.* satiety; loathing, disgust
profectō (adv.) in fact, assuredly
nimis (adv.) too much, excessively
cor, cordis *n.* heart; **cordī esse**, to be pleasing, to be agreeable
equus, equī *m.* horse
prōvehō, prōvehere, prōvexī, prōvectus carry forward; *passive*, proceed, advance
cōnātus, cōnātūs *m.* effort, struggle, endeavor
congredior (**con-** + **gradior**) meet, fight, contend
†**nostrō duōrum**, of us two
ēventus, ēventūs *m.* fortune, fate, lot
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus discern, observe
Latīnus, -a, -um Latin
praestō (**prae-** + **stō**), **praestāre, praestitī, praestātūrus** stand before, be superior
ferōx, ferōcis headstrong, fierce
iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* young man
seu (conj.) (or) if; **seu . . . seu . . . seu . . .**, if . . . or if . . . or if . . .
dētractō (1-tr.) decline, refuse
certāmen, certāminis *n.* contest, battle
pudor, pudōris *m.* shame; disgrace
inexsuperābilis, inexsuperābile that cannot be overcome, insurmountable

23. Lucan, *Bellum Cīvīle* IX.961–69

The poet describes Caesar visiting the ruins of Troy.

Sīgēāsque petit† fāmae mīrātor harēnās
et Simoëntis aquās et Graiō nōbile bustō
Rhoetion et multum dēbentīs vātibus umbrās.
circumit exustae nōmen memorābile Troiae
magnaque Phoebēī quaerit vestīgia mūrī.
iam silvae sterilēs et putrēs rōbore truncī
Assaracī pressēre domōs et templa deōrum
iam lassā rādīce tenent, ac tōta teguntur
Pergama dūmētīs: etiam periēre ruīnae.

Sīgēus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to Sigeum (a town near Troy); Trojan
†**petit**, *subject is Caesar*
mīrātor, mīrātōris *m.* admirer
harēna, harēnae *f.* sand
Simoīs, Simoëntis *m.* (the river) Simois (near Troy)
aqua, aquae *f.* water
Graius, -a, -um Greek
nōbilis, nōbile noble; renowned, famous
bustum, bustī *n.* funeral pyre; grave mound, tomb
Rhoetion, Rhoetiī *n.* Rhoetion (a town near Troy)
vātēs, vātis, -ium *m.* or *f.* prophet; bard, poet
circumeō (circum- + eō), circumīre, circumiī, circumitus go around, encircle
exūrō, exūrere, exussī, exustus destroy by fire, burn completely
memorābilis, memorābile memorable
Phoebēus, -a, -um of *or* associated with Phoebus (Apollo)
vestīgium, vestīgiī *n.* trace, remnant, vestige
silva, silvae *f.* forest
sterilis, sterile barren, sterile
putris, putre decomposed, rotten, putrid
rōbur, rōboris *n.* oak tree; timber; strength, firmness
truncus, truncī *m.* (tree) trunk
Assaracus, Assaracī *m.* Assaracus (king of Troy)
lassus, -a, -um exhausted, weary, tired
rādīx, rādīcis, -ium *f.* root
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
Pergama, Pergamōrum *n. pl.* Pergama (citadel of Troy)
dūmēta, dūmētōrum *n. pl.* thorns, thickets, bushes
ruīna, ruīnae *f.* ruin

Marcus Annaeus Lucānus (39–65 C.E.) was the nephew of Seneca the Younger and served as a quaestor under Nero. Discovered in a plot to kill the emperor, he was forced to take his own life. Lucan's epic style is marked by vivid and rapid narration, elegant and sometimes artificial language, and a pessimistic tone strongly in contrast to Vergil's *Aeneid*.

The *Pharsālia* or *Bellum Cīvīle* is an epic poem in ten books, which begins with Caesar's crossing of the Rubicon and recounts the closing episodes of Rome's civil wars. Many books are devoted to the exploits of Caesar and Pompey, their final rift, and Pompey's murder in Egypt.

24. Petronius, *Satyricon* 37

A first-time guest at a wealthy man's dinner party has asked the identity of a woman scurrying about the dining room. A veteran guest offers a description of the host's wife and of the host, Trimalchio.

"uxor," inquit, "Trimalchiōnis, Fortūnāta appellātur, quae nummōs modiō mētītur. et modo modo quid fuit? ignōscet mihi genius tuus, nōluissēs† dē manū illīus pānem accipere. nunc, nec quid nec quārē, in caelum abiit et Trimalchiōnis topanta est. ad summam,† merō merīdiē sī dīxerit illī tenebrās esse, crēdet. ipse nescit quid habeat, adeō saplūtus est; sed haec lupātria prōvidet omnia, est ubi nōn putēs. est sicca, sōbria, bonōrum cōnsiliōrum—tantum aurī vidēs—est tamen malae linguae, pīca pulvīnāris. quem amat, amat; quem nōn amat, nōn amat. ipse† fundōs habet, quā† mīlvī volant, nummōrum nummōs. argentum in ostiāriī illīus cellā plūs iacet quam quisquam in fortūnīs habet. familia vērō babae babae, nōn meherculēs putō decumam partem esse quae dominum suum nōverit.

uxor, **uxōris** *f.* wife
Trimalchiō, **Trimalchiōnis** *m.* Trimalchio
Fortūnāta, **Fortūnātae** *f.* Fortunata
appellō (1-tr.) name, call
nummus, **nummī** *m. nummus* (a Roman coin)
modius, **modiī** *m. modius* (a Roman grain measure); peck
mētior, **mētīrī**, **mēnsus sum** measure; mete (out)
ignōscō (**in-** + **nōscō**), **ignōscere**, **ignōvī**, **ignōtus** forgive, pardon (+ dat.)
genius, **geniī** *m. genius* (tutelary deity of a person or place); divine nature; spiritual part
†**nōluissēs**, *verb in apodosis of Past Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence (protasis is omitted)*
pānis, **pānis**, **-ium** *m.* bread
topanta (indeclinable noun) everything (< Greek *ta panta* transliterated into Latin)
†**ad summam**, *here,* in short, to sum up
merō merīdiē (adv.) right at noon, at noon exactly
tenebrae, **tenebrārum** *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
saplūtus, **-a**, **-um** very rich (< Greek *zaploutos* transliterated into Latin)
lupātria, **lupātriae** *f. lupatria* (abusive term for a woman), whore
prōvideō (**prō-** + **videō**) see to, attend to
siccus, **-a**, **-um** dry
sōbrius, **-a**, **-um** sensible, sober; cautious
lingua, **linguae** *f.* tongue; language
pīca, **pīcae** *f.* magpie
pulvīnāris, **pulvīnāre** of *or* pertaining to a cushion *or* pillow; resting on a couch; **pīca pulvīnāris**, *apparently* a gossipy bird
†**ipse** refers to Trimalchio.
fundus, **fundī** *m.* (piece of) land; farm, estate
†**quā**, *here* (adv.) where
mīlvus, **mīlvī** *m.* kite (bird of prey)
volō (1-intr.) fly
argentum, **argentī** *n.* silver; silver plate
ostiārius, **ostiāriī** *m.* doorkeeper, porter
cella, **cellae** *f.* small room; storeroom
iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —— lie (open); be at hand
familia, **familiae** *f.* household; family slaves
babae babae (interj.) *exclamation indicating surprise and admiration* babae! babae! (< Greek *babai! babai!* transliterated into Latin)

As identified by the historian Tacitus in his *Annālēs,* **Petronius** lived during the reign of Nero in the first century C.E. In the course of describing Petronius's protracted suicide—compelled by his loss of favor with Nero—the historian gives to Petronius the title **arbiter ēlegantiae** (minister of culture) and thereby suggests what role Petronius may have played in Neronian society. It is likely that this Petronius was the author of the work entitled the *Satyricon.*

From the surviving fragments the *Satyricon* appears to have been a long work of prose fiction recounting the Odyssean and surreal adventures of three young men. The fragments are written in a mixed literary style that includes many allusions to and parodies of other works of Latin and Greek literature. Since many of the characters are drawn from the common life of the Greek settlements in southern Italy, the *Satyricon*'s fragments are a valuable source of information about colloquial Latin, the **sermō cottīdiānus** (daily speech), of the first century C.E. The largest fragment, usually referred to as the *Cēna Trimalchiōnis* (Banquet of Trimalchio), contains vivid speeches in character by many of the dinner guests, for the most part successful businessmen of the upper middle class.

25. Pliny the Younger, *Epistulae* I.6

Pliny writes to Tacitus and describes his version of hunting.

Rīdēbis et licet rīdeās. ego, ille quem nōstī, aprōs trēs et quidem pulcherrimōs cēpī. "ipse?" inquis. ipse; nōn tamen ut omnīnō ab inertiā meā et quiēte discēderem. ad† rētia sedēbam: erat in proximō nōn vēnābulum aut lancea, sed stilus et pugillārēs: meditābar aliquid ēnotābamque ut, sī manūs vacuās, plēnās tamen cērās reportārem. nōn est quod† contemnās hoc studendī genus. mīrum est ut animus agitātiōne mōtūque corporis excitētur. iam undique silvae et sōlitūdō ipsumque illud silentium quod vēnātiōnī datur magna cōgitātiōnis incitāmenta sunt. proinde cum vēnābere, licēbit, auctōre mē, ut pānārium et lagunculam, sīc etiam pugillārēs ferās. experiēris nōn Diānam magis montibus quam Minervam inerrāre. valē.

rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus laugh (at), mock
aper, aprī *m.* wild boar
inertia, inertiae *f.* inactivity, laziness
quiēs, quiētis *f.* quiet, rest
†**ad**, *here*, near
rēte, rētis, -ium *n.* net, snare
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum sit
proximum, proximī *n.* neighorhood, vicinity; **in proximō**, nearby
vēnābulum, vēnābulī *n.* (hunting) spear
lancea, lanceae *f.* light spear, lance
stilus, stilī *m.* stylus (pen for writing on wax tablets)
pugillārēs, pugillārium *m. pl.* writing tablets
meditor (1-tr.) reflect upon, muse over
ēnotō (1-tr.) note down
vacuus, -a, -um empty
cēra, cērae *f.* wax; wax tablet
reportō (1-tr.) carry back
†**nōn est quod**, there is not (a reason) why
contemnō, contemnere, contempsī, contemptus despise, disdain, value little
studeō, studēre, studuī, —— be diligent, study
mīrus, -a, -um astonishing, wonderful
agitātiō, agitātiōnis *f.* motion, movement; activity
excitō (1-tr.) excite, stimulate
undique (adv.) on all sides, everywhere
silva, silvae *f. sing. or pl.*, forest
sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis *f.* solitude
silentium, silentiī *n.* silence
vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis *f.* hunting
cōgitātiō, cōgitātiōnis *f.* thinking
incitāmentum, incitāmentī *n.* inducement, incentive
proinde (adv.) accordingly
vēnor (1-tr.) hunt
auctor, auctōris *m.* source, author
pānārium, pānāriī *n.* bread basket
laguncula, lagunculae *f.* little flask, small bottle
inerrō (**in-** + **errō**) wander about in

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 15–16

potestne tibi haec lūx, Catilīna, aut huius caelī spīritus esse iūcundus, cum sciās esse hōrum nēminem quī nesciat tē prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās Lepidō et Tullō cōnsulibus stetisse in Comitiō cum tēlō, manum cōnsulum et prīncipum cīvitātis interficiendōrum causā parāvisse, scelerī ac furōrī tuō nōn mentem aliquam aut timōrem tuum sed fortūnam populī Rōmānī obstitisse? ac iam illa omittō—neque enim† sunt aut obscūra aut nōn multa commissa posteā—quotiēns tū mē dēsignātum, quotiēns vērō cōnsulem interficere cōnātus es! quot ego tuās petītiōnēs ita coniectās ut vītārī posse nōn vidērentur parvā quādam dēclīnātiōne et, ut aiunt, corpore effūgī! nihil agis, nihil adsequeris, neque tamen† cōnārī ac velle dēsistis. quotiēns iam tibi extorta est ista sīca dē manibus, quotiēns excidit cāsū aliquō et ēlāpsa est! quae quidem quibus abs tē initiāta sacrīs ac dēvōta sit nesciō, quod eam necesse putās esse in cōnsulis corpore dēfīgere.

spīritus, **spīritūs** *m.* breath, breeze
iūcundus, **-a**, **-um** pleasing, delightful, agreeable
prīdiē (prep. + acc.) on the day before
Kalendae, **Kalendārum** *f. pl.* (the) Kalends (the first day of a month)
Iānuārius, **-a**, **-um** of January
Lepidus, **Lepidī** *m.* Lepidus
Tullus, **Tullī** *m.* Tullus
Comitium, **Comitiī** *n.* (the) Comitium (place where the assembly met)
prīnceps, **prīncipis** first, foremost, chief; *subst.*, leading man
furor, **furōris** *m.* madness
obstō (**ob-** + **stō**), **obstāre**, **obstitī**, **obstātūrus** stand in the way; hinder, block
omittō (**ob-** + **mittō**) disregard, pass over
†**neque enim** for . . . not . . .
obscūrus, **-a**, **-um** dark, dim, obscure; uncertain
commissum, **commissī** *n.* offense, crime
posteā (adv.) after, afterward
quotiēns (adv.) how many times
dēsignātus, **-a**, **-um** elect, appointed (but not yet installed); **dēsignātum**, *supply* **cōnsulem**
petītiō, **petītiōnis** *f.* attack, thrust
coniciō (**con-** + **iaciō**) throw (together), cast, bring
vītō (1-tr.) avoid
dēclīnātiō, **dēclīnātiōnis** *f.* swerving, swerve
aiō (defective verb) say; **aiunt** = *3rd pl. pres. act. indic.*
effugiō (**ex-** + **fugiō**) flee from, escape
assequor (**ad-** + **sequor**) gain, reach, attain
†**neque tamen** and yet . . . not . . .
dēsistō, **dēsistere**, **dēstitī**, —— cease, leave off
extorqueō, **extorquēre**, **extorsī**, **extortus** twist out
sīca, **sīcae** *f.* dagger
excidō (**ex-** + **cadō**), **excidere**, **excidī**, —— fall *or* slip (from)
ēlābor, **ēlābī**, **ēlāpsus sum** slip out
abs = **ab**
initiō (1-tr.) consecrate
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum** sacred; *neut. subst. pl.*, sacred rites
dēvoveō, **dēvovēre**, **dēvōvī**, **dēvōtus** dedicate
dēfīgō, **dēfīgere**, **dēfīxī**, **dēfīxus** fix, plant

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 4

igitur ubi animus ex multīs miseriīs atque perīculīs requiēvit et mihi relicuam aetātem ā rē pūblicā procul habendam dēcrēvī, nōn fuit cōnsilium socordiā atque dēsidiā bonum ōtium conterere, neque vērō agrum colundō aut vēnandō, servīlibus officiīs, intentum aetātem agere; sed ā quō inceptō† studiōque mē ambitiō mala dētinuerat, eōdem regressus statuī rēs gestās populī Rōmānī carptim, ut quaeque memoriā digna vidēbantur, perscrībere, eō magis quod mihi ā spē, metū, partibus reī pūblicae animus līber erat. igitur dē Catilīnae coniūrātiōne quam vērissumē poterō† paucīs† absolvam; nam id facinus in prīmīs† ego memorābile exīstumō sceleris atque perīculī novitāte. dē quoius hominis mōribus pauca prius explānanda sunt quam initium nārrandī faciam.

miseria, **miseriae** *f.* misery
requiēscō, **requiēscere**, **requiēvī**, **requiētum** (take a) rest; desist
relicuam = *archaic form of* **reliquam**
procul (adv.) at a distance, far
dēcernō, **dēcernere**, **dēcrēvī**, **dēcrētus** determine, decide, decree
socordia, **socordiae** *f.* laziness, indolence, inactivity
dēsidia, **dēsidiae** *f.* idleness, inactivity, sloth
ōtium, **ōtiī** *n.* leisure, idleness
conterō, **conterere**, **contrīvī**, **contrītus** grind, wear out; consume, spend
colō, **colere**, **coluī**, **cultus** cultivate, tend; **colundō** = *archaic form of* **colendō**
vēnor (1-intr.) hunt
servīlis, **servīle** of *or* belonging to a slave, servile
officium, **officiī** *n.* obligation; duty, task
intentus, **-a**, **-um** stretched, attentive, intent
†**inceptum**, **inceptī**, *n.*, beginning, undertaking
ambitiō, **ambitiōnis** *f.* flattery, adulation; desire for power, ambition
dētineō (**dē-** + **teneō**), **dētinēre**, **dētinuī**, **dētentus** hold back, detain; hinder, prevent
regredior (**re-** + **gradior**) go back, return
statuō, **statuere**, **statuī**, **statūtus** cause to stand, set up, establish; decide
carptim (adv.) in parts, separately
perscrībō (**per-** + **scrībō**) write a detailed *or* full account of
coniūrātiō, **coniūrātiōnis** *f.* conspiracy
†**quam vērissumē poterō** = **quam vērissumē**
†**paucīs**, *supply* **verbīs**
absolvō, **absolvere**, **absolvī**, **absolūtus** finish, complete; sum up, describe briefly
facinus, **facinoris** *n.* deed; crime
†**in prīmīs**, *here,* especially, above all; first
memorābilis, **memorābile** worthy of being remembered, remarkable
exīstimō (**ex-** + **aestimō**) (1-tr.) reckon, suppose, estimate
novitās, **novitātis** *f.* newness, strangeness
explānō (1-tr.) make plain, make clear, explain
initium, **initiī** *n.* beginning
nārrō (1-tr.) narrate

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.533–46

hīc Priamus, quamquam in mediā iam morte tenētur,
nōn tamen abstinuit nec vōcī īraeque pepercit:
"at tibi prō scelere," exclāmat, "prō tālibus ausīs†
dī, sī qua est caelō pietās quae tālia cūret,
persolvant grātēs dignās et praemia reddant
dēbita, quī nātī cōram mē cernere lētum
fēcistī et patriōs foedāstī fūnere vultūs.
at nōn ille, satum quō tē mentīris, Achillēs
tālis in† hoste fuit Priamō; sed iūra fidemque
supplicis ērubuit corpusque exsangue sepulcrō
reddidit Hectoreum mēque in mea rēgna remīsit."
sīc fātus senior tēlumque imbelle sine ictū
coniēcit, raucō quod prōtinus aere repulsum,
et summō clipeī nēquīquam umbōne pependit.

Priamus, **Priamī** *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
abstineō (**abs-** + **teneō**), **abstinēre**, **abstinuī**, **abstentus** hold back
parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī**, **parsūrus** be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)
at (conj.) but
exclāmō (1-intr.) cry out
†**ausum**, **ausī** *n.* bold deed, exploit; crime, outrage
pietās, **pietātis** *f.* sense of duty, dutifulness, piety
cūrō (1-tr.) watch over, look after
persolvō, **persolvere**, **persolvī**, **persolūtus** pay in full; render
grātēs, **grātium** *f. pl.* thanks
praemium, **praemiī** *n.* reward, prize
reddō (**red-** + **dō**) give back, return; hand over, deliver
cōram (adv.) face to face, in person
cernō, **cernere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** distinguish, determine, perceive; see
lētum, **lētī** *n.* death, destruction
patrius, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to a father, paternal
foedō (1-tr.) befoul, defile
fūnus, **fūneris** *n. sing. or pl.*, funeral (procession); death
vultus, **vultūs** *m.* expression, countenance; *pl.*, face
serō, **serere**, **sēvī**, **satus** sow; engender, beget
mentior, **mentīrī**, **mentītus sum** lie, tell a lie
Achillēs, **Achillis** *m.* Achilles
†**in**, *here,* in the case of
supplex, **supplicis** suppliant
ērubēscō, **ērubēscere**, **ērubuī**, —— blush (for shame); feel shame in the presence of
exsanguis, **exsangue** bloodless
sepulcrum, **sepulcrī** *n.* tomb, grave
Hectoreus, **-a**, **-um** of Hector, Hector's
rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* kingdom, realm
remittō (**re-** + **mittō**) send back
for (1-tr.) speak, utter
senex, **senis** old
imbellis, **imbelle** not suited to warfare, unwarlike
ictus, **ictūs** *m.* thrust, blow
coniciō (**con-** + **iaciō**) throw (together), cast
raucus, **-a**, **-um** harsh-sounding, noisy, raucous
prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway
aes, **aeris** *n.* copper, bronze
repellō (**re-** + **pellō**), **repellere**, **reppulī**, **repulsus** push back, repel
clipeus, **clipeī** *m.* shield
nēquīquam (adv.) to no avail, in vain
umbō, **umbōnis** *m.* boss (of a shield)
pendeō, **pendēre**, **pependī**, —— hang, be suspended

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.504–39

"nympha, precor, Pēnēi, manē! nōn īnsequor hostis;
nympha, manē! sīc agna lupum, sīc cerva leōnem,
sīc aquilam pennā fugiunt trepidante columbae,
hostēs quaeque suōs: amor est mihi causa sequendī!
mē miserum! nē prōna cadās indignave laedī
crūra notent sentēs et sim tibi causa dolōris!
aspera, quā† properās, loca sunt: moderātius, ōrō,
curre fugamque inhibē, moderātius īnsequar ipse.
cui placeās inquīre tamen: nōn incola montis,
nōn ego sum pāstor, nōn hīc armenta gregēsque
horridus observō. nescīs, temerāria, nescīs
quem fugiās, ideōque fugis: mihi Delphica tellūs

nympha, **nymphae** *f.* nymph (a semidivine spirit)
precor (1-tr.) pray
Pēnēis, **Pēnēidos** descended from (the river god) Peneus; **Pēnēi** = *fem. sing. voc.*
īnsequor (**in-** + **sequor**) follow closely, pursue
agna, **agnae** *f.* lamb
lupus, **lupī** *m.* wolf
cerva, **cervae** *f.* deer; doe
leō, **leōnis** *m.* lion
aquila, **aquilae** *f.* eagle
penna, **pennae** *f.* wing
trepidō (1-intr.) tremble
columba, **columbae** *f.* dove
prōnus, **-a**, **-um** (leaning) forward, headlong
-ve (enclitic conj.) or
laedō, **laedere**, **laesī**, **laesus** injure, harm
crūs, **crūris** *n.* leg
notō (1-tr.) mark; scar
sentis, **sentis**, **-ium** *m.* briar, bramble
dolor, **dolōris** *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
asper, **aspera**, **asperum** harsh, fierce; rough
†**quā**, *here* (adv.) where
properō (1-intr.) hasten, rush
moderātē (adv.) moderately, temperately
currō, **currere**, **cucurrī**, **cursum** run, rush
inhibeō (**in-** + **habeō**), **inhibēre**, **inhibuī**, **inhibitus** hold back, check, restrain
inquīrō (**in-** + **quaerō**), **inquīrere**, **inquīsiī**/**inquīsīvī**, **inquīsītus** inquire into, investigate
pāstor, **pāstōris** *m.* shepherd
armentum, **armentī** *n.* herd
grex, **gregis** *m.* or *f.* flock
horridus, **-a**, **-um** rough, wild; horrible
observō (**ob-** + **servō**) (1-tr.) watch over, guard, observe
temerārius, **-a**, **-um** rash
ideō (adv.) for this reason; therefore
Delphicus, **-a**, **-um** Delphic, of Delphi (a Greek town and seat of Apollo's oracle)
tellūs, **tellūris** *f.* earth, land

et Claros et Tenedos Patarēaque rēgia servit;
Iuppiter est genitor; per mē quod eritque fuitque
estque patet; per mē concordant carmina nervīs.
certa quidem nostra est, nostrā tamen ūna sagitta
certior, in vacuō quae vulnera pectore fēcit!
inventum† medicīna meum est, opiferque per orbem
dīcor,† et herbārum subiecta potentia nōbīs.
ei mihi, quod nūllīs amor est sānābilis herbīs
nec prōsunt dominō, quae prōsunt omnibus, artēs!"
plūra locūtūrum timidō Pēnēia cursū
fūgit cumque ipsō verba inperfecta relīquit,
tum quoque vīsa decēns; nūdābant corpora† ventī,

Claros, **Clarī** *f.* Claros (a town in Ionia)
Tenedos, **Tenedī** *f.* Tenedos (an island off Troy)
Patarēus, **-a**, **-um** of Patara (a city in Asia Minor)
rēgia, **rēgiae** *f.* palace; royal seat, capital
serviō, **servīre**, **serviī/servīvī**, **servītum** be a slave, serve (+ dat.)
genitor, **genitōris** *m.* father
pateō, **patēre**, **patuī**, —— lie open; be revealed
concordō (1-intr.) be in harmony
nervus, **nervī** *m.* sinew; (bow-)string; string (of an instrument)
sagitta, **sagittae** *f.* arrow
vacuus, **-a**, **-um** empty; idle; free, available; care-free, disengaged
†**inventum**, **inventī** *n.* discovery, invention
medicīna, **medicīnae** *f.* medicine
opifer, **opifera**, **opiferum** aid-bringing
orbis, **orbis**, **-ium** *m.* ring, circle; world
†**dīcō**, *here,* call
herba, **herbae** *f.* grass; plant; herb
subiciō (**sub-** + **iaciō**) place below; make subject
potentia, **potentiae** *f.* power, influence
ei (interj.) *expression of anguish,* o! alas!; **ei mihi**, woe is me!
sānābilis, **sānābile** able to be healed, curable
prōsum (**prō-** + **sum**), **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, **prō-futūrus** be an aid, benefit
timidus, **-a**, **-um** fearful, afraid, timid
Pēnēius, **-a**, **-um** of Peneus (a river god)
cursus, **cursūs** *m.* running, run
imperfectus, **-a**, **-um** unfinished, incomplete
decēns, **decentis** becoming, graceful
nūdō (1-tr.) make naked, bare, lay bare
†**corpora**, *here,* limbs
ventus, **ventī** *m.* wind

obviaque adversās vibrābant flāmina vestēs,
et levis inpulsōs retrō dabat aura capillōs,
auctaque forma fugā est. sed enim nōn sustinet ultrā
perdere† blanditiās iuvenis deus, utque monēbat
ipse Amor, admissō sequitur vestīgia passū.
ut canis in vacuō leporem cum Gallicus arvō
vīdit et hic praedam pedibus petit, ille salūtem,
alter inhaesūrō similis iam iamque† tenēre
spērat et extentō stringit vestīgia rostrō,
alter in ambiguō est an sit conprēnsus, et ipsīs
morsibus ēripitur tangentiaque ōra relinquit;
sīc deus et virgō est, hic spē celer, illa timōre.

obvius, **-a**, **-um** in the way; moving against, opposed in direction
adversus, **-a**, **-um** opposite, opposing
vibrō (1-tr.) (cause to) move to and fro *or* flap
flāmen, **flāminis** *n.* blast, gust (of wind); breeze
vestis, **vestis**, **-ium** *f.* clothing, garment
impellō (**in** + **pellō**), **impellere**, **impulī**, **impulsus** push against; press upon
retrō (adv.) toward the rear, backward
aura, **aurae** *f.* breeze
capillus, **capillī** *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
augeō, **augēre**, **auxī**, **auctus** grow, increase
forma, **formae** *f.* shape, form; beauty
sustineō (**sub-** + **teneō**), **sustinēre**, **sustinuī**, —— withstand, endure
ultrā (adv.) beyond; further, more; *in negative clauses,* any more, any longer
†**perdō**, *here,* waste
blanditia, **blanditiae** *f.* ingratiating speech, blandishment; charm
iuvenis, **iuvene** young
admittō (**ad-** + **mittō**) admit; let go, release
vestīgium, **vestīgiī** *n.* footprint, track, trace
passus, **passūs** *m.* pace, step, stride
canis, **canis** *m.* or *f.* dog
vacuus, **-a**, **-um** empty
lepus, **leporis** *m.* hare
Gallicus, **-a**, **-um** of Gaul, Gallic
arvum, **arvī** *n.* (ploughed) field
praeda, **praedae** *f.* booty, plunder; prey
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
inhaereō, **inhaerēre**, **inhaesī**, **inhaesūrus** hold on tightly, stick, cling
†**iam iamque**, now all but
extendō, **extendere**, **extendī**, **extentus**/**extēnsus** make taut, stretch out
stringō, **stringere**, **strīnxī**, **strictus** graze, skim, touch lightly
rostrum, **rostrī** *n.* snout, muzzle
ambiguum, **ambiguī** *n.* ambiguity; **in ambiguō**, in an ambiguous state, in doubt
comprendō, **comprendere**, **comprendī**, **comprēnsus** take hold of, seize, catch
morsus, **morsūs** *m.* bite; *pl.,* teeth, jaws
ēripiō, **ēripere**, **ēripuī**, **ēreptus** tear away, snatch away
tangō, **tangere**, **tetigī**, **tāctus** touch; reach
virgō, **virginis** *f.* maiden, virgin
celer, **celeris**, **celere** swift, fast

CHAPTER XV

Vocabulary

➤ **caput**, **capitis** *n.* head
➤ **nūmen**, **nūminis** *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen
➤ **orbis**, **orbis**, **-ium** *m.* ring, circle
  ➤ **orbis terrārum**, world

➤ **vultus**, **vultūs** *m. sing. or pl.*, expression; face

➤ **circumdō**, **circumdare**, **circumdedī**, **circumdatus** place round; surround
➤ **for** (1-tr.) speak, say
➤ **obstō**, **obstāre**, **obstitī**, **obstātūrus** stand in the way; hinder, block (§140)
➤ **vetō**, **vetāre**, **vetuī**, **vetitus** forbid (§140)

➤ **dēterreō**, **dēterrēre**, **dēterruī**, **dēterritus** deter, prevent (§140)
➤ **prohibeō**, **prohibēre**, **prohibuī**, **prohibitus** prevent; prohibit, forbid (§140)
➤ **vereor**, **verērī**, **veritus sum** be in awe of, respect; dread, fear (§139)

➤ **cingō**, **cingere**, **cīnxī**, **cīnctus** surround; gird (on oneself)
➤ **cōnstituō**, **cōnstituere**, **cōnstituī**, **cōnstitūtus** set up, establish; decide
➤ **rapiō**, **rapere**, **rapuī**, **raptus** seize, tear away, carry (off)
  ➤ **ēripiō**, **ēripere**, **ēripuī**, **ēreptus** tear away, snatch away
➤ **solvō**, **solvere**, **solvī**, **solūtus** loosen; free, release; dissolve

impediō, **impedīre**, **impediī/impedīvī**, **impedītus** hinder, impede (§140)

interest, **interesse**, **interfuit** it is important, it concerns (§141)
➤ **miseret**, **miserēre**, **miseruit** or **miseritum est** it moves (one) to pity (§141)
paenitet, **paenitēre**, **paenituit** it causes (one) to repent *or* regret (§141)
piget, **pigēre**, **piguit** it disgusts (one), it irks (one) (§141)
➤ **pudet**, **pudēre**, **puduit** or **puditum est** it makes (one) ashamed (§141)
rēfert, **rēferre**, **rētulit** it is important, it concerns (§141)
➤ **taedet**, **taedēre**, **taesum est** it makes (one) tired *or* sick (§141)

celer, **celeris**, **celere** swift
dulcis, **dulce** sweet, pleasant
turpis, **turpe** foul, ugly; base, shameful

nē (conj.) *introduces positive Fear clause,* that (§139)
quīn (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause,* from (§140)
➤ **quod** (conj.) the fact that
➤ **quōminus** (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause,* from (§140)
ut (conj.) *introduces negative Fear clause,* that . . . not (§139)

Vocabulary Notes

- In addition to meaning "head," **caput, capitis** *n.* may mean the "life" of a man, particularly in oaths and when representing the price paid for an offense. **caput** is also used, with affection or contempt, to refer to the entire "person."
- **nūmen, nūminis** *n.* is a noun formed by the addition of the suffix **-men** to a stem of the verb *nuō, *nuere, *nuī, *nūtus, "nod."[1] **nūmen** may mean the "divine will" that approves of or lies behind events or actions, or it may mean more generally the "divine power," "divinity," or "(divine) spirit" that each god possesses.
- **orbis, orbis, -ium** *m.* may indicate many circular shapes (ring, circle, sphere, ball, disk). The idiom **orbis terrārum** (occasionally **orbis terrae**) is so common that sometimes **orbis** unmodified by a genitive form of **terra** may also mean "world."
- **vultus, vultūs** *m.* may refer to a particular facial "expression" or more generally to a person's "countenance" or "appearance" (with an emphasis on the appearance of the face). In both the singular and the plural it may indicate a person's "face." When **vultus** is used in combination with **ōs**, **vultus** refers to the upper portion of the face, and **ōs** to the lower.
- **circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **circum-** to **dō**. It may appear with an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb (§146). **circumdō** may also mean "place" something (Accusative, Direct Object) "around" something (Dative with a Compound Verb).
- **for, fārī, fātus sum** is cognate with **fāma. for** is far more common in poetry than in prose. It may take an Accusative, Direct Object or introduce a direct quotation. It does not introduce Indirect Statement. **for** is often used of the utterances of gods and occasionally of humans when they are speaking prophetically. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **FOR** DO *NOT* EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **FOR** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- **obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ob-** to **stō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in the third principal part. **obstō** may take a Dative with a Compound Verb and may introduce a Prevention clause (§140).
- **vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus** is an irregular first-conjugation verb. For constructions with **vetō** see §140.
- **dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **dē-** to **terreō**. **dēterreō** may introduce a Prevention clause (§140).
- **prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **prō-** to **habeō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in all four principal parts. For constructions with **prohibeō** see §140.
- **vereor, verērī, veritus sum** may introduce a Fear clause (§139), and while it may mean "fear" or "dread," it often means "respect" or "be in awe of" those who are greater in rank or being (gods, parents, kings). It has a broader meaning than **timeō**, a verb that reports fear but not awe or reverence. COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **VEREOR** DO *NOT* EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.
- **cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus** often appears with an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb (§146). It may also be used to mean "surround" or "encircle" something (Accusative, Direct Object) with something (Ablative of Means). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **CINGŌ** DO *NOT* EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING.
- **cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus** has a broad range of meanings, which include "station" or "draw up" (soldiers, troops); "establish" or "build" (towers, altars); "make" or "create" (the human race, laws, peace); and "fix," "appoint," or "agree upon" (a price, a specific day, boundaries). When **cōnstituō** means "decide," it is followed by an Object Infinitive.
- **rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus** describes the violent action of seizing and carrying off things or people. It is also used to mean "(sexually) violate" or "rape."
- **ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus** is a compound verb formed by the addition of the prefix **ē-** to **rapiō**. It exhibits regular vowel weakening in all four principal parts. Although **ēripiō** is a synonym of **rapiō**, it is also used to mean "snatch" or "rescue" (from danger, death). THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF *ALL* COMPOUNDS OF **RAPIŌ** FOLLOW THE PATTERN OF THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF **ĒRIPIŌ**. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **RAPIŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.
- The basic meaning of **solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus** is "loosen" or "untie" (bonds, ropes). Its extended meanings include "free," "release," or "relax" (persons, souls, limbs). Finally, **solvō** is used to mean "resolve,"

1. While the simple verb *nuō does not occur in the Latin that survives, several compounds (e.g., **abnuō**, **adnuō**, **innuō**, and **renuō**) are common.

"acquit," or "discharge" (problems, debts, vows, legal charges). COMPOUND VERBS FORMED FROM **SOLVŌ** DO *NOT* EXHIBIT VOWEL WEAKENING. WHEN A COMPOUND OF **SOLVŌ** APPEARS IN READINGS, ITS PRINCIPAL PARTS ARE NOT SUPPLIED, BUT THE PREFIX AND SIMPLE VERB ARE GIVEN.

➤ **miseret**, **miserēre**, **miseruit** or **miseritum est** has two third principal parts, which are equivalent in meaning. Both are rare in the Latin that survives.

➤ **pudet**, **pudēre**, **puduit** or **puditum est** has two third principal parts, which are equivalent in meaning. **puditum est** is rare.

➤ The third principal part of **taedet**, **taedēre**, **taesum est** appears only once in the Latin that survives. Slightly more frequent is the compound form **pertaesum est**.

➤ When **quod** means "the fact that," it introduces a noun clause with a verb in the indicative mood. Such a clause may be used with the impersonal verbs **paenitet**, **piget**, and **pudet** (§141), but **quod**-the-fact-that clauses also appear frequently with other verbs or in apposition to a variety of nouns or pronouns.

Eius factum fortissimum meminerimus, quod vulnere acceptō vītam cōnsulis servāvit.
We shall remember his very brave deed: the fact that, with a wound received, he saved the consul's life.

➤ **quōminus** is a compound conjunction made up of the relative pronoun **quō** (by which degree) and the comparative adverb **minus** (less). It is often written as two separate words (**quō minus**). The use of **quōminus** to introduce Prevention clauses (§140) reflects their origins as Purpose clauses.

	Derivatives	Cognates
caput	**capit**al; **capit**ulate; **capt**ain; **chapt**er; head; chief; de**capit**ate	
cingō	cinch; suc**cinct**	
orbis	orb; **orb**it	
paenitet	penitent	
rapiō	rape; rapt; **rav**ish; **rav**en; **rap**id	
solvō	dis**solve**; solute	for**lorn**; -less; **loo**se; lose; analysis
taedet	**ted**ium	
vereor	re**vere**	**war**y; a**ware**; ste**ward**; **guard**

§139. Fear Clauses

A verb or other expression of fearing may introduce a subordinate clause that expresses the thing feared. Such a clause, called a **Fear clause**, is introduced by the conjunction **ut** (that . . . not) or **nē** (that) and has its verb in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence. For example:

Magnopere metuit *nē* fīlius in bellō *moriātur*.
Greatly he fears *that* (his) son in war *will die*.
He greatly fears *that* his son *will die* in war.
Pater timēbat *ut* fīlius ē bellō *redīsset*.
The father was fearing *that* (his) son (out) from the war *had not returned*.
He greatly fears *that* his son *had not returned* from the war.
Ūna cūra sociōs movēbat: *nē* Rōmānī auxilium *nōn mitterent*.
One concern the allies (d.o.) was stirring up: *that* the Romans aid (d.o.) *were not sending/would not send*.
One concern was stirring up the allies: *that* the Romans *were not sending/would not send* aid.

OBSERVATIONS

1. A Fear clause was originally an independent sentence whose verb was an Optative subjunctive expressing a wish in relation to a feeling of fear:

Magnopere metuit. *Nē* fīlius in bellō *moriātur*.
He greatly fears. *If only* his son *would not die* in war.

Such a paratactic arrangement easily became one sentence:

Magnopere metuit *nē* fīlius in bellō *moriātur*.
He greatly fears *that* his son *will die* in war.

The apparent reversal of the English translations of **ut** and **nē** can be accounted for in this way:

What one *wishes would* happen one *fears will not* happen (**ut**).
What one *wishes would not* happen one *fears will* happen (**nē**).

2. In the third sentence above **nē . . . nōn** (that . . . not) is used to introduce a negative Fear clause. In early Latin the conjunction **ut** introducing such a clause is much more common than **nē . . . nōn**. By the classical period **nē . . . nōn** is much more common than the simple **ut**, and it is regularly used when the expression of fearing is negated. For example:

***Nōn metuō nē* domum post bellum fīlius *nōn redeat*.**
I do not fear that my son *will not return* home after the war.

3. The subjunctive verbs in Fear clauses follow the rules of sequence. Thus the syntax of, for example, **moriātur** is **present subjunctive**, **Fear clause**, **primary sequence**. In this sentence the present tense of the subjunctive indicates an action that is subsequent to the action of the main verb.[2] Such a fear for the future may be expressed more emphatically with an active periphrastic:

Magnopere metuit *nē* fīlius in bellō *moritūrus sit*.
He greatly fears *that* his son *is going to/will die* in war.

2. Although the present subjunctive may also indicate an action that is simultaneous with the main verb, sense makes this less likely in this sentence.

4. In the second sentence above the subjunctive **redīsset** is pluperfect to indicate an action that is *prior to* the action of the main verb. In the third sentence **mitterent** is imperfect to indicate an action that is either simultaneous with or subsequent to the action of the main verb. The tense of the English translation is determined by the relative time of the subjunctive to the main verb.

☛ DRILL 139, PAGE 593, MAY NOW BE DONE.

§140. Prevention Clauses

A verb of hindering or preventing may introduce a subordinate clause that expresses the action hindered or prevented. Such a clause, called a **Prevention clause**, is introduced by the conjunction **quōminus**, **nē**, or **quīn** and has its verb in the subjunctive mood according to the rules of sequence. For example:

Quid tibi obstat *nē* Rōmā *discēdās*? (**obstō**, **obstāre**, **obstitī**, **obstātūrus** stand in the way; hinder, block)
What hinders you *in order that* from Rome *you may not depart*?
What hinders you *from departing* from Rome?
Timor mē dēterruit *quōminus* in senātū bene *dīcerem*. (**dēterreō**, **dēterrēre**, **dēterruī**, **dēterritus** deter, prevent)
Fear deterred me *by which the less* in the senate I *might speak* well.
Fear deterred me *from speaking* well in the senate.
Bellum nōn dēterrēbit *quīn agricolae* in agrīs *labōrent*.
War will not prevent *that the farmers* in the fields *not work*.
War will not prevent *the farmers from working* in the fields.

OBSERVATIONS

1. Prevention clauses closely resemble Purpose clauses.

2. When the main clause is negated, or when negation is implied, the Prevention clause is introduced by the conjunction **quīn** (as in the third sentence) or, less frequently, by **quōminus**. When the main clause is not negated, the Prevention clause is introduced by **quōminus** or **nē**.

3. The English words "from _____ing" (employing the English gerund) are used in translating Prevention clauses. Sometimes the subject of a Prevention clause is better translated as the direct object of the verb of preventing, as in the third sentence.

Certain verbs of prohibiting or forbidding are not followed by a Prevention clause but regularly take an Object Infinitive with a Subject Accusative. For example:

Caesar *suōs* prohibuit castra *relinquere*. (**prohibeō**, **prohibēre**, **prohibuī**, **prohibitus** prevent; prohibit, forbid)
Caesar prohibited *his own men to abandon* the camp.
Caesar prohibited *his own men from abandoning* the camp.
***Tē* vetō dē hīs *loquī*.** (**vetō**, **vetāre**, **vetuī**, **vetitus** forbid)
I forbid *you to speak* about these things.

OBSERVATION

Object Infinitives that follow verbs such as **prohibeō** and **vetō** may be translated with the English words "from _____ing" or "to _____" according to correct English usage.

☛ Drill 140, page 597, may now be done.

§141. Impersonal Constructions II: *miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet, rēfert, interest*

Two groups of impersonal verbs, those expressing emotions and those expressing concern or interest, have a variety of words and constructions that may function as their *subjects*.

Verbs Expressing Emotion

miseret, miserēre, miseruit or **miseritum est** it moves (one) to pity
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit it causes (one) to repent *or* regret
piget, pigēre, piguit it disgusts (one), it irks (one)
pudet, pudēre, puduit or **puditum est** it makes (one) ashamed
taedet, taedēre, taesum est it makes (one) tired *or* sick

OBSERVATION

The first and third principal parts of these verbs are given in the third person singular because impersonal verbs appear in that person and number only. **Miseret** and **pudet** have alternate third principal parts formed as impersonal passives. The third principal part of **taedet** is also an impersonal passive.

The *person affected* by an emotion is expressed by an Accusative, Direct Object, and the *cause* or *object* of the emotion is regularly expressed in the *genitive* case. For example:

Illārum mē **miseret.**	*Those women* move *me* to pity. *I* pity *those women.*
Num *Catilīnam scelerum* **paenituit?**	*(His) crimes* did not cause *Catiline* to repent, did they? *Catiline* did not repent *his crimes,* did he?

OBSERVATION

Because the syntax of Latin sentences using these verbs is so different from the way English would express similar ideas, literal translations should be avoided. Translations such as the second ones given above are to be preferred.

With the verbs **paenitet**, **piget**, **pudet**, and **taedet** the genitive that expresses the cause or object of the emotion may be replaced by a Subject Infinitive (with or without a Subject Accusative). In addition, with the verbs **paenitet**, **piget**, and **pudet** the genitive may be replaced by a subject clause introduced by the conjunction **quod**, "the fact that."

For example:

Tē pudeat *haec dīcere*. (Subject Infinitive)
Let *saying these things* make you ashamed.
Let it shame you *to say these things*.
Eum paenitēbat *quod nōs relīquerat*. (subject clause introduced by **quod**)
The fact that he had abandoned us was causing him to regret.
He was regretting *the fact that he had abandoned us*.

Verbs Expressing Concern or Interest

rēfert, rēferre, rētulit it is important, it concerns
interest, interesse, interfuit it is important, it concerns

The *person to whom* something is important or of concern is regularly expressed by the *feminine singular ablative of a possessive adjective*: **meā**, **nostrā**, **tuā**, or **vestrā**.[3] The person concerned may also be expressed in the *genitive* case. The *cause* or *object* of concern may be expressed by any of these:

1. Neuter pronoun in the nominative case
2. Subject Infinitive (with or without a Subject Accusative)
3. Substantive **Ut** clause (subject clause); negative = **nē**
4. Indirect Question

For example:

***Tuā*ne *hoc* rēfert?** (neuter pronoun)
Is *this thing* important *to you*?
***Meā* rēfert *audīre* tuam sententiam.** (Subject Infinitive)
To hear your opinion is important *to me*.
***Meā* maximē interest *ut* quam prīmum *discēdās*.** (Substantive **Ut** clause)
It concerns *me* very greatly *that you depart* as soon as possible.
***Omnium* intererat *quid cōnsilī cōnsulēs caperent*.** (Indirect Question)
It was important *to all people what (of) plan the consuls were forming*.
What plan the consuls were forming was important *to all people*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. **Rēfert** is a compound verb formed by the addition of **rē** (feminine singular ablative of **rēs**) to the verb **ferō**. The feminine singular ablative of the possessive adjective in each of the first two sentences agrees with this prefixed **rē**: "it bears in respect to my situation (your situation)."

2. In the third sentence the feminine singular ablative of the possessive adjective (**meā**) is used with **interest** by analogy with the usage with **rēfert**.

3. Literal English translations of sentences with **rēfert** and **interest** should be avoided. Translations such as those given above are to be preferred.

☛ DRILL 141, PAGE 601, MAY NOW BE DONE.

3. The reflexive-possessive adjective **suā** is used rarely with **rēfert** or **interest** in Indirect Statement. In such situations, **suā** refers to the subject of the verb that introduces the Indirect Statement.

§142. Direct and Indirect Reflexives

Reflexive pronouns and reflexive-possessive adjectives have been said to refer to the subjects of the clauses or sentences in which they appear. A reflexive so used may be called a **direct reflexive**. When a reflexive word in a subordinate clause points outside its own clause to the subject of the main verb, it is called an **indirect reflexive**.

When the subject of an infinitive in Indirect Statement is different from the subject of the main verb, a reflexive pronoun or reflexive-possessive adjective appearing within the Indirect Statement may be either a direct or an indirect reflexive. For example:

Rēx sēnsit cīvēs *suam* urbem regere nōn posse. (direct reflexive)
The king perceived that the citizens were not able to rule *their own* city.
Rēx sēnsit cīvēs *sē* ōdisse. (indirect reflexive)
The king perceived that the citizens hated *him*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence **suam** is a direct reflexive because it refers to **cīvēs**, the subject of the clause in which **suam** appears. In the second sentence **sē** is an indirect reflexive because it refers to **rēx**, the subject of the main clause.

2. Context usually makes clear whether a reflexive is direct or indirect. Sometimes the intensive adjective **ipse** modifies a reflexive pronoun and identifies it as direct or indirect. For example:

Rēx sēnsit cīvēs *sē ipsōs* ōdisse. (direct reflexive)
The king perceived that the citizens hated *their very selves*.

In subordinate clauses such as Purpose clauses, Indirect Commands, and Indirect Questions, reflexive pronouns and reflexive-possessive adjectives are often indirect reflexives. That is, they refer to the subjects of the main clauses rather than to the subjects of the subordinate clauses in which they appear. For example:

Imperātor mīlitēs hortātus est ut glōriam *sibi* caperent.
The commander urged the soldiers that they win glory *for him*.
Caesar nescit cūr sociī *suīs* verbīs pārēre nōlint.
Caesar does not know why the allies are unwilling to obey *his* words.

Sometimes reflexives are freely used to refer to grammatical elements that are not the subject of any clause, and in certain authors, direct and indirect reflexives are found within the same clause. For example:

Ariovistus respondit . . . nēminem *sēcum* sine *suā* perniciē contendisse.
(**perniciēs**, **perniciēī** *f.* ruin; **contendō**, **contendere**, **contendī**, **contentus** contend)
Ariovistus answered . . . that no one had contended with *him* without *his own* ruin.
(Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.36)

OBSERVATION

In this sentence **sē** is an indirect reflexive referring to Ariovistus, the subject of the main verb. **Suā** is a direct reflexive referring to **nēminem**, the subject of the Indirect Statement.

☛ Drill 142, page 609, may now be done.

§143. Subjunctive by Attraction

It has been observed that subordinate clauses in Indirect Statement regularly have their verbs in the subjunctive to indicate that the clause is part of the original direct statement (§109). Sometimes the subjunctive mood is also used in clauses that are subordinate to infinitives not in Indirect Statement or to other clauses with verbs in the subjunctive. A subjunctive verb so used is called a **Subjunctive by Attraction** and follows the rules of sequence. For example:

Sapientis est fugere ubi perīculum *sentiat*.
It is characteristic of a wise man to flee when *he perceives* danger.
Scīsne quid pater, priusquam *mortuus sit*, dīxerit?
Do you know what the father said before *he died*?
Hortābātur ut eadem quae *dīxisset* dīcerem.
She was urging that I say the same things that *she had said*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The information in a subordinate clause with a Subjunctive by Attraction is essential to the thought of the clause or infinitive on which it depends. For example, the clause **ubi perīculum sentiat** in the first sentence indicates the essential circumstance under which a wise man would flee. An indicative verb in such a clause would indicate nonessential information.

2. The syntax of, for example, **dīxisset** is **pluperfect subjunctive, Subjunctive by Attraction, secondary sequence (prior time)**.

§144. Supine

In addition to the infinitive and the gerund, there is a third verbal noun in Latin called the **supine**, which appears in only two forms, the accusative singular and the ablative singular. The stem for the supine of all verbs may be obtained by dropping the ending from the fourth principal part. To this stem the endings **-um** (accusative) and **-ū** (ablative) are added. For example:

4th Principal Part	*Stem*	*Accusative Supine*	*Ablative Supine*
lēctus	**lēct-**	**lēctum**	**lēctū**
vīsus	**vīs-**	**vīsum**	**vīsū**

OBSERVATION

The endings of the supine have been borrowed from the fourth declension masculine/feminine endings.

Each case of the supine has only one syntactic function. The accusative supine expresses purpose with a verb of motion (or a verb implying motion). The ablative supine is an Ablative of Respect. For example:

Hostēs *oppugnātum* patriam nostram veniunt.
The enemies are coming *for the purpose of attacking/to attack* our country.
Deōs superat—sī hoc fās est *dictū*.
He surpasses the gods—if this thing is right *in respect to saying/to say*.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The accusative supine in the first sentence appears with a verb that expresses motion, **veniunt**. It takes a direct object, **patriam**. The accusative supine is translated "for the purpose of _____ing" or "to _____."[4]

2. The ablative supine may be translated literally, "in respect to _____ing," but an adverbial use of the English infinitive, "to _____," will often be more idiomatic.

§145. Accusative of Respect

Many Roman poets (and a few prose writers as well) chose to imitate Greek syntax in Latin for two distinct uses of the accusative case, each of which is sometimes called the **Greek Accusative**.

When a noun in the accusative case is used to qualify or limit an adjective (often a perfect passive participle), it is called an **Accusative of Respect**. For example:

> **Aenēās . . . *ōs umerōs*que deō similis . . .** (**umerus, umerī** *m.* shoulder)
> Aeneas . . . similar to a god *in (respect to) (his) face* and *shoulders* . . .
> (Vergil, *Aeneid* I.589)
>
> **hōc concussa metū *mentem* . . .** (**concutiō, concutere, concussī, concussus** strike)
> (She) having been struck *in respect to (her) mind* by this fear . . .
> (Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.468)

The syntax of each italicized word (**ōs, umerōs, mentem**) is **Accusative of Respect**.

OBSERVATIONS

1. The Accusative of Respect developed from the idea of extent inherent in the accusative case. Thus, for example, **ōs umerōsque deō similis** means "similar to a god to the extent of (his) face and shoulders," "similar to a god as far as his face and shoulders."

2. The Accusative of Respect is similar in sense to the more common Ablative of Respect.

3. Sometimes the noun in the Accusative of Respect is an adjective used as a substantive. For example: **omnia sapiēns**, "wise in (respect to) all things."

§146. Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb

In addition to the active and passive voices, ancient Greek has a *middle* voice, whose forms are most often identical to those of the passive. The middle voice in Greek, which frequently takes a direct object, is often used for actions that benefit or physically affect the subject.[5] Certain *passive* verb forms in Latin are used to represent Greek *middle* voice verbs and so may take an Accusative, Direct Object. For example:

4. The rare future passive infinitive is made with the accusative supine and the impersonal passive infinitive of **eō**. For example: **Putō eum captum īrī** (I think that there is a going to capture him, I think that he is going to be captured).

5. The existence of the middle voice in Greek is a remnant of the system of voice in IE, which had active and middle voices only. Many deponent verbs in Latin—verbs with passive forms that take direct objects—were in origin middle voice verbs.

***Ferrum* cingitur.** (**cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus** surround; gird [oneself])
He girds *a sword* on himself. (Vergil, *Aeneid* II.511)
. . . cīnctus [est] honōre *caput*. (**caput, capitis** *n.* head)
(He) surrounded (his) *head* with honor. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* III.392)

The syntax of each italicized word (**ferrum, caput**) is **Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb**.

OBSERVATION

Although **cingitur** and **cīnctus (est)** are *passive* in form, they should be considered *middle:* the subject of each *performs* the action of the verb, and each verb takes an Accusative, Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb. Verbs that mean "put on" or "take off" (clothing, armor) may take such an accusative.

§147. Historical Infinitive

In vivid narration the present infinitive may appear in place of a finite verb in the imperfect or perfect tense (simple past). An infinitive so used, usually with a *subject* in the *nominative* case, is called a **Historical Infinitive**.[6] For example:

***Rōmānī* ex omnibus partibus, signō datō, *oppugnāre*.**
The *Romans* from all parts, with the signal having been given, *attacked*.
***Catilīna* in prīmā aciē *stāre*, sociōs *hortārī*.**
Catiline was standing in the first battle line; *he was encouraging* his allies.
Augustō mortuō, in urbe *timēre*, in prōvinciīs bellum *exspectāre*.
With Augustus having died, in the city *people were afraid*, in the provinces *people were expecting* war.

OBSERVATIONS

1. In the first sentence the present active infinitive **oppugnāre** stands for a perfect active indicative verb, *past* time, *simple* aspect. In the second sentence **stāre** and **hortārī** stand for imperfect active indicative verbs, *past* time, *progressive* aspect. Context usually makes clear which past tense a historical infinitive represents.

2. The subjects of the Historical Infinitives in the first two sentences are nominative. The nominative subject of a Historical Infinitive is an exception to the general rule that subjects of infinitives are in the accusative case.

3. In the third sentence the Historical Infinitives **timēre** and **exspectāre** appear without subjects. Such a usage emphasizes the verbal action alone. However, when a Historical Infinitive appears without a subject, a subject must be supplied (e.g., people, men, soldiers, they).

4. Several Historical Infinitives often appear together when a scene of intense activity is reported. Historical Infinitives may also appear in combination with finite verbs.

☛ Drill 143–147, page 613, may now be done.

6. The Historical Infinitive may look back to the earliest stage of the verb's development, in which a verbal noun (the infinitive) with no endings to indicate person and number was placed with a noun subject simply to name the action being performed.

Short Readings

1. Sosia, Amphitruo's slave, remains firm in the face of his master's threats to cut out his tongue.

   tamen quīn loquar haec utī facta sunt hīc,

   numquam ūllō modō mē potes dēterrēre. (PLAUTUS, *AMPHITRUŌ* 559–60)

utī = ut

2. Megadorus describes his uncomfortable relationship with his would-be father-in-law, Euclio.

   . . . fastīdit meī

   quia videt mē suam amīcitiam velle: mōre hominum facit;

   nam sī opulentus it petītum pauperiōris grātiam,

   pauper metuit congredīrī, per metum male rem gerit.

   īdem, quandō occāsiō illaec periit, post sērō cupit. (PLAUTUS, *AULULĀRIA* 245–49)

fastīdiō, fastīdīre, fastīdiī/fastīdīvī, fastīdītus be scornful (of), disdain (+ gen.); *subject is Euclio*
opulentus, -a, -um rich
pauper, pauperis poor
congredior (con- + gradior) go near, approach; **congredīrī** = *archaic form of* **congredī**
quandō (conj.) when
occāsiō, occāsiōnis *f.* opportunity, chance
illaec = *archaic form of* **illa**
sērō (adv.) late; **post sērō**, too late

3. Lyconides admits to his beloved's mean father, Euclio, that he has already begun an affair with his daughter, who is betrothed to another.

   Lyconides. id adeō tē ōrātum adveniō, ut animō aequō ignōscās mihi.

   Euclio. cūr id ausu's facere? ut id quod nōn tuom esset tangerēs?

   Lyc. quid vīs fierī? factum est illud: fierī īnfectum nōn potest.

   deōs crēdō voluisse; nam nī vellent, nōn fieret, sciō.

   (PLAUTUS, *AULULĀRIA* 739–42)

adveniō (ad- + veniō) come (to)
ignōscō (in- + nōscō), ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum forgive, pardon (+ dat.)
ausu's = ausus es
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus touch
īnfectus, -a, -um undone
nī = nisi

4. After doing all the talking, the slave Olympio won't let Chalinus answer.

   abeō intrō. taedet tuī sermōnis. (PLAUTUS, *CASĪNA* 142)

intrō (adv.) within, inside
sermō, sermōnis *m.* speech, talk, conversation

5. After explaining his plan of having one girl pretend to be two, Palaestrio lists possible excuses to avoid any request to see both girls at the same time.

facilest: trēcentae possunt causae conligī:

"nōn domīst, abiit ambulātum, dormit, ornātur, lavat,

prandet, potat: . . ." (PLAUTUS, *MĪLES GLŌRIŌSUS* 250–52)

colligō (con- + legō), colligere, collēgī, collēctus collect, amass
dormiō, dormīre, dormiī/dormīvī, dormītum sleep, be asleep
ornō (1-tr.) prepare, arrange; dress, beautify
lavō, lavāre/lavere, lāvī, lautus/lōtus wash (oneself)
prandeō, prandēre, prandī, prānsus eat breakfast; eat lunch
potō (1-tr.) drink

6. Antipho's daughter Panegyris explains to her father why neither she nor her two sisters are willing to be remarried. (The three sisters are waiting for their long-lost husbands.)

Panegyris. Stultitiast, pater, vēnātum dūcere invītās canēs.

hostis est uxor, invīta quae virō nuptum datur.

Antipho. Certumne est neutram vostrārum† persequī imperium patris?

Pan. Persequimur, nam quō† dedistī† nuptum, abīre nōlumus.

(PLAUTUS, *STICHUS* 139–42)

stultitia, stultitiae *f.* foolishness, stupidity
vēnor (1-intr.) go hunting, hunt
invītus, -a, -um unwilling
canis, canis *m.* or *f.* dog
uxor, uxōris *f.* wife
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nuptus marry (of a woman)
†**vostrārum**, *supply* **sorōrum**
persequor (per- + sequor) follow earnestly, conform to
†**quō = ab eō cui**
†**dedistī**, *supply* **nōs** *as direct object*

7. A fragment from a lost Ennian tragedy, *Erechtheus*

lapideō sunt corde multī quōs nōn miseret nēminis.†

(ENNIUS, *TRAGOEDIAE* FRAG. 140)

lapideus, -a, -um (made of) stone
cor, cordis *n.* heart
†The redundant negative strengthens the negative idea.

8. The poet employs alliteration to describe a gory death in battle.

ōscitat in campīs caput ā cervīce revolsum

sēmianimēsque micant oculī lūcemque requīrunt. (ENNIUS, *SĒD. INC.* FRAG. 483–84)

ōscitō (1-intr.) gape
cervīx, cervīcis *f.* neck
revellō, revellere, revellī, revulsus tear, tear away
sēmianimis, sēmianime half-alive; the first **-i-** of **sēmianimēs** is consonantal.
micō, micāre, micuī, —— quiver, dart, flicker
requīrō (re- + quaerō), requīrere, requīsiī/requīsīvī, requīsītus try to find, look for

9. Micio discusses with his brother Demea the delinquent behavior of Demea's son Aeschinus.

Micio. Quid fēcit? *Demea.* Quid ille fēcerit?† quem neque pudet
quicquam neque metuit quemquam neque lēgem putat
tenēre sē ūllam . . . (Terence, *Adelphoe* 84–86)

†**fēcerit**, *perfect subjunc. in implied Indirect Question; supply* **rogāsne**

10. Parmenio describes Philumena's behavior toward her mother-in-law, Sostrata, since being forced to move into her mother-in-law's house.

Sī quandō ad eam† accesserat†
cōnfābulātum, fugere ē cōnspectū īlicō,
vidēre nōlle . . . (Terence, *Hecyra* 181–83)

quandō (adv.) at any time, ever; **sī quandō . . . accesserat = cum . . . accesserat**, *subject is Sostrata*
†**eam** refers to Philumena.
cōnfābulor (1-intr.) converse, have a talk
cōnspectus, cōnspectūs *m.* (range of) sight, view
īlicō (adv) at once, immediately

11. In love with a prostitute, the young and poor Phaedria tries to get the pimp Dorio to listen to his excuses one more time.

Phaedria. Audī quod dīcam. *Dorio.* At enim taedet iam audīre eadem mīliēns.
Ph. At nunc dīcam quod lubenter audiās. *Do.* Loquere, audiō.
(Terence, *Phormiō* 487–88)

at (conj.) but
mīliēns (adv.) a thousand times
libenter (adv.) gladly

12. Varro discusses the precise meaning of the verb **for**.

fātur is quī prīmum homō significābilem ōre mittit vōcem. ab eō, antequam ita faciant, puerī dīcuntur īnfantēs; cum id faciunt, iam fārī.
(Varro, *Dē Linguā Latīnā* VI.52)

significābilis, significābile capable of conveying meaning, meaningful
īnfāns, īnfantis not speaking; *subst.*, infant

13. A Roman proverb

Nōn rēfert quis, sed quid dīcat. ([Varro], *Sententiae* 22)

14. While advocating that Pompey be given command in the East, Cicero explains and decries the attitude of many nations toward Rome.

difficile est dictū, Quirītēs, quantō in odiō sīmus apud exterās nātiōnēs propter eōrum quōs ad eās per hōs annōs cum imperiō mīsimus libīdinēs et iniūriās. (CICERO, *PRŌ LĒGE MĀNĪLIĀ* 65)

Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
exter, extera, exterum external, foreign
nātiō, nātiōnis *f.* nation
libīdō, libīdinis *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice

15. Cicero imagines what the populace would say to the prosecutor M. Juventus Laterensis if it were able to speak with one voice. Juventus was quaestor in Cyrene in 63 B.C.E., the year of the Catilinarian conspiracy.

"Dēsīderārunt tē," inquit, "oculī meī, cum tū essēs Cyrēnīs; mē enim quam sociōs tuā fruī virtūte mālēbam, et quō plūs intererat, eō plūs aberat ā mē, cum tē nōn vidēbam." (CICERO, *PRŌ PLANCIŌ* 13)

dēsīderō (1-tr.) long for, desire
Cyrēnae, Cyrēnārum *f. pl.* Cyrene (a town in northwest Libya)
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)

16. Cicero pauses in a speech to comment on the value of his own friendship.

etenim ego dē mē tantum audeō dīcere amīcitiam meam voluptātī plūribus quam praesidiō fuisse, mēque vehementer vītae meae paenitēret sī in meā familiāritāte locus esset nēminī nisi lītigiōsō aut nocentī. (CICERO, *PRŌ PLANCIŌ* 82)

voluptās, voluptātis *f.* pleasure, joy
praesidium, praesidiī *n.* guard; defense, protection
vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly
familiāritās, familiāritātis *f.* close friendship
lītigiōsus, -a, -um fond of going to law, litigious
nocēns, nocentis harmful, guilty

17. After he speaks about appropriate embellishment in oratory, Crassus notes that much depends on the makeup of the audience and other factors.

rēfert etiam quī audiant, senātus an populus an iūdicēs: frequentēs an paucī an singulī, et quālēs: ipsīque ōrātōrēs quā sint aetāte, honōre, auctōritāte dēbet vidērī; tempus, pācis an bellī, festīnātiōnis an ōtī. (CICERO, *DĒ ŌRĀTŌRE* III.211)

iūdex, iūdicis *m.* juror, judge
frequēns, frequentis crowded; present in crowds
singulī, -ae, -a individual, single, one at a time
festīnātiō, festīnātiōnis *f.* haste, hurry
ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure

18. Scipio, a character in Cicero's dialogue, recalls a story about the newborns Romulus and Remus.

is† igitur, ut nātus sit, cum Remō frātre dīcitur ab Amūliō, rēge Albānō, ob labefactandī rēgnī timōrem ad† Tiberim expōnī iussus esse . . . (Cicero, *Dē Rē Pūblicā* II.4)

†**is** refers to Romulus.
Amūlius, **Amūliī** *m.* Amulius (legendary king of Alba Longa)
Albānus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to Alba Longa (a Latin city predating Rome); Alban
labefactō (1-tr.) weaken, undermine
rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* kingdom, realm; kingship, rule
†**ad**, *here,* at, near
Tiberis, **Tiberis** *m.* (the) Tiber (a river that flows through Rome); **Tiberim** = *acc. sing.*
expōnō (**ex-** + **pōnō**) place out; expose, abandon

19. Cicero recalls an outstanding trait of the orator Hortensius.

prīmum memoria† tanta—quantam in nūllō cognōvisse mē arbitror—ut quae sēcum commentātus esset, ea sine scrīptō† verbīs eīsdem redderet quibus cōgitāvisset. (Cicero, *Brūtus* 301)

†**memoria**, *supply* of Hortensius
commentor (1-tr.) prepare beforehand, practice
†**scrīptum**, **scrīptī** *n.* writing; script
reddō (**red-** + **dō**) give back; reproduce, repeat

20. Cicero explains why an orator must have a thorough knowledge of history.

nescīre autem quid antequam nātus sīs acciderit, id est semper esse puerum. quid enim est aetās hominis nisi ea memoriā rērum veterum cum superiōrum aetāte contexitur? (Cicero, *Ōrātor* 120)

superior, **superius** upper; previous, earlier
contexō, **contexere**, **contexuī**, **contextus** weave together, connect, link

21. Referring to the long, fortunate life of the Persian king Cyrus, Cato speaks about the pursuits of old age.

hāc igitur fortūnā fruī licet senibus nec aetās impedit quō minus et cēterārum rērum et in prīmīs† agrī colendī studia teneāmus ūsque ad ultimum tempus senectūtis. (Cicero, *Dē Senectūte* 60)

fruor, **fruī**, **frūctus sum** enjoy, delight in (+ abl.)
senex, **senis** old; *subst.,* old man
†**in prīmīs**, *here,* especially, above all
colō, **colere**, **coluī**, **cultus** cultivate, tend
ūsque (adv.) continuously, all the way
ultimus, **-a**, **-um** farthest; last, final
senectūs, **senectūtis** *f.* old age

22. One of the most important laws of friendship

haec igitur lēx in amīcitiā sanciātur, ut neque rogēmus rēs turpēs nec faciāmus rogātī. turpis enim excūsātiō est et minimē accipienda cum in cēterīs peccātīs, tum sī quis contrā rem pūblicam sē amīcī causā fēcisse fateātur.†

(Cicero, *Dē Amīcitiā* 40)

sanciō, **sancīre**, **sānxī**, **sānctus** ratify, confirm
excūsātiō, **excūsātiōnis** *f.* excuse, justification
peccātum, **peccātī** *n.* error, mistake; offense
†**fateor**, *here,* claim

23. With a series of rhetorical questions Cicero expresses his exasperation at Antony's actions.

omniane bonīs virīs quae facere possunt facienda sunt, etiamne† sī turpia, sī perniciōsa erunt, sī facere omnīnō nōn licēbit? quid autem turpius aut foedius aut quod minus deceat quam contrā senātum, contrā cīvīs, contrā patriam exercitum dūcere? quid vērō magis vituperandum quam id facere quod nōn liceat? licet autem nēminī contrā patriam dūcere exercitum . . . (Cicero, *Philippics XIII* 14)

†**-ne** implies that the preceding question must be repeated.
perniciōsus, **-a**, **-um** destructive
foedus, **-a**, **-um** foul, loathsome, atrocious
decet, **decēre**, **decuit**, it is becoming, it is proper
vituperō (1-tr.) find fault with, criticize

24. A paragraph from a letter to Atticus on the unsavory state of affairs in the Roman Republic

dē rē pūblicā nihil habeō ad tē scrībere† nisi summum odium omnium hominum in eōs quī tenent omnia. mūtātiōnis tamen spēs nūlla. sed, quod facile sentiās, taedet ipsum Pompeium eumque vehementer paenitet. nōn prōvideō satis quem exitum futūrum putem; sed certē videntur haec aliquō† ēruptūra.

(Cicero, *Ad Atticum* II.22.6)

†**scrībere**, *here, infinitive expressing purpose*
mūtātiō, **mūtātiōnis** *f.* change
vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly
prōvideō (**prō-** + **videō**) foresee
exitus, **exitūs** *m.* outcome
†**aliquō** (adv.) in some direction
ērumpō, **ērumpere**, **ērūpī**, **ēruptus** break out, burst forth

25. A passage from a letter of Caesar to Cicero quoted in a letter of Cicero to his friend Atticus

neque illud mē movet: quod iī quī ā mē dīmissī sunt discessisse dīcuntur ut mihi rursus bellum īnferrent; nihil enim mālō quam et mē meī similem esse et illōs suī.

(Cicero, *Ad Atticum* IX.16.2)

dīmittō (**dis-** + **mittō**) send away, let go
rursus (adv.) again

26. After admonishing Cicero not to let his grief over the death of his daughter keep him from actively participating in political life at a time of crisis, Sulpicius finally shows a little restraint.

plūra mē ad tē dē hāc rē scrībere pudet nē videar prūdentiae tuae diffīdere.

(Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* IV.5.6)

prūdentia, prūdentiae *f.* good sense, judgment, prudence
diffīdō, diffīdere, ——, diffīsum lack confidence in, have no faith in (+ dat.)

27. Cicero writes to Tiro, his freedman, secretary, and friend.

sīc habētō,† mī Tīrō, nēminem esse quī mē amet quīn īdem tē amet; et cum tuā et meā maximē interest tē valēre, tum multīs est cūrae. (Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* XVI.4.4)

†**habētō** = *2nd sing. fut. act. imper.*, consider
Tīrō, Tīrōnis *m.* Tiro

28. Caesar reports an early contact between himself and the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.

Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs† dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt† rogātum auxilium . . . (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.11)

Aeduī, Aeduōrum *m. pl.* (the) Aedui (a Gallic tribe)
†**iīs** refers to the Helvetians (a Gallic tribe).
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus protect, defend
†**mittunt**, *historical use of present tense; translate as perfect*

29. When explaining his reasons for crossing the Rhine and pursuing war against certain German tribes, Caesar mentions a plea of one tribe allied to him.

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* IV.16)

Ubiī, Ubiōrum *m. pl.* (the) Ubii (a German tribe)
Trānsrhēnānī, Trānsrhēnānōrum *m. pl.* those living across the Rhine
obses, obsidis *m.* or *f.* hostage
Suēbī, Suēbōrum *m. pl.* (the) Suebi (a group of German tribes)

30. While on the march, the legions of Q. Titurius Sabinus and L. Aurunculeius Cotta are ambushed by the Eburones, a Belgic tribe led by Ambiorix. Several lieutenants are seriously injured.

hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompeium ad eum mittit† rogātum ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* V.36)

permoveō (**per-** + **moveō**) thoroughly move, disturb
Q. Titurius, **Q. Tituriī** *m.* Q. Titurius
procul (adv.) at a distance, from a distance
Ambiorix, **Ambiorigis** *m.* Ambiorix
cohortor (**co-** + **hortor**) (1-tr.) exhort, encourage
cōnspiciō, **cōnspicere**, **cōnspexī**, **cōnspectus** perceive, observe
interpres, **interpretis** *m.* or *f.* go-between, agent; interpreter
Cn. Pompeius, **Cn. Pompeiī** *m.* Gn. Pompey
†**mittit**, *historical use of present tense; here introduces both secondary* (**cōnspexisset**) *and primary* (**parcat**) *sequence, the latter to emphasize the Indirect Command*
parcō, **parcere**, **pepercī**, **parsūrus** be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)

31. Caesar summarizes the military situation after he has pursued and hemmed in the troops led by Afranius and Petreius, two of Pompey's generals.

sī proelium committerētur, propinquitās castrōrum celerem superātīs ex fugā receptum dabat.† hāc dē causā cōnstituerat signa īnferentibus resistere, prior proeliō nōn lacessere. (Caesar, *Dē Bellō Cīvīlī* I.82)

committō (**con-** + **mittō**) join, engage in
propinquitās, **propinquitātis** *f.* nearness, proximity
receptus, **receptūs** *m.* withdrawal, retreat
†**dabat**, *imperf. indic. used for vividness in apodosis of Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence*
resistō, **resistere**, **restitī**, —— halt; make a stand against, resist (+ dat.)
lacessō, **lacessere**, **lacessiī/lacessīvī**, **lacessītus** challenge; provoke, rouse

32. A description of a valiant legion fighting a rearguard action

quae† tamen fortiter vincentium impetum sustinuit magnīs cōpiis hostium circumdata; praesentissimō animō pugnāns in orbem sē recēpit ad rādīcēs montium. ([Caesar], *Dē Bellō Alexandrīnō* 40)

†**quae**, *connective relative; antecedent is the 26th legion*
impetus, **impetūs** *m.* attack, assault
sustineō (**sub-** + **teneō**), **sustinēre**, **sustinuī**, **sustentus** withstand
praesēns, **praesentis** present; resolute
recipiō (**re-** + **capiō**) take back; **sē recipere**, to draw back, to retreat
rādīx, **rādīcis**, **-ium** *f.* root; *sing. or pl.*, lower part, foot

33. The historian describes the virtue of the citizen of the early Roman Republic.

sē quisque hostem ferīre, mūrum ascendere, cōnspicī dum tāle facinus faceret properābat. (Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 7)

feriō, **ferīre**, ——, —— strike, hit
ascendō, **ascendere**, **ascendī**, **ascēnsus** climb up, ascend, scale
cōnspiciō, **cōnspicere**, **cōnspexī**, **cōnspectus** perceive, observe
facinus, **facinoris** *n.* deed
properō (1-tr.) hasten, rush; be eager

34. After the historian describes the moral decline in Roman society, he comments on how Catiline made use of the situation.

in tantā tamque conruptā cīvitāte Catilīna, id quod factū facillumum erat, omnium flāgitiōrum atque facinorum circum sē tamquam stīpātōrum catervās habēbat. (Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 14)

corruptus, **-a**, **-um** corrupt
flāgitium, **flāgitiī** *n.* shame, outrage, disgrace
facinus, **facinoris** *n.* deed; crime
circum (prep. + acc.) around
tamquam (conj.) as it were, as if
stīpātor, **stīpātōris** *m.* bodyguard, attendant
caterva, **catervae** *f.* throng, crowd, troop

35. Speaking in the senate in the debate about punishment for the Catilinarian conspirators, a young Julius Caesar credits the ancestors with good judgment.

maiōrēs nostrī, patrēs cōnscrīptī, neque cōnsilī neque audāciae umquam eguēre; neque illīs superbia obstābat quō minus aliēna īnstitūta, sī modo proba erant, imitārentur. (Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 51)

egeō, **egēre**, **eguī**, —— lack, want, need (+ gen.)
superbia, **superbiae** *f.* pride; arrogance, haughtiness
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um** belonging to another; alien, foreign
īnstitūtum, **īnstitūtī** *n.* practice, custom, usage
probus, **-a**, **-um** excellent; upright, virtuous
imitor (1-tr.) copy, follow, imitate

36. Adherbal gives the Roman senate a reason why it should help him against his cousin Jugurtha.

. . . erat maiestātis populī Rōmānī prohibēre iniūriam neque patī quoiusquam rēgnum per scelus crēscere. (Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 14)

maiestās, **maiestātis** *f.* greatness, grandeur, excellence
iniūria, **iniūriae** *f.* injustice, injury
rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* royal power
crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** increase, grow

37. The historian describes the scene after Marius and the Roman forces win a bloody battle against Jugurtha, a Numidian king.

tum spectāculum horribile in campīs patentibus: sequī, fugere, occīdī, capī; equī atque virī adflictī, ac multī volneribus acceptīs neque fugere posse neque quiētem patī, nītī modo ac statim concidere . . . (SALLUST, *BELLUM IUGURTHAE* 101)

spectāculum, **spectāculī** *n.* sight, spectacle
horribilis, **horribile** terrifying, dreadful
pateō, **patēre**, **patuī**, —— lie open
occīdō, **occīdere**, **occīdī**, **occīsus** kill, slaughter
equus, **equī** *m.* horse
afflīgō, **afflīgere**, **afflīxī**, **afflictus** dash, strike, cast down; injure, shatter
quiēs, **quiētis** *f.* rest, repose; inaction
nītor, **nītī**, **nīxus/nīsus sum** rest upon, rely upon; make an effort, strive
statim (adv.) immediately
concidō (**con-** + **cadō**) fall down, collapse; fall dead

38. Queen Dido graciously welcomes a band of surviving Trojans.

tum breviter Dīdō vultum dēmissa profātur:
"solvite corde metum, Teucrī, sēclūdite cūrās." (VERGIL, *AENEID* I.561–62)

dēmittō (**dē-** + **mittō**) let down, drop
profor (**prō-** + **for**) speak out
cor, **cordis** *n.* heart; mind
Teucrī, **Teucrōrum** *m. pl.* descendants of Teucer, Teucrians, Trojans
sēclūdō, **sēclūdere**, **sēclūsī**, **sēclūsus** separate; put away

39. Aeneas describes the dreadful appearance of Hector's ghost.

ei mihi, quālis erat, quantum mūtātus ab illō
Hectore quī redit exuviās indūtus Achillī
vel Danaum Phrygiōs iaculātus puppibus ignīs! (VERGIL, *AENEID* II.274–76)

ei (interj.) *expression of anguish,* o! alas!; **ei mihi**, woe is me!
Hectōr, **Hectoris** *m.* Hector (son of Priam)
exuviae, **exuviārum** *f. pl.* (stripped) armor
induō, **induere**, **induī**, **indūtus** put on
Achillēs, **Achillī** *m.* Achilles
Danaī, **Danaōrum** *m. pl.* Danaans, Greeks; **Danaum** = *gen. pl.*
Phrygius, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to Phrygia (the region around Troy), Phrygian, Trojan
iaculor (1-tr.) strike, throw, hurl
puppis, **puppis**, **-ium** *f.* stern (of a boat); ship

40. Aeneas describes the effects of hearing the ghostly voice of a former Trojan comrade, Polydorus.

tum vērō ancipitī mentem formīdine pressus
obstipuī steteruntque† comae et vōx faucibus haesit. (VERGIL, *AENEID* III.47–48)

anceps, **ancipitis** two-headed, double; wavering, doubtful
formīdō, **formīdinis** *f.* fear, terror
obstipēscō, **obstipēscere**, **obstipuī**, —— be stupefied, be dumbstruck
†**steterunt** = *archaic form of* **stetērunt**
coma, **comae** *f. sing. or pl.*, hair
faucēs, **faucium** *f. pl.* jaws, gullet, throat
haereō, **haerēre**, **haesī**, **haesūrus** stick, cling, hold fast (+ dat.)

41. The poet describes Aeneas's perplexity after he has been commanded by Mercury to leave Carthage.

heu quid agat? quō nunc rēgīnam ambīre furentem
audeat adfātū? quae prīma exordia sūmat?
atque animum nunc hūc celerem nunc dīvidit illūc
in partīsque rapit variās perque omnia versat. (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.283–86)

ambiō (ambi- + eō), ambīre, ambiī/ambīvī, ambitus go around
furō, furere, ——, —— rage, rave
affātus, affātūs *m.* address, utterance
exordium, exordiī *n.* starting point, beginning
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take up, seize
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus separate, divide
varius, -a, -um varied; changeable; conflicting
versō (1-tr.) twist, keep turning

42. The poet describes Mercury as he appears to Aeneas in a dream.

huic sē forma deī vultū redeuntis eōdem
obtulit in somnīs rursusque ita vīsa monēre est,
omnia Mercuriō similis, vōcemque colōremque
et crīnīs flāvōs et membra decōra iuventā: . . . (VERGIL, *AENEID* IV.556–59)

forma, formae *f.* shape, form
offerō (ob- + ferō), offerre, obtulī, oblātus put in (one's) path; offer, present, reveal
somnus, somnī *m.* sleep; dream
rursus (adv.) again
color, colōris *m.* color; **colōremque** elides into the next line.
crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
flāvus, -a, -um golden-yellow, flaxen, blond
membrum, membrī *n.* limb
decōrus, -a, -um becoming; honorable, seemly
iuventa, iuventae *f.* youth(fulness)

43. Pallas, son of King Evander, greets Aeneas and his companions, who have come to Evander's pastoral kingdom seeking aid for the war in Italy.

. . . "iuvenēs, quae causa subēgit
ignōtās temptāre viās? quō tenditis?" inquit.
"quī genus? unde domō? pācemne hūc fertis an arma?" (VERGIL, *AENEID* VIII.112–14)

iuvenis, iuvenis *m.* young man
subigō (sub- + agō), subigere, subēgī, subāctus incite, impel
ignōtus, -a, -um unknown
temptō (1-tr.) try, test, attempt
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus/tēnsus stretch out, extend; aim, head

44. Abandoned by Theseus on the island of Naxos, Ariadne ponders her situation.

quid faciam? quō sōla ferar? vacat īnsula cultū.
nōn hominum videō, nōn ego facta boum.
omne latus terrae cingit mare; nāvita nusquam,
nūlla per ambiguās puppis itūra viās. (Ovid, *Hērōides* X.59–62)

vacō (1-intr.) be empty, be without (+ abl.)
cultus, cultūs *m.* cultivation; civilization
bōs, bovis *m.* or *f.* bull; cow; *pl.*, cattle; **boum** = *gen. pl.*
latus, lateris *n.* side
nāvita = **nauta**
nusquam (adv.) nowhere
ambiguus, -a, -um wavering, doubtful; untrustworthy, treacherous
puppis, puppis, -ium *f.* stern (of a boat); ship

45. The poet reveals why women go to public games and why men may wish to go there, too.

spectātum veniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsae. (Ovid, *Ars Amātōria* I.99)

46. Could the poet write prose?

saepe pater dīxit, "studium quid inūtile temptās?
Maeonidēs nūllās ipse relīquit opēs."
mōtus eram dictīs, tōtōque Helicōne relictō
scrībere temptābam verba solūta modīs.
sponte suā carmen numerōs veniēbat ad aptōs,
et quod temptābam scrībere versus erat. (Ovid, *Trīstia* IV.10.21–26)

inūtilis, inūtile useless
temptō (1-tr.) test; try, attempt
Maeonidēs, Maeonidae *m.* (a) Maeonian *or* Lydian man; Homer
*__ops__, **opis** *f.* power; *pl.*, resources, wealth
Helicōn, Helicōnis *m.* Mount Helicon (in Boeotia) (sacred to Apollo and the Muses)
*__spōns__, *__spontis__ *f.* will, volition
numerus, numerī *m.* number; rhythm, meter
aptus, -a, -um composed, fitted together; ready, fitting
versus, versūs *m.* verse, line (of poetry)

47. The exiled poet addresses his wife.

barbara mē tellūs orbisque novissima† magnī
sustinet et saevō cīnctus ab hoste locus.
hinc ego trāicerer—neque enim mea culpa cruenta est—
esset, quae dēbet, sī tibi cūra meī. (Ovid, *Trīstia* V.2.31–34)

barbarus, -a, -um foreign, strange; barbarous, uncivilized
tellūs, tellūris *f.* earth, land
†**novissima**, *here,* most remote, extreme
sustineō (**sub-** + **teneō**), **sustinēre, sustinuī**, —— support, sustain
trāiciō (**trāns-** + **iaciō**) transport, transfer
culpa, culpae *f.* guilt, blame; fault, offense
cruentus, -a, -um bloody

48. The exiled poet resorts to prayer.

adloquor ēn absēns absentia nūmina supplex,
sī fās est hominī cum Iove posse loquī. (Ovid, *Trīstia* V.2.45–46)

alloquor (**ad-** + **loquor**) address
ēn (interj.) behold! look!
supplex, **supplicis** suppliant, humble

49. The poem informs a friend in Rome how the poet in exile feels about him.

nec patriam magis ille† suam dēsīderat et quae
plūrima cum patriā sentit abesse sibi,
quam vultūs oculōsque tuōs, ō dulcior illō
melle quod in cērīs Attica pōnit apis. (Ovid, *Trīstia* V.4.27–30)

†**ille** refers to the poet.
dēsīderō (1-tr.) long for, desire
mel, **mellis** *n.* honey
cēra, **cērae** *f.* beeswax; wax cell; *pl.*, honeycomb
Atticus, **-a**, **-um** Attic, Athenian
apis, **apis**, **-ium** *f.* bee

50. A plan of Tarquinius Priscus, fifth of the legendary kings of Rome, and an event that disrupted it

mūrō quoque lapideō circumdare urbem parābat cum Sabīnum bellum coeptīs† intervēnit. adeōque ea subita rēs fuit ut prius Aniēnem trānsīrent hostēs quam obviam īre ac prohibēre exercitus Rōmānus posset. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* I.36.1)

lapideus, **-a**, **-um** (made of) stone
Sabīnus, **-a**, **-um** Sabine (of a territory and people northeast of Rome)
†**coeptum**, **coeptī** *n.* undertaking, enterprise, scheme
interveniō (**inter-** + **veniō**) interrupt
subitus, **-a**, **-um** sudden
Aniēn, **Aniēnis** *m.* (the) Anio (a river in northern Latium)
trānseō (**trāns-** + **eō**), **trānsīre**, **trānsiī/trānsīvī**, **trānsitus** go across, cross
obviam (adv.) in the way of, so as to meet; **obviam īre**, to go to meet

51. The historian describes the consul Volumnius's experience in fighting the Sallentini, a Samnian people living in the heel of Italy.

Volumnium prōvinciae† haud paenituit. multa secunda proelia fēcit; aliquot urbēs hostium vī cēpit. praedae erat largītor et benignitātem per sē grātam comitāte adiuvābat mīlitemque† hīs artibus fēcerat et perīculī et labōris avidum. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* IX.42.5)

Volumnius, **Volumniī** *m.* Volumnius
†**prōvincia**, *here,* task, assignment
secundus, **-a**, **-um** favorable
aliquot (indecl. adj.) several
praeda, **praedae** *f.* booty, plunder
largītor, **largītōris** *m.* bestower, giver
benignitās, **benignitātis** *f.* kindness, benevolence, generosity
comitās, **comitātis** *f.* friendliness, charm
adiuvō, **adiuvāre**, **adiūvī**, **adiūtus** help, assist; augment, enhance
†**mīles**, *here, collective singular,* soldiery, soldiers
avidus, **-a**, **-um** greedy; eager (for), hungry (for) (+ gen.)

52. When Hannibal was crossing the Appenines near the end of winter, he and his troops were overwhelmed by a violent storm.

tum vērō ingentī sonō caelum strepere et inter horrendōs fragōrēs micāre ignēs; captī auribus et oculīs metū omnēs torpēre; . . . (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXI.58.5)

sonus, sonī *m.* sound, noise
strepō, strepere, strepuī, strepitum make a loud noise, crash
horrendus, -a, -um terrible, tremendous
fragor, fragōris *m.* crash, roar
micō, micāre, micuī, —— dart, flicker, flash
auris, auris, -ium *f.* ear
torpeō, torpēre, ——, —— be struck numb, be paralyzed

53. After describing a tremendous Roman victory over the Carthaginians in 207 B.C.E., the historian recounts a horrific moment in the Roman camp.

C. Claudius cōnsul cum in castra redīsset, caput Hasdrubalis, quod servātum cum cūrā attulerat, prōicī ante hostium statiōnēs, captīvōsque Āfrōs vīnctōs ut erant ostendī, duōs etiam ex iīs solūtōs īre ad Hannibalem et exprōmere quae ācta essent iussit. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXVII.51.11)

C. Claudius, C. Claudiī *m.* C. Claudius (consul 207 B.C.E.)
Hasdrubal, Hasdrubalis *m.* Hasdrubal (Carthaginian general and brother of Hannibal)
afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring with one
prōiciō (prō- + iaciō) throw forward, fling
statiō, statiōnis *f.* guard post
captīvus, captīvī *m.* prisoner of war, captive
Āfer, Āfra, Āfrum African
vinciō, vincīre, vīnxī, vīnctus bind, join, fetter
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus/ostēnsus present, show
exprōmō, exprōmere, exprōmpsī, exprōmptus bring forth, disclose, reveal

54. After a furious attack fails to deter the Carthaginians, the praetor Quinctilius Varus addresses the proconsul in charge, Marcus Cornelius Cethegus.

"lentior, ut vidēs, fit pugna, et indūrātur praeter spem† resistendō hostium timor, ac nē vertat in audāciam perīculum est." (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXX.18.3)

lentus, -a, -um slow; tough
pugna, pugnae *f.* fight
indūrō (1-tr.) make hard, harden; steel
†**spēs**, *here*, expectation
resistō, resistere, restitī, —— resist, withstand
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn

55. The leader of the Achaeans, allies of Rome involved in a dispute with the Spartans, concludes an appeal.

verēmur quidem vōs, Rōmānī, et sī ita vultis, etiam timēmus: sed plūs et verēmur et timēmus deōs immōrtālēs. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XXXIX.37.17)

56. About to assume the governorship of Nearer Spain, Ti. Sempronius describes the nature of the people in that province and the challenges that lie ahead for him.

dictū quam rē facilius est prōvinciam ingeniō ferōcem, rebellātrīcem cōnfēcisse.† paucae cīvitātēs, ut quidem ego audiō, quās vīcīna maximē hiberna premēbant, in iūs diciōnemque vēnērunt; ulteriōrēs in armīs sunt. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XL.35.13)

ferōx, ferōcis fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
rebellātrīx, rebellātrīcis rebellious
†**cōnficiō**, *here,* subdue, pacify
vīcīnus, -a, -um neighboring
hiberna, hibernōrum *n. pl.* winter quarters, winter (military) camp
diciō, diciōnis *f.* sovereignty, sway, power
ulterior, ulterius farther, more distant

57. M. Servilius addresses the soldiers who are preventing the triumph of their general, L. Aemilius Paulus, after his victory in Macedonia. A jealous rival had roused the soldiers' resentment against Paulus, who had refused to let his troops indiscriminately seize booty after the victory.

aliquis est Rōmae, praeter Perseā, quī triumphārī dē Macedonibus nōlit; et eum nōn īsdem manibus discerpitis quibus Macedonas vīcistis? vincere vōs prohibuisset sī potuisset, quī triumphantīs urbem inīre prohibet. (Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* XLV.38.2)

Perseus, Perseī *m.* Perseus (last king of Macedonia); **Perseā** = *acc. sing.*
triumphō (1-intr.) celebrate a triumph, triumph
Macedones, Macedonum *m. pl.* Macedonians (a people of northern Greece); **Macedonas** = *acc. pl.*
discerpō, discerpere, discerpsī, discerptus tear to pieces
ineō (in + eō), inīre, iniī/inīvī, initus enter

58. Seneca concludes a letter to Lucilius, in which he has argued about the advantage of what many fear most.

negā nunc magnum beneficium esse nātūrae quod necesse est morī.

(Seneca the Younger, *Epistulae Mōrālēs* CI.14)

negō (1-tr.) deny
beneficium, beneficiī *n.* service, kindness; favor, benefit

59. Creon explains why he does not want to tell Oedipus what he knows.

ubi turpis est medicīna, sānārī piget. (Seneca the Younger, *Oedipus* 515)

medicīna, medicīnae *f.* medicine
sānō (1-tr.) heal, cure

60. While consoling his friend Polybius, whose brother has recently died, Seneca reminds him of a parallel from history.

quid tibi referam Scīpiōnem Āfricānum, cui mors frātris in exiliō nuntiāta est? is frāter, quī ēripuit frātrem carcerī, nōn potuit ēripere fātō.

(Seneca the Younger, *Dialogī* XI.14.4)

Scīpiō Āfricānus, Scīpiōnis Āfricānī *m.* (P. Cornelius) Scipio Africanus (consul 205 B.C.E.)
nuntiō (1-tr.) announce, report
carcer, carceris *m.* prison

61. Quintilian recalls an opinion of Socrates.

. . . Sōcratēs inhonestam sibi crēdidit ōrātiōnem quam eī Lysiās reō composuerat . . .

(Quintilian, *Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria* II.15.30)

Sōcratēs, Sōcratis *m.* Socrates
inhonestus, -a, -um dishonorable, disgraceful
Lysiās, Lysiae *m.* Lysias (an Athenian orator and contemporary of Socrates)
reus, reī *m.* defendant
compōnō (com- + pōnō) put together; compose

62. The poet boldly addresses a goddess.

nūllum nūmen habēs sī sit prūdentia: nōs tē,
nōs facimus, Fortūna, deam caelōque locāmus. (Juvenal, *Saturae* X.365–66)

prūdentia, prūdentiae *f.* good sense, prudence
locō (1-tr.) place

63. The satirist urges more care in the raising of a son than in preparing for a guest.

grātum est quod patriae cīvem populōque dedistī,
sī facis ut patriae sit idōneus, ūtilis agrīs,
ūtilis et bellōrum et pācis rēbus agendīs.
plūrimum enim intererit quibus artibus et quibus hunc tū
mōribus īnstituās . . . (Juvenal, *Saturae* XIV.70–74)

idōneus, -a, -um suitable, apt, capable
ūtilis, ūtile useful
īnstituō, īnstituere, īnstituī, īnstitūtus instruct, train, educate

64. The beginning of a speech by Agricola to his troops before battle

septimus annus est, commīlitōnēs, ex quō virtūte et auspiciīs imperiī Rōmānī, fidē atque operā vestrā Britanniam vīcistis. tot expedītiōnibus, tot proeliīs, seu fortitūdine adversus hostīs seu patientiā ac labōre paene adversus ipsam rērum nātūram opus fuit, neque mē mīlitum neque vōs ducis paenituit.

(Tacitus, *Dē Vītā Agricolae* 33)

commīlitō, commīlitōnis *m.* fellow soldier
auspicium, auspiciī *n.* augury, omen
opera, operae *f.* effort, work
Britannia, Britanniae *f.* Britain
expedītiō, expedītiōnis *f.* military operation, expedition
seu (conj.) or if, whether; **seu . . . seu . . .**, whether . . . or (if) . . .
fortitūdō, fortitūdinis *f.* bravery, fortitude
adversus (prep. + acc.) in opposition to, against, in the face of
patientia, patientiae *f.* endurance, hardiness
paene (adv.) nearly, almost

65. After recording the differing traditions about the emperor Galba's last words, the historian appends a tart remark.

nōn interfuit occīdentium quid dīceret.† (Tacitus, *Historiae* I.41)

occīdō, **occīdere**, **occīdī**, **occīsus** kill, slaughter
†**dīceret**, *subject is Galba*

66. The historian describes a battle between Roman forces and the Cherusci, a German tribe led by the fierce Arminius, whose first attempt to break through the line of Roman archers had been rebuffed.

nīsū tamen corporis et impetū equī pervāsit, oblitus faciem suō cruōre nē nōscerētur. quīdam adgnitum ā Chaucīs inter auxilia Rōmāna agentibus† ēmissumque trādidērunt. (Tacitus, *Annālēs* II.17)

nīsus, ***nīsūs** *m.* exertion, effort
impetus, **impetūs** *m.* attack; onset, rush; vigor, force
equus, **equī** *m.* horse
pervādō, **pervādere**, **pervāsī**, **pervāsus** pass through, penetrate, prevail; **pervāsit**, *subject is Arminius*
oblinō, **oblinere**, **oblēvī**, **oblitus** smear, coat, cover
faciēs, **faciēī** *f.* face; appearance
cruor, **cruōris** *m.* blood, gore
agnōscō (**ad-** + **nōscō**), **agnōscere**, **agnōvī**, **agnitus** recognize, identify
Chaucī, **Chaucōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Chauci (a German tribe)
†**agō**, *here,* do service
ēmittō (**ē-** + **mittō**) set free, release

67. The historian recounts an old story indicating the extent of the emperor Tiberius's frustration with the senate.

memoriae prōditur Tiberium, quotiēs cūriā ēgrederētur, Graecīs verbīs in hunc modum ēloquī solitum, "ō hominēs ad servitūtem parātōs!" scīlicet etiam illum quī lībertātem pūblicam nōllet tam prōiectae servientium patientiae taedēbat.

(Tacitus, *Annālēs* III.65)

prōdō (**prō-** + **dō**) hand down, transmit
quotiē(n)s (rel. adv.) as often as, whenever
cūria, **cūriae** *f.* the Curia, the senate house
Graecus, **-a**, **-um** Greek
ēloquor (**ē-** + **loquor**) utter, say
scīlicet (particle) to be sure, no doubt, of course
prōiectus, **-a**, **-um** prominent; abject, groveling
serviō, **servīre**, **serviī/servīvī**, **servītum** be a slave, be enslaved
patientia, **patientiae** *f.* endurance, patience; submissiveness

Longer Readings

1. Cicero, *Prō S. Rosciō Amerīnō* 56–57

Cicero likens prosecutors to the geese and dogs maintained at public expense in order to guard the Capitoline hill.

ānseribus cibāria pūblicē locantur et canēs aluntur in Capitōliō ut significent sī† fūrēs vēnerint. at fūrēs internōscere nōn possunt, significant tamen sī† quī noctū in Capitōlium vēnerint et, quia id est suspīciōsum, tametsī bestiae sunt, tamen in eam partem† potius peccant quae est cautior. quod sī lūce quoque canēs latrent cum deōs salūtātum aliquī vēnerint, opīnor, eīs crūra suffringantur quod ācrēs sint etiam tum cum suspīciō nūlla sit. simillima est accūsātōrum ratiō. aliī vestrum ānserēs sunt quī tantum modo† clāmant, nocēre nōn possunt, aliī canēs quī et latrāre et mordēre possunt. cibāria vōbīs praebērī vidēmus; vōs autem maximē dēbētis in eōs impetum facere quī merentur. hoc populō grātissimum est. deinde, sī volētis, etiam tum cum vērī simile erit aliquem commīsisse, in suspīciōne latrātōte; id quoque concēdī potest. sīn autem sīc agētis ut arguātis aliquem patrem occīdisse neque dīcere

ānser, **ānseris** *m.* or *f.* goose
cibāria, **cibāriōrum** *n. pl.* ration *or* allowance (of food provided to animals); provisions
locō (1-tr.) place
canis, **canis** *m.* or *f.* dog
alō, **alere**, **aluī**, **al(i)tus** feed, nourish
Capitōlium, **Capitōliī** *n.* (the) Capitoline hill
significō (1-tr.) indicate, signify
†**sī**, *here, introduces Indirect Question*
fūr, **fūris**, **-ium** *m.* thief, robber
at (conj.) but
internōscō (**inter-** + **nōscō**), **internōscere**, **internōvī**, **internōtus** distinguish; pick out (from others)
noctū = **nocte**
suspīciōsus, **-a**, **-um** suspicious
tametsī (conj.) even though
bestia, **bestiae** *f.* beast, animal
†**in eam partem . . . quae . . .** to that side that . . .
potius (adv.) rather
peccō (1-intr.) make a mistake, err
cautus, **-a**, **-um** cautious
latrō (1-intr.) bark; make a noise; **latrātōte** = *2nd pl. fut. act. imper.*, bark
salūtō (1-tr.) say hello; call upon, pay one's respects (to)
opīnor (1-tr.) suppose, imagine, think
crūs, **crūris** *n.* leg
suffringō, **suffringere**, ——, —— break the lower part of
suspīciō, **suspīciōnis** *f.* suspicion; reason for suspicion
accūsātor, **accūsātōris** *m.* prosecutor
ratiō, **ratiōnis** *f.* account, reason; reasoning; way, method
†**tantum modo** only, merely
clāmō (1-intr.) shout, make a noise
noceō, **nocēre**, **nocuī**, **nocitūrus** be harmful, harm, do harm
mordeō, **mordēre**, **momordī**, **morsus** bite, wound (with the teeth)
praebeō, **praebēre**, **praebuī**, **praebitus** furnish, provide
impetus, **impetūs** *m.* attack, assault
mereor, **merērī**, **meritus sum** deserve
deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next
committō (**con-** + **mittō**) commit (an offense); break a law, offend
concēdō (**con-** + **cēdō**) (tr.) concede, grant
sīn (conj.) but if
arguō, **arguere**, **arguī**, **argūtus** charge, allege
occīdō, **occīdere**, **occīdī**, **occīsus** kill

possītis aut quā rē aut quō modō, ac tantum modo† sine suspīciōne latrābitis, crūra quidem vōbīs nēmō suffringet, sed, sī ego hōs† bene nōvī, litteram illam† cui vōs ūsque eō inimīcī estis ut etiam Kal. omnīs ōderitis ita vehementer ad caput adfīgent ut posteā nēminem alium nisi fortūnās vestrās accūsāre possītis.

†**tantum modo**, only, merely
suspīciō, **suspīciōnis** *f.* suspicion; reason for suspicion
latrō (1-intr.) bark; make a noise
crūs, **crūris** *n.* leg
suffringō, **suffringere**, ——, —— break the lower part of
†**hōs** refers to the judges.
†**litteram illam** that infamous letter (K, for **kalumniātor**, false accuser; a prosecutor could be so branded if he was found guilty of bringing false charges)
ūsque (adv.) continuously; all the way (to); **ūsque eō**, to such an extent, so
Kalendae, **Kalendārum** *f. pl.* the Kalends (the first day of a month); **Kal.** = **Kalendās**
vehementer (adv.) violently, strongly
affīgō, **affīgere**, **affīxī**, **affīxus** fix, fasten, attach
posteā (adv.) after, afterward
accūsō (1-tr.) blame, find fault with; charge, accuse

While Sulla ruled Rome as a dictator in 80 B.C.E., young Cicero defended S. Roscius Amerinus against charges of murdering his own father. Roscius had been framed by those who had arranged the murder, two of his father's relatives conspiring with a freedman of Sulla to acquire the property of the dead man. The *Prō S. Rosciō Amerīnō* shows Cicero's rhetorical style in the making amid a complex political situation.

2. Cicero, *Tusculānae Disputātiōnēs* I.9

In the hope that a discussion about death may be presented more suitably, Cicero offers an imitation of a Socratic dialogue.

Audītor. Malum mihi vidētur esse mors.

Magister. Īsne, quī mortuī sunt, an iīs, quibus moriendum est?

A. Utrīsque.†

M. Est miserum, igitur, quoniam malum.

A. Certē.

M. Ergō et iī quibus ēvēnit iam ut morerentur et iī quibus ēventūrum est miserī.

A. Mihi ita vidētur.

M. Nēmō ergō nōn miser.

A. Prorsus nēmō.

M. Et quidem, sī tibi cōnstāre vīs, omnēs, quīcumque nātī sunt eruntve, nōn sōlum miserī, sed etiam semper miserī. nam sī sōlōs eōs dīcerēs miserōs quibus moriendum esset, nēminem tū quidem eōrum quī vīverent exciperēs (moriendum est enim omnibus), esset tamen miseriae fīnis in morte. quoniam autem etiam mortuī miserī sunt, in miseriam nāscimur sempiternam. necesse est enim miserōs esse eōs quī centum mīlibus annōrum ante occidērunt, vel potius omnīs, quīcumque nātī sunt.

audītor, **audītōris** *m.* listener
magister, **magistrī** *m.* teacher
†**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque** (indef. pron.) each (of two), both
ergō (adv.) therefore
ēveniō (**ē-** + **veniō**) come out, turn out
prorsus (adv.) thoroughly, in every respect, altogether
cōnstō (**con-** + **stō**), **cōnstāre**, **cōnstitī**, **cōnstātūrus** stand still; be consistent with (+ dat.)
quīcumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque** (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever
-ve (enclitic adv.) or
excipiō (**ex-** + **capiō**) take out, exclude
miseria, **miseriae** *f.* misery
sempiternus, **-a**, **-um** everlasting, perpetual
potius (adv.) rather

3. Cicero, *Ad Familiārēs* V.15

Cicero responds to a letter from his friend L. Lucceius, praetor (67 B.C.E.), politician, lawyer, historian, and an ally of Cicero during the Catilinarian conspiracy. Beset by ill health, Lucceius wrote to Cicero in order both to console him in his grief over the recent death of his daughter Tullia and to encourage him to attend to the business of the crumbling Roman Republic.

M. CICERO S. D. L. LUCCEIO Q. F.†

Omnis amor tuus ex omnibus partibus sē ostendit in iīs litterīs quās ā tē proximē accēpī, nōn ille quidem mihi ignōtus sed tamen grātus et optātus; dīcerem "iūcundus" nisi id verbum in† omne tempus perdidissem, neque ob eam ūnam causam quam tū suspicāris et in quā mē lēnissimīs et amantissimīs verbīs ūtēns rē graviter accūsās, sed quod illīus tantī vulneris quae remedia esse dēbēbant ea nūlla sunt. quid enim? ad amīcōsne cōnfugiam? quam multī sunt? habuimus enim ferē commūnīs; quōrum aliī occidērunt, aliī nescio quō† pactō obdūruērunt. tēcum vīvere possem equidem et maximē vellem. vetustās, amor, cōnsuētūdō, studia paria—quod vinclum, quaesō, dēest nostrae coniūnctiōnī? possumusne igitur esse ūnā?† nec mehercule intellegō quid impediat; sed certē adhūc nōn fuimus cum essēmus vīcīnī in Tusculānō, in Puteolānō. nam quid dīcam in urbe, in quā, cum forum commūne sit, vīcīnitās nōn requīritur?

L. Lucceius, L. Lucceiī *m.* L. Lucceius
†**Q. F. = Quintī fīliō**
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentus/ostēnsus present, show; offer
proximē (adv.) most recently
ignōtus, -a, -um unknown
iūcundus, -a, -um pleasing, delightful, agreeable
†**in**, *here, expressing expected duration,* for
suspicor (1-tr.) imagine; suspect
lēnis, lēne mild, gentle
accūsō (1-tr.) find fault with, censure
remedium, remediī *n.* remedy, cure
cōnfugiō (**con-** + **fugiō**) flee for refuge *or* safety
ferē (adv.) almost, nearly
commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in common
†**nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod** (indef. adj.) *sometimes written as two words,* some . . . or other
pactum, pactī *n.* means, manner, method, way
obdūrēscō, obdūrēscere, obdūruī, —— become hard(ened), become callous
vetustās, vetustātis *f.* (old) age, antiquity
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage
pār, paris equal; similar
vinc(u)lum, vinc(u)lī *n.* bond, chain, link
quaesō, *quaesere, ——, —— seek, pray for; *1st sing. pres. act. indic.,* I ask you, please
dēsum (**dē-** + **sum**), **dēesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus** be absent, be lacking, be missing
coniūnctiō, coniūnctiōnis *f.* union, bond
†**ūnā** (adv.) together
adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still
vīcīnus, -a, -um neighboring; *subst.,* neighbor
Tusculānum, Tusculānī *n.* Tusculanum (an estate [particularly Cicero's estate] at or near Tusculum, a town in Latium)
Puteolānum, Puteolānī *n.* Puteolanum (an estate at or near Puteoli, a town near Naples)
vīcīnitās, vīcīnitātis *f.* proximity, nearness
requīrō (**re-** + **quaerō**), **requīrere, requīsiī/requīsīvī, requīsītus** seek again; call for, need

sed cāsū nescio quō† in ea tempora nostra aetās incidit ut, cum maximē flōrēre nōs oportēret, tum vīvere etiam pudēret. quod enim esse poterat mihi perfugium spoliātō et domesticīs et forēnsibus ornāmentīs atque sōlāciīs? litterae, crēdō, quibus ūtor adsiduē; quid enim aliud facere possum? sed nescio quō† modō ipsae illae exclūdere mē ā portū et perfugiō videntur et quasi exprobrāre quod in eā vītā maneam in quā nihil īnsit nisi propāgātiō miserrimī temporis.

Hīc tū mē abesse urbe mīrāris, in quā domus nihil dēlectāre possit, summum sit odium temporum, hominum, forī, cūriae? itaque sīc litterīs ūtor, in quibus cōnsūmō omne tempus, nōn ut ab iīs medicīnam perpetuam sed ut exiguam oblīviōnem dolōris petam. quod sī id ēgissēmus ego atque tū quod nē in mentem quidem nōbīs veniēbat propter cottīdiānōs metūs et omne tempus ūnā† fuissēmus, neque mē valētūdō tua offenderet neque tē maeror meus. quod, quantum fierī poterit, cōnsequāmur. quid enim est utrīque† nostrum aptius? propediem tē igitur vidēbō.

†**nescioquī**, **nescioquae**, **nescioquod** (indef. adj.) *sometimes written as two words,* some . . . or other
incidō (**in-** + **cadō**), **incidere**, **incidī**, **incāsūrus** fall into, pass; slip
flōreō, **flōrēre**, **flōruī**, —— blossom; prosper; be at the height of one's power
perfugium, **perfugiī** *n.* place of refuge, shelter, sanctuary
spoliō (1-tr.) strip, rob
domesticus, **-a**, **-um** personal, domestic
forēnsis, **forēnse** of *or* belonging to the forum, forensic; public
ornāmentum, **ornāmentī** *n.* adornment, embellishment; distinction, honor
sōlācium, **sōlāciī** *n.* comfort, solace, relief
assiduē (adv.) continually, constantly
exclūdō, **exclūdere**, **exclūsī**, **exclūsus** keep out, exclude, debar
portus, **portūs** *m.* harbor; refuge, haven
quasi (adv.) as (if), as (it were)
exprobrō (1-tr.) bring up as a reproach
īnsum (**in-** + **sum**), **inesse**, **īnfuī**, —— be in; be present, be contained
propāgātiō, **propāgātiōnis** *f.* continuation, prolongation
mīror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at, be astonished
dēlectō (1-tr.) delight, please, charm
cūria, **cūriae** *f.* the Curia, the senate house
itaque (conj.) and so, accordingly
cōnsūmō, **cōnsūmere**, **cōnsūmpsī**, **cōnsūmptus** wear away, consume; spend, pass
medicīna, **medicīnae** *f.* medicine; treatment, cure
perpetuus, **-a**, **-um** continuous, without interruption; perpetual, everlasting
exiguus, **-a**, **-um** small, slight, brief
oblīviō, **oblīviōnis** *f.* (state of) forgetfulness, oblivion
dolor, **dolōris** *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
cottīdiānus, **-a**, **-um** daily
†**ūnā** (adv.) together
valētūdō, **valētūdinis** *f.* health; illness, indisposition
offendō, **offendere**, **offendī**, **offēnsus** trouble, upset, give offense to, annoy
maeror, **maerōris** *m.* grief, sorrow, mourning
cōnsequor (**con-** + **sequor**) follow after, pursue
†**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque** (indef. pron.) each (of two)
aptus, **-a**, **-um** suitable, fit(ting), appropriate
propediem (adv.) before long, any day now, very soon

4. Catullus III (hendecasyllable)

A mock-tragic dirge

Lūgēte, ō Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,
et quantumst hominum venustiōrum:
passer mortuus est meae puellae,
passer, dēliciae meae puellae,
quem plūs illa oculīs suīs amābat;
nam mellītus erat suamque nōrat
ipsam† tam bene quam puella mātrem,
nec sēsē ā gremiō illius† movēbat,
sed circumsiliēns modo hūc modo illūc
ad sōlam dominam ūsque pīpiābat.
quī nunc it per iter tenebricōsum
illūc, unde negant redīre quemquam.
at vōbīs male sit, malae tenebrae
Orcī, quae omnia bella† dēvorātis:
tam bellum† mihi passerem abstulistis.
ō factum male, ō miselle passer!
tuā nunc operā meae puellae
flendō turgidulī rubent ocellī.

lūgeō, **lūgēre**, **lūxī**, **lūctus** mourn (for); grieve, lament
venustus, **-a**, **-um** charming, pleasing
passer, **passeris** *m.* sparrow
dēliciae, **dēliciārum** *f. pl.* delight, darling, beloved
mellītus, **-a**, **-um** honey-sweet
†**ipsa**, *here,* mistress
gremium, **gremiī** *n.* bosom; lap
†The second **-ī-** of **illīus** here scans *short.*
circumsiliō, **circumsilīre**, ——, —— leap about, hop around
domina, **dominae** *f.* mistress
ūsque (adv.) continuously
pīpiō (1-intr.) chirp, cheep, peep
iter, **itineris** *n.* passage; road, route
tenebricōsus, **-a**, **-um** full of shadows, gloomy
negō (1-tr.) deny, say . . . not
at (conj.) but
tenebrae, **tenebrārum** *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
†**bellus**, **-a**, **-um** pretty, charming, lovely
dēvorō (1-tr.) swallow up, gulp down, devour
misellus, **-a**, **-um** wretched (little), pitiable
opera, **operae** *f.* effort, work; *abl.,* fault
fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētus** weep (for)
turgidulus, **-a**, **-um** swollen (little)
rubeō, **rubēre**, ——, —— be red
ocellus, **ocellī** *m.* (little) eye

5. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* I.44

Caesar reports the German king Ariovistus's response to a series of Caesar's demands.

Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ūnō ā sē proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse.

Ariovistus, **Ariovistī** *m.* Ariovistus (a German king)
postulātum, **postulātī** *n.* demand
praedicō (1-tr.) proclaim, declare
trānseō (**trāns-** + **eō**), **trānsīre**, **trānsiī/trānsīvī**, **trānsitus** go across, cross
Rhēnus, **Rhēnī** *m.* (the) Rhine (a river in north-eastern Gaul)
***spōns**, ***spontis** *f.* (one's own) will
arcessō, **arcessere**, **arcessiī/arcessīvī**, **arcessītus** send for, summon; invite
Gallī, **Gallōrum** *m. pl.* (the) Gauls
praemium, **praemiī** *n.* reward, prize
propinquus, **-a**, **-um** near, close; *subst.*, relative
sēdēs, **sēdis**, **-ium** *f.* seat; home, abode
Gallia, **Galliae** *f.* Gaul
concēdō (**con-** + **cēdō**) (tr.) concede, grant
obses, **obsidis** *m.* or *f.* hostage
voluntās, **voluntātis** *f.* will, intention; choice
stīpendium, **stīpendiī** *n.* tax, tribute
victor, **victōris** *m.* conqueror, victor
impōnō (**in-** + **pōnō**) place on, impose on
cōnsuēscō, **cōnsuēscere**, **cōnsuēvī**, **cōnsuētus** accustom, habituate; *perfect active and passive,* be accustomed; **cōnsuērint**, *perf. subjunc. as if in primary sequence*

6. Caesar, *Dē Bellō Gallicō* V.14

Caesar reports on practices of the Celtic tribes that he observed in Britain.

ex hīs† omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō īnficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā adspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs et maximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs.† sed sī quī sunt ex iīs nātī, eōrum habentur līberī,† quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

†**hīs** refers to the tribes of Britain.
hūmānus, -a, -um human; humane, civilized
Cantium, Cantiī *n.* Cantium (a town in Britain)
incolō, incolere, incoluī, —— inhabit
regiō, regiōnis *f.* region, locality
maritimus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to the sea; situated near the sea, coastal
Gallicus, -a, -um of Gaul, Gallic
cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis *f.* custom, usage
interior, interius situated farther from the coast, more remote
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most
frūmentum, frūmentī *n.* grain
serō, serere, sēvī, satus plant, sow
lac, lactis *n.* milk
carō, carnis *f.* flesh, meat
pellis, pellis, -ium *f.* (animal) skin, hide
vestiō, vestīre, vestiī/vestīvī, vestītus clothe, dress
Britannī, Britannōrum *m. pl.* (the) Britons (inhabitants of Britain)
vitrum, vitrī *n.* woad (a plant from which a blue dye is made); blue dye
īnficiō (in- + faciō) dye
caeruleus, -a, -um (sky) blue
color, colōris *m.* color
horribilis, horribile terrifying, dreadful
pugna, pugnae *f.* fight, battle
aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectus look at, look upon; behold
capillus, capillī *m.* hair
prōmittō (prō- + mittō) send forth; (let) grow long
rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsus scrape; shave
labrum, labrī *n.* lip
superior, superius upper
uxor, uxōris *f.* wife
dēnī, dēnae, dēna ten together
duodēnī, duodēnae, duodēna twelve together
commūnis, commūne common, shared; held in common
parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
†**līberī**, *here,* children
virgō, virginis *f.* maiden, virgin
dēdūcō (dē- + dūcō) lead away; bring home (as one's bride)

7. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 36

The historian reflects on the terrible power of the Catilinarian conspiracy.

eā tempestāte mihi imperium populī Rōmānī multō maxumē miserābile vīsum est. quoi quom ad occāsum ab ortū sōlis omnia domita armīs pārērent, domī ōtium atque dīvitiae, quae prīma mortālēs putant, adfluerent, fuēre tamen cīvēs quī sēque remque pūblicam obstinātīs animīs perditum īrent. namque duōbus senātī dēcrētīs ex tantā multitūdine neque praemiō inductus coniūrātiōnem patefēcerat neque ex castrīs Catilīnae quisquam omnium discesserat: tanta vīs morbī atque utī tābēs plērōsque cīvium animōs invāserat.

tempestās, tempestātis *f.* storm; time
miserābilis, miserābile pitiable, wretched
occāsus, occāsūs *m.* falling, setting
ortus, ortūs *m.* rising
domō, domāre, domuī, domitus subdue, conquer
ōtium, ōtiī *n.* leisure; peace
dīvitiae, dīvitiārum *f. pl.* wealth, riches
affluō, affluere, affluxī, affluxus flow toward, flow in; abound
obstinātus, -a, -um determined, resolute, inflexible
dēcrētum, dēcrētī *n.* decree
multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude
praemium, praemiī *n.* reward
indūcō (in- + dūcō) lead in; persuade, induce
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis *f.* conspiracy
patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus lay open, disclose, expose
morbus, morbī *m.* sickness, disease
utī = ut, as if, as it were
tābēs, tābis *f.* wasting away, decay; plague
plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque very many, most
invādō, invādere, invāsī, invāsus enter (hostilely); invade, attack

8. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 60–61

With frequent use of the historical present, the historian vividly describes the final battle between Catiline's forces and those loyal to Rome. He then concludes his monograph with a description of the battle's aftermath.

sed ubi omnibus rēbus explōrātīs Petreius tubā signum dat, cohortīs paulātim incēdere iubet; idem facit hostium exercitus. postquam eō ventum est unde ā ferentāriīs proelium conmittī posset, maxumō clāmōre cum īnfestīs signīs concurrunt; pīla omittunt, gladiīs rēs geritur. veterānī, pristinae virtūtis memorēs, comminus ācriter īnstāre, illī haud timidī resistunt: maxumā vī certātur. intereā Catilīna cum expedītīs in prīmā aciē vorsārī, labōrantibus succurrere, integrōs prō sauciīs arcessere, omnia prōvidēre, multum ipse pugnāre, saepe hostem ferīre: strēnuī mīlitis et bonī imperātōris officia simul exequēbātur. Petreius, ubi videt Catilīnam contrā ac† ratus

explōrō (1-tr.) examine, investigate
Petreius, **Petreiī** *m.* (M.) Petreius (leader of the Roman troops who defeated Catiline at Pistoria)
tuba, **tubae** *f.* horn, (war) trumpet
cohors, **cohortis**, **-ium** *f.* company of soldiers, division of an army, cohort
paulātim (adv.) little by little, gradually
incēdō (**in-** + **cēdō**) go in, enter; advance
ferentārius, **ferentāriī** *m.* light-armed troop
committō (**con-** + **mittō**) join, engage in; enter upon, commence
clāmor, **clāmōris** *m.* shout, shouting; noise
īnfestus, **-a**, **-um** hostile, harmful
concurrō, **concurrere**, **concurrī**, **concursum** rush together, charge
pīlum, **pīlī** *n.* heavy javelin (of the Roman infantry)
omittō (**ob-** + **mittō**) let loose, let go, let fall
veterānus, **-a**, **-um** old, veteran; *subst.*, veteran (soldier)
pristinus, **-a**, **-um** ancient; former; original
memor, **memoris** mindful, remembering (+ gen.)
comminus (adv.) in close contact, at close quarters, hand to hand
īnstō (**in-** + **stō**), **īnstāre**, **īnstitī**, **īnstātūrus** press (hostilely), press on, pursue
timidus, **-a**, **-um** fearful, afraid, timid
resistō, **resistere**, **restitī**, —— oppose, resist
certō (1-intr.) struggle, contend, strive
intereā (adv.) meanwhile
expedītus, **expedītī** *m.* light-armed soldier
versor (1-intr.) remain, stay
succurrō, **succurrere**, **succurrī**, **succursum** run to aid, assist, help (+ dat.)
integer, **integra**, **integrum** untouched; unhurt; fresh, vigorous
saucius, **-a**, **-um** wounded
arcessō, **arcessere**, **arcessiī**/**arcessīvī**, **arcessītus** send for, summon
prōvideō (**prō-** + **videō**) foresee; provide for, see to
feriō, **ferīre**, ——, —— strike, hit
strēnuus, **-a**, **-um** active, vigorous, energetic
officium, **officiī** *n.* obligation; duty, task; function
simul (adv.) at the same time
ex(s)equor (**ex-** + **sequor**) perform, execute, accomplish
†**contrā ac** different from, otherwise than
reor, **rērī**, **ratus sum** believe, think, imagine

erat, magnā vī tendere, cohortem praetōriam in mediōs hostīs indūcit eōsque perturbātōs atque aliōs alibī resistentīs interficit. deinde utrimque ex lateribus cēterōs adgreditur. Manlius et Faesulānus in prīmīs pugnantēs cadunt. Catilīna postquam fūsās cōpiās sēque cum paucīs relicuom videt, memor generis atque pristinae suae dignitātis in cōnfertissumōs hostīs incurrit ibique pugnāns cōnfoditur.

sed cōnfectō proeliō, tum vērō cernerēs quanta audācia quantaque animī vīs fuisset in exercitū Catilīnae. nam ferē quem quisque vīvos pugnandō locum cēperat, eum āmissā animā corpore tegēbat. paucī autem, quōs mediōs cohors praetōria disiēcerat, paulō dīvorsius, sed omnēs tamen advorsīs volneribus conciderant. Catilīna vērō

tendō, **tendere**, **tetendī**, **tentus/tēnsus** stretch out, extend; strain, exert oneself, contend
cohors, **cohortis**, **-ium** *f.* company of soldiers, division of an army, cohort
praetōrius, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to the praetor, praetorian
indūcō (**in-** + **dūcō**) bring (in), lead (in)
perturbō (1-tr.) throw into disorder, confuse, disturb
alibī (adv.) elsewhere, in another place
resistō, **resistere**, **restitī**, —— oppose, resist
deinde (adv.) then, thereupon; next
utrimque (adv.) from both sides, on both sides
latus, **lateris** *n.* side, flank
aggredior (**ad-** + **gradior**) assault, attack
Manlius, **Manliī** *m.* (C.) Manlius (centurion under Sulla, leader of Catiline's army)
Faesulānus, **-a**, **-um** of *or* belonging to Faesulae (a city in Etruria); *masc. subst.*, the Faesulan (referring to a commander of part of Catiline's troops)
fundō, **fundere**, **fūdī**, **fūsus** pour out, pour forth; rout, disperse; slay
relicuom = *archaic form of* **reliquum**
memor, **memoris** mindful, remembering (+ gen.)
pristinus, **-a**, **-um** ancient; former; original
dignitās, **dignitātis** *f.* dignity, rank, status
cōnfertus, **-a**, **-um** crowded, dense, packed close together
incurrō (**in-** + **currō**), **incurrere**, **incucurrī**, **incursum** rush (into), attack
cōnfodiō, **cōnfodīre**, **cōnfōdī**, **cōnfossus** dig thoroughly; pierce, transfix
cernō, **cernere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** distinguish; perceive, see
ferē (adv.) almost, nearly; for the most part
vīvus, **-a**, **-um** living, alive
āmittō (**ā-** + **mittō**) send away; lose
tegō, **tegere**, **tēxī**, **tēctus** cover
disiciō (**dis-** + **iaciō**) break, rout, disperse
dīversē (adv.) scattered, in different directions; **paulō dīvorsius**, *supply* **conciderant**, had fallen a little more spread out
adversus, **-a**, **-um** turned toward; received in front
concidō (**con-** + **cadō**), **concidere**, **concidī**, —— fall down, collapse; fall lifeless, die

longē ā suīs inter hostium cadāvera repertus est, paululum etiam spīrāns ferōciamque animī quam habuerat vīvos, in voltū retinēns. postrēmō ex omnī cōpiā† neque in proeliō neque in fugā quisquam† cīvis ingenuos captus est: ita cūnctī suae hostiumque vītae iuxtā pepercerant. neque tamen exercitus populī Rōmānī laetam aut incruentam victōriam adeptus erat. nam strēnuissumus quisque aut occiderat in proeliō aut graviter volnerātus discesserat. multī autem, quī ē castrīs vīsundī aut spoliandī grātiā prōcesserant, volventēs hostīlia cadāvera amīcum aliī, pars hospitem aut cognātum reperiēbant; fuēre item quī inimīcōs suōs cognōscerent. ita variē per omnem exercitum laetitia, maeror, lūctus, atque gaudia agitābantur.

cadāver, cadāveris *n.* corpse
reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertus find, discover
paululum (adv.) a little
spīrō (1-tr.) breathe
ferōcia, ferōciae *f.* fierceness, savagery
vīvus, -a, -um living, alive
retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus keep hold of, retain, grasp
postrēmō (adv.) finally
†**cōpia**, *here,* number; body of men
†**quisquam**, *indef. pron. used adjectivally*
ingenuus, -a, -um natural, freeborn
iuxtā (adv.) near, nearby; in like manner, equally
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)
incruentus, -a, -um bloodless
victōria, victōriae *f.* victory
adipīscor, adipīscī, adeptus sum reach, obtain, get
strēnuus, -a, -um active, vigorous, energetic
vulnerō (1-tr.) wound
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsus go to see, visit; view;
vīsundī = *archaic form of* **vīsendī**
spoliō (1-tr.) strip; plunder, pillage
prōcēdō (prō- + cēdō) go forward, advance
volvō, volvere, volvī, volūtus turn, turn over
hostīlis, hostīle of *or* belonging to an enemy, hostile
hospes, hospitis *m.* guest, visitor, stranger; host
cognātus, cognātī *m.* kinsman, relative
item (adv.) similarly, in turn, likewise
variē (adv.) variously, differently, in different ways
laetitia, laetitiae *f.* happiness
maeror, maerōris *m.* grief, sorrow, mourning
lūctus, lūctūs *m.* mourning
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion, arouse

9. Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthae* 12

The historian describes how Jugurtha's soldiers murdered King Hiempsal in his house.

quī† postquam in aedīs inrūpēre, dīvorsī rēgem quaerere, dormientīs aliōs, aliōs occursantīs interficere, scrūtārī loca abdita, clausa effringere, strepitū et tumultū omnia miscēre, quom interim Hiempsal reperītur occultāns sē tuguriō mulieris ancillae, quō initiō pavidus et ignārus locī perfūgerat. Numidae caput eius, utī iussī erant, ad Iugurtham referunt.

†**quī**, *connective relative referring to Jugurtha's soldiers*

aedēs, **aedis**, **-ium** *f.* sanctuary, shrine; *pl.*, house, abode
irrumpō, **irrumpere**, **irrūpī**, **irruptus** break (in), burst (into)
dīversus, **-a**, **-um** different, separate
dormiō, **dormīre**, **dormiī/dormīvī**, **dormītum** sleep, be asleep
occursō (1-tr.) run to meet, rush against, oppose
scrūtor (1-tr.) ransack, search, investigate
abdō (**ab-** + **dō**) hide, conceal, keep secret
claudō, **claudere**, **clausī**, **clausus** close, shut, close up
effringō, **effringere**, **effrēgī**, **effrāctus** break off, break open
strepitus, **strepitūs** *m.* noise
tumultus, **tumultūs** *m.* commotion, tumult, panic
misceō, **miscēre**, **miscuī**, **mixtus** mix; throw into confusion
interim (adv.) meanwhile
Hiempsal, **Hiempsalis** *m.* Hiempsal (an African king and cousin of Jugurtha)
reperiō, **reperīre**, **repperī**, **repertus** find, discover; **reperītur**, **referunt**, *historical use of present tense; translate as perfect*
occultō (1-tr.) hide, conceal
tugurium, **tuguriī** *n.* hut, cottage, small dwelling
mulier, **mulieris** *f.* woman
ancilla, **ancillae** *f.* maidservant
initium, **initiī** *n.* beginning
pavidus, **-a**, **-um** fearful
ignārus, **-a**, **-um** not knowing, unacquainted (with) (+ gen.)
perfugiō (**per-** + **fugiō**) flee (for refuge)
Numidae, **Numidārum** *m. pl.* (the) Numidians
utī = **ut**
Iugurtha, **Iugurthae** *m.* Jugurtha (a Numidian king)

10. Vergil, *Aeneid* XI.816–31

The poet describes the death of Camilla, leader of a band of Volscian warrior-maidens fighting on the side of Turnus. The Trojan Arruns has wounded her with his spear.

illa manū moriēns tēlum trahit, ossa sed inter
ferreus ad† costās altō stat vulnere mucrō.
lābitur exsanguis, lābuntur frīgida lētō
lūmina, purpureus quondam color ōra relīquit.
tum sīc exspīrāns Accam ex aequālibus ūnam
adloquitur, fīda ante aliās quae sōla Camillae,
quīcum partīrī cūrās, atque haec ita fātur:
"hāctenus, Acca soror, potuī: nunc vulnus acerbum
cōnficit, et tenebrīs nigrēscunt omnia circum.
effuge et haec Turnō mandāta novissima† perfer:
succēdat pugnae Troiānōsque arceat urbe.
iamque valē." simul hīs dictīs linquēbat habēnās
ad terram nōn sponte fluēns. tum frīgida tōtō
paulātim exsolvit sē corpore, lentaque colla
et captum lētō posuit caput, arma relinquēns,
vītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractus draw, drag; draw out, pull out
os, ossis *n.* bone; **ossa . . . inter** = **inter ossa**
ferreus, -a, -um (made of) iron
†**ad**, *here,* at, near
costa, costae *f.* rib
mucrō, mucrōnis *m.* sharp point
lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum slip; slide, glide, fall
exsanguis, exsangue bloodless; lifeless
frīgidus, -a, -um cold
lētum, lētī *n.* death
purpureus, -a, -um dark red, rosy, ruddy
quondam (adv.) once, formerly
color, colōris *m.* color
exspīrō (1-intr.) breathe out, exhale, expire
Acca, Accae *f.* Acca (sister of Camilla)
aequālis, aequāle equal, like; *subst.,* contemporary, fellow
alloquor (**ad-** + **loquor**) address
fīdus, -a, -um trustworthy, faithful
Camilla, Camillae *f.* Camilla
quīcum = **quācum**
partior, partīrī, partītus sum divide, distribute, share; **partīrī**, *Historical Infinitive*
hāctenus (adv.) as far as this, thus far
tenebrae, tenebrārum *f. pl.* darkness, shadows
nigrēscō, nigrēscere, ——, —— become black, grow dark
circum (adv.) all round, round about
effugiō (**ex-** + **fugiō**) flee away
Turnus, Turnī *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)
mandātum, mandātī *n.* charge, command, order
†**novissima**, *here,* last
succēdō (**sub-** + **cēdō**) draw near
pugna, pugnae *f.* battle, fight
Troiānī, Troiānōrum *m. pl.* Trojans
arceō, arcēre, arcuī, —— keep away, hold out
simul (adv.) at the same time
linquō, linquere, līquī, —— forsake, give up, relinquish
habēna, habēnae *f.* rein
***spōns, *spontis** *f.* (one's own) will
fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxus flow, stream; fall
paulātim (adv.) little by little, gradually
exsolvō (**ex-** + **solvō**) set loose, release
lentus, -a, -um pliant, supple, yielding
collum, collī *n. sing. or pl.,* neck
gemitus, gemitūs *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
indignātus, -a, -um angered; reluctant

11. Vergil, *Aeneid* XII.938–52

The end of the *Aeneid*: after Turnus begs for his life, Aeneas hesitates.

. . . stetit ācer in armīs
Aenēās volvēns oculōs dextramque repressit;
et iam iamque† magis cūnctantem flectere sermō
coeperat, īnfēlīx umerō cum appāruit altō
balteus et nōtīs fulsērunt cingula bullīs
Pallantis puerī, victum quem vulnere Turnus
strāverat atque umerīs inimīcum īnsigne gerēbat.
ille, oculīs postquam saevī monimenta dolōris
exuviāsque hausit, furiīs accēnsus et īrā
terribilis: "tūne hinc spoliīs indūte meōrum
ēripiāre mihī?† Pallās tē hōc vulnere, Pallās
immolat et poenam scelerātō ex sanguine sūmit."
hoc dīcēns ferrum adversō sub pectore condit
fervidus; ast illī solvuntur frīgore membra
vītaque cum gemitū fugit indignāta sub umbrās.

volvō, **volvere**, **volvī**, **volūtus** turn, turn over, roll
dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum** right; *fem. subst.*, right hand
reprimō (**re-** + **premō**) push back, repress; check, hold back
†**iam iamque**, now almost
cūnctor (1-intr.) hesitate, delay; **cūnctantem**, *supply* **Aenēān**
flectō, **flectere**, **flexī**, **flexus** bend; soften, influence
sermō, **sermōnis** *m.* speech
umerus, **umerī** *m.* shoulder
appāreō, **appārēre**, **appāruī**, **appāritūrus** be visible, be clear; appear, become evident
balteus, **balteī** *m.* shoulder band, sword belt
fulgeō, **fulgēre**, **fulsī**, —— shine, gleam
cingulum, **cingulī** *n.* band
bulla, **bullae** *f.* boss *or* raised ornament, knob, stud
Pallās, **Pallantis** *m.* Pallas (son of Evander and comrade of Aeneas)
Turnus, **Turnī** *m.* Turnus (leader of the Rutulians)
sternō, **sternere**, **strāvī**, **strātus** strew; lay low, slay, kill
īnsigne, **īnsignis**, **-ium** *n.* emblem, decoration
monimentum, **monimentī** *n.* token, reminder
dolor, **dolōris** *m.* grief, sorrow, pain
exuviae, **exuviārum** *f. pl.* (stripped) armor, spoils
hauriō, **haurīre**, **hausī**, **haustus** drink (in), absorb
furiae, **furiārum** *f. pl.* madness, mad desire, frenzy
accendō, **accendere**, **accendī**, **accēnsus** inflame, burn
terribilis, **terribile** terrifying, frightening
spolium, **spoliī** *n.* booty, spoil
induō, **induere**, **induī**, **indūtus** put on, clothe, dress
†The final **-i** of **mihi** here scans *long*.
immolō (1-tr.) offer (someone) in sacrifice, kill (someone) in the manner of a sacrifice
scelerātus, **-a**, **-um** wicked, criminal
sanguis, **sanguinis** *m.* blood
sūmō, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus** take up, seize; exact
adversus, **-a** **-um** turned toward, opposite; opposing
condō, **condere**, **condidī**, **conditus** found, build; bury
fervidus, **-a**, **-um** seething, burning; passionate, furious
ast (conj.) but
frīgus, **frīgoris** *n.* cold, chill
membrum, **membrī** *n.* limb
gemitus, **gemitūs** *m.* groan(ing), moan(ing)
indignātus, **-a**, **-um** angered; reluctant

12. Horace, *Carmina* I.37 (Alcaic strophe)

On the death of Cleopatra

Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede līberō
pulsanda tellūs, nunc Saliāribus
ornāre pulvīnar deōrum
tempus erat dapibus, sodālēs.

antehāc[7] nefās dēprōmere Caecubum
cellīs avītīs, dum Capitōliō
rēgīna dēmentīs ruīnās
fūnus et† imperiō parābat

contāminātō cum grege turpium
morbō virōrum, quidlibet inpotēns
spērāre fortūnāque dulcī
ēbria. sed minuit furōrem

bibō, **bibere**, **bibī**, —— drink
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
pulsō (1-tr.) strike, beat
tellūs, **tellūris** *f.* earth, land
Saliāris, **Saliāre** Salian, of the **Saliī** (a college of priests of Mars noted for their sumptuous processions through the city every March)
ornō (1-tr.) dress, adorn, decorate
pulvīnar, **pulvīnāris** *n.* couch (for a statue of a god)
daps, **dapis** *f.* feast, banquet
sodālis, **sodālis**, **-ium** *m.* comrade, companion
antehāc (adv.) before this time, previously
dēprōmō, **dēprōmere**, **dēprōmpsī**, **dēprōmptus** bring out, draw forth
Caecubum, **Caecubī** *n.* Caecuban wine (from the plain of Caecubum in Latium)
cella, **cellae** *f.* storeroom
avītus, **-a**, **-um** of a grandfather, ancestral
Capitōlium, **Capitōliī** *n.* (the) Capitoline hill
dēmēns, **dēmentis** insane, (raving) mad
ruīna, **ruīnae** *f.* downfall, ruin, destruction
fūnus, **fūneris** *n. sing. or pl.*, funeral (procession); ruin, destruction; death
†**et** in poetry is frequently placed in the position of **-que.**
contāminō (1-tr.) defile, pollute
grex, **gregis** *m.* flock, herd; swarm, crowd
morbus, **morbī** *m.* sickness, disease
quīlibet, **quaelibet**, **quidlibet** (indef. pron.) anyone *or* anything it pleases; anyone, anything
impotēns, **impotentis** powerless, helpless; unrestrained, unbridled
ēbrius, **-a**, **-um** drunk, intoxicated
minuō, **minuere**, **minuī**, **minūtus** reduce, diminish
furor, **furōris** *m.* madness

7. The vowels **-e-** and **-ā-** of **antehāc** here elide into a single sound **-ā-**. This internal elision is called **synizesis** (< Greek *synizesis,* collapse).

vix ūna sospes nāvis ab ignibus
mentemque lymphātam Mareōticō
redēgit in vērōs timōrēs
Caesar ab Italiā volantem
rēmīs adurgēns, accipiter velut
mollīs columbās aut leporem citus
vēnātor in campīs nīvālis
Haemoniae, daret ut catēnīs
fātāle mōnstrum: quae generōsius
perīre quaerēns nec muliebriter
expāvit ēnsem nec latentīs
classe citā reparāvit ōrās,

sospes, sospitis safe, unharmed, spared
nāvis, nāvis, -ium *f.* ship
lymphātus, -a, -um frenzied, deranged
Mareōticum, Mareōticī *n.* Mareotic wine (from Mareotis in Egypt)
redigō (red- + agō), redigere, redēgī, redāctus bring back (down), force, subdue
volō (1-intr.) fly
rēmus, rēmī *m.* oar
adurgeō, adurgēre, ——, —— press on, pursue closely
accipiter, accipitris *m.* bird of prey, hawk
velut (conj.) even as, just as
mollis, molle gentle, mild, soft
columba, columbae *f.* dove
lepus, leporis *m.* hare
citus, -a, -um swift, fast
vēnātor, vēnātōris *m.* hunter
nīvālis, nīvāle snowy
Haemonia, Haemoniae *f.* Haemonia (old name of Thessaly)
catēna, catēnae *f.* chain
fātālis, fātāle destined, fated; deadly, dangerous
mōnstrum, mōnstrī *n.* omen, portent; monster
generōsē (adv.) nobly
muliebriter (adv.) like a woman
expavēscō, expavēscere, expāvī, —— become frightened of, take fright at
ēnsis, ēnsis *m.* sword
lateō, latēre, latuī, —— hide, lie hidden, be concealed
classis, classis, -ium *f.* fleet
reparō (1-tr.) recover; take in exchange
ōra, ōrae *f.* shore, coast

ausa et iacentem vīsere rēgiam
voltū serēnō, fortis et asperās
tractāre serpentēs ut ātrum
corpore conbiberet venēnum,

dēlīberātā morte ferōcior:
saevīs Liburnīs scīlicet invidēns
prīvāta dēdūcī superbō
nōn humilis mulier triumphō.

iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —— lie, rest; lie in ruins
vīsō, **vīsere**, **vīsī**, **vīsus** go to see, visit; view
rēgia, **rēgiae** *f.* royal residence, palace
serēnus, **-a**, **-um** calm, serene
asper, **aspera**, **asperum** harsh, fierce, pitiless
tractō (1-tr.) keep on dragging; touch, handle
serpēns, **serpentis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* serpent
āter, **ātra**, **ātrum** black, dark
combibō, **combibere**, **combibī**, —— drink (deeply)
venēnum, **venēnī** *n.* poison
dēlīberō (1-tr.) weigh, consider; resolve, determine
ferōx, **ferōcis** fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
Liburna, **Liburnae** *f.* (a) Liburnian galley
scīlicet (particle) to be sure, no doubt, of course
invideō (**in-** + **videō**) envy, be jealous; begrudge, refuse
prīvātus, **-a**, **-um** private; *subst.*, ordinary citizen
dēdūcō (**dē-** + **dūcō**) lead down; lead (in a public procession)
superbus, **-a**, **-um** proud; haughty
mulier, **mulieris** *f.* woman
triumphus, **triumphī** *m.* (a) triumph (the procession through Rome of a victorious general)

13. Horace, *Carmina* III.30 (Asclepiadean)

The poet reflects on his achievements.

Exēgī monumentum aere perennius
rēgālīque sitū pȳramidum altius,
quod nōn imber edāx, nōn Aquilō impotēns
possit dīruere aut innumerābilis
annōrum seriēs et fuga temporum.
nōn omnis moriar multaque pars meī
vītābit Libitīnam: ūsque ego posterā
crēscam laude recēns dum Capitōlium
scandet cum tacitā virgine pontifex.

exigō (**ex-** + **agō**), **exigere**, **exēgī**, **exāctus** drive out; finish, complete
monumentum, **monumentī** *n.* monument
aes, **aeris** *n.* copper, bronze; money
perennis, **perenne** everlasting, perpetual, perennial
rēgālīs, **rēgāle** royal, kingly
situs, **sitūs** *m.* position, structure; neglect, decay
pȳramis, **pȳramidis** *f.* pyramid
imber, **imbris** *m.* rain; water
edāx, **edācis** corrosive
Aquilō, **Aquilōnis** *m.* Aquilo (the north wind)
impotēns, **impotentis** powerless, helpless; unrestrained, unbridled
dīruō, **dīruere**, **dīruī**, **dīrutus** demolish, destroy
innumerābilis, **innumerābile** innumerable
seriēs, **seriēī** *f.* series, chain
vītō (1-tr.) avoid
Libitīna, **Libitīnae** *f.* Libitina (goddess of corpses, at whose temple the registers of deaths were kept)
ūsque (adv.) continuously
posterus, **-a**, **-um** later, following, future
crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** grow, increase
laus, **laudis** *f.* praise
recēns, **recentis** recent, fresh, new
Capitōlium, **Capitōliī** *n.* (the) Capitoline hill
scandō, **scandere**, ——, —— climb, mount, ascend
tacitus, **-a**, **-um** silent
virgō, **virginis** *f.* maiden, virgin
pontifex, **pontificis** *m.* priest; pontifex

dīcar, quā† violēns obstrepit Aufidus
et quā† pauper aquae Daunus agrestium
rēgnāvit populōrum, ex humilī potēns
prīnceps Aeolium carmen ad Ītalōs
dēdūxisse modōs. sūme superbiam
quaesītam meritīs et mihi Delphicā
laurō cinge volēns, Melpomenē, comam.

†**quā**, *here* (adv.) where
violēns, **violentis** violent, forceful
obstrepō, **obstrepere**, **obstrepuī**, **obstrepitus** roar
Aufidus, **Aufidī** *m.* (the) Aufidus (river) (in Apulia)
pauper, **pauperis** poor
aqua, **aquae** *f.* water
Daunus, **Daunī** *m.* Daunus (legendary king of Apulia [Horace's home district])
agrestis, **agreste** rustic
rēgnō (1-tr.) rule, rule over (+ gen.)
potēns, **potentis** powerful
prīnceps, **prīncipis** first
Aeolius, **-a**, **-um** Aeolic, Aeolian, of Aeolia (a region in northwest Asia Minor, supposed birthplace of Greek lyric poetry)
Ītalus, **-a**, **-um** Italian
dēdūcō (**dē-** + **dūcō**) lead down; introduce; transfer
sūmō, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptus** take (up), adopt as suitable
superbia, **superbiae** *f.* pride; haughtiness, arrogance
meritum, **meritī** *n.* merit; service
Delphicus, **-a**, **-um** Delphic, of Delphi
laurus, **laurī** *f.* laurel
Melpomenē, **Melpomenēs** *f.* Melpomene (a Muse)
coma, **comae** *f.* hair

14. Propertius II.29A

The poet receives an unusual escort back to his beloved.

Hesternā, mea lūx, cum pōtus nocte vagārer,
  nec mē servōrum dūceret ūlla manus,
obvia, nescio quot† puerī, mihi turba, minūtī,
  vēnerat† (hōs vetuit mē numerāre timor);
quōrum aliī faculās, aliī retinēre sagittās,
  pars etiam vīsast vincla parāre mihi.
sed nūdī fuerant.† quōrum lascīvior ūnus
  "arripite hunc," inquit, "nam bene nōstis eum.
hic† erat, hunc mulier nōbīs īrāta locāvit."
  dīxit, et in collō iam mihi nōdus erat.
hīc alter iubet in medium prōpellere, at alter
  "intereat quī nōs nōn putat esse deōs!

hesternus, -a, -um of *or* belonging to yesterday; **hesterna nox**, last night
pōtō, pōtāre, pōtāvī, pōtātus/pōtus drink intoxicating drinks; *perf. pass. part. with active meaning,* having drunk, being drunk
vagor (1-intr.) wander
obvius, -a, -um in the way, face to face; moving against, to meet (+ dat.)
†**nescio quot** (indeclinable indef. adj.) some (number of)
turba, turbae *f.* crowd
minūtus, -a, -um small, tiny, minute
†**vēnerat, fuerant**, *pluperfects used to express a sudden action; translate as perfects*
numerō (1-tr.) number, count
facula, faculae *f.* (little) torch
retineō (re- + teneō), retinēre, retinuī, retentus keep hold of, retain, grasp
sagitta, sagittae *f.* arrow
vinc(u)lum, vinc(u)lī *n.* bond, chain
nūdus, -a, -um naked, nude
lascīvus, -a, -um playful, naughty, free from restraint
arripiō (ad- + rapiō) grasp, take hold of, seize; arrest
†**hic**, *here, scans as if it were spelled* **hicc**
mulier, mulieris *f.* woman
īrātus, -a, -um angry, irate
locō (1-tr.) place; assign
collum, collī *n.* neck
nōdus, nōdī *m.* knot; (knotted) rope
prōpellō (prō- + pellō), prōpellere, prōpulī, prōpulsus push forward, propel; compel to go
at (conj.) but
intereō (inter- + eō), interīre, interiī, interitūrus perish, die

haec tē nōn meritum tōtās exspectat in† hōrās:
  at tū nescio quam† quaeris, inepte, forīs.
quae cum Sīdoniae nocturna ligāmina mitrae
  solverit atque oculōs mōverit illa gravīs,
afflābunt tibi nōn Arabum dē grāmine odōrēs,
  sed quōs ipse suīs fēcit Amor manibus.
parcite iam, frātrēs, iam certōs spondet amōrēs;
  et iam ad mandātam vēnimus ecce domum."
atque ita mī iniectō dīxērunt rursus amictū:
  "ī nunc et noctēs disce manēre domī."

mereor, merērī, meritus sum deserve, earn
†**in**, *here, expressing duration,* for
hōra, hōrae *f.* hour
at (conj.) but
†**nescioquī, nescioquae, nescioquod** (indef. adj.) *sometimes written as two words,* some . . . or other
ineptus, -a, -um having no sense of what is fitting, foolish
forīs (adv.) out of doors, outside; abroad
Sīdonius, -a, -um of Sidon (a Phoenician city famed for its export of purple dye)
nocturnus, -a, -um at night, nocturnal
ligāmen, ligāminis *n.* fastening, string
mitra, mitrae *f.* (eastern) headdress
afflō (1-intr.) blow, breathe (upon) (+ dat.)
Arabēs, Arabum *m. pl.* Arabians, Arabs
grāmen, grāminis *n.* grass; herb
odor, odōris *m.* odor, scent
parcō, parcere, pepercī, parsūrus be merciful, be sparing (+ dat.)
spondeō, spondēre, spopondī, spōnsus pledge
mandō (1-tr.) entrust, commit; assign, order
mī = **mihi**
iniciō (**in-** + **iaciō**) throw upon
rursus (adv.) again
amictus, amictūs *m.* mantle, cloak
discō, discere, didicī, —— learn (how) (+ infin.)

15. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.253–73

When mortal men reached the Iron Age of greed and crime, Jupiter decided to destroy the human race and begin again.

iamque erat in tōtās sparsūrus fulmina terrās;
sed timuit nē forte sacer tot ab ignibus aethēr
conciperet flammās longusque ardēsceret axis:
esse quoque in fātīs reminīscitur adfore tempus
quō mare, quō tellūs correptaque rēgia caelī
ardeat et mundī mōlēs obsessa labōret.
tēla repōnuntur manibus fabricāta Cyclōpum;
poena placet dīversa, genus mortāle sub undīs
perdere et ex omnī nimbōs dēmittere caelō.
prōtinus Aeoliīs Aquilōnem claudit in antrīs

spargō, **spargere**, **sparsī**, **sparsus** scatter, sprinkle; shower; cast
fulmen, **fulminis** *n.* lightning bolt; thunderbolt
sacer, **sacra**, **sacrum** sacred
aethēr, **aetheris** *m. aether* or ether (the upper region of the sky); heaven
concipiō (**con-** + **capiō**) take on, absorb, catch
flamma, **flammae** *f.* flame
ardēscō, **ardēscere**, ——, —— become inflamed, begin to burn
axis, **axis**, **-ium** *m.* (celestial) axis, pole
reminīscor, **reminīscī**, —— recall, recollect
tellūs, **tellūris** *f.* earth, land
corripiō (**con-** + **rapiō**) snatch up, seize; ignite
rēgia, **rēgiae** *f.* royal house, palace
ardeō, **ardēre**, **arsī**, **arsūrus** burn, be on fire
mundus, **mundī** *m.* universe, world
mōlēs, **mōlis**, **-ium** *f.* (huge) mass
obsideō, **obsidēre**, **obsēdī**, **obsessus** besiege, beset, assail
repōnō (**re-** + **pōnō**) put back, put down, put away
fabricō (1-tr.) fashion, forge
Cyclōpēs, **Cyclōpum** *m. pl.* (the) Cyclopes (the fabulous giants of Sicily)
dīversus, **-a**, **-um** different
unda, **undae** *f.* wave
nimbus, **nimbī** *m.* rain cloud
dēmittō (**dē-** + **mittō**) send down
prōtinus (adv.) immediately, straightway
Aeolius, **-a**, **-um** of Aeolus (ruler of the winds); Aeolian
Aquilō, **Aquilōnis** *m.* Aquilo (the north wind)
claudō, **claudere**, **clausī**, **clausus** close, shut; confine, enclose
antrum, **antrī** *n.* cave, cavern

et quaecumque fugant inductās flāmina nūbēs
ēmittitque Notum. madidīs Notus ēvolat ālīs,
terribilem piceā tēctus cālīgine vultum;
barba gravis nimbīs, cānīs fluit unda capillīs;
fronte sedent nebulae, rōrant pennaeque sinūsque.
utque manū lātē pendentia nūbila pressit,
fit fragor: hinc dēnsī funduntur ab aethere nimbī.
nuntia Iūnōnis, variōs indūta colōrēs,
concipit Īris aquās alimentaque nūbibus adfert.
sternuntur segetēs et dēplōrāta colōnī
vōta iacent, longīque perit labor inritus annī.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque (indef. rel. adj.) whatever
fugō (1-tr.) put to flight, rout
indūcō (in- + dūcō) bring in; draw over, spread over
flāmen, flāminis *n.* blast, gust (of wind)
nūbēs, nūbis, -ium *f.* cloud
ēmittō (ē- + mittō) send out, release
Notus, Notī *m.* Notus (the south wind)
madidus, -a, -um wet, drenched, dripping
ēvolō (1-intr.) fly out
āla, ālae *f.* wing
terribilis, terribile terrifying, frightening
piceus, -a, -um pitch black
tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus cover
cālīgō, cālīginis *f.* darkness; mist, fog
barba, barbae *f.* beard
nimbus, nimbī *m.* rain cloud
cānus, -a, -um white; gray
fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxus flow, run
unda, undae *f.* wave
capillus, capillī *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
frōns, frontis, -ium *f.* forehead, brow
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessūrus sit
nebula, nebulae *f.* mist, fog; cloud
rōrō (1-intr.) shed moisture, drip
penna, pennae *f.* feather; wing
sinus, sinūs *m.* curve; fold
lātē (adv.) widely, far and wide
pendeō, pendēre, pependī, —— hang, be suspended
nūbila, nūbilōrum *n. pl.* (rain) clouds
fragor, fragōris *m.* crash, roar, din
dēnsus, -a, -um thick, dense
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus pour out, pour forth
aethēr, aetheris *m. aether* or ether (the upper region of the sky); heaven
nuntia, nuntiae *f.* (female) messenger
varius, -a, -um various, different
induō, induere, induī, indūtus put on, clothe, dress
color, colōris *m.* color
concipiō (con- + capiō) catch, take up
Īris, Īridis *f.* Iris (female messenger goddess [of the rainbow])
aqua, aquae *f.* water
alimentum, alimentī *n.* nourishment
afferō (ad- + ferō), afferre, attulī, allātus bring, add
sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus strew, spread out, scatter
seges, segetis *f.* field; crop
dēplōrō (1-tr.) weep, lament, cry over
colōnus, colōnī *m.* settler; farmer
vōtum, vōtī *n.* vow, prayer; desire, hope; pledge
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— lie, rest; lie in ruins
irritus, -a, -um useless, vain

16. Livy, *Ab Urbe Conditā* I.13.1–5

In need of wives for his male citizens, Romulus had arranged for the capture and forced marriage of many women from the nearby Sabines. When the Sabines later attacked Rome, these women became the peacemakers.

tum Sabīnae mulierēs, quārum ex iniūriā bellum ortum erat, crīnibus passīs† scissāque veste, victō malīs muliebrī pavōre, ausae sē inter tēla volantia īnferre, ex trānsversō impetū factō dirimere īnfestās aciēs, dirimere īrās, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ōrantēs nē sanguine sē nefandō socerī generīque respergerent, nē parricīdiō maculārent partūs suōs, nepōtum illī, hī līberum† prōgeniem. "Sī adfīnitātis inter vōs, sī cōnūbiī piget, in nōs vertite īrās; nōs causa bellī, nōs volnerum ac caedium virīs ac parentibus sumus; melius perībimus quam sine alterīs vestrum viduae aut orbae vīvēmus." movet rēs cum multitūdinem tum ducēs; silentium et repentīna fit quiēs; inde ad foedus faciendum ducēs prōdeunt. nec pācem modo sed cīvitātem ūnam ex duābus faciunt. rēgnum cōnsociant: imperium omne cōnferunt Rōmam. ita geminātā urbe, ut Sabīnīs tamen aliquid darētur Quirītēs ā Curibus appellātī.

Sabīnus, -a, -um Sabine; *subst. pl.*, (the) Sabines
mulier, mulieris *f.* woman
iniūria, iniūriae *f.* injury, injustice
crīnis, crīnis, -ium *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
†**passīs**, *here,* **pandō, pandere, pandī, passus** spread, extend; dishevel
scindō, scindere, scīdī, scissus rend, tear
vestis, vestis, -ium *f.* clothing, garment
muliebris, muliebre of a woman, womanly
pavor, pavōris *m.* trembling; fear, dread
volō (1-intr.) fly
trānsversus, -a, -um crosswise, transverse; **ex trānsversō**, from the flank
impetus, impetūs *m.* attack, assault, onrush
dirimō, dirimere, dirēmī, dirēmptus break apart, separate, divide
īnfestus, -a, -um hostile; dangerous
sanguis, sanguinis *m.* blood
nefandus, -a, -um unspeakable; abominable
socer, socerī *m.* father-in-law
gener, generī *m.* son-in-law
respergō, respergere, respersī, respersus besprinkle; defile
parricīdium, parricīdiī *n.* murder (of parents or kinsmen), parricide
maculō (1-tr.) stain, defile, pollute
partus, partūs *m.* birth; offspring
nepōs, nepōtis *m.* grandson
†**līberī**, *here,* children; **līberum = līberōrum**
prōgeniēs, ***prōgeniēī** *f.* offspring, progeny
affīnitās, affīnitātis *f.* relationship by marriage
cōnūbium, cōnūbiī *n.* marriage
vertō, vertere, vertī, versus turn
caedēs, caedis, -ium *f.* slaughter, killing
parēns, parentis, -ium *m.* or *f.* parent
viduus, -a, -um bereft, bereaved; spouseless, widowed
orbus, -a, -um bereft, bereaved; childless, orphaned
multitūdō, multitūdinis *f.* multitude; populace
silentium, silentiī *n.* silence
repentīnus, -a, -um sudden
quiēs, quiētis *f.* quiet
foedus, foederis *n.* pact, treaty
prōdeō (prō- + eō), prōdīre, prōdiī, prōditūrus go or come forward
rēgnum, rēgnī *n.* realm, kingdom; rule, kingship
cōnsociō (1-tr.) unite
geminō (1-tr.) double
Quirītēs, Quirītium *m. pl.* Quirites (the name for Roman citizens in their public capacity)
Curēs, Curium *m. pl.* Cures (a Sabine town)
appellō (1-tr.) name, call

17. Petronius, *Satyricon* 45

A dinner guest tires of hearing the complaints of another guest and decides to interrupt.

"ōrō tē," inquit Echīōn centōnārius, "melius loquere. 'modo sīc, modo sīc,' inquit rūsticus; varium porcum perdiderat. quod hodiē nōn est, crās erit: sīc vīta trūditur. nōn meherculēs patria melior dīcī potest† sī hominēs habēret. sed labōrat hōc tempore, nec haec sōla. nōn dēbēmus dēlicātī esse, ubique† medius caelus† est. tū sī aliubi fueris, dīcēs hīc porcōs coctōs ambulāre. et ecce habitūrī sumus mūnus† excellente in trīduō diē fēstā; familia nōn lanistīcia, sed plūrimī lībertī. et Tītus noster magnum animum habet et est caldicerebrius: aut hoc aut illud, erit quid† utique. nam illī domesticus sum, nōn est mixcix. ferrum optimum datūrus est, sine fugā, carnārium in mediō, ut amphitheāter videat.

Echīōn, Echīonis *m.* Echion
centōnārius, centōnāriī *m.* maker of patchwork, rag seller; man who uses mats to extinguish fires
rūsticus, rūsticī *m.* country man, peasant, rustic
varius, -a, -um varied; multicolored, mottled; spotted
porcus, porcī *m.* pig
hodiē (adv.) today
crās (adv.) tomorrow
trūdō, trūdere, trūsī, trūsus shove, push; drive on
†**potest**, *pres. indic. used for vividness in apodosis of Present Contrary-to-Fact conditional sentence*
dēlicātus, -a, -um self-indulgent; hard to please; fastidious
†**ubique** (adv.) everywhere
†**caelus = caelum**
aliubi (adv.) in another place, in other places, elsewhere
coquō, coquere, coxī, coctus cook, bake, boil, roast
†**mūnus** *here,* public show, spectacle, entertainment
excellēns, excellentis superior, excellent; **excellente** = *neut. sing. acc.*
trīduum, trīduī *n.* period of three days
fēstus, -a, -um festal; **diēs fēsta** festival day, holiday
familia, familiae *f.* household; troop, group
lanistīcius, -a, -um belonging to a **lanista** (a trainer of gladiators); gladiatorial
lībertus, lībertī *m.* freedman
caldicerebrius, -a, -um hot headed, impetuous
†**quid = aliquid**
utique (adv.) in any case, at any rate, at least, certainly
domesticus, -a, -um belonging to the family; familiar
mixcix (unknown) given to half-measures (?)
carnārium, carnāriī *n.* meat rack; slaughterhouse; carnage, butchery
amphitheāter, amphitheātrī *m.* oval theater, amphitheater

18. Tacitus, *Dē Vītā Agricolae* 46

The reverent conclusion of the biography of the historian's father-in-law

sī quis† piōrum mānibus locus, sī, ut sapientibus placet, nōn cum corpore extinguuntur magnae animae, placidē quiēscās, nōsque domum tuam ab īnfirmō dēsīderiō et muliebribus lāmentīs ad contemplātiōnem virtūtum tuārum vocēs, quās neque lūgērī neque plangī fās est. admīrātiōne tē potius et immortālibus laudibus et, sī nātūra suppeditet, similitūdine colāmus: is vērus honōs, ea coniūnctissimī cuiusque pietās. id fīliae quoque uxōrīque praecēperim, sīc patris, sīc marītī memoriam venerārī, ut omnia facta dictaque eius sēcum revolvant, formamque ac figūram animī magis quam corporis complectantur, nōn quia intercēdendum putem† imāginibus quae marmore aut aere finguntur, sed, ut vultūs hominum, ita simulācra vultūs imbēcilla ac mortālia sunt, forma mentis aeterna, quam tenēre et exprimere nōn per aliēnam māteriam et artem, sed tuīs ipse mōribus possīs. quidquid

†**quis**, *indef. pron. used adjectivally*
mānēs, **mānium** *m. pl.* Manes (spirits of the dead); shade (of a particular person)
ex(s)tinguō, **ex(s)tinguere**, **ex(s)tīnxī**, **ex(s)tīnctus** extinguish; annihilate
placidē (adv.) calmly, quietly
quiēscō, **quiēscere**, **quiēvī**, **quiētum** be asleep; rest; **quiēscās**, *addressee is the deceased Agricola*
īnfirmus, **-a**, **-um** weak, feeble; ineffectual
dēsīderium, **dēsīderiī** *n.* desire; regret; longing
muliebris, **muliebre** of a woman, womanly
lāmenta, **lāmentōrum** *n. pl.* wailing, weeping
contemplātiō, **contemplātiōnis** *f.* contemplation, consideration
lūgeō, **lūgēre**, **lūxī**, **lūctus** mourn (for); grieve, lament
plangō, **plangere**, **plānxī**, **plānctus** beat (the breast), mourn (for), bewail
admīrātiō, **admīrātiōnis** *f.* wonder; admiration, veneration
potius (comparative adv.) rather
laus, **laudis** *f.* praise
suppeditō (1-tr.) support; supply; be available, be adequate
similitūdō, **similitūdinis** *f.* similarity, resemblance, likeness
colō, **colere**, **coluī**, **cultus** inhabit; cultivate; adorn; cherish
coniūnctus, **-a**, **-um** linked together; closely associated, related
pietās, **pietātis** *f.* dutifulness; loyalty
uxor, **uxōris** *f.* wife
praecipiō (**prae-** + **capiō**) advise, instruct
marītus, **marītī** *m.* husband
veneror (1-tr.) revere, venerate
revolvō, **revolvere**, **revolvī**, **revolūtus** go back over; review, recall
forma, **formae** *f.* form, appearance; state, kind
figūra, **figūrae** *f.* form, composition; appearance
complector, **complectī**, **complexus sum** embrace, cling to; comprehend; remember
intercēdō (**inter-** + **cēdō**) intervene, interfere; obstruct, oppose
†**putem**, *subjunctive in a clause of rejected reason; translate as indicative*
imāgō, **imāginis** *f.* image, likeness; bust
marmor, **marmoris** *n.* marble
aes, **aeris** *n.* bronze
fingō, **fingere**, **fīnxī**, **fictus** form, fashion, make
simulācrum, **simulācrī** *n.* likeness, image; statue
imbēcillus, **-a**, **-um** weak, feeble; fragile
aeternus, **-a**, **-um** eternal, everlasting
exprimō (**ex-** + **premō**) express
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um** belonging to another; foreign
māteria, **māteriae** *f.* material, matter
quisquis, **quidquid/quicquid** (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever

ex Agricolā amāvimus, quidquid mīrātī sumus, manet mānsūrumque est in animīs hominum in aeternitāte temporum, fāmā rērum; nam multōs veterum velut inglōriōs et ignōbilīs oblīviō obruit: Agricola posteritātī nārrātus et trāditus superstes erit.

Agricola, **Agricolae** *m.* Agricola
quisquis, **quidquid/quicquid** (indef. rel. pron.) whoever, whatever
mīror (1-tr.) admire, marvel at
aeternitās, **aeternitātis** *f.* eternity
velut (conj.) even as, just as; as if
inglōrius, **-a**, **-um** lacking renown, obscure
ignōbilis, **ignōbile** unknown, undistinguished
oblīviō, **oblīviōnis** *f.* act *or* state of forgetting *or* being forgotten, oblivion
obruō, **obruere**, **obruī**, **obrutus** cover up, bury
posteritās, **posteritātis** *f.* later generations, posterity
nārrō (1-tr.) narrate, tell (of); describe
superstes, **superstitis** surviving, lasting

19. Tacitus, *Dialogus dē Ōrātōribus* 25

In a discussion of contemporary oratory's enormous debt to the great speakers of past ages, one participant grants the vigor and variety of the old orators but insists that for both the Greeks and the Romans one greatest period can be identified.

sed quō modō† inter Atticōs ōrātōrēs prīmae† Dēmosthenī tribuuntur, proximum locum Aeschinēs et Hyperidēs et Lysiās et Lycurgus obtinent, omnium autem concessū haec ōrātōrum aetās maximē probātur, sīc apud nōs Cicerō quidem cēterōs eōrundem temporum disertōs antecessit, Calvus autem et Asinius et Caesar et Caelius et Brūtus iūre et priōribus et sequentibus antepōnuntur. nec rēfert quod inter sē speciē differunt, cum genere cōnsentiant. adstrictior Calvus, numerōsior Asinius, splendidior Caesar, amārior Caelius, gravior Brūtus, vehementior et plēnior et

†**quō modō**, *here, correlative with* **sīc**, in the way in which
Atticus, **-a**, **-um** Attic, Athenian
†**prīmae**, *supply* **partēs**, first place
Dēmosthenēs, **Dēmosthenis** *m.* Demosthenes (Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.)
tribuō, **tribuere**, **tribuī**, **tribūtus** grant, bestow, assign
proximus, **-a**, **-um** nearest, next
Aeschinēs, **Aeschinis** *m.* Aeschines (Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.)
Hyperidēs, **Hyperidis** *m.* Hyperides (Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.)
Lysiās, **Lysiae** *m.* Lysias (Athenian orator of the fifth and fourth centuries B.C.E.)
Lycurgus, **Lycurgī** *m.* Lycurgus (Athenian orator of the fourth century B.C.E.)
obtineō (**ob-** + **teneō**), **obtinēre**, **obtinuī**, **obtentus** have a hold on
concessus, **concessūs** *m.* permission, leave; agreement, concession
probō (1-tr.) approve of, commend, esteem
disertus, **-a**, **-um** skilled in speaking, eloquent
antecēdō (**ante-** + **cēdō**) (tr.) go before, precede; surpass, excel
Calvus, **Calvī** *m.* (M. Licinius) Calvus (Roman orator and poet of the first century B.C.E.)
Asinius, **Asiniī** *m.* (C.) Asinius (Pollio) (Roman writer and orator of the first century B.C.E.)
Caelius, **Caeliī** *m.* (M.) Caelius (Rufus) (Roman orator and advocate of the first century B.C.E.)
Brūtus, **Brūtī** *m.* (M. Junius) Brutus (Roman orator and politician of the first century B.C.E.)
antepōnō (**ante-** + **pōnō**) place before, rank ahead of
cōnsentiō (**con-** + **sentiō**) be in agreement; be similar
astrictus, **-a**, **-um** constricted; restrained, terse
numerōsus, **-a**, **-um** plentiful, abundant; harmonious, rhythmical
splendidus, **-a**, **-um** bright, shining, vivid
amārus, **-a**, **-um** bitter; acrimonious; biting, caustic
vehemēns, **vehementis** energetic, vigorous, forceful
plēnus, **-a**, **-um** full, abundant; sonorous; covering the whole range

valentior Cicerō: omnēs tamen eandem sānitātem ēloquentiae prae sē ferunt, ut, sī omnium pariter librōs in manum sūmpseris, sciās, quamvīs in dīversīs ingeniīs, esse quandam iūdiciī ac voluntātis similitūdinem et cognātiōnem. nam quod invicem sē† obtrectāvērunt et sunt aliqua epistulīs eōrum īnserta, ex quibus mūtua malignitās dētegitur, nōn est ōrātōrum vitium, sed hominum. nam et Calvum et Asinium et ipsum Cicerōnem crēdō solitōs et invidēre et līvēre et cēterīs hūmānae īnfirmitātis vitiīs adficī: sōlum inter hōs arbitror Brūtum nōn malignitāte nec invidiā, sed simpliciter et ingenuē iūdicium animī suī dētēxisse. an† ille Cicerōnī invidēret, quī mihi vidētur nē Caesarī quidem invīdisse?

sānitās, sānitātis *f.* healthiness, soundness
ēloquentia, ēloquentiae *f.* eloquence; rhetoric
prae (prep. + abl.) in front of, before; **prae sē ferre**, to exhibit, to display
pariter (adv.) equally; together, side by side
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus take (up), seize
quamvīs (conj.) although
dīversus, -a, -um different
iūdicium, iūdiciī *n.* judgment, opinion
voluntās, voluntātis *f.* will, intention; choice
similitūdō, similitūdinis *f.* similarity
cognātiō, cognātiōnis *f.* kinship, affinity
——, **vicis** *f.* turn; succession; **invicem**, in turn; against one another
†**sē**, *here, with reciprocal force,* each other
obtrectō (1-tr.) criticize maliciously, disparage, belittle
epistula, epistulae *f.* letter
īnserō, īnserere, īnseruī, īnsertus put in, insert, include
mūtuus, -a, -um shared, reciprocal, mutual
malignitās, malignitātis *f.* ill-will, spite, malice
dētegō, dētegere, dētēxī, dētēctus uncover, disclose, reveal
vitium, vitiī *n.* vice, fault
Calvus, Calvī *m.* (M. Licinius) Calvus
Asinius, Asiniī *m.* (C.) Asinius (Pollio)
invideō (**in-** + **videō**) envy, be jealous (of)
līveō, līvēre, ——, —— be livid, be envious *or* jealous
hūmānus, -a, -um human
īnfirmitās, īnfirmitātis *f.* weakness, sickness
afficiō (**ad-** + **faciō**) affect, influence
Brūtus, Brūtī *m.* (M. Junius) Brutus
simpliciter (adv.) simply
ingenuē (adv.) in a manner befitting a freeborn person; honorably, generously
†**an**, *here, introduces an indignant or surprised question expecting a negative answer,* can it really be that . . .

The *Dialogus dē Ōrātōribus* (Dialogue About Orators), which may date from around 100 C.E., is modeled on Ciceronian philosophical dialogues and is written in a Ciceronian style that contrasts dramatically with the elliptical, unbalanced style of Tacitus's other surviving works. The interlocutors in the *Dialogus* discuss rhetoric generally and treat in particular the interesting question of the relation between flourishing oratory and political turmoil.

Continuous Readings

1. Cicero, *In Catilīnam I* 16–17

nunc vērō quae tua est ista vīta? sīc enim iam tēcum loquar, nōn ut odiō permōtus esse videar, quō dēbeō, sed ut misericordiā, quae tibi nūlla dēbētur. vēnistī paulō ante in senātum. quis tē ex hāc tantā frequentiā, tot ex tuīs amīcīs ac necessāriīs salūtāvit? sī hoc post† hominum memoriam contigit nēminī, vōcis exspectās contumēliam, cum sīs gravissimō iūdiciō taciturnitātis oppressus? quid, quod† adventū tuō ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt, quod omnēs cōnsulārēs quī tibi† persaepe ad caedem cōnstitūtī fuērunt, simul atque adsēdistī, partem istam subselliōrum nūdam atque inānem relīquērunt, quō tandem animō tibi ferendum putās? servī mehercule meī sī mē istō pactō metuerent ut tē metuunt omnēs cīvēs tuī, domum meam relinquendam

permoveō (**per-** + **moveō**) thoroughly move
misericordia, **misericordiae** *f.* pity
frequentia, **frequentiae** *f.* crowd
necessārius, **-a**, **-um** necessary; *subst.*, relative; friend, client, patron
salūtō (1-tr.) greet, hail, salute
†**post**, *here,* since
contingō, **contingere**, **contigī**, **contāctus** happen, befall (+ dat.)
contumēlia, **contumēliae** *f.* abuse, insult
iūdicium, **iūdiciī** *n.* judgment, opinion
taciturnitās, **taciturnitātis** *f.* silence
†**quid**, **quod**, what about the fact that
adventus, **adventūs** *m.* arrival
subsellium, **subselliī** *n.* bench, seat
vacuēfaciō, **vacuēfacere**, **vacuēfēcī**, **vacuēfactus** (make) empty
cōnsulāris, **cōnsulāris**, **-ium** *m.* ex-consul
†**tibi**, *here, Dative of Agent*
persaepe (adv.) very often
caedēs, **caedis**, **-ium** *f.* slaughter
simul atque (conj.) as soon as
assīdō, **assīdere**, **assēdī**, —— sit down
nūdus, **-a**, **-um** naked, nude; bare, deserted
inānis, **ināne** empty
pactum, **pactī** *n.* stipulation; way, manner

putārem; tū tibi urbem nōn arbitrāris? et sī mē meīs cīvibus iniūriā suspectum tam graviter atque offēnsum vidērem, carēre mē aspectū cīvium quam īnfestīs omnium oculīs cōnspicī māllem; tū, cum cōnscientiā scelerum tuōrum agnōscās odium omnium iūstum et iam diū tibi dēbitum, dubitās quōrum mentīs sēnsūsque volnerās, eōrum aspectum praesentiamque vītāre? sī tē parentēs timērent atque ōdissent tuī neque eōs ratiōne ūllā plācāre possēs, ut opīnor, ab eōrum oculīs aliquō† concēderēs. nunc tē patria, quae commūnis est parēns omnium nostrum, ōdit ac metuit et iam diū nihil tē iūdicat nisi dē parricīdiō suō cōgitāre; huius tū neque auctōritātem verēbere nec iūdicium sequēre nec vim pertimēscēs?

iniūria, **iniūriae** *f.* injury, injustice; **iniūriā** (adv.) unjustifiably, unjustly
suspectus, **-a**, **-um** viewed with suspicion, suspect
offēnsus, **-a**, **-um** offensive
aspectus, **aspectūs** *m.* sight
īnfestus, **-a**, **-um** hostile
cōnspiciō, **cōnspicere**, **cōnspexī**, **cōnspectus** catch sight of, perceive, observe
cōnscientia, **cōnscientiae** *f.* awareness
agnōscō (**ad-** + **nōscō**), **agnōscere**, **agnōvī**, **agnitus** recognize
iūstus, **-a**, **-um** just, fair, right
vulnerō (1-tr.) wound
praesentia, **praesentiae** *f.* presence
vītō (1-tr.) avoid
parēns, **parentis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* parent
ratiō, **ratiōnis** *f.* account, reason; way, method
plācō (1-tr.) appease, calm
opīnor (1-tr.) suppose, imagine, think
†**aliquō**, *here* (adv.) to some place
concēdō (**con-** + **cēdō**) concede; go away
commūnis, **commūne** common, shared
iūdicō (1-tr.) judge
parricīdium, **parricīdiī** *n.* murder
iūdicium, **iūdiciī** *n.* judgment, opinion
pertimēscō, **pertimēscere**, **pertimuī**, —— become very afraid, take fright; thoroughly fear

2. Sallust, *Bellum Catilīnae* 5

L. Catilīna, nōbilī genere nātus, fuit magnā vī et animī et corporis, sed ingeniō malō prāvōque. huic ab adulēscentiā bella intestīna, caedēs, rapīnae, discordia cīvīlis grāta fuēre, ibique iuventūtem suam exercuit. corpus patiēns inediae, algōris, vigiliae, suprā quam quoiquam crēdibile est. animus audāx, subdolus, varius, quoius reī lubet† simulātor ac dissimulātor, aliēnī adpetēns, suī profūsus, ardēns in cupiditātibus; satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum. vāstus animus inmoderāta, incrēdibilia, nimis alta semper cupiēbat. hunc post dominātiōnem L. Sullae lubīdō maxuma invāserat reī pūblicae capiundae;† neque id quibus modīs adsequerētur, dum sibi rēgnum parāret, quicquam pēnsī habēbat. agitābātur magis magisque in dies† animus ferōx inopiā reī familiāris et cōnscientiā scelerum, quae utraque† iīs

nōbilis, **nōbile** noble
prāvus, **-a**, **-um** twisted, corrupt, perverse
adulēscentia, **adulēscentiae** *f.* youth, adolescence
intestīnus, **-a**, **-um** internal
caedēs, **caedis**, **-ium** *f.* slaughter
rapīna, **rapīnae** *f.* plundering, pillaging
discordia, **discordiae** *f.* discord, dissension, conflict
cīvīlis, **cīvīle** of *or* connected with citizens, civil
iuventūs, **iuventūtis** *f.* youth, early manhood
exerceō, **exercēre**, **exercuī**, **exercitus** keep busy, occupy; exercise, train
inedia, **inediae** *f.* lack of food
algor, **algōris** *m.* cold
vigilia, **vigiliae** *f.* wakefulness
suprā (adv.) above, beyond; further, more
crēdibilis, **crēdibile** believable, credible
subdolus, **-a**, **-um** somewhat crafty, cunning
varius, **-a**, **-um** varying, changeable
†**quī . . . libet**, **quae . . . libet**, **quod . . . libet** (indef. adj.) any . . . it pleases
simulātor, **simulātōris** *m.* feigner, pretender
dissimulātor, **dissimulātōris** *m.* dissembler, concealer
aliēnus, **-a**, **-um** belonging to another
appetēns, **appetentis** desirous (of), greedy (for) (+ gen.)
profūsus, **-a**, **-um** generous, lavish
ardeō, **ardēre**, **arsī**, **arsūrus** burn, be on fire; rage
cupiditās, **cupiditātis** *f.* desire
ēloquentia, **ēloquentiae** *f.* eloquence
vāstus, **-a**, **-um** desolate; vast, immense; ravaged
immoderātus, **-a**, **-um** without measure, unrestrained, excessive
incrēdibilis, **incrēdibile** unbelievable
nimis (adv.) excessively, too
dominātiō, **dominātiōnis** *f.* absolute rule, tyranny
libīdō, **libīdinis** *f.* desire, pleasure, passion, lust
invādō, **invādere**, **invāsī**, **invāsus** enter (hostilely); take hold of
†**capiundae** = *archaic form of* **capiendae**
assequor (**ad-** + **sequor**) gain, reach, attain
rēgnum, **rēgnī** *n.* kingdom, realm; kingship, rule
pēnsum, **pēnsī** *n.* weight; importance
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion; vex, harass
†**in dies**, day by day
ferōx, **ferōcis** fierce, savage; high-spirited, defiant
inopia, **inopiae** *f.* lack of resources, poverty; lack
familiāris, **familiāre** of *or* belonging to the household; **rēs familiāris**, (one's) private property, estate, patrimony
cōnscientia, **cōnscientiae** *f.* consciousness, awareness
†**uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque** (indef. pron.) each (of two); both

artibus auxerat, quās suprā memorāvī. incitābant praetereā conruptī cīvitātis mōrēs, quōs pessuma ac dīvorsa inter sē mala, luxuria atque avāritia, vexābant. rēs ipsa hortārī vidētur, quoniam dē mōribus cīvitātis tempus admonuit, suprā repetere ac paucīs† īnstitūta maiōrum domī mīlitiaeque, quō modō rem pūblicam habuerint quantamque relīquerint, ut† paulātim inmūtāta ex pulcherrumā <atque optumā> pessuma ac flāgitiōsissuma facta sit, disserere.

augeō, **augēre**, **auxī**, **auctus** grow, increase
suprā (adv.) above; further
memorō (1-tr.) mention, recount, tell
incitō (1-tr.) rouse, excite, urge forward
praetereā (adv.) besides, furthermore, in addition
corrumpō, **corrumpere**, **corrūpī**, **corruptus** corrupt
dīversus, **-a**, **-um** opposite, separate, different
luxuria, **luxuriae** *f.* extravagance, excess, luxury
avāritia, **avāritiae** *f.* greed, avarice
vexō (1-tr.) trouble, disturb, harass
admoneō (**ad-** + **moneō**) bring to mind, remind, suggest
repetō (**re-** + **petō**) seek again, seek back
†**paucīs**, *supply* **verbīs**
īnstitūtum, **īnstitūtī** *n.* custom, institution
mīlitia, **mīlitiae** *f.* military service; **mīlitiae** = *loc.*
†**ut**, *here* (interrog. adv.) how
paulātim (adv.) little by little, gradually
immūtō (**in-** + **mūtō**) (1-tr.) change, alter, transform
flāgitiōsus, **-a**, **-um** shameful, disgraceful, infamous
disserō, **disserere**, **disseruī**, **dissertus** examine, discuss, treat

3. Vergil, *Aeneid* II.547–58

cui Pyrrhus: "referēs ergō haec et nuntius ībis
Pēlīdae genitōrī. illī mea trīstia facta
dēgeneremque Neoptolemum nārrāre mementō.
nunc morere." hoc dīcēns altāria ad ipsa trementem
trāxit et in multō lāpsantem sanguine nātī,
implicuitque comam laevā, dextrāque coruscum
extulit ac laterī capulō tenus abdidit ēnsem.
haec fīnis Priamī fātōrum, hic exitus illum
sorte tulit† Troiam incēnsam et prōlāpsa videntem
Pergama, tot quondam populīs terrīsque superbum
rēgnātōrem Asiae. iacet ingēns lītore truncus,
āvulsumque umerīs caput et sine nōmine corpus.

Pyrrhus, **Pyrrhī** *m.* Pyrrhus (son of Achilles) (= Neoptolemus)
ergō (adv.) therefore
nuntius, **nuntiī** *m.* messenger
Pēlīdēs, **Pēlīdae** *m.* son of Peleus (= Achilles)
genitor, **genitōris** *m.* father
trīstis, **trīste** sad, gloomy, melancholy, grim
dēgener, **dēgeneris** low-born; degenerate
Neoptolemus, **Neoptolemī** *m.* Neoptolemus (son of Achilles) (= Pyrrhus)
nārrō (1-tr.) tell, say; describe
altāria, **altārium** *n. pl.* (high) altar (for sacrifice)
tremō, **tremere**, **tremuī**, —— tremble, quiver, quake
trahō, **trahere**, **trāxī**, **tractus** draw, drag
lāpsō (1-intr.) slip
sanguis, **sanguinis** *m.* blood
implicō, **implicāre**, **implicāvī/implicuī**, **implicātus/implicitus** entwine, enfold; take hold of
coma, **comae** *f.* hair
laevus, **-a**, **-um** left; *fem. subst.*, left hand
dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum** right; *fem. subst.*, right hand
coruscus, **-a**, **-um** quivering; glittering, gleaming, flashing
efferō (**ex-** + **ferō**), **efferre**, **extulī**, **ēlātus** carry out; raise
latus, **lateris** *n.* side, flank
capulus, **capulī** *m.* sword handle, hilt
tenus (prep. + preceding abl.) (right) up to, as far as
abdō (**ab-** + **dō**) hide, put away; plunge, bury
ēnsis, **ēnsis** *m.* sword
Priamus, **Priamī** *m.* Priam (king of Troy)
exitus, **exitūs** *m.* departure; end, conclusion
sors, **sortis**, **-ium** *f.* lot, portion; destiny
†**ferō**, *here*, carry away
incendō, **incendere**, **incendī**, **incēnsus** set on fire, (cause to) burn
prōlābor, **prōlābī**, **prōlāpsus sum** slip forward; give way, collapse
Pergama, **Pergamōrum** *n. pl.* Pergama (citadel of Troy)
quondam (adv.) at one time, once, formerly
superbus, **-a**, **-um** proud; haughty
rēgnātor, **rēgnātōris** *m.* ruler, king, lord
Asia, **Asiae** *f.* Asia (a Roman province [Asia Minor])
iaceō, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, —— lie, rest; lie dead
lītus, **lītoris** *n.* shore, beach
truncus, **truncī** *m.* trunk, torso
āvellō, **āvellere**, **āvellī/āvolsī**, **āvulsus** tear away
umerus, **umerī** *m.* shoulder

4. Ovid, *Metamorphōsēs* I.540–67

quī tamen īnsequitur pennīs adiūtus amōris,
ōcior est requiemque negat tergōque fugācis
inminet et crīnem sparsum cervīcibus adflat.
vīribus absūmptīs expalluit illa citaeque
victa labōre fugae spectāns Pēnēidas undās
"fer, pater," inquit "opem! sī flūmina nūmen habētis,
quā nimium placuī, mūtandō perde figūram!"
vix prece fīnītā torpor gravis occupat artūs,
mollia cinguntur tenuī praecordia librō,†
in frondem crīnēs, in rāmōs bracchia crēscunt,
pēs modo tam vēlōx pigrīs rādīcibus haeret,
ōra cacūmen habet: remanet nitor ūnus in illā.
hanc quoque Phoebus amat positāque in stīpite dextrā
sentit adhūc trepidāre novō sub cortice pectus

īnsequor (**in-** + **sequor**) follow closely, pursue, chase
penna, **pennae** *f.* wing
adiuvō, **adiuvāre**, **adiūvī**, **adiūtus** aid, assist; strengthen
ōcior, **ōcius** swifter
requiēs, **requiētis** *f.* rest, respite; **requiem** = *acc. sing.*
negō (1-tr.) deny, refuse
tergum, **tergī** *n.* back
fugāx, **fugācis** fugitive, fleeing, running away
immineō, **imminēre**, ——, —— hang over, threaten (+ dat.)
crīnis, **crīnis**, **-ium** *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
spargō, **spargere**, **sparsī**, **sparsus** scatter, distribute
cervīx, **cervīcis** *f. sing. or pl.*, neck
afflō (1-tr.) breathe upon
absūmō, **absūmere**, **absūmpsī**, **absūmptus** use up, spend; exhaust
expallēscō, **expallēscere**, **expalluī**, —— turn pale
citus, **-a**, **-um** swift
Pēnēis, **Pēnēidos** of *or* belonging to (the river god) Peneus; **Pēnēidas** = *fem. pl. acc.*
unda, **undae** *f.* wave
ops, **opis** *f.* aid, help
flūmen, **flūminis** *n.* river, stream
nimium (adv.) too much, excessively
figūra, **figūrae** *f.* form, shape, appearance
***prex**, ***precis** *f.* prayer
fīniō, **fīnīre**, **fīniī/fīnīvī**, **fīnītus** end, complete, conclude
torpor, **torpōris** *m.* loss of power, numbness
occupō (1-tr.) seize; occupy
artus, **artūs** *m.* joint (of the body), limb
mollis, **molle** gentle, mild, soft
tenuis, **tenue** thin, slight, slender
praecordia, **praecordiōrum** *n. pl.* (lower) chest, breast
†**liber**, *here,* (inner) bark (of a tree)
frōns, **frondis** *f.* foliage, leafy bough
rāmus, **rāmī** *m.* branch
bracchium, **bracchiī** *n.* (lower) arm
crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētus** grow, increase
pēs, **pedis** *m.* foot
vēlōx, **vēlōcis** rapid, swift, speedy
piger, **pigra**, **pigrum** sluggish, inactive, slow
rādīx, **rādīcis** *f.* root
haereō, **haerēre**, **haesī**, **haesūrus** cling, stick (+ dat.)
cacūmen, **cacūminis** *n.* peak, top (of a tree)
remaneō (**re-** + **maneō**) remain
nitor, **nitōris** *m.* brightness, splendor
Phoebus, **Phoebī** *m.* Phoebus (Apollo)
stīpes, **stīpitis** *m.* trunk (of a tree)
dexter, **dextra**, **dextrum** right; *fem. subst.*, right hand
adhūc (adv.) up to the present time; still
trepidō (1-intr.) tremble
cortex, **corticis** *m.* or *f.* outer covering of a tree, bark

8. A line is missing because of textual corruption.

conplexusque suīs rāmōs ut membra lacertīs
ōscula dat lignō; refugit tamen ōscula lignum.
cui deus "at quoniam coniūnx mea nōn potes esse,
arbor eris certē" dīxit "mea! semper habēbunt
tē coma, tē citharae, tē nostrae, laure, pharetrae;
tū ducibus Latiīs aderis, cum laeta triumphum
vōx canet et vīsent longās Capitōlia pompās;
postibus augustīs eadem fīdissima custōs
ante forēs stābis mediamque† tuēbere quercum,
utque meum intōnsīs caput est iuvenāle capillīs,
tū quoque perpetuōs semper gere frondis honōrēs!"
fīnierat Paeān: factīs modo laurea rāmīs
adnuit utque caput vīsa est agitāsse cacūmen.

complector, **complectī**, **complexus sum** embrace
rāmus, **rāmī** *m.* branch
membrum, **membrī** *n.* limb
lacertus, **lacertī** *m.* (upper) arm
ōsculum, **ōsculī** *n.* kiss
lignum, **lignī** *n.* wood
refugiō (**re-** + **fugiō**) flee, shun
at (conj.) but
coniūnx, **coniugis** *m.* or *f.* spouse; husband; wife
arbor, **arboris** *f.* tree
coma, **comae** *f.* hair
cithara, **citharae** *f.* cithara; lute
laurus, **laurī** *f.* laurel tree; sprig *or* branch of laurel
pharetra, **pharetrae** *f.* quiver
Latius, **-a**, **-um** of Latium, Latin, Roman
triumphus, **triumphī** *m.* (a) triumph (the procession through Rome of a victorious general; a ritual cry that accompanies a triumph)
vīsō, **vīsere**, **vīsī**, **vīsus** go to see; view, behold
Capitōlia, **Capitōliōrum** *n. pl.* (the) Capitoline hill (site of the Temple of Jupiter Optimus Maximus and the end point of a triumph)
pompa, **pompae** *f.* (ceremonial) procession, parade
postis, **postis**, **-ium** *m.* doorpost, jamb
augustus, **-a**, **-um** solemn, venerable; majestic, august
fīdus, **-a**, **-um** trustworthy
custōs, **custōdis** *m.* or *f.* guardian, protector, sentry
foris, **foris**, **-ium** *f.* door; *pl.*, double doors
†**medius**, *here,* in the middle
tueor, **tuērī**, **tuitus/tūtus sum** look at; protect
quercus, **quercūs** *f.* oak tree; oak wreath
intōnsus, **-a**, **-um** uncut, unshorn
iuvenālis, **iuvenāle** of *or* belonging to a young man, youthful, young
capillus, **capillī** *m. sing. or pl.*, hair
perpetuus, **-a**, **-um** continuous, without interruption; perpetual, everlasting
frōns, **frondis** *f.* foliage, leafy bough
fīniō, **fīnīre**, **fīniī/fīnīvī**, **fīnītus** end, complete, conclude
Paeān, **Paeānis** *m.* Paean (a Greek god) (= Apollo)
laurea, **laureae** *f.* laurel tree
adnuō, **adnuere**, **adnuī**, —— nod (in agreement), assent
agitō (1-tr.) stir up, set in motion, shake
cacūmen, **cacūminis** *n.* peak, top (of a tree)

AUTHORS AND PASSAGES

This index lists the authors and passages appearing in *Learn to Read Latin*. The citations are by chapter and page number (e.g., 14.658 next to a reading indicates that the reading is to be found in Chapter 14 on page 658). A page number in boldface indicates that a reading is in a Longer Readings section, and a page number in italics indicates that a reading is in a Continuous Readings section. An **A** next to a page number indicates that a biography of the author appears with a passage, and a **W** indicates that a description of a work appears with a passage. (Biographies and descriptions of works appear only in the Longer and Continuous Readings.)

Accius
Tragoediae
frag. 204 14.474
frag. 214 10.256
frag. 296 8.180
frag. 667 7.152

L. Afranius
Togatae
frag. 153 4.79
frag. 289–99 9.215

Augustus
Res Gestae Divi Augusti
Proem, 1–2 **10.283 (W)**

Aulus Gellius
Noctes Atticae
IX.2.4 2.44
X.3.17 8.186
XII.11.7 11.318
XII.13.16 12.374

Caecilius Statius
Palliatae
frag. 163 8.179

Caesar
De Bello Civili
I.82 15.539
II.27 12.370
De Bello Gallico
I.1 **9.224 (A/W)**
I.1 **13.440**
I.2 14.483
I.11 15.538
I.24–25 **10.271**
I.32–33 **11.325**
I.36 14.483
I.39 **14.498**
I.44 **15.555**
I.52 9.217
II.3 **11.326**
II.11 13.424

III.16 14.484
III.19 13.424
IV.1 **14.499**
IV.15 **12.381**
IV.16 14.484
IV.16 15.538
IV.22 13.425
IV.25 **12.382**
V.8 **12.383**
V.11 461
V.14 **15.536**
V.21 12.369
V.36 15.539
V.44 **14.500**
VI.11 12.370
VI.13 8.181
VI.18 **14.502**
VI.28 **10.272**
VI.37 11.312
VI.37 11.312
VI.39 14.484
VI.40 10.259
VI.40 12.370
VII.17 12.370

[Caesar]
De Bello Alexandrino
20 13.425
40 15.539

Cato
De Agri Cultura
5 9.214
61 5.100
De Rhetorica
frag. 15 9.214
Orationes
frag. 71 9.215

Catullus
I **11.323**
III **15.554**
V.1 7.154
VIII **13.438**
XII **14.496**
XIII **11.324**
XIV.21–22 461
XLV.20 3.61
XLV **12.378**
XLVI **10.270** (A/W)
XLIX 13.424
LXIX **12.378**
LXXII **12.380**
LXXV 14.482
LXXXIV **13.439**
LXXXV 13.424
LXXXVII 13.424
XCII 8.181
CIX 14.483

Cicero
Ad Atticum
I.19.11 13.422
II.15.1 13.422
II.22.6 15.537
VII.25.1 9.217
IX.10.3 14.481
IX.16.2 15.537
X.12.1 11.312
XII.18.1 12.369
XII.39.2 12.369
Ad Brutum
9.1 13.423
Ad Familiares
IV.5.6 15.538
IV.9.2 14.481
V.15 15.552
VII.1.3 14.495 (W)
VII.24.1 6.122
XIII.1.5 11.312
XVI.4.4 15.538
Ad Quintum fratrem
II.10.3 10.259
III.1.24 13.423
Brutus
65 10.257
140 13.421
301 15.536
De Amicitia
14 7.153
40 15.537
52–53 9.216
54 8.180
102 8.181
De Consulatu Suo
frag. 11 7.153
De Divinatione
I.84 14.470
II.11 12.368
II.77 11.311
II.86 10.258

II.142 13.422
De Finibus
II.105 6.121
IV.34 9.216
De Haruspicum Responsis
62 6.121
De Inventione
I.80 12.367
De Legibus
I.18 10.257
II.5 12.368
II.12 14.478
III.2 12.369
III.2 13.420
De Natura Deorum
I.29 **13.436**
I.88 14.479
I.91 13.421
II.140 **10.267** (W)
II.167 4.80
II.167 14.479
II.168 13.422
De Officiis
I.35 10.258
I.43 9.216
I.115–16 9.216
I.151 14.480
II.43 13.422
III.114 10.258
De Oratore
I.127 11.310
I.264 11.310
II.24 **12.376**
II.174 11.310
II.178 **11.322** (W)
III.127 **11.322**
III.211 15.535
De Re Publica
II.4 15.536
frag. 2 10.256
De Senectute
11 7.153
37 **10.268** (W)
60 15.536
70 14.479
74–75 **13.437**
80 14.479
Divinatio in Caecilium
19 **9.222** (W)
In Catilinam I
1–2 **14.493**
3 14.476
6 11.309
6 12.367
9 12.367
11 *11.342* (W)
12–13 *12.397*
13–14 *13.456*
13 10.256
15–16 *14.514*
16–17 *15.578*
18 9.215
20 10.256
22 14.477
27 **11.321**
In Catilinam II
1 **10.266** (W)
15 13.420
17 12.367
27 12.367
In Catilinam IV
17 11.309
In Verrem I
1.31 14.475
In Verrem II
1.16 13.419
2.46 13.419
2.162 **14.490** (W)
2.163 **14.491**
4.5 11.308
4.14 9.215
5.121 14.475
Orator
120 15.536
Paradoxa Stoicorum
Preface 3 14.478
3.25 14.478
4.30 **6.128** (A/W)
5.33 11.310
5.34 **14.494**
5.36 **10.267**
Philippics I
14 14.480
Philippics IV
9 6.121
Philippics V
24–25 10.258
50 11.311

Philippics VI
7 9.216
19 12.369
Philippics VII
4 9.217
Philippics VIII
9 11.312
Philippics XII
5 14.480
Philippics XIII
2 14.480
14 15.537
Post Reditum Ad Populum
2 11.309
16 **13.435 (W)**
17 13.420
Pro Archia
13 **13.432**
14 **13.433**
18–19 **13.434**
19 **12.376**
26 14.477
Pro Balbo
8 14.478
Pro Caelio
58 8.180
77 10.256
Pro Cluentio
84 11.309
Pro Lege Manilia
14–16 **14.491 (W)**
24–25 **14.492**
27–28 14.476
56 14.476
59 14.476
65 15.535
Pro Ligario
37–38 13.420
Pro Marcello
25 11.310
Pro Milone
11 6.121
Pro Murena
30 **11.321 (W)**
36 11.309
76 5.100
83 14.477
Pro Plancio
13 15.535
82 15.535
Pro Quinctio
80 14.475
95 **11.320**
98 **9.222 (W)**
Pro Rege Deiotaro
32 10.257
Pro S. Roscio Amerino
56–57 **15.549 (W)**
70 13.419
84 14.475
Pro Roscio Comoedo
2 10.256
Pro Scauro
4 **12.377 (W)**
Pro Sestio
2 14.477
73 12.368
86 14.478
Timaeus
21 12.369
Tusculanae Disputationes
I.1 11.311
I.9 **15.551**
I.14 12.368
I.18 11.311
I.18 12.368
I.28 4.80
I.34 8.180
I.43 10.257
I.94 11.311
I.101 13.421
II.5 5.101
II.65 10.258
III.56 3.61
IV.44 13.421
V.109 13.421

CIL
I.1499 4.81
III.3576 6.126
V.2893 5.103
V.3415 5.103
VI.7595 5.103
VI.16169 13.431
VI.26003 6.126
IX.5785 6.126
X.7658 5.103

Cornelius Nepos
Vita Alcibiadis
7 11.313

Vita Attici
6 12.371
Vita Hannibalis
7 6.122

Ennius
Annales
I.1 8.179
I.3 6.121
I.37–42 **6.127** (A/W)
I.104 5.100
V.156 10.255
VI.202 10.255
VII.19 6.121
VIII.248–51 10.255
IX.309 9.214
Sed. Inc.
frag. 21 8.179
frag. 451 9.214
frag. 483–84 15.533
frag. 513 8.179
frag. 560 7.152
Tragoediae
frag. 140 15.533
frag. 351 9.214
Epicedion Drusi
359–60 9.219

Florus
Epitoma Bellorum Omnium
I.31 **11.341** (A/W)

Horace
Ars Poetica
31 6.124
70–72 13.427
136–55 **13.445**
323–26 **11.334** (W)
361–65 **12.391**
385 10.262
389–90 14.485
Carmina
I.5 **11.331**
I.11 **12.388**
I.22 **13.443**
I.23 **10.279**
I.37 **15.564**
II.9 **11.332**
III.9 **14.506**
III.30 **15.567**
IV.7 **12.389**
Epistulae
I.4.12–14 11.314
I.8.17 5.101
I.10.24 4.80
I.11.25–30 **8.191** (W)
I.16.51–52 7.155
II.1.156–57 12.372
Epodes
15.1–2 14.485
Sermones
I.3.33–34 8.182
I.6.62–64 10.261
I.9.57–60 **8.190** (A/W)
II.7.28–29 8.182
II.7.117 9.218

Justinian
Digesta
2.12.8 10.264

Juvenal
Saturae
I.30 6.126
III.41 12.374
VIII.83 12.374
VIII.244 6.126
X.283–88 **10.285** (A/W)
X.356 12.374
X.365–66 15.547
XIII.159–60 12.374
XIV.70–74 15.547

Livius Andronicus
Odyssey
frag. 1 4.79

Livy
Ab Urbe Condita
I.13.1–5 **15.573**
I.36.1 15.544
I.56.9 **13.452**
II.40.8 8.183
II.46.3–7 **14.508**
III.11.13 13.428
III.15.6 7.156
III.25.9 10.262
V.23.1 **13.453**
V.49.3 3.62
V.49.6 **11.337**
VIII.7.2–8 **14.510**
IX.42.5 15.544
XXI.15.1 6.125

XXI.39.7 10.262
XXI.58.5 15.545
XXII.39.11 **9.231 (A/W)**
XXII.49.5 **13.454**
XXII.49.10 **11.338**
XXII.50.3 10.262
XXII.50.6 **12.392**
XXII.51.4 11.316
XXIV.25.8 11.316
XXIV.38.5 8.183
XXVII.16.1 6.125
XXVII.51.11 15.545
XXVIII.5.15–16 **10.280**
XXIX.8.7 14.487
XXX.18.3 15.545
XXX.18.7 **10.281**
XXX.30.18 **11.339**
XXXII.10.11 461
XXXV.19.6 7.156
XXXVI.19.6 10.263
XXXVIII.23.1 **13.455**
XXXIX.37.17 15.545
XXXIX.51.9 7.156
XL.35.13 15.546
XLI.4.6 11.316
XLIV.39.2 11.316
XLV.38.2 15.546

Lucan
Bellum Civile
I.128 10.263
II.656–57 14.488
III.39 11.318
IX.236–39 8.185
IX.961–69 **14.511 (A/W)**

Lucilius
Saturae
frag. 9 13.419
frag. 620 10.255
frag. 953 14.474

Lucretius
De Rerum Natura
I.1–9 **10.269**
I.14–16 13.423
I.199–207 **14.497**
II.1–4 14.481
II.55–61 14.482
II.75–79 **9.223 (A/W)**
II.1150–52 14.482
III.830–31 7.153
III.970–71 9.217

Macrobius
Saturnalia
V.1.8 14.489

Martial
I.32 4.81
I.38 13.430
II.80 9.221
IV.10.3–4 8.186
VII.3 9.221
VII.85.4–5 6.126
VIII.27 8.186
VIII.73.5–8 **7.159 (A/W)**
XII.46 8.186

Naevius
Palliatae
frag. 9–10 13.418
frag. 106 14.474
Tragoediae
frag. 37 6.121
alia carmina epica
frag. 64.1–4 **12.375 (A/W)**

Ovid
Amores
I.1–4 11.315
I.9.1–8 **8.192 (W)**
II.5.9–10 8.183
III.9.1–6 **8.193**
III.9.37–42 **10.281**
III.11.35 5.101
III.11.39–40 6.124
Ars Amatoria
I.1–4 14.486
I.7 12.372
I.61–66 **11.334**
I.99 15.543
I.113–24 **10.282 (W)**
I.475–78 11.315
II.201 5.101
II.271–76 13.428
II.493 5.101
II.519–20 13.428
III.263 11.316
Fasti
II.491–92 461
V.583–88 **7.159 (W)**

Heroides
VII.51 7.155
X.59–62 15.543
XIII.17 2.44
XIV.92 7.155
XIV.101–2 6.124
XV.123–26 11.315
XVII.253–54 11.315
Metamorphoses
I.1–9 **9.230**
I.253–73 **15.571**
I.428–29 9.219
I.452–62 *10.287*
I.463–77 *11.346*
I.478–89 *12.401*
I.490–503 *13.459*
I.504–39 *14.517*
I.540–67 *15.583*
IV.428 12.372
VI.190–94 **12.391**
VII.17–23 **11.335**
XI.141–43 **6.130 (A/W)**
XIII.34–41 6.124
XIII.361–69 **13.450**
XIV.437 3.61
Remedia Amoris
648 8.183
Tristia
I.1.1 6.124
II.41–30 **11.336 (W)**
II.557–58 7.155
III.7.43–44 10.262
III.7.45–52 **13.451**
IV.4B.21–22 9.219
IV.9.11–12 6.125
IV.10.21–26 15.543
IV.10.81–84 13.428
V.2.31–34 15.543
V.2.45–46 15.544
V.4.27–30 15.544
V.7b.43–48 14.486
V.10.3–5 14.486
V.12.37–38 6.125

Petronius
Satyricon
37 **14.512 (A/W)**
45 **15.574**
57.7 5.103
127 8.185

Phaedrus
Fabulae Aesopiae
V.10.9 8.184

Plautus
Amphitruo
358 7.152
551–54 13.418
559–60 15.532
835 12.366
Asinaria
357 461
Aulularia
88 8.179
103 5.100
170 8.179
245–49 15.532
739–42 15.532
Bacchides
628 7.152
816–17 13.418
1059 5.100
Boeotia
frag. 1–9 **11.319**
Captivi
142–43 12.366
369–70 461
461–63 11.308
617 12.366
741 10.255
750 8.179
862–64 9.214
Casina
3–6 11.308
142 15.532
690–91 2.44
Cistellaria
312 3.61
Menaechmi
487–89 13.418
Mercator
320 3.61
Miles Gloriosus
33–35 **10.265 (A/W)**
42–46 **10.265**
250–52 15.533
Mostellaria
51–52 12.366
Persa
729 10.255

762 11.308
763–64 4.79
831 7.152
Pseudolus
269 14.474
Stichus
139–42 15.533
731 4.79
Trinummus
55–56 10.255
65 5.121
Truculentus
489–90 13.418

Pliny the Elder
Natural History
X.42 6.125

Pliny the Younger
Epistulae
I.6 **14.513**
VI.16.13 11.318
VIII.14.10 13.430
Panegyricus
62 14.488
74 9.221

Propertius
I.1–8 **13.446**
I.8A.1–4 14.485
I.8A.5–12 **7.158 (A/W)**
I.8B.39–40 8.183
I.11.23–26 9.219
I.12.11–14 13.427
II.1.3–4 8.183
II.5.16 8.183
II.8.1–12;17–20 **9.229**
II.12 **13.447**
II.15.23–24 13.427
II.15.29–30 10.262
II.15.31–40 **13.449**
II.15.50 6.124
II.16.1–2 7.155
II.19.1–8 **14.507**
II.29A **15.569**
II.34.65–66 11.314

Publilius Syrus
Sententiae
A14 5.101
A16 7.154
A22 4.80
A36 4.80
A42 10.260
B5 13.426
B21 8.181
B36 13.426
D2 6.122
E10 8.181
E15 10.260
E17 6.122
H8 8.181
I36 6.122
I52 3.62
L4 8.181
M3 7.154
M9 12.371
N7 4.80
N43 6.122
O6 12.371
P7 3.62
P15 6.122
S29 12.371
S44 4.80
V29 7.154

Quintilian
Institutio Oratoria
I.4.22 7.156
II.15.30 15.547
IV.5.13 5.103
IX.3.85 9.220
X.1.93 12.373
X.7.21 12.373

[Quintilian]
Declamationes Maiores
10.8 8.186

Curtius Rufus
Historiae Alexandri Magni
IV.14.11 461
VI.1.3 9.220
VIII.1.50 13.429

Rhetorica ad Herennium
II.35.15 11.308
IV.13.19 7.153
IV.44.28 14.474
IV.52.22 12.367

Sallust
Bellum Catilinae
1 *11.343*
1–2 *12.398*

3 9.217
3 *13.457*
4 *14.515*
5 10.259
5 *15.580*
6 10.259
7 15.540
8 **14.503**
14 15.540
20 **9.224** (A/W)
20 12.370
29 9.218
36 **15.558**
51 15.541
52 13.425
53 3.61
53 10.260
54 9.218
54 13.425
54 13.426
58 11.313
60–61 **15.559**

Bellum Iugurthae
2 **10.273** (W)
12 **15.557**
14 11.313
14 15.540
46 14.484
60 7.154
101 15.540
110 **12.384**

[Sallust]
In M. Tullium Ciceronem
5 13.426

Seneca the Elder
Controversiae
praef. 17 7.156
I.1.14 11.317
II.2.2 12.372

Seneca the Younger
Agamemnon
73 4.81
116 5.102
152 8.185
169–70 13.429
259 5.102
302 5.102
466–76 **12.395**
507–11 **10.285**
517–18 8.185
698–709 **9.232** (W)
722 5.102
De Beneficiis
I.2.4 12.372
III.14.3 12.372
IV.5.1 2.44
Dialogi
III.18.1 12.373
IV.11.3 14.487
IV.31.4 **11.340** (W)
V.38.1 14.487
VI.19.5 14.488
VI.22.3 14.488
VII.2.3 5.102
VII.22.5 4.81
VII.26.6 **12.396**
VIII.6.5 11.318
IX.3.8 11.318
IX.17.10 9.220
XI.6.5 6.125
XI.14.4 15.546
Epistulae Morales
II.6 11.317
V.7 11.317
IX.6 12.372
XXXV.1 2.44
XXXV.3 11.317
LXX.6 **13.455**
LXXXIX.8 8.184
XCI.15 8.184
XCI.17 **12.393**
XCI.20 8.184
XCIV.38 14.487
CI.14 15.546
CIV.26 8.184
CVII.8 **12.394**
CVII.9 13.429
CVII.11–12 12.373
Hercules Furens
1–4 9.220
181–85 **6.131** (A/W)
Hercules Oetaeus
111 8.185
Naturales Quaestiones
III.16.4 7.156
Oedipus
515 15.546
980; 993–94 5.102

Phaedra
607 11.317
978–80 9.220
Thyestes
190–91 13.429

Silius Italicus
Punica
XI.3–4 10.263

Suetonius
De Grammaticis et Rhetoribus
22 7.157
Vita Augusti
28 14.489
Vita Caligulae
30 7.157
Vita Claudii
21 10.264
Vita Iulii
32 7.157
37 7.157
42 13.431
Vita Neronis
49 13.431
Vita Tiberii
21 13.431

Tacitus
Annales
I.1 **9.234 (W)**
I.28 14.489
II.17 15.548
III.65 15.548
VI.6 13.430
VI.22 13.430
XII.35 14.489
XV.67 7.157
De Vita Agricolae
1 **9.233 (A/W)**
2 13.430
33 15.547
42 10.263
46 **15.575**
Dialogus de Oratoribus
25 **15.576 (W)**
Germania
3.1 11.318
9.2 12.374
Historiae
I.41 15.548
IV.26 12.374
V.11 7.157

Terence
Adelphoe
84–86 15.534
304 13.419
725–27 4.79
Andria
194 2.44
Eunuchus
41 10.255
732 7.152
Hecyra
181–83 15.534
Heauton Timoroumenos
77 11.308
Phormio
138 12.366
454 14.474
487–88 15.534

Terentianus Maurus
De Syllabis
1286 5.103

Tibullus
Elegiae
II.1.35–37 6.124

Varro
De Lingua Latina
VI.52 15.534
VI.77 4.79
Menippeae
frag. 122 14.474
Res Rustica
I.1.4–5 **8.187 (A/W)**
III.1 7.152

[Varro]
Sententiae
22 15.534
86 5.100
88 12.366
95 12.366

Valerius Maximus
Facta et Dicta Memorabilia
III.2.20 11.317

Velleius Paterculus
Historiae

II.17.1 10.263
II.18.1–3 **10.284 (A/W)**

Vergil
Aeneid
I.1 4.80
I.1–4 10.261
I.1–11 **13.441**
I.12–13 6.123
I.33 13.426
I.133–34 8.182
I.198–99 11.313
I.200–203 **9.225**
I.483–84 13.427
I.544–45 11.314
I.561–62 15.541
II.3–13 **13.442**
II.26–34 **9.226**
II.40–56 **11.328**
II.65–74 **9.227**
II.274–76 15.541
II.289 10.261
II.290–94 **8.188**
II.324–27 9.218
II.354 9.218
II.479–90 *10.286*
II.491–505 *11.344*
II.506–17 *12.400*
II.518–32 *13.458*
II.533–46 *14.516*
II.547–58 *15.582*
II.657–63 **14.505**
III.47–48 15.541
III.374–80 **11.330**
III.528–30 6.123
IV.80–83 14.485
IV.283–86 15.542
IV.360–61 8.182
IV.368–70 13.427
IV.376–81 **8.186**
IV.382–87 **14.505**
IV.556–59 15.542
IV.593–94 5.101
IV.651–58 **9.228**
IV.659–60 8.182
VI.126–29 **9.228**
VI.391 12.371
VI.847–53 **12.385**
VII.44–45 11.314
VIII.51–57 **8.189**
VIII.112–14 15.542
IX.37–39 **6.129 (A/W)**
IX.641 7.154
X.284 10.261
X.466–72 **10.277**
X.501–2 10.261
X.743–44 8.182
X.803 11.314
XI.640–42 6.123
XI.816–31 **15.562**
XII.92–102 **10.278**
XII.146 7.155
XII.435–36 10.261
XII.653–57 **11.330**
XII.657–71 **12.386**
XII.894–95 6.123
XII.938–52 **15.563**
Eclogues
I.19–25 **11.327**
I.35 8.181
I.83 12.371
II.63–68 **14.504**
III.64–65 7.154
IV.4–7 **10.274 (W)**
IV.18–25 **14.504**
V.4 11.313
VIII.68–70 13.426
IX.32–36 **12.384**
X.69 7.154
Georgics
I.505–14 **10.275 (W)**
II.401–2 6.123
II.490–99 **10.276**
III.242–44 10.260
IV.525–27 10.260

MORPHOLOGY APPENDIX

Note: Forms in brackets are not introduced in the textbook.

Nouns

First Declension

puella, puellae *f.*

Singular	
Nom.	**puella**
Gen.	**puellae**
Dat.	**puellae**
Acc.	**puellam**
Abl.	**puellā**
Voc.	**puella**
Plural	
Nom./Voc.	**puellae**
Gen.	**puellārum**
Dat.	**puellīs**
Acc.	**puellās**
Abl.	**puellīs**

Second Declension

servus, servī *m.*
fīlius, fīliī *m.*
puer, puerī *m.*

perīculum, perīculī *n.*
cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.*

	M./F.			N.	
Singular					
Nom.	**servus**	**fīlius**	**puer**	**perīculum**	**cōnsilium**
Gen.	**servī**	**fīliī/fīlī**	**puerī**	**perīculī**	**cōnsiliī/cōnsilī**
Dat.	**servō**	**fīliō**	**puerō**	**perīculō**	**cōnsiliō**
Acc.	**servum**	**fīlium**	**puerum**	**perīculum**	**cōnsilium**
Abl.	**servō**	**fīliō**	**puerō**	**perīculō**	**cōnsiliō**
Voc.	**serve**	**fīlī**	**puer**	**perīculum**	**cōnsilium**
Plural					
Nom./Voc.	**servī**	**fīliī**	**puerī**	**perīcula**	**cōnsilia**
Gen.	**servōrum**	**fīliōrum**	**puerōrum**	**perīculōrum**	**cōnsiliōrum**
Dat.	**servīs**	**fīliīs**	**puerīs**	**perīculīs**	**cōnsiliīs**
Acc.	**servōs**	**fīliōs**	**puerōs**	**perīcula**	**cōnsilia**
Abl.	**servīs**	**fīliīs**	**puerīs**	**perīculīs**	**cōnsiliīs**

Third Declension

	mīles, mīlitis *m.*		**corpus, corporis** *n.*	
	urbs, urbis, -ium *f.*		**animal, animālis, -ium** *n.*	
	M./F.	M./F. i-stem	N.	N. i-stem
Singular				
Nom./Voc.	**mīles**	**urbs**	**corpus**	**animal**
Gen.	**mīlitis**	**urbis**	**corporis**	**animālis**
Dat.	**mīlitī**	**urbī**	**corporī**	**animālī**
Acc.	**mīlitem**	**urbem**	**corpus**	**animal**
Abl.	**mīlite**	**urbe**	**corpore**	**animālī**
Plural				
Nom./Voc.	**mīlitēs**	**urbēs**	**corpora**	**animālia**
Gen.	**mīlitum**	**urbium**	**corporum**	**animālium**
Dat.	**mīlitibus**	**urbibus**	**corporibus**	**animālibus**
Acc.	**mīlitēs**	**urbēs/urbīs**	**corpora**	**animālia**
Abl.	**mīlitibus**	**urbibus**	**corporibus**	**animālibus**

Fourth Declension

mōtus, mōtūs *m.*
cornū, cornūs *n.*

	M./F.	[N.
Singular		
Nom./Voc.	**mōtus**	**cornū**
Gen.	**mōtūs**	**cornūs**
Dat.	**mōtuī/mōtū**	**cornū**
Acc.	**mōtum**	**cornū**
Abl.	**mōtū**	**cornū**
Plural		
Nom./Voc.	**mōtūs**	**cornua**
Gen.	**mōtuum**	**cornuum**
Dat.	**mōtibus**	**cornibus**
Acc.	**mōtūs**	**cornua**
Abl.	**mōtibus**	**cornibus]**

Fifth Declension

rēs, reī *f.*
aciēs, aciēī *f.*

	Stem ends in *consonant*	Stem ends in *vowel*
Singular		
Nom./Voc.	**rēs**	**aciēs**
Gen.	**reī**	**aciēī**
Dat.	**reī**	**aciēī**
Acc.	**rem**	**aciem**
Abl.	**rē**	**aciē**
Plural		
Nom./Voc.	**rēs**	**aciēs**
Gen.	**rērum**	**aciērum**
Dat.	**rēbus**	**aciēbus**
Acc.	**rēs**	**aciēs**
Abl.	**rēbus**	**aciēbus**

Adjectives and Pronouns

First-Second-Declension Adjectives

bonus, bona, bonum
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

Singular	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**bonus**	**bona**	**bonum**	**pulcher**	**pulchra**	**pulchrum**
Gen.	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bonī**	**pulchrī**	**pulchrae**	**pulchrī**
Dat.	**bonō**	**bonae**	**bonō**	**pulchrō**	**pulchrae**	**pulchrō**
Acc.	**bonum**	**bonam**	**bonum**	**pulchrum**	**pulchram**	**pulchrum**
Abl.	**bonō**	**bonā**	**bonō**	**pulchrō**	**pulchrā**	**pulchrō**
Voc.	**bone**	**bona**	**bonum**	**pulcher**	**pulchra**	**pulchrum**
Plural						
Nom./Voc.	**bonī**	**bonae**	**bona**	**pulchrī**	**pulchrae**	**pulchra**
Gen.	**bonōrum**	**bonārum**	**bonōrum**	**pulchrōrum**	**pulchrārum**	**pulchrōrum**
Dat.	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**pulchrīs**	**pulchrīs**	**pulchrīs**
Acc.	**bonōs**	**bonās**	**bona**	**pulchrōs**	**pulchrās**	**pulchra**
Abl.	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**bonīs**	**pulchrīs**	**pulchrīs**	**pulchrīs**

Third-Declension Adjectives

With three nominative singular forms: **ācer, ācris, ācre**
With two nominative singular forms: **fortis, forte**

Singular	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	**ācer**	**ācris**	**ācre**	**fortis**	**fortis**	**forte**
Gen.	**ācris**	**ācris**	**ācris**	**fortis**	**fortis**	**fortis**
Dat.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**fortī**	**fortī**	**fortī**
Acc.	**ācrem**	**ācrem**	**ācre**	**fortem**	**fortem**	**forte**
Abl.	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**ācrī**	**fortī**	**fortī**	**fortī**
Plural						
Nom./Voc.	**ācrēs**	**ācrēs**	**ācria**	**fortēs**	**fortēs**	**fortia**
Gen.	**ācrium**	**ācrium**	**ācrium**	**fortium**	**fortium**	**fortium**
Dat.	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**fortibus**	**fortibus**	**fortibus**
Acc.	**ācrēs/ācrīs**	**ācrēs/ācrīs**	**ācria**	**fortēs/fortīs**	**fortēs/fortīs**	**fortia**
Abl.	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**ācribus**	**fortibus**	**fortibus**	**fortibus**

With one nominative singular form: **ingēns, ingentis**
vocāns, vocantis

Singular	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	**ingēns**	**ingēns**	**ingēns**	**vocāns**	**vocāns**	**vocāns**
Gen.	**ingentis**	**ingentis**	**ingentis**	**vocantis**	**vocantis**	**vocantis**
Dat.	**ingentī**	**ingentī**	**ingentī**	**vocantī**	**vocantī**	**vocantī**
Acc.	**ingentem**	**ingentem**	**ingēns**	**vocantem**	**vocantem**	**vocāns**
Abl.	**ingentī**	**ingentī**	**ingentī**	**vocantī/ vocante**	**vocantī/ vocante**	**vocantī/ vocante**
Plural						
Nom./Voc.	**ingentēs**	**ingentēs**	**ingentia**	**vocantēs**	**vocantēs**	**vocantia**
Gen.	**ingentium**	**ingentium**	**ingentium**	**vocantium**	**vocantium**	**vocantium**
Dat.	**ingentibus**	**ingentibus**	**ingentibus**	**vocantibus**	**vocantibus**	**vocantibus**
Acc.	**ingentēs/ ingentīs**	**ingentēs/ ingentīs**	**ingentia**	**vocantēs/ vocantīs**	**vocantēs/ vocantīs**	**vocantia**
Abl.	**ingentibus**	**ingentibus**	**ingentibus**	**vocantibus**	**vocantibus**	**vocantibus**

Comparative Adjectives

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom./Voc.	**pulchrior**	**pulchrior**	**pulchrius**	**pulchriōrēs**	**pulchriōrēs**	**pulchriōra**
Gen.	**pulchriōris**	**pulchriōris**	**pulchriōris**	**pulchriōrum**	**pulchriōrum**	**pulchriōrum**
Dat.	**pulchriōrī**	**pulchriōrī**	**pulchriōrī**	**pulchriōribus**	**pulchriōribus**	**pulchriōribus**
Acc.	**pulchriōrem**	**pulchriōrem**	**pulchrius**	**pulchriōrēs/ pulchriōrīs**	**pulchriōrēs/ pulchriōrīs**	**pulchriōra**
Abl.	**pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī**	**pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī**	**pulchriōre/ pulchriōrī**	**pulchriōribus**	**pulchriōribus**	**pulchriōribus**

Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns

hic, haec, hoc

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**hic**	**haec**	**hoc**	**hī**	**hae**	**haec**
Gen.	**huius**	**huius**	**huius**	**hōrum**	**hārum**	**hōrum**
Dat.	**huic**	**huic**	**huic**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**
Acc.	**hunc**	**hanc**	**hoc**	**hōs**	**hās**	**haec**
Abl.	**hōc**	**hāc**	**hōc**	**hīs**	**hīs**	**hīs**

ille, illa, illud

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ille**	**illa**	**illud**	**illī**	**illae**	**illa**
Gen.	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illīus**	**illōrum**	**illārum**	**illōrum**
Dat.	**illī**	**illī**	**illī**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**
Acc.	**illum**	**illam**	**illud**	**illōs**	**illās**	**illa**
Abl.	**illō**	**illā**	**illō**	**illīs**	**illīs**	**illīs**

is, ea, id

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī/iī**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**eius**	**eius**	**eius**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**
Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**

iste, ista, istud

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**iste**	**ista**	**istud**	**istī**	**istae**	**ista**
Gen.	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istīus**	**istōrum**	**istārum**	**istōrum**
Dat.	**istī**	**istī**	**istī**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**
Acc.	**istum**	**istam**	**istud**	**istōs**	**istās**	**ista**
Abl.	**istō**	**istā**	**istō**	**istīs**	**istīs**	**istīs**

Personal Pronouns

First Person **ego, meī**
nōs, nostrum/nostrī

Second Person **tū, tuī**
vōs, vestrum/vestrī

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*
Nom.	**ego**	**nōs**	**tū**	**vōs**
Gen.	**meī**	**nostrum/nostrī**	**tuī**	**vestrum/vestrī**
Dat.	**mihi**	**nōbīs**	**tibi**	**vōbīs**
Acc.	**mē**	**nōs**	**tē**	**vōs**
Abl.	**mē**	**nōbīs**	**tē**	**vōbīs**

Third Person **is, ea, id**

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**is**	**ea**	**id**	**eī/iī**	**eae**	**ea**
Gen.	**eius**	**eius**	**eius**	**eōrum**	**eārum**	**eōrum**
Dat.	**eī**	**eī**	**eī**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**
Acc.	**eum**	**eam**	**id**	**eōs**	**eās**	**ea**
Abl.	**eō**	**eā**	**eō**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**	**eīs/iīs**

Reflexive Pronouns

First Person **——, meī**
——, nostrum/nostrī

Second Person **——, tuī**
——, vestrum/vestrī

Third Person **——, suī**

	Singular	*Plural*	*Singular*	*Plural*	*Sing./Pl.*
Nom.	——	——	——	——	——
Gen.	**meī**	**nostrum/nostrī**	**tuī**	**vestrum/vestrī**	**suī**
Dat.	**mihi**	**nōbīs**	**tibi**	**vōbīs**	**sibi**
Acc.	**mē**	**nōs**	**tē**	**vōs**	**sē/sēsē**
Abl.	**mē**	**nōbīs**	**tē**	**vōbīs**	**sē/sēsē**

Intensive Adjective

ipse, ipsa, ipsum

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**ipse**	**ipsa**	**ipsum**	**ipsī**	**ipsae**	**ipsa**
Gen.	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsīus**	**ipsōrum**	**ipsārum**	**ipsōrum**
Dat.	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsī**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**
Acc.	**ipsum**	**ipsam**	**ipsum**	**ipsōs**	**ipsās**	**ipsa**
Abl.	**ipsō**	**ipsā**	**ipsō**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**	**ipsīs**

Relative Pronoun

quī, quae, quod

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	**cuius**	**cuius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective

quis, quid

	Singular		*Plural*		
	M./F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quis**	**quid**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	**cuius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quid**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

quī, quae, quod

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	**cuius**	**cuius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives

aliquis, aliquid (pron.)

	Singular		*Plural*		
	M./F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**aliquis**	**aliquid**	**aliquī**	**aliquae**	**aliqua**
Gen.	**alicuius**	**alicuius**	**aliquōrum**	**aliquārum**	**aliquōrum**
Dat.	**alicui**	**alicui**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**
Acc.	**aliquem**	**aliquid**	**aliquōs**	**aliquās**	**aliqua**
Abl.	**aliquō**	**aliquā**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (adj.)

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**aliquī**	**aliqua**	**aliquod**	**aliquī**	**aliquae**	**aliqua**
Gen.	**alicuius**	**alicuius**	**alicuius**	**aliquōrum**	**aliquārum**	**aliquōrum**
Dat.	**alicui**	**alicui**	**alicui**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**
Acc.	**aliquem**	**aliquam**	**aliquod**	**aliquōs**	**aliquās**	**aliqua**
Abl.	**aliquō**	**aliquā**	**aliquō**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**	**aliquibus**

quis, quid (pron.)

	Singular		*Plural*		
	M./F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quis**	**quid**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	**cuius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quid**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

quī, qua, quod (adj.)

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quī**	**qua**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**qua/quae**
Gen.	**cuius**	**cuius**	**cuius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cui**	**cui**	**cui**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**qua/quae**
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quibus**	**quibus**	**quibus**

quisquam, quicquam (pron.)

	Singular	
	M./F.	N.
Nom.	**quisquam**	**quicquam (quidquam)**
Gen.	**cuiusquam**	**cuiusquam**
Dat.	**cuiquam**	**cuiquam**
Acc.	**quemquam**	**quicquam (quidquam)**
Abl.	**quōquam**	**quōquam**

Does not occur in the plural

quisque, quidque (pron.)

	Singular		*Plural*		
	M./F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quisque**	**quidque (quicque)**	**quīque**	**quaeque**	**quaeque**
Gen.	**cuiusque**	**cuiusque**	**quōrumque**	**quārumque**	**quōrumque**
Dat.	**cuique**	**cuique**	**quibusque**	**quibusque**	**quibusque**
Acc.	**quemque**	**quidque (quicque)**	**quōsque**	**quāsque**	**quaeque**
Abl.	**quōque**	**quōque**	**quibusque**	**quibusque**	**quibusque**

quīque, quaeque, quodque (adj.)

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quīque**	**quaeque**	**quodque**	**quīque**	**quaeque**	**quaeque**
Gen.	**cuiusque**	**cuiusque**	**cuiusque**	**quōrumque**	**quārumque**	**quōrumque**
Dat.	**cuique**	**cuique**	**cuique**	**quibusque**	**quibusque**	**quibusque**
Acc.	**quemque**	**quamque**	**quodque**	**quōsque**	**quāsque**	**quaeque**
Abl.	**quōque**	**quāque**	**quōque**	**quibusque**	**quibusque**	**quibusque**

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (pron.)

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quīdam**	**quaedam**	**quiddam**	**quīdam**	**quaedam**	**quaedam**
Gen.	**cuiusdam**	**cuiusdam**	**cuiusdam**	**quōrundam**	**quārundam**	**quōrundam**
Dat.	**cuidam**	**cuidam**	**cuidam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**
Acc.	**quendam**	**quandam**	**quiddam**	**quōsdam**	**quāsdam**	**quaedam**
Abl.	**quōdam**	**quādam**	**quōdam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (adj.)

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quīdam**	**quaedam**	**quoddam**	**quīdam**	**quaedam**	**quaedam**
Gen.	**cuiusdam**	**cuiusdam**	**cuiusdam**	**quōrundam**	**quārundam**	**quōrundam**
Dat.	**cuidam**	**cuidam**	**cuidam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**
Acc.	**quendam**	**quandam**	**quoddam**	**quōsdam**	**quāsdam**	**quaedam**
Abl.	**quōdam**	**quādam**	**quōdam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**	**quibusdam**

Irregular Adjectives

First-Second-Declension Adjectives Irregular in the Singular Only

alius, alia, aliud
alter, altera, alterum
neuter, neutra, neutrum
nūllus, -a, -um
sōlus, -a, -um
tōtus, -a, -um
ūllus, -a, -um
ūnus, -a, -um
uter, utra, utrum

Singular	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**tōtus**	**tōta**	**tōtum**
Gen.	**tōtīus**	**tōtīus**	**tōtīus**
Dat.	**tōtī**	**tōtī**	**tōtī**
Acc.	**tōtum**	**tōtam**	**tōtum**
Abl.	**tōtō**	**tōtā**	**tōtō**

īdem, eadem, idem

	Singular			*Plural*		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**īdem**	**eadem**	**idem**	**īdem/eīdem**	**eaedem**	**eadem**
Gen.	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eiusdem**	**eōrundem**	**eārundem**	**eōrundem**
Dat.	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**eīdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**
Acc.	**eundem**	**eandem**	**idem**	**eōsdem**	**eāsdem**	**eadem**
Abl.	**eōdem**	**eādem**	**eōdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**	**īsdem/ eīsdem**

Adverbs

Adverbs in the Positive Degree Formed from First-Second-Declension Adjectives

acerbē < acerbus, -a, -um
pulchrē < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum

Adverbs in the Positive Degree Formed from Third-Declension Adjectives

fortiter < fortis, forte

Adverbs in the Comparative Degree

acerbius < acerbus, -a, -um
pulchrius < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
fortius < fortis, forte

Adverbs in the Superlative Degree

acerbissimē < acerbus, -a, -um
pulcherrimē < pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
fortissimē < fortis, forte
simillimē < similis, simile

Verbs

First Conjugation

Principal Parts: **vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātus**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **vocō**	**vocor**	1 **vocem**	**vocer**
2 **vocās**	**vocāris/vocāre**	2 **vocēs**	**vocēris/vocēre**
3 **vocat**	**vocātur**	3 **vocet**	**vocētur**
	Plural		
1 **vocāmus**	**vocāmur**	1 **vocēmus**	**vocēmur**
2 **vocātis**	**vocāminī**	2 **vocētis**	**vocēminī**
3 **vocant**	**vocantur**	3 **vocent**	**vocentur**
Imperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **vocābam**	**vocābar**	1 **vocārem**	**vocārer**
2 **vocābās**	**vocābāris/vocābāre**	2 **vocārēs**	**vocārēris/vocārēre**
3 **vocābat**	**vocābātur**	3 **vocāret**	**vocārētur**
	Plural		
1 **vocābāmus**	**vocābāmur**	1 **vocārēmus**	**vocārēmur**
2 **vocābātis**	**vocābāminī**	2 **vocārētis**	**vocārēminī**
3 **vocābant**	**vocābantur**	3 **vocārent**	**vocārentur**

	Indicative	Subjunctive
Future		
	Active / Passive	
	Singular	
1	**vocābō** / **vocābor**	
2	**vocābis** / **vocāberis/vocābere**	
3	**vocābit** / **vocābitur**	
	Plural	
1	**vocābimus** / **vocābimur**	
2	**vocābitis** / **vocābiminī**	
3	**vocābunt** / **vocābuntur**	

Perfect				
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		Singular		
1	**vocāvī**	**vocātus, -a, -um sum**	**vocāverim**	**vocātus, -a, -um sim**
2	**vocāvistī**	**vocātus, -a, -um es**	**vocāveris**	**vocātus, -a, -um sīs**
3	**vocāvit**	**vocātus, -a, -um est**	**vocāverit**	**vocātus, -a, -um sit**
		Plural		
1	**vocāvimus**	**vocātī, -ae, -a sumus**	**vocāverimus**	**vocātī, -ae, -a sīmus**
2	**vocāvistis**	**vocātī, -ae, -a estis**	**vocāveritis**	**vocātī, -ae, -a sītis**
3	**vocāvērunt/vocāvēre**	**vocātī, -ae, -a sunt**	**vocāverint**	**vocātī, -ae, -a sint**

Pluperfect				
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		Singular		
1	**vocāveram**	**vocātus, -a, -um eram**	**vocāvissem**	**vocātus, -a, -um essem**
2	**vocāverās**	**vocātus, -a, -um erās**	**vocāvissēs**	**vocātus, -a, -um essēs**
3	**vocāverat**	**vocātus, -a, -um erat**	**vocāvisset**	**vocātus, -a, -um esset**
		Plural		
1	**vocāverāmus**	**vocātī, -ae, -a erāmus**	**vocāvissēmus**	**vocātī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2	**vocāverātis**	**vocātī, -ae, -a erātis**	**vocāvissētis**	**vocātī, -ae, -a essētis**
3	**vocāverant**	**vocātī, -ae, -a erant**	**vocāvissent**	**vocātī, -ae, -a essent**

Future Perfect		
	Active	Passive
	Singular	
1	**vocāverō**	**vocātus, -a, -um erō**
2	**vocāveris**	**vocātus, -a, -um eris**
3	**vocāverit**	**vocātus, -a, -um erit**
	Plural	
1	**vocāverimus**	**vocātī, -ae, -a erimus**
2	**vocāveritis**	**vocātī, -ae, -a eritis**
3	**vocāverint**	**vocātī, -ae, -a erunt**

Participle		
	Active	Passive
Present	**vocāns, vocantis**	
Perfect		**vocātus, -a, -um**
Future	**vocātūrus, -a, -um**	**vocandus, -a, -um**

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**vocāre**	**vocārī**
Perfect	**vocāvisse**	**vocātus, -a, -um esse**
Future	**vocātūrus, -a, -um esse**	**[vocātum īrī]**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **vocā**	**vocāre**
Plural	2 **vocāte**	**vocāminī**

[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **vocātō**	**vocātor**
	3 **vocātō**	**vocātor**
Plural	2 **vocātōte**	
	3 **vocantō**	**vocantor]**

Second Conjugation

Principal Parts: **moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus**

Indicative **Subjunctive**

Present

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **moveō**	**moveor**	1 **moveam**	**movear**
2 **movēs**	**movēris/movēre**	2 **moveās**	**moveāris/moveāre**
3 **movet**	**movētur**	3 **moveat**	**moveātur**
	Plural		
1 **movēmus**	**movēmur**	1 **moveāmus**	**moveāmur**
2 **movētis**	**movēminī**	2 **moveātis**	**moveāminī**
3 **movent**	**moventur**	3 **moveant**	**moveantur**

Imperfect

Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **movēbam**	**movēbar**	1 **movērem**	**movērer**
2 **movēbās**	**movēbāris/movēbāre**	2 **movērēs**	**movērēris/movērēre**
3 **movēbat**	**movēbātur**	3 **movēret**	**movērētur**
	Plural		
1 **movēbāmus**	**movēbāmur**	1 **movērēmus**	**movērēmur**
2 **movēbātis**	**movēbāminī**	2 **movērētis**	**movērēminī**
3 **movēbant**	**movēbantur**	3 **movērent**	**movērentur**

Future

Active	Passive
Singular	
1 **movēbō**	**movēbor**
2 **movēbis**	**movēberis/movēbere**
3 **movēbit**	**movēbitur**
Plural	
1 **movēbimus**	**movēbimur**
2 **movēbitis**	**movēbiminī**
3 **movēbunt**	**movēbuntur**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Perfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **mōvī**	**mōtus, -a, -um sum**	1 **mōverim**	**mōtus, -a, -um sim**
2 **mōvistī**	**mōtus, -a, -um es**	2 **mōveris**	**mōtus, -a, -um sīs**
3 **mōvit**	**mōtus, -a, -um est**	3 **mōverit**	**mōtus, -a, -um sit**
	Plural		
1 **mōvimus**	**mōtī, -ae, -a sumus**	1 **mōverimus**	**mōtī, -ae, -a sīmus**
2 **mōvistis**	**mōtī, -ae, -a estis**	2 **mōveritis**	**mōtī, -ae, -a sītis**
3 **mōvērunt/mōvēre**	**mōtī, -ae, -a sunt**	3 **mōverint**	**mōtī, -ae, -a sint**
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **mōveram**	**mōtus, -a, -um eram**	1 **mōvissem**	**mōtus, -a, -um essem**
2 **mōverās**	**mōtus, -a, -um erās**	2 **mōvissēs**	**mōtus, -a, -um essēs**
3 **mōverat**	**mōtus, -a, -um erat**	3 **mōvisset**	**mōtus, -a, -um esset**
	Plural		
1 **mōverāmus**	**mōtī, -ae, -a erāmus**	1 **mōvissēmus**	**mōtī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2 **mōverātis**	**mōtī, -ae, -a erātis**	2 **mōvissētis**	**mōtī, -ae, -a essētis**
3 **mōverant**	**mōtī, -ae, -a erant**	3 **mōvissent**	**mōtī, -ae, -a essent**

Future Perfect

Active	Passive
Singular	
1 **mōverō**	**mōtus, -a, -um erō**
2 **mōveris**	**mōtus, -a, -um eris**
3 **mōverit**	**mōtus, -a, -um erit**
Plural	
1 **mōverimus**	**mōtī, -ae, -a erimus**
2 **mōveritis**	**mōtī, -ae, -a eritis**
3 **mōverint**	**mōtī, -ae, -a erunt**

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	**movēns, moventis**	
Perfect		**mōtus, -a, -um**
Future	**mōtūrus, -a, -um**	**movendus, -a, -um**

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**movēre**	**movērī**
Perfect	**mōvisse**	**mōtus, -a, -um esse**
Future	**mōtūrus, -a, -um esse**	**[mōtum īrī]**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **movē**	**movēre**
Plural	2 **movēte**	**movēminī**
[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **movētō**	**movētor**
	3 **movētō**	**movētor**
Plural	2 **movētōte**	
	3 **moventō**	**moventor**]

Third Conjugation

Principal Parts: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus**

Indicative			Subjunctive	
Present				
Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 **regō**	**regor**		1 **regam**	**regar**
2 **regis**	**regeris/regere**		2 **regās**	**regāris/regāre**
3 **regit**	**regitur**		3 **regat**	**regātur**
		Plural		
1 **regimus**	**regimur**		1 **regāmus**	**regāmur**
2 **regitis**	**regiminī**		2 **regātis**	**regāminī**
3 **regunt**	**reguntur**		3 **regant**	**regantur**
Imperfect				
Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 **regēbam**	**regēbar**		1 **regerem**	**regerer**
2 **regēbās**	**regēbāris/regēbāre**		2 **regerēs**	**regerēris/regerēre**
3 **regēbat**	**regēbātur**		3 **regeret**	**regerētur**
		Plural		
1 **regēbāmus**	**regēbāmur**		1 **regerēmus**	**regerēmur**
2 **regēbātis**	**regēbāminī**		2 **regerētis**	**regerēminī**
3 **regēbant**	**regēbantur**		3 **regerent**	**regerentur**
Future				
Active	Passive			
		Singular		
1 **regam**	**regar**			
2 **regēs**	**regēris/regēre**			
3 **reget**	**regētur**			
		Plural		
1 **regēmus**	**regēmur**			
2 **regētis**	**regēminī**			
3 **regent**	**regentur**			
Perfect				
Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 **rēxī**	**rēctus, -a, -um sum**		1 **rēxerim**	**rēctus, -a, -um sim**
2 **rēxistī**	**rēctus, -a, -um es**		2 **rēxeris**	**rēctus, -a, -um sīs**
3 **rēxit**	**rēctus, -a, -um est**		3 **rēxerit**	**rēctus, -a, -um sit**
		Plural		
1 **rēximus**	**rēctī, -ae, -a sumus**		1 **rēxerimus**	**rēctī, -ae, -a sīmus**
2 **rēxistis**	**rēctī, -ae, -a estis**		2 **rēxeritis**	**rēctī, -ae, -a sītis**
3 **rēxērunt/rēxēre**	**rēctī, -ae, -a sunt**		3 **rēxerint**	**rēctī, -ae, -a sint**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **rēxeram**	**rēctus, -a, -um eram**	1 **rēxissem**	**rēctus, -a, -um essem**
2 **rēxerās**	**rēctus, -a, -um erās**	2 **rēxissēs**	**rēctus, -a, -um essēs**
3 **rēxerat**	**rēctus, -a, -um erat**	3 **rēxisset**	**rēctus, -a, -um esset**
	Plural		
1 **rēxerāmus**	**rēctī, -ae, -a erāmus**	1 **rēxissēmus**	**rēctī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2 **rēxerātis**	**rēctī, -ae, -a erātis**	2 **rēxissētis**	**rēctī, -ae, -a essētis**
3 **rēxerant**	**rēctī, -ae, -a erant**	3 **rēxissent**	**rēctī, -ae, -a essent**

Future Perfect

Active	Passive
Singular	
1 **rēxerō**	**rēctus, -a, -um erō**
2 **rēxeris**	**rēctus, -a, -um eris**
3 **rēxerit**	**rēctus, -a, -um erit**
Plural	
1 **rēxerimus**	**rēctī, -ae, -a erimus**
2 **rēxeritis**	**rēctī, -ae, -a eritis**
3 **rēxerint**	**rēctī, -ae, -a erunt**

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	**regēns, regentis**	
Perfect		**rēctus, -a, -um**
Future	**rēctūrus, -a, -um**	**regendus, -a, -um**

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**regere**	**regī**
Perfect	**rēxisse**	**rēctus, -a, -um esse**
Future	**rēctūrus, -a, -um esse**	**[rēctum īrī]**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **rege**	**regere**
Plural	2 **regite**	**regiminī**
[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **regitō**	**regitor**
	3 **regitō**	**regitor**
Plural	2 **regitōte**	
	3 **reguntō**	**reguntor]**

Third i-stem Conjugation

Principal Parts: **capiō, capere, cēpī, captus**

Indicative			Subjunctive	
Present				
Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 **capiō**	**capior**		1 **capiam**	**capiar**
2 **capis**	**caperis/capere**		2 **capiās**	**capiāris/capiāre**
3 **capit**	**capitur**		3 **capiat**	**capiātur**
		Plural		
1 **capimus**	**capimur**		1 **capiāmus**	**capiāmur**
2 **capitis**	**capiminī**		2 **capiātis**	**capiāminī**
3 **capiunt**	**capiuntur**		3 **capiant**	**capiantur**
Imperfect				
Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 **capiēbam**	**capiēbar**		1 **caperem**	**caperer**
2 **capiēbās**	**capiēbāris/capiēbāre**		2 **caperēs**	**caperēris/caperēre**
3 **capiēbat**	**capiēbātur**		3 **caperet**	**caperētur**
		Plural		
1 **capiēbāmus**	**capiēbāmur**		1 **caperēmus**	**caperēmur**
2 **capiēbātis**	**capiēbāminī**		2 **caperētis**	**caperēminī**
3 **capiēbant**	**capiēbantur**		3 **caperent**	**caperentur**
Future				
Active	Passive			
		Singular		
1 **capiam**	**capiar**			
2 **capiēs**	**capiēris/capiēre**			
3 **capiet**	**capiētur**			
		Plural		
1 **capiēmus**	**capiēmur**			
2 **capiētis**	**capiēminī**			
3 **capient**	**capientur**			
Perfect				
Active	Passive		Active	Passive
		Singular		
1 **cēpī**	**captus, -a, -um sum**		1 **cēperim**	**captus, -a, -um sim**
2 **cēpistī**	**captus, -a, -um es**		2 **cēperis**	**captus, -a, -um sīs**
3 **cēpit**	**captus, -a, -um est**		3 **cēperit**	**captus, -a, -um sit**
		Plural		
1 **cēpimus**	**captī, -ae, -a sumus**		1 **cēperimus**	**captī, -ae, -a sīmus**
2 **cēpistis**	**captī, -ae, -a estis**		2 **cēperitis**	**captī, -ae, -a sītis**
3 **cēpērunt/cēpēre**	**captī, -ae, -a sunt**		3 **cēperint**	**captī, -ae, -a sint**

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **cēperam**	**captus, -a, -um eram**	1 **cēpissem**	**captus, -a, -um essem**
2 **cēperās**	**captus, -a, -um erās**	2 **cēpissēs**	**captus, -a, -um essēs**
3 **cēperat**	**captus, -a, -um erat**	3 **cēpisset**	**captus, -a, -um esset**
	Plural		
1 **cēperāmus**	**captī, -ae, -a erāmus**	1 **cēpissēmus**	**captī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2 **cēperātis**	**captī, -ae, -a erātis**	2 **cēpissētis**	**captī, -ae, -a essētis**
3 **cēperant**	**captī, -ae, -a erant**	3 **cēpissent**	**captī, -ae, -a essent**

Future Perfect		
Active		Passive
	Singular	
1 **cēperō**		**captus, -a, -um erō**
2 **cēperis**		**captus, -a, -um eris**
3 **cēperit**		**captus, -a, -um erit**
	Plural	
1 **cēperimus**		**captī, -ae, -a erimus**
2 **cēperitis**		**captī, -ae, -a eritis**
3 **cēperint**		**captī, -ae, -a erunt**

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	**capiēns, capientis**	
Perfect		**captus, -a, -um**
Future	**captūrus, -a, -um**	**capiendus, -a, -um**

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**capere**	**capī**
Perfect	**cēpisse**	**captus, -a, -um esse**
Future	**captūrus, -a, -um esse**	**[captum īrī]**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **cape**	**capere**
Plural	2 **capite**	**capiminī**

[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **capitō**	**capitor**
	3 **capitō**	**capitor**
Plural	2 **capitōte**	
	3 **capiuntō**	**capiuntor]**

Fourth Conjugation

Principal Parts: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus**

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
Present				
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		Singular		
1	**audiō**	**audior**	**audiam**	**audiar**
2	**audīs**	**audīris/audīre**	**audiās**	**audiāris/audiāre**
3	**audit**	**audītur**	**audiat**	**audiātur**
		Plural		
1	**audīmus**	**audīmur**	**audiāmus**	**audiāmur**
2	**audītis**	**audīminī**	**audiātis**	**audiāminī**
3	**audiunt**	**audiuntur**	**audiant**	**audiantur**
Imperfect				
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		Singular		
1	**audiēbam**	**audiēbar**	**audīrem**	**audīrer**
2	**audiēbās**	**audiēbāris/audiēbāre**	**audīrēs**	**audīrēris/audīrēre**
3	**audiēbat**	**audiēbātur**	**audīret**	**audīrētur**
		Plural		
1	**audiēbāmus**	**audiēbāmur**	**audīrēmus**	**audīrēmur**
2	**audiēbātis**	**audiēbāminī**	**audīrētis**	**audīrēminī**
3	**audiēbant**	**audiēbantur**	**audīrent**	**audīrentur**
Future				
	Active	Passive		
		Singular		
1	**audiam**	**audiar**		
2	**audiēs**	**audiēris/audiēre**		
3	**audiet**	**audiētur**		
		Plural		
1	**audiēmus**	**audiēmur**		
2	**audiētis**	**audiēminī**		
3	**audient**	**audientur**		
Perfect				
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		Singular		
1	**audīvī**	**audītus, -a, -um sum**	**audīverim**	**audītus, -a, -um sim**
2	**audīvistī**	**audītus, -a, -um es**	**audīveris**	**audītus, -a, -um sīs**
3	**audīvit**	**audītus, -a, -um est**	**audīverit**	**audītus, -a, -um sit**
		Plural		
1	audīvimus	audītī, -ae, -a sumus	audīverimus	audītī, -ae, -a sīmus
2	audīvistis	audītī, -ae, -a estis	audīveritis	audītī, -ae, -a sītis
3	audīvērunt/audīvēre	audītī, -ae, -a sunt	audīverint	audītī, -ae, -a sint

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **audīveram**	**audītus, -a, -um eram**	1 **audīvissem**	**audītus, -a, -um essem**
2 **audīverās**	**audītus, -a, -um erās**	2 **audīvissēs**	**audītus, -a, -um essēs**
3 **audīverat**	**audītus, -a, -um erat**	3 **audīvisset**	**audītus, -a, -um esset**
	Plural		
1 **audīverāmus**	**audītī, -ae, -a erāmus**	1 **audīvissēmus**	**audītī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2 **audīverātis**	**audītī, -ae, -a erātis**	2 **audīvissētis**	**audītī, -ae, -a essētis**
3 **audīverant**	**audītī, -ae, -a erant**	3 **audīvissent**	**audītī, -ae, -a essent**

Future Perfect

Active	Passive
Singular	
1 **audīverō**	**audītus, -a, -um erō**
2 **audīveris**	**audītus, -a, -um eris**
3 **audīverit**	**audītus, -a, -um erit**
Plural	
1 **audīverimus**	**audītī, -ae, -a erimus**
2 **audīveritis**	**audītī, -ae, -a eritis**
3 **audīverint**	**audītī, -ae, -a erunt**

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	**audiēns, audientis**	
Perfect		**audītus, -a, -um**
Future	**audītūrus, -a, -um**	**audiendus, -a, -um**

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**audīre**	**audīrī**
Perfect	**audīvisse**	**audītus, -a, -um esse**
Future	**audītūrus, -a, -um esse**	**[audītum īrī]**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **audī**	**audīre**
Plural	2 **audīte**	**audīminī**
[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **audītō**	**audītor**
	3 **audītō**	**audītor**
Plural	2 **audītōte**	
	3 **audiuntō**	**audiuntor]**

Irregular Verbs

Principal Parts: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

	Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active	
	Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
			Singular		
1	**sum**	**eram**	**erō**	**sim**	**essem**
2	**es**	**erās**	**eris**	**sīs**	**essēs**
3	**est**	**erat**	**erit**	**sit**	**esset**
			Plural		
1	**sumus**	**erāmus**	**erimus**	**sīmus**	**essēmus**
2	**estis**	**erātis**	**eritis**	**sītis**	**essētis**
3	**sunt**	**erant**	**erunt**	**sint**	**essent**
	Perfect	*Pluperfect*	*Future Perfect*	*Perfect*	*Pluperfect*
			Singular		
1	**fuī**	**fueram**	**fuerō**	**fuerim**	**fuissem**
2	**fuistī**	**fuerās**	**fueris**	**fueris**	**fuissēs**
3	**fuit**	**fuerat**	**fuerit**	**fuerit**	**fuisset**
			Plural		
1	**fuimus**	**fuerāmus**	**fuerimus**	**fuerimus**	**fuissēmus**
2	**fuistis**	**fuerātis**	**fueritis**	**fueritis**	**fuissētis**
3	**fuērunt/fuēre**	**fuerant**	**fuerint**	**fuerint**	**fuissent**

Participle

	Active
Future	**futūrus, -a, -um**

Infinitive

	Active
Present	**esse**
Perfect	**fuisse**
Future	**futūrus, -a, -um esse** or **fore**

[Imperative	*Present Active*	*Future Active*	
Singular	2 **es**	2 **estō**	3 **estō**
Plural	2 **este**	2 **estōte**	3 **suntō**]

Principal Parts: **possum, posse, potuī, ——**

	Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active	
	Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
			Singular		
1	possum	poteram	poterō	possim	possem
2	potes	poterās	poteris	possīs	possēs
3	potest	poterat	poterit	possit	posset
			Plural		
1	possumus	poterāmus	poterimus	possīmus	possēmus
2	potestis	poterātis	poteritis	possītis	possētis
3	possunt	poterant	poterunt	possint	possent
	Perfect	*Pluperfect*	*Future Perfect*	*Perfect*	*Pluperfect*
			Singular		
1	potuī	potueram	potuerō	potuerim	potuissem
2	potuistī	potuerās	potueris	potueris	potuissēs
3	potuit	potuerat	potuerit	potuerit	potuisset
			Plural		
1	potuimus	potuerāmus	potuerimus	potuerimus	potuissēmus
2	potuistis	potuerātis	potueritis	potueritis	potuissētis
3	potuērunt/ potuēre	potuerant	potuerint	potuerint	potuissent

Infinitive:

	Active
Present	**posse**
Perfect	**potuisse**

Principal Parts: **eō, īre, iī/īvī, itum**

	Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active	
	Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
			Singular		
1	eō	ībam	ībō	eam	īrem
2	īs	ībās	ībis	eās	īrēs
3	it	ībat	ībit	eat	īret
			Plural		
1	īmus	ībāmus	ībimus	eāmus	īrēmus
2	ītis	ībātis	ībitis	eātis	īrētis
3	eunt	ībant	ībunt	eant	īrent
	Perfect	*Pluperfect*	*Future Perfect*	*Perfect*	*Pluperfect*
			Singular		
1	iī/īvī	ieram/īveram	ierō/īverō	ierim/īverim	īssem/īvissem
2	īstī/īvistī	ierās/īverās	ieris/īveris	ieris/īveris	īssēs/īvissēs
3	iit/īt/īvit	ierat/īverat	ierit/īverit	ierit/īverit	īsset/īvisset
			Plural		
1	iimus/īmus/ īvimus	ierāmus/īverāmus	ierimus/īverimus	ierimus/īverimus	īssēmus/īvissēmus
2	īstis/īvistis	ierātis/īverātis	ieritis/īveritis	ieritis/īveritis	īssētis/īvissētis
3	iērunt/iēre/ īvērunt/īvēre	ierant/īverant	ierint/īverint	ierint/īverint	īssent/īvissent

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	**iēns, euntis**	
Perfect		**itum**
Future	**itūrus, -a, -um**	**eundum**

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**īre**	**[īrī]**
Perfect	**īsse/īvisse**	**itum esse**
Future	**itūrus, -a, -um esse**	

Imperative	*Present Active*	[*Future Active*	
Singular	2 **ī**	2 **ītō**	3 **ītō**
Plural	2 **īte**	2 **ītōte**	3 **euntō**]

Principal Parts: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus**

	Indicative		**Subjunctive**	
Present				
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		Singular		
1	**ferō**	**feror**	**feram**	**ferar**
2	**fers**	**ferris/ferre**	**ferās**	**ferāris/ferāre**
3	**fert**	**fertur**	**ferat**	**ferātur**
		Plural		
1	**ferimus**	**ferimur**	**ferāmus**	**ferāmur**
2	**fertis**	**feriminī**	**ferātis**	**ferāminī**
3	**ferunt**	**feruntur**	**ferant**	**ferantur**
Imperfect				
	Active	Passive	Active	Passive
		Singular		
1	**ferēbam**	**ferēbar**	**ferrem**	**ferrer**
2	**ferēbās**	**ferēbāris/ferēbāre**	**ferrēs**	**ferrēris/ferrēre**
3	**ferēbat**	**ferēbātur**	**ferret**	**ferrētur**
		Plural		
1	**ferēbāmus**	**ferēbāmur**	**ferrēmus**	**ferrēmur**
2	**ferēbātis**	**ferēbāminī**	**ferrētis**	**ferrēminī**
3	**ferēbant**	**ferēbantur**	**ferrent**	**ferrentur**
Future				
	Active	Passive		
		Singular		
1	feram	ferar		
2	ferēs	ferēris/ferēre		
3	feret	ferētur		
		Plural		
1	ferēmus	ferēmur		
2	ferētis	ferēminī		
3	ferent	ferentur		

Indicative		Subjunctive	
Perfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **tulī**	**lātus, -a, -um sum**	1 **tulerim**	**lātus, -a, -um sim**
2 **tulistī**	**lātus, -a, -um es**	2 **tuleris**	**lātus, -a, -um sīs**
3 **tulit**	**lātus, -a, -um est**	3 **tulerit**	**lātus, -a, -um sit**
	Plural		
1 **tulimus**	**lātī, -ae, -a sumus**	1 **tulerimus**	**lātī, -ae, -a sīmus**
2 **tulistis**	**lātī, -ae, -a estis**	2 **tuleritis**	**lātī, -ae, -a sītis**
3 **tulērunt/tulēre**	**lātī, -ae, -a sunt**	3 **tulerint**	**lātī, -ae, -a sint**
Pluperfect			
Active	Passive	Active	Passive
	Singular		
1 **tuleram**	**lātus, -a, -um eram**	1 **tulissem**	**lātus, -a, -um essem**
2 **tulerās**	**lātus, -a, -um erās**	2 **tulissēs**	**lātus, -a, -um essēs**
3 **tulerat**	**lātus, -a, -um erat**	3 **tulisset**	**lātus, -a, -um esset**
	Plural		
1 **tulerāmus**	**lātī, -ae, -a erāmus**	1 **tulissēmus**	**lātī, -ae, -a essēmus**
2 **tulerātis**	**lātī, -ae, -a erātis**	2 **tulissētis**	**lātī, -ae, -a essētis**
3 **tulerant**	**lātī, -ae, -a erant**	3 **tulissent**	**lātī, -ae, -a essent**
Future Perfect			
Active	Passive		
Singular			
1 **tulerō**	**lātus, -a, -um erō**		
2 **tuleris**	**lātus, -a, -um eris**		
3 **tulerit**	**lātus, -a, -um erit**		
Plural			
1 **tulerimus**	**lātī, -ae, -a erimus**		
2 **tuleritis**	**lātī, -ae, -a eritis**		
3 **tulerint**	**lātī, -ae, -a erunt**		

Participle

	Active	Passive
Present	**ferēns, ferentis**	
Perfect		**lātus, -a, -um**
Future	**lātūrus, -a, -um**	**ferendus, -a, -um**

Infinitive

	Active	Passive
Present	**ferre**	**ferrī**
Perfect	**tulisse**	**lātus, -a, -um esse**
Future	**lātūrus, -a, -um esse**	**[lātum īrī]**

Imperative

Present	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **fer**	**ferre**
Plural	2 **ferte**	**feriminī**
[Future	Active	Passive
Singular	2 **fertō**	**fertor**
	3 **fertō**	**fertor**
Plural	2 **fertōte**	
	3 **feruntō**	**feruntur]**

Principal Parts: **volō, velle, voluī, ——**
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——
mālō, mālle, māluī, ——

	Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active	
Present					
			Singular		
1 volō	nōlō	mālō	velim	nōlim	mālim
2 vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
3 vult	nōn vult	māvult	velit	nōlit	mālit
			Plural		
1 volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
2 vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
3 volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	velint	nōlint	mālint
Imperfect					
			Singular		
1 volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam	vellem	nōllem	māllem
2 volēbās	nōlēbās	mālēbās	vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
3 volēbat	nōlēbat	mālēbat	vellet	nōllet	māllet
			Plural		
1 volēbāmus	nōlēbāmus	mālēbāmus	vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
2 volēbātis	nōlēbātis	mālēbātis	vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
3 volēbant	nōlēbant	mālēbant	vellent	nōllent	māllent
Future					
	Singular				
1 volam	*nōlam	*mālam			
2 volēs	nōlēs	mālēs			
3 volet	nōlet	mālet			
	Plural				
1 volēmus	nōlēmus	mālēmus			
2 volētis	nōlētis	mālētis			
3 volent	nōlent	mālent			
Perfect					
			Singular		
1 voluī	nōluī	māluī	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
2 voluistī	nōluistī	māluistī	volueris	nōlueris	māluerīs
3 voluit	nōluit	māluit	voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
			Plural		
1 voluimus	nōluimus	māluimus	voluerimus	nōluerimus	māluerimus
2 voluistis	nōluistis	māluistis	volueritis	nōlueritis	māluerītis
3 voluērunt/ voluēre	nōluērunt/ nōluēre	māluērunt/ māluēre	voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint
Pluperfect					
			Singular		
1 volueram	nōlueram	mālueram	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
2 voluerās	nōluerās	māluerās	voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
3 voluerat	nōluerat	māluerat	voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
			Plural		
1 voluerāmus	nōluerāmus	māluerāmus	voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
2 voluerātis	nōluerātis	māluerātis	voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
3 voluerant	nōluerant	māluerant	voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

	Indicative Active	
Future Perfect		
	Singular	
1 **voluerō**	**nōluerō**	**māluerō**
2 **volueris**	**nōlueris**	**mālueris**
3 **voluerit**	**nōluerit**	**māluerit**
	Plural	
1 **voluerimus**	**nōluerimus**	**māluerimus**
2 **volueritis**	**nōlueritis**	**mālueritis**
3 **voluerint**	**nōluerint**	**māluerint**

Participle Present Active: **volēns, volentis; nōlēns, nōlentis**

Infinitive Present Active: **velle, nōlle, mālle**
Perfect Active: **voluisse, nōluisse, māluisse**

Imperative Present Active: **nōlī** (2nd sing.), **nōlīte** (2nd pl.)

Principal Parts: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**

Indicative Active			Subjunctive Active	
Present	*Imperfect*	*Future*	*Present*	*Imperfect*
		Singular		
1 **fīō**	**fīēbam**	**fiam**	**fiam**	**fierem**
2 **fīs**	**fīēbās**	**fiēs**	**fiās**	**fierēs**
3 **fit**	**fīēbat**	**fiet**	**fiat**	**fieret**
		Plural		
1 **fīmus**	**fīēbāmus**	**fiēmus**	**fiāmus**	**fierēmus**
2 **fītis**	**fīēbātis**	**fiētis**	**fiātis**	**fierētis**
3 **fiunt**	**fīēbant**	**fient**	**fiant**	**fierent**

Infinitive Present Active: **fierī**

Imperative Present Active: **fī** (2nd sing.), **fīte** (2nd pl.)

LATIN TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY

This Latin to English Vocabulary includes all words from vocabulary lists in *Learn to Read Latin*. Numbers in parentheses refer to the chapter (e.g., 6) or section (e.g., §16) in which the vocabulary word is introduced. Some additional meanings given in vocabulary notes are included.

ā, **ab** (prep. + abl.) (away) from (1); (prep. + abl.) by (3)
A. = **Aulus**, **Aulī** *m.* Aulus (§16)
abeō, **abīre**, **abiī**, **abitum** go away (5)
absēns, **absentis** absent (14)
absum, **abesse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus** be absent, be distant (14)
ac or **atque** (conj.) and (also) (3)
accēdō, **accēdere**, **accessī**, **accessum** go to, come to, approach (5)
accidō, **accidere**, **accidī**, —— happen (14)
accipiō, **accipere**, **accēpī**, **acceptus** receive; accept; hear (of), learn (of) (5)
ācer, **ācris**, **ācre** sharp, keen; fierce (6)
acerbus, **-a**, **-um** bitter; harsh (7)
aciēs, **aciēī** *f.* sharp edge; keenness; battle line (9)
ad (prep. + acc.) toward, to (1); (prep. + acc.) for the purpose of (13)
adeō (adv.) to such an extent, to so great an extent, (so) very (14)
adsum, **adesse**, **adfuī**, **adfutūrus** be present, be near (14)
Aenēās, **Aenēae** *m.* Aeneas; **Aenēān** = *acc. sing.*; **Aenēā** = *voc. sing.* (§16)
aequus, **-a**, **-um** level, even; equitable, just; calm, tranquil (10)
aestimō (1-tr.) estimate, value (13)
aetās, **aetātis** *f.* age; lifetime; time (14)
ager, **agrī** *m.* field (1)
agmen, **agminis** *n.* line (of march), column; army; multitude, throng (14)
agō, **agere**, **ēgī**, **āctus** drive; do; spend, conduct (4)
  causam agere (idiom) to plead a case (4)
  grātiās agere (idiom) to give thanks (12)
  age, **agite**, *used to strengthen other commands,* come on! (4)
agricola, **agricolae** *m.* farmer (1)
aliquī, **aliqua**, **aliquod** (indef. adj.) some, any (14)
aliquis, **aliquid** (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)
aliter (adv.) otherwise, in another way (9)
alius, **alia**, **aliud** other, another (9)
alter, **altera**, **alterum** the other (of two) (9)
altum, **altī** *n.* deep sea; height (4)
altus, **-a**, **-um** tall, high; deep (4)
ambulō (1-intr.) walk (2)
amīcitia, **amīcitiae** *f.* friendship (5)
amīcus, **-a**, **-um** friendly (+ dat.) (3)
amīcus, **amīcī** *m.* friend (3)
amō (1-tr.) love (2)
amor, **amōris** *m.* love; *pl.*, feelings of love (6)
Amor, **Amōris** *m.* Love, Amor (§63)
an (conj.) *introduces an alternative question,* or; *introduces an indirect question,* whether (12)
  —— . . . **an** . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)
anima, **animae** *f.* life force; soul (1)
animal, **animālis**, **-ium** *n.* animal (6)
animus, **animī** *m.* (rational) soul, mind; spirit; *pl.*, strong feelings (2)
annus, **annī** *m.* year (9)
ante (adv.) before, earlier, previously; (prep. + acc.) before; in front of (7)
antequam (conj.) before (13)
antīquus, **-a**, **-um** old, ancient (7)
M. Antōnius, **M. Antōniī** *m.* Marcus Antonius, Marc Antony (§16)

Apollō, **Apollinis** *m.* Apollo (§63)
App. = **Appius**, **Appiī** *m.* Appius (§16)
Appius, **Appiī** *m.* Appius (§16)
apud (prep. + acc.) at the house of, in the presence of, among (10)
āra, **ārae** *f.* altar (7)
arbitror (1-tr.) judge, consider, think (11)
arma, **armōrum** *n. pl.* arms, weapons (2)
ars, **artis**, **-ium** *f.* skill, art; guile; trick (7)
Athēnae, **Athēnārum** *f. pl.* Athens (6)
atque or **ac** (conj.) and (also) (3)
auctōritās, **auctōritātis** *f.* authority; influence (14)
audācia, **audāciae** *f.* boldness; recklessness, audacity (11)
audacter or **audāciter** (adv.) boldly; recklessly (8)
audāx, **audācis** daring, bold; reckless (8)
audeō, **audēre**, **ausus sum** dare (8)
audiō, **audīre**, **audīvī**, **audītus** hear, listen (to) (4)
auferō, **auferre**, **abstulī**, **ablātus** carry away, take away, remove (7)
Augustus, **Augustī** *m.* Augustus (§63)
Aulus, **Aulī** *m.* Aulus (§16)
aurum, **aurī** *n.* gold (1)
aut (conj.) or; **aut . . . aut . . .** either . . . or . . . (7)
autem (postpositive conj.) however; moreover (6)
auxilia, **auxiliōrum** *n. pl.* auxiliary troops (4)
auxilium, **auxiliī** *n.* aid, help (4)

Bacchus, **Bacchī** *m.* Bacchus (§63)
bellum, **bellī** *n.* war (1)
bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)
bene (adv.) well (5)
bene velle (idiom) to wish well (12)
bonus, **-a**, **-um** good (3)
brevis, **breve** short, brief (11)

C. = **Gaius**, **Gaiī** *m.* Gaius (§16)
cadō, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus** fall; die (10)
caecus, **-a**, **-um** blind; hidden, secret, dark (8)
caelum, **caelī** *n.* sky, heaven (4)
Caesar, **Caesaris** *m.* Caesar (§63)
campus, **campī** *m.* (flat) plain (11)
canō, **canere**, **cecinī**, **cantus** sing (of) (4)
capiō, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captus** take (up), capture; win (4)
cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)
caput, **capitis** *n.* head (15)
careō, **carēre**, **caruī**, **caritūrus** lack, be without, be free (from) (+ abl.) (6)
carmen, **carminis** *n.* song, poem (6)
Carthāgō, **Carthāginis** *f.* Carthage (6)
cārus, **-a**, **-um** precious; dear (to) (+ dat.) (7)
castra, **castrōrum** *n. pl.* (military) camp (11)
castra movēre (idiom) to break camp (11)
castra pōnere (idiom) to pitch *or* make camp (11)
cāsus, **cāsūs** *m.* fall; occurrence, chance, misfortune (10)
Catilīna, **Catilīnae** *m.* Catiline (§16)
Catō, **Catōnis** *m.* Cato (§63)
Catullus, **Catullī** *m.* Catullus (§16)
causā (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (13)
causa, **causae** *f.* reason, cause; case (4)
causam agere (idiom) to plead a case (4)
cēdō, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessum** go, move; yield; withdraw (5)
celer, **celeris**, **celere** swift (15)
centēsimus, **-a**, **-um** hundredth (§93)
centum (indeclinable adj.) hundred (§93)
Cerēs, **Cereris** *f.* Ceres (§63)
certē (adv.) surely, certainly; at least (7)
certus, **-a**, **-um** sure, certain, reliable (7)
cēterus, **-a**, **-um** rest (of), remaining part (of), (the) other (13)
Cicerō, **Cicerōnis** *m.* Cicero (§63)
cingō, **cingere**, **cīnxī**, **cīnctus** surround; gird (on oneself) (15)
circumdō, **circumdare**, **circumdedī**, **circumdatus** place round; surround (15)
cīvis, **cīvis**, **-ium** *m.* or *f.* citizen (6)
cīvitās, **cīvitātis** *f.* state, citizenry; citizenship (7)
clārus, **-a**, **-um** bright, clear; famous (4)
Cn. = **Gnaeus**, **Gnaeī** *m.* Gnaeus (§16)
——, ——, **coepī**, **coeptus** (defective verb) began, have begun (13)
cōgitō (1-tr.) think; ponder (2)
cognōscō, **cognōscere**, **cognōvī**, **cognitus** come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect,* know (10)
cōnferō, **cōnferre**, **contulī**, **collātus** bring together; compare; direct (14)
sē cōnferre (idiom) to betake oneself, to go (14)
cōnficiō, **cōnficere**, **cōnfēcī**, **cōnfectus** accomplish, complete; wear out; kill (12)
cōnor (1-tr.) try, attempt (8)
cōnsilium, **cōnsiliī** *n.* deliberation; plan, advice; judgment (1)
cōnsilium capere (idiom) to form a plan (4)
cōnstituō, **cōnstituere**, **cōnstituī**, **cōnstitūtus** set up, establish; decide (15)
cōnsul, **cōnsulis** *m.* consul (8)
cōnsulātus, **cōnsulātūs** *m.* consulship (9)
contrā (adv.) on the contrary; in opposition, in turn; (prep. + acc.) against, contrary to; facing (10)
cōpia, **cōpiae** *f.* wealth, abundance; *pl.,* troops, forces (7)
Corinna, **Corinnae** *f.* Corinna (§63)
L. Cornēlius Sulla, **L. Cornēliī Sullae** *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla (§16)
corpus, **corporis** *n.* body (6)

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus trust, believe (+ dat.) (11)
cum (prep. + abl.) with (1); (conj.) when; since; although (12)
cūnctus, -a, -um all (14)
Cupīdō, Cupīdinis *m.* Cupid, Amor (§63)
cupidus, -a, -um desirous (+ gen.) (4)
cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus desire, long for, want (7)
cūr (interrog. adv.) why (2)
cūra, cūrae *f.* care, concern; anxiety (2)
Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* Cynthia (§63)

D. = Decimus, Decimī *m.* Decimus (§16)
dē (prep. + abl.) (down) from; about, concerning (1)
dea, deae *f.* goddess (1)
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus owe; ought (2)
decem (indeclinable adj.) ten (4)
decimus, -a, -um tenth (§93)
Decimus, Decimī *m.* Decimus (§16)
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus destroy (10)
dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus deter, prevent (15)
deus, deī *m.* god (1)
Diāna, Diānae *f.* Diana (§63)
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus say, speak, tell (4)
dictum, dictī *n.* word; saying (6)
diēs, diēī *m.* or *f.* day (9)
differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus *intr.,* differ, be different; *tr.,* carry in different directions (7)
difficilis, difficile difficult (6)
difficiliter or **difficulter** (adv.) with difficulty (6)
dignus, -a, -um worthy (of) (+ abl.) (12)
dīligentia, dīligentiae *f.* diligence (3)
Dīs, Dītis *m.* Dis, Pluto, Hades (§63)
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum go away, depart (5)
dissimilis, dissimile dissimilar, unlike, different (+ gen. *or* dat.) (11)
diū (adv.) for a long time (11)
  diūtius (adv.) longer (11)
  diūtissimē (adv.) longest (11)
dīvīnus, -a, -um belonging to the gods, divine (§63)
dīvus, -a, -um deified, divine (§63)
dō, dare, dedī, datus give, grant (2)
  poenās dare (idiom) to pay the penalty (2)
  vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)
dominus, dominī *m.* master, lord (1)
domus, domī *f.* house, home (6)
domus, domūs *f.* house, home (9)
dōnec (conj.) while, as long as; until (13)
dōnō (1-tr.) give; present, reward (2)
dōnum, dōnī *n.* gift (1)
dubitō (1-tr.) hesitate; doubt (12)
dubium, dubiī *n.* doubt, hesitation (12)
dubius, -a, -um doubtful (12)
dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus lead; consider (4)
dulcis, dulce sweet, pleasant (15)
dum (conj.) while, as long as; until; provided that (13)
dummodo (conj.) provided that (13)
duo, duae, duo two (§93)
dūrus, -a, -um hard; harsh (5)
dux, ducis *m.* or *f.* leader (10)

ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (out) from (1)
ecce (interj.) lo! behold! look! (§74)
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus make; bring about (14)
ego, meī (personal pron.) I; me (4)
—, meī (reflexive pron.) myself (5)
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum go out, come out (13)
ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus throw out, expel
  sē ēicere (idiom) to rush forth (11)
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus buy (13)
enim (postpositive conj.) in fact, indeed; for (2)
eō (adv.) to that place, thither (§131)
eō, īre, iī/īvī, itum go (3)
eōdem (adv.) to the same place (§131)
equidem (adv.) indeed, certainly; for my part (4)
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus tear away, snatch away (15)
errō (1-intr.) wander; err, make a mistake (2)
et (conj.) and; **et . . . et . . .** both . . . and . . . ; (adv.) even, also (1)
etenim (conj.) and indeed; for in fact (2)
etiam (adv.) also, even; still (7)
etsī (conj.) although (5)
exercitus, exercitūs *m.* army (9)
experior, experīrī, expertus sum test; try; experience (8)
ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī *n.* exile, banishment (8)
ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) wait for, await, expect (13)

facile (adv.) easily; readily (6)
facilis, facile easy (6)
faciō, facere, fēcī, factus make; do (4); reckon (13)
factum, factī *n.* deed (1)
falsus, -a, -um deceptive, false (7)
fāma, fāmae *f.* report, rumor; reputation, fame (1)
fās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) right; (what is) permitted (12)
fateor, fatērī, fassus sum confess, admit (8)
fātum, fātī *n.* destiny, fate (5)
fēlīx, fēlīcis lucky, fortunate, happy (6)
fēmina, fēminae *f.* woman; wife (1)

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus bring, bear, carry; endure; say, report (5)
  lēgem ferre (idiom) to pass a law (8)
  sē ferre (idiom) to proceed (quickly) (5)
ferrum, ferrī *n.* iron; sword (1)
fidēs, fideī *f.* faith, trust; trustworthiness; loyalty (9)
fīlia, fīliae *f.* daughter (1)
fīlius, fīliī *m.* son (1)
fīnis, fīnis, -ium *m.* or *f.* end, limit, boundary; *pl.*, territory (10)
fīō, fierī, factus sum become, happen; be made, be done (13)
for (1-tr.) speak, say (15)
fore = futūrus, -a, -um esse (11)
fors, fortis, -ium *f.* chance, luck (12)
fortis, forte brave; strong (6)
fortūna, fortūnae *f.* fortune, chance (7)
forum, forī *n.* public square, marketplace, forum (3)
frāter, frātris *m.* brother (7)
fuga, fugae *f.* flight (8)
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus flee (7)

Gaius, Gaiī *m.* Gaius (§16)
gaudium, gaudiī *n.* joy (8)
gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* nation, people; clan, family (12)
genus, generis *n.* descent, origin; race, stock; kind, sort (10)
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus bear; manage, conduct; perform (4)
  bellum gerere (idiom) to wage war (4)
gladius, gladiī *m.* sword (1)
glōria, glōriae *f.* renown, glory (4)
Gnaeus, Gnaeī *m.* Gnaeus (§16)
Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* Gracchus (either of the Gracchi brothers) (§16)
gradior, gradī, gressus sum walk, step, proceed (13)
Graecia, Graeciae *f.* Greece (§16)
grātia, grātiae *f.* favor, kindness; gratitude, thanks (12)
  grātiās agere (idiom) to give thanks (12)
  grātiam or **grātiās habēre** (idiom) to have gratitude (12)
  grātiā (+ *preceding* gen.) for the purpose of, for the sake of (13)
grātus, -a, -um charming, pleasing; grateful, pleased (13)
gravis, grave heavy, deep; important, serious; severe (8)

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus have, hold; consider (2)
  grātiam or **grātiās habēre** (idiom) to have gratitude (12)
  ōrātiōnem habēre (idiom) to make a speech (10)
Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* Hannibal (§63)
haud (adv.) not at all, by no means (14)
herc(u)le (interj.) by Hercules! (§74)
heu (interj.) alas! oh! (§74)
hīc (adv.) here, in this place; at this time (§131)
hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) this; these (8)
hinc (adv.) from here, hence; henceforth; **hinc . . . hinc . . .** on this side . . . on that side . . . ; **hinc . . . illinc . . .** on this side . . . on that side . . . (§131)
homō, hominis *m.* human being, man (6)
honestus, -a, -um honorable, respectable (10)
honor or **honōs, honōris** *m.* honor, respect; (political) office (13)
Q. Horātius Flaccus, Q. Horātiī Flaccī *m.* Quintus Horatius Flaccus, Horace (§16)
hortor (1-tr.) urge, encourage, exhort (9)
hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (public) enemy (6)
hūc (adv.) to here, hither (§131)
humilis, humile humble (11)

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus throw; utter; lay, establish (11)
iam (adv.) (by) now; (by) then, already; presently (9)
ibi (adv.) in that place, there; then, thereupon (§131)
īdem, eadem, idem same (8)
igitur (postpositive conj.) therefore (11)
ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* fire (11)
Īlium, Īliī *n.* Ilium, Troy (§16)
ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that; those (8)
illīc (adv.) there, in that place (§131)
illinc (adv.) from there, thence; **hinc . . . illinc . . .** on this side . . . on that side . . . (§131)
illūc (adv.) to there, thither (§131)
immortālis, immortāle immortal (7)
impediō, impedīre, impediī/impedīvī, impedītus hinder, impede (15)
imperātor, imperātōris *m.* commander, general (11)
imperium, imperiī *n.* power, authority, command; empire (3)
imperō (1-intr.) give an order, order, command (+ dat.) (9)
impius, -a, -um disloyal, wicked (5)
in (prep. + acc.) into, onto; against; (prep. + abl.) in, on (1)
incertus, -a, -um unsure, uncertain, unreliable (7)
incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus take on, begin (13)
incola, incolae *m.* inhabitant (3)
inde (adv.) from that place, from there, thence; from that time, thereupon (§131)
indignus, -a, -um unworthy (of) (+ abl.) (12)
īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis unlucky, unfortunate, unhappy (6)
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus carry (into); inflict (on) (12)
ingenium, ingeniī *n.* nature; disposition; (natural) talent (7)
ingēns, ingentis huge, vast; remarkable (6)

ingrātus, -a, -um unpleasant, displeasing; ungrateful, displeased (13)
inimīcitia, inimīcitiae *f.* enmity, hostility; *pl.,* unfriendly relations, enmity (5)
inimīcus, -a, -um unfriendly, hostile (+ dat.) (3)
inimīcus, inimīcī *m.* (personal) enemy (3)
inīquus, -a, -um uneven; inequitable, unjust (10)
inquam (defective verb) say (8)
īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* ambush, plot, treachery (7)
īnsula, īnsulae *f.* island (1)
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus understand (6)
inter (prep. + acc.) between, among; during (6)
interest, interesse, interfuit it is important, it concerns (15)
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus kill (5)
inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus find, discover (11)
invidia, invidiae *f.* envy, jealousy; ill-will, resentment (4)
ipse, ipsa, ipsum (intensive adj.) -self, -selves; very (5)
īra, īrae *f.* anger, wrath (2)
is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) this, that; these, those; (personal pron.) he, she, it; they; him, her, it; them (4)
iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) that (of yours); those (of yours) (8)
ita (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way (7)
Italia, Italiae *f.* Italy (1)
iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus order (2)
Iūlia, Iūliae *f.* Julia (§16)
C. Iūlius Caesar, C. Iūliī Caesaris *m.* Gaius Julius Caesar (§63)
Iūnō, Iūnōnis *f.* Juno (§63)
Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* Jupiter (§63)
iūre (adv.) rightly, justly (6)
iūs, iūris *n.* right, law; judgment; court (6)
iussum, iussī *n.* order, command; *abl. sing.,* **iussū** (9)

L. = **Lūcius, Lūciī** *m.* Lucius (§16)
labor, labōris *m.* work, labor; effort, hardship (10)
labōrō (1-intr.) work; suffer, be distressed (2)
laetus, -a, -um happy; fertile (3)
laudō (1-tr.) praise (3)
lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* legate, envoy; lieutenant (10)
legiō, legiōnis *f.* legion (11)
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus choose; read (6)
Lesbia, Lesbiae *f.* Lesbia (§63)
levis, leve light; trivial; fickle (8)
lēx, lēgis *f.* law (8)
lēgem ferre (idiom) to pass a law (8)
liber, librī *m.* book (1)
līber, lībera, līberum free (3)
Līber, Līberī *m.* Liber, Bacchus (§63)
līberō (1-tr.) free (6)
lībertās, lībertātis *f.* freedom (8)
licet, licēre, licuit or **licitum est** it is permitted (14)
littera, litterae *f.* letter (of the alphabet); *pl.,* letter, epistle; literature (12)
Līvia, Līviae *f.* Livia (§16)
locus, locī *m.* place; **loca, locōrum** *n. pl.* places (8)
longē (adv.) a long way, far; by far (11)
longus, -a, -um long; far; long-standing; far-reaching (11)
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum speak, talk (11)
Lūcius, Lūciī *m.* Lucius (§16)
lūmen, lūminis *n.* light, radiance; *pl.,* eyes (13)
lūna, lūnae *f.* moon (14)
lūx, lūcis *f.* light, daylight (11)
prīmā lūce (idiom) at dawn (11)

M. = **Marcus, Marcī** *m.* Marcus (§16)
M'. = **Manius, Maniī**, *m.* Manius (§16)
magis (adv.) more (greatly) (11)
magnopere (adv.) greatly (10)
magnus, -a, -um large, big; great (3)
magnam partem (adverbial acc.), for a great part (13)
maior, maius (adj.) greater (11)
maiōrēs, maiōrum *m. pl.* ancestors (11)
male (adv.) badly (5)
male velle (idiom) to wish ill (12)
mālō, mālle, māluī, —— want more, prefer (12)
malus, -a, -um bad, evil (3)
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus remain, stay; *tr.,* await (7)
Manius, Maniī, *m.* Manius (§16)
manus, manūs *f.* hand; band, troop (9)
Marcus, Marcī *m.* Marcus (§16)
mare, maris, *-ium *n.* sea (6)
Mars, Martis *m.* Mars (§63)
māter, mātris *f.* mother (6)
maximē (adv.) most greatly; especially (11)
maximus, -a, -um greatest (11)
maximam partem (adverbial acc.) for the greatest part, for the most part (13)
medius, -a, -um middle (of); *neut. subst.,* midst; the open (10)
mehercule or **meherculēs** (interj.) by Hercules! (§74)
—, meī (reflexive pron.) myself (5)
melior, melius (adj.) better (11)
melius (adv.) better (11)
meminī, meminisse (defective verb) remember (5)
memoria, memoriae *f.* memory (12)
mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* mind; intention, purpose; attitude (6)
Mercurius, Mercuriī *m.* Mercury (§63)
metuō, metuere, metuī, —— fear, dread (14)
metus, metūs *m.* fear, dread (10)

meus, **-a**, **-um** my, mine (4); my (own) (5)
mī, *masc. sing. voc. of* **meus**, **-a**, **-um** (4)
mīles, **mīlitis** *m.* soldier (6)
mīlle; **mīlia**, **mīlium** thousand (§93)
mīllēsimus, **-a**, **-um** thousandth (§93)
Minerva, **Minervae** *f.* Minerva (§63)
minimē (adv.) least; not at all (11)
minimus, **-a**, **-um** smallest (11)
minor, **minus** (adj.) smaller (11)
minus (adv.) less (11)
miser, **misera**, **miserum** wretched, pitiable, miserable (3)
miseret, **miserēre**, **miseruit** or **miseritum est** it moves (one) to pity (15)
mittō, **mittere**, **mīsī**, **missus** send (4)
modo (adv.) only, just; now, just now (12); (conj.) provided that (13)
modus, **modī** *m.* measure; limit; rhythm, meter; manner, way (8)
quemadmodum (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how (8)
quō modō (interrog. adv.) in what way, how (8)
moenia, **moenium** *n. pl.* (city) walls (6)
moneō, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitus** warn; remind; advise (9)
mōns, **montis**, **-ium** *m.* mountain (12)
mōnstrō (1-tr.) show, point out (2)
mora, **morae** *f.* delay (3)
morior, **morī**, **mortuus sum** die (8)
moror (1-tr.) hinder, delay, wait (13)
mors, **mortis**, **-ium** *f.* death (7)
mortālis, **mortāle** mortal (7)
mōs, **mōris** *m.* custom, practice; *pl. (sometimes),* character (10)
mōtus, **mōtūs** *m.* motion, movement; disturbance (9)
moveō, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtus** set in motion, stir (up), move (2)
mox (adv.) soon; then (3)
multum (adv.) much, a lot (5)
multus, **-a**, **-um** much, many (3)
mūnus, **mūneris** *n.* service, duty; gift (8)
mūrus, **mūrī** *m.* wall (11)
mūtō (1-tr.) change; take in exchange, give in exchange (13)

nam (conj.) for (2)
namque (conj.) for in fact (2)
nāscor, **nāscī**, **nātus sum** be born (10)
nātūra, **nātūrae** *f.* nature (7)
nātus, **nātī** *m.* son (10)
nauta, **nautae** *m.* sailor (1)
-ne (interrog. enclitic particle) *added to the first word of a question* (2)
-ne . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)
nē (adv.) not (7); (conj.) *introduces negative Purpose clause,* in order that . . . not (9); *introduces negative Indirect Command,* that . . . not (9); (conj.) *introduces positive Fear clause,* that (15)
nē . . . quidem not . . . even (4)
nec or **neque** (conj.-adv.) and not; **neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . .** neither . . . nor . . . (2)
necesse (indeclinable adj.) necessary (14)
necne (conj.) *in Indirect Question,* or not (12)
nefās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (what is divinely) forbidden, sacrilege (12)
nēmō, **nēminis** *m.* or *f.* no one (9)
Neptūnus, **Neptūnī** *m.* Neptune (§63)
neque or **nec** (conj.-adv.) and not; **neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . .** neither . . . nor . . . (2)
Nerō Claudius Caesar, **Nerōnis Claudiī Caesaris** *m.* Nero Claudius Caesar, Nero (§63)
nesciō, **nescīre**, **nesciī/nescīvī**, **nescītus** not know (11)
neuter, **neutra**, **neutrum** neither (of two) (9)
nihil or **nīl** (indeclinable noun) *n.* nothing (3)
nihil (adverbial acc.) not at all (13)
nihilum, **nihilī** or **nīlum**, **nīlī** *n.* nothing (13)
nisi (conj.) if . . . not, unless (5)
nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —— be unwilling, not want, not wish (12)
nōlī, **nōlīte** (+ inf.) do not (12)
nōmen, **nōminis** *n.* name (14)
nōn (adv.) not (2)
nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . not only . . . but also . . . (7)
nōnne (interrog. particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer "yes"* (12)
nōnus, **-a**, **-um** ninth (§93)
nōs, **nostrum/nostrī** (personal pron.) we; us (4)
nōscō, **nōscere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus** come to know, learn, recognize; *perfect,* know (10)
noster, **nostra**, **nostrum** our, ours (4); our (own) (5)
——, **nostrum/nostrī** (reflexive pron.) ourselves (5)
nōtus, **-a**, **-um** known, well-known; familiar (10)
novem (indeclinable adj.) nine (§93)
novus, **-a**, **-um** new; strange (7)
nox, **noctis**, **-ium** *f.* night (9)
nūllus, **-a**, **-um** not any, no (9)
num (interrogative particle) *introduces a direct question expecting the answer "no"; introduces an Indirect Question,* whether (12)
nūmen, **nūminis** *n.* divine power, divinity, divine spirit, numen (15)
numquam (adv.) never (6)
nunc (adv.) now (3)

ō (interj.) O (1)
ob (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of (9)
oblīvīscor, **oblīvīscī**, **oblītus sum** forget (+ gen.) (12)

obstō, **obstāre**, **obstitī**, **obstātūrus** stand in the way; hinder, block (15)
occidēns, **occidentis** *m.* west (14)
occidō, **occidere**, **occidī**, **occāsūrus** fall, set; die (14)
octāvus, **-a**, **-um** eighth (§93)
octō (indeclinable adj.) eight (§93)
oculus, **oculī** *m.* eye (8)
ōdī, **ōdisse** (defective verb) hate (5)
odium, **odiī** *n.* hatred (3)
omnīnō (adv.) entirely; *in negative or virtual negative statements or questions,* at all (6)
omnis, **omne** every; all (6)
oportet, **oportēre**, **oportuit** it is proper, it is right (14)
oppidum, **oppidī** *n.* town (1)
opprimō, **opprimere**, **oppressī**, **oppressus** press on; overwhelm, oppress (14)
oppugnō (1-tr.) attack (10)
optimē (adv.) best (11)
optimus, **-a**, **-um** best (11)
optō (1-tr.) desire (2)
opus, **operis** *n.* work (10)
  opus est there is need of (+ abl. *or* nom.) (10)
ōrātiō, **ōrātiōnis** *f.* oration, speech (10)
  ōrātiōnem habēre (idiom) to make a speech (10)
ōrātor, **ōrātōris** *m.* speaker, orator (10)
orbis, **orbis**, **-ium** *m.* ring, circle (15)
  orbis terrārum world (15)
Orcus, **Orcī** *m.* Orcus (§63)
oriēns, **orientis** *m.* east (14)
orior, **orīrī**, **ortus sum** rise, arise (14)
ōrō (1-tr.) beg (for) (12)
ōs, **ōris** *n. sing. or pl.* mouth; face (14)
P. Ovidius Nāsō, **P. Ovidiī Nāsōnis** *m.* Publius Ovidius Naso, Ovid (§63)

P. = **Publius**, **Publiī** *m.* Publius (§16)
paenitet, **paenitēre**, **paenituit** it causes (one) to repent *or* regret (15)
pāreō, **pārēre**, **pāruī**, **pāritūrus** be obedient, obey (+ dat.) (8)
parō (1-tr.) prepare (for); get, obtain (9)
pars, **partis**, **-ium** *f.* part; *sing. or pl.,* (political) faction (7)
parum (indeclinable subst.) too little, not enough; (adv.) too little, inadequately (11)
parvus, **-a**, **-um** small, little (3)
pater, **patris** *m.* father (6)
patior, **patī**, **passus sum** experience, suffer, endure; permit, allow (8)
patrēs cōnscrīptī *voc. pl.* enrolled fathers, senators (6)
patria, **patriae** *f.* country, homeland (1)
paucī, **paucae**, **pauca** few (4)
paulum, ***paulī** *n.* small amount, a little (11)
pāx, **pācis** *f.* peace; favor (8)
pectus, **pectoris** *n. sing. or pl.,* chest, breast; heart (10)
pecūnia, **pecūniae** *f.* money (1)
peior, **peius** (comparative adj.) worse (11)
peius (comparative adv.) worse (11)
pellō, **pellere**, **pepulī**, **pulsus** push, drive (off) (9)
per (prep. + acc.) through; by (4)
perditē (adv.) recklessly, desperately, ruinously (13)
perditus, **-a**, **-um** (morally) lost, ruined, depraved (13)
perdō, **perdere**, **perdidī**, **perditus** destroy; lose (13)
pereō, **perīre**, **periī**, **peritūrus** pass away, be destroyed; perish, die (11)
perferō, **perferre**, **pertulī**, **perlātus** suffer, endure; report (10)
perficiō, **perficere**, **perfēcī**, **perfectus** complete, accomplish (5)
perīculum, **perīculī** *n.* danger (1)
pessimē (adv.) worst (11)
pessimus, **-a**, **-um** worst (11)
petō, **petere**, **petiī/petīvī**, **petītus** ask (for), seek; attack (7)
piget, **pigēre**, **piguit** it disgusts (one), it irks (one) (15)
pius, **-a**, **-um** dutiful, loyal (5)
placeō, **placēre**, **placuī**, **placitum** be pleasing, please (+ dat.) (8)
plūrimē (adv.) most (11)
plūrimus, **-a**, **-um** most (11)
  plūrimum (adverbial acc.) very much (13)
plūs (adv.) more (11)
plūs; **plūrēs**, **plūra** (adj.) more (11)
poena, **poenae** *f.* punishment, penalty (2)
  poenās dare (idiom) to pay the penalty (2)
poēta, **poētae** *m.* poet (1)
Cn. Pompeius Magnus, **Cn. Pompeiī Magnī** *m.* Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey the Great (§16)
pōnō, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positus** put, place; set aside (4)
populus, **populī** *m.* (the) people; populace (3)
M. Porcius Catō, **M. Porciī Catōnis** *m.* Marcus Porcius Cato, Cato the Elder *or* Cato the Censor (§63)
possum, **posse**, **potuī**, —— be able, can (2)
post (adv.) after(ward), later; behind; (prep. + acc.) after; behind (7)
postquam (conj.) after (5)
praeferō, **praeferre**, **praetulī**, **praelātus** prefer (to) (12)
praeficiō, **praeficere**, **praefēcī**, **praefectus** put in charge (of) (12)
praesum, **praeesse**, **praefuī**, **praefutūrus** be in charge (of) (12)
praeter (prep. + acc.) beyond; except (12)
premō, **premere**, **pressī**, **pressus** press (hard); overpower; check (14)
pretium, **pretiī** *n.* price, value (13)

prīmum (adv.) first; for the first time (11)
quam prīmum as soon as possible (11)
prīmus, -a, -um first (§93)
prīmā lūce (idiom) at dawn (11)
prior, prius (adj.) earlier (11)
prius (adv.) before, sooner (11)
priusquam (conj.) before (13)
prō (prep. + abl.) in front of; on behalf of, for; in return for, instead of (3)
proelium, proeliī *n.* battle (5)
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum set out, set forth (10)
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus prevent; prohibit, forbid (15)
Sex. Propertius, Sex. Propertiī *m.* Sextus Propertius (§63)
propter (prep. + acc.) on account of, because of (3)
prōvincia, prōvinciae *f.* province (3)
pūblicus, -a, -um public (9)
Publius, Publiī *m.* Publius (§16)
pudet, pudēre, puduit or **puditum est** it makes (one) ashamed (15)
puella, puellae *f.* girl (1)
puer, puerī *m.* boy (1)
pugnō (1-intr.) fight (3)
pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum beautiful, handsome (3)
putō (1-tr.) think, suppose (11)

Q. = Quintus, Quintī *m.* Quintus (§16)
quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesīvī, quaesītus search for, seek, ask (9)
quālis, quāle what sort of; of which sort, as (13)
quam (adv.) as, how; (conj.) than (11)
quam ob rem (adv.) on account of which thing, why; therefore (9)
quam prīmum as soon as possible (11)
quamquam (conj.) although (5)
quantus, -a, -um how much, how great; as much, as great (13)
quantum (adverbial acc.) how much, as much (13)
quārē (adv.) because of which thing, why; therefore (9)
quartus, -a, -um fourth (§93)
quattuor (indeclinable adj.) four (§93)
-que (enclitic conj.) and (1)
quemadmodum (rel. or interrog. adv.) in the manner in which, as; how (8)
quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) some, any (14)
quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) what, which (8)
quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) who, which, that (8)
quia (conj.) because (13)
quid (adverbial acc.) to what extent, why (13)
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (indef. pron.) (a) certain person, (a) certain thing (10)
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (indef. adj.) (a) certain (10)
quidem (postpositive adv.) indeed, certainly; at least (4)
nē . . . quidem not even (4)
quīn (rel. adv.) *introduces Relative Clause of Characteristic,* who/that . . . not (10); (conj.) *introduces Doubting clause,* that (12); (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause,* from (15)
quīnque (indeclinable adj.) five (§93)
quintus, -a, -um fifth (§93)
Quintus, Quintī *m.* Quintus (§16)
quīque, quaeque, quodque (indef. adj.) each, every (14)
quis, quid (interrog. pron.) who, what (8); (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)
quid (adverbial acc.), to what extent, why (13)
quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) someone, something; anyone, anything (14)
quisque, quidque (quicque) (indef. pron.) each/every man/woman, each/every thing (14)
quō (rel. adv.) to where, whither (9); (interrog. adv.) to where, whither (12)
quod (conj.) because (13); (conj.) the fact that (15)
quodsī (conj.) but if (14)
quōminus (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause,* from (15)
quō modō (interrog. adv.) in what way, how (8)
quoniam (conj.) since, because (5)
quoque (adv.) also, too (8)
quot (indeclinable adj.) how many; as many (13)

rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus seize, tear away, carry (off) (15)
redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum go back, return (5)
referō, referre, rettulī, relātus bring back; report (10)
rēfert, rēferre, rētulit it is important, it concerns (15)
rēgīna, rēgīnae *f.* queen (1)
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus rule, control (4)
relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus leave (behind), abandon (8)
reliquus, -a, -um remaining, rest (of) (14)
Remus, Remī *m.* Remus (§16)
rēs, reī *f.* thing; property; matter, affair; activity; situation (9)
rēs gestae, rērum gestārum *f. pl.* accomplishments; history (9)
rēs novae, rērum novārum *f. pl.* revolution (9)
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae *f.* republic (9)
respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus answer, respond (2)

rēx, rēgis *m.* king (6)
rogō (1-tr.) ask (for) (12)
Rōma, Rōmae *f.* Rome (6)
Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum *m. pl.* (the) Romans (3)
Rōmānus, -a, -um Roman (3)
Rōmulus, Rōmulī *m.* Romulus (§16)
rūmor, rūmōris *m.* rumor (12)
rūs, rūris *n. sing. or pl.,* country(side) (6)

saepe (adv.) often (8)
  saepius (adv.) more often (11)
  saepissimē (adv.) most often (11)
saevus, -a, -um cruel, savage (13)
salūs, salūtis *f.* safety; health (§74)
  salūtem dīcere to say "greetings," to say hello (§74)
salvē/salvēte hello! good day! (§74)
sapiēns, sapientis wise (11)
sapientia, sapientiae *f.* wisdom (2)
satis or **sat** (indeclinable subst.) enough; (adv.) enough, sufficiently (10)
scelus, sceleris *n.* wicked deed, crime; villainy (13)
sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītus know (11)
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus write (4)
secundus, -a, -um second (§93)
sed (conj.) but (2)
semper (adv.) always (3)
C. Semprōnius Gracchus, C. Semprōniī Gracchī *m.* Gaius Sempronius Gracchus (§16)
Ti. Semprōnius Gracchus, Ti. Semprōniī Gracchī *m.* Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus (§16)
senātus, senātūs *m.* senate (9)
sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* perception, feeling; sense (11)
sententia, sententiae *f.* thought, feeling; opinion (4)
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus perceive; feel (4)
septem (indeclinable adj.) seven (§93)
septimus, -a, -um seventh (§93)
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum follow (8)
Ser. = Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius (§16)
L. Sergius Catilīna, L. Sergiī Catilīnae *m.* Lucius Sergius Catilina, Catiline (§16)
servitūs, servitūtis *f.* slavery (6)
Servius, Serviī *m.* Servius (§16)
servō (1-tr.) save, preserve (10)
servus, servī *m.* slave (1)
sex (indeclinable adj.) six (§93)
Sex. = Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (§16)
sextus, -a, -um sixth (§93)
Sextus, Sextī *m.* Sextus (§16)
sī (conj.) if (5)
sīc (adv.) so, thus, in this way, in such a way (5)
signum, signī *n.* sign, signal; standard (11)
similis, simile similar (+ gen. *or* dat.) (11)
sine (prep. + abl.) without (3)
socius, -a, -um allied (4)
socius, sociī *m.* ally, comrade (4)
sōl, sōlis *m.* sun (14)
soleō, solēre, solitus sum be accustomed (11)
sōlum (adv.) only (7)
sōlus, -a, -um alone, only (9)
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus loosen; free, release; dissolve (15)
soror, sorōris *f.* sister (7)
Sp. = Spurius, Spuriī *m.* Spurius (§16)
speciēs, *speciēī *f.* appearance, aspect (9)
spectō (1-tr.) look (at), observe (14)
spērō (1-tr.) hope (for) (12)
spēs, speī *f.* hope (10)
Spurius, Spuriī *m.* Spurius (§16)
stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus stand; stand fast, endure (10)
studium, studiī *n.* zeal, enthusiasm; pursuit, study (2)
sub (prep. + acc.) under; up to; (prep. + abl.) under; at the foot of; near (6)
—, suī (reflexive pron.) himself, herself, itself; themselves (5)
Sulla, Sullae *m.* Sulla (§16)
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus be; exist (2)
summus, -a, -um highest; top (of); last, final (11)
superō (1-tr.) overcome, conquer; surpass (3)
suus, -a, -um his (own), her (own), its (own); their (own) (5)

T. = Tītus, Tītī *m.* Titus (§16)
taedet, taedēre, taesum est it makes (one) tired *or* sick (15)
tālis, tāle such, of such a sort (13)
tam (adv.) so (13)
tamen (adv.) nevertheless (5)
tandem (adv.) finally, at last; *in questions and commands,* pray, I ask you, then (8)
tantus, -a, -um so much, so great (13)
  tantum (adverbial acc.) so much, only (so much) (13)
tēlum, tēlī *n.* spear; weapon (11)
templum, templī *n.* temple (7)
tempus, temporis *n.* time (9)
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus hold, grasp; keep, possess; occupy (3)
terra, terrae *f.* land, earth (3)
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus terrify, frighten (7)
tertius, -a, -um third (§93)
Ti. = Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* Tiberius (§16)
Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* Tiberius (§16)
timeō, timēre, timuī, —— fear, be afraid (of) (2)
timor, timōris *m.* fear (6)
Tītus, Tītī *m.* Titus (§16)

tot (indeclinable adj.) so many (13)
tōtus, -a, -um whole, entire; all (9)
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus hand over, surrender; hand down (7)
trēs, tria three (§93)
Troia, Troiae *f.* Troy (§16)
tū, tuī (personal pron.) you (4)
—, **tuī** (reflexive pron.) yourself (5)
M. Tullius Cicerō, M. Tulliī Cicerōnis *m.* Marcus Tullius Cicero (§63)
tum or **tunc** (adv.) then, at that time (12)
turpis, turpe foul, ugly; base, shameful (15)
tuus, -a, -um your, yours (4); your (own) (5)

ubi (conj.) when (5); (interrog. adv.) where, when (5); (rel. adv.) where (9)
ūllus, -a, -um any (9)
umbra, umbrae *f.* shadow, shade (7)
umquam (adv.) ever (6)
unde (rel. adv.) from where, whence (9); (interrog. adv.) from where, whence (12)
ūnus, -a, -um one; only (9)
urbs, urbis, -ium *f.* city (6)
ut (conj.) as; when (5); (conj.) *introduces Purpose clause,* in order that (9); *introduces Indirect Command,* that (9); (conj.) *introduces negative Fear clause,* that . . . not (15)
uter, utra, utrum (interrog. adj.) which (of two) (9)
utinam (particle) *introduces an Optative subjunctive* (7)
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum use; experience, enjoy (+ abl.) (10)
utrum (interrog. particle) *introduces the first question of a double direct or Indirect Question* (12)
utrum . . . an . . . whether . . . or . . . (12)

valdē (adv.) strongly (5)
valē/valēte greetings! farewell! (§74)
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus be strong, be able; be well, fare well (§74)
C. Valerius Catullus, C. Valeriī Catullī *m.* Gaius Valerius Catullus (§16)
validus, -a, -um strong; healthy (4)
vel (conj.) or; **vel . . . vel** . . . either . . . or . . . ; (adv.) even (14)
vēlum, vēlī *n.* sail (2)
vēla dare (idiom) to set sail (2)
vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus sell (13)
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum come (4)
Venus, Veneris *f.* Venus (§63)
verbum, verbī *n.* word (1)
vereor, verērī, veritus sum be in awe of, respect; dread, fear (15)
P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergiliī Marōnis *m.* Publius Vergilius Maro, Vergil (§63)
vērō (adv.) certainly, indeed; but (in fact) (7)
vērum (conj.) but (7)
vērus, -a, -um real, true (7)
Vesta, Vestae *f.* Vesta (§63)
vester, vestra, vestrum your (pl.), yours (pl.) (4); your (pl.) (own) (5)
——, **vestrum/vestrī** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)
vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus forbid (15)
vetus, veteris old (14)
via, viae *f.* way, road, path, street (1)
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus see (2); *passive,* be seen; seem (3)
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus conquer, overcome; *intr.,* win (7)
vir, virī *m.* man; husband (1)
virtūs, virtūtis *f.* manliness, courage; excellence, virtue (7)
vīs, ——, -ium *f.* force, power; violence; *pl.,* strength (6)
vīta, vītae *f.* life (2)
vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus live, be alive (6)
vix (adv.) scarcely, hardly (14)
vocō (1-tr.) call; summon; name (2)
volō, velle, voluī, —— be willing, want, wish (12)
bene velle (idiom) to wish well (12)
male velle (idiom) to wish ill (12)
vōs, vestrum/vestrī (personal pron.) you (pl.) (4)
——, **vestrum/vestrī** (reflexive pron.) yourselves (5)
vōx, vōcis *f.* voice; word (7)
Vulcānus, Vulcānī *m.* Vulcan (§63)
vulnus, vulneris *n.* wound (13)
vultus, vultūs *m. sing. or pl.,* expression; face (15)

ENGLISH TO LATIN VOCABULARY

This English to Latin Vocabulary includes all words from vocabulary lists in *Learn to Read Latin*. Numbers in parentheses refer to the chapter (e.g., 6) or section (e.g., §16) in which the vocabulary word is introduced. Some additional meanings given in vocabulary notes are included.

? -ne (enclitic) *added to the first word of a question* (2)
? *expecting the answer "no"* num (12)
? *expecting the answer "yes"* nōnne (12)

a lot multum (5)
abandon relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus (8)
about dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
absent absēns, absentis (14)
abundance cōpia, cōpiae *f.* (7)
accept accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
accomplish perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus (5); cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus (12)
accomplishments rēs gestae, rērum gestārum *f. pl.* (9)
activity rēs, reī *f.* (9)
admit fateor, fatērī, fassus sum (8)
advice cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* (1)
advise moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus (9)
Aeneas Aenēās, Aenēae *m.*; Aenēān = *acc. sing.*; Aenēā = *voc. sing.* (§16)
affair rēs, reī *f.* (9)
after post (adv.) (7)
after post (prep. + acc.) (7)
after postquam (conj.) (5)
afterward post (adv.) (7)
against in (prep. + acc.) (1); contrā (prep. + acc.) (10)
age aetās, aetātis *f.* (14)
aid auxilium, auxiliī *n.* (4)
alas heu (interj.) (§74)
all omnis, omne (8); tōtus, -a, -um (9); cūnctus, -a, -um (14)
allied socius, -a, -um (4)
allow patior, patī, passus sum (8)
ally socius, sociī *m.* (4)
alone sōlus, -a, -um (9); ūnus, -a, -um (9)
already iam (adv.) (9)
also et (adv.) (1); etiam (adv.) (7); quoque (adv.) (8)
altar āra, ārae *f.* (7)
although etsī (conj.) (5); quamquam (conj.) (5); cum (conj.) (12)
always semper (adv.) (3)
ambush īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* (7)
among inter (prep. + acc.) (6); apud (prep. + acc.) (10)
Amor Amor, Amōris *m.* (§63); Cupīdō, Cupīdinis *m.* (§63)
ancestors maiōrēs, maiōrum *m. pl.* (11)
ancient antīquus, -a, -um (7)
and et (conj.) (1); -que (enclitic conj.) (1)
and (also) atque (conj.) (3); ac (conj.) (3)
and indeed etenim (conj.) (2)
and not neque, nec (conj.-adv.) (2)
anger īra, īrae *f.* (2)
animal animal, animālis, -ium *n.* (6)
another alius, -a, -um (9)
answer respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus (2)
Antony Antōnius, Antōniī *m.* (§16)
anxiety cūra, cūrae *f.* (2))
any ūllus, -a, -um (9); aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (indef. adj.) (14); quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) (14)
anyone aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) (14); quis, quid (indef. pron.) (14); quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) (14)

anything aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) (14); quis, quid (indef. pron.) (14); quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) (14)
Apollo Apollō, Apollinis *m.* (§63)
appearance speciēs, *speciēī *f.* (9)
Appius Appius, Appiī *m.* (abbreviation: App.) (§16)
approach accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (5)
arise orior, orīrī, ortus sum (14)
arms arma, armōrum *n. pl.* (2)
army exercitus, exercitūs *m.* (9)
art ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
as quālis, quāle (13)
as quam (adv.) (11)
as quemadmodum (rel. adv.) (8)
as ut (conj.) (5)
as great quantus, -a, -um (13)
as long as dōnec (conj.) (13); dum (conj.) (13)
as many quot (indeclinable adj.) (13)
as much quantus, -a, -um (13)
as much quantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
as soon as possible quam prīmum (11)
it makes (one) ashamed pudet, pudēre, puduit *or* puditum est (15)
ask quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesīvī, quaesītus (9)
ask (for) petō, petere, petiī/petīvī, petītus (7); rogō (1-tr.) (12)
aspect speciēs, *speciēī *f.* (9)
at all omnīnō (adv.) *in negative or virtual negative statements or questions* (6)
at dawn prīmā lūce (11)
at last tandem (adv.) (8)
at least quidem (postpositive adv.) (4); certē (adv.) (7)
at that time tum *or* tunc (adv.) (12)
at the foot of sub (prep. + abl.) (6)
at the house of apud (prep. + acc.) (10)
at this time hīc (adv.) (§131)
Athens Athēnae, Athēnārum *f. pl.* (6)
attack petō, petere, petiī/petīvī, petītus (7); oppugnō (1-tr.) (10)
attempt cōnor (1-tr.) (8)
attitude mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
audacity audācia, audāciae *f.* (11)
Augustus Augustus, Augustī *m.* (§63)
Aulus Aulus, Aulī *m.* (abbreviation: A.) (§16)
authority imperium, imperiī *n.* (3); auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* (14)
auxiliary troops auxilia, auxiliōrum *n. pl.* (4)
await maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus (7); ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) (13)
away from ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (1)

Bacchus Bacchus, Bacchī *m.* (§63)
bad malus, -a, -um (3)
badly male (adv.) (5)
band manus, manūs *f.* (9)
banishment ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī *n.* (8)
base turpis, turpe (15)
battle proelium, proeliī *n.* (5)
battle line aciēs, aciēī *f.* (9)
be sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (2)
be able possum, posse, potuī, —— (2); valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
be absent absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (14)
be accustomed soleō, solēre, solitus sum (11)
be afraid (of) timeō, timēre, timuī, —— (2)
be alive vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus (6)
be born nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum (10)
be destroyed pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus (11)
be different differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus (8)
be distant absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (14)
be distressed labōrō (1-intr.) (2)
be done fīō, fierī, factus sum (13)
be free (from) careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
be in awe of vereor, verērī, veritus sum (15)
be in charge (of) praesum, praeesse, praefuī, praefutūrus (12)
be made fīō, fierī, factus sum (13)
be near adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus (14)
be obedient pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus (+ dat.) (8)
be pleasing placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum (+ dat.) (8)
be present adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus (14)
be strong valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
be unwilling nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— (12)
be well valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
be willing volō, velle, voluī, —— (12)
be without careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
bear gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4); ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5)
beautiful pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (3)
because quoniam (conj.) (5); quia (conj.) (13); quod (conj.) (13)
because of propter (prep. + acc.) (3); ob (prep. + acc.) (9)
because of which thing quārē (adv.) (9)
become fīō, fierī, factus sum (13)
before ante (adv.) (7); prius (adv.) (11)
before ante (prep. + acc.) (7)
before antequam (conj.) (13); priusquam (conj.) 13
beg (for) ōrō (1-tr.) (12)
began ——, ——, coepī, coeptus (13)
begin incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus (13)
behind post (adv.) (7)
behind post (prep. + acc.) (7)
behold! ecce (interj.) (§74)

believe crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (+ dat.) (11)
belonging to the gods dīvīnus, -a, -um (§63)
best optimus, -a, -um (11); optimē (adv.) (11)
to betake oneself sē cōnferre (14)
better melior, melius (11); melius (adv.) (11)
between inter (prep. + acc.) (6)
beyond praeter (prep. + acc.) (12)
big magnus, -a, -um (3)
bitter acerbus, -a, -um (7)
blind caecus, -a, -um (8)
block obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus (15)
body corpus, corporis *n.* (6)
bold audāx, audācis (8)
boldly audacter *or* audāciter (8)
boldness audācia, audāciae *f.* (11)
book liber, librī *m.* (1)
both . . . and . . . et . . . et . . . (1)
boundary fīnis, fīnis, -ium *m.* or *f.* (10)
boy puer, puerī *m.* (1)
brave fortis, forte (6)
to break camp castra movēre (11)
breast *sing. or pl.,* pectus, pectoris *n.* (10)
brief brevis, breve (11)
bright clārus, -a, -um (4)
bring ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5)
bring about efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus (14)
bring back referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (10)
bring together cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus (14)
brother frāter, frātris *m.* (7)
but sed (conj.) (2); vērum (conj.) (7)
but (in fact) vērō (adv.) (7)
but if quodsī (conj.) (14)
buy emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus (13)
by ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (3); per (prep. + acc.) (4)
by far longē (adv.) (11)
by Hercules! herc(u)le (interj.) (§74); mehercule (interj.) (§74); meherculēs (interj.) (§74)
by no means haud (adv.) (14)
by now iam (adv.) (9)
by then iam (adv.) (9)

Caesar Caesar, Caesaris *m.* (§63)
call vocō (1-tr.) (2)
calm aequus, -a, -um (10)
(military) camp castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (11)
can possum, posse, potuī, —— (2)
capture capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (4)
care cūra, cūrae *f.* (2)
carry ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5)
carry (into) īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus (12)
carry (off) rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus (15)
carry away auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (7)
carry in different directions differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus (7)

Carthage Carthāgō, Carthāginis *f.* (6)
case causa, causae *f.* (4)
Catiline Catilīna, Catilīnae *m.* (§16)
Cato Catō, Catōnis *m.* (§63)
Catullus Catullus, Catullī *m.* (§16)
cause causa, causae *f.* (4)
Ceres Cerēs, Cereris *f.* (§63)
certain certus, -a, -um (7)
(a) certain quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (indef. adj.) (10)
(a) certain person, (a) certain thing quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (indef. pron.) (10)
certainly equidem (adv.) (4); quidem (postpositive adv.) (4); vērō (adv.) (7)
chance fortūna, fortūnae *f.* (7); cāsus, cāsūs *m.* (10); fors, fortis, -ium *f.* (12)
change mūtō (1-tr.) (13)
character mōrēs, mōrum *m. pl.* (10)
charming grātus, -a, -um (13)
check premō, premere, pressī, pressus (14)
chest *sing. or pl.,* pectus, pectoris *n.* (10)
choose legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus (6)
Cicero Cicerō, Cicerōnis *m.* (§63)
circle orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* (15)
citizen cīvis, cīvis, -ium *m.* or *f.* (6)
citizenry cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.* (7)
citizenship cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.* (7)
city urbs, urbis, -ium *f.* (6)
city walls moenia, moenium *n. pl.* (6)
clear clārus, -a, -um (4)
column agmen, agminis *n.* (14)
come veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum (4)
come on! age, agite (4)
come out ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum (13)
come to accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (5)
come to know nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus (10); cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (10)
command imperō (1-intr.) (9)
command imperium, imperiī *n.* (3); iussum, iussī *n.* (9)
commander imperātor, imperātōris *m.* (11)
compare cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus (14)
complete perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus (5); cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus (12)
comrade socius, sociī *m.* (4)
concern cūra, cūrae *f.* (2)
concerning dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
it concerns interest, interesse, interfuit (15); rēfert, rēferre, rētulit (15)
conduct agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4); gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4)
confess fateor, fatērī, fassus sum (8)
conquer superō (1-tr.) (3); vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus (7)

consider habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2); dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (4); arbitror (1-tr.) (11)
consul cōnsul, cōnsulis *m.* (8)
consulship cōnsulātus, cōnsulātūs *m.* (9)
contrary to contrā (prep. + acc.) (10)
control regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus (4)
Corinna Corinna, Corinnae *f.* (§63)
Cornelius Sulla (L.) Cornēlius Sulla, (L.) Cornēliī Sullae *m.* (§16)
country patria, patriae *f.* (1)
country(side) *sing. or pl.*, rūs, rūris *n.* (6)
courage virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
court iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
Crassus Crassus, Crassī *m.* (§16)
crime scelus, sceleris *n.* (13)
cruel saevus, -a, -um (13)
Cupid Cupīdō, Cupīdinis *m.* (§63)
custom mōs, mōris *m.* (10)
Cynthia Cynthia, Cynthiae *f.* (§63)

danger perīculum, perīculī *n.* (1)
dare audeō, audēre, ausus sum (8)
daring audāx, audācis (8)
dark caecus, -a, -um (8)
daughter fīlia, fīliae *f.* (1)
at dawn prīmā lūce (11)
day diēs, diēī *m.* or *f.* (9)
daylight lūx, lūcis *f.* (11)
dear (to) cārus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (7)
death mors, mortis, -ium *f.* (7)
deceptive falsus, -a, -um (7)
decide cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus (15)
Decimus Decimus, Decimī *m.* (abbreviation: D.) (§16)
deed factum, factī *n.* (1)
deep altus, -a, -um (4)
deep sea altum, altī *n.* (4)
deified dīvus, -a, -um (§63)
delay moror (1-tr.) (13)
delay mora, morae *f.* (3)
deliberation cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* (1)
depart discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (5)
depraved perditus, -a, -um (13)
descent genus, generis *n.* (10)
desire optō (1-tr.) (2); cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus (7)
desirous cupidus, -a, -um (+ gen.) (4)
desperately perditē (adv.) (13)
destiny fātum, fātī *n.* (5)
destroy dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus (10); perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus (13)
deter dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus (15)
Diana Diāna, Diānae *f.* (§63)
die morior, morī, mortuus sum (8); cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus (10); pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus (11); occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus (14)
differ differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus (7)
different dissimilis, dissimile (+ gen. *or* dat.) (11)
difficult difficilis, difficile (6)
with difficulty difficiliter *or* difficulter (adv.) (6)
diligence dīligentia, dīligentiae *f.* (3)
direct cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus (14)
Dis Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
discover inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus (11)
it disgusts (one) piget, pigēre, piguit (15)
disloyal impius, -a, -um (5)
displeased ingrātus, -a, -um (13)
displeasing ingrātus, -a, -um (13)
disposition ingenium, ingeniī *n.* (7)
dissimilar dissimilis, dissimile (+ gen. *or* dat.) (11)
dissolve solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
disturbance mōtus, mōtūs *m.* (8)
divine dīvīnus, -a, -um (§63); dīvus, -a, -um (§63)
divine power nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
divine spirit nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
divinity nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)
do agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4); faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (4)
doubt dubitō (1-tr.) (12)
doubt dubium, dubiī *n.* (12)
doubtful dubius, -a, -um (12)
down from dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
dread metuō, metuere, metuī, —— (14); vereor, verērī, veritus sum (15)
dread metus, metūs *m.* (10)
drive agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4)
drive (off) pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus (9)
during inter (prep. + acc.) (6)
dutiful pius, -a, -um (5)
duty mūnus, mūneris *n.* (8)

each quīque, quaque, quodque (indef. adj.) (14)
each man, each woman, each thing quisque, quidque (quicque) (indef. pron.) (14)
earlier ante (adv.) (7)
earth terra, terrae *f.* (3)
easily facile (adv.) (6)
east oriēns, orientis *m.* (14)
easy facilis, facile (6)
effort labor, labōris *m.* (10)
eight octō (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
eighth octāvus, -a, -um (§93)
either . . . or . . . aut . . . aut . . . (7); vel . . . vel . . . (14)
empire imperium, imperiī *n.* (3)
encourage hortor (1-tr.) (9)
end fīnis, fīnis, -ium *m.* or *f.* (10)

endure ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5); patior, patī, passus sum (8); perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus (10); stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus (10)
(personal) enemy inimīcus, inimīcī *m.* (3)
(public) enemy hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (6)
enjoy ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ abl.) (10)
enmity inimīcitia, inimīcitiae *f.* (5)
enough satis *or* sat (adv.) (10); satis *or* sat (indeclinable subst.) (10)
enrolled fathers patrēs cōnscrīptī (voc. pl.) (6)
enthusiasm studium, studiī *n.* (2)
entire tōtus, -a, -um (9)
entirely omnīnō (adv.) (6)
envoy lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* (10)
envy invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
epistle litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* (12)
equitable aequus, -a, -um (10)
err errō (1-intr.) (2)
especially maximē (adv.) (11)
establish iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus (11); cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus (15)
estimate aestimō (1-tr.) (13)
even aequus, -a, -um (10)
even et (adv.) (1); etiam (adv.) (7); vel (adv.) (14)
  not even nē . . . quidem (4)
ever umquam (adv.) (6)
every omnis, omne (6); quīque, quaque, quodque (indef. adj.) (14)
every man, every woman, every thing quisque, quidque (quicque) (indef. pron.) (14)
evil malus, -a, -um (3)
excellence virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
except praeter (prep. + acc.) (12)
exhort hortor (1-tr.) (9)
exile ex(s)ilium, ex(s)iliī *n.* (8)
exist sum, esse, fuī, futūrus (2)
expect ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) (13)
expel ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus (11)
experience experior, experīrī, expertus sum (8); patior, patī, passus sum (8); ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ abl.) (10)
expression *sing. or pl.,* vultus, vultūs *m.* (15)
eye oculus, oculī *m.* (8)
eyes lūmina, lūminum *n. pl.* (13)

face *sing. or pl.,* ōs, ōris *n.* (14); *sing. or pl.,* vultus, vultūs *m.* (15)
facing contrā (prep. + acc.) (10)
the fact that quod (conj.) (15)
(political) faction *sing. or pl.,* pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
faith fidēs, fideī *f.* (9)
fall cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus (10); occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus (14)
fall cāsus, cāsūs *m.* (10)
false falsus, -a, -um (7)
fame fāma, fāmae *f.* (1)
familiar nōtus, -a, -um (10)
family gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* (12)
famous clārus, -a, -um (4)
far longus, -a, -um (11); longē (adv.) (11)
fare well valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus (§74)
farewell! valē/valēte (§74)
farmer agricola, agricolae *m.* (1)
far-reaching longus, -a, -um (11)
fate fātum, fātī *n.* (5)
father pater, patris *m.* (6)
(enrolled) fathers patrēs conscrīptī (voc. pl.) (6)
favor pāx, pācis *f.* (8); grātia, grātiae *f.* (12)
fear timeō, timēre, timuī, —— (2); metuō, metuere, metuī, —— (14); vereor, verērī, veritus sum (15)
fear timor, timōris *m.* (6); metus, metūs, *m.* (10)
feel sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus (4)
feeling sententia, sententiae *f.* (4); sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* (11)
few paucī, paucae, pauca (4)
fickle levis, leve (8)
field ager, agrī *m.* (1)
fierce ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
fifth quintus, -a, -um (§93)
fight pugnō (1-intr.) (3)
final summus, -a, -um (11)
finally tandem (adv.) (8)
find inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventus (11)
fire ignis, ignis, -ium *m.* (11)
first prīmus, -a, -um (§93); prīmum (adv.) (11)
five quīnque (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
flat plain campus, campī *m.* (11)
flee fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus (7)
flight fuga, fugae *f.* (8)
follow sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (8)
for prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
for nam (conj.) (2); enim (postpositive conj.) (2)
for a great part magnam partem (adverbial acc.) (13)
for a long time diū (adv.) (11)
for in fact etenim (conj.) (2); namque (conj.) (2)
for my part equidem (adv.) (4)
for the first time prīmum (adv.) (11)
for the greatest part maximam partem (adverbial acc.) (13)
for the most part maximam partem (adverbial acc.) (13)
for the purpose of ad (prep. + acc.) (13); causā (+ *preceding* gen.) (13); grātiā (+ *preceding* gen.) (13)
for the sake of causā (+ *preceding* gen.) (13); grātiā (+ *preceding* gen.) (13)
forbid prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (15); vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitus (15)

(what is divinely) forbidden nefās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (12)
force vīs, ——, -ium *f.* (6)
forces cōpiae, cōpiārum *f. pl.* (7)
forget oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum (+ gen.) (12)
to form a plan cōnsilium capere (4)
fortunate fēlīx, fēlīcis (6)
fortune fortūna, fortūnae *f.* (7)
forum forum, forī *n.* (3)
foul turpis, turpe (15)
four quattuor (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
fourth quartus, -a, -um (§93)
free līberō (1-tr.) (6); solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
free līber, lībera, līberum (3)
freedom lībertās, lībertātis *f.* (8)
friend amīcus, amīcī *m.* (3)
friendly amīcus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
friendship amīcitia, amīcitiae *f.* (5)
frighten terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus (7)
from quīn (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause* (15); quōminus (conj.) *introduces Prevention clause* (15)
(away) from ā, ab (prep. + abl.) (1)
(down) from dē (prep. + abl.) (1)
(out) from ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (1)
from here hinc (adv.) (§131)
from that place inde (adv.) (§131)
from that time inde (adv.) (§131)
from there illinc (adv.) (§131); inde (adv.) (§131)
from where unde (rel. adv.) (9); unde (interrog. adv.) (12)

Gaius Gaius, Gaiī *m.* (abbreviation: C.) (§16)
general imperātor, imperātōris *m.* (11)
get parō (1-tr.) (9)
gift dōnum, dōnī *n.* (1); mūnus, mūneris *n.* (8)
gird (on oneself) cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus (15)
girl puella, puellae *f.* (1)
give dō, dare, dedī, datus (2); dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
give an order imperō (1-intr.) (+ dat.) (9)
give in exchange mūtō (1-tr.) (13)
glory glōria, glōriae *f.* (4)
Gnaeus Gnaeus, Gnaeī *m.* (abbreviation: Gn.) (§16)
go eō, īre, iī/īvī, itum (3); cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
to go sē cōnferre (14)
go away abeō, abīre, abiī, abitum (5); discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum (5)
go back redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum (5)
go out ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum (13)
go to accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (5)
god deus, deī *m.* (1)
goddess dea, deae *f.* (1)
gold aurum, aurī *n.* (1)
good bonus, -a, -um (3)
good day! salvē/salvēte (§74)
Gracchus Gracchus, Gracchī *m.* (§16)
grant dō, dare, dedī, datus (2)
grasp teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
grateful grātus, -a, -um (13)
gratitude grātia, grātiae *f.* (12)
great magnus, -a, -um (3)
greater maior, maius (11)
greatest maximus, -a, -um (11)
greatly magnopere (adv.) (10)
Greece Graecia, Graeciae *f.* (§16)
greetings! valē/valēte (§74)
guile ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)

Hades Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
hand manus, manūs *f.* (9)
hand down trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (7)
hand over trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (7)
handsome pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (3)
Hannibal Hannibal, Hannibalis *m.* (§63)
happen fīō, fierī, factus sum (13); accidō, accidere, accidī, —— (14)
happy laetus, -a, -um (3); fēlīx, fēlīcis (6)
hard dūrus, -a, -um (5)
hardly vix (adv.) (14)
hardship labor, labōris *m.* (10)
harsh dūrus, -a, -um (5); acerbus, -a, -um (7)
hate ōdī, ōdisse (defective verb) (5)
hatred odium, odiī *n.* (3)
have habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2)
have begun ——, ——, coepī, coeptus (13)
he is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
head caput, capitis *n.* (15)
health salūs, salūtis *f.* (§74)
healthy validus, -a, -um (4)
hear audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (4)
hear (of) accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
heart *sing. or pl.*, pectus, pectoris *n.* (10)
heaven caelum, caelī *n.* (4)
heavy gravis, grave (8)
height altum, altī *n.* (4)
hello! salvē/salvēte (§74)
help auxilium, auxiliī *n.* (4)
hence hinc (adv.) (§131)
henceforth hinc (adv.) (§131)
her is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
her (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
here hīc (adv.) (§131)
herself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
hesitate dubitō (1-tr.) (12)
hesitation dubium, dubiī *n.* (12)
hidden caecus, -a, -um (8)
high altus, -a, -um (4)

highest summus, -a, -um (11)
him is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
himself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
hinder morór (1-tr.) (13); impediō, impedīre, impediī/impedīvī, impedītus (15); obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus (15)
his (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
history rēs gestae, rērum gestārum *f. pl.* (9)
hither hūc (adv.) (§131)
hold habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus (2); teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
home domus, domī *f.* (6); domus, domūs *f.* (9)
homeland patria, patriae *f.* (1)
honor honor *or* honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
honorable honestus, -a, -um (10)
hope spēs, speī *f.* (10)
hope (for) spērō (1-tr.) (12)
Horace (Q.) Horātius Flaccus, (Q.) Horātiī Flaccī *m.* (§16)
hostile inimīcus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
hostility inimīcitia, inimīcitiae *f.* (5)
house domus, domī *f.* (6); domus, domūs *f.* (9)
how quemadmodum (interrog. adv.) (8); quō modō (interrog. adv.) (8); quam (adv.) (11)
how great quantus, -a, -um (13)
how many quot (indeclinable adj.) (13)
how much quantus, -a, -um (13)
how much quantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
however autem (postpositive conj.) (6)
huge ingēns, ingentis (6)
human being homō, hominis *m.* (6)
humble humilis, humile (11)
hundred centum (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
hundredth centēsimus, -a, -um (§93)
husband vir, virī *m.* (1)

I ego, meī (personal pron.) (4)
I ask you tandem (adv.) (8)
if sī (conj.) (5)
if . . . not nisi (conj.) (5)
Ilium Īlium, Īliī *n.* (§16)
ill-will invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
immortal immortālis, immortāle (7)
impede impediō, impedīre, impediī/impedīvī, impedītus (15)
important gravis, grave (8)
it is important interest, interesse, interfuit (15); rēfert, rēferre, rētulit (15)
in in (prep. + abl.) (1)
in another way aliter (adv.) (9)
in fact enim (postpositive conj.) (2)
in front of prō (prep. + abl.) (3); ante (prep. + acc.) (7)
in opposition contrā (adv.) (10)
in order that ut (conj.) *introduces Purpose clause* (9)
in order that . . . not nē (adv.) *introduces negative Purpose clause* (9)
in return for prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
in such a way sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
in that place ibi (adv.) (§131); illīc (adv.) (§131)
in the manner in which quemadmodum (rel. adv.) (8)
in the presence of apud (prep. + acc.) (10)
in this place hīc (adv.) (§131)
in this way sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
in turn contrā (adv.) (10)
in what way quō modō (interrog. adv.) (8)
inadequately parum (adv.) (11)
indeed equidem (adv.) (4); quidem (postpositive adv.) (4); vērō (adv.) (7)
indeed enim (postpositive conj.) (2)
inequitable inīquus, -a, -um (10)
inflict (on) īnferō, īnferre, intulī, illātus (12)
influence auctōritās, auctōritātis *f.* (14)
inhabitant incola, incolae *m.* (3)
instead of prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
intention mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
into in (prep. + acc.) (1)
it irks (one) piget, pigēre, piguit (15)
iron ferrum, ferrī *n.* (1)
island īnsula, īnsulae *f.* (1)
it is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
it causes (one) to repent or **regret** paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit (15)
it concerns interest, interesse, interfuit (15); rēfert, rēferre, rētulit (15)
it disgusts (one) piget, pigēre, piguit (15)
it irks (one) piget, pigēre, piguit (15)
it is important interest, interesse, interfuit (15); rēfert, rēferre, rētulit (15)
it is permitted licet, licēre, licuit *or* licitum est (14)
it is proper oportet, oportēre, oportuit (14)
it is right oportet, oportēre, oportuit (14)
it makes (one) ashamed pudet, pudēre, puduit *or* puditum est (15)
it makes (one) sick taedet, taedēre, taesum est (15)
it makes (one) tired taedet, taedēre, taesum est (15)
it moves (one) to pity miseret, miserēre, miseruit *or* miseritum est (15)
Italy Italia, Italiae *f.* (1)
its (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
itself —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)

jealousy invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
joy gaudium, gaudiī *n.* (8)
judge arbitror (1-tr.) (11)
judgment cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* (1); iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
Julia Iūlia, Iūliae *f.* (§16)

Julius Caesar (C.) Iūlius Caesar, (C.) Iūliī Caesaris *m.* (§63)
Juno Iūnō, Iūnōnis *f.* (§63)
Jupiter Iuppiter, Iovis *m.* (§63)
just aequus, -a, -um (10)
just modo (adv.) (12)
just now modo (adv.) (12)
justly iūre (adv.) (6)

keen ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
keenness aciēs, aciēī *f.* (9)
keep teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
kill interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectus (5); cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectus (12)
kind genus, generis *n.* (10)
kindness grātia, grātiae *f.* (12)
king rēx, rēgis *m.* (6)
know *perfect,* nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus (10); *perfect,* cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (10); sciō, scīre, sciī/scīvī, scītus (11)
known nōtus, -a, -um (10)

labor labor, labōris *m.* (10)
lack careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (+ abl.) (6)
land terra, terrae *f.* (3)
large magnus, -a, -um (3)
last summus, -a, -um (11)
later post (adv.) (7)
law iūs, iūris *n.* (6); lēx, lēgis *f.* (8)
to pass a law lēgem ferre (8)
lay iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus (11)
lead dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus (4)
leader dux, ducis *m.* or *f.* (10)
learn nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus (10); cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (10)
learn (of) accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
leave (behind) relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictus (8)
legate lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* (10)
legion legiō, legiōnis *f.* (11)
Lesbia Lesbia, Lesbiae *f.* (§63)
letter litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* (12)
letter (of the alphabet) littera, litterae *f.* (12)
level aequus, -a, -um (10)
Liber Līber, Līberī *m.* (§63)
lieutenant lēgātus, lēgātī *m.* (10)
life vīta, vītae *f.* (2)
life force anima, animae *f.* (1)
lifetime aetās, aetātis *f.* (14)
light lūx, lūcis *f.* (11); lūmen, lūminis *n.* (13)
light levis, leve (8)
limit modus, modī *m.* (8); fīnis, fīnis, -ium *m.* or *f.* (10)
line (of march) agmen, agminis *n.* (14)
listen (to) audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītus (4)
literature litterae, litterārum *f. pl.* (12)
little parvus, -a, -um (3)
a little paulum, *paulī *n.* (11)
live vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus (6)
Livia Līvia, Līviae *f.* (§16)
lo ecce (interj.) (§74)
long longus, -a, -um (11)
long for cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus (7)
long-standing longus, -a, -um (11)
a long way longē (adv.) (11)
look ecce (interj.) (§74)
look (at) spectō (1-tr.) (14)
loosen solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
lord dominus, dominī *m.* (1)
lose perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditus (13)
(morally) lost perditus, -a, -um (13)
a lot multum (adv.) (5)
love amō (1-tr.) (2)
love amor, amōris *m.* (6)
Love Amor, Amōris *m.* (§63)
loyal pius, -a, -um (5)
loyalty fidēs, fideī *f.* (9)
Lucius Lūcius, Lūciī *m.* (abbreviation: L.) (§16)
luck fors, fortis, -ium *f.* (12)
lucky fēlīx, fēlīcis (6)

make faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (4); efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectus (14)
make a mistake errō (1-intr.) (2)
to make a speech ōrātiōnem habēre (10)
to make camp castra pōnere (11)
man vir, virī *m.* (1); homō, hominis *m.* (6)
manage gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4)
Manius Manius, Maniī *m.* (abbreviation: M'.) (§16)
manliness virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
manner modus, modī *m.* (8)
many multus, -a, -um (3)
Marcus Marcus, Marcī *m.* (abbreviation: M.) (§16)
Marcus Antonius (Marc Antony) Marcus Antōnius, Marcī Antōniī *m.* (§16)
marketplace forum, forī *n.* (3)
Mars Mars, Martis *m.* (§63)
master dominus, dominī *m.* (1)
matter rēs, reī *f.* (9)
me ego, meī (personal pron.) (4)
measure modus, modī *m.* (8)
memory memoria, memoriae *f.* (12)
Mercury Mercurius, Mercuriī *m.* (§63)
meter modus, modī *m.* (8)
middle (of) medius, -a, -um (10)
midst medium, mediī *n.* (10)
military camp castra, castrōrum *n. pl.* (11)
mind animus, animī *m.* (2); mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
mine meus, -a, -um (4)
Minerva Minerva, Minervae *f.* (§63)

miserable miser, misera, miserum (3)
misfortune cāsus, cāsūs *m.* (10)
money pecūnia, pecūniae *f.* (1)
moon lūna, lūnae *f.* (14)
morally lost perditus, -a, -um (13)
more plūs/plūrēs, plūra (11); plūs (adv.) (11)
more (greatly) magis (adv.) (11)
moreover autem (postpositive conj.) (6)
mortal mortālis, mortāle (7)
most plūrimus, -a, -um (11); plūrimum (adv.) (11)
most greatly maximē (adv.) (11)
mother māter, mātris *f.* (6)
motion mōtus, mōtūs *m.* (9)
mountain mōns, montis, -ium *m.* (12)
mouth *sing. or pl.*, ōs, ōris *n.* (14)
move moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2); cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
movement mōtus, mōtūs *m.* (9)
much multus, -a, -um (3); multum (adv.) (5)
multitude agmen, agminis *n.* (14)
my meus, -a, -um (4)
my (own) meus, -a, -um (5)
myself —, meī (reflexive pron.) (5)

name nōmen, nōminis *n.* (14)
name vocō (1-tr.) (2)
nation gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* (12)
(natural) talent ingenium, ingeniī *n.* (7)
nature ingenium, ingeniī *n.* (7); nātūra, nātūrae *f.* (7)
near sub (prep. + abl.) (6)
necessary necesse (indeclinable adj.) (14)
neither (of two) neuter, neutra, neutrum (9)
neither . . . nor . . . neque/nec . . . neque/nec . . . (2)
Neptune Neptūnus, Neptūnī *m.* (§63)
Nero Nerō, Nerōnis *m.* (§63)
Nero Claudius Caesar Nerō Claudius Caesar, Nerōnis Claudiī Caesaris *m.* (§63)
never numquam (adv.) (6)
nevertheless tamen (adv.) (5)
new novus, -a, -um (7)
night nox, noctis, -ium *f.* (9)
nine novem (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
ninth nōnus, -a, -um (§93)
no nūllus, -a, -um (9)
no one nēmō, nēminis *m.* or *f.* (9)
not nōn (adv.) (2); nē (adv.) (7)
not any nūllus, -a, -um (9)
not at all nihil (adverbial acc.) (13); haud (adv.) (14)
not enough parum (indeclinable subst. *or* adv.) (11)
not even nē . . . quidem (4)
not know nesciō, nescīre, nesciī/nescīvī, nescītus (11)
not only . . . but also . . . nōn sōlum . . . sed/vērum etiam . . . (7)
not want nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— (12)
not wish nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— (12)
nothing nihil, nīl (indeclinable noun) *n.* (3); nihilum, nihilī *n. or* nīl, nīlī *n.* (13)
now nunc (adv.) (3); iam (adv.) (9); modo (adv.) (12)
numen nūmen, nūminis *n.* (15)

O ō (interj.) (1)
obey pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus (+ dat.) (8)
observe spectō (1-tr.) (14)
obtain parō (1-tr.) (9)
occupy teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
occurrence cāsus, cāsūs *m.* (10)
of such a sort tālis, tāle (13)
of which sort quālis, quāle (13)
(political) office honor *or* honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
often saepe (adv.) (8)
oh heu (interj.) (§74)
old antīquus, -a, -um (7); vetus, veteris (14)
on in (prep. + abl.) (1)
on account of propter (prep. + acc.) (3); ob (prep. + acc.) (9)
on account of which thing quam ob rem (adv.) (9)
on behalf of prō (prep. + abl.) (3)
on this side . . . on that side . . . hinc . . . hinc . . . (§131); hinc . . . illinc . . . (§131)
one ūnus, -a, -um (9)
only sōlus, -a, -um (9); ūnus, -a, -um (9)
only sōlum (adv.) (7); modo (adv.) (12)
only (so much) tantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
onto in (prep. + acc.) (1)
(the) open medium, mediī *n.* (10)
opinion sententia, sententiae *f.* (4)
oppress opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus (14)
or aut (conj.) (7); an (conj.) *introduces an alternative question* (12); vel (conj.) (14)
or not an nōn *in direct question* (12); necne *in Indirect Question* (12)
oration ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis *f.* (10)
orator ōrātor, ōrātōris *m.* (10)
Orcus Orcus, Orcī *m.* (§63)
order iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussus (2); imperō (1-intr.) (+ dat.) (9)
order iussum, iussī, *n.* (9)
origin genus, generis *n.* (10)
other alius, -a, -um (9)
(the) other cēterus, -a, -um (13)
(the) other (of two) alter, altera, alterum (9)
otherwise aliter (adv.) (9)
ought dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (2)
our noster, nostra, nostrum (4)
our (own) noster, nostra, nostrum (5)
ours noster, nostra, nostrum (4)
ourselves ——, nostrum/nostrī (reflexive pron.) (5)
out from ē, ex (prep. + abl.) (1)

overcome superō (1-tr.) (3); vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus (7)
overpower premō, premere, pressī, pressus (14)
overwhelm opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus (14)
Ovidius Naso (Ovid) (P.) Ovidius Nasō, (P.) Ovidius Nasōnis *m.* (§63)
owe dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus (2)

part pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
pass away pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus (11)
to pass a law lēgem ferre (8)
path via, viae *f.* (1)
to pay the penalty poenās dare (2)
peace pāx, pācis *f.* (8)
penalty poena, poenae *f.* (2)
to pay the penalty poenās dare (2)
(a) people gēns, gentis, -ium *f.* (12)
(the) people populus, populī *m.* (3)
perceive sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus (4)
perception sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* (11)
perform gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus (4)
perish pereō, perīre, periī, peritūrus (11)
permit patior, patī, passus sum (8)
it is permitted licet, licēre, licuit *or* licitum est (14)
(what is) permitted fās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (12)
personal enemy inimīcus, inimīcī *m.* (3)
to pitch camp castra pōnere (11)
pitiable miser, misera, miserum (3)
it moves (one) to pity miseret, miserēre, miseruit *or* miseritum est (15)
place pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
place locus, locī *m.; pl.,* loca, locōrum *n. pl. or sometimes* locī, locōrum *m. pl.* (8)
place around circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus (15)
(flat) plain campus, campī *m.* (11)
plan cōnsilium, cōnsiliī *n.* (1)
to form a plan cōnsilium capere (4)
to plead a case causam agere (4)
pleasant dulcis, dulce (15)
please placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum (+ dat.) (8)
pleased grātus, -a, -um (13)
pleasing grātus, -a, -um (13)
plot īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* (7)
Pluto Dīs, Dītis *m.* (§63)
poem carmen, carminis *n.* (6)
poet poēta, poētae *m.* (1)
point out mōnstrō (1-tr.) (2)
political faction *sing. or pl.,* pars, partis, -ium *f.* (7)
political office honor *or* honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
Pompeius Magnus (Pompey the Great) (Cn.) Pompeius Magnus, (Cn.) Pompeiī Magnī *m.* (§16)
ponder cōgitō (1-tr.) (2)
populace populus, populī *m.* (3)
Porcius Cato (M.) Porcius Catō, (M.) Porciī Catōnis *m.* (§63)
possess teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentus (3)
power imperium, imperiī *n.* (3); vīs, ——, -ium *f.* (6)
practice mōs, mōris *m.* (10)
praise laudō (1-tr.) (3)
pray tandem (adv.) (8)
precious cārus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (7)
prefer mālō, mālle, māluī, —— (12); praeferō, praeferre, praetulī, praelātus (12)
prepare (for) parō (1-tr.) (9)
present dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
preserve servō (1-tr.) (10)
press (hard) premō, premere, pressī, pressus (14)
press on opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus (14)
prevent dēterreō, dēterrēre, dēterruī, dēterritus (15); prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (15)
previously ante (adv.) (7)
price pretium, pretiī *n.* (13)
proceed gradior, gradī, gressus sum (13)
to proceed (quickly) sē ferre (5)
prohibit prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitus (15)
it is proper oportet, oportēre, oportuit (14)
property rēs, reī *f.* (9)
provided that dum (conj.) (13); dummodo (conj.) (13); modo (conj.) (13)
province prōvincia, prōvinciae *f.* (3)
public pūblicus, -a, -um (9)
public enemy hostis, hostis, -ium *m.* (6)
public square forum, forī *n.* (3)
Publius Publius, Publiī *m.* (abbreviation: P.) (§16)
punishment poena, poenae *f.* (2)
purpose mēns, mentis, -ium *f.* (6)
pursuit studium, studiī *n.* (2)
push pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus (9)
put pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
put in charge (of) praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectus (12)

queen rēgīna, rēgīnae *f.* (1)
Quintus Quintus, Quintī *m.* (abbreviation: Q.) (§16)

race genus, generis *n.* (10)
radiance lūmen, lūminis *n.* (13)
rational soul animus, animī *m.* (2)
read legō, legere, lēgī, lēctus (6)
readily facile (adv.) (6)
real vērus, -a, -um (7)
reason causa, causae *f.* (4)
receive accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptus (5)
reckless audāx, audācis (8)

recklessly audacter *or* audāciter (adv.) (8); perditē (adv.) (13)
recklessness audācia, audāciae *f.* (11)
reckon faciō, facere, fēcī, factus (13)
recognize nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus (10); cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitus (10)
it causes (one) to regret paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit (15)
release solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus (15)
reliable certus, -a, -um (7)
remain maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus (7)
remaining reliquus, -a, -um (14)
remaining part (of) cēterus, -a, -um (13)
remarkable ingēns, ingentis (6)
remember meminī, meminisse (defective verb) (5)
remind moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus (9)
remove auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (7)
Remus Remus, Remī *m.* (§16)
renown glōria, glōriae *f.* (4)
it causes (one) to repent paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit (15)
report ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5); perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus (10); referō, referre, rettulī, relātus (10)
report fāma, fāmae *f.* (1)
republic rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae *f.* (9)
reputation fāma, fāmae *f.* (1)
resentment invidia, invidiae *f.* (4)
respect vereor, verērī, veritus sum (15)
respect honor *or* honōs, honōris *m.* (13)
respectable honestus, -a, -um (10)
respond respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsus (2)
rest (of) cēterus, -a, -um (13); reliquus, -a, -um (14)
return redeō, redīre, rediī, reditum (5)
revolution rēs novae, rērum novārum *f. pl.* (9)
reward dōnō (1-tr.) (2)
rhythm modus, modī *m.* (8)
right iūs, iūris *n.* (6)
(what is divinely) right fās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (12)
it is right oportet, oportēre, oportuit (14)
rightly iūre (adv.) (6)
ring orbis, orbis, -ium *m.* (15)
rise orior, orīrī, ortus sum (14)
road via, viae *f.* (1)
Roman Rōmānus, -a, -um (3)
(the) Romans Rōmānī, Rōmānōrum *m. pl.* (3)
Rome Rōma, Rōmae *f.* (6)
Romulus Rōmulus, Rōmulī *m.* (§16)
ruined perditus, -a, -um (13)
ruinously perditē (adv.) (13)
rule regō, regere, rēxī, rēctus (4)
rumor fāma, fāmae *f.* (1); rūmor, rūmōris *m.* (12)
to rush forth sē ēicere (11)

sacrilege nefās (indeclinable noun) *n.* (12)
safety salūs, salūtis *f.* (§74)
sail vēlum, vēlī *n.* (2)
to set sail vēla dare (2)
sailor nauta, nautae *m.* (1)
same īdem, eadem, idem (8)
savage saevus, -a, -um (13)
save servō (1-tr.) (10)
say dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (4); ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus (5); inquam (defective verb) (8); for (1-tr.) (15)
to say "greetings" or hello salūtem dīcere (§74)
saying dictum, dictī *n.* (6)
scarcely vix (adv.) (14)
sea mare, maris, *-ium *n.* (6)
search for quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesīvī, quaesītus (9)
second secundus, -a, -um (§93)
secret caecus, -a, -um (8)
see videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus (2)
seek petō, petere, petiī/petīvī, petītus (7); quaerō, quaerere, quaesiī/quaesīvī, quaesītus (9)
seem *passive,* videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus (3)
seize rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus (15)
-self, -selves ipse, ipsa, ipsum (5)
sell vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditus (13)
Sempronius Gracchus (C. or Ti.) Semprōnius, (C. or Ti.) Semprōniī Gracchī *m.* (§16)
senate senātus, senātūs *m.* (9)
senators patrēs cōnscrīptī (voc. pl.) (6)
send mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus (4)
sense sēnsus, sēnsūs *m.* (11)
Sergius Catilina (Catiline) (L.) Sergius Catilīna, (L.) Sergiī Catilīnae *m.* (§16)
serious gravis, grave (8)
service mūnus, mūneris *n.* (8)
Servius Servius, Serviī *m.* (abbreviation: Ser.) (§16)
set occidō, occidere, occidī, occāsūrus (14)
set aside pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus (4)
set forth proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (10)
set in motion moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2)
set out proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (10)
to set sail vēla dare (2)
set up cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtus (15)
seven septem (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
seventh septimus, -a, -um (§93)
severe gravis, grave (8)
Sextus Sextus, Sextī *m.* (abbreviation: Sex.) (§16)
shade umbra, umbrae *f.* (7)
shadow umbra, umbrae *f.* (7)
shameful turpis, turpe (15)
sharp ācer, ācris, ācre (6)
sharp edge aciēs, aciēī *f.* (9)
she is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)

short brevis, breve (11)
show mōnstrō (1-tr.) (2)
it makes (one) sick taedet, taedēre, taesum est (15)
sign signum, signī *n.* (11)
signal signum, signī *n.* (11)
similar similis, simile (+ gen. *or* dat.) (11)
since quoniam (conj.) (5); cum (conj.) (12)
sing (of) canō, canere, cecinī, cantus (4)
sister soror, sorōris *f.* (7)
situation rēs, reī *f.* (9)
six sex (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
sixth sextus, -a, -um (§93)
skill ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
sky caelum, caelī *n.* (4)
slave servus, servī *m.* (1)
slavery servitūs, servitūtis *f.* (6)
small parvus, -a, -um (3)
small amount paulum, *paulī *n.* (11)
snatch away ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus (15)
so sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7); tam (adv.) (13)
so great tantus, -a, -um (13)
so many tot (indeclinable adj.) (13)
so much tantum (adverbial acc.) (13)
so much tantus, -a, -um (13)
so very adeō (adv.) (14)
soldier mīles, mīlitis *m.* (6)
some aliquī, aliqua, aliquod (indef. adj.) (14); quī, qua, quod (indef. adj.) (14)
someone, something aliquis, aliquid (indef. pron.) (14); quis, quid (indef. pron.) (14); quisquam, quicquam (indef. pron.) (14)
son fīlius, fīliī *m.* (1); nātus, nāti *m.* (10)
song carmen, carminis *n.* (6)
soon mox (adv.) (3)
sooner prius (adv.) (11)
sort genus, generis *n.* (10)
soul anima, animae *f.* (1)
(rational) soul animus, animī *m.* (2)
speak dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (4); loquor, loquī, locūtus sum (11); for (1-tr.) (15)
speaker ōrātor, ōrātōris *m.* (10)
spear tēlum, tēlī *n.* (11)
speech ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis *f.* (10)
spend agō, agere, ēgī, āctus (4)
spirit animus, animī *m.* (2)
Spurius Spurius, Spuriī *m.* (abbreviation: Sp.) (§16)
stand stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus (10)
stand fast stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus (10)
stand in the way obstō, obstāre, obstitī, obstātūrus (15)
standard signum, signī *n.* (11)
state cīvitās, cīvitātis *f.* (7)
stay maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus (7)
step gradior, gradī, gressus sum (13)
still etiam (adv.) (7)
stir (up) moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus (2)
stock genus, generis *n.* (10)
strange novus, -a, -um (7)
street via, viae *f.* (1)
strength vīrēs, vīrium *f. pl.* (6)
strong validus, -a, -um (4); fortis, forte (6)
strong feelings animī, animōrum *m. pl.* (2)
strongly valdē (adv.) (5)
study studium, studiī *n.* (2)
such tālis, tāle (13)
suffer labōrō (1-intr.) (2); patior, patī, passus sum (8); perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus (10)
sufficiently satis *or* sat (adv.) (10)
Sulla Sulla, Sullae *m.* (§16)
summon vocō (1-tr.) (2)
sun sōl, sōlis *m.* (14)
suppose putō (1-tr.) (11)
sure certus, -a, -um (7)
surpass superō (1-tr.) (3)
surrender trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditus (7)
surround cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus (15); circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus (15)
sweet dulcis, dulce (15)
swift celer, celeris, celere (15)
sword ferrum, ferrī *n.* (1); gladius, gladiī *m.* (1)

take (up) capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (4)
take away auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus (7)
take in exchange mūtō (1-tr.) (13)
take on incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus (13)
(natural) talent ingenium, ingeniī *n.* (7)
talk loquor, loquī, locūtus sum (11)
tall altus, -a, -um (4)
tear away rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptus (15); ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptus (15)
tell dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus (4)
temple templum, templī *n.* (7)
ten decem (indeclinable adj.) (§93)
tenth decimus, -a, -um (§93)
terrify terreō, terrēre, terruī, territus (7)
territory fīnēs, fīnium *m.* or *f.* (10)
test experior, experīrī, expertus sum (8)
than quam (conj.) (11)
thanks grātia, grātiae *f.* (12)
that is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) (4)
that ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
that quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8)
that ut (conj.) *introduces Indirect Command* (9); quīn (conj.) *introduces Doubting Clause* (12); nē (conj.) *introduces positive Fear clause* (15)
that (of yours) iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)

that . . . not nē (conj.) *introduces negative Indirect Command* (9); quīn (rel. adv.) *introduces negative Relative Clause of Characteristic* (10); quīn (rel. adv.) *introduces negative Relative Clause of Result* (14); ut (conj.) *introduces negative Fear clause* (15)
the fact that quod (conj.) (15)
their (own) suus, -a, -um (5)
them is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
themselves —, suī (reflexive pron.) (5)
then mox (adv.) (3); tandem (adv.) (8); tum *or* tunc (adv.) (12); ibi (adv.) (§131)
thence illinc (adv.) (§131); inde (adv.) (§131)
there ibi (adv.) (§131); illīc (adv.) (§131)
there is need of opus est (+ abl. *or* nom.) (10)
therefore quam ob rem (adv.) (9); quārē (adv.) (9); igitur (postpositive conj.) (11)
thereupon ibi (adv.) (§131); inde (adv.) (§131)
these is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) (4)
these hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
they is, ea, id (personal pron.) (4)
thing rēs, reī *f.* (9)
think cōgitō (1-tr.) (2); arbitror (1-tr.) (11); putō (1-tr.) (11)
third tertius, -a, -um (§93)
this is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) (4)
this hic, haec, hoc (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
thither eō (adv.) (§131); illūc (adv.) (§131)
those is, ea, id (demonstr. adj.) (4)
those ille, illa, illud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
those (of yours) iste, ista, istud (demonstr. adj./pron.) (8)
thought sententia, sententiae *f.* (4)
thousand mīlle; *pl.*, mīlia, mīlium (§93)
thousandth mīllēsimus, -a, -um (§93)
three trēs, tria (§93)
throng agmen, agminis *n.* (14)
through per (prep. + acc.) (4)
throw iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus (11)
throw out ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus (11)
thus sīc (adv.) (5); ita (adv.) (7)
Tiberius Tiberius, Tiberiī *m.* (abbreviation: Ti.) (§16)
time tempus, temporis *n.* (9); aetās, aetātis *f.* (14)
it makes (one) tired taedet, taedēre, taesum est (15)
Titus Tītus, Tītī *m.* (abbreviation: T.) (§16)
to ad (prep. + acc.) (1)
to be going to be fore (11); futūrus, -a, -um esse (11)
to here hūc (adv.) (§131)
to so great an extent adeō (adv.) (14)
to such an extent adeō (adv.) (14)
to that place eō (adv.) (§131)
to the same place eōdem (adv.) (§131)
to there illūc (adv.) (§131)
to what extent quid (adverbial acc.) (13)
to where quō (rel. adv.) (9); quō (interrog. adv.) (12)
too quoque (adv.) (8)
too little parum (indeclinable subst.) (11); parum (adv.) (11)
top (of) summus, -a, -um (11)
toward ad (prep. + acc.) (1)
town oppidum, oppidī *n.* (1)
tranquil aequus, -a, -um (10)
treachery īnsidiae, īnsidiārum *f. pl.* (7)
trick ars, artis, -ium *f.* (7)
trivial levis, leve (8)
troop manus, manūs *f.* (9)
troops cōpiae, cōpiārum *f. pl.* (7)
Troy Īlium, Īliī *n.* (§16); Troia, Troiae *f.* (§16)
true vērus, -a, -um (7)
trust crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditus (+ dat.) (11)
trust fidēs, fideī *f.* (9)
trustworthiness fidēs, fideī *f.* (9)
try cōnor (1-tr.) (8); experior, experīrī, expertus sum (8)
Tullius Cicero (M.) Tullius Cicerō, (M.) Tulliī Cicerōnis *m.* (§63)
two duo, duae, duo (§93)

ugly turpis, turpe (15)
uncertain incertus, -a, -um (7)
under sub (prep. + abl.) (6); sub (prep. + acc.) (6)
understand intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctus (6)
uneven inīquus, -a, -um (10)
unfortunate īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis (6)
unfriendly inimīcus, -a, -um (+ dat.) (3)
ungrateful ingrātus, -a, -um (13)
unhappy īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis (6)
unjust inīquus, -a, -um (10)
unless nisi (conj.) (5)
unlike dissimilis, dissimile (+ gen. *or* dat.) (11)
unlucky īnfēlīx, īnfēlīcis (6)
unpleasant ingrātus, -a, -um (13)
unreliable incertus, -a, -um (7)
unsure incertus, -a, -um (7)
until dōnec (conj.) (13); dum (conj.) (13)
unworthy (of) indignus, -a, -um (+ abl.) (12)
up to sub (prep. + acc.) (6)
urge hortor (1-tr.) (9)
us nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) (4)
use ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ abl.) (10)
utter iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactus (11)

Valerius Catullus (C.) Valerius Catullus, (C.) Valeriī Catullī *m.* (§16)
value aestimō (1-tr.) (13)
value pretium, pretiī *n.* (13)
vast ingēns, ingentis (6)
Venus Venus, Veneris *f.* (§63)

Vergilius Maro (Vergil) P. Vergilius Marō, P. Vergiliī Marōnis *m.* (§63)
very ipse, ipsa, ipsum (5)
(so) very adeō (adv.) (14)
very much plūrimum (adverbial acc.) (13)
Vesta Vesta, Vestae *f.* (§63)
villainy scelus, sceleris *n.* (13)
violence vīs, ——, -ium *f.* (6)
virtue virtūs, virtūtis *f.* (7)
voice vōx, vōcis *f.* (7)
Vulcan Vulcānus, Vulcānī *m.* (§63)

to wage war bellum gerere (4)
wait moror (1-tr.) (13)
wait for ex(s)pectō (1-tr.) (13)
walk ambulō (1-intr.) (2); gradior, gradī, gressus sum (13)
wall mūrus, mūrī *m.* (11)
(city) walls moenia, moenium *n. pl.* (6)
wander errō (1-intr.) (2)
want cupiō, cupere, cupiī/cupīvī, cupītus (7); volō, velle, voluī, —— (12)
want more mālō, mālle, māluī, —— (12)
war bellum, bellī *n.* (1)
  to wage war bellum gerere (4)
warn moneō, monēre, monuī, monitus (9)
way via, viae *f.* (1); modus, modī *m.* (9)
we nōs, nostrum/nostrī (personal pron.) (4)
weapon tēlum, tēlī *n.* (11)
weapons arma, armōrum *n. pl.* (2)
well bene (adv.) (5)
well-known nōtus, -a, -um (10)
west occidēns, occidentis *m.* (14)
what quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) (8)
what quis, quid (interrog. pron.) (8)
what sort of quālis, quāle (13)
when ubi (interrog. adv.) (5)
when ubi (conj.) (5); ut (conj.) (5); cum (conj.) (12)
whence unde (rel. adv.) (9); unde (interrog. adv.) (12)
where ubi (interrog. adv.) (5); ubi (rel. adv.) (9)
whether num (adv.) *introduces an Indirect Question* (12)
whether an (conj.) *introduces an Indirect Question* (12)
whether utrum (interrog. particle) *introduces an Indirect Question* (12)
whether . . . or . . . utrum . . . an . . . (12); -ne . . . an . . . (12); —— . . . an . . . (12)
which quī, quae, quod (interrog. adj.) (8)
which quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8)
which (of two) uter, utra, utrum (9)
while dōnec (conj.) (13); dum (conj.) (13)
whither quō (rel. adv.) (9); quō (interrog. adv.) (12)
who quī, quae, quod (rel. pron.) (8); quis, quid (interrog. pron.) (8)
who . . . not quīn (rel. adv.) *introduces negative Relative Clause of Characteristic* (10); *introduces negative Relative Clause of Result* (14)
whole tōtus, -a, -um (9)
why cūr (interrog. adv.) (2); quam ob rem (interrog. adv.) (9); quārē (interrog. adv.) (9); quid (adverbial acc.) (13)
wicked impius, -a, -um (5)
wicked deed scelus, sceleris *n.* (13)
wife fēmina, fēminae *f.* (1)
win capiō, capere, cēpī, captus (4); *intr.,* vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus (7)
wisdom sapientia, sapientiae *f.* (2)
wise sapiēns, sapientis (11)
wish volō, velle, voluī, —— (12)
  to wish ill male velle (12)
  to wish well bene velle (12)
with cum (prep. + abl.) (1)
with difficulty difficiliter *or* difficulter (adv.) (6)
withdraw cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
without sine (prep. + abl.) (3)
woman fēmina, fēminae *f.* (1)
word verbum, verbī *n.* (1); dictum, dictī *n.* (6); vōx, vōcis *f.* (7)
work labōrō (1-intr.) (2)
work labor, labōris *m.* (10); opus, operis *n.* (10)
world orbis terrārum (15)
worse peior, peius (11); peius (adv.) (11)
worst pessimus, -a, -um (11); pessimē (adv.) (11)
worthy (of) dignus, -a, -um (+ abl.) (12)
wound vulnus, vulneris *n.* (13)
wrath īra, īrae *f.* (2)
wretched miser, misera, miserum (3)
write scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus (4)

year annus, annī *m.* (9)
yield cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum (5)
you tū, tuī (personal pron.) (4)
you (pl.) vōs, vestrum/vestrī (personal pron.) (4)
your tuus, -a, -um (4)
your (pl.) vester, vestra, vestrum (4)
your (own) tuus, -a, -um (5)
your (pl.) (own) vester, vestra, vestrum (5)
yours tuus, -a, -um (4)
yours (pl.) vester, vestra, vestrum (4)
yourself —, tuī (reflexive pron.) (5)
yourselves ——, vestrum/vestrī (reflexive pron.) (5)

zeal studium, studiī *n.* (2)

GENERAL INDEX

English Index

Ablative case, introduction, 17
  Absolute, 251
  of Accompaniment, 17
  of Cause, 118
  of Comparison, 306
  of Degree of Difference, 306
  of Description, 254
  of Manner, 59
  of Means, 17
  of Origin, 254
  of Personal Agent, 58
  of Place From Which, 119
  of Place Where, 119
  of Price, 416
  of Respect, 75
  of Separation, 118
  of Time When, 213
  of Time Within Which, 213
Accentuation, 7
  antepenult, 7
  Law of the Penult, 8
  long by nature, 8
  long by position, 8
  penult, 7
  ultima, 7
Accusative case, introduction, 17
  Adverbial, 415
  Direct Object, 17
  Direct Object of a Middle Voice Verb, 530
Double
  with **ōrō**, 354
  with **rogō**, 354
of Duration of Time, 212
  with imperfect tense, 212
  with present tense, 212
of Exclamation, 415
  of Place To Which, 120
  of Respect, 530
  Predicate adjective, 52
  Subject, 300
  Subject of an Indirect Statement, 298
Active periphrastics, 252
Adjective morphology
  comparative of (irregular), 305
  comparative of (regular), 302
  first-second declension, 50
  irregular (gen. sing. in **-īus**), 205
  superlative of (irregular), 305
  superlative of (regular), 303
  third declension, 116
Adjectives, introduction, 50
  demonstrative, 77, 170
  indefinite, 241, 466
  intensive, 93
  interrogative, 177
  noun-adjective agreement, 51
  participles, 246
    of irregular verbs, 247
  possessive, 77

Adjectives (*continued*)
predicate, 52
reflexive-possessive, 93
substantive use, 51
Adverbs
comparative of (irregular), 305
comparative of (regular), 303
derived from first-second declension adjectives, 94
derived from third-declension adjectives, 117
irregular, 94, 117
of place, 460
superlative of (irregular), 305
superlative of (regular), 304
Alcaic strophe, 351
Alliteration, 288
Alphabet, 4
Anaphora, 288
Antithesis, 288
Apodosis, definition, 97
Apposition, 60
Archaic spellings, 402
Archaic verb forms, 403
Archilochian meter, 350
Asclepiadean meters, 349
Assimilation (in compound verbs), 84
Assonance, 288

Caesura, 196
principal, 196
Chiasmus, 42, 288
Choliambic (limping iambic), 348
Cognates, introduction, 14
Compound verbs, introduction, 84
Conditional sentences, definition, 97
future less vivid, 149
future more vivid, 98
with emphatic protasis, 98
mixed contrary-to-fact, 150
mixed future, 150
past contrary-to-fact, 149
past simple, 97
present contrary-to-fact, 149
present simple, 97
summary of (using indicative), 99
summary of, 150
Conjunctions
coordinating, 13
subordinating, 95
Consonants, 4
Consonantal **i**, 4
fricative, 7
liquid, 7
mute, 7
Coordination, definition, 206
Correlatives, 412

Dactylic hexameter, 194
Dative case, introduction, 16
Double Dative construction, 151
of Advantage, 151
of Agent with a Passive Periphrastic, 253
of Disadvantage, 151
of Indirect Object, 16
of Purpose, 151
of Reference, 16
of the Possessor, 39
with a Compound Verb, 364
with an Intransitive Verb, 178
Declension, definition, 18
Defective verbs, 85
meminī, 85
ōdī, 86
Deliberative subjunctive, 358
in indirect question, 360
Demonstrative adjectives/pronouns
hic, **haec**, **hoc**, 170
ille, **illa**, **illud**, 171
is, **ea**, **id**, 77
iste, **ista**, **istud**, 170
special uses of, 171
Deponent verbs, 167
participles of, 247
Derivatives, introduction, 14
Diaeresis, 197
Diphthongs, 6
Direct questions, 357
Doubting clauses, 361

Elegiac couplet, 195
Elision, 196
Ellipsis, 42, 288
Enclitic, 13

Fear clauses, 524

Genitive case, introduction, 16
Objective, 74
of Characteristic, 472

of Description, 254
of Indefinite Value, 416
of Possession, 16
Partitive, 74
with superlatives, 307
Subjective, 74
Gerundives, introduction, 408
expressing purpose, 409
Gerunds, introduction, 408
expressing purpose, 409
Greetings in Latin, 160

Hendecasyllable, 348
Hendiadys, 288
Hiatus, 197
Hortatory subjunctive, 146
Hyperbaton, 288
Hypotaxis, definition, 206

Idiom, definition, 26
Imperative, 71
future, **meminī**, 86
future, **sciō**, 293
present active and passive, 71
Impersonal constructions
with **licet**, **necesse est**, **oportet**, 471
with **miseret**, **paenitet**, **piget**, **pudet**, **taedet**, **rēfert**, **interest**, 526
Impersonal passive, 112
Indicative, introduction, 30
in subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 301
Indirect commands, 209
Indirect questions, 359
deliberative subjunctive in, 360
double, 360
potential subjunctive in, 360
Indirect reflexives, 528
Indirect statement, 298
fore ut construction, 470
personal construction of, 300
subordinate clauses in, 301
Infinitive, definition, 31
Complementary, 38
Historical, 531
in indirect statement, 298
morphology, 295
Object, 39
present passive, 71
relative time in indirect statement, 298
Subject, 60
Infix, definition, 32
Intensive adjective **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, 93
Interjections in Latin, 160
Interrogative adjective **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, 177
Interrogative pronoun **quis**, **quid**, 176

Jussive subjunctive, 146
as negative command, 146
in parataxis with **licet**, **necesse est**, or **oportet**, 472

Law of the Penult, 8
Locative case, introduction, 119
Long Vowel Rule, 34, 55

Meter, introduction, 194
Alcaic strophe, 351
Archilochian, 350
Asclepiadean, 349
caesura, 196
principal, 196
choliambic (limping iambic), 348
common terms, 347
dactylic hexameter, 194
diaeresis, 197
elegiac couplet, 195
elision, 196
hendecasyllable, 348
hiatus, 197
Sapphic strophe, 349
stichic verse, 347
strophic or stanzaic verse, 347
Metonymy, 12
Morphology, definition, 9. *See also specific parts of speech and specific parts of the verb*
Mute/liquid rule, 194

Names, 45
abbreviations of common **praenōmina**, 45
first-second declension, 45
of gods, 132
praenōmen, **nōmen**, and **cognōmen**, 45
third declension, 132
Negative commands,
with jussive subjunctive, 146
with **nōlī** or **nōlīte**, 364

Nominative case, introduction, 15
Predicate, 16, 52
Subject, 15
Noun Morphology
first declension, 19
second declension, masculine/feminine, 21
two endings of genitive singular, 22
vocative forms of, 22
second declension, neuter, 22
two endings of genitive singular, 23
third declension masculine/feminine, 112
third declension neuter, 112
third declension i-stem masculine/feminine, 114
third declension i-stem neuter, 114
third-declension noun **vīs** (irregular), 115
fourth declension, 203
neuter endings, 203
fifth declension, 204
Nouns, introduction, 15
case, 15
finding the stem of, 19
gender, 15
number, 15
For noun syntax see specific noun cases
Numbers, cardinal and ordinal, 235

Optative subjunctive, 147

Parataxis, definition, 206
jussive subjunctive in parataxis with **licet**, **necesse est**, or **oportet**, 472
Participle, definition, 31
attributive, 249
circumstantial, 249
introduction, 246
of deponent and semideponent verbs, 247
of irregular verbs, 247
perfect passive as adjective/substantive, 111
relative time of, 249
Passive periphrastics, 252
Period, periodic sentence, 289
Place expressions, summary, 120
Possession
Dative of the Possessor, 39
Expressions of, compared, 40
Genitive of Possession, 16
summary, 78
Potential subjunctive, 147
in indirect question, 360
Predicate accusative, 299
Predicate adjective in the accusative, 299
Prefix, 84
Prevention clauses, 525
Principal parts, in this textbook, 26
vocabulary entry for a verb, 31
Pronouns
demonstrative, 170
indefinite, 466
interrogative, 176
personal, 76
reflexive, 91
direct and indirect, 528
relative, 172
connective, 175
indefinite or generic antecedent of, 175
restrictive and nonrestrictive, 174
Pronunciation, 3
Prose Word Order, Introduction, 40
Protasis, definition, 97
Proviso clauses, 412
Purpose clauses, 206
relative clauses of, 211

Reduplicated stem, definition, 26
Relative clauses, 172
of characteristic, 244
of purpose, 211
introduced by **quō** with comparatives, 307
of result, 468
placement of antecedent in and after, 176
restrictive and nonrestrictive, 174
Relative pronoun, 172
connective, 175
indefinite or generic antecedent of, 175
Relative time
in sequence of tenses, 207
infinitives and, 298
participles and, 249
Result clauses, 467
relative clauses of, 468
Rhetorical terms, introduction, 288
alliteration, 288
anaphora, 288
antithesis, 288
assonance, 288
chiasmus, 42, 288
ellipsis, 42, 288

hendiadys, 288
hyperbaton, 288
period, periodic sentence, 289
tricolon, 288
Rhotacism, definition, 36

Sapphic strophe, 349
Scansion, introduction, 194
Semideponent verbs, 169
participles of, 247
Sentences
complex, 95
compound, 95
conditional, 97
future less vivid, 149
future more vivid, 98
future more vivid with emphatic protasis, 98
mixed contrary-to-fact, 150
mixed future, 150
past contrary-to-fact, 149
past simple, 97
present contrary-to-fact, 149
present simple, 97
summary of (using indicative), 99
summary of, 150
simple, 95
Sequence of tenses, 206
summary of rules, 209
Stems of verbs
perfect active, 87
present, 32
Stress, 7
antepenult, 7
Law of the Penult, 8
long by nature, 8
long by position, 8
penult, 7
ultima, 7
Subjunctive, introduction, 140
by attraction, 529
deliberative, 358
in indirect question, 360
hortatory, 146
in causal clauses introduced by **quod/quia**, 411
in **cum** clauses, 361
in doubting clauses, 361
in fear clauses, 524
in **fore ut** construction, 470
in future less vivid conditional, 149
in indirect commands, 209
in indirect questions, 360
in mixed contrary-to-fact conditional, 150
in mixed future conditional, 150
in past contrary-to-fact conditional, 149
in present contrary-to-fact conditional, 149
in prevention clauses, 525
in proviso clauses, 412
in purpose clauses, 206
in relative clauses of purpose, 211
in relative clauses of characteristic, 244
in result clauses, 467
in relative clauses of result, 468
in subordinate clauses in indirect statement, 301
in substantive **ut** clauses, 469
in temporal clauses introduced by **antequam/priusquam**, 411
in temporal clauses introduced by **dum/dōnec**, 411
jussive, 146
as negative command, 146
optative, 147
potential, 147
in indirect question, 360
summary of independent uses, 148
Subordinate Clauses, definition, 95
causal, definition, 96
introduced by **cum**, 361
introduced by **quod/quia** with an indicative, 410
introduced by **quod/quia** with a subjunctive, 411
circumstantial introduced by **cum**, 361
comparative, definition, 96
concessive, definition, 96
introduced by **cum**, 361
conditional, definition 96
in indirect statement, 301
temporal, definition, 96
introduced by **cum**, 361
introduced by **antequam/priusquam** with an indicative, 410
introduced by **antequam/priusquam** with a subjunctive, 411
introduced by **dum/dōnec** with an indicative, 410
introduced by **dum/dōnec** with a subjunctive, 411

Subordination, definition, 206
Substantive **ut** clauses, 469
Supine, 529
Syllabification, 7
Syncopated forms, 402
Syncopation of forms in the perfect active system, 402
Synopsis, introduction, 57
I. present active and passive indicative, 57
II. present active and passive indicative, infinitive, and imperative, 73
III. present indicative system, perfect active system, infinitive, and imperative, 90
IV. indicative, infinitive, imperative, 110
V. indicative, subjunctive, infinitive, imperative, 145
VI. indicative, subjunctive, participle, infinitive, imperative, 248
VII. complete, 297
Syntax, definition, 9. *See also specific parts of speech, specific cases, and specific moods*

Tricolon, 288

Unassimilated forms, 402

Verb Morphology
endings
active personal, 33
passive personal, 54
perfect active, 87
imperative
irregular forms, 72
of **meminī**, 86
present active and passive, 71
indicative
future active of first and second conjugations, 35
future active of third, third i-stem and fourth conjugations, 70
future passive of first and second conjugations, 55
future passive of third, third i-stem and fourth conjugations, 70
future perfect active of all verbs, 89
future perfect passive of all verbs, 109
imperfect active of first and second conjugations, 34
imperfect active of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 69
imperfect passive indicative of first and second conjugations, 56
imperfect passive of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 69
perfect active of all verbs, 87
perfect active of **eō**, 88
perfect active stems ending in **i-**, second singular/plural of, 137
perfect passive of all verbs, 108
pluperfect active of all verbs, 88
pluperfect passive of all verbs, 109
present, imperfect, and future active of **eō**, 53
present, imperfect, and future of **ferō**, 91
present, imperfect, and future active of **possum**, 35
present, imperfect, and future active of **sum**, 35
present active of first and second conjugations, 33
present active of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 67
present passive of first and second conjugations, 55
present passive of third, third i-stem, and fourth conjugations, 67
infinitive
future active, 295
perfect active, 295
perfect passive, 295
periphrastic, 296
present passive, 71
participles, 246
of deponent and semideponent verbs, 247
of irregular verbs, 247
periphrastics, 252
subjunctive
imperfect active and passive of all verbs, 142
perfect active of all verbs, 143
perfect passive of all verbs, 144
pluperfect active of all verbs, 143
pluperfect passive of all verbs, 144
present active and passive of all verbs, 141
present active of **eō**, 142

present active of **possum**, 142
present active of **sum**, 142
Verbs, introduction, 29
active periphrastics, 252
aspect, 29
completed, 29
progressive, 29
repeated, 29
simple, 29
compound, introduction, 84
conjugations, introduction, 30
copulative, definition, 16
defective, 85
deponent, 167
impersonal passive, 112
inceptive or inchoative, 241
infinitive, definition, 31
present passive, 71
infix, definition, 32
intransitive, definition, 38
mood, 30
number, 29
of perception, 298
participle, definition, 31
attributive and circumstantial, 249
introduction, 246
passive periphrastics, 252
perfect active stem, 87
perfect active system, 87
perfect passive system, 108
person, 29
present stem, finding, 32
rhotacism, definition, 36
semideponent, 169
subjunctive, introduction, 140
tense, 29
of the indicative mood, overview, 30
primary, 207
secondary, 208
transitive, definition, 38
voice, 30
passive, introduction, 53
Vocative case, introduction, 18
Vowel triangle, 84
Vowel weakening (in compound verbs), 84
Vowels, 5

Word Order (Prose), introduction, 40

Latin Index

alius, **alia**, **aliud**, uses of, 205
alter, **altera**, **alterum**, uses of, 205

cum, subordinating conjunction, 361

domus, full declension, 200
duo, 236

eō, 53
  perfect active indicative, 88
  present, imperfect, and future active indicative, 53
  present active subjunctive, 142

ferō, 91
  imperative, 72
fīō, 414
fore ut, 470

habeō in the passive voice, 58
hic, **haec**, **hoc**, 170

īdem, **eadem**, **idem**, 166
ille, **illa**, **illud**, 171
ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, 93
is, **ea**, **id**, 77
iste, **ista**, **istud**, 170

mālō, 363
meminī, 85
  imperatives, 86

-ne, interrogative enclitic particle, 28
nōlō, 363

ōdī, 86

possum
  present, imperfect, and future active indicative, 35
  present active subjunctive, 142

quam, comparison with, 306
-que, enclitic conjunction, 13
quī, **quae**, **quod**, 172
quīdam, **quaedam**, **quiddam/quoddam**, 241
quīn
  introducing doubting clause, 361
  introducing relative clause of characteristic, 245
  introducing relative clause of result, 468
quis, **quid**, 176

sum
  as a copulative verb, 37
  omitted in compound forms, 111
  present, imperfect, and future active indicative, 35
  present active subjunctive, 142
  two meanings of, 37

trēs, 236

vērō, uses of the irregular adverb, 139
videō in the passive voice, 58
vīs, 115
volō, 363

Learn to Read Latin helps students acquire an ability to read and appreciate the great works of Latin literature as quickly as possible. It not only presents basic Latin morphology and syntax with clear explanations and examples but also offers direct access to unabridged passages drawn from a wide variety of Latin texts. As beginning students learn basic forms and grammar, they also gain familiarity with patterns of Latin word order and other features of style.

Learn to Read Latin

- is designed to be comprehensive and requires no supplementary materials;
- explains English grammar points and provides drills especially for today's students;
- offers sections on Latin metrics;
- includes numerous unaltered examples of ancient Latin prose and poetry;
- incorporates selections by authors such as Caesar, Cicero, Sallust, Catullus, Vergil, and Ovid, presented chronologically with introductions to each author and work;
- offers a comprehensive workbook that provides drills and homework assignments.

This enlarged second edition improves upon an already strong foundation by streamlining grammatical explanations, increasing the number of syntax and morphology drills, and offering additional short and longer readings in Latin prose and poetry.

"Offering crystal clear explanations of Latin vocabulary, morphology, and grammar and an unparalleled wealth of exercises and unadapted selected readings, *Learn to Read Latin* has rightly become the first choice of teachers and students across the English-speaking world."—**Jonathan L. Ready**, Indiana University

"*Learn to Read Latin* both smooths and speeds the way to true Latinity. The authors achieve a standard for the whole rest of the field in breadth and depth of outlook, to say nothing of accuracy in and love for the subject."—**Tim Markey**, Worcester Academy

Also available:

Cloth Textbook ISBN: 978-0-300-19494-4
Workbook, Part II ISBN: 978-0-300-19498-2
Paper Set ISBN: 978-0-300-19499-9
Workbook, Part I ISBN: 978-0-300-19497-5
Workbook, combined ISBN: 978-0-300-19496-8

Andrew Keller and **Stephanie Russell** teach classics at Collegiate School in New York City.

Cover illustration: The Young Cicero Reading. Vincenzo Foppa, active 1456–1515. By kind permission of the Trustees of the Wallace Collection, London.

yalebooks.com/ltrl

Yale UNIVERSITY PRESS
New Haven & London **yalebooks.com** **yalebooks.co.uk**

ISBN 978-0-300-19495-1